Cape Good Hope 1652-1702

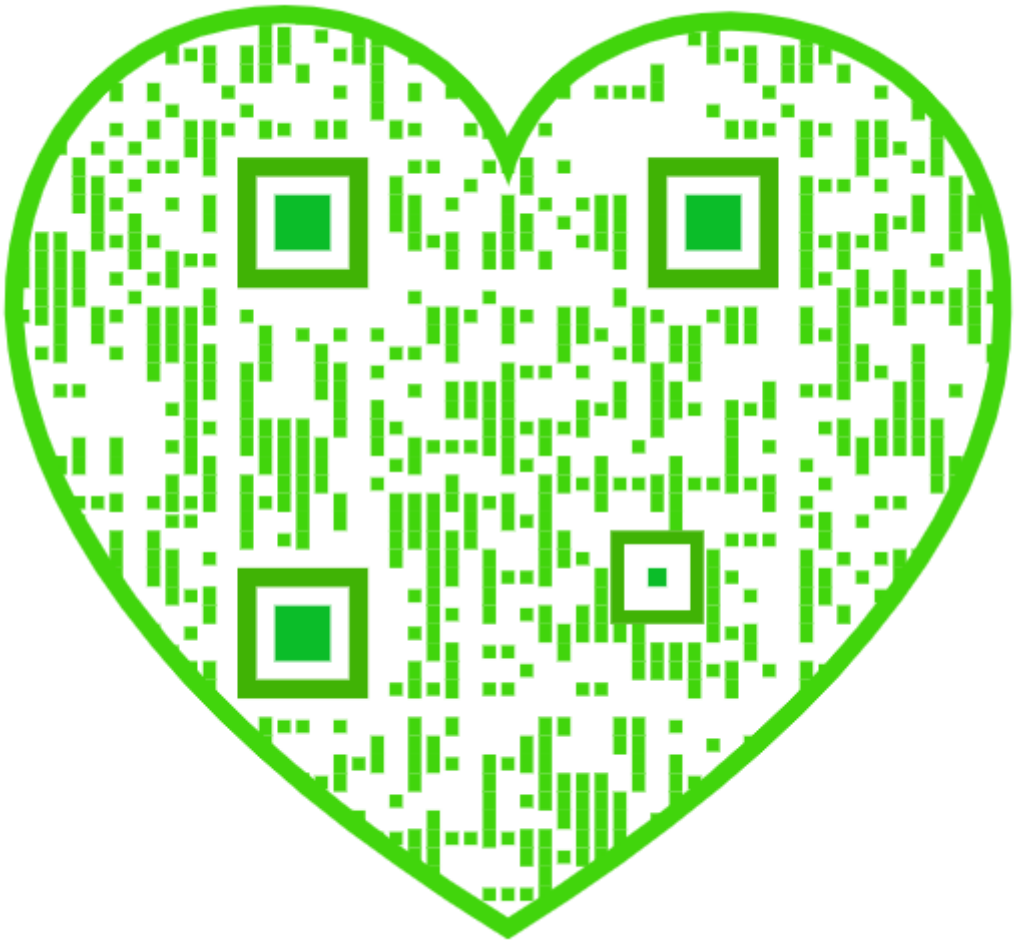
R. Raven-Hart

bron
R. Raven-Hart, *Cape Good Hope 1652-1702*. A.A. Balkema, Kaapstad 1971

Zie voor verantwoording: https://www.dbnl.org/tekst/rave028cape01_01/colofon.php

Let op: boeken en tijdschriftjaargangen die korter dan 140 jaar geleden verschenen zijn, kunnen auteursrechtelijk beschermd zijn. Welke vormen van gebruik zijn toegestaan voor dit werk of delen ervan, lees je in de gebruiksvoorwaarden.

dbnl digitale bibliotheek voor de Nederlandse letteren



Cape Good Hope
Volume One

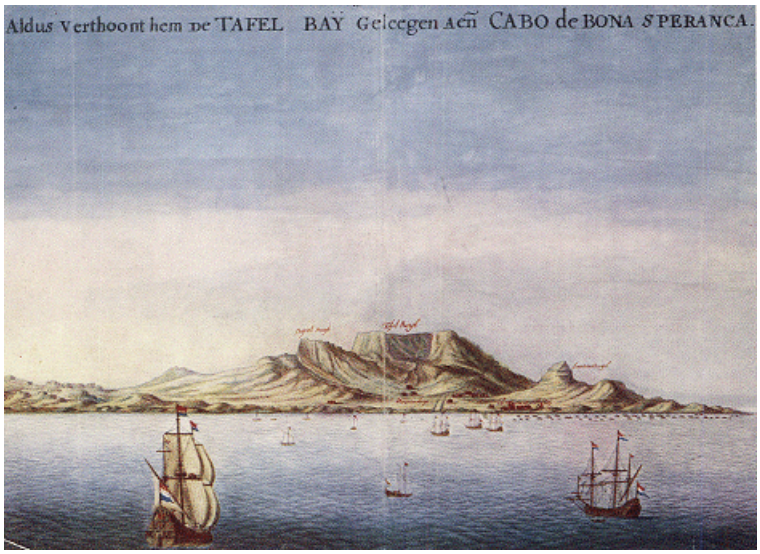


Table Bay, Cape of Good Hope

Preface

This book covers the first fifty years of the Dutch colonisation at the Cape, as seen by callers.

During the years while it was in preparation I took the opportunity of having the MS read by various friends. The two most valuable criticisms made of it (in each case by more than one reader) were:

(1) that it would have been preferable to observe the strict chronological order, even at the cost of breaking up the account of any one writer into several sections. This has been done.

(2) that it would have helped readers if some idea had been given of what was going on at the time elsewhere in the world and especially at the Cape. Such a 'background' has been provided here, year by year, in the form of a very brief summary of European history (of course entirely superfluous to the historian - but not all readers are historians), followed by short extracts from official documents such as the Diary ('Dagregister', 'DR') kept at the Cape; Resolutions passed by the 'Council of Policy', the ruling body here; Letters from this to the 'Lords XVII', the Directors of the Honourable Dutch East-India Company in Holland, and *vice versa*; etc. All these are translated directly from the original text: it is a continual surprise to me how modern writers are content to rely on second-hand versions from, e.g., Theal, Leibbrandt, Moodie and even Walker when exceptionally good Archives are available at The Hague and in Cape Town. These extracts are not however intended to form a skeleton history of the Colony, but rather to confirm or contradict statements made by the writers of the items included.

Another type of 'criticism' was provided by comments such as: Why is 'San Bras' not identified as Mossel Bay? Is 'Commelin' a book or a document or what is it? The answer in all such cases is:

Look in the index

And here I will make an unorthodox suggestion to you, gentle reader of Prefaces: after reading page xiii spend a few minutes giving a cursory glance through the index of this book *before* you start to read the text, bearing in mind that the notes in that index replace

a multiplicity of footnotes and superscript numerical (and often illegible) references to these, which would otherwise disfigure the pages of text.

Only the accounts of 'callers' are included, not those of wrecks (most outside the area covered, in any case); nor of residents (Schryver, de Neyn, Grevenbroek, etc.) with one exception, Schreyer, because of the outstanding importance of his account. Valentyn, although a 'caller', is not included in view of the fact that the Van Riebeeck Society intends to publish in 1971 his Dutch text with my translation into English, and my English notes translated into Afrikaans.

A considerable amount of this material, usually in a somewhat more condensed form, appeared in the pages of the *Quarterly Bulletin of the South African Library* and in *Africana Notes and News*; and I am grateful for the hospitality of those publications.

It would be impossible to thank even a fraction of those whom I pestered with my ignorant questions during the six years that this book has been in preparation; but I must at least mention with gratitude the Directors and Staffs of British Museum and India Office Libraries in London, the Colonial Archives at The Hague, the University Library at Leiden, the Cape Archives (and especially Dr. A.J. Boeseken there), the Kirstenbosch Botanical Gardens, the South African Museum, the South African Library, the Johannesburg Public Library, and especially the Durban Public Library where most of the work was done. Acknowledgements for photographs, etc., will be found on page xv, and a few special acknowledgements are included in the introductory notes to the items.

List of illustrations

	Table Bay, Cape of Good Hope	*Frontispiece*
1	Clothing and weapons of Hottentots (Dapper)	6/7
2	Johan Nieuhof (from item 2)	12
3	The stern of an English warship, 1660	18
4	The V.O.C. ship *Mercurius*	24/5
5	Etienne de Flacourt	31
6	The fleet of 1653	36/7
7	Hottentots at the Cape (from item 5)	45
8	Table Bay (from item 7)	50/1
9	Cap: de Bona Esperanza (from item 9)	54
10	Title page of item 9	57
11	Joh. Jacob Saar (from item 10)	59
12	*De Paerrel*	61
13	The 'Lion' Mountain (from item 10)	63
14	Title page of item 10	66
15	Jean-Baptiste Tavernier (from item 11)	69
16	Attack by a lion (from item 11)	70
17	Plan of the settlement, about 1665	80/1
18	Plan of the outworks on the N side of the Fort, about 1665	88/9
19	Lions and flowers (Dapper)	92
20	Map of Saldanha Bay	104/5

21	Table Bay and Table Mountain (Dapper)	120/1
22	Hottentots (Dapper)	140
23	Title page of item 24	145
23a	Specimen page from Bolling (item 24)	151
24	Map of the Cape and environs (from item 25)	152/3
25	A flute	169
26	A savage at the Cape (from item 35)	181
27	Abraham van Riebeeck as Governor General	186
28	The Fort, the garden and neighbouring buildings, 1679	200/1

Typographic Conventions

The reader's attention is directed to certain conventions that have been consistently maintained throughout this book, intended to facilitate the understanding of the many categories of text.

The extracts in small print (double column) following the yearly headlines and between items are translated from the manuscript Diaries (Dagregisters, 'DR'), occasionally supplemented by translations of the Resolutions of the Council of Policy (the Governing body at the Cape), and of Letters between this, the Council of the Indies in Batavia, and the 'Lords XVII' in Holland, the Directors of the Dutch East-India Company; from memoirs of departing Governors for their successors and Instructions of visiting Commissioners; almost all these documents being in the Cape Archives. The extracts are not intended to give a history of the Cape, but should be read as a background to the accounts printed, and therefore as some indication of their reliability: for this purpose the entry 'DR' in square brackets is to be read as 'Confirmed by the Diary entry for this date'; but 'DR 10/3' as 'But the Diary has this for March 10' (of the current year unless otherwise stated).

With very few exceptions, my own introductions to the quoted extracts and explanatory notes are set in italics; and the quoted extracts are in roman (upright) type.

R.R-H.

The Index

Apart from its normal function, the Index contains: identifications of places and of fauna and flora as far as is possible from the vague descriptions given by the authors; the fuller titles of books referred to by authors' names; and notes on those subjects marked with an asterisk (*) throughout the text.

The Illustrations

These have been taken, mainly, from contemporary books, reproduced from photographic copies. In many cases a detail of the original has been selected as illustration. Most subjects have been retouched, in varying degree, for reasons of clarity.

Cape Good Hope
Volume 1

Chapter one The Foundations 1652-1662

1	Johann Jakob Merklein	4
2	Johan Nieuhof	10
3	Etienne de Flacourt	29
4	Gijsbert Heeck	32
5	Volquardt Iversen	44
6	Johan Nieuhof	48
7	Wouter Schouten	48
8	Johan Nieuhof	53
9	Albrecht Herport	54
10	Johan Jacob Saar	58
11	Jean-Baptiste Tavernier	67
12	(This number was reserved for J. von Breyer, 'Reisebeschreibung...', Leipzig 1691; but it has not been possible to see a copy of this book.)	

[NB][+]

The double-column text that follows contains extracts from the Cape Council's Diary, supplemented by other documents in the Archives. The texts of the authors are in large, Roman type, my comments and notes are either italicised or in square brackets. [DR] in the text means: *Confirmed by the Diary entry for this date*; whereas [DR 10/3] means: *But the Diary has this for March 10*. An asterisk * following a word means: *Refer to the index for further information*, where also will be found identifications of places, people, flora, fauna, the titles of books cited by authors' names, and notes on points marked with asterisks in the text.

\+ '[red. dbnl] zie verantwoording'

[1652]

Commonwealth in England. Louis XIV of France for the whole fifty years. Dutch war with Portugal continues. June 30 England declares war on Holland.

Background - from official documents in the archives

9/4 ... Commander VAN RIEBEECK went ashore early in the morning, where today he marked out the Fort* completely ...

24/4 ... We went ashore with all our baggage and family to stay there in a wooden hut ...

27/4 ... suitable for cultivation, if only there were enough men for it ... [Chinese or Malays] or even also Hollanders ... who could be allowed on certain terms to work some plots of land ...

15/5 ... This afternoon we gave the Fort the name of *Goede Hoope*, by orders of our Lords and Masters ....

26/6 ... we had a cast made with the net, which was so filled that the purse tore entirely away, and yet fully 10 thousand fish were taken....

22-24/8 ... planted some medlar and quince pips ... when it begins to be warmer we intend to plant some lemon- and apple-pips which we brought from the Fatherland....

26/9 ... The men begin to grumble at the continual toilsome work ... also at the food....

2/10 ... resolved to put the oil-burners on this side of the Salt River behind a high sand-dune just within the mouth of the said river ... on this same sand-dune a small redoubt [Duynhoop] ... is to be built of sods....

12/10 ... all who can use a spade set to dig in order to raise the walls [of the Fort] somewhat higher (being as yet only 7 feet high)....

2/11 ... we have today reduced the bread ration by ½ pound....

11/11 ... the food is getting so scarce that in future it will be impossible to give the men what they need, much less their fill....

14/11 ... we hope to have a reasonable quantity of [seal*] skins ... by the time the return-fleet arrives, and to send them to the Fatherland ... they would be worth a great deal of money ...

[1653]

Wars with Commonwealth in England and with Portugal continue. Background

13/1 ... Today started to thresh ... the very first wheat grown here....

17/1 ... the whole bay ... so mightily full of whales,* that it was a wonder.... It would therefore not be amiss for their catching to be considered....

18/1 ... arrived in the roads ... the galliot* *Swarte Vos* ... sailed from Texel September 4 ... with the information that the Netherlands were at war with England ... all men to work on the Fort, and all other matters to be left undone until this is fully defensible....

2/2 ... cut the first white cabbages ... as tender and tasty as any ... in the Fatherland....
11/2 ... the bread will not last more than another 14 days....
12/2 ... provisions for not more than 14 days at the utmost....
1/3 ... today the last ration of bread was issued to the men....

2/3 ... the ships *Hoff van Zeelant* ... and *Walvis* came to the roads. About noon ... the *Parel*, *Princes Royael* and *Mallacca* also reached the entrance of the bay....

4/3 ... the *Malacca* lost her fore-topmast....

6/3 ... *Parel* ... and *Malacca* also reached the roads....

8/3 ... resolved that ... there should be landed from each ship ½ last* of rice, one keg of meat and some bread....

26/3 ... about midnight the yacht* *Haes* arrived in the roads with latest news of the war....

10/4 ... The ships *Malacca*, *P. Royael* and *Walvis* took on 4,105 Cape sealskins for the Chamber* of Amsterdam....

12/4 ... Towards evening the yacht *Winthondt* arrived outside the bay from the Fatherland... continuation of the English war....

14/4 ... The said yacht *Windhondt* arrived safely in the roads....

1 Johann Jakob Merklein

Merklein is specially interesting as giving the only '*outside*' *account of the new settlement at the Cape in its earliest days*, *and he can claim to be the first writer to describe it. The first edition of his* Reise nach Java ... *appeared in Nürnberg in 1663; the second*, *enlarged*, *also there in 1672*, *reprinted at The Hague in 1933. This translation is from the 1672 edition*.

Like many of the early writers, *Merklein served the Dutch East-India Company as a Ship's Surgeon*, *sailing in 1644 in the flute** Salm *as 'Unterbarbirer' the lowest grade in the medical service*, *contrary winds preventing his ship from touching at the Cape on the outward passage. He was in the Indies until 1652*, *mostly at Batavia*, *but with journeys to India*, *Persia*, *Siam*, *Japan and Ceylon. On December 24*, *1652*, *he sailed from Batavia in* Princes Roijaal

... with orders to await the other ships of the return-fleet at the Cap bonae Spei, and sail with them to Holland, since there was already news from India that many Dutch ships had been seized in England, although it was not yet known whether open war [1652-4] had broken out. On the 3rd of January we passed the Prince Island and came out into the open sea, setting our course, as is customary, S.W. as far as 34 degrees of latitude, and then West to 60 degrees [of longitude*].

On the 23rd of February we sighted the outermost corner of Africa towards the South, named Cabo bona Esperança; but because the wind was contrary we could not come there, and three of our ships lost their anchors, and the 'Malacca' also her foretopmast.

On the 2nd of March we anchored at the said Cabo, in the gulf called Table Bay. There we found a Galliot*, or little racing-ship sent to meet us by the Directors of the East India Company, which brought the news that the war between Holland and England

was continuing fiercely, and that already various sea-fights had occurred, although few of them to our advantage. [*Swarte Vos*, DR 18/1] She also brought Instructions and Orders, how we were to comport ourselves during the continuation of our voyage, and what courses we were to steer; but such Instructions were not to be opened before we had passed the Equator.

The Dutch garrison at C. bonae Spei greatly rejoiced at the coming of our ship, since they had for some time endured great hunger and want, wherefrom also various had died. Since, although the land is in itself pretty fertile, and the sea around very rich in fish, as shall be told later, yet they were still unprovided with implements to cultivate the land, and were granted no time to fish in the sea, being driven very strongly and heavily by the Commander Johan Riebeek to the building of fortifications and dwellings (since attack by the natives and the coming of the English was somewhat to be feared). Also, thirdly, because to their great misfortune various ships sailing from Holland to the Indies, which were destined to touch there and provide the garrison with provisions and other necessities, could not arrive because of contrary winds, and therefore continued their voyages directly to the Indies. For these causes they were so worn out by the continual toil and the great lack of food that it was pitiful. By this our Admiral was caused to give orders, that from each ship there should be sent ashore some sacks of biscuits and rice [and meat, DR 8/3]; and now the folk were also not driven to work so hard, since by the coming of our ships they now had little danger to fear.

While we lay there to refresh ourselves and await the other ships, we went ashore daily, either to fish or to amuse ourselves otherwise. The seamen filled our casks with drinking water, which is very good there, flowing out from between the hills.

Among other things, nine of us on board set ourselves up against the Master, for amusement (or better said, from foolhardiness), that we would climb the Table Mountain, which lies not far from the shore and is exceptionally high. Although the Master let us be set ashore early in the morning, yet we took nearly all day before five of us came to the top, the other four having returned back because they could go no further. But we had been up there only a little while, and had barely lit a large fire (as we had agreed to do) and refreshed ourselves with a little of the water which the damp of the clouds had left in the hollows of the rocks, when we observed, that on the far side of the hills a thick cloud was coming towards us. Since we had thus to fear, that the same might remain lying on the Table Mountain, as had often happened previously, we were compelled to make our way down again for fear of the great damp and cold. But when dusk fell, and we still thought to reach safety and therefore considerably hastened ourselves, I had the misfortune to fall down from a steep rock and dislocate my left arm, so that it was necessary to reset the same; and since meanwhile it became fully dark we were compelled to remain there, although in great fear because of the lions and other wild beasts, of which many dwelt between the hills. Then it was fortunate for me, that I was myself a Surgeon, since otherwise my arm must have remained unset all night. After we had thus been duly paid for our foolhardiness, we came back to the ship the next day.

[1] CLOTHING AND WEAPONS OF THE HOTTENTOTS. From the French edition of Dapper.

On the 4th of April [DR 26/3] there came to us a yacht*, named *Haas*, from Holland belonging to the East India Company and sent to the Indies, to refresh herself in the Bay ...

On the 7th [DR 14/4] the Yacht *Windhund* brought us news to the Table Bay from Holland of the continuation of the war between Holland and England.

After we had awaited the rest of the fleet for more than six weeks at the Cap bonae Spei, and heard nothing of it, the season of the year demanded that we should continue our voyage, and therefore the Admiral* called together the Vice-Admiral, the Masters, Mates and other Council Members of the fleet, to debate the resumption of our journey.

After this we sailed on April the 17th with a favourable wind out of the Table Bay, or Gulf of the Table Mountain, and set our course northwest [DR].

The Caput bonae Spei, called by the Portuguese Cabo de bona Esperança, lies in 35 degrees south latitude and 56 degrees longitude*. The land is indeed pretty hilly, but nevertheless very fertile, and the air very healthy, so that all sorts of crops could well have been grown there if the natives knew how to set about it. There is sweet water enough, which rushes out between the rocks and hills, and waters the land. Inland are fine woods and much game, but by the border of the sea few trees are found, because of the terrible storms which at times blow there, for which reason this place was formerly called the Cape of Storms. Further, there are many wild animals, deer, lions, ostriches and other birds, porcupines, baboons, penguins, seals, a great quantity of tortoises; and both in the rivers and the sea around an abundance of many sorts of lovely and tasty fish.

The natives of the land are savages, not tall in stature, thin, smeared with grease and filthy. They cluck in their speech almost like turkeys, and live from their cattle, of which they have a great quantity. They dwell in huts woven of canes and small twigs, which they set up where they find good pasturage and dwell together as if in a village or hamlet. When, however, they have eaten up the pasturage of one place, they lift up their huts and take them a few miles further where they again find pasture.

Their clothing consists of a little cape of undressed skin and a small piece of sheepskin in front of their privities. Otherwise they go naked, although at times it is pretty cold, especially in June, July and August; since because this land lies so far south of the Equator they have their winter when we have summer and summer when we have winter.

They are very piggish in their eating, since, although they have much cattle, yet when the Dutch kill an ox they beg the guts, from which they do but draw the dung between their fingers and scrape it out, and so lay it on the fire; and when it is not yet half roasted they bite into it with such appetite that it is a horror to see. The fat of the same guts they smear on their naked bodies, and hold it for an ornament, from which they stink so horribly that it is not well to have to do with them.

When they are merry they leap up and down and continually sing the word Hottentot [see Hottentots*, Name] and nothing else and keep this up for long, from this they are generally called Hottentots by the Dutch.

The Gulf, called Table Bay because of the aforesaid high hill (which is quite flat on top like a table, and is therefore called Table Mountain - it can be seen very far to seaward)

lies about 12 or 15 miles* from the extreme corner of the Cap bonae Spei.

This Bay, or Gulf, is very conveniently set for those who journey from Europe to the East Indies, because of its convenience and fruitfulness, for the refreshing of their crews and the taking on of fresh water, since it lies as if half-way between the East Indies and Europe. It was first discovered by the Spanish and Portuguese; but when the Dutch and English also began to journey to the East Indies and to take their refreshment in this gulf, the Spaniards and Portuguese dared not come there any more.

In the year 1652 the Dutch threw up a redoubt there for security, and set a garrison, in part because some quarrel might arise between them and the English, also in part because the natives were not always to be found at the shore, but (as said above) set up their dwellings now here, now there. Thus, in order that the Commander of the place could buy in sheep and cattle at the convenient time so as to have them ready when the ships arrived, such a construction was indeed necessary. The said cattle they buy in very cheaply with brass wire for bracelets, tobacco and other things, so that a large ox does not cost more than a kopffstuck*. They know nothing of money, nor desire it.

The Dutch in garrison there have already made gardens* near their fort, in which they grow cabbage, turnips, pumpkins and other garden-produce, all of which grow very well and are very necessary for refreshment. But since the costs which the garrison there causes may not be in vain, they have begun to catch seals, or sea-dogs, on the little islands nearby, which dwell there in great numbers, and to render out the train-oil therefrom, to take off and dry the skins, and to load these when the ships sail for Holland, as also they gave our fleet fully several thousand [DR 10/4].

There are indeed many whales around this region, but at my time none had yet been taken, since for this special instruments are needed, and men that know how to use them. It is also hoped to introduce the trade in ivory and other wares from the mainland of Africa, the profits of which, should it be successful, would richly cover the costs of the garrison. So much then for C. bonae Spei: we now return to our journey.

St. Helena: Instructions opened, and ordered to sail northabout: Norway: news of English blockade of Dutch ports: ordered to Denmark: Copenhagen: Danish escort until the Dutch fleet met: arrived at Texel November 11, 1653.*

Background - continued

17/4/53 ... before daylight the ... return-fleet sailed, consisting of the 5 ships *Parel*, *Hof van Zeelant*, *Princes Royael*, *Malacca*, and *Walvis*....

14/5 ... 6 sheep ... to be set on Robben Island to see whether they can breed there [and repeated subsequent entries], as also we have already tried this with some dassies brought from Dassen Island....

27/5 ... lime-kiln to be made for the shells brought from Robben Island....

3/7 ... the old kraal to be prepared for a garden* ... also another piece of land ... next to the old garden....

6/8 [First use of the name 'False Bay', a casual mention as if the name was already current.]

13/9 ... lettuce ... the finest heads in the world....
16/11 ... cut the first cauliflower ... as fine and delicate as in the Fatherland....

[1654]
Peace with Commonwealth in England April 5, Treaty of Westminster. War with Portugal continues. July 10, English-Portuguese Treaty. Background - from official documents in the archives

7/2 ... Today the redoubt [Duynhoop] ... was fully completed and 2 twelve-pounders mounted thereon....

9/2 ... This evening there arrived safely from the Fatherland, praise God, the pinnace* *Calff* ... had 8 deaths and has at present fully 20 sick in bed....

12/2 ... a ship seen behind the Lion Mountain ... she had to run to the Robben Island and anchor in its lee....

15/2 ... the ship *Draek*, praise God, this afternoon came safely to anchor ... full of sick and scorbutics and almost unable to manage the sails.... [*Naerden*, *Lam* of this fleet had already arrived and sailed.]

1/3 ... We were told, that a dead whale had been washed ashore about 1½ miles* from the fort....

2/3 ... went along the shore and found it in shape and size like a noortcaper, with fairly thick blubber and full of baleen....

3/3 ... [baleen too small] We therefore left it. ... The Hottentots ... who had been watching closely, buried various pieces of blubber in the sand....

2 Johan Nieuhof
(Plate 2)

(*See also items 6*, *8*, *25*, *29*.) *Translated from his 'Gedenkweerdige Brasilianse Zee en Lant Reize ...'*, *Amsterdam 1682. This was put together from his notes*, *after his death*, *by his brother: this explains confusions such as the mention here of colonists and their farms*, *non-existent until 1657*, *and of events in 1660 and other such material properly belonging to his later visits: such entries have been marked †. Some of his lists of mere mentions of birds etc. have been omitted*.

Nieuhof was with the Dutch West India Company from 1640 to 1649, *as Merchant*. *Later he joined the V.O.C. and sailed on August 23*, *1653 from Vlie in* Kalf, *with* Lam, Vergulde Draek, Naerden. *Northabout**. *Fleet dispersed by storms. S. Antao for turtles*, *S. Vicente for fruits*, *fish. Sighted Dassen Island February 4*, *1654 but held up by wind and fog*.

February 9 ... at last [DR], after so many wanderings, we came to anchor in the Table Bay in 5 fathoms, good sandy bottom. The galliot* de Vos [*Roode Vos*] lay there.

Commandeur Rietbeek ... at once sent us a shallop* with fish, and a pilot who brought us in. Thus far we had eight dead, and fully forty sick; and in addition to these,

the scurvy had such a grip on many of our crew, that it was high time to seek for refreshing, since we could hardly work the ship any longer. I went ashore at once with the Skipper ..., and brought back to the ship a quantity of mustard-leaves, to be boiled for the refreshing of the crew.

The Fiscaal* came aboard, and forbade all trade* with the Hottentots, as also remaining on shore by night without leave of the Commandeur Rietbeek.

Orders were given for the bringing aboard of water, which is very good there, and easily to be had.

On the twelfth the Draek came in [DR], anchoring near Robben Island ... Mean-while we were busy fishing, but could catch nothing because of the strong offshore wind.

On the 14 when it was somewhat calmer we came nearer the shore. The Table Mountain now showed itself plain and clear, although until now it was always covered with clouds ... a sure sign of storms.

This same day we again went fishing, and in one draught caught as much as the shallop* could hold: of them Heer Rietbeek took as much for himself as could be carried in fourteen wheelbarrows. All these fish were harders, which are seen swimming along the shore in great shoals....

The Draek now [DR 15/2] first came into the Bay, and had 50 sick lying flat in their bunks, and 26 dead, the rest being so weak with scurvy and other sicknesses that they declared, that had it lasted another fourteen days they would have been forced to give up and let the ship drift ...

Meanwhile we caught continually enormous quantities of fish, when the weather permitted.

On the nineteenth the wind blew so strongly over the Table Mountain that we must let fall our sheet anchor*.

Until the twenty-second we were busy fetching water and fishing. The carpenters went ashore to cut firewood along the banks of the Salt River, where much scrub stands, needing only to be cut there and brought in.

On the 23rd I went with some others to get some game, over the hills as far as the Salt River, where the blacks had assembled some 300 animals; but so soon as they perceived us they went off in haste with their beasts, without awaiting us.

.....

We heard also† [actually DR 8/1/55, Nieuhof not being present] that a rhinoceros or nose-horner was fallen into a marsh, and because of its weight could not get out. Commandeur Rietbeek sent some soldiers there with muskets, but the bullets rebounded from its hard, wrinkled skin. They cut an opening in its withers, and fired into this, until at last they killed it. The horns are still preserved† in the Fort at the Cape, and from them at times healths are drunk.

On March the first the weather was fair, but many of our crew were disinclined to go ashore, because little was to be had there, and everything was very costly. A musje* of arrack costs six stivers, a musje of brandy twelve, and a watermelon as big as a small

[2] JOHAN NIEUHOFF, from item 2.

coconut five schillings, so that many could buy nothing with their scanty cash, and so got nothing but annoyance ashore, where there was indeed refreshing to be had, but too dear.

The next day we learnt that a whale was stranded in the Salt River. I went with our Skipper, and the Commandeur Rietbeek and his wife and some others, to see it, and it was indeed large. We climbed up onto it, and had the trumpeter play the tune Wilhelmus* of Nassau. The blacks took off lumps as large as they could carry, and buried them in the sand, to eat them later [DR 2/3, 3/3].

On the sixth Heer Rietbeek and some others went to the Hottentots, to see if some beasts could be bartered for red copper, tobacco-pipes and other trifles; but so soon as they perceived our people they fled inland.

On the ninth it was calm and fair weather. Many of our crew went ashore to wash their gear, since we intended to sail on the following day, and everyone must arrange accordingly. A quantity of cabbage and two sheep were brought aboard for refreshing in the coming voyage, but this was truly scanty refreshment for so many men .... Each day as long as we lay there the crew brought two sackfulls of greens, such as cabbage-leaves and white beets, which indeed were the best, and mustard-seed leaves. All this was boiled with some bacon, and served twice a day, and refreshed the crew.

The Cape of Good Hope lies on 34 degrees and 20 minutes South latitude, and appears like a peninsula or hanging island, since it is attached to the North to the mainland by a narrow stretch of land which is washed by the sea in two bays, one on each side.

There are various fine harbours there, such as the Table Bay thus called from the near-by Table Mountain: this is fully four miles* around, so that a whole fleet of ships can conveniently tack into and out from it, in all winds except that from the north-west which blows directly into the opening.

On the shore below the Fresh River the East-India Company has let build a four-cornered Castle, Fort*, or Fortress, named ‘The Good Hope’, which is strengthened with cannon and garrisoned against enemy attack. In this Castle Heer Rietbeek, the Commandeur or Chief who rules there in the name of the said Company, has his house and dwelling. Near by is a Garden* of 15 morgen*, grown with all sorts of plants [not yet so large†].

Behind the Fort of Good Hope are various farms and estates† [DR 21/2/57], neatly set out along the [Liesbeek] river, wherein cabbages and other greenstuffs flourish pretty well. These estates are inhabited by various folk come out from Holland, who are usually called Freemen*, and who, in return for the free right of cultivation, hand over to the Governor some part of their plants and fruits.

The soil at the Cape is mostly clay, so that everything will grow there, although in some places it is stony, shelly, or sandy. There are many trees all around, although only scrub-growth, good for burning. Inland very unusually large trees are to be seen. In the Garden grow olives, oranges, peaches, apricots, and other fruit-trees†. The flat fields

and valleys are overgrown with grass and sweet-smelling herbs and flowers, and rye, wheat, rice and barley could also be produced, if they were sown....

A certain little root* grows in the earth, which the Hottentots roast in Winter, and use in place of bread. Some grind these roots to meal. The taste of some is like that of earth-nuts [aert-ekelen] or chestnuts, although others taste like aniseed, and sweetish.

On a certain hill [Bosheuvel] near the Fort of Good Hope our folk have planted some thousands of vine-stocks† [DR 2/2/59], which give abundance of grapes, but a sourish wine*.

But although, by reason of the goodness of the soil, everything will grow and flourish there, yet also the storm-winds do great harm to the plants. Strong and heavy squalls come over the tops of the mountains, especially in June and July, which are usually covered with thick clouds when a storm is coming; and they blow with such force that almost everything above ground is spoilt and destroyed. Then also the seas run very high around this 'Cape of Storms', and ships are in great danger when coming in from sea.

Otherwise the weather around the Cape is very good, and always clear, not too hot nor too cold. In June and July it is Autumn and Winter there, and then water sometimes freezes to the thickness of the back of a knife. In October and December a southerly wind blows: then it is as cold there as with a North wind in Holland. At times it rains there as heavily as if it were poured out from pails, and the water flows over all the low land, to the great fruitfulness of this, since by the rain the land is renewed and made green.

The land is rich in all sorts of tame and wild four-footed beasts and birds. There are many birds there [listed]. The pinguwijns walk slowly, and can easily be overtaken on land. They can be got out of their nests only with sticks, and when they are caught there they seek to defend themselves by biting furiously. [Further list, without descriptions.] ... ostriches: the necks of some of these reach as high as a rider sitting on a horse. They are grey in colour, and run with wings spread out, as fast as a horse. They eat all sorts of greenstuffs, and at times swallow stones, copper and iron.

There are certain birds [non-existent] like geese, which lay very good eggs without yolks or yellows, of the size of goose-eggs. They are exceptionally fat, and for that reason almost uneatable, tasting more of fish than flesh.

.....

Previously there were many birds called pinguwijns, which have very hard skins, in colour black and white, and somewhat larger than a goose. They walk upright on land, and can also swim. On each foot is a leather fin which serves them in swimming, whereby they go rapidly and catch the fish as their prey, so that their flesh tastes greatly of fish-oil and therefore is repulsive to eat, unless cooked several times in fresh water and then baked in a pan with butter. They dwell on the rocks and on the land, and also in the sea, and nest and lay their eggs in a hollow in the sand.

The flamingo is a very fine bird, almost as large as a heron, with a hooked beak, too thick, or better said too wide, to be able to break anything hard. They are beautifully

coloured, red and pale red. The longer feathers are partly white and partly black, and the upper feathers which cover these are of a pleasing rosy colour.

There are oxen with thick and fat withers. They have fine long crooked horns: some also have the horns close to the body, and some have no horns. They are half a foot taller than those here.

Among other strange sea-monsters there are sea-cows [Hippopotamus], which are much larger and heavier than an ordinary European ox. They have no horns, but large ears, small eyes, thick legs, feet like an elephant with blunt toes, and a short tail. They have no hair on the body, but a smooth and sallow skin, and terrifyingly large teeth. They eat grass, and often dwell in the marshes, diving under the water where they can remain as long as they will. But they seldom show themselves, so that they are seldom even seen, let alone taken. Their flesh is like that of an ox, although stronger in taste. When salted down it becomes green, and marbled like Dutch salted beef.

There are also Iron-Pigs, with long quills, and when any beast or man comes near them they contract the skin and make these quills stiff, and can so fiercely and savagely throw them out [*sic*] that they can inflict a dangerous or even mortal wound. A lion was once found dead there† [DR 19/8/56], which had such a quill thrust into its breast: this undoubtedly had caused its death, driven in by an iron-pig because it had come too close. The skin of this lion is still† to be seen hanging in the Fort, for a memorial [see Museum*].

[Animals listed without descriptions.]

There are very many sheep, on which the natives live, and which they barter to us for red copper, tobacco and tobacco-pipes. They have no wool on the body, but coloured hair like goats, and have long legs. Their tails are long and thick, consisting of fat only: some weigh twenty pounds and more, and are a great hindrance and impediment to them in walking.

There is a certain wild beast called Jackal by the Dutch. It is in shape between a fox and a lion, and grey-haired. It yells and howls greatly by night, and is wonderfully avid for man's flesh, and at times digs up and eats the dead from more than ten feet deep in the earth. It is said to be sharp-scented, and therefore can discover the carrion for the lion.

Among others, there dwells in the wild country a beast as large as an elephant, but with two horns on the nose. Its tail is also like that of an elephant, and it has a small bunch of black hair on the neck, and straight round horns. On the skin it has short mouse-coloured hair.

At the head of the Lion Hill (which is thus called because it has somewhat the shape of a lying lion, and lies a cannon-shot* to the West of the Fort) there dwell very large baboons, which are so bold that they often chase away those inquisitive who climb this hill, with stones which they throw pretty well, as if they were half-men.

But of rapacious beasts such as lions, leopards, wolves, jackals and tigers there are now not so many where the land is cultivated, perhaps because they have become scared

of men, who at times attack them. Thus a reward* is fixed† [DR 17/6/56] by the Company for anyone who shoots a lion, tiger, or other savage animal, the skins of all such hanging in the Fort on the ceiling of the hall [see Museum*].

Sea and land tortoises in great quantity dwell on land and water. The woods have many bees, which make their honey in the hollow trunks of trees.

There are also dogs with red hair and short tails.

There is a certain sort of fish, which our folk call 'Hottentots-fish', since the Hottentots know how to catch it with a little hook: this is one of the best fish to eat, tasting like cod. But most of the fish are unknown to us.

There are many whales in the Table Bay, from which there was good hope at first of getting train-oil; but it has been found by experience † that they are too lean, and that no profit can be made from them.

A certain fish is also found ... by our people at the Cape called 'Kraek-fish' or 'Lazy-fish': not because it is lazy in moving, but because of a hidden force which it is said to have - since when it finds itself hard-pressed by fishermen, or chased by other fish, it shoots out from itself a liquid which at once makes men and beasts stand still, and as if lames their limbs, so that they are forced to abandon their fishing, as if attacked by paralysis.

The inhabitants of this land are given the name of Hottentots by our folk because of their stuttering speech [see Hottentots*. Name]. The men go almost naked, having only a raw seal- or dassie-skin, or a sheepskin, sewn together from three pieces like a cloak, and hanging around the upper body and the shoulders as far as the buttocks. The wool usually hangs outwards when it is hot, or inwards when it is cold, and it is tied fast with a thong under the chin. When travelling they wear another cloak outside this one, with the wool outwards. The shoes consist of a flat piece of rhinoceros or nose-horner skin, equally high before and behind, and bound together over the foot with two leather thongs. The head is covered by night or when it rains by a cap of the skin of a young lamb, with the wool inwards. A little flap or skinlet of a spotted tiger or jackal or bush-cat hangs before the privities, and is tied behind with two small thongs which hang down by the body. The hair is ornamented with copper plates, doits, white shells and large beads, and is shorn off here and there.

The women wear a cloak around the upper body in the same way as the men, of sheepskin with the wool inwards, but hanging somewhat lower than that of the men. In addition they cover the lower body from the buttocks down with another skin, and the pudenda with a little square skin. A cap of sheep-, dassie- or sealskin covers the head, and is tied around the head with a broad sheepskin thong. The shoes are of the same fashion and material as those of the men.

Both men and women who own much cattle smear very thickly, not only their bodies and faces but also their cloaks, making them heavy with grease; but those who have little cattle or none do not wear such cloaks. Thus these smearings are considered by them as a sign of richness in cattle, and as an adornment.

They have in both ears as ornaments great bunches of strings of beads, each string nearly a quarter-pound in weight. They adorn their necks with beads of yellow and red copper, and their arms with an ivory ring: also they have on their wrists a copper ring, so tight as almost to pinch the flesh.

When the women go abroad they usually have on the back a square leather bag, with a bunch of tassels hanging down at each end, and in it always some trifles or other. Those who have a young child carry it on their backs with this, which not a little hinders them. Around their legs [? error for 'necks'] they have as ornaments by day and night the fresh or stinking guts of beasts, plaited twice or thrice together. Also they hang dried gut-rings around their legs, partly against the pricks of the sharp thorns, partly to make a rattling when dancing and rejoicing. The men also have such guts* hanging round the neck, and in them they put their tobacco-pipes and other trifles.

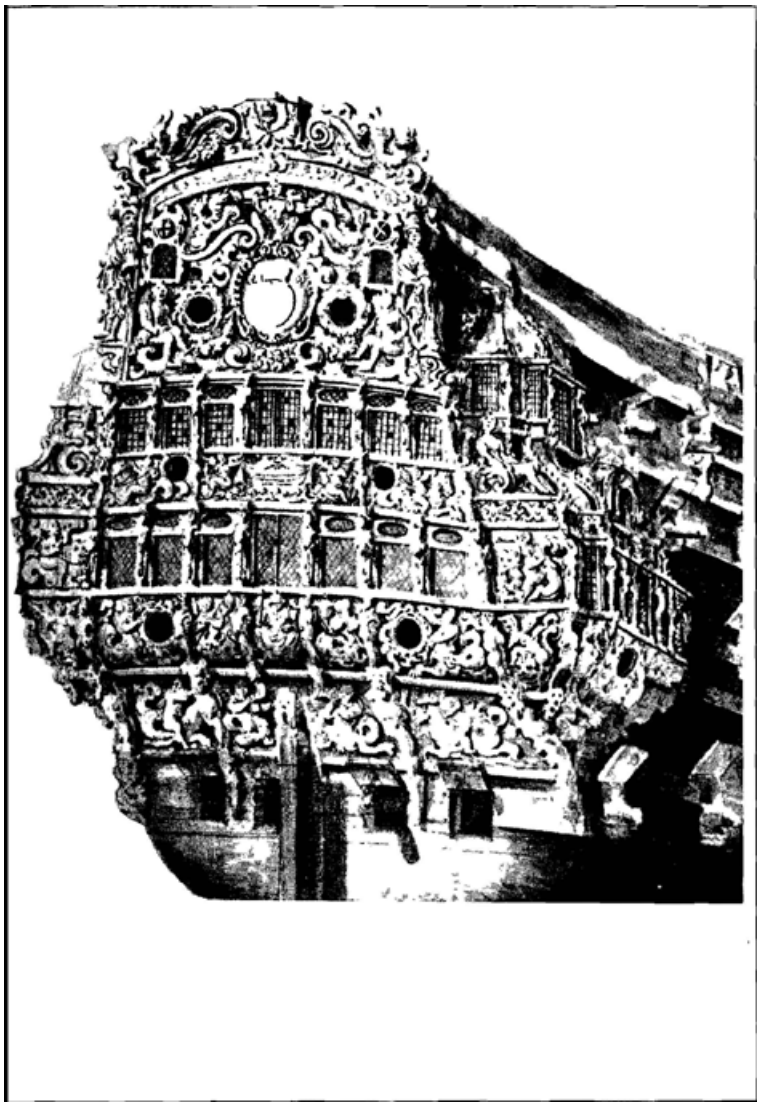
The principal weapons of the Hottentots are assegais or javelins or darts [schichten], these being sticks three, four or five feet long, mounted at the end with a broad iron, sharp in front, which they make themselves; and they well know how to throw and use these. They use also bows and arrows, but up to now have used no muskets.

When they go abroad, they usually carry an assegai in one hand, and in the other an ostrich-feather, or a stick with the tail of a wildcat tied to it, to remove from their faces dust and sand, and the flies of which the land is full.

In their feeding the Hottentots are exceptionally coarse, dirty, gluttonous and uncivilised, since they do not know how to make or prepare food like other peoples, but gobble down pieces of dead beasts and carrion, gnawing them greedily like dogs. They even gulp down raw entrails and guts, after they have shaken out the dung a little or pressed it out with their hands. Such dishes are seldom cooked among them. When dead beasts are lacking they eat dead fish which they find on the shore, as also periwinkles and abalones. They do not kill their cattle unless from sickness, old age, or other hindrances these can no longer walk; and similarly they kill no sheep, except for marriages. The flesh of seadogs or seals is eaten raw by them, or half-roasted on the fire, without washing. From the whales and other sea-monsters that are stranded they cut away the blubber and oily meat, and eat it with great relish: indeed they gather up by whole handfuls the oil which the sun has rendered down from the stranded whales, and drink it. Some cut pieces from these, and bury them under the sand, to eat them later. But their principal and daily food is a certain kind of roots*, the size of earth-nuts, dug out by the women from the rivers and elsewhere, boiled or roasted and eaten very greedily.

The principal drinks of the Hottentots are water, and milk from their beasts. They are wonderfully and madly avid for brandy and Spanish wine, although a little suffices to make them drunk. When drunk they are very noisy, with shoutings and other uproar.

The Kaffers or Strandloopers, the Hottentots near the Cape, are yellowish or brown in colour, like mulattos: this tint or colour they do not have by nature nor from their birth, but obtain it by smearing themselves with a certain fat or grease, which they make from various herbs known to them, and with it smear the face and the body until they



[3] Stern of English warship sent to bring Charles II in 1660. Elaborate Cajuit with two guns above (and the defaced Commonwealth arms), Hut, and square portholes of gunroom. Ned. Hist. Scheepvaart Museum, Amsterdam.

are black. It has been found by experience that a girl who was reared from her birth among our folk in the Castle [Eva*], and grew up there, was as white as an European woman. It is said, that if they did not smear themselves often, and from birth, they would become dropsical like the other blacks of Africa, and like the Abyssinians who have one thigh twice the size of the other [elephantiasis].

When Dutch ships arrive, these Hottentots or Strandloopers make for the galley and the cook's kettle, and smear the soot and black from this into their hair, mixed with fat, and around their head and face, so as to shine thoroughly and be brown and black, which they think a great adornment. By such smearing they look very grubby and dirty, and stink above measure. Further, they make grooves and cuts in their skin [Cicatrisation*], into which they rub fat or tallow as an ornament: thus the stink from their bodies can be perceived from a hundred paces distant.

They are usually spare and thin-boned, and ugly in posture and countenance; but they have lovely brown eyes, and alert faces, and white, strong and firm teeth so that they bite strongly. The nose is somewhat flattened but not quite flat: the lips are thick and project somewhat, especially the lower one. The forehead is tolerably wide, and somewhat wrinkled. The hair of the men is like lambswool, short and curly, but grubby and dirty from the smearing with fat: the women have somewhat thicker hair. The men pluck out the hair on the chin.

The men have fine legs, but thin calves, and are so fleet of foot that they can over-take a strong bull at full speed, and catch it and hold it back. The women especially have very small and fine feet: their belly is thin and slender, and their buttocks project. Their hands are well made, but the fingers long, and with long fingernails.

The sex organs of the men are large. Yet they have, it is said, one testicle* only, since the mother cuts away the right one so soon as a boy is born, and gives him sea-water to drink and tobacco to chew. It is said, that by this cutting off of the right testicle they are made more agile and better runners.

The women have long breasts, especially the married ones: these they have hanging loose and uncovered, and from them give suck to the child hanging on their back. The lining of their private parts seems to be loose and to hang out somewhat [see ‘Apron*’].

The Hottentots often squat on their heels.

The principal, indeed the only riches of the Hottentots consist of cattle, of which some have a great abundance: these they do not kill unless they can no longer walk, from age or sickness.

They stutter mightily in speaking, and sound like turkeys. They have no letters, nor can they read or write in their language, although some of them have learnt from our people to speak, read, and write Dutch, so that they are by no means stupid, but shrewd and ingenious enough. Otherwise they are a foolish folk, without knowledge. They have no generalship, to be able to conquer a strong place or fortress. Indeed any fireproof house would suffice to withstand them, since nothing more would be needed to keep them out than bolts on the doors. If some of them were shut in a house, they would be far

better confined therein than in a solid castle, since they do not have enough knowledge to force a door or window to make an opening for their escape. In this they are less intelligent than the unreasoning beasts, which in general use force against any place in which they find themselves [*sic:* see DR 6/5/78].

Nevertheless, although the Hottentots are an ugly and clumsy people, yet there are among them some who are shrewd and wily enough in their affairs, especially if they are trained. This is seen among others in two boys who were taken along to Batavia by our people, where in a short time they learned to speak, read and write Dutch. One was a servant of [Governor-] General Joan Maatzuiker. After some time had passed he was sent back to the Cape, to serve as interpreter between our people and the Hottentots [suggests Doman*, but all details wrong]. In my first return journey [1658] I found him among his people, and asked him if he would not prefer to be with us, where he was better off; but he replied, that he would rather live with his people. I learned later, that he had stirred up many quarrels between us and the Hottentots, whereby various were killed on both sides. Therefore the Commandeur of the Cape, when he got his hands on him banished him to Robben Island, where also he died.

Theft is punished by them with beating, and murder similarly, although not from fear of God but following old customs. They say, that there is One, whom they call Hunuma, who can give rain and drought, although they do not pray to him.

The married state is tolerably well respected by them. A man takes as many wives as he is able to maintain. An engaged virgin takes her oath of fidelity and submission in a strange manner, since at the conclusion of marriage her mother cuts off a joint from her right little finger,* whereby she is now fast bound to the man. The cut-off joint is buried, and thereupon a cow is slaughtered and the friends make merry with this and thus celebrate the wedding. So long as the girls are unmarried and virgins, they are known as such by the ornaments on their legs, since on them they have rings of plaited green reeds, which on their wedding-day they change, putting on them the dry guts of the cow killed for the marriage, which for them is as a toy: thus in dancing they know how to move their legs in time with their voice, and by this strange movement the guts pleasantly rattle in time.

Truly the Hottentots are the most savage folk in the whole earth, yet in my opinion however those seem to err who will assert that among them there is no knowledge or even any trace of religion: since, according to the unanimous opinion of all theologians, no folk in the world is so barbarous that it does not honour some Godhead, be it true or false. Since, firstly, they honour the Moon, which they greet with rare shouting and song. It is also to be believed, that they hold the Sun in no less respect, since they continually follow it with their cattle as far as possible, in that when it reaches the Tropic of Capricorn they are found to be the nearest to the Cape (except for the Caepmans [*sic:* Watermen]) and are settled on the south-east stream [? Salt River]; and then, when the sun crosses the equator and goes towards the northern Tropic, that of Cancer, they break away and follow it.

When heavy rain falls they creep into their huts and are very affrighted and fearful, from where they do not come out until this weather is ended. Then they begin to hop and trample, raise their heads to heaven and rock themselves to and fro, which, as far as one can judge, is a form of prayer and thanksgiving, since, if asked, Why they conceal themselves when it rains? they reply, because the Great Captain is angry, and comes to seek them out and chastise them with an element which is contrary to their nature. By this 'Great Captain' they understand the eternal Being. They listen very reluctantly when one speaks of God, also they punish those [among themselves] who do this, saying that such are too thoughtless, and speak of the Godhead with insufficient respect. If they are asked concerning the evil spirit they point with their fingers to the ground, and point them also at you. As regards the resurrection, they believe that when they die at the Cape they will rise up again beyond the hills; but this and other such things they may well have heard from the Portuguese or from us.

They wage wars against each other, usually for the best pastures for their cattle which all seek for and also have need of. At times in a general skirmishing or battle there are left dead fully six or seven Hottentots.

The Hottentots are of many sorts, which are differently named.

Those who live close to the fort are called by us 'Caepmans', but their own name in Hottentot is Chouriquas [description better fits the Watermen, Goringhaiconas]. They are the boldest and worst of all, since they continually have contacts with us and other Europeans. They live for the most part on roots*, fish, mussels and other shellfish which they find on the shore.

Somewhat further inland are the Hottentots whom the Caepmans call 'Tobacco-Tekemans' and our folk 'Tobacco-Thieves', because they regularly stole† [DR 12 and 13/3/57] the green tobacco which the Dutch were accustomed to plant, so that now they plant no more. But their own name in Hottentot is 'Korrochauqwa' [Gorachoqua].

Also there is a tribe called 'Chamaqua', with a click after the word [Chainouqua]. They are more powerful and richer in cattle than the Caepmans, but much less so than the Hottentots called 'Kochukwaes' [Cochoqua, 'Saldanhars'], who live still further inland, and are many thousands strong, and own uncountable numbers of cattle and sheep. They come under two chiefs, one called 'Odosy' [Oedasoa*] and the other 'Monamana' [Ngonnamoa, Gonnema*]. The former was married to the sister of the woman-interpreter in the Fort [Eva*]. Not long ago† [DR 3/11/60] he came to the Fort at the request of Commandeur Rietbeek, but first had much enquiry made as to whether the Commandeur was a sufficiently important person, since otherwise his honour would be greatly damaged, seeing that he was a great Captain. [For all this see Oedasoa*.]

Rietbeek rode with the said Odesoy to hunt horses [Quaggas], but a savage lion sprang upon Odesoy, and would have killed him had not his people leapt on it with great courage and incredible fidelity, and pierced it dead with their assegais. Nevertheless he was greatly wounded: his shoulder-blade lay open, his neck was much damaged and his face could not be seen, so that it was felt sure that he would die. Rietbeek wished to

have him at the Fort, to be healed by his surgeon, but he would not, putting greater faith in his own doctors. [All erroneous: again see Oedosoa*.]

Those Hottentot doctors seem to have some knowledge, at least of how to sew up a wound; but the scars remain as if it were cauterised. They carry their charms and medicines with them as do our quacks. The herbs they keep in closed-up tortoise-shells, but the little roots, claws, teeth and small horns of animals (since in the use of these lies their art, and they also have some knowledge of their effects) - these they carry strung together on a band which they hang around their necks as do our tooth-drawers, whereas the ordinary Hottentots have beads and other trifles hanging there.

There are also the Hottentots which our people call 'the Sardinje Folk' or 'Saldanhars' (from the Bay Sardinje or Saldanha near which they live); but in Hottentot they are called 'Krijegoekwa' [? Griqua; but the main 'Saldanhar' tribe was the Cochoqua as above].

The Hottentots say that to the north-east of the Cochoqua a very mighty tribe live in stone houses, who in civil organisation in no way differ from us. According to their report, they are as white as we. It is believed that they are the 'Moon People', a race enclosed within the Moon Mountains. But they say also that these know much concerning gold and silver and such things, and travel much to the Europeans, so that our folk believe that these may well be the Portuguese, who have made some settlements there from Mozambique. Our people have also made† [DR 6/6/57 etc.] expeditions* in that direction by land, although they gained little knowledge and attained nothing, being forced each time to turn back for lack of water.

They tell also of a race called 'Heukum' [Hamkumqua, Hequon], and of another 'Groeman' [not identified].

The Hottentots, the inhabitants of this land, are not at all inclined to obey any rule, and respect their Chief more because of his wealth than as their ruler. They have no fixed dwellings at all, but wander around ... taking wives and children with them, and all their gear. They are in no wise eager for gold or silver, except some who have daily had to do with us ... and know that they can get something from the Dutch farmers for money; but on the other hand they value copper very highly. They have no boats, and are very shy of the water, and dare go in no more than knee-deep. They are lazier than the tortoises which they hunt and eat.

Most of the trade done with them is for copper and beads, for which they barter cattle or sheep; but when the deal is completed one must give them some tobacco and pipes as a bonus, and pour them some brandy. They have learnt from the foreigners their liking for brandy and tobacco as things to be relished. In addition the inquisitive sailor also barters from them ostrich-eggs, feathers, small land-tortoises which they call 'Harego', and rhinoceros-horns.

It is strange that they have not discovered the metallic copper which lies at their feet and is daily trodden by them, since many signs of copper ores have been found.

Our people here have at various times† made expeditions inland from the Cape.

In the year sixteen hundred and sixty [1661: DR 10, 11/3] some made such an expedition*, and found two new tribes, called the Illunhwa [not in 1661 journal] and the Namakkawa [Namaqua]. They believed that they were near to the Portuguese, and thought to have heard a cannon-shot. In inland travels an unbelievable quantity of water-birds is to be seen [listed merely], but they are so shy and timorous that one cannot come within gunshot of them. The hunters* of the Governor have in various places little houses made of scrub, in which they lie in wait for the birds, which also is the only way to get them.

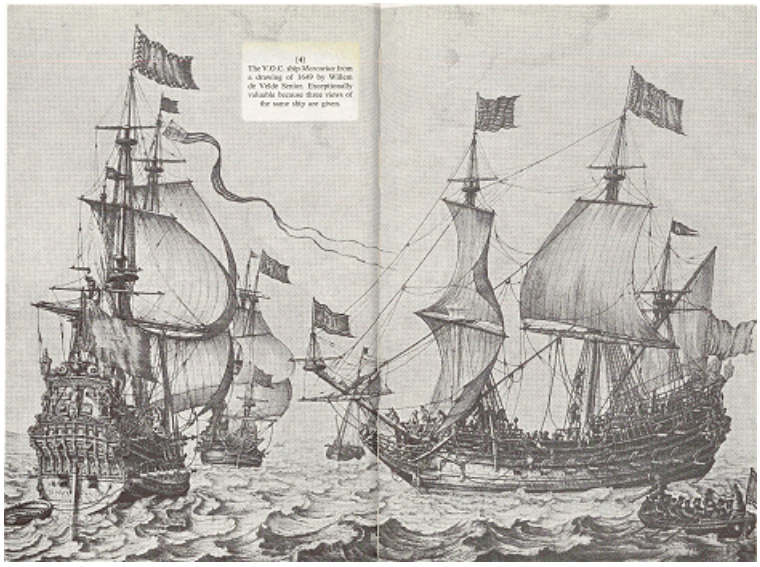
On the mountains rocky areas are found, some stones of which hold fresh water in their hollows. When walking on the mountains to discover the land, some of our people found a rock fully four fathoms long and one and a half wide, which Nature had hollowed out as if for a drinking-trough, and had cut into it a span deep on the four sides. At one end it was somewhat lower, like a vent for the superfluous water, which the men found to be sweet, and greedily drank to quench their great thirst.

Uncommonly large ostriches are seen there, with very long necks. They are exceptionally fast runners, and can overtake a horse at full gallop. For this, they raise up their wings, with some coarse feathers lying between their pinions, wherein the gentlest wind has such a hold that it drags them along with it as if with sails. Moreover, they have such terribly long legs that they can take great strides with them, and at a mere trot go off like someone who runs down a steep slope with the wind behind him. This same manner of setting the feathers to the wind is seen also in tame swans.

Before we again put out to sea from the Cape, I will describe more fully the Table Mountain and the Lion Hill, as also the Table Bay and Robben Island, which previously were mentioned in passing.

The Table Mountain is thus named because it is flat on top like a table. It is about two German miles high [*sic*], very narrow [?], and therefore difficult to climb. It is separated by a narrow cleft [Saddle] from another hill called the Devils Hill. On the seaward side it is barren, with no greenery or trees; but on the landward side on the slopes of the said hill there stand very dense and lovely woods, with straight and erect trees, useful for all sorts of timber, to be had in great quantity. Somewhat lower, at the foot of the hill, there stand many smaller and lower trees, convenient for firewood. Among others there are many wild almond trees there, but their fruits are bitter in taste and, according to the Hottentots or natives, have some poisonous quality in them, so that they do not serve for eating. Many wild pineapple trees are there, although they do not grow very high, but their fruits are hollow within.

The Table Bay lies on 34 degrees and some minutes of south latitude, about five or six miles* further north than the extreme point in the South of Africa [*sic*]. It lies in the shape of a half-moon, and on one side is defended against the rages of the open sea by the Robben Island. It is a very fine bay, except that to the South of the Robben Island towards the bay there lie some hidden rocks, called ‘The Whale’ [Walvis Rock]. The ships lie in this bay in nine to seven fathoms of water or less, yachts* and flutes* in four or five fathoms, fine sandy ground. But one must lie to two anchors*, and well secured,


[4]
The V.O.C. ship Mercurius from a drawing of 1649 by Willem de Velde Senior. Exceptionally valuable because three views of the same ship are given.

[4] The V.O.C. ship *Mercurius* from a drawing of 1649 by Willem de Velde Senior. Exceptionally valuable because three views of the same ship are given.

because of the strong winds which blow here, especially those from the South-East.

In front of the Table Bay lies an island called the Robben Island, because of the quantity of seals that dwell there. It is very low, and about two German miles* around. It is sandy, and rabbits* have been† [DR 2/4] put there, which increase very well. It is of very loose sand, and grown with green herbs which have a certain kind of yellow leaves, almost like our butter-flowers, ['boterbloemen', Ranunculus], from eating which sheep there become very fat. To the North-East of the Robben Island lies the Dassen Island, on 34 degrees and 33 minutes [*sic*], which has its name from the quantity of dassies which were found there in early days, but now are very much fewer because very many are taken there. It is a mile* around, with sandy soil, and has many seals and pinguwijns eggs. Four Freemen* live there† [DR 7/1/58], besides some slaves*, who maintain themselves by rearing pigs and hens, and by rendering down the oil from the seals, all of which they bring for sale to the Fort and the Freemen†, as also the flesh [of the seals], the usual food of the Company's slaves† [none before DR 20/3/58].

In front of the Saldanha Bay lie two or three islets, where the four said Freemen have† their hunting-ground and fishery, and catch there very many partridges, and a quantity of harders and other fish.

The principal rivers at the Cape are two, the Fresh River and the Salt River. In addition there is also a brook called the Liesbeek, since it is thickly grown with lies*. The Liesbeek has its source near a wooded hill, and flows into the Salt River. It is not more than twelve or fourteen feet wide, and in some places even less, but on the other hand it is very deep.

Also, near the Bosheuvel, or a little further, another brook has its source in a marsh or low weedy [liesigh*] area lying behind the Hout Bay [Hout Bay R.]. It flows South-East, and runs through low sand-dunes (which extend to the Cabo Falso) into the sea.

No place in the world knows of such storms as this cape or promontory of Good Hope. Ships would find conditions so bad there that it would seem impossible for them to frequent this region, were it not for the fact that Nature has looked to it, and has ornamented this 'Cape of Storms' with convenient bays to give shelter to the ships. Among these bays that of Saldanha, commonly called 'Sardinje', is by no means the worst, being a clean inlet free from all waves and dangers; and were it not for the lack of fresh water there, the Table Bay would have to yield place to it for convenience.

The winds are usually very strong there [at Table Bay], especially the South-East wind which blows from October to April (which is the South-East Monsoon*), hurling itself down in such frightful squalls through the gorge (the boundary between the Table Mountain and the Devils Hill) that, were the coast not low, and the water clean [not rocky] and flat, ships could not possibly ride at anchor, but would perforce be driven away from there.

From April to October the North-West winds blow (called the North-West Monsoon), which also can rage along, but never with such ferocity as does the South-East wind. Behind the Table Mountain, however, it comes with just such a force through

that same gorge as does the South-East wind on the other side. There is no difference at all between these two winds, except that the South-East wind is dry and the North-West wind always mixed with rain, and thus does greater harm to the trees and fruits.

When one is over against the Cape, about on 34 degrees South, certain signs appear which must be taken note of, from which it can be known whether one is near the land or not ... being still far from the land of the Cape you will meet in the wild sea with a special sort of small gulls [Cape Doves], which are found around this promontory and are an easy warning of the land. But since these are found fully two or three hundred miles* from land, they do not so exactly indicate its proximity as is the case when you see a certain sort of large gulls with particoloured wings, which experienced folks call Cape Birds with particoloured sleeves [Cape Gannet]. If it should happen that any turtle-doves are seen, blown astray from land, then there is no doubt at all. And when one is close to land, and has between 40 and 50 fathoms, white shell-sand bottom with red fragments mixed in it, and also sees little diving birds [probably immature Cape Gannet] one may take it as certain that the ship is off the reef of the Cape d'Aguillas, even if no land be visible.

On the other side, to the West of the Cape, one has, besides these large Cape Birds with their velvet sleeves, the thick trumpet-weeds called ‘trombas’ by the Portuguese, these being thick hollow stems which grow like scrub on the rocky ground of the coast and lie with some leaves above water. These are found in abundance in the Table Bay in front of the jetty* at the Fort† [DR 4/3/56], and must be avoided by the longboats* and skiffs* in order to reach the jetty, since no oars can be used in these weeds....

The Hottentots, those uncivilised folk, were so ill-natured [at this call] that they would not barter an ox or any other refreshing with us. They muddied the drinking-water that we intended to bring aboard, which we resisted, seizing some of them; but they threw stones with such force that some of us were knocked down, and because they were in far greater numbers we were compelled to take to flight. At that time I had gone ashore to shoot some game, but before I could reach them our folk were already in flight. Next day I went with them, taking several armed men, with the intention of shooting at them if they again came to hinder our work; but so soon as they saw us coming armed they took to flight inland with wives and children and all they had....

After staying there three days [*sic:* 33] we set sail out to the West on the thirteenth of March to seek the ship Draek, but could not find her [DR]. Then we turned out again to sea.... [Batavia, China.]

Background - continued

12/3/1654 ... a fairly strong S.S.E. breeze ... enabled the ships *Draek* and *Calff* to set sail....

13/3 ... Towards evening the *Draek* re-entered the bay....

14/3 ... *Draek* departed ... and was soon out of sight....

24/3 we had the first bricks made today....

2/4 ... our rabbits, of which we have 9 in a

hutch, are also to be put on the said [Robben] Island.... agriculture, sealing, and all other necessary work could be done much more cheaply by slaves ... which could be readily obtained and brought from Madagascar, in one journey with rice....

6/4 [provisions short: 'resolved ... to have penguins fetched for the daily fare']

25, 26/5 ... gardens,* now fully 4 morgen* in extent ...

31/5 ... launched the sampan built here, 32 feet long and 8 feet beam, for carrying salt, wood, cow-manure etc.... [first vessel built]

11/6 ... began for the first time to lay the bricks made here ... fine red bricks, just like Leyden bricks....

15/8 ... *Vlielandt* arrived, sailed May 19 last from Texel ... news of the peace with the republic of England, proclaimed ... a day before her departure, for which the Almighty be eternally praised.

7/10 Instructions of XVII ... we dispose and order by these that the ships of the Company sailing from these lands to the Indies are to touch at the said Cape and the fort Goede Hoope there [time spent there not to count against duration of passage for the calculation of the premium for fast passages, and ships passing not to receive any premium]

9/10 ... the fortification-works are now completed....

16/11 ... It is to be wished that we had a few more horses* than the two we have at present....

16/12 ... busy threshing our newly-reaped wheat....

28/12 ... from the wheat threshed we gained only about as much as the amount sown ... we shall not be able to produce any grain here because of the strong S.E. wind....

[1655]

Commonwealth in England. Dutch war with Portugal continues. Background - from official documents in the archives

8/1 ... a rhinoceros shot in the salterns, which ... had sunk so deep into the mud ... that it could not get out. So out of curiosity we went thither [story as in item 2, but Nieuhoff not there]

10/2 ... The natives ... were told that we were willing to trade with them in friendship; but answered, that we were living on their land ... as if we intended never to depart, and therefore they would not barter any more cattle to us, since we took the best pastures....

19/2 [*Malacca* arrived]

21/2 [*Oliphant* arrived]

22/2 [*Wapen van Hollandt* arrived]

3 Etienne de Flacourt
(Plate 5)

Translated from his 'Histoire de la Grand Isle Madagascar ...', Paris 1658. Strangman's translation is good, with valuable background material.

The French East-India Company appointed him to take charge in Madagascar, and he sailed on May 19, 1648, touching at Saldanha Bay and arriving on December 5. He was there for six years, sailing for home in Ours *on February 12, 1655.*

On the 4th of March, towards 9 o'clock in the morning, we sighted Cape Agulhas, and had passed it by midday. We coasted along until the evening, and throughout the night we had the fairest weather imaginable, with a calm sea and a gentle breeze. This cape lies in latitude 34° 30′ South.

On the 5th there was a fog, so we steered for the open sea, but towards midday it lifted and we had a sight of Table Mountain. For the rest of the day and evening we were becalmed. Then after midnight there came a light easterly wind which continued until morning, when thick fog fell. On the 6th, at about 9 o'clock in the morning, the fog cleared and we saw the Bay of the Table to the East of us. We sailed close in and perceived three Dutch ships at anchor [DR 19/2, 21/2, 22/2], and some sailingboats entering the harbour. As the wind held good, we made short tacks throughout the day and night, so as not to miss the entrance to Saldanha Bay, where we intended watering. On the 7th we entered this Bay and came to anchor, in three and a half fathoms, under the lee of the Isle aux Cormorans.

Throughout all the time of our stay at this place we saw great numbers of whales in pursuit of the fish. This made it impossible for us to catch any ourselves near the ship. Along the shore, however, in two or three feet of water, where the whales could not come, we caught fish in plenty. A great many savages came to see us, and some came aboard the ship. One was named Saldan, another called himself Barraba and another Coubaha. From them I learned of their language nearly four hundred words and expressions.

On the 15th, as I was taking a walk on the Isle à la Biche, I saw on the strand a dead hippopotamus, that is to say a sea-horse. Along the shores of the Bay we came across the resting-places of elephants or other beasts as big, and one day I myself saw, not far from the fountain, the head of an elephant, from which the tusks had been extracted. We found foot-prints of wolves, lions, tigers, deer, oxen, wild cats and other animals. There were numbers of small buck and we ate some of them. We saw, too, an animal of the size of an elephant, which had two horns on its snout just as a rhino-

ceros has one. These horns were of the same size as those of the rhinoceros one sees in the cabinets in France. At a distance of two pikes, we fired two musket-shots at it, with a ball weighing three ounces, and these balls did no more than flatten themselves against the animal's hide. The smell of the powder, to which it was unaccustomed, sent it running away. It trotted faster than a man, however nimble, can run. Its skin was covered with very short hair, grey in colour like that of a mouse, its tail and feet resembled those of the elephant, its ears were upright and round, and it had a small tuft of hair on its withers. It was a male. We came across many traces of this animal in the neighbourhood of the Bay. This creature has not been described by any author [*sic*].

On March the 26th we weighed anchor....

Saint Helena April 8. He remained in France for five years, *publishing his 'Histoire ...'*. *In 1660 the Company again appointed him Director-General*, *and he sailed from Dieppe on May 20*, *but was killed when his ship exploded off Portugal during a fight with Moorish pirates* [*Strangman*].

With his account may be read the following:

DR 8/3/55. *Roode Vos* arrived from Dassen Island ... had met a French ship the day before yesterday between the Robben and Dassen Islands, which ... came from Madagascar. [Brought also a report from Dassen Island, dated 6/3/55:] There came also ... a ship which ... came to anchor this afternoon. As far as we could see she was not a Dutch ship, nor did she show any signal. We therefore fired a gun, whereupon she immediately showed a red flag* at her stern, and sent her boat towards the shore, but ... it turned back. Towards evening she ... set sail, we think for the bay of Saldanha. What ship it was, God knows.

DR 9/7/55 ... In the [Saldanha] bay on the islet our men found ... a letter written in French [from de Puige le Masle, Captain of *Ours*, to the Captain of *Saint George*] ... 'we reached the Cape Agulhas at midday on March 3, and the next day ... we were off the Cap d'Boa Esperance ... in the evening we were 4 miles to leeward of the Table Bay, in which we saw 3 very big ships [DR 19/2, 21/2, 22/2], which fired 5 guns to show us the roadstead. Then we were becalmed and enveloped in very thick fog ... lasted until the 7th, we always lying off and on. On the morning of this day ... we saw a ship [*Roode Vos*, as above] making for us ... and having shown us her Dutch flag she fired a gun.... We shortened our mainsail, struck the topsails, and hid our flag from view. Meanwhile she came to leeward of us and enquired whence we came and whether we wished to enter the Table Bay, since she was going there. We replied that we were bound for the Saldanha Bay. Then we asked her who she was, to which she replied that she belonged to the Dutch India fleet, and that she came from the Saldanha Bay.... That day we entered the Saldanha Bay.... The next day (the 8th) we ... arrived at the anchorage.... We tarred one mast, the rigging and the ship ... resolved to depart, weather permitting, either tomorrow or on Monday....'

[5] ETIENNE DE FLACOURT

Background - continued

12/3/1655 [Mention of the desertion of 'a Madagascar slave*']

13/3 [Mention of wood from the forest for 'the sloop here on the stocks', about 52 × 15 × 6 feet]

18/3 ... the said ships arrived safely in the roads, one being the *Wapen van Amsterdam*... which had left the Vlie on October 20 last.... The other was the yacht* *Domburgh* ... sailed on November 20 from Wielingen....

31/3 ... the said yacht set sail, and we also gave those of the *Wapen van Amsterdam* their despatch.... [Delayed by wind until 2/4]

2/4 ... the yacht *Koukercken* came tacking into the roads... no sick and having had only two dead, but ... scurvy began to appear among the crew, so that at once cabbages, carrots, water-lemons and other greenstuffs were sent aboard.

3/4 ... there arrived safely in the roads the ships *Provintie*, with the Hon. Sterthemius, Councillor of the Indies ... sailed November 18 from Zelant ... had lost only 7 men on the voyage; *Phenix* ...; *Blommendael* ...; *Coningh David* and *Maeght van Enckhuysen*....

7/4 ... we went a little way inland with the Hon. Sterthemius to see the encampments of the Hottentots....

9/4 ... came to the roads ... the yacht* *Cabeljauw*, sailed February 11 from Batavia with stores for here and Mauritius, and then to go on to Ceylon....

10/4 ... the galliot* *Tulp*, which had left Saint Helena on March 10, arrived outside the bay, bringing us back two horses* [overcarried from Batavia].... We therefore still urgently need another 6 or 8 horses....

11/4 ... arrived safely in the roads the yacht *Der Goes*....

12/4 ... [arrived] *Prins Willem*, sailed from Zelant on January 1 ... having lost only 3 persons during the voyage, and exceptionally having no sick aboard....

4 Gijsbert Heeck

Translated from xerographs of his '*Journael ofte Dagelijcxsz Aenteijkeninge ...*' *in the Hague Archives*, *Kol. Aanwinsten 1903*, *XV. It was also partially transcribed in* '*Die Brandwag*' *of August 15 and September 1*, *1910*, *by Dr. Leo Fouche*, *with occasional misprints and un-indicated omissions*, *but with valuable notes which have been made use of here*. (*Incidentally*, *he committed the quite unpardonable crime of marking on the manuscript the parts which he wanted transcribed*.) *Heeck mentions in his text that he first went out East in 1633*, *and tells how*, *after his second voyage to the Indies in 1641 to 1648*, *he settled at Bunschoten*, *his birth-place*, *fully intending to abandon sea-going; but that after twice becoming a widower he changed his mind*, *and in 1654 again engaged with the V.O.C. at Middelburg for five years as Upper-Surgeon at 45 gld. per month; and boarded* Vereenigde Provintien *at Rammekens on November 16 that year*, *taking along a nine-year-old son*. *Next day Pieter Sterthemius*, *E.O. Member of the Council of the Indies*, *took charge of the fleet*, *the other ships being* Prins Wilhelm *and the yachts** Der Goes, Domburgh, *and*

Coukerken (*which however sailed independently*), *embarking with his family in* Vereenigde Provintien. *She sailed at once*, *with 430 souls on the roll* (*besides women and children*), *of whom 3 died before sailing and 40 were missing*, '*mostly sailors*'. *His list of officers is useful*, *as helping to define two ranks* (*here starred*, *see the Index*) *which are often mistranslated: it includes Chief Mate*, *two Mates*, *a Derdewaak**, *Boatswain*, *Schieman**. *The ship carried 6 metal* and 26 iron guns*, *including 4 cannon-royal* (*halve Cartouwen*). *Channel. Downs with an English pilot*, *to await a fair wind: English bumboats brought beer*, *bread*, *mutton*, *dried herrings*, *etc.*, *and live sheep. November 23 anchored off Dover Castle*, '*which is said to have been set up by the Romans in the days of Julius Caesar*, *or as others say was built by the Devil in one night*, *which seems too much of a fable*'. *Wind so strong that the sheet anchor* must be dropped*, *and the yards and topmasts lowered. December 3 off the Lizard. Rationing from December 7. January 15 to 22*, *1655 at Cape Verde for water*, *birds*, *fish: the natives described. February 2 joined for a time by* Vogel Phenicx. *Equator February 7. February 19 overtook flute** Coningh David. *Abrolhos*, '*in Portuguese "Open your eyes".*' *March 6 at 36^{o} 9' South*, '*now steering therefore for the most part to the East*, *straight for the Cabo: van goede Hope*'. *March 25:* '*we now saw daily the large gulls called Jan van Gent*'. *March 27*, '*a quantity of small Sea-Swallows*'. *March 30 met* Maagd van Enchuijsen, '*a war-yacht* of more than 150 lasten*, *manned with 133 men and armed with 28 to 30 guns*'.

Today the 2d [April 1655] in the morning, the wind still southerly, a stiff topsail breeze, sailing for the most part East, the *Maagd van Enchuijsen* a good distance aft of us. We had clear and good weather, and before midday saw the land of the *Cabo: de Bona Esperance*, finding ourselves arrived directly in front of the Table Bay, thus named for a very high hill, broad and quite flat on top, in shape like a table, and therefore very readily to be distinguished from other hills, since no more like it are to be found for a great distance around here. We fired a gun, and flew the flag aft according to sea-custom, to let the yacht know, setting our course directly for the roads, making a good speed. After midday we sighted a ship coming out of the bay, taking her course (because of the wind) along the North side of the *Robben Eijlandt*, thus named for the quantity of *Robben* or Sea-dogs which dwell on the same: it lies about 2 miles* from the mainland, being entirely dry and barren. In the first watch* [8 p.m. to midnight] it fell dead calm, so that we were compelled to anchor between the *Robben Eijlandt* and the Lion Hill, in 23 fathoms, rocky ground: this hill is thus named because it somewhat resembles a lying lion, as also because many lions dwell on it.

3rd. At dawn we again set sail, with a weak Southerly breeze, and before midday anchored [DR] in the roads of the Table Bay, firing five guns as the signal of a journey performed, which were duly replied to by the Fort '*The Hope*' on land, and at once secured our ship with 2 anchors*, and struck the yards and topmasts, since at times it can blow exceptionally hard here, especially when the aforesaid Table Mountain is covered with clouds.

We found here at anchor the galliot* *Rode Vos*, also the yacht* *Coukerken* which had sailed from Zeelant on December 10 last year and had arrived here yesterday [DR]. They reported, that they had spoken the yacht *Domburgh* (which sailed the day after us) 3 days ago near the land, she having lain here for 14 days before now continuing her journey to Batavia [DR 18/3, 31/3]. Also, that the ship which we had seen yesterday was the *Wapen van Amsterdam*, which had sailed from Veere on October 16 last year [DR 18/3, 31/3].... Shortly after us there also came to the roads [DR], firstly the yacht *Blommendal*, then the ship *Vogel Phenix*, and after midday the yacht *Maagd van Enchuijsen* and the flute* *Coning David*. In a word, some sailed well and others seemed hardly to be able to keep up, yet all arrived here on one day, which seems strange and well fits the saying 'Walk it or run it, but get there on time'.

The Hon. Cmdr. Johannes Riebeecq, Upper-Merchant* and Administrator here, came aboard to welcome the Hon. Pieter Sterthemius.... [long list of ships recently calling:] in a word, the Rendezvous is now seen to be here; but such would not be the case if the Hon. Directors had not strictly ordered the same [7/10/54], since before this everyone tried to make the fastest possible passage, for which the Hon. Lords ordered a notable sum of money, called premium-money, for whoever completed it in the fewest months. Because of their greed for this the skippers, mates and others that shared it would often refuse to touch anywhere until forced thereto by the most extreme need, so that there was a scarcity of water and food.... For this reason, all ships, for whatever Chamber* they sail, are now compelled (as aforesaid) to touch at this *Cabo: de Goede Hope*, unless this is impossible owing to severe weather or other causes, as shown by their daily log, on pain of losing the said premium. But the time that they lie here is not reckoned in their passage.

Towards evening the Hon. Cmdr. Riebeecq went ashore again, with a salute of some guns.

4th. This morning we went out shooting with the hunter* of the Fort *The Hope*, a Frenchman [Resolutions 17/7/55], going along the whole length of the Salt River, but at this time seeing few geese or other wildfowl because of the unsettled weather, with rain and a strong wind. Behind the Table Mountain we came into a village of the inhabitants, called *Hottento:* and *Hottento: Broqua* because they thus sing of themselves for a little bread [see Hottentots*, Name]: it lay near a fresh-water stream [Liesbeek], grown with much deulten [?], unknown reeds and other scrub, a convenient hidingplace for all wild beasts, as also we could trace there the still-fresh tracks of *Lions*, *Tigers*, *wolves*, *Jackals*, *Deer*, terribly large *Baboons* and other such animals. And to tell the truth, they were the poorest little dwellings that I ever saw anywhere, consisting of straw mats, made quite round on top in the fashion of bake-ovens in Holland, with a square opening through which they must creep in and out. Further, we saw no cultivation whatever around their huts, since they know nothing of sowing or reaping, nor of fishing [*sic*], nor of bird-catching although enough of both fish and birds are to be had here, nor of any means to obtain their sustenance other than the violent killing of *Deer* and other

wild beasts with *Hasegaijen* or darts* [worp-pijlen], bows and arrows, and such weapons; and eating these quite raw, bloody, dirty and unwashed, intestines and all without distinction; and eating even men, as often happened before now, and (according to the hunter) happened not long ago to some who went unarmed too far inland. But those near the Fort, who come there daily, and are given food when they bring stumps and tree-roots suitable for firewood - these do no one any harm, even if they go quite far inland alone [like] 2 comrades whom we met here.... They lay, seven of them, in a wood not far from here, to cut and saw planks and other usable timber, both for the Commander's house and a little chapel in the Fort, and also for a little yacht* which was in the stocks on the beach [DR 13/3]; but this day, being Sunday, they had gone out shooting for amusement. After we had chatted a while they went back to the said wood: from this it is to be seen, that here inland there is enough timber to be had, though the bringing of it is toilsome and difficult.

Around here we saw more than 100 cattle grazing... and a quantity of sheep with wide tails, like those of *Zourat* [Surat] and *Persia*, where some weigh little less than 20 lb., being almost entirely composed of fat. But, according to what the hunter* told us, they would sell none of them [DR 10/2], and themselves never kill any, unless so sick that they can no longer keep up with the herd, but make do with the *Milk* only; and this, according to him, was so scanty that often they must fast for 2 or 3 days before they got any. Hence it may well be seen, that from their great and intolerable hunger they are forced to eat everything they can get, raw or cooked, dirty or clean, fresh or stinking, since nothing matters to them so long as they can guzzle it down. Their belly is almost like that of the Ostriches (of which also there are a quantity here). Furthermore, they know nothing of *God* or of His Commandments, living in the wilds little better than the beasts. When the New Moon shows itself, they seem to have a certain pleasure in singing, dancing and making a noise in honour of the same; and then those who are yet unmarried (after their fashion) that night take women, one, two or more as they meet them, whether old or young, pretty or ugly (since in looks they all resemble each other, with little to choose between them), and this without any ceremony of marriage [not confirmed elsewhere]. But the women are quite shameless, exposing themselves for a little bread or other food, even if their own husbands are standing near by.... Their clothing is nothing but the skins of wild beasts and seals, the men wearing one skin only, not longer than to their waist, and the women 2, 3, or more skins, somewhat longer, and all also covering their privities with a small skin. The men are tolerably tall and well built, and exceptionally fast runners, but by nature cruel, sly and rascally: the women are quite short of stature and very ugly. The ornaments of both sexes consist of a number of rings of copper, ivory, leather and other materials, around their arms and legs: also as many chains of poor red corals [beads] as their means will allow, hanging from the holes in their earlobes: they also plait some little shells in their hair, smearing this, as also their whole body, with every sort of fat that they can get, and from this they stink exceptionally foully (as do most of the black peoples in general), and otherwise they would be yellow rather

[6] Fleet of 1653: at left *Maeght van Enkhuysen* with Vice-Admiral's flag on foremast; at right probably *Brederode*, with Admiral's flag at the main. Ned. Hist. Scheepvaart Museum, Amsterdam.

than black because of the cold climate of this land. They also cut and burn [see Cicatrisation*] many signs in their body for ornament, and go barefoot, or sometimes with skins tied under them, and indeed go almost naked however cold be the weather. In hair and all else they resemble the Caffers of *Guinea*, *Angola* and *Monzembicque*, their neighbours; but since (as aforesaid) they live far further to the southwards, they are nothing like so black of skin, and somewhat better built. In a word, it is almost impossible, and quite unbelievable by those who have never seen such people, to realize their wild, strange, and altogether beast-like manners.

Since we gained little here from shooting, we went back to the Fort *The Hope*. Meanwhile the Hon. Sterthemius also came ashore, with his wife and children, to remain there for some days, being properly welcomed and suitably greeted with some guns, both from the Fort as also from the redoubt *Sandenburgh*, lying at the mouth of the Salt River [Duynhoop].

This Fort* was first begun by the Hon. Cmdr. *Riebeecq* 3 years ago, by order of the Lords Proprietors of the East-India Company, consisting (like a field-work) of good clay sods: these are very suitable for brick-making [DR 11/6/54], with which also the Commander's house and the little chapel have been built, they being actually busy in burning an oven-full, so that in time the whole Fort can be built of bricks. It is tolerably large, with 4 bastions, well provided with cannon and all munitions of war, and closed in front by an earthen outwork, convenient for an entrance, in which are lying 2 new cannon-royal [halve Carthaunen], for which the carriages are not yet made.

The redoubt *Sandenburgh* lies about a gunshot from the Fort *The Hope*, inland towards the Salt River, manned by 10 or 12 soldiers under a Corporal, having for its defence 2 large iron guns, with the necessary muskets and other arms. Thus those actually stationed here on land are as a rule more than 125 persons besides women and small children, together with those who sail in the aforesaid galliots* [*Tulp*, *Roode Vos*]. To the West side of the Fort, along the flowing stream whence we drew water [Fresh River], there was now a fine enclosed Garden,* where a Dutch Farmer [Boom: DR 10/9] of Amsterdam was set with his wife and children, to sow and cultivate the same, living there in a little house built of reeds, looking after the milch-cows, sheep, pigs and hens, and doing other such household tasks, providing the Administrator's table with fresh butter, milk, vegetables, fruits and such like that can be grown here. Carrots [Wortelen], cabbage, beetroots or carrot-salad [Bietwortelen ofte Carotensalad], beets [Beet], onions, cress, sorrel and corn-salad [Vetticq] grow here freely, as also radishes and water-lemons*; but parsley, 'Madjeleijn' [?], sage, tarragon, artichokes, asparagus are meagre and few. Chervil will not grow here at all: the white cabbages do not grow large, and I never saw runner-beans or peas, and believe that these could not stand up to the terribly strong winds that come down over the Table Mountain. This Garden is being daily extended, and is surrounded and cut through by many channels leading from the stream, for the irrigation of the same; but around the Fort* there is only a wide, dry moat, which nevertheless could very readily be filled with water if needs be, though at

present this seems unnecessary. We now daily received aboard some sacks of greenstuff such as cabbage, carrots, red beetroot [Kroten], radishes and black radishes [Rammelasz] for refreshing, both for the Cajuit* and the crew: but cattle (as aforesaid) the inhabitants would not barter - which, because of the quantity we had seen inland, seemed pretty strange to us.

We could see no [hope of any] barter or trade with these folk: profits [must] come for the most part from the skins of the Sea-dogs or Robben, for which were used the aforesaid galliots along the coast around here, and principally on the *Dassen Eijlandt*, killing them with clubs for the sake of the skins, which were then dried on the rocks. At this time 4 men were also set on the *Robben Eijlandt*, to keep watch there. We were told (but could scarcely believe it) that the sealskins could bring in 20 thousand guilders more than the total costs of the Fort, the garrison, and other necessary expenses. [His doubts were justified: see Seals* in the Index.]

Those stationed here as soldiers and sailors do not find things too good, since they must daily do heavy work, some in the making and firing of bricks, others in the burning of lime from the large *Mother-of-Pearl* shells which lie in considerable numbers on the shore, and others again in the cutting, sawing, and preparing of wood and in bringing it from the forests, and many other such tasks. At this time there came also some Biscayan* shallops* [sloepen] with the Dutch ships, to be used for whaling here in the Bay and along the coasts, where whales are seen at times in great numbers, and there arrived also the pans and other implements for rendering train-oil as is done in *Groenlandt*. This was taken in hand here many years ago also, with some small ships, but, because of the long journey, did not bring in much more than the costs, and was therefore abandoned [it again now proved a failure].

Further, use is made here, in place of bacon and meat [DR 6/4/54] of *Penguins* or *Dodersen*, large oily birds which live here on the shores, unable to fly and killed with clubs only, but very unpleasant and foul to eat, this causing many who are unaccustomed to it to desire most heartily to leave here.

In the evening we returned aboard, having killed only a cormorant and a plover.

5th and 6th. Our crew was continually busy with getting water and seeing to the ship, the blocks and the rigging. The skiff* twice went out fishing with the seine, but each time brought little aboard. This day the Hon. Sterthemius again came aboard with his wife and children....

7th. This morning Heer Sterthemius again went ashore, taking some 50 of our soldiers as also proportionate numbers from the other ships, to inspect (with the Hon. *Riebeecq* and other senior officials) the forest from which the wood was brought, which also was done. On coming aboard they told us of having passed 3 little villages behind the Table Mountain, with a great quantity of cattle and sheep, among which [latter] were many with quite smooth hair and long legs like dogs, of which some (red in colour) were seen near the first village, from which it was supposed that the she-goats [*sic*] may at times breed from the large dogs or jackals; but this is uncertain.

[News of a large ship seen on the 4th from Robben Island.]

8th. Fairly good weather. We now had nearly all our water aboard, and had heeled the ship and cleansed her hull as far as posible, since we were excessively foul....

Towards evening a man came aboard from the Robben Island, reporting ... that a sail had again been sighted close to the shore; and a Mate was sent in the longboat*. [She was the yacht* *Cabeljauw*, from Batavia with rice, arrack, sugar etc. for the Cape, and with news from Bantam, Amboina etc., and of the return-fleet.]

9th. Early in the day-watch* [8 a.m. to noon] the said *Cabbeljauw* came to anchor near us, firing 3 guns which we at once repeated as a welcome. Our longboat went once more for the water needed for this day, and in the afternoon went as far up into the Salt River as was possible, to bring in firewood of which we were in great need.

Today, the 10th in the morning there arrived here [DR] from the island *Ste Helena* the galliot *Tulp* ... he brought with him 2 Persian horses, which has been provisionally set on the said island by the return-fleet [of the previous year], since because of the war with England it had not touched at the Cape, to be used here for hauling wood: these were thus now 8 in number [DR 10/4]. They seem somewhat small on an average, but are nevertheless useful for drawing waggons and carts, of which there is a pretty fair provision, and others are being made in the forest.

There were here at this time, besides the Hon. Cmdr. *Riebeecq*, also *Fredricq Verburgh*, Under-Merchant* and Secunde* [and others listed]. But there was a strong rumour abroad that, since most of the work of fortifications and so on was almost finished, so that so many people were now considered unnecessary here, the number would be reduced to 40 or 50 persons at the most.

Note: about a year ago [DR 28/1/54: see Mining*] a silversmith, serving on land here as a soldier, discovered a certain silver-lode in the ascent between the Table and the Lion Hill [Kloof], and made a silver spoon therefrom, which was sent, together with the ore, to the Lords Proprietors in the Fatherland: it was well recognised as genuine [*sic:* letter from them 28/12/54], but the mineral so scarce and so toilsome to dig out that it could not cover the costs, and for that reason was not further developed.

11th. We went ashore early to hear the sermon of *Domine Bushoven* of the ship *Phenix;* but since we found the Fort closed, the 10 or 12 of us resolved to climb up the Table Mountain. However on arrival at the foot most turned back, seeing no hope of doing this; but I, with the Sick-Comforter* [and three others] encouraged one another and climbed up gradually, finding on the way a man from the *Phenicx* and 4 from the *Bloemendal*, also doing their best to get to the top, although some of their companions had found the trip too toilsome and had also turned back. The further we went up, the steeper and more impassable we found the path, overgrown with many low milkwoodtrees and other thorny and hooked bushes, and between these with much long rushy grass like float-grass [lies], almost like the marram-grass on the dunes in Holland, and with other sharp and prickly scrub. We were also impeded by many small and large stones, which appeared to have been torn away from the rocks by rain and wind, of which

some were as large as full-sized longboats and skiffs: these indeed compelled us to make innumerable halts for rest. Some of us were seen to suffer also from thirst, since the terrible heat here between the rocks was unbearable, no wind being able to fan us there; and there was no water to be had for our relief except underfoot. Some for this reason licked the rocks where a little seemed to ooze out, somewhat to quench their thirst, but to no avail; but since I was still fasting I could well endure the thirst.

At last the Sick-Comforter, the Carpenter's-mate, and one from the *Blommendal's* crew halted, saying that they could climb no further. We others went on, however, and at last (almost completely out of breath) reached the top, having been on the way for about 5 hours, at a guess. Here this mountain divided again into three parts, each pretty high. We first climbed up the East side to seek for fresh water, but in vain: then on the West side where we found it abundantly, in shallow grooves and other hollows of the rocks. In these were also many irregular and snow-white little stones which seemed to grow there, in my opinion congealed by the cold and cloudy air which often lies over that part, and by the accretive nature of the stone [? 'steenagtige groeijsamheit']. We did not go to the South, since nothing was to be seen there except a quantity of unknown shrubs, and many entirely barren areas.... We sat down here beside the water to rest a little, eating a piece of dry biscuit which one of the sailors had brought up with him, and meanwhile were rejoined by the three comrades we had left behind. Being somewhat refreshed, we went a little along the edge, whence there was a very horrifying view downwards, the Fort *The Hope* looking quite small, and the Garden as if laid out in rectangular plots by lines, the sea covered with foam as if painted with the very small ships in it, all looking stiff and motionless. Indeed it is so exceedingly high that from here one can see no men in the Fort or on the open spaces, although on the shore they can be seen because of the whiteness of the sand, and seem little larger than crows. We found here a black flagstaff standing in a gully, brought up there by some enthusiasts and marked with some letters and signs, to which I added the initials of my name. Also we saw meanwhile a ship come in around the point of the Bay [Mouille Point], towed in by 2 longboats*; and as we came somewhat nearer to the *Lion Hill*, we saw another ship out at sea, as far away as we could see, from here seeming to be sailing in the clouds, most strangely. From here we could see along over the *Lions Rump*, since we were considerably higher than its *Head*. Also we perceived very few birds here because of the terrible height, and no living creature except a few lizards and a very small frog. This mountain is equally steep and inaccessible on all sides, except by the gorge [Platteklip] by which we had ascended, this lying right at the front of the mountain: at the top it is not more than 2 fathoms wide, set on both sides with very terrifying overhanging rocks, from which everywhere small and large fragments seemed to have been torn away, these lying in the path as aforesaid, in such a way that it is impossible to see the foot of the mountain even if one stands close to the edge; but on top the mountain is quite level and flat, especially in the 3 areas aforesaid, since in many places these are nothing but bare stony flats devoid of any shrub-growth. From here we could see over many forests and hills inland, and could also trace the course and run of

the Salt River, extending very widely towards the North [Riet Vlei], incomparably further than we had gone at the back of the Table Mountain. And many other strange things.

After we had all fed our inquisitive desires up here, and the sun was well on its way down, we set out again downwards along the route by which we had come up, but found the same no less toilsome and dangerous than in the ascent. And especially I myself, having drunk too much cold water up above, was now plagued exceedingly by cramps, but nevertheless must go forward since no one would wait for me now that the night was at hand. Moreover the grass ['liesagtige gras'] was so smooth under our feet that it was impossible to stand firmly, but rather we slid through the stones, sometimes for fully the height of a man, at the expense of our arms and legs, since we must chiefly rely on our hands to hold ourselves fast; and if they failed us we went on downwards in such a manner that the effects were well visible on our stockings, shoes and clothes. But what was even worse, the dark overtook us about half-way down the mountain, so that we were in danger from the wild beasts, and in the dark became separated into three groups. But later the new moon gave us so much light, that we were let into the Fort (at our request) quite late in the evening, thanking Almighty God for his protection.

Here we learnt that the yacht* *Der Goes* of Zeelant (which had sailed on January 10 last from Wielingen) had arrived [DR] at these roads....

12th. The ship seen by us from the Table Mountain arrived here, being the *Prins Willem* [DR], which had sailed about the New Year from Zeelandt....

13th. As we were now pretty well provided with firewood, the shallop* was again sent to fish, namely in the Salt River, where the crew had noticed much fish in certain pools. On their return they brought aboard more than 1200 harders, most of which they had taken from the said pools, using a small part only of the seine, since the harders here never or rarely leap over the net as is the case in the Indies and elsewhere. This fish is about a span long, or a little more or less, being rather slim than thick-bodied, with scales like a 'wooren' [?]....

Today the 14th in the morning the shallop again went out fishing, but the catch was nothing like so good as yesterday. The skiff* also brought in a good load, well worth the labour. This day we also got aboard the last of the refreshing, consisting of various sacks of cabbage, radishes, carrots, and a great number of water-lemons* and melons, which were distributed to the crew after the Cajuit* had taken its share of them; but of cattle only 2 old cows and one tasty sheep were divided among the whole fleet during all the time that we were here, which was little help for so many men.

15th. This morning was calm, and the Hon. Cmdr. *Riebeecq* came aboard to take his farewell of us. About midday there was a light breeze, though variable, but nevertheless we set sail: namely our ship as Admiral*, together with the ship *Phenicx* and the yachts* *Coukerken*, *Maagd van Enchuijsen*, *Bloemmendal* and *Coningh David*, all firing gaily in farewell, to which the Fort *The Hoop* replied to wish us Bon Voyage. The ship *Prins Willem* and the yacht *Dergoes* remained at anchor, to provide themselves with water

and then follow us as quickly as possible. The yacht *Cabbeljauw* was also to leave for her destination shortly. We first set our course along the North side of the *Robben Eijlandt*, to take advantage of what little wind there was, this being still variable until the Dogwatch* [midnight to 4 a.m.], when we got a good breeze from the S:S:E:, sailing therefore S:Wt: for the most part.

16th. In the morning ... we lost touch with the yachts *Bloemendal* and *Maagd van Enchuijsen*, supposing that they had been overtaken at night by the calm caused by the high land, and being thus unable to come out. We nevertheless set forward our journey, and by the evening the Table Mountain was already out of sight....

Batavia June 18. Heeck then served in various ships, making a voyage to Siam late in 1655, and one to Coromandel in 1656: his journal ends on July 29 that year, and no second volume has survived.

Background - continued

15/4/1655 ... towards the afternoon ... the Hon. Sterthemius set sail [with *Provintie*, *Phenix*, *Maeght van Enckhuysen*, *Coningh David*, *Blommendael*, *Koukerken*]

21/4 to 9/5: van Goens Senior at the Cape with the return-fleet: his suggestions of canal* from Table Bay to False Bay, as a defensive frontier rather than for navigation.

28/4 Letter to Holland (in reply to one dated 6/10/54 suggesting the sending out of Dutch colonists) ... [practicability] much to be doubted ... [if free families sent] should be stipulated that they reside here for at least ten years ... slaves would be necessary ... there are several among your Servants ... who would be well inclined for freedom if they could have their wives sent out to them ... this would be the best to begin with....

Resolutions 17/7. De la Guerre 'has been useful ... as Hunter,* and by his diligence has brought in much game ... in future to earn 15 gld. as Hunter'

6/9 ... resolved to send a party of 9 volunteers ... together with Herry* ... inland with copper, tobacco, pipes, beads etc.... [Left 9/9, back 5/10: apparently to the Hottentots-Holland Bergen, the second inland expedition*.]

4/9 ... locally built sloop named *Robbejacht* launched ... about 16 to 17 lasten*....

1/10 [Ten Company's milch-cows leased to] the gardener Hendrik Hendricx Boom, living outside the Coy's. fortress at the gardens....

23/11, 27/11 ... large numbers of natives had come with much livestock ... the tribe of the Black Captain [Gonnema: the Cochoquas]....

[1656]
Commonwealth in England. Dutch war with Portugal continues. February, Spain declares war on England. September 5, Anglo-French treaty of friendship.
Background

4/3 ... beams from the forest brought to be used for the proposed jetty*....

28, 29/4 ... palisades for the Company's garden*....

17/5 ... At the ronde bossjen, about 2 miles* southwards from here behind the Table Mountain, about ¼ morgen* of land was ploughed and sown with wheat, rice and oats ... to see if they would definitely suffer less there from the strong winds....

18/5 ... wife of the Company's chief gardener ... allowed to keep a tavern to provide men from the passing ships with refreshment and lodging....

17/6 ... resolved to fix the following rewards*: for catching or shooting a lion 6 reals* of eight, a tiger or wolf 4, and a leopard 3.... [First payment 23/7: amounts repeatedly modified later.]

3-5/7 ... at least 300 young lemon and apple trees [brought from Saint Helena]....

21/9 ... arrived towards evening the *Princes Royael* ... had left on May 31 ... 356 men on board ... no deaths, but some were suffering from scurvy....

30/9 ... *Princesse Royael* sent their longboat under sail to the land for refreshments, which capsized because of a violent storm, so that they also sent their second skiff* thither ... [Mistranslated in English edition of the Daghregister.]

1/10, 2/10 ... all in the boat had been saved except for three men, but the boat lost ... recovered on this side of the Robben Island ... no damage but the loss of a leeboard ...

5 Volquardt Iversen
(Plate 7)

(*See also item 16*.) *His 'De Beschryving der Reisen ...' first appeared in German with notes by Olearius in 1669, and again in 1696. It was translated into Dutch* (*bound with the 1670 edition of Saar, item 10*), *with some of the Olearius notes, and with the name given as Volkert Evertsz. No copy either of the German or Dutch editions appears to be available in South Africa: this translation was made from photostats of the Dutch edition, by the courtesy of the British Museum. The Olearius notes are omitted*.

[7] From IVERSEN, item 5. Assuming that the picture was made from Robben Island the solitary house on the shore is of interest, as probably intended for van Riebeeck's first home. The designation of the Devils Peak as *Bellows* is unique: its alternative (and more official name) was *Wind Hill*.

After I, Volkert Evertsz, born at *Husum* in *Holstein*, had worked for a time in *Amsterdam* in my trade of bookbinder, and had several times heard from those who had journeyed to the *East Indies* and were again come back home, what an excellent land this was, and what wonderful rarities of men, beasts, plants and trees they had seen there, and how also they had brought back a good fistful of money, I also became wishful to see these lands; and knowing no other means thereto than to abandon my trade (which brought me in little), I resolved to take service with the Proprietors of the East-India Company. To this end I had myself signed on at *Amsterdam* as a Cadet*.

Our journey began in April of 1655 in the ship *Princes Roijal* [in reality May 31, 1656 from Vlie by Hague codex 4389 folio 46. S. Vicente for water and wild goats; S.Antão ‘taking with us some knives, shirts, hats and shoes to barter with the inhabitants for cattle, oranges, apples, lemons and bananas’. Equator]. We were fortunate

in that we were not long delayed there, but went forward with a moderate wind. But the most amusing thing was that many fish, as large as herrings, came flying into our ship ... and served us as food. Some birds as large as our ordinary gulls [Boobies] also came and settled around the mast and on the maintop to rest: our seamen climbed up there by night and caught them in their hands. Having crossed the Equator we set our course for the *Kabo de bona Esperance*, which is the furthest corner of *Africa* [*sic*] and arrived there safely [DR September 21, 1656].

The *Dutch* had then built a Castle or Fort there and set a garrison therein; and had planted a large Garden* close by, which was full of all sorts of plants such as cabbages, turnips, carrots and radishes, which we took for our refreshment. We also took along some oxen and sheep, as also many barrels of fresh water, this being very good here. The worst and most dangerous thing here is that often heavy storms and great tempests arise, with such a terrible roar that one must be astonished thereat, and as suddenly as if the wind were shaken out of a bag so that one can scarcely guard against it. There is a tall hill here which they call the *Table Mountain* because it is quite flat and even on top, and on both sides goes steeply down, and thus looks like a table. Near this hill is another called the *Lion Hill*, because from far off it well resembles a lion lying down on its belly, with its head towards the *Table Mountain* and its tail towards the sea. When it is seen that the clouds approach over the *Table Mountain* one can be sure that a great storm is coming; and it is therefore a common saying 'The Tablecloth* is spread, we shall soon be served with ill-cooked food'. While we were there a terrible storm suddenly rose, with such a noise that one could not hear another speak although not far apart. Also thereby we had the ill fortune that our longboat*, which had gone off with some men to fetch water, capsized because the helmsman tried to come about in such a heavy storm, which caused the death by drowning of three of them. The rest were saved, although with much toil [DR 30/9]. But how the *Dutch* have settled here, and how it is with the natives there, I will tell when I come here again on my return journey.

When we had taken aboard our fresh supplies at the *Cape*, we continued our journey to *Batavia*. [DR 7/10. Arrived there early 1657, and there for four months: then Japara, Moluccas, Surat: thence 1667 to Batavia for discharge.]

Background - continued

7/10/1656 ... At midday the *Princesse Royael* set sail....

11/12 ... reaping of wheat began at the Ronde Doorn Bosjen ... not one ear found to be damaged by the wind....

[1657]
Commonwealth in England. Dutch war with Portugal continues. March 23, Teaty of Paris, war England and France against Spain. Background

21/2. Since many of the men have now learned of the further orders of our Masters to establish freemen here ... some have asked for their discharge and have chosen the plots they wish to have ... [Terms: taxes after 3 years, alienable after 3 years, may fish in rivers but not for sale, may sell produce not wanted by Company to ships but not before third day after arrival, no brandy to be brought ashore, not to keep taprooms, no trade with Hottentots, purchase and sale of beasts with the Company only]

12, 13/3 ... one of the freemen from the Stevens colony [left bank of Liesbeek] came to complain that last night ... some Hottentots had stolen fully 100 lb. of [growing] tobacco....

[16/3 to 19/4. Van Goens Senior again at Cape, canal* ordered]

6/6 [3 freemen-colonists] had, unknown to us ... gone about 15 hours inland,* mostly southwards, and there met some natives ... about 5 or 600 ... near a very lovely river ... in so lovely a flat, rich landscape that the Cape valleys cannot be compared with it ... being extraordinarily amicably received by the said natives ... who named the said region ... their Holland or Fatherland, the better to make our folk understand the richness of grazing for their animals there....

17/7 ... The Commander ... selected a very convenient place for the defence of the Company's garden [Rondebosch] and of the properties of the freemen ... to set there the chief and strongest redoubt [Koornhoop]....

20/7 ... The Commander ... having sought out a good place for a granary ... resolved to take the carpenters from the work on the jetty for the erection of this ....

[1658]
Commonwealth in England: death of Cromwell. Dutch war with Portugal continues, also Anglo-French war against Spain. Background

7/1 The freemen who intended to support themselves by fishing and by extracting train-oil etc. on the islands and in the Saldanha Bay went there in the small old sloop [‘sloep’] *Peguyn* which had been sold to them ... [To sell to Company what this needs, may sell the rest to freemen and ships]

17/1 ... The jetty is so far ready that the Commander ... for the first time walked along the beams and boarded the skiff lying at the end of it....

5/3 [*Hector*, *Orangie* arrived homeward-bound. Letter sent home querying whether anchorage* should not now be charged.]

6/3 ... The remaining ships *Parel*, *Malacca* and *Gecroonde Leeuw* safely reached the anchorage ...

6 Johan Nieuhof

(See also items 2, 8, 25, 29.) Sailed in *Paerel* from Batavia on December 22, 1657. In Table Bay March 6 to 19, 1658, but makes no mention of the call.

Background - continued

19/3/1658.. This afternoon the return-fleet set sail ... *Parel*, *Orangie*, *Malacca*, *Hector* and *Gecroonde Leeuw*....

21/3 [Return of inland expedition* which had left 27/2: to Berg River only. Entry in journal for May 19] 'a large lion sprang upon one of our men as they were sitting in a circle round a small fire ... and bit him in the right arm. The Serjeant ... shot it'

28/3 [arrived] *Amersfoort*, sailed October 14 ... from Vlie ... near the coast of Brazil took [250 slaves by DR 26/3] out of a Portuguese prize, all but 170 having died and many being sick ... most of them girls and small boys....

1/4 [DR mentions letter from XVII of October 9, 1657, ordering ships to sail homewards north-about*]

25/7 ... sighted ... the flute* *Nieuwpoort* ... left Texel ... April 16 with flute *Leerdam* (from which she became separated near the Line) with 175 men, none of whom had died but about 20 were suffering from scurvy....

7 Wouter Schouten
(Plate 8)

(*And see item 14*.) *He was baptised at Haerlem in 1638*, *and died in 1704*. '*Impelled by the combined longings for travel and for learning*' *he had himself taken on by the Dutch East-India Company as a Ship's Surgeon in March 1658 at Amsterdam. His* '*Oost-Indische-Voyagie...*' *appeared there in 1676: there were later Dutch editions*, *and at least two French translations. The following is translated from the original edition: it was much drawn on by later writers*, *at times word for word*, *Hesse* (*item 42*) *being an outstanding thief.*

*He embarked at Texel in the flute** Nieuwpoort, *sailing with* Dolphijn *and the flute* Leerdam *on April 16*, *1658* (*Hague codex 4389*, *folio 48*). *Channel. Canaries. Abrolhos in June: July still southwards*.

Having thus far won towards the South, we now hoped before long on this course to see the Cabo de Bon Esperance, this falling out so well (according to our desires) that as we neared it we found ourselves before the *Table Bay*, into which, after three days of

endeavour, we arrived [DR 25/7] safe and happy in front of the Dutch Castle of *Good Hope*, thanking the Lord GOD for His fatherly aid thus far shown us.

Being come here we found no ships from the Fatherland [*Leerdam* arrived 8/8 only, *Dolphijn* not traced], so that we alone guarded the large *Table Bay*, and from then on we had to make ready to provide ship and crew with all necessities. To this end our diligent sailors brought the sweet crystal fluid from shore, from one of the best-flowing rivers; and firewood for the journey from the African jungles of which sufficient are to be found inland. We also received on board an abundance of good refreshing, consisting of all sorts of beasts, and especially of African sheep, with which we were richly provided. We received also much lovely pot-herbs, besides cabbages, carrots, lettuce, radishes and water-lemons, as also other greenstuffs, which for the most part came from Dutch seeds sown, planted and cultivated here, to the benefit not only of the Dutch living here, but also of the ships touching, who could be thus supplied. But as regards the fruits, these were now scarce, since it was the middle of the Winter. We tried also a cast with the dragnet, and took fully 300.

I went ashore with our Clerk, to observe the state and condition of the place. We then saw with great pleasure and astonishment the pleasant, fine and lovely land of the *Cape of Good Hope*, being the southernmost point [*sic*] of *Africa*, in which we found heaven-high hills, steep rocks, terrible wastes, lovely valleys, fields and farms. There the Dutch farmers now more and more have sought to bring the land around into better conditions, by spading and digging, sowing and mowing, ploughing and planting, and already were bringing butter, cheese, milk and all sorts of fruits and vegetables for sale to the Dutch, especially around and in the Dutch Fort*. In this Castle dwelt the subjects and Servants of the *Company*, and outside it the freemen* from our Fatherland had settled themselves, each having an eye to his own benefit. The latter, I mean the freemen, build houses of lime and brick and they have well known how to get along as opportunity served in the growth of the Colony here, first begun not long ago, and also to earn a profitable living.

I and my travelling-companion the Clerk made various trips by land here, and also climbed up the *Lion-Hill*, thus called for its shape as also for the lions that are sometimes shot and taken there. Along our way, as also above on the hill, we found it set with pleasant herbs, long grass and many well-smelling flowers, but with few trees. We went towards its topmost peak, which reaches into the clouds in the misty air, but could not reach the top because of the rocky steeps, although we indeed came near to it. After this in the green valley [Kloof Nek] sloping down between the *Lion* and *Table-Hills* we took great pleasure in watching the agile leaping and clambering of the roebucks, little steenboks and such wild animals, which well knew how to make their way upwards by leaping among the steep cliffs and rocks. But our pleasure here did not last long, since in the middle of our close examination we saw a lion not far from us, which, coming into sight from behind the stones and rocks, at once hid itself again in the undergrowth and scrub. This we did not at all regret, since truly the sight scared us. So we returned to the shore,

[8] From SCHOUTEN, item 7. The details of the Lions Head and Rump are exceptionally clear, though the heights of the hills are exaggerated, and the Platteklip Gorge appears to be shown as a ridge (as in his text, page 86). The Fort is reasonably accurate, with the flag on the Reiger bastion. Note the shallops under sail.

this serving us as a warning not to go thus far inland without a gun.

But nothing brought us more novelty and amusement than looking at the entirely wild men whom we saw along the shore in whole troops. These were *Hottentots*, thus called by us and other Nations, because of their clucking speech, like the noise of turkeyhens [see Hottentots*, Name]. They, men, women and children, go entirely naked except that sometimes now in the wintertime because of the cold, they hang over their shoulders a smeary, dirty and stinking seal- or other beast-skin, which barely covers their dirty buttocks. By night they creep together in whole troops like beasts under the trees or in the open in ditches and holes. They came daily to us for tobacco. Their food and nourishment was utterly miserable, like their life and condition.

We will tell somewhat more concerning these miserable folk on our return journey, and then also briefly show the conditions of these parts of *Southern Africa*. Now we resume our voyage.

We had now covered about two thousand miles* of our journey, and had yet another distance of sixteen hundred miles remaining before we could reach our destination, and come to the Capital of the Dutch *East* (I mean *Batavia*). And therefore seeking to go onwards, and being now ready, we left [DR 1/8] the *Cape de bon Esperance*, or the land of *Good Hope*, after we had thanked the Commandeur *Rietbeeck* in command there for all his courtesies and had taken a friendly farewell of him. Being come out of the Bay we put out to sea, and set our course southwards (being a hundred and seventy souls) to reach the usual westerly trade-winds.

Batavia, *Amboina*, *Macassar*, *Ceylon*, *Coromandel*, *Malabar* (*capture of Quilon etc.*), *Malacca etc. until December 1664*.

Background - continued

1/8/1658 ... the flute *Nieuwpoort* set sail....

21/8 [Cuttings from vinestocks offered to colonists] but some excused themselves for their ignorance ... and others took one or two only to plant near their houses, none being inclined to give up land for them....

26/8 ... Commander Riebeeck had fully 1200 vinestock-cuttings planted ... on the Bosheuvel....

[1659]
Commonwealth in England. Dutch war with Portugal continues. November 7 peace between France and Spain.
Background - from official documents in the archives

2/2 ... Today, praise be to God, wine was pressed for the first time from the Cape grapes....

8/3 ... the *Princes Royael* came into the bay....

16/3 [arrived] *Arnhem*, sailed on October 22 last from the Vlie with the *Princes Royael* etc. with 347 paid men ... 11 persons died or lost ... a large number ... are lying sick of the scurvy....

20/3 ... the *Princes Royael* set sail....

21/3 [two flutes* arrived] ... *Ulisses* ... left Texel alone on December 3 last ... *Loenen* ... had left on October 22....

22/3 [arrived] ... the ship *Hector* ... had left Goeree on December 6 last ... Today also arrived the Hon. van Almonde in the *Paerl* with the flutes *Cortenhoff* and *Zuylen* [all having sailed from Vlie October 22]

8 Johan Nieuhof

(*See also items 2*, *6*, *25*, *29*.) *According to his account he sailed in* Aernhem *from Vlie on October 22*, *1650*, *with* Paerl, *flutes** Princes Roijael, Loenen, Hector; *but by Hague codex 4389 folio 49* Cortenhof *and* Zuylen *were also in this fleet*, *but not* Hector, *which sailed on December 6 from Goes*.

On the 16th of March [DR] we came safely to the Cape of Good Hope and anchored in the bay. The *Perel* with the three yachts* anchored in the same bay on the 22nd [DR differs in names and dates]. We went ashore, and made arrangements for our sick: thus far we had twelve dead, but otherwise the crew was fit for the most part [*sic:* see DR]. We brought aboard daily fresh water, firewood, and such refreshing as was to be had there, and meanwhile caught much fish. I went ashore with some of my comrades, taking a musket* [snaphaen] to shoot some game on the Table Mountain; but high up on the hill we came unexpectedly on a large lion lying asleep, and might easily have walked onto his body. I trod sweetly and softly backwards, saying to my companions 'Let sleeping dogs lie': so we went from there and let the lion sleep. After we had been at the Cape for fourteen days, and were provided with water, firewood and refreshing, we set sail again [DR 31/3].... [Java, Formosa, Malacca, India, Persia.]

Background - continued

31/3/1659 ... the ship *Aernhem* and the flutes *Ulisses* and *Loenen* set sail for Batavia....

1/4 ... The Hon. van Almonde set sail for Batavia with the *Paerel*, *Hector* and *Cortenhoff;* and the galliot* *Zuylen* left for the island of Saint Helena....

1/5 ... the free farmers and burghers ... to be formed to a company of musketeers ... with a serjeant, two corporals and a drummer....

2/8 [Frontier Hedge* decided on, 4/8 sited, 9/8 started: three watch-houses to be built]

19/8 ... work on the protective fence proceeding well ...

25/8 The framework of one of the watch-houses [Kyckuyt] was ... placed on a high dune at the seashore, to close the passage between the Salt River and the beach ...

26, 27/8 ... The masons were set to work on the second watch-house ... being named Keert de Koe, lying between the Salt River and the fresh Liesbeek River ... a good 340 roods from the watch-house Kyckuyt, the Salt River flowing between them ... The free miller Cornelissen Mostert has begun to build a ... watermill, as the horse-mill is unusable ...

[24/9, 25/9, etc. to 12/3/60 see in item 10]

30/9 ... the Commander went out early ... to mark off the site for the third of the watchtowers ... he named it Hout den Bul ...

5/10 ... sighted ... the *Malacca* ... had sailed from the Vlie on May 29 with 352 paid men, of whom 36 had died and about another 30 were sick and were brought ashore ...

[9] From item 9, *Cap: de bona Esperanza*

9 Albrecht Herport (Plates 9 & 10)

(*See also item 17*.) *His* '*Neue Ost-Indianische Reisebeschreibung*' *was published at Berne in 1669*, *and reprinted at The Hague in 1930. No complete English translation seems to exist*, *although the parts dealing with Ceylon were translated in* '*Germans in Dutch Ceylon*' (*Colombo 1953*) *with my notes and two of the plates. An especially interesting feature of the book is that these plates*, *although redrawn and signed by some other draughtsman*, *were obviously based on sketches made by Herport himself on the spot*, *and not on the imaginations of artists who had never left Europe*, *like most of those in the earliest travel-books. This is obvious if his view of Table Mountain* (*Plate 9*) *is compared with a photograph - with*, *for example*, *the frontispiece of one edition of the Cape Town guidebook published by the Cape Peninsula Publicity Association: its accuracy makes it possible to say just where Herport sat to make his sketch*, *on the Bloubergstrand*. (*The foreground is*, *of course*, *an example of such* '*imaginations*', *with Europeanised Hottentots and an armour-plated rhinoceros such as these were thought to be in early days*.)

Herport was born at Berne, and enlisted as a soldier with the Dutch East-India Company in Amsterdam, sailing on May 29, 1659 from Vlie in Malacca (*Hague codex 4389 folio 49*). *Moorish pirate driven off in the Channel. Rationing from June 10: for each daily a can* of water and the eighteenth part of a can of brandy, and weekly four lb. of biscuit. July 20 crossed the Equator* '*in great and almost intolerable heat, so that more than the half of us lay sick, and for several days on end three or four died daily.... On the Line it happened that a soldier, by name Peter Anderes, forgetfully lay by night in the moonlight, by which for about a month his mouth and eyes were twisted to the side, but after this returned as they had been*.' *Rations reduced on September 2 to half a can of water and 2½ lb. of biscuit;* '*and similarly also all the other victuals*'.

On the 21st of September we saw a Nord-Capper, this being a small kind of Whale, and also some sea-dogs, from which the Master and the Mates could see that we must not be far from the coast of Africa, as also they found from the altitude of the sun at noon. Therefore the Master ordered, that diligent watch for land be kept by day and night, and at the same time promised 6 rixdollars and 4 cans of Spanish wine to him who should first sight the same.

On the 25th in the early morning there was a glad shout from the foremast of 'Land! Land!' which caused no little joy among us all. About an hour later we could all see the land, and recognised it for the coast of Africa and for the Promontory Caput bonae Spei whither we were bound. About 3 in the afternoon we passed between [*sic*] the Roben and Taxen [Dassen] Islands, and came safely into the harbour and dropped anchor there [but DR 5/10]: that same night we must strike our yard and topmast [read 'yards and topmasts'] because of the heavy winds. And water was now issued freely, which caused so great a joy among us, that it cannot be described in words, and would appear incredible to any who had not himself experienced it, since before this many had only one desire, once again to drink his fill of water before his death, which desire however he could not fulfil until now. Next day the longboat* and the two shallops* were launched and rowed to the land, where our Master was very well received by the Commandeur at the Fort, who at once sent us 2 cows and 6 sheep, as also all sorts of green vegetables such as cabbage; and among these also radishes, which we, from our great longing and hankering for fresh food, ate with leaves and stalks, and drank the lovely fresh water as if it had been good new wine.

In this harbour there lay at anchor also another ship, named the *Erasmus*, of Rotterdam, which the year previous had sailed with the fleet from Batavia on the island of Java, but had been driven away from the fleet by a storm, and came here only after 9 months [DR 25/9: see also in item 10]. During this time they suffered great lack of food and drink, so that most of the crew died therefrom, and as a result the ship could hardly be handled. Also she was so damaged that she must be bound thrice with iron chains, so that she should not completely fall apart.

Short Description of this Promontory of Africa, called Capo de Bona Sperança.

This land is the outermost point of Africa towards the South [*sic*]. There are many high hills there, of which three are named as the chief: the first, Table Mountain, because the top looks as flat as a table; the second, Lion Hill; and the third Wind Hill or Devil's Hill. Below the Table Mountain the Dutch East-India Company has a strong fort, well garrisoned with soldiers, to keep the country here safe.

The Place is held by the Dutch only in order that the ships coming from Holland or the Indies may be able to provide themselves with fresh food and drink and other necessities, and if they have any sick on board can leave them there to be cured.

There are many freemen* there (which were sent thither from Holland with their wives and children [*sic*]) who cultivate the land with grain and all sorts of garden-fruits. The company itself does much trade there with the natives, giving tobacco, beads, copper wire, as also brass and copper Nurnberg-wares, in exchange for cows, sheep, and other things which the natives give for these.

These natives, who are an ugly race of people, are called Hottentots. They are black-skinned, their hair is like wool (in which they resemble the natives of Angola). They live like savages of little intelligence. They smear their hair with a certain cut up herb [see Hottentots, Buchu*] mixed together with lard and the fat of sheep and cows, and hang in their hair little mussels and other seashells. Their clothing is the undressed fur or hide of goats, sheep, or also of wild beasts, and around their private parts they have only a scrap of fur. The women have on their arms and legs many brass and copper rings, as also in their ears.

When the Dutch kill any sheep, cattle, etc., they (the Hottentots) take the guts between their fingers and press out the dung: then they lay the same on a fire, let it roast a little and so eat it; and what they cannot eat they wind around their arms and legs. Round their necks they wear many pieces of tortoise-shell, also red and white beads.

From the males in their youth the right testicles* are cut away, because they are by nature very hot for the female sex.

Their religion or divine service is addressed to the sun and the moon, which they honour and pray to. When the moon is full or new they come together the whole night on the seashore, and make a large fire and dance around it, with great shouting and much playing on drums and other instruments.

These folk are very swift runners, and skilled in stone-throwing and the use of Hassagayen, which they throw by hand; and are also very skilled with bows* and arrows.

In this land are many wild beasts, such as lions, which come by night below the Fort and dig up the dead from the graves around. There are also many rhinoceroses, tigers, elephants, wild horses [Zebras or Quaggas], porcupines (which dwell in the jungle and are shot by the hunters and eaten as a very tasty game: they defend themselves by shooting their spines [*sic*] at the dogs), also deer, which are as large as an ordinary horse.

The sheep which the natives have are much like our sheep, except for the tail which is very wide and long, and very fat: sheep are met with having tails of thirty pounds weight and more. As well as various sorts of apes and baboons there are also many ostriches here, which lay their eggs here and there to be incubated by the sun [*sic*].

In the port there is an abundance of good fish; also Sea-Cows, having the head and forefeet something like cows, and very good to eat. Also a sort of small whales called Nord-Capers, and another sort of fish called by the Dutch Trillfisch, which are round and blown out in shape but not very large; and if anyone touch this fish, his hand and whole arm are lamed, but soon recover of themselves....

After we had lain nine days there we were ordered aboard, and began to raise the anchor and set the sails, and on the 3rd of October [DR 22/10] sailed out to sea with a salute of 3 guns....

Then Cocos Islands, *Java*, *Formosa. 1663 at capture of Cochin and Cannanore. Ceylon until 1666*, *then Batavia for repatriation*.

Background - continued

22/10/1659 ... The *Malacca* set sail, and sailing to the East of the Robben Island soon reached the open sea ...

[1660]
May 8, Charles II of England, to 1685. Dutch war with Portugal continues.
Background - from official documents in the archives

23-25/2 ... today the boundary of the Cape settlement was measured, and found to be ... 3,673 roods ...

2/3 ... all the ships of the return-fleet ... came to the roads ...

[10] Title-page to item 9, *Newe Ost-Indiani/sche/Reizszbeschrei/bung*, ‘New Description of an East-Indian Voyage’. The spritsail and (furled) spritsail-topsail are well shown.

10 Johan Jacob Saar
(Plates 11, 13 & 14)

*His '**Funfzehen-Jährige Kriegsdienste ...**' was first published at Nürnberg in 1662, and again there in 1672; and reprinted at The Hague in 1930. This translation is from the first edition. His book is probably one of Dapper's sources, and that excellent liar Fryke (item 43) steals from it consistently.*

The special interest of the book lies in the possible reason it gives why Van Riebeeck did not receive the promotion he expected and deserved. Admittedly, it is only a rumour; but anyone who has served in the ranks of any of the armed forces knows how often such 'scuttlebutt' proves disconcertingly true.

No writer was present at the time of the Erasmus *mutiny in 1659. Herport (item 9) was there when she lay crippled in Table Bay, but sailed soon afterwards: Saar arrived with the return-fleet in charge of Sterthemius, and was there while he was investigating the case. If, as Saar alleges, this investigation produced a strong criticism of Van Riebeeck, and the threat of an adverse report on him in Holland; and if in fact Sterthemius did make such a report - and as a full Member of the Council of the Indies his opinion would carry great weight with the Lords Proprietors - then this would provide a far more cogent reason for Van Riebeeck being cold-shouldered than the vague jealousies suggested by Godée-Molsbergen in his 'De Stichter van Hollands Zuid-Africa'.*

The only contemporary source of information is the DR, from which the following extracts will serve:

September 24 [1659] ... a ship anchored at the entrance of the bay ...

25 ... The officers ... reported that she was the *Erasmus*, which had sailed from Batavia on January 16 [damaged in storm, took refuge in Comoros and Madagascar] ... She had lost 30 men from sickness and was very short of food and stores ... present total of 86 men ... [Her log transcribed.]

27. It has been decided that 12 to 15 men from her shall be sent ashore to help ... with the fetching of timber for the protective hedge*.

October 4 ... the eleven men from the yacht* *Erasmus* who have been helping [in the forest] this week ... asked to be allowed to continue ...

9. [Council decided to hold *Erasmus* to go home with the return-fleet expected in February.]

10, 11 ... The men from the yacht *Erasmus* were relieved from their work in the forest and sent back on board ...

December 14. This afternoon the Chief Surgeon, Meester Wiljam Robbertson of

[11] JOH. JACOB SAAR, aged 36 (From item 10).

Dondeij, discovered a most treasonable plot: three of the ringleaders have been taken into custody ...

15. Five more were arrested, all being Servants of the Company ... and last night also the servant* of a freeman. At an examination held before the Council it was revealed that four English, four Scottish and three Dutch Servants of the Company were involved, as also a black convict and two servants of freemen. Together with fifteen slaves they had plotted first to kill the men from the *Erasmus* at work in the forest, then all at the Company's Granary, and finally ... everyone in the fort ... Then they were to go out to the yacht *Erasmus* ... seize her and sail away. [In Cape Archives codex 326, p. 138 other witnesses said that the intention was only to desert to Angola.] Most of the morning and part of the afternoon ... were spent examining the culprits and their accomplices, but apart from the one whom we got to confess yesterday, one of the ringleaders, we have not been able to force any more of them to confess. [The list given is: Peter Barber, Marcus Tomelson, Henry Wright, Stephen Nobel, English; William Morris, James Born, Alexander Crafford, Patrick Job, Scots; Hendrik Hendrikssen, Jacob Dirckssen, Cornelis Willemsen, Dutch; convict Pascual Rodrigos; freemen's servants Class Wiskebroek, Herman Schelhoven. Cape Archives codices 326, pp. 137-139, 2952 p. 25.]

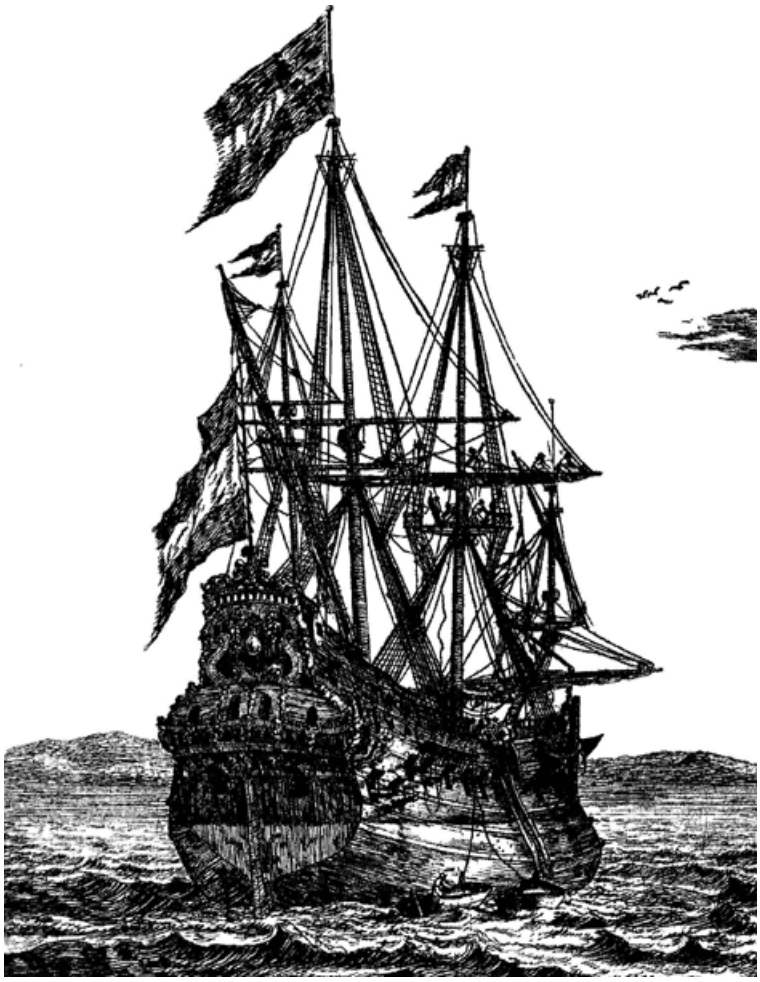
17 ... three more have made voluntary confessions ...

18. Two more made a clean breast of everything, so that now five of the principals have openly confessed all.... Two others of the chief plotters are still at large: Hendrik Hendrikse of Cloppenburgh and Jacob Born of Glasco.... Nevertheless we have succeeded in arresting the following, who have all confessed: Peter Barber of Hamstede, soldier; Jacob Dirxssen of Antwerp, ditto; Patrick 't Jok of Glasco, ditto; Marcus Tommelson of Ogel, ditto; Pascual Rodrigo of Teneriffa, convict ... there are five others under arrest, and another three who are still allowed to go free ... they had known about it for three or four weeks, but none was found to have taken any part....

19.... During the night the two fugitive shepherds were captured ... there are now no more of the plotters at large....

20.... the new prisoners ... one of them, Jacob Born, made a full confession.... The other one, Hendrik Cloppenburgh ... still remained obstinate ... the chief ringleader....

23.... the full confession of the shepherd Hendrik Cloppenburgh having been received ... [Torture was used. List as above repeated, adding] Claes Wiskebroek of Lingerick.... The Council ... decided unanimously to postpone a decision ... until the arrival of the return-fleet, and further to treat leniently those who had little guilt ... and to exchange them, as also all the English and Scots found not guilty, with men from the *Gecroonde Leeuw* now lying in the roads, and send them to Batavia, so as to cleanse this place of weeds as far as possible. [There is a startling mistranslation here in the English version of the DR: 'All the Englishmen and Scots ... were found not guilty', which is of course ridiculous in view of the lists given above.] ... reward of fifty reals-of eight* [to the Surgeon].



[12] PAEREL: see items 8, 10. She is flying the mainmast-flag as Admiral. The elaborate square stern is well shown, with the 'Pearl' of her name.

24. [Four punished for not having revealed the plot, three suspects freed] but ... they shall be sent to Batavia because Englishmen.

March 1 [1660] .. all nine ships of the return-fleet came to anchor in good order in the mouth of the bay.

12. [8 prisoners again listed.] Decided by the Council* under Sterthemius not to cause further delay [to the return-fleet] ... but to refer the further proceedings to Their Honours at Batavia ... and to divide the offenders between the next two ships [for there].

20.... the return-fleet ... set sail, and the yacht* *Erasmus* went with it ...

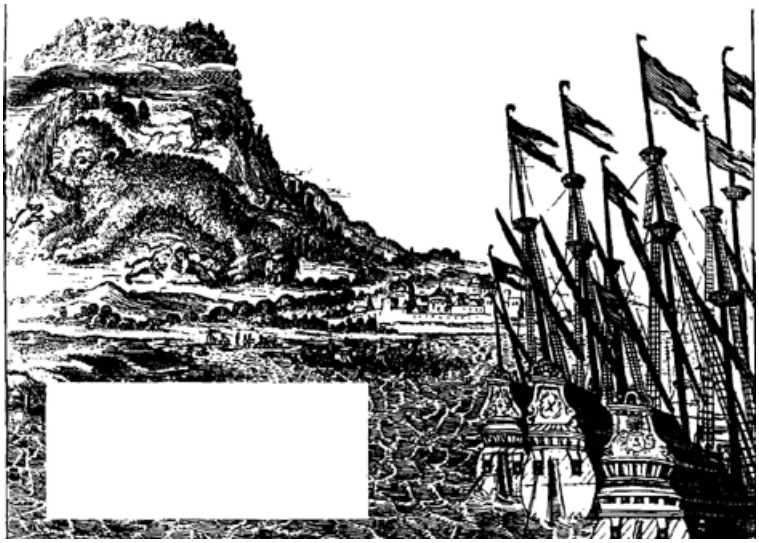
April 8. [Mention of two sent in *Amersfoort*, two in *Walvis*. But by Hague codex 3972, fol. 513-514, Barber, Born, 't Joucq and Tommelson went in *Wapen van Amsterdam*, Rodrigo and Dircksz. in *Amersfoort*, Hendricksz. and Wiskebroecq in *Walvis*].

That practically ends the story, since Mr. M.P.H. Roessingh of the Hague Archives (to whom I am much indebted for help during years of research) informs me that no record of the sentences passed is to be found there: in fact, all that has come to light is a letter from Batavia to the Lords XVII (Hague codex 1122, OBB 1661, folio 100) dated December 16, 1660 advising that a trial will be held in due course, and one from them to the Cape (ditto, folio 134) dated the previous day, promising that the prisoners 'will receive full payment for their deeds'.

Saar was born in 1626, and enlisted as a Cadet of the Dutch East-India Company in 1644. Sailed January 8, 1645* (*Hague codex 4389*) *from Middelburg, in ship* Middelburg, *with* Hoff van Seeland. *Prevented by contrary winds from touching at the Cape. Batavia and Indonesia. Ceylon* (*taking of Colombo*). *Surat. Persia. Goa. Sailed from Batavia December 13 in* (*his spellings*) Princ Wilhelm von Seeland, *with* Wappen von Holland, Perle, Princesse Royale, Dordrecht, Schlott von Honningen, West-Friessland, See Pferd, Arnheim.

Now, when about 6 weeks had passed, and we had reached the latitude of Mauritius, we were very glad, since in general there are great storms there, and when one has passed there the greatest danger is over. So we sailed more happily on to the Cape de bonn' Esperance; but now were given less water, because each ship had to carry two horses* from Batavia for the Cape, and since these need much water each of us was docked of 2 Mutsies* from the 10 which we had before, that is so much as a Can* or Measure. We often cursed the horses for this, and were glad when one of them died, though we would well have prayed for the death of the other also, since it took away each day two Mutsies of our water.

On March 1st [1660, DR] we arrived with God's help at the Cape, with three sick in our ship but none dead, and at once had the horses hoisted ashore. The next day all our water-casks were brought on deck, and well examined by the Master-Cooper and his mate, and daily filled again with fresh water. Each day we received beef and mutton, and other refreshing. Also on all ships it was forbidden (as also by notices put up) to trade* with the heathen except for ostrich-eggs and fish; but nothing of large animals such as



[13] From SAAR, item 10. The ornamental square sterns of the ships are well shown: the Fort and town are are as imaginative as is the Lion Hill.

oxen, cows, or sheep, nor any rhinoceros-horns, on pain of the loss of all our pay.

These heathen are called Hottentots, and are barely human, short in stature, very scrawny and thin. Their speech is disagreeable, as if they were clucking like turkeys. They go naked but for a cloak of raw sheepskin around their body, and a scrap of fur to hide their private parts. When one lands they come running, and cry 'Broqua' in their language, that is to say 'Bread', and if they receive it they tread it underfoot [*sic*, in no other writer], and lift up their sheepskin to show how they are made, and how in childhood their left testicles* are removed. Their ornament is to smear their naked body with all sorts of fat, so that they stink very foully; and they use the guts of sheep to wind around their legs. When they kill a sheep they take a part of the gut, clean it but little from the dung within (since they merely draw it through their fingers), and then lay it on the fire; and after it has lain there for a short time they take it up again and eat it, which is a real horror to see.

It is not known what their religion is; but early, when it is nearly day, they come together, and hold each other's hands, and dance, and shriek in their tongue towards heaven: from which it may be assumed that they must have some knowledge of God, as also they themselves say if asked what is their belief, that they believe in Him who has made everything, the heavens, land, sea, and all that is on the earth.

Further, they are mighty runners. For this reason those horses* were brought from Batavia to form a Company of cavalry from among our soldiers stationed at the Cape, since they, the heathen, are in no wise to be trusted, knowing well how to do all sorts of trickery. In 1650 [*sic*] the Dutch first built a Fort there, at which the English ships which

touch there must pay for their anchorage*, as a tax.

There are all sorts of beasts on this island* [*sic*], especially lions, of which two skins [see Museum*] hang in the Governor's House: one was shot by the natives with arrows, the other was strangled in the jungle by a wild pig which defended itself against it. Such pigs are called ‘Iron Pigs’, and have on their backs exceedingly hard quills, black and white and a foot long, with which one can bore a hole in a cloth, or wood, or other gear, so that the tailors use such instead of bodkins. When now the said lion neared the pig, this defended itself against it, and stabbed it in the left breast near the heart, so that it bled to death, and both were found dead together. There are also many elephants here, and many ostriches, of which I have often eaten the eggs: also I once tried how many hen's eggs would go into such an ostrich-egg, and found that it would hold thirty-six. In Holland the barbers hang them in their shops, and are accustomed to keep their cotton-wool in them. I had two such, and in Batavia paid half a rix-dollar to have one of them cut open; but once when I had set it on my sea-chest a monkey which I also had, and had taught many tricks, and for which I was offered six rixdollars in the Indies, but I intended to take it home: this, I say jumped up on the chest and threw the egg down, so that it broke in pieces, at which I was so angered that I gave it a good thrashing. But it fell sick, and died soon after, so that I suffered a double loss.

While we were at the Capo de bonn' Esperance, we met the ship Erasmus, which had come from the harbour called Sardin Bai, bringing much sheep for our fleet, which Batavia had ordered the Commandeur to get for us, and we then went all out for the mutton which was only too welcome. She gave us surprising news of the dangers she had endured, not only from great storms, of which I will tell more fully below, but from her own people, and it happened thus:

The Commandeur here had treated the poor soldiers of the garrison set there as harshly and as miserably as if they had been less than serfs and slaves. By day they had to cut wood in the forests, and by night continually stand their watches. Some became so desperate at this severe oppression that they decided to make an attack on the crew of the Erasmus if they again came ashore and were busy cutting wood for their damaged ship, and were taking their meal. After this, they were to hasten to the Fortress and there repay the Commandeur according to his deserts; and then similarly kill the other Dutch freemen, except for the women whom they would take to themselves. When this was done, they would fire a gun and half-mast the flags on land, from which the rest on the Erasmus would understand, according to ship's custom, that they also should land. And then, if this succeeded, they would themselves go aboard, and all together make for Angola in the Kingdom of the Congo, the neighbouring country, and there sell the ship to the Portuguese or go over with her to Portugal. But most of those who made these plans were English, Scots and Irish who had taken service, and who now would thus act as they had done against their fellow-countrymen at home. God however let it come to light through a Surgeon, who revealed the plot to the Commandeur: he at once took horse and warned those of the Erasmus who were already in the woods, and also quickly

advised the freemen to hold themselves ready. Since the affair had thus come to light before they could take any action, their chief, and also the principal ringleaders, were quickly arrested and held prisoners until our fleet should arrive. When now our Admiral* and Vice-Admiral went ashore, the prisoners at once had a petition delivered to him, in which they indeed confessed their evil intent, but also alleged that the extreme severity and pitilessness of their commander had driven them to it. They had engaged to serve Holland as soldiers (as they had truly done on all occasions up to now) but not as slaves, nor to be treated worse than slaves. They therefore hoped, That the Admiral would regard the matter differently. Although now the Commandeur considered that justice should at once be done on these soldiers, our Admoral took a wider and more intelligent view of the matter, and promised them that they would be sent to Batavia with the next fleet, with his own recommendation to the Governor-General there for merciful treatment. He reproached the Commandeur for his great lack of prudence, and told him, That if with God's help he reached the Fatherland, he would let the Company judge whether he was fit for further command here. He also left, before we sailed, a letter to the Governor-General in Batavia, whither the prisoners were to be sent as soon as possible.

[Here follows an episode during the siege of Colombo.]

Since now, as I said, the folk of the Erasmus much complained of what a bad passage they had had from Batavia, with the deaths of thirty-six men, and also that they were badly stocked with provisions, and further that their ship was mighty leaky and they could not be sure of reaching the Fatherland, the more so that they had only one carpenter, all the others having died: because of all this our Admiral called all the Masters and Merchants ashore [Broad Council*], and ordered that each of our nine ships should give her four men, and something of timber, provisions and carpenters, so that everything possible should be done in order to take the ship along with us, since she should have reached Holland the previous year.

On March 12th all ships had to take on their water, and each day half the crew went ashore for two or three days, especially to buy fish from the freemen* who had come there from Holland with their wives and children [*sic*]. The East-India Company has thus provided for the cultivation of the land, and its sowing, and there are some thirty who have their households there half a mile* from the Fort; but they dare not go further, because of the heathen. But the Company rules that they must spend ten years in the Indies before they may go home again, and the same must also be done by any other who wishes to take his wife along; but a bachelor need sign for five years only if a soldier, the sailors for three years, but not counting the voyages out and home.

On March 15th it was ordered that all who were ashore and wished to go home were to embark, whereat we struck our yards and topmasts [more probably struck on arrival] because of the strong wind which blows seaward from the land at noon, though for about an hour only. This comes from the high hills on the Cape, of which one, the larger (which is always covered by clouds so that one cannot well discern it) is called Table Mountain, and is exactly shaped like a table, though longer than wide; and from this comes such a

[14] Title page to item 10, *Ost-Indianische funfzehenjahrige Kriegsdienste*, 'Fifteen years East-Indian Military Service.' The large flag at the maintop shows that the ship is Admiral. The rig is standard, with spritsail and spritsail-topsail furled, but the high

mighty wind that one cannot but think that ship and all would capsize, for which reason also three anchors* must be used. The second hill is called the Lion's Hill, and lies under this, on the right when one is making for the harbour: it is shaped like a lion. [For his highly-imaginative picture see Plate 13]

We indeed got the idea of making a trip up the Table Mountain, but time did not allow. However, since my friend Meester Johann Jacob Merklein, who served the Company about that time as a Barber*, made such a trip and set it down in writing, I will add it here because it is worth the reading. [Inserted, as in item 1.]

On the 16th all went aboard, and we began to send up the topmasts and yards again, and to set up the shrouds, to bring in the watercasks and all that was needed, and to embark four cows in each ship.

On the 17th and 18th everyone had to help to bring the ship into her proper shape, cleaned from top to bottom. On the 19th the sails were hoisted, and the same day the farewell-feast was given. That evening came on board our Admiral* and Vice-Admiral, the Masters and the Merchants*, and it was ordered to weigh all anchors except one [per ship]. On the 20th we sailed in the Name of God [DR].

Sargasso Sea. Northabout. At Faroes met by the Cruisers*, bringing fit men and food, 'which at first we could not enjoy, since our bellies would not accept such'. Discharged at Middelburg, but to Amsterdam for accumulated pay, credited from overseas.*

11 Jean-Baptiste Tavernier (Plates 15 & 16)

Translated from the second volume of his 'De Zes Reizen ...' According to his own account, he was at the Cape in 1649 only, but he oddly includes notes on conditions there after the Dutch occupation, and even tells of an episode in 1660. The portions definitely relating to 1649 are omitted here: for these see in BVR.

Of all the people I met with in my journeyings I found none so horrible and beastly as the Camouks*, of whom I have spoken in my information on Persia, and those of the Cape de bone Esperance which are called Kaffers or Hottentots. When they speak they fart with their tongues in their mouths, yet, although their speech is almost without separation of word from word, they understand each other very readily. They have no clothing other than the skins of the wild beasts which they kill in the forests: when in winter it is very cold there ... they turn the hair inwards, and when it is hot they turn it outwards. But none among them except the richest are thus clothed: the rest have

nothing but a poor scrap of linen [*sic*: 'leinwand'] to cover their privities. Both men and women are lean and short of stature; and as soon as a male child is born the mother cuts away his right testicle*, and gives him sea-water to drink and tobacco to chew. This right testicle is removed since they say it makes him speedier in running: some among them can overtake roebucks. I was inquisitive enough to touch many of them, and found nothing on them but the left testicles. They have no knowledge of gold or silver, and properly speaking know nothing of religion.... Neither men nor women are ashamed to show their nakedness, and they live almost as beasts.

It is a great convenience for the ships to find some refreshing here, and the Dutch were well advised to build a fort there. There is now a fine Town* inhabited by all sorts of folk who live near the Dutch, and all the seeds brought from Europe and Asia and sown there grow better than in the places they are brought from. It is a very good country, which ... lies at thirtyfive degrees and some minutes of latitude [*sic*]. I add that it is neither the air nor the heat which makes these Kaffers so black as they are. Wishing to know the reason of this, as also why they stink so greatly, I obtained it from a girl who, as soon as her mother had borne her, was taken and nourished and brought up in the Fort [Eva*], and who is as white as our women in Holland. She told me, that the blackness of the Kaffers comed from the smearing with grease which they make from various herbs known to them, and that, if they are not smeared with it as soon as they are born, they would become dropsical like the other blacks of Africa, and like the Abyssinians of Saba, of whom one leg is often twice as thick as the other [elephantiasis]; and such folk seldom live for more than forty years. These Kaffers, however beastly they are, yet have a special knowledge of herbs, which they know how to use against the sicknesses from which they suffer, as the Dutch have proved. If they are bitten by any poisonous beasts, or suffer from any ulcers, they can bring about a cure in a short time by means of the herbs which they know how to select....

In 1661 [1660 by Valentyn, vol. I; and Saar, item 10] the ship *Westvriesland* returned from Batavia with a young Dutch nobleman who had squandered all his money in Holland and taken service with the Company. While he was in Batavia he was bitten in the leg by one of the many flies there, and from this an ulcer developed, on which all the surgeons of Batavia had used all their art and knowledge in vain; and if my [Governor-] General had not granted him leave to depart they would undoubtedly have taken off his leg. When they came to the Cape [DR 1/3/60] the Skipper sent him ashore to give him some relief. These Kaffers began to examine him, and said that if they were allowed they would soon cure him. The Skipper put him in their hands, and in less than fifteen days his leg was as fit as the other in which he had never suffered any pain.

As soon as a ship has anchored at the Cape, those in charge give a part of the soldiers and crew leave to go ashore to refresh themselves there. Those who have been the most sick during the journey are sent ashore first, each in turn, and go into the town, where they get board for seven or eight stivers a day, and for this sum are well entertained.

The Dutch custom is to send out parties from time to time to get knowledge of the

[15] Jean-Baptiste Tavernier, from item 11.

[16] From item 11 (and see DR 21/3/58).

country, and those who go the furthest are best rewarded. One party of soldiers under a serjeant went so far inland that night fell on them. They made a large fire, both for protection from the lions and for warmth, and lay down around it to rest. When they had fallen asleep a lion came and seized one of the soldiers by the arm, and the serjeant killed it with his musket. When it was dead, they must break open its jaw with great difficulty to extract the soldier's arm, which was bitten right through.... The Kaffers healed the soldier's arm in twelve days. [See Plate 16, above.]

In the Fort a quantity of lion and tiger skins are to be seen [see Museum*]. Among other things there is the skin of a horse [? Quagga] killed by the Kaffers: it is white, covered with black stripes and spotted like a leopard, and without a tail. Two or three miles* from the Fort the Dutch found [DR 19/8/56] a dead lion which had four porcupinequills in its body, three-quarters of each in the flesh, from which it was judged that the porcupine had killed it. They afterwards set the skin, with the quills, in the Fort.

One mile* from the Fort is a fine Town*, which daily grows larger. When the ships of the Dutch Company come here, and any seaman or soldier is desirous of remaining, this is freely granted him [*sic*]. He takes as much land as he can cultivate, and there grows, as I have said already, all the plants one could wish for, and pulses, and even grapes. Rice is also sown [DR 17/5/56], and young ostriches may be hunted, and [game for] meat, sea- and river-fish. If one wishes to get these young ostriches, one goes to the nest when they are seven or eight days old, and sets a stick in the ground, and ties these young birds to it by one leg so that they cannot fly away. Then he lets them be fed by the parents until they are big enough, and then takes them away to eat or sell.

When the Dutch began to settle at the Cape de Bone Esperance, they took, as I have said, the daughter of one of these Kaffers as soon as she was born. She is white, and pretty, except that her nose is somewhat flat, and she serves as interpreter for the

Dutch [Eva;* but what follows is invented]. There was a Frenchman who had a child by her, but the Company would not allow him to marry her, and on the contrary fined him eight hundred French pounds of his pay, which was indeed somewhat severe.

There is a great quantity of lions and tigers in this land. The Dutch have found a pretty good means to kill them: they tie a musket to a stake thrust into the ground, and on the end of the musket they put food, to which a string is tied and made fast to the trigger. When the beast comes to eat the food, it pulls on the string, which pulls the trigger, and the musket* fires its bullet into the throat or body of the beast.

The Kaffers eat a root* which much resembles our sugar-root [‘suiker-wortel’: Harris has ‘carrots’]: this they roast, and it serves them for bread. Sometimes also they make flour from it, which tastes like oatmeal. As regards meat, this they eat quite raw, as also even fish. As to the guts of the beasts, they press these between their fingers to remove the dung, and so eat them. The women commonly put these guts, when dry, around their legs; and especially the guts of such wild beasts as have been taken in the forests by their menfolk; and these serve them as an adornment. They also eat tortoises, after they have laid them on the fire until they can take off their shells. They are very accurate in the throwing of their azagays, a sort of javelins; and those who have none take instead a stick, as thick as a thumb and as long as their throwing-spears, of a very hard wood: to this they make a pointed end, and can throw it from afar off to hit a target a hand's-breadth wide. They go with these sticks to the seashore, and as soon as a fish comes a little above the water they never fail to hit it.

Regarding those birds like our ducks, of which the eggs have no whites, there is such a quantity of them that they are killed with clubs in a bay fifteen miles* from the Cape [?: possibly error for ‘island’, Dassen Island, reading ‘the Cape’ as Table Bay]. All the women of the Kaffers... are so hot-blooded that when they have their menses and make water, if a European pass over it he at once gets a head-ache and fever, and even sometimes the plague.

When my Lord van Diemen was the [Governor-] General [1636-1648], the Dutch took one of the boys to Batavia. The General took great pains to have him taught the languages, and I add that in seven or eight years he fully learnt Dutch and Portuguese. At last he wished to return to his own land, and the General, not wishing to compel him to remain, had him provided with linen and clothing, since he thought that this Kaffer on his return to the Cape would live like the Dutch, and be helpful to them in getting supplies for their ships when they called. But no sooner was he come to the Cape than he threw the clothes into the sea, and ran off with the other blacks, and gave himself again to the eating of raw flesh. Since then he has remained with them, without it being in any way helpful to the Dutch. [Not identified.]

When these Kaffers go into the woods to hunt, they assemble in great numbers, and make such a shouting and braying that the animals are entirely affrighted; and I add, that I have been assured that such shouting scares even the lions.

Background - continued

20/3/1660 ... the return-fleet ... set sail, and the yacht* *Erasmus* went with it...

5, 6/4 [On 10/3 Herry and Doman with many of their people, the Caepmans, came to the Fort to treat for peace] ... insisting that we had been taking more and more of their land ... asking also, if they came to Holland, would they be allowed to do this?...

5/5 ... so that now we are at peace with ... the Goringayqas or Tobacco-thieves [error for 'Caepmans'] ... and the Gorachouquas or Tobacco-thieves ...

27/5 ... the stable for the mounted outpost ... is now so far ready that it can be occupied [see Cavalry-Post*]

23/7 ... came ... messengers from the Chainouquas ... with news that their Chief was coming to barter a great quantity of cattle [came 4/8]

17-20/8 ... rebuilding the ramparts of the fort,* collapsed from the heavy rains ...

20/8 [water to be led to the Jetty,* as Sterthemius proposed; and as already suggested in the Remonstrantie*]

12/9 ... This week some Dutch apples, pears, quinces and medlars were grafted on some young forest-trees ... which will also be tried with lemons and oranges ...

13/9 ... the free burghers are now beginning eagerly to plant the vine-cuttings of which hundreds were given to them ...

27/9 [mention of] a certain other tribe named Hosaquas, of whom we had never heard, the real dacha-growers for the Hamcunquar ...

8/11 ... the Soaquas (a people without cattle ... mostly robbers) ... are to send us young horses ... and have brought two or three heads of such ... most beautifully striped but having such long ears that they look like asses [Zebras]

20/12 ... the wild almond trees [of hedge*] already growing with fair success...

[1661]
By English mediation peace with Portugal, Ceylon to be Dutch and Brazil Portuguese. Bombay ceded by Portugal to British as dowry.
Background - from official documents in the archives

24/2 ... the return-fleet came to anchor here [sailed 14/3]

10, 11/3 ... our explorers [Cruythoff: started 30/1] returned ... having found the Namaquas ... who had received them in a most friendly and pleasant manner [report has ivory peniscovers, large shields, men playing on reeds, women dancing around them]

4, 5/4 ... not only to repair the dilapidated old earthen redoubt Duynhoop, but also to set up between it and the fort ... a strong, sturdy wooden redoubt 20 feet square [Houte Wambuis]

[1662]
General peace. Building of Versailles begun.
Background

2/4 ... came in safely ... the yacht* *Angelier* ... and flute* *Oyevaar* ... commanded by the Hon Zacharias WAGENAER, sent to replace Commandeur Riebeecq ...

17/4 ... first two ripe Dutch apples were plucked ...

8/5 ... *Mars* [with Riebeeck and family on board] and *Amstellant* set sail for Batavia ...

8/11 The Commander ... proceeds inland to visit the kraals of Oedasoa and Gonnamoa [back 16/11, his journal given]

21/11 ... arrival of a number of Heusaquas, a tribe living to the East ... with and among the Chainouquas ...

Chapter two Too many Cooks 1663-1679

13	Pieter van Hoorn	75
14	Wouter Schouten	79
15	The French at Saldanha Bay	94
16	Volquardt Iversen	102
17	Albrecht Herport	106
18	Arnout van Overbeke	108
19	David Tappen	110
20	Gerrit Vermeulen	111
21	Johan Schreyer	114
22	Nicolaus de Graaf	141
23	Jean de Lacombe	142
24	Frederick Andersen Bolling	143
25	Johan Nieuhof	155
26	Robert Padbrugge	157
27	Johan Christian Hoffmann	160
28	Nicolans de Graaf	164
29	Johan Nieuhof	165
30	Jan Pietersz Cortemünde	166
31	Johan Struys	167
32	Willem ten Rhyne	174
33	Gerrit Vermeulen	175
34	Johan Christian Hoffmann	180
35	Christophorus Schweitzer	182
36	Nicolaus de Graaf	185
37	Abraham van Riebeeck	187
38	Georg Meister	197
39	Nicolaus de Graaf	207
40	Johann Wilhelm Vogel	211
41	William Pearse	221

[NB][+]

The double-column text that follows contains extracts from the Cape Council's Diary, supplemented by other documents in the Archives. The texts of the authors are in large, Roman type, my comments and notes are either italicised or in square brackets. [DR] in the text means: *Confirmed by the Diary entry for this date*; whereas [DR 10/3] means: *But the Diary has this for March 10*. An asterisk * following a word means: *Refer to the index for further information*, where also will be found identifications of places, people, flora, fauna, the titles of books cited by authors' names, and notes on points marked with asterisks in the text.

+ '[red. dbnl] zie verantwoording'

[1663]
Franco-Danish alliance. English alliance with Portugal against Spain.

Background - from official documents in the archives

4/2 ... [*Marsseveen* arrived] news of peace with the Kings of France and England, but nothing as regards Portugal ...

28/6 ... [Outworks of Fort* to be extended] towards the shore ... including especially a new Hospital* [work started 7/11]

26/8 ... anchored before the fort ... the ship *Alphen* ... left April 16 ... with 207 souls ... also the Hon. Pieter van Hoorn with his family ... had lost 8 persons ... fully 80 sick of scurvy ... [later] the *Sparendam*, in which came out the Hon Pieter Anthonisz. Overtwater ... 184 men ... the yacht *Elpendam* ... 54 sailors ...

27/8 ... came the yacht *'s Lantsmeer* ... 53 sailors ...

28/8 ... came ashore the Hon Serjeant Majoor Sloot with his family [from] the ship *Amerongen* ... [later] the yacht* *Purmerlant* ... 51 sailors ... *Meerman*... 156 men ... in her also the Preacher Petrus Cassier ...

31/8 ... The aforesaid gentlemen ... rode out to visit the Company's lands, the large corngranary, the bosheuvel, and the new house standing in part of the orchard [Rondebosch]

6/9 ... towards noon all three [yachts] reached the open sea ...

13 Pieter van Hoorn

Translated from xerographs of his log, *kept in* Alphen (*Hague Archives Van Hoorn-van Riebeeck papers*, *No. 3*). *A portion is also transcribed or summarised in Godée-Molsbergen*, '*De Stichter...*', *with the note that he was a dealer in gunpowder in Amsterdam*, *on December 23*, *1662 named Extra-Ordinary* Member of the Council of the Indies*, *apparently with no special qualifications whatever. He sailed on April 16*, *1663* (*as also in Hague codex 4389*) *with wife*, *five children and two nieces*.

Today August 25, Saturday ... we saw also many trompas afloat, and some penguins and seals, together with many birds, all of which are signs of the coast ... and at daybreak sighted land to the North of the Caap de buone esperance....

Today August 26, Sunday ... we came to the S.E. of the Robben Eijlandt, and ran to the East of the said island between it and the mainland ... and anchored in the Bay in front of the fort the goed hoope [DR]. God almighty be thanked for his mercy. Towards evening there came to the roads by us the flute* Sparendam and the yacht* Ilpendam [DR]. In the morning the Skipper [etc.] went ashore and remained there until the afternoon:

meanwhile the Hon. Commandeur Sacharias Wagenaer sent aboard to us the Secunde* Abraham Gabbema with greenstuff, eggs, meat, milk and butter as refreshing. Towards evening the Skipper and his party returned safely on board again.

Today August 27 in the flute Alphen from Amsterdam to Batavia, at the Caap de buone esperanca. On Monday morning the Commandeur Wagenaer came aboard to welcome us, requesting that I and the Admiral* Overwater [in *Sparendam*] should come ashore, so that the latter could make his entry [as Commissioner] in due form: as was also done, the Admiral first passing our ship before eight, and then we in our shallop*, making our entry to the firing of the cannon of the Fort, and taking our meal there. In the Afternoon we went for a stroll in the Company's vegetable Garden*, myself on horseback because I had a weakness in my leg. The weather was fine and agreeable, and it was very pleasant in the Garden.

Towards evening the yachts* Lantsmeer and Amerongen also arrived here in the roads [DR 27/8 and 28/8 respectively].

Today 28. On Tuesday morning Major Symon Sloodt came ashore from the ship Amerongen, and after we had dined together at noon we went with the Hr. Overwaater and the Hr. Commandeur for a stroll in the Garden, but the weather was unfavourable. That morning the yacht Meerman of Delft also arrived in the roads [DR], so that there were 6 Amsterdam ships and one from Delft [those named above, plus yacht *Purmerland*, also arrived 28/8 by DR].

Today August 29, Wednesday. In the morning I went by horse with the Heeren Overwaater and Major Sloodt, together with the Secunde Abraham Gabbema and some companions, to inspect the building-work in hand, both that by private persons and especially the Groote Schuur being built [DR *31/8/63*], and the Orchard [Rondebosch] with a new, pleasing house belonging to the Company; and from there also to the Boscheuvel where we saw the False Bay from a hill. At noon we were well entertained at the Company's Orchard, and came back on board in the evening.

Today 30, Thursday we inspected, with Hr. Overwaater, the fortifications, and the position of certain dunes to the North of the Fort* from which this could be fired on, as also the new water-reservoir and the old dilapidated Hospital* of which the repair was necessary. This day nothing else special occurred. The Skipper was busy in getting water, and bringing aboard refreshings of greenstuff and sheep.

Today August 31, Friday. In the morning I went out on horseback with Hr. Sloodt, his son and other companions to the Salterns [Riet Vlei], where we found a very fine flat (although sandy and stony ground) with splendid hunting of every sort of wild game, such as deer, hinds, ostriches, steenbok, korhaan, and also hares: it was an amusing affair: we saw also the fresh track of a lion. At midday we ate in the open, and came back to the Fort again towards evening.

Today September the first, Saturday we busied ourselves somewhat with Hr. Overwater in the documents of the Cape, and consulted the Memorials of various former Commissioners. Nothing else special occurred.

Today September 2, Sunday, the Holy Supper of our Lord was distributed and celebrated, after a previous exhortation, by a Preacher of the ship the Meerman of Delft named Domine Cassier, and various children were baptised, both black and white; and in the afternoon another sermon was preached.

Today September 3, Monday. In the afternoon Commandeur Wagenaer held a Council*-day, at which were present Hr. Overtwater as President, followed by myself and the said Hr. Commandeur, together with a Secretary. At this the despatch of the three yachts* Ilpendam, Lantsmeer, and Purmerlandt was specially discussed, and it was resolved:

(1) that one of the yachts should touch at the island of Mauritius in passing, in order to obtain some information regarding the various surviving men of the ship Aernhem, as also of the other three lost ships [not identified], and take them on to Batavia;

(2) by drawing of lots between the ships Purmerland and Lantsmeer this task fell to Lantsmeer, which therefore is appointed, and ordered to set forward her journey to Mauritius, together with the other two ships for Batavia.

A few minor matters were also dealt with.

Today 4, Tuesday, the three Skippers of the yachts were our guests and took their farewells, the Commandeur giving an Instruction to the Skipper Reynier [Brinkmans] of the yacht Lantsmeer; and thereafter they went aboard to prepare to depart [DR not till 6/9], we resolving to follow on Friday. [Passenger 'Davidt Balfour' transferred from *Alphen* to *Purmerland:* an unexpected name! And other transfers of passengers.]

Today 5, Wednesday, I passed chiefly in writing to the Lords Proprietors at Amsterdam and to various friends at home.

Today 6, Thursday. At midday I, with my wife, Major Sloodt, and the Skippers of Amerongen and the Meerman, as also our Skipper, were the guests of Hr. Overwaater on board his ship, and in the evening came safely back into the Fort.

Today 7, Friday. In the morning the Broad Land-Council* was again held, at which were present Hr. Overwaater as President, followed by myself and then the Hr. Commandeur Wagenaer, with the Secunde* Hr. Gabbema together with the Ensign of the Fort and three Freemen* of the Cape. At this meeting certain personal quarrels, insults and other matters were dealt with [see Resolutions of this date: the 'Ensign' was Serjeant Pieter Evrard by these]. After this by Hr. Overwater, myself and the Commandeur the pay of certain persons was increased; as also there was provisionally fixed an increase of the prices paid to the farmers for their produce, to wit instead of 6 gld. 8 st. for the mudde* of wheat, 7 gld. if approved by the Lords Proprietors. In the afternoon I made ready for all of us to go aboard again, but despatched our letters and remained ashore this evening.

Today, 8, in the morning after having somewhat breakfasted together, and after due farewells each went aboard his ship without much ceremony, and our Lieutenant Bartell Sloodt transferred from our ship to the Meerman of Delft [as also a passenger, and their servants]. By noon we were come aboard, but because of the calm set no sails.

Towards the evening I was aboard the Admiral's ship.

Today 9, Sunday. In the morning, after the shallops* had been to the shore, the Admiral Overwater fired a gun, and our four ships (to wit Sparendam, Alphen, the yacht* Amerongen, and the Meerman of Delft) weighed anchor and set sail [DR] with a weak land-breeze, from the bay of the Cape, and all that day tacked and drifted to and fro between the Robben Eijlandt and the Lion Hill, in calms and variable winds; but towards evening got out to sea on a W.S.W. course with a fair S.S.E. breeze.... [Batavia November 14, 1663 by Hague Archives codex 1131].

Background - continued

9/9/1663 ... about ten o'clock ... the said Heer Admiral fired a gun and set sail, as did also the other ships ...

[1664]

*French East-India Company established. August 29, English annexed '**New Netherland**', renamed '**New England**'; and other hostile acts without declaration of war.*

Background - from official documents in the archives

5/6 The Commandeur Wagenaer with Messrs. Gabbema and Lacus, rode out early to site another redoubt under the bosheuvel between the Bhaey Falce and this place [?never built]

13/8 [1000 vine-shoots planted at 'the orchard in the country', Rondebosch]

6/9 ... Seeing that a few days ago all the girders of the new Hospital* in the outwork were set up [a feast given to the builders]

20/11 [Lion shot, skin stuffed] and deposited as curiosity with others already collected in the hall [see Museum*]

[1665]

State of undeclared war between Dutch and English continues. Great Plague in London.

Background

25/2 ... sold to the highest bidders 9 mares with 2 foals, and 5 young stallions ... total of fl. 814...

11/3 ... about noon came to the roads ... 9 ships, to wit *Walcheren*, *Phoenicx*, the *Slot van Honingen*, *Diemermeer*, *Oyevaer*, *Rysende Son*, *Amstellant*, *Brederoode* and *Jonge Prins* ... left Batavia on December 24 last year, 11 vessels in all, but on February 16 ... storm lasting for 3 days... two ships missing ... the *Nooteboom* and the *Wapen van Hoorn* ...

12/3 ... the large flute* the *Wapen van Hoorn* came in ...

10/4 ... came to anchor in the evening ... *Zuytpolsbroucq* ... left the Vlie November 22 and sailed northabout* ... as yet nothing definite as regards the English: they

continually make preparations for [definite] war and have equipped many ships for it ...

14/4 Arrived ... one of the two aftership* the yacht* the *Cogge* ...

16/4 In the afternoon appears here also the yacht *Nieuwenhoven*, the thirteenth and last return-ship [arrival of *Nooteboom* not given]

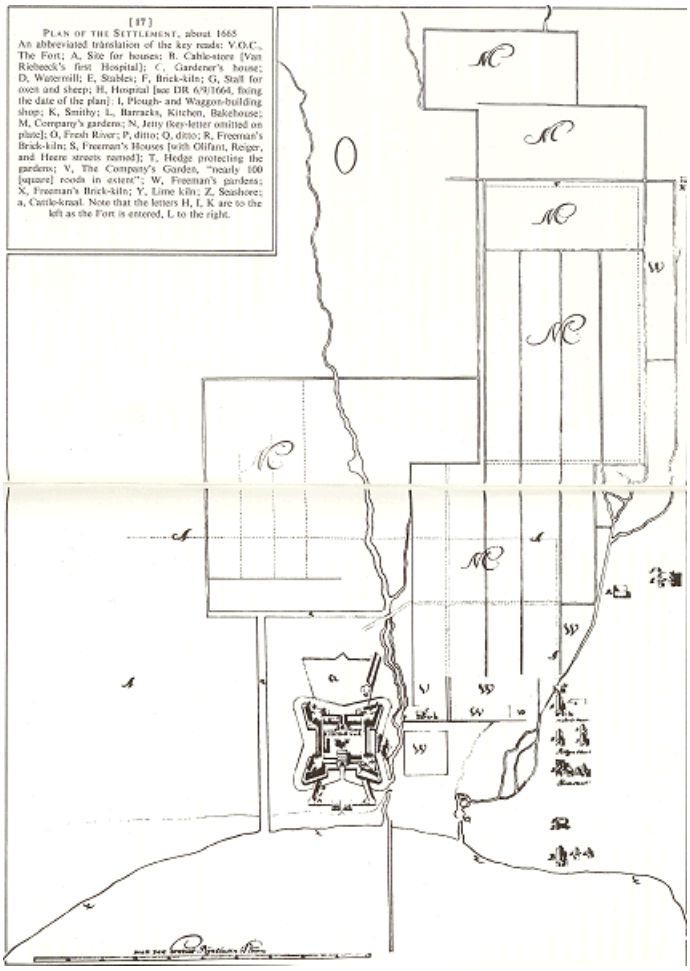
21/4 ... between the Robben Island and the mainland lay at anchor ... *Amersfoort*, which had already lost 36 dead in the journey from the Fatherland ... more than 70 sick ...

14 Wouter Schouten

(*See also item 7*.) *He sailed from Batavia on December 24*, *1664 in* Rysende Son, *with* Walcheren, Fenix, Amstellandt, Slot Honingen, Jonge Prins, Wapen van Hoorn, Bredero, *the flutes** Oijevaer, Diemermeer; *and by his text* Musschaetboom (*actually* Notenboom) *and* Amsterdam (*apparently in error*, *not figuring in Valentyn I nor in the DR*). *Fleet dispersed by storm*.

On the 9th of March, 1665, we had a westerly wind, with which, steering northwards, we came somewhat nearer to the land, and in the evening were below the high and steep hill of *Cabo Faco*. That night the wind again turned eastwards, and took us at a good pace along the southern coast of Africa, and on the 10th in the afternoon we arrived close below the *Lion Hill*, and thence (but with a variable breeze) sailed into *Table Bay*. Meeting there mighty gusts and squalls from over the hills, we anchored 2 miles outside the roads, arriving safely the next day, March the 11th, with 9 ships and in lovely weather, at the *Cape de Bon Esperance* in the Bay, before the Dutch Castle *Good Hope*, GOD be praised [DR] ...

Although at this time of the year, in these lands of southern *Africa* the beloved Summer brings again many fine warm days and delightful sunny weather, yet at times we must endure heavy gales, as happened once (among other times) four days after our arrival, when, the high *Table Mountain* being covered with misty clouds as often happens, here in the *Table Bay* so vicious a storm arose that we and all the other ships were compelled to strike our topmasts and yards to give less hold to the wind, so that by so doing we suffered no damage. In the next 5 to 6 days thereafter, when the clouds had been driven from the *Table Mountain*, we had lovely clear and bright weather with warm sunshine; and now, tired by our dangerous voyages, we went ashore almost every day to amuse ourselves. There we now found everything very changed, and exceedingly pleasant, also the Dutch Fort* *Good Hope* in better conditions than in the year 1658 when we found ourselves here for the first time, having been markedly enlarged and strengthened, and provided with commodious dwellings for the Commandeur and the Company's Servants, as also with a church* for the preaching of GOD's Word, all built in European fashion of lime and brick, which here are burnt and prepared; and they were still busied every day in further strengthening the said fortress, which was well provided with a good garrison and munitions of war. Behind this fort we found the Company's Garden* also so enlarged and spread out that it now covered a good number of morgen* of land, from whence were gathered all sorts of herbs and fruits for the refreshing of the ships, such as water-lemons, radishes, cabbage, carrots, turnips, lettuce and so on. We also found that around the Dutch Castle the number of houses and dwellings, all built as in the Fatherland, was so increased that this Town* by the blessing of the All-Highest


[17]
PLAN OF THE SETTLEMENT, about 1665
An abbreviated translation of the key reads: V.O.C., The Fort; A, Site for houses; B. Cable-store [Van Riebeeck's first Hospital]; C, Gardener's house; D, Watermill; E, Stables; F, Brick-kiln; G, Stall for oxen and sheep; H, Hospital [see DR 6/9/1664, fixing the date of the plan]; I, Plough- and Waggon-building shop; K, Smithy; L, Barracks, Kitchen, Bakehouse; M, Company's gardens; N, Jetty (key-letter omitted on plate]; O, Fresh River; P, ditto; Q, ditto; R, Freeman's Brick-kiln; S, Freeman's Houses [with Olifant, Reiger, and Heere streets named]; T, Hedge protecting the gardens; V, The Company's Garden, "nearly 100 [square] roods in extent"; W, Freeman's gardens; X, Freeman's Brick-kiln; Y, Lime kiln; Z, Seashore; a, Cattle-kraal. Note that the letters H, I, K are to the left as the Fort is entered, L to the right.

[17] PLAN OF THE SETTLEMENT, about 1665 An abbreviated translation of the key reads: V.O.C., The Fort; A, Site for houses; B. Cable-store [Van Riebeeck's first Hospital]; C, Gardener's house; D, Watermill; E, Stables; F, Brick-kiln; G, Stall for oxen and sheep; H, Hospital [see DR 6/9/1664, fixing the date of the plan]; I, Plough- and Waggon-building shop; K, Smithy; L, Barracks, Kitchen, Bakehouse; M, Company's gardens; N, Jetty (key-letter omitted on plate]; O, Fresh River; P, ditto; Q, ditto; R, Freeman's Brick-kiln; S, Freeman's Houses [with Olifant, Reiger, and Heere streets named]; T, Hedge protecting the gardens; V, The Company's Garden, 'nearly 100 [square] roods in extent'; W, Freeman's gardens; X, Freeman's Brick-kiln; Y, Lime kiln; Z, Seashore; a, Cattle-kraal. Note that the letters H, I, K are to the left as the Fort is entered, L to the right.

stands to grow before long to a prosperous city, these Colonies of Dutch families increasing wonderfully. Each breeds cattle and grows fruit and grains in abundance, so that good butter and milk are produced there. The Dutch farmers bring to bearing covetable farms with fields and pastures, since the air at the *Cape de Bon Esperance* is immeasurably healthy, and the soil has been examined and found very apt to the producing of many European grains, fruits and plants, since although the high hills reach into the clouds and are very rocky and steep, yet the valleys give many lovely large grassy flats, meadows and pastures, set with green herbs and well-smelling flowers, as also here and there with very large forests and whole jungles. Many deer, wild goats, Steendassen and roebucks leap over the wild hills; and it is very notable how they are seen to leap from one stony height to another, as we ourselves observed with wonder. Also the rivers give the *Cape de Bon Esperance* sweet and delicious water, especially in the *Table Bay*, this being so named because of the *Table Mountain* which is very high, steep, and flat on the top, looking like a table. The Bay, lying at fully 24 degrees [*sic*] south of the Equator, has a good anchorage, where the ships lie in safety shielded from many winds, though often leapt on by the sudden storms across the hills, which however cause no high waves, and produce more noise than danger.

We saw also with amazement the increase in the farms, gardens, orchards and flourishing plantations of the Dutch, where now the same fruits as in the Fatherland were gathered in abundance: also all kinds of trees were advantageously cultivated, such as apples, pears, chestnuts, medlars, cherries, as also vineyards and many *East Indian* plants, all of which were grown in these parts of *Africa* both from Dutch and also *Batavian* plants, roots, seeds, etc.

Here we saw also the life of the Dutch farmers, who around here (and even for a good distance inland) have established themselves and settled down, well knowing how to look after their cattle, by taking them in the morning out into a grassy pasture, or where it may be, and in the evening bringing them into the stables again, which is necessary because of the multitude of wild beasts, although otherwise these folk live in considerable poverty, at least most of those who dwell far inland. I still remember how once the three of us wanderers had gone inland on a certain occasion, and were suddenly overtaken by dusk when we found ourselves near the most distant of the farm-houses, right behind the *Table Mountain*. Because of the wild beasts we did not dare to go back in the dark of night so long a way as we had come in our wanderings; so we resolved to beg the poor farmer for shelter (but for good payment) and set our course for the solitary farm-house. On coming there we were amicably greeted by the half-naked pregnant wife (from *Cologne* by birth), since her man was out, and invited into the little glassless house, and brought into the best room, which in this cold night was airy and chilly enough since there was no glass nor any shutters there. And there, when the man came home we ate a truly frugal evening meal, the best the folk could provide. Then (at our request) they made our bed or sleeping-place in the cowshed, where our diligent hostess threw some straw on the floor, and to make all as fine as might be spread over it a little piece of

sailcloth. This stable was full of oxen and cows, so that the cold, which was by now pretty overpowering, was made the more tolerable by these four-footed companions. Nevertheless we could sleep little for the first part of the night, because of a wanton calf that came into the stable (which was pretty long) and because of the strange visitors began to run about and make gay capers in the darkness, and over and over again was to be heard making for us at full gallop. Thus we had enough to do to turn the calf away in his mad career, by our loud laughter and by all of us stretching out our legs, so as not to be overrun by his helter-skelter leaps. But the diligent stableman was merrily on the go in this night-attack, and called to us reassuringly 'Be of good cheer, Messieurs*, I will manage to turn the crafty yearling away'. Meanwhile he defended himself with great bravery as a bold soldier in this calf-war, assuring us that a calf can see by night and would know how to avoid us in his scampering calf-leaps, which we also found to be true; yet all the efforts of the stableman were in vain. So we let the calf scamper until it was tired, and in the morning found our bed-place sown with calf-dirt along the foot-end, with which it seemed to have honoured us in the night by way of welcome. Rising, we paid our poor host, and set off again on our trip, and so came aboard, where we often reminded each other of our adventure with the scampering calf in the cowshed.

But more wonderful was to see the wild nature of the people of the *Cabo de Bon Esperance*, who because of their beastliness bear no resemblance to mankind. They are truly the most miserable folk that I have seen on the earth. Because of their wildness and clucking speech (which seems to come forth with a stuttering from deep in their throats) they are commonly called *Hottentots* [see Hottentots, Name*]. They are somewhat yellowish, in general thin, scrawny and badly made, and short of stature, especially the women. Their hair is black, almost like that of the Kaffers, being closely crinkled together, but as much by dirt as by nature. They are unusually fast runners, and great thieves, stealing and robbing whatever they can: to overtake them our folk need to be well mounted and good riders. They continually bring all sorts of beasts, principally oxen, cows and sheep, which they know how to get from their neighbours in the *Sardaigne-Bay* and from the southerly regions of *Monomotapa**, for sale to our people in the Table Bay, who get them by barter for a little copper, tin, beads, tobacco and other trifles. By this the Bay is of necessity recognised to be a very good revictualling-place, since on the ships we had daily abundance of all sorts of refreshing and tasty food: oxen- sheep- and other flesh, as also abundance of potherbs, fish, fruit, and whatever we could now wish for. On the arrival of our return-fleet the savages came down with women and children, from the regions around to the Table Bay and watering-places, and chose their shelters and abodes under the open sky around the Dutch Castle, in hopes of gaining some tobacco and other trifles. They still go with only a dirty and greasy seal- or other beast-skin around the body, which, hanging from their necks, barely covers their upper bodies. Some have as ornaments the black dried stomach and the guts* of a slaughtered beast around their necks, which also serves some females instead of bracelets, golden jewels and armrings, so that being thus decked out they smelt horribly. Some had

also little *Bengal* shells which are called *Couris** in their hair, or a small copper plate round the neck, and bands of thin copper, tin, iron or other materials on the arms; and those who were distinguished by such pomp always were accustomed to smear their dirty hides with the fat of slaughtered beasts, or the oil from dead whales which had been washed ashore. They were also very pleased with the rinds of water-lemons and other fruits, with dead and stinking fish that are washed ashore, and with the dirty paunches and other entrails of the beasts we slaughtered, daily seeking out all such treasures from the rubbish-heaps, and sling around their necks the stomachs and guts of the oxen, cows and sheep which had been killed by us, and tearing such apart with their teeth (except for a few who roasted it a little).

They knew nothing of the preparing of food, of agriculture or fishing, of houses or vehicles, and ate no grain but what had been brought here by our folk, since when they are given such, or any other well-cooked foods they gulp it down as greedily as savages. For the most part they live as aforesaid, and from some sorts of roots* that grow wild and which they eat raw. Both women and men go (as I have said) almost naked, but for the stinking beast-skin over their shoulders, with which they can partly cover themselves by night in winter, or when the weather is cold and windy, and when lying or squatting they press and creep close together. The women often hang their small children on their backs, and if they wish to take suck, they throw over the shoulder to the innocent child one of their breasts, which are so long, that some of them hang down to the navel.

I could notice little or no signs of religion among them, except that indeed sometimes a whole assembly of men, women and children, each clad in a stinking beast-skin, appear in a large pit, cave or other terrifying place, where these wild people make many strange antics, with singing, leaping and dancing, as also with continual hand-clapping. Meanwhile they sometimes turn their eyes to heaven, and then with a red stone write stripes and crosses on each others' foreheads, after which each of this lovely brotherhood goes his way. At night they creep together in whole troops, men, women and children, in places where horrible caves, valleys or pits are to be found, thus seeking the warmest hiding-places under the open sky, without shelter or any covering but the hills, the rocks, and the wild growths, since I have seen no houses or huts among them. Some however indeed spread out a few beast-skins on sticks, thus to be a little protected from the cold, hail, snow, rain, and winter squalls, thus creeping by night close together without fear of the wild beasts. I have repeatedly seen them in this condition, lying like beasts of the field almost naked together on the grass, where each nevertheless knows to find his own (I believe) in the dark by smell and touch, thus existing like animals without any houses, clothes, furniture, bedding or other necessities of life. At times also they now and then indeed make large fires by night, against the wild beasts. Many of these savage women lack a joint or two of their little fingers, or sometimes more parts of their fingers [see Hottentots, Finger-mutilation*] are cut off, and I was told (but what of this is true I do not know) that such is done when they re-marry, so that they lack as many joints of their fingers as they have had new husbands. Some are to be seen also with one breast quite

dried up, the reason of which is unknown to me. They are avid, both men and women, for old iron, copper, tin, beads and glass rings, but above all for tobacco, for which the women will even willingly let their privy parts (which sometimes they cover a little) be seen by our coarse seamen who dare to demand such of them. Truly these sailors show by this, that they are even more lewd and beastly than these wild *Hottentots*, who usually when our folk go ashore greet them with a helter-skelter cabriole, even the women begging for a little scrap of tobacco in return for the showing of such a compliment. These savages very well know how to revenge themselves on our seamen in their fashion, if these do them any harm, and greet their insulters with stones in such a way that they are forced to keep their distance, and even in spite of much resistance to take to flight, where some of our crew (while we lay here) were gravely wounded and one killed. The savages on hearing this went away inland with their wives and children, but after some days came again in whole troops, without fearing anything evil.

It is said that inland a more civilised sort of people dwell, since to the northwards from here lies the Kingdom of *Monomotapa**. It is lamentable that among mankind such folk (as we have now told of) are to be found, who, although descended from our father *Adam*, yet show so little of humanity that truly they more resemble the unreasoning beasts than reasonable man, living on earth such a miserable and pitiful life, having no knowledge of GOD nor of what leads to their Salvation. Miserable folk, how lamentable is your pitiful condition! And Oh Christians, how blessed is ours! if we are true Christians. GOD be eternally thanked therefor, honoured and exalted, in that He has called us from this abyss of miserable darkness to His wonderful light, Who has so loved us that He gave His only-begotten Son that we, believing in Him, should not perish but have everlasting life. Oh unspeakable grace! for which GOD the Father, Son and Holy Ghost in the true Trinity of His Persons, must be thanked, praised and exalted by us for ever. Amen.

Wild beasts are daily met with here, and sometimes captured and brought to the Dutch fort, so that there various kinds of wild beasts can be seen, such as lions, lionesses, tigers, rhinoceroses, snakes and wolves, but all dead and mounted [see Museum*] as in life, which being captured now and then serve the Dutch as a good warning not to wander too far inland, so as not to fall the prey of the wild beasts.

Our crew here bore witness that they had again seen a comet, which soon afterwards disappeared, such signs serving as forewarnings of so many calamities and difficulties, as also came upon us during this journey to the Fatherland.

On the 22nd and 23rd of *March* we again had sudden storms from over the hills, but lay here in good safety and thus suffered no damage to the ship thereby.

While we were refreshing ourselves here and delaying for the two after-ships* that were to follow from *Batavia*, all the ships were daily supplied with whatever was necessary and those that were damaged were most rapidly repaired. On the first of *April* at break of dawn we saw a large whale near our ship, which seemed to enjoy itself in the glitter of the waves before sunrise, whereby it showed itself (thus sparkling) perfectly to us.

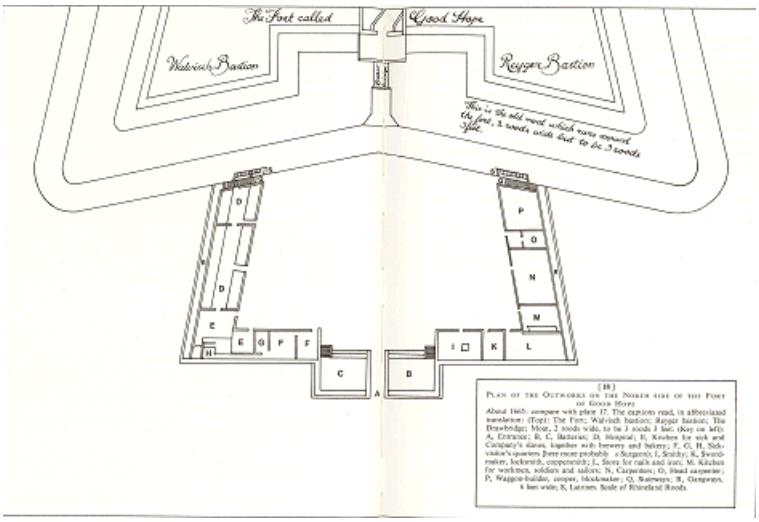
Two high hills are to be seen in the Table Bay, namely the Lion Hill and the Table Mountain, which are indeed thus called on account of their shapes. We had visited the Lion Hill in 1658, and we were told wonderful things of the Table Mountain; but it was mighty high, and therefore I had difficulty in finding companions to satisfy my curiosity by making a trip thither. But at last, having won over to my proposal the Mate and a Carpenter, on the aforesaid first of *April* we three wanderers left the ship early in the morning, after we had watched the jolly whale to our content, and went ashore, to climb (if it were possible) the very high Table Mountain. Having walked thither we found ourselves at seven o'clock at the foot of this mountain, and then set our course upwards, climbing over a narrow ridge of the hill, which running upwards came to an end at about half the height, against the vertically-rising steep of the Table Mountain. On each side of the ridge we had a downwards slope, and to the right also a stream flowing rapidly downwards in a valley set everywhere with rocks, caves and thick groves, which could make most convenient hiding-places for wild beasts such as lions, tigers, leopards and wolves. Nevertheless we must at times descend into this low valley, because the multitude of rocks made our path impassable, and after going somewhat further in it, again climb up, which indeed was pretty toilsome for us. So we passed many rocks and cliffs, which we must sometimes climb through, sometimes over; but we had come barely half-way up the height of the Table Mountain, when the Mate suddenly lost the courage to go higher. We therefore left him there after giving him a part of the food we had brought, on his promise to await us there for two hours, and then, if he had no news of us, he could be free to return down again, naming to each other a lodging in the town where we hoped to meet in the evening. So we left the Mate half-way up the hill, where he took his place of rest under a shady tree.

We two then climbed upwards from thence, coming to a passage [Platteklip Gorge] which we found to be barely 4 feet wide, set and walled on the left with an overhanging precipice which because of its vertical upwards slope seemed to reach the sky, and on the right falling very steeply downwards from this dangerous path to a terrifying abyss. Also on this narrow footpath we found that we must continually secure ourselves by our hands in the grass or other scrub in our climb, so steeply did it ascend, or else we could readily have fallen into this dangerous abyss and broken neck and limbs. We found the path beset everywhere with vertical cliffs and rocks, but we climbed and clambered upwards with hands and feet, and thereby came between the two huge rocky overhanging steeps into the ascending gorge of this wonderful Table Mountain, which here presents a narrow cleft from above to below. This narrow gorge was enjoyably set with sweet-smelling flowers and herbs, as also with pleasant grass; and this now formed our path upwards. Here we found an exceptionally clear echo, and could still hear the calling of the Mate whom we had left half-way up the hill because of the triple and quadruple resounding of this echo, although we could no longer see each other owing to the wonderful height. We had brought some *Batavian* home-made arrack with us, as also biscuit and Dutch cheese, which served us well, since because of our mighty thirst (no fresh

water being found) we sometimes took a little of this arrack, and partook of some biscuit therewith, which greatly served to our refreshment. We climbed on thence between steep and overhanging cliffs on both sides, and sometimes over large stony cliffs, finding here rocks as large as whole buildings which hung out from the precipices in such a manner that they seemed nowhere to be fastened, so that we were amazed that these suspended rocks did not fall down by their great weight. Also once we heard a terrifying noise and wonderful din not far from us on this steep mountain, and perceived that a huge rock had begun to roll, and came crashing down from above. But we climbed onwards up this narrow gorge of the Table Mountain, which higher up became so narrow that we found it only six or seven feet wide, with steep or overhanging walls rising upwards on both sides. Thus steadily going onwards, we at last reached the top of the flat Table Mountain, where by the clear sunlight we found that it was already fully one o'clock in the afternoon, we having been busied since 7 in the morning with climbing upwards.

The first thing that occupied us on this mountain was the search for fresh water, to quench our thirst (which was mighty great): this also we soon found in the hollows of some flat rocks with which this hill was as if floored, which water seemed to have gathered from the abundant dew of the thick clouds (which so often cover the whole upper surface of the mountain) in the said hollow rocks. We found it quite sweet and exceptionally pleasant in taste, the more so from our almost unbearable thirst, of which I can truly say that it was never greater in all my travels. Our heavenly liquid now tasted better than ordinarily does the most exquisite drink of the world. Having carefully cooled, refreshed and entertained our very heated entrails with this clear liquid, we went on further, to the front of this mountain, to look at the surrounding country from its wonderful height as if from the air; but it is impossible to describe in words in what a small compass all the nearest landscapes and hills now showed themselves to us: the large Table Bay and all the mighty hills that descend to it from the inland North seemed to be of small extent and importance; we could hardly recognise the Dutch ships lying at anchor within this Table Bay, these looking only like little dots; also in the same way the Dutch Castle of Good Hope and all the houses, farms and green meadows lying around it were, because of the distant and down-sloping depth, seen as if they were in the extreme distance, few details being properly distinguishable. Even the high Lion Hill and the other hills showed themselves to us from here (except for their most highest tops) as nothing more than uniform flats. Further off, we could see the very high *African* hills to the north, at a guess fully 40 miles away. The Table Mountain was covered with no clouds this day but entirely clear, since we had again chanced on a lovely day with clear and bright sunshine: otherwise this mountain projects into the clouds (as we have said previously) for half of its height, and often even shows its uppermost flat surface a good way above them, and when this is the case, in general a sudden storm blows in the Table Bay so that no sail can be hoisted there, and for the same reason the Table Mountain is then sufficiently unreachable.

On this high table we made our frugal yet pleasant meal of cheese, biscuit, home-



[18] PLAN OF THE OUTWORKS ON THE NORTH SIDE OF THE FORT OF GOOD HOPE About 1665: compare with plate 17. The captions read, in abbreviated translation: (Top): The Fort; Walvisch bastion; Reyger bastion; The Drawbridge; Moat, 2 roods wide, to be 3 roods 3 feet. (Key on left): A, Entrance; B, C, Batteries; D, Hospital; E, Kitchen for sick and Company's slaves, together with brewery and bakery; F, G, H, Sickvisitor's quarters [here more probably a Surgeon); I, Smithy; K, Swordmaker, locksmith, coppersmith; L, Store for nails and iron; M. Kitchen for workmen, soldiers and sailors; N, Carpenters; O, Head carpenter; P, Waggon-builder, cooper, blockmaker; Q, Stairways; R, Gangways, 6 feet wide; S, Latrines. Scale of Rhineland Roods.

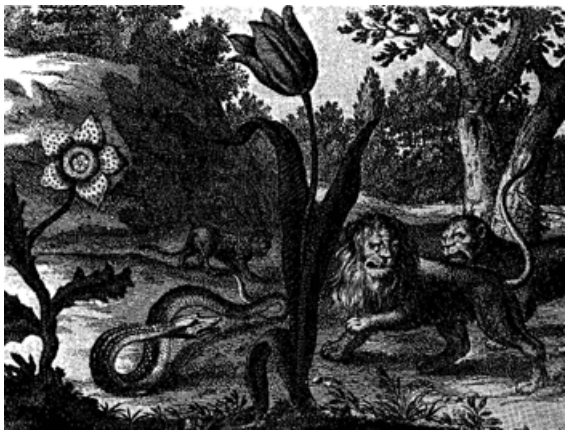
made arrack, together with a little drink of the clear water: our table-top and table-cloth were the pleasant grass, our chairs two stones, and our hands served us as goblets: in short, we had here more pleasure than comfort, and thanked the Almighty Creator for all our enjoyment here, and for His manifold wonders here showed to us, after our meal making a trial of walking so that no stiffness should come into our limbs by sitting still, which would have greatly hindered us in our downward climb. We now set our course for the other side of the Table Mountain, from whence we looked our full at the near-by parts of the sea towards *Cabo Faco*, with its high hills (which however from here looked very low). But nowhere was it more terrifying to look down at the lowlands than towards the Table Bay, where this Table Mountain falls with an overhanging precipice like a wall, straight downwards from above to the flat below, so that from the edge where we now stood we could look down as if to a most dangerous abyss. We also found this mountain ornamented up here with a lovely landscape, which pleasing and agreeable field was set with long grass and a few small trees; and the grass and undergrowth were not beaten down by the strong winds here as down below, but stood upright with lovely sweet-smelling flowers and herbs, and pretty high, from which we were compelled to believe that the winds here do not blow so violently as below. We noticed here no beasts other than the birds in the air, but saw the dung of roebucks, steenboks and such four-footed beasts; but no large lake* or standing water, and far less any of the fish said to dwell therein, as some boldly dare to assert. Such water as is found up on the Table Mountain is only in the pools lying in the hollows of the flat rocks with which the mountain in some places seems to be floored, and this gathers here from the dew of the clouds driving around there, and not (we believe) from rain; and in it there is no fish or other life.

But at last, seeing from the sinking of the sun that it was already about 3 in the afternoon, and therefore high time to return down again, we wrote our names on rocks that were found by the sides of the gorge through which we came, and then returned again to the lowland by the same route we had taken in climbing up. But there, because of the slipperiness of the long grass, we found ourselves compelled to slide downwards sitting, being forced continually to secure ourselves with our hands because of the mighty steepness; and in this downwards climb it was awful always to have to look down into the terrifying depths. However, we came safe to the place where we had left our third companion, the Mate, that morning, and found there his handkerchief tied to a tree as a sign that he had gone back down. We then climbed further down to the lowland, but not so quickly as we had expected, since from the untimely setting of the sun we found ourselves in an entirely horrible valley and terrifying jungle, where we discovered a brook flowing downwards, surrounded with many dark hollows, caves and rocks. Here we found ourselves surrounded by the steep mountain-sides, and sought for a better footpath; but before long found ourselves beset in the thick jungle by stinging nettles, caves, rocks and holes, to such an extent that we did not know whither to make our way, since we found that the path by which we had descended was too steep for us to climb up it again. Also the dusk was now at hand, and it was already so dark that we could see

nowhere to make our way up. We had however little wish to pass all that night in this dangerous hollow, or soon to become the prey of the wild beasts which we believed would find this a convenient and suitable dwelling-place. We were indeed in considerable peril here, having strayed from the right path. To quench our mighty thirst we took a cool drink from the pleasant water of this stream, but dared not delay longer in so doing, since we had no desire to pass the night in the company of the lions, tigers and snakes. We therefore with greater zeal climbed like cats with hands and feet, up the steep slope again, whereby we indeed were not a little afflicted by the stinging nettles. Thus having again come up with much toil, we then climbed further down the downwards-sloping ridge of the mountain until we reached the real lowland, and made our way onwards, in the dark and by guesswork, towards the shore. Now we again came into an awkward plight, up to our ankles in a marsh and up to our necks in the scrub, where in breaking through we disturbed a nest of large birds: these in flying up all together made such a sudden noise that my good companion, the Carpenter, who was leading the way, gave a terrible shriek, thinking he had been attacked by a tiger or lion. But his fright soon passed when he saw that it was nothing but these large birds. Finally we again reached the Dutch Fortress and came with joy into the Dutch Town, where we found our third companion, the Mate, who had turned back because of his great thirst. We told him and the others of our adventurous journey, and stayed the night on land, and next morning went aboard again without stockings or shoes, since they were mostly ruined, and with torn clothes, having seen in the journey no wild beasts except a few snakes.

We celebrated the memory of the holy Easter Feast here at the Cape, on the 5th and 6th of *April;* and on the 10th the fine ship *Zuyd Polsbroek* arrived [DR] at the roads to us, coming from the Fatherland, having left there in *November* with the ship *Amersfoort*, and having sailed with her northabout* behind England, Scotland and Ireland; and after turning southwards the *Amersfoort* was separated in storm and incessant darkness from this ship *Zuyd Polsbroek*, and since then they had not seen each other again. From our compatriots we had the following news:

That a severe plague raged in the Fatherland; that the English in enmity towards us had already taken *New Holland* [renamed New England], *Gunee* [Dutch Guiana] and other places; that in Holland and England they were strongly equipping themselves for war against each other; that a disastrous breach of the peace was to be feared ...; that also the return-fleet of the previous year had arrived very late, and almost disabled by the quantity of sick and dead; and other such bad news more, which truly did not sound very pleasing to our ears, fearing as we did that if there were to be war between us and the English, we should have to endure many more adversities and difficulties before we could come to land in the Fatherland, which also we found to be the case. Now we found ourselves compelled, in accordance with the orders of TT.EE. in Batavia to await here the two after-ships* which were to follow us from Batavia, so that we then might leave all together with our rich fleet for Patria. The first of these two ships, *Koge*, came from Batavia safely to us on the 14th of *April* [DR], having left there on the 1st of



[19] From Dapper's *Description de l'Afrique*. The flower on the left is Stapelia variegata, from a drawing by Justus Heurnius: the rest is from the artist's imagination.

February in company with the ship *Nieuwenhoven*, but having become separated from her on the way. They had seen two ships near the land here, but as these did not arrive it was to be believed that they were English. So we now awaited the other ship, which two days later came safely to anchor, to everyone's joy [DR]. Then all the longboats of the ships rapidly brought them fresh water aboard, as also refreshing, firewood, and whatever else was needed, the topmasts and yards were sent up and our farewells taken of our friends ashore, since we were now entirely ready to continue the long voyage to the Fatherland.

Having now refreshed ourselves in the lovely and healthy Table Bay for six weeks, still lying there with the return-fleet, our crews with joy raised the anchors, so that with our rich fleet of 12 ships (since the *Musschaetboom* was still missing) we set sail on the 22nd of *April* [DR], and setting out to sea met the ship *Amersfoort* coming (as said above) from the Fatherland; but we somewhat avoided her, although we drifted quietly for an hour or two close to her near the Robben Island, since we understand (but I do not know if it were true) that the plague raged not a little in that ship, about 60 men lying sick in their berths, and that the thirty-eighth man had been buried that day on the Robben Island, so that it was high time that her folk reached land and this healthy Table Bay. We prayed to Almighty GOD for a fortunate voyage to our Fatherland, and that we might arrive there safely with our valuable return-fleet; and then, being come into the open sea, set our course northwestwards....

A terrible journey: six ships lost touch in a storm: bad news of the war: Northabout: refuge at Bergen from English fleet: escorted by Dutch war-fleet: continual dangers, but at last home to Haerlem in October 1665.*

Background - continued

22/4/1665 ... the return-fleet set sail and by the evening was already out of sight ...

23/4 ... *Amersfoort* came to the roads ... already 39 dead had been set overboard ...

24/4 ... more than 80 sick, nearly all of scurvy ...

30/5 Heavy rain last night, causing the breastworks on the bastion The Elephant to collapse again, as is the yearly custom ...

8/6 Today the Commandeur ... sited the new Castle which our Lords and Masters order built here ... 5 large bastions ... around the old fort [entailing the demolition of] a row of new burgher-houses ... both our limekilns, the old hospital, and a good part of the Company's fine Garden ...

9/6 ... hookers* ... *Ape*, left Texel February [blank] with 16 sailors ... *Echoorn*, sailed December 14 from the Maas ... with 15 men ... news by letter of January 30 from our Lords and Masters that the English were at war with us though without any formal declaration ...

17/8 ... a large ship sighted ... with great joy found to be the Hon. Commandeur Isbrant Gosken, coming out in the ship *Nieuw Middelburgh* ...

26/8 In the afternoon the Hon. Commandeur Gotsken called the Council together ... after much deliberation on His Honour's proposal ... resolved that the new Fortress ... shall be set 60 roods eastwards of this present fort [he sailed on September 2]

20/9 ... a large ship ... red English flag* astern ... could not reach the roads ... sent a little skiff* with 4 men to the jetty ... the *Royal Charles*, left Surat on March 11 last ... as they knew nothing of the war we entertained them well, giving them at their departure two baskets of Cape fruits and a Persian flask of French wine for their Captain ...

21/9 ... came the Captain's brother with two other English to salute and thank the Commandeur ... made prisoners [flute* *Loosduynen*, *Bruydegom* and a shallop* prevented by calms from boarding *Royal Charles*, and all four drifted out to sea. Exchange of cannon-fire with the flute, little effect: she too slow, chase abandoned]

[1666]
Anglo-Dutch war continues. Quadruple alliance Holland, Brandenburg, Brunswick, Denmark, with France favourable. Great Fire of London.

Background - from official documents in the archives

2/1 ... today at noon the first foundation-stone was laid by the Commandeur Wagenaer [of one bastion of new Fort*, other senior officials laying the other four]

25/8 ... Towards noon ... came to anchor ... the long-awaited ship *Dordrecht* ... with the Hon. Commandeur Cornelis VAN QUAELBERGE to replace the Hon. Commandeur Wagenaer [who sailed September 29 in her] ... left Texel December 19 with 294 souls ... 112 men died on the journey ... now all but 8 or 10 men lying sick ...

26/8 ... over a hundred sick, which could not all be put into the hospital but were laid ... in the Market-hall [‘passer’]

[31/8, 1/9 see in item 15]

24/9 Wagenaer's Memorial for Quaelbergen ..of the five...redoubts which Commandeur van Riebeeck formerly erected, two have been demolished ... since they seemed about to fall, viz. Koorenhoop and Hout den Bul: the other three ... much dilapidated ... now 16 freemenburghers in the Town* ...

[Then see in item 15 to 30/12]

15 The French at Saldanha Bay 1666 (& 1670, 1671) (Plate 20 on pages 104/5)

This is best dealt with by combining the Dutch accounts in the DR and other documents, *with de Rennefort's* '*Histoire des Indes Orientales*' (*which in spite of its name deals with little but his own travels*). *The translation here is from the Leiden edition of 1688*, '*suivant la copie de Paris*' *of the same year. He sailed from La Rochelle on March 14*, *1666*, *with the fleet of ten ships taking the Marquis de Mondevergue out as Viceroy of Madagascar*.

He writes:

At midnight of December 15/16 land was sighted by moonlight. We stood away from it during the night and re-approached it in the morning, recognising it for the 'Cape de False', which is on the continent of Africa. On the seventeenth the fleet entered Table Bay.

The Dutch guard the entry to the land of Table Bay with a Fort* of four bastions, of earth, fraises* and palisades, surrounded by moats full of seawater [?]. The front is a wall of dressed stone below and of bricks above, with six guns covering the roadstead. There are 12 rooms in this Fortress as dwellings for the Governor, the chief Merchant, and the garrison*, which was 400 men strong. Near it they were at work on another fort of five bastions of dressed stone, which being completed the first is to be razed. Around it were twenty mediocre houses also occupied by the Dutch.

Table Bay is a circular hill [*sic*] four leagues in diameter, the country very lovely and very fertile. The anchorage seems safe, and French ships anchored in 6 fathoms would have no fear of being wrecked. At times there come from this Table furious squalls called Raphales, which greatly trouble the ships then there.

His account is somewhat confused. By the Diaries:

DR 31/8 ... A ship in sight: with the aid of a telescope we made out that she wore a blue [?] French flag*.

1/9. The vessel arrives. The Captain and Mate come ashore, reporting that she was a French ship of the fleet of the Hon. Caron, named *St Jan*. His Honour had left Rochelle for Madagascar with that fleet on March 15 [*sic*] last, being ten large and small vessels under the command of the Viceroy Montevergne [*sic*], and this small vessel manned by 60 men had lost touch with the fleet during the night of July 15 last ...

30/10. (*St Jean* still there, now called 'hooker*'; but the name is wrong, unless there were two of the same name - see below.)

10/12. [Large ship entered flying a white flag*, but forced by adverse wind to anchor under Robben Island.]

11/12 [A Skipper sent in a shallop* to help her in.]

12/12 She arrived at the roads, being the long-awaited Admiral* of the French East-Indies fleet, *St Jan*, 300 men, having on board Mons: de Monde-Vergne. She had ... become separated from her companions near Tristan d'Acunha, so that these may now be expected daily. The Commandeur sent the Merchant* Sieur Lacus on board soon after her arrival, to congratulate H.E. on his safe arrival and welcome him heartily, with the offer of good accommodation if he would be pleased to land, but on his return he reported that the offer had been politely declined.

13/12 Letter from the Commandeur to the Viceroy, sent with a sheep, milk and eggs: 'I was greatly pleased to learn that Y.E. had arrived in good health ... Had I known of it earlier I should have greeted Y.E. with more guns ... You will therefore be pleased to pardon us, and to be assured that, if you should land and accept our hospitality, all such attentions and honour will be paid you as lie in our power ... I am prepared to pay you a visit on board in person, and greet you personally, should you allow me to do so ... in a manner consonant with the respect due to my office and to my Lords and Masters. I therefore send my Secretary [De Yonge] to you as the bearer of this letter ...' About 3 o'clock in the afternoon the Secretary returned, reporting that H.E. had accepted all the Cape products with great pleasure, but had postponed his landing, and had also declined to accept our visit ... [Text of reply given.]

14/12. The Dispensier*, Sieur Boccaert, was today sent on board the French ship to provide H.E. with news and fresh garden-produce, and to express to him the wish of the Commandeur to welcome him personally on board this day. This request was politely accepted, and thereupon the Commandeur and some of his officials went on board that afternoon; and, after the ceremonies had been performed and a banquet partaken of, returned ashore that evening with a salute of some guns.

(*It was an expensive banquet: it cost van Quaelberg his post - in the letter from the Lords XVII dismissing him from the Company's service this visit to a foreign ship was given as the chief motive for their action*.)

Everyone was very, *very polite - the French were then* '*benevolently neutral*' *towards Denmark and Holland against England. But some Frenchmen talked indiscreetly*, *and on December 15 a party of seven men was sent overland to Saldanha Bay* '*since it was understood that the French intended to take possession of that Bay*'.

Resolutions 16/12. Since we have understood, not only from various rumours heard from private persons serving in the French ship *St. Jan* under the command of the Viceroy of Madagascar ... but also (among other things) in conversation with his deputies, that they had orders from their King to erect a fort in Saldanha Bay if they found this suitable, and to take possession of the place. This we verbally opposed, making it known to them that the place was in our possession, and daily frequented in the Name of the Company by our freemen, and maintained by them according to the Commission given

them, and that for this reason they [the French] could not seize the place without infringing on the rights of the Hon. Coy. But seeing that we had there no residence nor fort, therefore doubt was felt whether we could sustain in Europe [by process of law] our rights of possession, and it was therefore unanimously resolved ... that the seven men already set aboard the *Bruijt* should be disembarked and strengthened with four soldiers, and Serjeant Wederholt in command, to send them thither, by land because of the contrary wind. The Serjeant was further ordered to remain with 5 men at the watering-place ['waterplaats'], and there make it look as if he were about to throw up a fort, for which purpose gear and victuals for 6 to 8 weeks should follow with the [Saldanha Bay] freemen's boat the Bruijt; and the remaining six men to be divided two by two on the Jutten, Marcus and Schapen Islands lying in the said Bay; without in the least interfering with what the French might do there, merely letting us know here from time to time of their doings, so that we may act accordingly.

The Bruijt (*or* Bruyd *or* Bruydegom *elsewhere*) *left on that same day*, *December 16*, *arriving at Saldanha Bay next day according to the report below* [*DR 22/1/1667*], *overtaking a French vessel on the way*, *which arrived on December 18. As de Rennefort writes:*

Monsieur de Mondevergue sent Messieurs de Lopis, his nephew; Vimont, Lieutenant of the Admiral; La Bonté, Lieutenant of the Company of Monsieur Bechon; with a Dutchman of Table Bay and two Flemish pilots, in the little vessel Saumacque to reconnoitre the Bay of Sardaigne, which lies to the North of Table Bay. They made a very exact report, which however is too long to reproduce here in extenso. It states that there is a good anchorage; abundance of fish, wild beasts and game; that seal-hunting could give oil and skins. They said nothing of dealings with the natives, having seen none during their stay. Also that it is difficult to take in water there, the best being six leagues from the anchorage, near which there is only one small spring, always muddy. They set up a pillar on the shore with the Royal Arms and the inscription '*Ludovico Decimo-quarto regnante*, *Franciscus Lopius Montevergius in Orientem Legatus posuit anno 1666*'. They noted that there was no timber other than for firewood. They saw the tracks of many lions and rhinoceroses near the springs, and many roebucks. They found five islands in the bay, on two of which they considered that it would be possible to grow some plants and feed cattle, if water could be dug out: the others barren, where only cormorants could live, or other birds living on fish and seaweed.

All this was unknown to the Commandeur until January 22, *when he received the report below: meanwhile on December 17 four more French ships arrived*, *next day two more*, *the following day three*, *and on December 21* '*the last of the French fleet*' *according to the DR. It is odd that* Saumacque, *of de Rennefort's account*, *is not mentioned; but even without her twelve are named*, *not ten as in de Rennefort. Twelve warships: what could the Commandeur have done even had he known of the* '*annexation*' *of Saldanha Bay? and semi-allies at that? What he might well have left undone was the welcome to the Viceroy:*

DR 28/12 ... Advice received that H.E. ... intends to land tomorrow, whereupon all preparations were made for his reception ...

29/12 ... Sieur Lacus was sent in the shallop* to escort H.E. to land ... After about two hours he arrived at the Jetty* with H.E., who was there greeted and welcomed by the Commandeur and his officials, and escorted from thence into the Fort by the armed burgers and the soldiers, with the firing of cannon and muskets, after which H.E. visited the Company's Garden, while the midday meal was in preparation. This being ended, H.E. drove out into the country with his suite, the day being passed greatly to his satisfaction.

De Rennefort puts it more picturesquely:

Monsieur de Mondevergue, on account of some ceremony regarding the salutes at his arrival, with which he had reason to be dissatisfied, delayed going ashore until the 29th of December, when he landed with the two Directors, to the sound of the cannon of all the French ships, and of two Dutch ones which were in the roads. The Commandant received him as he landed from his shallop*, and conducted him between two ranks of soldiers to the apartment of Madame his wife, who received them in the outer hall. She conducted them into another, better ornamented, where they partook of dinner, neatly and abundantly served, with such rejoicings that the large cannons which had not until now ever been fired from this fort, were now shot off to the healths of the King and the States General, so that not a windowpane was spared by the thunder of their discharge. After dinner Monsieur de Mondevergue, the Dutch Commandant and his wife, and the two French Directors took carriage, the rest being given horses; and with an escort of Dutch cavalry went two leagues inland to a house belonging to the Dutch East-India Company, very well built and very sumptuously furnished [Rondebosch]. In a large garden were all sorts of herbs and vegetables, among others cabbages of a fantastic size, as also two olive-trees heavily laden with fruit, pretty fine reinette apple-trees, bonchrétien pear-trees, orange-trees, walnuts, chestnuts, and all sorts of other fruit- or flower-bearing trees. Two arpents* of vines were enclosed here, of which the grapes would be fully ripe in another three weeks. Some bunches of them were already eatable, and their wine, according to those who had drunk it, was similar to that of the Rhine. Around this house and as far as the sea there were Dutch dwellings in the form of colonies, which were well established, and the colonists held their lands from the Company with no charge other than a small tax, and the obligation to sell their wheat and other produce to the Company at its fixed price, and to buy from it whatever they should require. They were forbidden to deal in money with the natives of the country, so that the coinage should not be wasted; and it is unnecessary to use coins, since they give a sheep or a cow for a piece of tobacco.

De Rennefort has nothing further except a few superficial remarks on the Hottentots, better given elsewhere. To return to the Diary:

DR 30/12. Very early this morning H.E. suddenly decided to return on board, fearing lest in the afternoon it might again blow as strongly as yesterday, so that he would be forced to remain on shore. [Or was it some apprehension of the results of the ‘annexation’, of which he now had advice, *Saumaque* having left there on December 27?]. He

accordingly departed with the same ceremonies as had been done on his arrival.

5/1/1667 [Complimentary letters received from the Viceroy and other senior officials, texts given.]

7/1. The French fleet departs, saluting the Fort with five guns, which salute was returned....

22/1. The Corporal and six men sent out on the 15th December last ... return, delivering a Journal kept by the [Saldanha Bay] freeman Jochum Marquaert during his stay in that Bay. [The Serjeant and the other four men are not mentioned here.] It is as follows: Anno 1666, December the 16th: we left the Fort this day, and passed Robben Island the following day. On reaching the open sea we saw that the French vessel [*Saumaque*] was ahead of us, about 3 miles* to the West: we therefore did our best to overtake her, reaching the Saldanha Bay at 10 o'clock in the evening. On the morning of the 18th we found the Frenchman in our wake, steering for the watering-place, whither we also hastened as fast as we were able; but fearing that she might arrive before us and land men before we could do so, we made for the nearest land, from there sending one of our men thither armed with a musket, with orders that, should the French come there and ask what he was doing, he should reply that the six of them had been stationed there on behalf of the Company, to keep watch against the Hottentoos, lest they should spoil the water. We understood however that Bartholomeus Borms [the 'Dutchman of Table Bay' mentioned by de Rennefort] had informed them otherwise: he at once went inland with them, to give them information of everything. We therefore decided to go with them, in order to see what they intended doing. Guided by him they reached a large valley, to investigate what good soil might be found there, and for what it might serve; but learning that there was no water there in Summer, they decided to look for another place the next day. This they did, returning to the aforesaid watering-place where they set up near the water a large post, to which was affixed a leaden coat-of-arms of the King of France, with some words below it which we were unable to understand. They then returned on board until the 19th, when they again landed with ten or twelve men, and Bartholomeus showed them the locations of all the springs and valleys, large and small, which much pleased them, although they were somewhat displeased to see that we had already affixed the arms of the Company to a post there. This same evening the Corporal Aerent Vliet and his men safely arrived at the place ordered to them, and on the 20th they were distributed two by two on the different islands according to the Instructions, on each of which the arms of the Company were set up. When the French discovered this, they had no more to say than that the Company held the best spots. We remained at the watering-place from the 21st to the 23rd, awaiting the Serjeant and the other soldiers, but since these did not arrive, and seeing the Frenchmen again coming ashore, we also went to the beach to ask their Captain what they meant by the erection of the post there, to which he replied that it was a mark of the Viceroy, and that Mons: Quaelbergh had authorised it. We therefore made sail, awaiting a wind for our return to the Cape. On the 27th the vessel again left the Bay, and we would have wished to send a

letter by her, but hoping for a favourable wind we did not do so. On the 28th two [French] hookers* arrived. We hoisted our flag at the stern, and their captains came aboard us to ask what vessel we were. We replied, Of the Company. Further, What we were doing here? To which we replied that we were always cruising in that Bay. They enquired, Whether no fresh water was to be had there? We replied, Yes, but not much. Asked whether we could not show it to them we did so, and the following day they landed on the Island [? which], where they shot hundreds of gulls for eating, and caught much fish, which they salted and dried. On the 29th we sent to the Corporal on Schapen Island the bread, pork, tobacco and brandy intended for the others [? the Serjeant's party], since we could not know for how long they might have to remain there without receiving any more food. On January the 2nd another French vessel arrived, a frigate*, having caught many fish: they also went ashore to shoot. On the 12th the three Frenchmen left. On the 13th we took in water for ourselves and the men on the islands: at the Schapen Island we were told that a man had been on the land near them with a letter, which, since he could not deliver it, he had hidden away for us to find. We sent off our boat for this, and found it to be an order to the Corporal to return to the Cape with his men. On the 14th and 15th the wind was too strong to allow us to collect the men from the various islands, and on the 16th it was a dead calm. On the 17th we sailed to the Jutten Island to take off the two soldiers there, and thence to the Marques [*sic*] Island, and then to the Schapen Island. Having collected all the men we landed them at the watering-place, from whence they could proceed by land to the Cape ...

The whole affair was of course reported to Holland, and by their letter of November 20, 1667, the Lords XVII ordered the removal of the French marker; and on July 7, 1668 the DR records that it had been 'cut down and burned'. No post was maintained there until the orders of the XVII dated December 19, 1668 were received; and complied with in April of the following year.

The reason given by Holland for this re-occupation was a fear of further French action. It was a justified fear:

DR 23/8/1670 ... arrives the French ship l'Europe, 80 men, having left Rochelle on April 10 last with eight other ships bound for the Indies. Although her officers had been instructed to make a rendezvous at Saldaigne bay and refresh there, they had been prevented from this by adverse winds and forced to put in here, greatly lacking water, and requested the Hon. Commandeur to be allowed to take in what they needed and to purchase the necessary refreshings, which was granted on the usual conditions ... the fleet was commanded by Mons: de la Haye, proceeding to Madagascar as successor there to the Viceroy, to wit Mons: de Mondaverne.... We accordingly sent a letter overland to Saldaigne bay, advising the commander there of these facts, and instructing him to send here without delay all the cattle grazing on the islands and on the mainland near him. [Letter transcribed.]

26/8. [Letter from Saldanha Bay:] on August 22nd there came to anchor here the French frigate* *St Jean bajou*, 50 guns and 350 men. She anchored between the Meuwen

Island and Salamander Bay and sent a shallop* to the said island for refreshings, the men shooting four of the sheep I had placed there not long ago, thinking them to be wild ones. The next day, the 23rd a Lieutenant landed, and politely asked for permission to take in water, which was as politely granted. Thereupon the Superintendent [Corporal Calmbach] invited him and those with him into the house, and treated them to a glass of brandy.... He set one man, together with a Hottentoo, on the Schapen Island, to prevent the French from landing there. [Apologies for the 4 sheep killed, the men 'not having in all their lives previously seen such sheep'.]

28/8 ... [Letter from Calmbach:] On the 25th three more French vessels came to anchor under the command of Mons: Durell as Admiral* in the *Navarre*. The shallop* of the *St Jean* brought on shore a Lieutenant, who in the name of his Captain requested that they be allowed to wash their linen on shore, which I could not refuse.... I have sent away 19 oxen and 52 sheep with some Hottentoos to be looked after at their kraals. During the night 40 Hottentoos, armed with assegays, bows and arrows, came here to offer their services to help me, should the French desire to take possession: they still lie hidden in the bushes, with their arms, waiting to see what the French may intend. These latter have landed all their sick near the place of their anchorage.... [dated August 26].

31/8. [Polite complaint by the Captain of *L'Europe* of exorbitant charges by one of our freemen for lodging their sick: the burghers requested by the Commandeur not to make such. She sailed for Saldanha Bay on September 5.]

1/9. [Letter from Saldanha Bay: unable to send the animals to the Fort as ordered, the Hottentots being alarmed by so many armed men; but had managed to get 122 sheep to the mainland from Schapen and 15 from Meeuwen Islands, the French having now killed 11 there.] Last Wednesday [August 27] the Admiral landed with some 200 men, going to the upper watering-place and the valleys around it....

*Next day the French frigate** La Juille (*DR spelling*) *came to Table Bay to get refreshing for the fleet*, *and was allowed* (*after a first refusal*) *to buy from the freemen*, '*since there seemed to be no other way to get these hungry foreigners from off our necks*'. *It did not dislodge them: on September 10 two of the officers brought a message from the Captain*, '*delivering it with as much vehemence as if in a declaration of war*', *protesting against the way he had been treated*, *and especially that the fort had not replied to his salute on arrival - by an oversight*, *the Council said*.

DR 20/9. [Arrival of oxen and sheep from Saldanha Bay, with a letter from Calmbach:] ... fully seven tents had been pitched by the French, full of sick, while the others went around everywhere prying ['doorsnuffelen'] and were busied in digging wells for water, which however seemed to give little or no results. Two of the ships had gone to the St Helena Bay to get fresh water from the Berg River.

27/9 ... found good by the Council to call in the present commander at Saldanha Bay ... the Serjeant Jeronimus Cruse sent there ...

2/10 ... this Serjeant however unexpectedly arrived here this afternoon in great agitation of mind, and informed us that on September 30 ... a party of fully-armed

French soldiers had landed and drawn up in order of battle around the Hon. Company's post there; that some French officials had come to him ... saying that they had been instructed to haul down the Hon. Company's flag and hoist their own in its place, and therefore ordered him and his men not to interfere, on pain of hanging. A little later they took away the Company's flag and hoisted a French one, with the firing of a salute and the cry of *Vive le Roy de France!* then taking him by force to the Admiral's ship, where ... with severe threats asked how and by whose orders the pole erected there by orders of their King had been destroyed. To this the said Serjeant replied that he knew nothing at all of this; and when they saw that their attempts were fruitless ... they again released him, and gave him a letter ... to the Merchant Sr. de Cretser, to be sent by one of our men [it complained of the destruction of 'the arms and tokens of His Majesty', of difficulties put in the way of the purchase of cattle, of unduly scanty salutes, and of the inciting of ten soldiers to desert] ... as also they took him ashore again ... but with the precaution that when he landed they made him hold up his trousers with his hands, so that he could not run so easily. When they reached the Company's post it was already almost dark, and this the said Serjeant took advantage of, under the pretext of seeing to some of his men getting into hiding in the bushes, and at nightfall escaped ... He reported also that the other 4 men of the post were taken prisoners, as also some of our freemen lying in the bay to fish, their vessel being made fast to the Admiral's ship....'

They were released later, the soldiers arriving on October 8, the fishermen on October 9, reporting that the French had sailed the day before, and bringing another letter of protest from de la Haye to de Cretser.

There was not much that the Council could do about it. A protest was prepared and sent overland to de la Haye, repairs were hastened to the dilapidated old square Fort and to the one usable bastion of the new one, and shore-patrols were ordered. The protest arrived at the Bay too late: a copy was prepared and given to a French merchant-ship then in Table Bay, to be taken on to Madagascar for de la Haye there.*

Surprisingly, nothing was immediately done about the new French marker. It was not until February 16 next year, 1671, that the Council decided to remove it, taking as a precedent the orders given regarding the previous case, in the letter of November 20, 1667 mentioned above; and it was not until March 27 that a Corporal and three men were sent to do this, to set up a V.O.C. marker, and to occupy the post. (*By an odd coincidence the French* Maria *arrived just then, anchoring in Table Bay on March 7 with de Mondevergue himself on board, on his way home after handing over to de la Haye; but there was no raking up of past incidents. On the contrary, he asked and was given leave to lodge on shore during his stay, and did so for a week, bidding us farewell 'with great politeness,' the DR records.*)

The expected war with the French broke out next year, 1672, but Saldanha Bay was not affected, and no further French claims were ever made there. So ended a curious episode which might have had far-reaching consequences.

[1667]
Anglo-Dutch war continues until July 31, Peace of Breda: De Ruyter raids Medway. March 31 secret Anglo-French treaty. War between France and Spain in the Netherlands.
Background - from official documents in the archives

[DR 5/1, 7/1, 22/1 see in item 15]

10/5 ... letters received from the Lords XVII dated October 23, 1666 ... ordering that work on the new Fort* to cease until further orders, and our garrison to be reduced as far as possible, sending the excess men to Batavia ...

20/11 [Letter thus dated from XVII, quoted in Resolutions of 16/2/71] ... the pole with the French arms set up ... in the Bay of Saldanhia ... ordering, if the said pole were not already removed, this to be done at once ...

28/11 ... arrived *Buynskerken* ... sailed from Texel June 3 [news of de Ruyter's Medway raid]

24/12 ... appeared in the afternoon ... the three return-ships ... the flutes* *Wapen van Hoorn* and *Alphen* ... and the yacht* *Constantia* ... left Batavia October 8 ... under the command of Jan van der Werf, Skipper of *Wapen van Hoorn* ...

16 Volquardt Iversen

(*See also item 5*.) *Five years at Surat*, *then to Batavia*, '*three months and five days underway*', *May to August*.

I had to remain at *Batavia* until October of the year 1667, and then we set sail for the Fatherland with three ships, *Wapen van Hoorn*, *Alfen* and *Konstantia*. We set our course for the *Kabo de bona Esperance* where we arrived safely after enduring much labour and danger, since on our way, and especially when we neared the *Cape*, we had terrible storms ... We entered the Table Bay [DR 24/12] and remained there for a whole month to repair our ship and set her again in order, as also to take in fresh food.

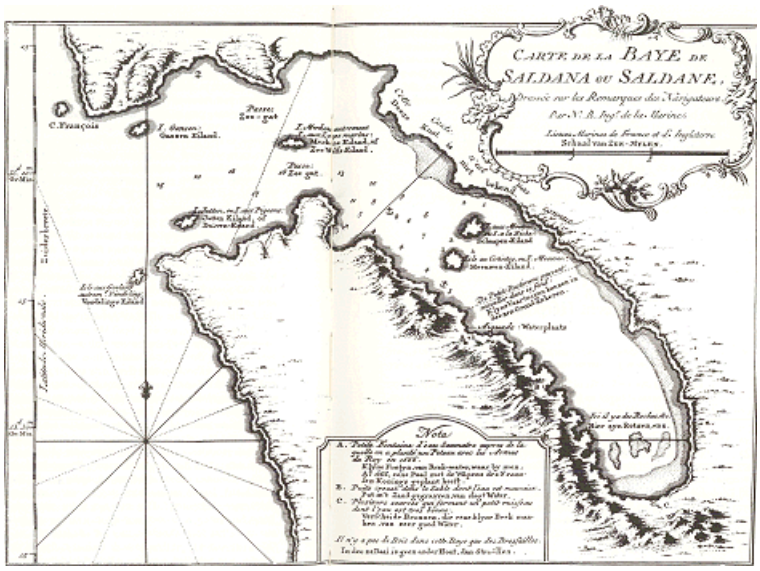
When I landed here I was astonished at the great changes I noticed since I had been there thirteen [*sic:* eleven] years before, in which time the *Dutch* had excellently built up the place. Previously there was nothing but a little Fort and a Garden* near it, which was now grown to fifteen morgen*, beside which a pretty large town* had been built. There is now an excellent Church* there, and many brick houses built in the Dutch manner, since they burn lime and make bricks there. There are various taverns and inns in the town, where one can take one's comfort; but they are somewhat costly, since for a meal one pays ten stivers or more, for a can* of Brunswick mom* a Rixdollar, and the same

also for Spanish wine, or for French twelve stivers or more. One can also have brandy and arrack, but twice as dear as in *Holstein*.

There are many citizens and farmers here, who come from all nations [*sic*] in the Dutch ships to live here and do business, and get a good living. The farmers cultivate the land, and are prosperous. The citizens and farmers keep cattle, and especially sheep, which they sell to the mariners when they come here to get fresh victuals. They are for the most part freemen* and pay a moderate tax to the *Dutch*. Besides the Fortress*, which has many guns and a strong garrison, they also have a redoubt* in which a guard is set, and in addition fifty horsemen who have their camp [see Cavalry-Post*] outside the Fortress, to keep good watch, and when the savages or *Hottentots* come with their beasts, oxen, cows and sheep, to sell them, and are seen afar off, then some of these horsemen ride out to meet them, and bring only so many of them to the fort as are allowed at one time. Then the sale is carried out there, which consists only in bargaining and barter, the Governor taking the beasts against tobacco, copper rings, beads of glass and other materials, knives, looking-glasses and such-like trifles. I once saw how the Governor bought fifty oxen and sixty sheep for very small trifles that cost him not much more than ten rixdollars. He sells part of these beasts to the citizens and farmers, who keep them and sell them to the ships that come from *Europe* or the *Indies*.

When folk other than the *Dutch* come here they must pay for their anchorage*, and also cannot take on their fresh water without charge. The *Dutch* well know how to take their profit here, and will little by little go further and seek further advantages, since with so little pains they have got a firm foothold in *Africa*. The *Savages*, who are unprovided with arms and are afraid of powder, will be able to offer them little resistance.

These natives ... are wild, beast-like people, though not so black as the *Moors* of *Ethiopia*. They smear all their bodies with oil and the fat from the guts of slaughtered beasts in which the dung still remains, from which they give off a revolting smell. They eat these guts without washing them, only scraping the dung out with their fingers and laying them a little on the embers, even before they are half-cooked; at times when they are very hungry they eat them entirely raw. They go all naked, men, women and children, except that the older ones hang a little piece of goatskin before their privities. Their ornaments on arms and legs are copper rings, or for some of them also the raw guts of beasts which they also eat raw when they are somewhat dry. When it is cold they hang over their shoulders a lion-skin, or a cloak made of lion- or goat-skins, and this also they smear with oil so that they stink nastily. They take the blubber of the dead whales which are washed ashore, and from this make the oil. They are called *Hottentots* [see Hottentots*, Name] because when they are merry and dance they continually call out ‘Hottentots, Hottentots’. They are a lazy and grimy people who will not work; and the *Dutch* have taken some of them to do their dirty work, for which they receive tobacco, rice and other food. Otherwise they are idle, and like to sit without doing anything. When one wishes to get them to work, such as at digging, churning, sweeping and cattleminding, one must first give them a little and let them hope for more when the work is



[20] Map of Saldanha or Saldane Bay, drawn from the accounts of travellers by N.B., Engineer of the Navy. Scale of Sea-leagues of France and England/Scale of Sea Miles.* From the Elliot collection, Cape Archives: source unknown. The captions are: Cape Francois [Schooner Rock]. Gansen Island [Malgas Island]. Jutten or Pigeon Island [Jutten Island]. Goelans or Vindelings Island/Vondelings Island [Vondelings Island]. Channel. Merkens or Sea-wolves Island [Marcus Island]. Channel 'This coast is unknown'. Sheep Island or Isle a la Biche [Schapen/Island]. Cotintay or Meeuwen Island [Meeuwen Island]. 'Small vessels can anchor here.' Watering-place, A: 'Small source of brackish water, near which in 1666 was planted a post with the arms of the King of France'. B: 'Well dug in the sand, bad water'. 'Here are rocks, etc.' C: 'Several springs which form a small brook of very good water.' 'There is no wood here except brushwood.'

done; and when they receive this they go off.

When our ship was repaired and set in order, and we had taken on board all that was necessary for our journey to *Holland*, we set sail again [DR 24/1/68. Ascension for turtles and fish]. From here we sailed to the Flemish Islands [Azores], where we did not wish to touch since we were not sure if it was war or peace with the *English* [news of peace arrived only 5/2/68 at the Cape, DR]. We therefore passed far from them and set our course [Northabout*] for the *Shetlands* ... and so sailed through the North Sea. Thus with God's help we came to anchor in the *Vlie*, on the day after Pentecost of the year 1668, where we waited for three days and were then taken to *Amsterdam*. In that city I received my full pay from the East-India Company, and from there set out to *Husum*, my Fatherland, to my old father: there I was greeted with joy by him and by my other friends, since they had for long taken me for dead.

God, the Lord be heartily praised and thanked, Who gave me life again after dangerous shipwreck, and rescued me from many other perils, and brought me back home again in good health. Amen.

17 Albrecht Herport

(*See also item 9*.) *Sailed from Batavia on October 6*, *1667 in* Wapen van Hoorn, *with* Constantia, Alfen: *Iversen* (*item 16*) *was in the same fleet. Cocos Islands. Mauritius*.

On the 13th [December] we saw land in the early morning, and recognised it as the Capo Falso. That same day at noon it began to blow hard, so that we again ran out to sea, and afterwards must heave to there, and let outselves drift at the mercy of GOD. This storm lasted for nine full days, whereby one of our ships, *Constantia*, was driven away from us. After this the wind changed to our advantage, so that we could again set sail.

On the 22nd we again sighted land, this being again the Capo Falso, wherefore we returned out to sea again, and next day sighted the Capo de Bona Sperança, and could also recognise the Lion and Table Mountains.

On December 24th, being Christmas Eve, we arrived safely in the harbour, and anchored there, where the ship *Constantia* rejoined us [DR 24/12 has them as outside the bay]. That same evening we had a strong offshore wind which came from the mountains, so that we must lower our yard and topmast [read ‘yards and topmasts’], and the ship must lie to two anchors.

After this we went ashore, and refreshed ourselves with all sorts of fresh foods,

and filled our casks with fresh water, and also made ready all the guns on the ships [news of the peace arrived on 5/2/68 only, DR].... A small whale or Nord-Caper was caught then also, and afterwards we amused ourselves with fishing; and there is so much fish there that on one line in four casts we took so much that we could hardly bring it into our shallop*.

On January 24th [DR], after we had lain there four weeks, we again set sail, and with some salutes sailed out of the harbour of the Capo de bona Sperança....

Ascension for turtles and fish. Sargasso: 'the Grosch-Sea, which extends for 100 miles, and through which we must travel for eight days. This weed is a sort of grass on which grow little berries like pepper.' News of peace with England. Course North-East for the Shetlands: 'We were surprised to see no land ... after some time we sighted land to our left, and did not know what land it could be ... but our navigators assumed that it must be Iceland' - they were actually off the Davis Strait, which says little for Dutch navigation. Northabout* through the Shetland Islands. Amsterdam.*

[1668]

January Anglo-Dutch alliance against France, joined in April by Sweden. May 2, Peace of Aix-la-Chapelle between France and Spain. Calcutta founded as English post. Bombay handed over to the East-India Company.

Background - from official documents in the archives

24/1 ... the Fiscaal* going aboard the said [return-] ships to muster them properly and apprehend all stowaways* ... About three hours after noon ... these return-ships quickly passed out of sight ...

5/2 ... about noon sailed in ... the flute *Duijnvliet* ... sailed October 2 from Texel ... our Masters advise us by their letters received by her the attainment of the wished-for peace between the Crown of England and our State, to take effect here in the South on April 24 only ...

16/6 ... comes into the bay ... the *Hoff van Breeda* ... left Texel December 27 last year ... bringing the Hon. Commandeur Jacob BORGHORST (who was very ill and weak) specially chosen by the full assembly of the Lords XVII to replace the Hon. Commandeur Quaelbergh ...

7/7 ... Corporal Bosman returns about noon from the Saldanhiabaey ... reporting that he had cut to pieces the pole set up there by the French, and had burnt these ...

23/7 ... comes in the ship *Zuyt Polsbroeck* ... left Texel April 12 with 279 men, including the Upper-Merchant Arnout van Overbeeke ... on the way 5 dead, but encumbered with few sick ...

18 Arnout van Overbeke

Translated from his '*Alle de Rymverken ...*', *Amsterdam 1699* (*first edition 1672*). *This text is by a long way the most difficult of all those dealt with*, *and some passages are still doubtful in spite of consultation with several experts. He sailed in* Zuyd Polsbroek *on April 12*, *1668 from Texel*.

I asked a certain sailor who happened to come into the Kajuyt*, how he came to be on his way to the East Indies, since previously he had been a broker at Amsterdam. He answered, that a certain Pieter Janssen Duyf, formerly an innkeeper near the Playhouse and now also a sailor in our ship, once having thirty guests at a drinking-party in his house, had made them so tipsy, that they all swore to it and signed, but that nevertheless he had brought along only eleven of them, the rest having backed out. With such and suchlike matters, on Friday July 2 we reached the latitude of 33.18 [South], and that morning at sunrise, with a westerly wind, in rainy and murky weather, we sighted the land to the North of the Table Bay and Robben Island, 2 or 3 miles* distant. I went up from the Gunner's* Room to look, since [I had expected] the land to be much higher. We held a thanksgiving service, as was proper....

That afternoon [DR 22/7] we made the *Bay* and anchored. The senior officers went to salute the Commandeur, so that we [others] went off strolling here and there, and I reckoned that we were now at the house 'of the *Hart*' [?]. I could not tell you much about the Cape without padding [my story], which I have avoided doing thus far, there being little to tell. In the first place, it was Winter; and in the second place, I did not wish to sleep a night or two in the open, [just] to put up a flock of ostriches or some wild deer.... Besides, I did not wish to ask the Commandeur for the loan of 7 or 8 horses; and so I saw no monsters except the Commandeur himself. I was in his good books for the first ten days; but then, since the ex-Commandeur, Heer Cornelis van Quaelbergen, was to travel with us to Batavia, I got into touch with him to ask how he, our Borghorst, should be received on board. This the blighter took so amiss (since he always thought that people were talking about him, even if in conversation with only one person) that, when I came to ask him whether there were anything aboard which it would be useful to him if our Skipper took it along, so that I could give orders to invite our friends to the farewell-feast the next day, he replied '*Have you come to fool or make fun of me?*' I said, that I did not enter his office to receive such a reply, and that I was showing him more respect than was due from me; and so I went off.

Next day our friends came, and the Commandeur said 'Sir, with your permission I should like a glass of small beer, please.' I said 'Sir, would you not care for a glass of mom*?' (which is a delicacy here). '*Give me water*,' the brute said, '*that is good enough for me*.' I regret nothing so much as that I did not ask the fathead what sort of water he wanted, sea-water or - some other kind. Well, what the devil! I was on my home ground!

All his quarrelsomeness came from the fact that Quaelbergen was still so beloved that no one was very willing to have anything to do with him. Even the Hottentots, who each year give a free-will present to the Commandeur, were fed up with him: 'What sort of a Captain is that?' they said, 'always *Sieckum*!' (that is to say sick, bad, grumpy, uglyeverything that is no good is *sieckum*, thus bad tobacco is 'sieckum Tabak,' etc.); and that made our friend mad. He wants to get by force what in reality can be had only by affection. For that matter, he punishes himself every evening with a few glasses of spirits, which one of those in his confidence brings him under cover.

The people here grow up wild, and nearly all the women (as our folk themselves told me, since such investigation was not proper for me under such rule) have as it were a wattle hanging over their you-know-what [see Apron*]; but they insisted, that this is an appendage which they have from childhood. The men have their upper bodies and their privities covered with a beast-skin: the women the same, but these in addition have their legs loosely wound around with guts. Both men and women smear and anoint themselves with a certain kind of fat (otherwise they would not be so yellow-black), to close the sweat-pores against the cold; but I swear to you, that he who could not keep his hands off these anointed ones must have a murderous knife [penis].

While I was there a sea-cow was shot a day's journey or two from the fort, near a river in which many of them dwell. They brought the foot to the Commandeur, cut off at the ankle; it was truly no smaller than that of an elephant, so that it must have been a terrible beast; but not many of them are seen.

We set out again from there on August 12 [DR], after lying there for 14 days, and on Sunday morning got out to sea again after towing for half an hour, to the joy of all the crew who were plagued enough. I was not too well myself: I could throw everything up three times better than drop anything down, but at last I released the prisoner which I had carried under my heart for 8 days.

So we trundled along, well pleased to have lost sight of Africa: the little *Cape Birds*, white and speckled with-black [Cape Doves] followed us by thousands, as indeed they had also met us 14 days before we reached the Cape....

Background - continued

11/8/1668 [*Zuyt Polsbroek* sailed, with Quaelbergen and family, and Overbeke]

28/11 ... cast anchor in-the roads the new ship the *Burgh van Leijden* ...

29/11 ... comes in the flute* *Elburgh* ... had sailed alone from Texel June 20 last with 107 heads ... one man died on the way, the rest in pretty good health ...

3/12 ... comes tacking into the bay a large 'spiegelschip*' ... the *Eendracht*, July 29 this year from the Maas with 306 engaged men ... on the way lost 17 persons, none or few sick ... Informed that two soldiers from the flute *Elburgh* had been fighting with swords ... one severely wounding the other ... called Andries Godtfried Fleyscher of Neuremburg ... the culpable named Thomas Ert of Oldenburgh took flight inland ... the said patient died ... orders given for the culprit's apprenhension [captured 5/12, sentenced 6/12]

7/12 Comes sailing into the bay ... the ship *Casteel van Maidenblick* ... Towards 11 o'clock the sentence ... was read to him [Ert, above] and soon after his execution was carried out by 'harquebuscade' ...

19 David Tappen

(*See also item 44*.) *Translated from his* '*Fünftzehen-Jährige ... Reisebreschreibung ...*', *published at Hanover and Wolfenbüttel in 1704. This is one of the few accounts written in a light-hearted* (*and sometimes rather bawdy*) *vein*, *and appears to be almost entirely from his own observations: at any rate when he is giving second-hand information* (*I suspect from Schreyer of item 21*) *he says so*, *and there are none of the plagiarisms*, *often word for word*, *which disfigure the pages of so many early writers. It contains some twenty pages of very valuable information on the Dutch East-Indiamen*, *not translated here*.

Tappen left his home at Halle in 1667. Taken on through a crimp at Amsterdam as a soldier: he gives details of what was issued him against a credit-note of 150 florins*, *to be deducted from his pay. Sailed in* Elburg *from Texel on October 2*, *1667*, *but driven back by storms. Channel. Driven off course to the West Indies. Equator. Landed at Fayal*, *trouble with the authorities. Rations cut; back to Holland. Sailed again on June 14*, *1668* (*Hague codex 4389 folio 58 has the sailings as 2/10/67 but 20/6/68*). *Channel route again*.

On October 6 we saw many birds called Piggewyns, a sign that we were not far from the Cabo de Boa Esperance. A few days later we saw also many sea-dogs and small whales, called by the Dutch Nord-Capers: these are a sort of fish 13 to 14 ells long, and blow out the water as do whales, and when they float on the surface they look like old dead trees. On October 13 our Mate saw the Table Mountain, and as we came somewhat nearer we saw also the Lion Hill; but because it was evening and already dark we dared not close the land because of the sandbanks and rocks, and so remained at sea all that night. But in the early morning we steered for land, and came to anchor [DR 29/11] before the Fortress. The shallop* was launched and took our Master and Accountant ashore, where they delivered the letters sent with us from Holland. Next day, October 15, our 22 sick were taken ashore and cared for in the Hospital*. On the same day [DR 3/12] my comrade Andreas Gottfried Fleischer went ashore in our longboat, where he met a soldier, by name Thomas N. of Oldenburg ['N' = 'Name unknown to me': it was Ert], with whom he had formerly been at enmity. They then began to exchange words, and challenged each other to the sword, and so scuffled below the Table Mountain. When the inhabitants saw this they ran between them, and with clubs broke Fleischer's sword; and so went off, thinking that all would now be well. But this Thomas had thrust his sword through Fleischer, who two hours later was sewn up in a calico sheet and buried. The other took to the bush, but was captured by the savages after a few days and brought to the Dutch, and executed [DR 7/12]. After the execution the Hottentots (as the savages are called) brought in a hunter* who had wounded a lion but not mortally,

and had been seized by it and terribly mauled; and he would have assuredly lost his life had these Hottentots not saved him.

While we were there the ships Burg von Leyden, Castell Medenblick and Damiaten joined us [DR *Leyden* 28/11, before *Elburg; Medenblick* 7/12; *Damiaten* not traced, probably *Eendracht* 3/12, incidentally with Schreyer of item 21 and Vermeulen of item 20 on board], and although we could have continued our voyage sooner we must wait for a few days on account of them. When now all was ready we set sail, and came to the Robben Island, but must wait there because the wind was contrary. Next day, December 3 [DR 13/12] we set sail.... [Batavia, Indies, Coromandel, Bengal, China, etc. Batavia for repatriation in 1681.]

20 Gerrit Vermeulen

(*See also item 33*.) *His* '*Merkwaerdige Voyagie ...*', *Amsterdam 1677 is here translated from microfilm*, *by courtesy of the British Museum: no copy seems to be available in South Africa. Two long* '*Supplements*', *dealing with the Canaries and the Cape Verde Islands*, *were obviously inserted by the publisher as padding*, *and have been omitted here. His outward journey was in* Eendracht, *the same ship as Schreyer* (*item 21*), *although there is nothing to indicate that they ever met on board. He gives no details about himself*, *but starts directly with:*

On the twenty-ninth of July of the year sixteen hundred and sixty-eight we left from Hellevoetsluis for the East Indies with a favorable wind [Hague codex 4389 folio 58 confirms, as from Goeree], which in fifteen days brought us in sight of the Canary Islands, of which I will here say nothing except that on one of them [Tenerife] is a hill of very exceptional height, which can be seen from sixty miles* distance, and which we had in sight for three days in spite of a favourable wind.

Eight days after this we again saw some islands, to wit those of Fuogo, Mayo and Saint Jago [Fogo, Maio, São Tiago in Cape Verde Islands], to which we steered to get water. But this was not without great danger to the lives of all, although the weather was good; since having taken in our sails and dropped our anchor, this could not reach the ground because the cable was in a tangle, so that our ship drove towards the shore, the wind being from seawards.

[A ridiculous plate is inserted, showing a ship with sails set in a furious gale, directly contrary to Vermeulen's statements.]

Our skipper, seeing the shore so near, lost all hope of saving his ship, and therefore got into the longboat with many of the officers. The crew and the soldiers began to strip

themselves in order to leap into the water and swim ashore, and then make for a town belonging to the Portuguese, which lay two miles distant. The Portuguese standing on the shore had their eyes fixed on us, in the hope of getting some booty from our wreck; but God showed his mercy towards us, and spoiled their desire and intent, since we dropped our second anchor and this took hold and the ship swung to it, to the great joy of all in her. But we were busied for fully three days and two nights before we could get our ship out to sea again. The place where we lay was very dangerous for us, since the ground was very hard and rocky. We broke one anchor there, and lost two in kedging ourselves off into deep water. On the third day we came somewhat into safety; and the Portuguese seeing that we were out of danger, greeted us with the firing of three guns, and by hoisting the white flag told that we could come ashore. We also greeted them with three guns, and let fly our Dutch flag. They thanked us with one gun, and we did the same. Our skipper and some others went ashore to salute the Commander of the fort which lay above the town on the top of a hill. They were very well received by this Castellan, for whom they took a present which he received with great pleasure and many signs of thanks. He ordered the townsfolk to be helpful to us; and they provided us with much refreshment, which was very helpful to our sick who thereby were again able to get onto their legs.

All these islands which I have just mentioned are very large and fertile, and belong to the Portuguese. The island of Fuogo is very notable by cause of the sulphur mountain which burns perpetually. The Portuguese say that this is Hell. When I first saw it I thought that a house was ablaze there; but when I asked about it I was told that this was a mountain of sulphur which burns continually. By day the fire is not so well to be seen as by night because of the glare of the sun; but much smoke and steam is seen coming from it.

Three months after we had put out to sea from S. Jago we sighted the Cape of Bone esperance, or the Promontory of Good Hope, which we longed for with the greater impatience because our ration of water had been cut to one half, not only a very small measure but also very bad and unpleasant to drink. We were also docked one of our three meals, the one which was better than the two others. But I will not delay to tell of the bad condition of our food in our journey to the Indies, since that of our return journey was fully four times as bad.

Thus we arrived on the second of December [DR] at the Cape de bone Esperance, with many sick who were taken ashore into the hospital*.

The Cape de bone Esperance is in Africa, and lies on the furthest point which stretches into the sea [*sic*], as is shown on the charts. The air there is very temperate and the soil fertile, since corn grows there, and rice, and all sorts of fruit and herbs. This region is very wild because of the great mountains which are found there, and which are uninhabited and inaccessible. The inhabitants are called Hottentots. The Christians who are there are Dutch, who have possession of the land along the sea where the ships touch, and where they have built a strong fort* of stone with four bastions. I add that this fortress is impregnable as far as regards the inhabitants, who fight with arrows and

half-pikes only; and they truly be called savages, since they go almost entirely naked although the cold there in winter is very severe. The men only cover their privities with the skin of a sheep's tail, and use a complete sheepskin to cover themselves when they are cold. Their wives are more warmly clad, since they wear five or six sheepskins with the wool wherewith they cover their whole body. They wind the guts of sheep around their legs, and these serve them as stockings. These sheepskins are of great service to them, both to shield themselves from the cold, as also to foster the lice, which they greatly like to eat. These Hottentots bring their speech from deep within their throats. They are very bold, and well-made and agile of body. They never walk but always run when they wish to go anywhere. They have no interest in gold and silver, but desire copper, to make armbands therefrom. Their riches consist of cattle, such as oxen and sheep, since they have herds of nine or ten thousand, with which they deal with the Dutch, bartering them for tobacco, bread, or brandy, since they themselves have neither bread, nor wine, nor any strong drink. They have no food other than meat and fish, which they barely half-cook. They build no houses, because they always wander with their cattle, and never stay longer than six weeks in one place, remaining there only so long as their beasts find pasture there, and then moving away to another region which is suited to their animals. If any of their wives fall sick in their journeying they enclose her in a hedge of thorns so that she cannot come out nor can be devoured by the lions and tigers which are found there in great numbers, but shall die there [see Hottentots*, Abandonment]. The Christians who live there dare not go unarmed far from the fortress, and are always well provided with arms when they watch their cattle. The Hottentots are very sharp-sighted, and can see much further than the Christians. They never eat good food, since if they will slaughter an ox or other beast they choose always the worst and thinnest, saying that it would be a pity to kill a fat animal. When they are born their right testicles* are taken off, since they say that the left ones suffice for breeding. They are very dirty and grubby in all ways, and give off a nasty stink because they smear their bodies with some smelly fat, and then blacken themselves with soot since they imagine that they are not black enough. They have short and curly hair, but otherwise are well made both in body and face.

The region around the Cape is very strange to see, both because of the inhabitants who are such as we have described them, and also because of the wild beasts, which are lions, tigers, ostriches and iron pigs. Of these the last are interesting to see, since although they somewhat resemble those [pigs] of Europe in bodily shape they are not so large, and in place of hair have feathers five inches long, black and white with sharp points like nails and as hard as iron; and when these iron pigs are disturbed or fight they set up their feathers, and with them make deep wounds in any that oppose them. I will not speak of the lions and tigers, since we see these daily in Europe [?]; and I will mention the ostrich only in passing, which for size is the King of Birds, since they are ten feet tall, and do not fly but run as swiftly as a horse. They do harm to none, and dwell in the mountains, and lay eggs so large that they are many pounds in weight. They lay fully forty of such eggs

before they sit to hatch them. The Hottentots find many of such eggs, which they barter with the soldiers of the Fort for tobacco or rice.

After we had provided ourselves with water, and again made ready our ship, we weighed anchor on the thirteenth of December [DR] to continue our voyage. We took on board again a part of our sick men who had gone ashore, and had two ships with us, with whom we were in company not more than fifteen days, by reason of a storm which separated us from each other.... [Batavia etc. until 1673.]

21 Johan Schreyer

His 'Neue Ost-Indianische Reisz-Beschreibung ...' was published at Saalfeld in 1679, with a second edition at Leipzig in 1681, this latter being reprinted at The Hague in 1931 with a changed title: the following is translated from this last.

He was born at Lobenstein in Thuringia, and according to his publisher's 1681 Preface appears to have been at least partially trained as a surgeon, although he took service with the Dutch East-India Company as a soldier in 1668 (not 1669 as in his text). Vermeulen (item 20) sailed in the same ship with him, Eendracht *from Goeree on July 29, 1668 by Hague codex 4389 folio 58.*

It seems probable that he was taken ashore sick on his arrival at the Cape that year (DR *3/12*), *since he mentions falling sick with scurvy during the passage, but not his recovery; and that he did not recover sufficiently to go on with her when she sailed on December 13* (DR). *In the 1669 Hague codex 3981 folio 932 he figures as 'Soldier': in the Cape Roll as Cadet* ('Adelborst'), which in practice meant little except that he thus drew 10 guilders a month instead of 9. In this rank he 'travelled fully a hundred miles* inland', as in his Chapter 4 (reading this as 'a total of'), in various minor expeditions, since in March 1670 (Cape Resolutions 6/3/70) he was promoted to Under-Surgeon 'having been continually employed as a surgeon with our inland barter-parties, and later as Under-Meester at the Hospital*'. In 1671 the Cape Roll and the Hague codex 3982 folio 572 show him as 'Surgeon'; and in 1672 he was again promoted, now to Upper-Surgeon (Cape Resolutions 11/4/72), and put in charge of the Hospital (ditto 27/6/72): incidentally, his path now again crossed that of Vermeulen, who in 1674 was a very discontented patient in his charge.*

In January 1671 he married the widow of a colleague, and on March 19, 1673 a child was baptised Johannes, who apparently died in infancy since on May 20, 1674 another was baptised with the same name. After that he is not traced further, so that it seems likely that he returned to Europe in 1674 or 1675, making up the 'eight years' referred to by his publisher. (The Church Register details are from Hoge, in 'Archives Yearbook' of 1948;

but no basis has been found for the statement there that he went on to the Indies.)

The outstanding feature of his account of the Hottentots is that he relied almost entirely on his own observations, *and did not*, *like most of the early writers*, *merely steal from others. On the contrary*, *he himself was freely drawn on by later writers*, *often word for word: Hesse*, *Meister*, *Bogaert in this volume are outstanding examples among many*, *and his statements can be traced in major writers* (‘*major*’ *as far as bulk is concerned*) *such as Kolbe and Valentyn*, *and therefore in the many who borrowed from them*.

A feature of his somewhat clumsy but clear style is the use of pairs of synonyms: e.g. getötet und umbracht, *Sehnen und Spann-Adern*, *genützet und gebräuchet. These have not as a rule been retained in my translation*.

(*For his Natural History*, *Chapters 27 to 32*, *see my remarks after Chapter 26*.)

Chap. 1. It is well enough known, what the Dutch East-India Company is in itself, and by what means it carries on its successful trade in the greatest part of the islands and mainlands of the East Indies, where in some parts it seeks by intelligent and friendly dealings to get the great power of the people on its side, and in other places on the contrary compels the coarse and mannerless barbarians by its arms. To these ends several thousand soldiers and sailors and other Servants are yearly sent in four or five and twenty ships on this long journey.

Necessity, the mother of many arts, as also a compulsion to many, forced me to be reckoned among this number of East-Indian travellers. Rotterdam, one of the chief and sufficiently well-known Dutch cities, let me hear the drum of an East-Indies recruiter; and after short deliberation I went to the East India House and had my name taken there; and after we had shown ourselves on the following Saturday to the Administrators of the East-India Company, we embarked in two small ships called lighters*, to take us to the East Indiaman *Eintracht* which was at sea. The said ship was one hundred and sixty-two feet long along her bottom-length, which they call the keel, but above, aft and forward, she extended for more than fifteen feet further. Her beam was some forty feet, she could carry a cargo of four hundred last*, and she was armed with forty-six metal* and iron guns.

Three hundred and seventeen souls were ordered to begin the journey in her, and with God's help complete it. All was ready, but we must wait with great longing yet another four weeks for an easterly wind, before we could run out of the mouth of the Maas [text ‘gute Reeische Lach’, error for ‘Goereesche Loch’].

This is a dangerous area between France and England [*sic*]. There are many shoals there, that is to say places where many rocks and sandhills lie hidden below the water, on which a ship may well run aground. When the skippers are safely past this region they celebrate a rich feast for joy; and to each is given a Maas* of Spanish wine, and other delicacies.

As soon as we reached the North Sea those who were unacquainted with the ocean must pay their regular tax [of seasickness and diarrhea], both from above and below.

Boxes, chests and other things were now each set in its proper place and made fast. The soldiers and sailors were told off in two equal parts, one called the Prince's Watch, the other Graaf Maurits' Watch, which both by day and night alternated with one another in work and watchfulness. The beer, which had thus far been freely available to all, was now locked up, and a certain measure allowed to each. The newly-baked bread came to an end, and instead there was hard biscuit, of which each person received four and a half pounds each week. Meat and bacon, which thus far had been dished out in abundance, now so dwindled away that in a week we saw twice only a little scrap of thoroughly salt meat, and once even less of bacon, in our wooden dishes called there by the name of Back*, from which always seven persons must eat together. The butter was also issued out weekly, fat in itself but in quantity very thin. Our vegetables were coarse and sometimes hard-boiled groats: white and grey beans were our daily midday and evening meals.

But since these were hard and indigestible foods, and we were given so little that at times each could barely get three spoonfulls, though well-loaded ones, our appetites for the most part remained undamaged. But a favourable wind soon helped us through the narrow sea between England and France, as said above [*sic*], and since we had clear weather we could see both Kingdoms at once. The same wind blew for a few more days, and in a short time brought us to the well-known Canary Islands [his note on these omitted, quoting ‘Sahr’, item 10, and Hoffman, item 37].

When now our guardian of food and drink, whom we called the Putulier, informed the Skipper that some thirty casks of ships'-beer were emptied, this sounded evil in our ears, since the increasing heat of the sun troubled us more and more. The unusualness of this heat, as also the wearisome journey, caused a poisonous, hot and raging fever, which attacked almost everyone on board, first the weakest but later nearly all the crew. And although I sought to free myself with certain remedies, at last I must find myself among them.

On both sides of the ship were made wide benches as sleeping-places, on each of which twenty or twenty-five persons must lie together, so that - some nearly dead, others delirious, others in their senses but very weak - all lay thereon very filthily overswarmed by lice. The dead had for burial only this, that they were sewn up in their bedding on which they lay, with a cannon-ball at their feet, and thrust overboard, and so let sink into the depths of the fathomless sea. I had dwelt on such a bench for three weeks before I got enough strength to crawl above deck on hands and feet, and cleanse myself of the filth and lice.

Chap. 2. The sickness aboard, the lack of drink, and the unknown length of the journey, caused our Skipper to make for the island S. Jago or Jacob [São Tiago], where we anchored in front of the town. But since the ground was rocky, and the sharp edges of it cut our anchor-cable, the current drove us in very calm weather into an unexpected danger, since the waves brought us nearer and nearer to the stony shore. A second anchor, like the first, gave us no help but also broke loose, causing us even greater fear.

Peril already stood on the rocks to await us, when, with unbelievable toil, we got

yet another anchor out aft, and so wound the ship and ourselves from the jaws of destruction.

This danger and anxiety were however soon forgotten in the extremely lovely fruits, fresh water, hens, green herbs, also pigs and oxen, which refreshed both us sick folk and those who were still fit, so that we felt outselves like new-born men.

A few of the Portuguese living on this island visited our ship together with some ecclesiastics, and showed us all their friendship in exchange for our cash and trade, and were as polite as their slaves and servants were thievish, who at times ran off with ribbons cut from our trousers or hats snatched off our heads.

Chap. 3. After lying there for four days our anchor must again be weighed, our sails set to the yards; and we set out into the open sea to complete our journey as soon as possible. We therefore very sadly left the lovely island behind us, abounding with the most pleasant fruits such as limes, pineapples, bananas, grapes, water-melons, melons, coconuts and many more, since we must sail a very long way in a daily-increasing and unbearable heat, across the Equator and another thirty-five degrees to the South of it, before we could reach the so-desired Cape of Good Hope or Caput bonae Spei. The journey was irksome to us, since in the great heat the issue of our drink was greatly reduced: and although we were given each morning some brandy, and three times weekly with our food an eighth of a maas* of Spanish wine, these could help our dry throats but little.

And although in such hot weather one has little desire to eat, nevertheless our food was always less than our hunger; which shortages happen also in many ships, not because of the Administrators at home who richly provision the ships, but because of the greedy Skippers who take away their share from the crews and later sell it in the Indies, or sometimes drink it up with whores and godless folk.

Although we sailed pretty favourably past the Equator, and passed the dangerous dry sandbanks, the Abrolhos near Brazil, so that our voyage went well ahead, it was nevertheless far too long for us, since now the dangerous scurvy appeared, which is very infectious aboard ship, and so affected 40 to 50 men that they could neither stand nor walk, while the legs of others were very evilly infected either with spots or bad ulcers, and in others the mouths and gums so rotted that (besides the unbearable stench) their teeth became so loose that they could not only be pulled out with the fingers but even pressed loose with the tongue.

Here again I had my share, in that my hands and feet, and even my whole body, were almost stiff and immovable from this sickness.

It was joy above all joy in our ship when on November 29, 1669 [*sic:* DR 3/12/1668] the lookout at the masthead earned 6 Rxd. and a flask of Spanish wine by his call of Land! Land! The same afternoon we sailed for the coast, and soon saw our longed-for Caput bonae Spei, and came into the wide harbour called Table Bay, finding there our two companions arrived 2 or 3 days before us, the Burck of Leiden [DR 28/11] and the flute* Elburus [with Tappen on board, item 19: they were ‘our companions’ only in

the sense that all three were to sail together from the Cape onwards].

Chap. 4. The inhabitants of this land are of two kinds, the natives and the settlers. The natives are called Hottentots, which name was given them by the Dutch, because in their assemblies they continually call out Hottentot! Hottentot! [see Hottentot*, Name. For all the following statements see in the Index under the key-word, in the section 'Hottentots']. They are false by nature, inconstant, revengeful, thievish, lazy and slow to work, nearly always gay. They are agile and strong of body, yellowish in colour, with thick noses and lips, short and curly hair, small but acute eyes, small hands and feet.

I could learn nothing definite as to their religion. When it thunders, they say that there is a great Captain above, who lets the rain fall, the sun shine, the thunder sound, etc., which term they doubtlessly have heard from the Dutch and English who use it for their commanders. But they show him no honour, and have no name for him. They have no books, know nothing of reading and writing, nothing of God and His Holy Word: there is no church here, no baptism nor communion, no priest or absolution, no law nor Gospel, so that they are the most miserable folk under the sun. They can also learn no language but that which they have heard from their mothers, so that there is no one that can understand them; although those who live near the Fort and continually have to do with the Europeans and serve them do at last get hold of a few words from their continual use, and understand them. I have heard them talk of a Tsiqua (which may well be the Devil) who is said often to appear to them in various shapes, especially when they change their dwelling-place; and if they do not appease him with milk and special words they may expect severe misfortunes. It may well be believed, that the Devil has his congregation among these unbelievers, and the more so in that many superstitious acts are to be seen among them. For example, that they wear always on the neck a little piece of wood [see Hottentots*, Amulet] cut from a certain tree, charred black in the fire on both sides, to which they attribute many superstitious properties.

Those who are the most powerful among them are their rulers, but with so little power that without the consent of the oldest and richest they can do nothing; but in agreement with these they can decide whether to wage war, to change the pasture, &c. They call the heads of their nations Captains.

Since I have mentioned 'Nations', it should be said that this place, Caput bonae Spei, is not an island* as some think, but the mainland, and the outermost part of Africa, and that this land stretches for some hundreds of miles inland.

I myself have travelled [a total of] fully a hundred miles* inland, and there met with various Nations, since every two or three miles a different one is to be met with, being unlike in nature though all more beastly than human: and the further we came inland, the more miserable, scrawny, thin and ill-made we found them [*sic*].

In all the land there are neither roads nor paths except those made by the feet of the men and the beasts. The baggage which we carried with us, such as food, drink, clothing and kitchen-gear, we tied on the backs of the oxen, which are very large here, and so journeyed with these over hills and valleys, with no guides but the Hottentots themselves,

who at times showed us the way to their own disadvantage.

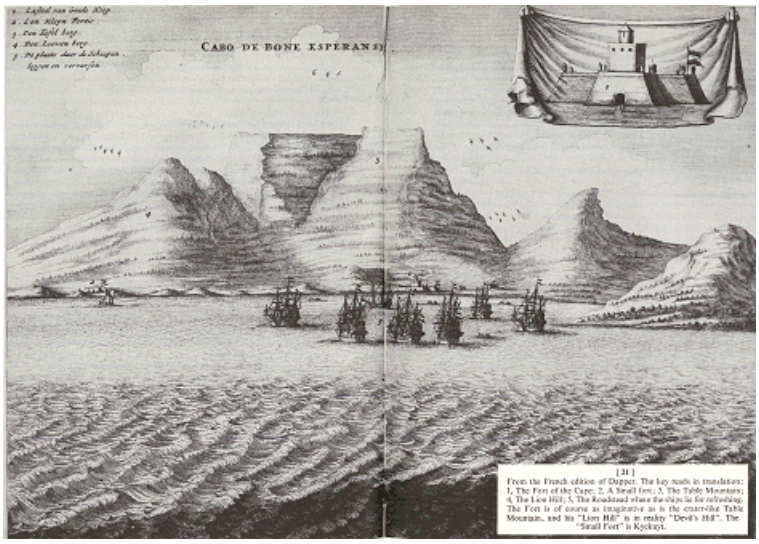
Here are to be found the highest of hills, but below them the loveliest valleys, with rich earth and good streams, across which our oxen must at times carry us. The country is all uncultivated and uncleared, just as it was made at God's Creation. And I assert, that if there were folk to cultivate, plant and inhabit this fallow land, better ground would be found here than in all Europe.

Chap. 5. These people are very revengeful, and are wont to take revenge on the offender for the wrong done them, even after many years. Theft and robbery are punished or atoned for by restitution, or by the handing-over of a few cattle. Their sustenance is from cattle-breeding and hunting, from which they live, since they neither sow nor reap. Although they see before their eyes how the Dutch and other European folk who have settled there plough the fields, sow, reap, dig, plant and enjoy the lovely fruits of the land, yet they have no inclination thereto, nor desire to learn anything nor take it in hand, and prefer to remain poor and miserable, and thereby slack and lazy, rather than honourably maintain, feed, clothe themselves &c. in that manner. Their cattle are fine, large and fat, not inferior to those of Europe. Their sheep, of which they have great numbers, are for the most part hairy like goats, with hanging ears: most of their fat is in the tails, one of which at times weighs 12 to 16 pounds. It is very tasty and good to eat, and we have eaten very many of the same.

They kill the finest and fattest oxen, called by them Tibbesas*, at times of rejoicing, as also in case of severe illnesses and wounds, but these are for the men only, while the women have their pleasure on the fat sheep. Other domestic animals and birds such as hens, geese, ducks and the like are unknown to them, except for a few scrawny dogs which they use for hunting. In this they are very skilled, in part to defend themselves from the fierce beasts such as lions, panthers, rhinoceroses or Nose-Horners, and such like, in part to get food by hunting elephants, sea-cows, elands, deer, &c. In the next chapter this will be fully dealt with.

Chap. 6. Since the lions and panthers do them great damage they take great pains to exterminate them. When they see that a lion has eaten himself satiate (to which end they often sacrifice an old cow to him) and has lain himself down somewhere, they surround the same with a quantity of their sheep, and little by little drive these together. Behind the sheep they set the cattle, so that the lion cannot get through, and despairs because of the terrifying shouts of the men and the lowing of the cattle, and is thus killed by their many throwing-spears.

The sheep which are killed in such a hunt are not wasted, since the victory over the lion is celebrated with them. They also fight the lions hand to hand with great toil and danger, in case they cannot make use of the former method. When they know one to be in a thicket, they wrap their left arms in their skin-cloaks, the right being armed with heavy sticks [see Hottentot*, Kirri], and they attack him with one accord and side by side; and so soon as he attacks one of them they all fall on his body and each holds fast whatever he can grasp, so that their united force overcomes the great strength of the



[21] From the French edition of Dapper. The key reads in translation: 1, The Fort of the Cape; 2, A Small fort; 3, The Table Mountain; 4, The Lion Hill; 5, The Roadstead where the ships lie for refreshing. The Fort is of course as imaginative as is the crater-like Table Mountain, and his ‘Lion Hill’ is in reality ‘Devil's Hill’. The ‘Small Fort’ is Kyckuyt.

lion and he is thrown down and killed, making terrible roarings before his death.

They catch the elephants in the following manner: They surround him in great numbers when he is on flat and sandy ground, and shoot their sharpest throwing-spears, called Hassa-Kejen, into his body; and if he turns in one direction to defend himself, which he does somewhat slowly because of his great size, they give way to him there, being unusually good runners, and attack him on the other side in great force so that he must again turn about, until at last his blood flows from the many spear-wounds and he is worn out and falls down. It is amazing to see how furiously this animal pulls out the spears with his long trunk, and breaks them and throws them away.

Where these large beasts have made a way through the country and the bushes a deeply-trodden path is found, as if men had walked there for a long time. Also at times their dung is found hanging on the bushes, in lumps like large skittle-balls, and therein finger-thick twigs from the branches he has bitten off from the bushes and eaten, from which the size of these beasts is easily to be deduced. Also the large elephant-teeth witness thereto, which are brought in great numbers from the Indies and used in Germany for making various fine objects.

Chap. 7. Here I must make mention of a wonderful occurrence which happened in my time. A Frenchman was once ordered to go with a party to bring in cattle, but lost touch with his companions. Since he could not find them, he made his way back towards the Fort. At first he saw no footpath before him, but at last he met with such a path trodden out by elephants and thought no otherwise than that this was a man-trodden path and the right road to bring him to the said place. While he now went on between the bushes, and could give way neither to the left nor right, a large elephant met him. Neither could give way to the other, but the elephant was so obliging as to take up this Frenchman with one of his tusks and gently throw him over the bushes and go on his way, from which adventure the Frenchman was none the worse.

Chap. 8. Rhinoceroses, called in German Nasen-Horner because they have a large horn at the front of their nose, are beasts almost as large as elephants. (The Ancients described them as having hard and armoured skins, but this is false. The skin is soft, grown with short hairs like velvet, but with very many wrinkles and folds.) To catch these beasts, the Hottentots dig deep pits in the ground, like our Wolf-Pits, on the ways where these beasts are wont to pass when in the great heats of Summer they wish to drink; and cover the same with branches. Then when the beast comes, and steps thereon, if only with one foot, he must fall in and let himself be killed.

Hippopotamuses are animals which dwell both in the water and on land. In the evening they come on land from the water, and pasture on the grass. They are large animals, with heads like horses, which they cannot keep under water, but must continually lift them up to get air. It is difficult to shoot them because of the speed with which they hide themselves under the water, therefore the Hottentots catch them in the pitfalls. Their flesh can well be eaten and enjoyed by a hungry stomach, since they are very fat.

Elands, deer, steenbuck go there in great herds. To catch such the Hottentots

surround them with many men, and draw these together little by little so that they enclose them, and sometimes thus have a good catch.

It is marvellous to see how the wild beasts go together in great herds here. When one stands on one hill and looks across to another, the wild animals are seen in herds as if a shepherd were grazing his flock on such a hill. Deers are in fifties, roebucks the same, of all sorts, pied buck in thousands. They thus increase in numbers because the Hottentots know of no firearms, nor of powder and shot. Moreover these beasts roam on the highest hills and rocks, where no one can come near them, and have their pasture and food there in Winter and Summer, which is the cause why they so multiply.

Hares, wildcats, partridges, pheasants they snare very neatly, since such wild game is quite common here, so that the partridges often came to my tame hens and helped to pick up the food.

Also when we went out to shoot we did not lie in wait as is the custom here, but when a flight rose fired into the air among them, and hardly ever missed.

Wild geese, ducks, bustards are found here in indescribable quantities, and nothing lacks but the men to go out and shoot them, since European hunters do not dare to come so far overseas.

The Commander [probably Borghorst or Hackius] of the Fort once enquired if anyone was there who could shoot, and would go out and bring some game. One took it on, and went out with a gun. Outside he met with a flock of Indian Geese which the Commander let graze in the pasture, and fired at these, and brought 2 of them, since he had never seen such and thought they were wild geese. We all must laugh at the simple hunter, and the Commander said nothing about it, since in any case they would have been killed sooner or later.

In dry weather, or in Summer, all sorts of wild beasts come to drink from the hollows in which the water has collected, and quench their thirst there, since often the water on the hills is dried up far and wide. The Hottentots are accustomed to kill these with their throwing-spears, with which, as also with stone-throwing, they are very skilled [see Hottentots*, Marksmanship], since all their training from youth up is in nothing but dancing and the use of arms. They are also so fond of this that they will keep it up for some hours. A throwing-spear is 7 or 8 feet long, in front as thick as a thumb, at the rear end quite thin. Into the thick end they stick an iron, half a foot long and four fingers wide, which at thirty paces they can throw right through a man. They also shoot with very small arrows from wooden bows* from far off, very exactly and, since such are usually poisoned, very dangerously.

Chap. 9. When they fight they stand quite naked, with a throwing-spear in the right hand and in the left 3 or 4 such, a cudgel [kirri*], and sometimes a sandal with which they can parry and turn away the spears. (This is a piece of leather from the skin of a wild ass, which they bind around their foot. I brought a pair of such back with me, and gave them to a friend. I will mention in passing that such wild asses are also found here: they resemble horses in all ways, but have such lovely colour and stripes that no beast

on earth can be compared to them for beauty; but they cannot be tamed.)

Some [inland] tribes also use shields. In a fight they stand together with no orderliness, and meanwhile make great shoutings, whistling and leaping, after which they hurl the throwing-spears at each other. And although, as I said, they are very skilful in this, yet they can also dodge these spears with great agility, so that although they may fight for a whole day, not more than three or four are killed.

They always very diligently take up the spears thrown by the enemy, and throw these back at them. They bring their finest and best oxen with them to the battle, perhaps to encourage the enemy to fight more bravely. Shouting and whistling serve as drums for them: also they know how to show what is to be done to others who are far from them, by an unusual noise which they make with their mouths.

The young are taught by the elders how to fight each other with sticks and stones. Often the folk of one village with make such an exercise with those of another, and although this is done only in friendly play, yet there are sometimes bloody heads and wounds thereby.

Chap. 10. They are very unskilled in healing wounds. If a wound is deeper than they can see into, they at once cut it open, and indeed make it 3 or 4 times larger, without regarding whether some member or other may be damaged thereby. If a large vein or artery is cut they do not know how to staunch the blood, and thus must let the man die, because blood-letting is not customary among them. Their plasters and salves are nothing but the fat of the beasts, wherewith they over-diligently smear the wound and all the body. If they fall or are bruised, and see that the place has blood below it, they cut open the skin, suck out the blood, and rub the charcoal of a certain wood therein. For internal sicknesses they use no remedy other than that the surgeon smears the sick person with fat, and rubs it well in, besides doing also some superstitious actions thereby. This is proved by the following history.

Chap. 11. When once I must travel 30 to 40 miles* inland with some soldiers, on business of the Company, we had some Hottentots with us as guides, among whom was one whose testicle* was swollen as large as a fist, so that he could hardly walk for the pain. (N.B. These folk are semi-castrated for the most part, which is done in childhood, perhaps to prevent the too-great breeding of children, since they must see that they themselves and their children are in very bad conditions.)

The sun was setting when they made a small fire, near which none of us might come, to which end also they built a separate fire for us. Around this fire they sat in a ring. The surgeon, after he had turned towards the sun with many movements and words, went to the patient, who sat quite naked on the ground, and began to pass his urine* on him, from the head downwards and around the body, until he had no more, in which task 7 or 8 of the other Hottentots then duly followed the surgeon. The sick man, after he was thus thoroughly bathed, went to sleep in his cloak, and next day was fit to continue the journey with us.

I have also seen how for adder- and snake-bites they also use this method, and have

the same superstitions regarding them. Also I saw how they attribute great powers to a piece of wood an inch thick and four fingers wide, cut by the surgeon from a certain bush and burned at one end [see Amulet*: he contradicts himself in details regarding this]: it is thought to help the sick to regain their health, and to turn away the weapons of enemies, for which reason they always carry it on their necks as something holy, and if they fear any danger, they blacken their face with the burned end, and according to their fancy are thus freed therefrom.

Chap. 12. Since writing, reading, GOD's Word and Religion, as also good manners and other sciences are quite unknown to these folk, their rearing of children demands little attention. Whereas elsewhere it is the custom to wrap children at birth in swaddling-clothes, here there is neither linen nor woollen material to be found. Also they know of no Baptism. When the boys are 8 years old one testicle* is cut away, as has been said, so that they may run the better. And it is also evident that this hinders procreation, in that with 2 or 3 wives (since polygamy is usual here) they seldom get more than 4 children. No care is taken of the children, and they eat what they can get. When any beast is slaughtered and the elders eat it, they throw the bones to the children to gnaw, and the guts they throw unwashed on the fire, and let them shrivel a little. When they are barely warm they tear them with their teeth, and thus make their meal.

Chap. 13. When a male is 18, 19 or 20 years old (although they do not know how to tell years nor time, since there is no calendar and they know neither the beginning nor the end of the year) with special ceremonies the greasiest guts* of a wether or a slaughtered calf are hung, together with the omentum, around his neck, which he must carry thus as a sign of his adulthood. They then also ornament themselves further as they can, to make themselves more agreeable to the maidens; and in such ornamentation they are very clever.

Since, after they have well smeared with fat their naturally short and curly hair, they strew it with the bark of a tree unknown to us, as also with a dried plant (called by us Water-Ivy) ground small on a stone, so that all their hair seems to be only one lump. And since this hair-powder (called by them Pucbu [see Hottentots*, Buchu]) has a very strong smell, which is increased by the hanging guts and the fat, they are so well perfumed that they can be smelt from afar.

Chap. 14. The head being thus arranged and well greased, it is further hung with coloured feathers, penny-pieces [‘Zahlpfennigen’], dried gall-bladders &c. In each ear a large and thick ring hangs, which drags down the ears, by nature pretty large, as far as the armpits. Over their face they hang imitation corals or large glass beads, all of which they obtain by barter from the Dutch, since this folk know of no difference between real and false corals, and the value of silver and gold is unknown to them, but for the few who dwell near the Fort Caput bonae Spei and deal with the Dutch, and thus know the worth of gold.

They smear all their body with the fat from the sheep, and over this the soot from kettles and pots; and with their fingernails, which they let grow pretty long, they draw

over the whole body strips like braiding, which in their opinion look well and ornament the body [see s.v. Cicatrisation*].

They cover the upper part of the body with an undressed sheepskin, which in their speech they call a cloak [‘Mantel’]: this cloak is well sewn together. Their needles are made from the quills of porcupines, the thread is from the sinews of beasts, since they know nothing of hemp nor flax. The more greasily the mantle is smeared, the finer it is in their eyes. This mantle is all their clothing, trousers, doublet, also mattress, counterpane and all in one.

They have nothing of shoes, stockings, shirts or linen, since they do not sow or reap; and yet live in a land, which, were it cultivated, might be much better and more fruitful than any in Europe.

The principal among them make their mantles of roebuck-skin, in sign of their greatness. Their necks are ornamented with a so-called Paternoster of all sorts of false corals, brass buttons, glass beads of all colours, which they barter from the Dutch for cattle, imagining them to be excellent jewels which grow in Europe.

They carry a long sheath* on the neck, in which their tobacco-pipe is kept, as also a knife sharpened on both edges; and a piece of wood burned at both ends [see Hottentots*, Amulet], as said above, must also hang there, according to their superstition, to guard the body from sickness and other happenings.

Their arms are bound about from hand to elbow with tight copper, brass and iron rings, which they cannot themselves make but must barter from the Dutch. Above the elbow they have 3, 4 or 5 ivory rings around the arm, through which they push a little leather bag, and in this they carefully keep their tobacco, their greatest richness, and also at times a dried herb (called by them Tagga [see Hottentots*, Dagga], which they chew and become very drunken therefrom).

A little piece of the fur of a wildcat or fox is bound around their loins with a leather strap, to cover their privities [see Hottentots, Penis-cover]: some tribes, such as the Numiqui [Namaqua], use instead of this skin a carved-out piece of ivory. In their hand they carry a strong and long staff, called Kirri* by them, which is their usual walking-stick, and a small piece of wood covered with the tail of a fox or cat, and this must serve them as a handkerchief [see Hottentots*, Flywhisks] to wipe the dust from their eyes, and is called by them Sau.

Sandals are used only for long journeys, and are doubled soles of oxhide, wild asses-skin or other tough leather, raw and untanned, which they bind with a leather thong around the foot.

Chap. 15. The women, being by nature vainer than the men, need more ornaments. On their heads they wear a cap of raw leather, wide below and coming to a point above, which is tied by a wide rawhide thong around the head. Their head and hair, like those of the men, is loaded with many small shells, copper and brass counters and suchlike. On one side, as also centrally in front of the face, there hangs a string of glass beads, and below this a little seashell which swings [‘läutet’] to and fro in front of the face.

The face is coloured red or black and smeared with sheeps-fat, and covered with many stripes [see s.v. Cicatrisation*] made with their fingernails, so that thus the skins shows through the fat and the colour.

The neck is neatly hung with many bead-chains, and the mantle on their shoulders is somewhat longer than that of the men, and is made as rough on one side as on the other with exceptional skill. Over this a square bag* hangs on the back, ornamented below with leather tassels, and alongside this a pot, a stick or piece of iron for digging out roots and sometimes also a child and other gear: Since their motto is *Omnia mea mecum porto*, I carry all my household gear with me. The arms are also surrounded with rings, and the loins with some strings of the same beads, and over the buttocks down to the calves hangs a leathern skirt-skin. The privities, which Nature has covered with a flap of skin [‘Apron*’] 4 fingers wide, they cover with a piece of leather, the ends of which are mounted with little copper rings, which tinkle as they walk. The legs are surrounded so closely from ankle to knee with hard leather bands, that they can scarcely walk.

Chap. 16. When they are in good spirits, and the weather is warm, and the moon shines, they come together towards evening near their dwellings, and begin to sing and dance. This is done thus: The men stand closely together with bent bodies, and throw their heads from one side to the other, and while they stamp on the ground with their feet they sing their usual long-lasting song, Ho, ho, ho, ho. The women stand opposite, and clap their hands with a special movement, and make a soft sound between their teeth and through their noses, which suits pretty well with the song of the men. And while they also stamp their feet on the ground, the rings hanging on their legs make an unusual noise. Also the music is added to with special instruments, namely, they take a pot, and cover it closely with a skin, and on this the women beat with hands and fingers, these being their drums. Also they stretch a string on a wooden bow, to which is attached a piece of quill, and this they take between their lips, and by drawing in and blowing out the breath a loud and snoring sound is made.

The leader of the dance causes a general silence by striking his stick on the ground, with the word Satisso*. When they have remained still for a little, with a loud shout they begin the former song again; and since this lasts for the whole night until near dawn, it is so agreeable to any who sleeps not far away, that it could well make him ill. Their marriages and bethrothals are as a rule celebrated with such dances. If a youth sees a girl who pleases him, and perceives that she is not averse to him, he asks her father, brother, or nearest relative; and if the suitor has so many cattle that he can maintain one or more wives, the girl is brought to him without more ado, with 3 or 4 cows as her dowry, and thus becomes his wife. If he is rich in cattle he indeed takes 2 or 3 wives, and if one does not suit him he chases her away again; also it is frequent that the women run off from their husbands, and live in another village with another man. From this great quarrels arise, so that they fight each other with their throwing-spears, since there are no authorities or churchmen to intervene in such affairs.

Chap. 17. When a woman gives birth, and thereafter dies, the child is buried alive with the dead mother. This also is done when twins are born, that for fear of the trouble they hastily bury one child and let the other live. When the mother has stayed within for a few days, and somewhat restored herself with the flesh of a sheep, she goes again with her child to her usual work, which is either seeking for reeds, from which they make cords, ropes, and mats to cover their huts, or digging for the roots* which serve them for food. Their greatest care is to bring some wood home in the evening, to warm themselves or cook with. If on the way she finds perhaps a tortoise, or some mussels, the supper is ready at once. These they throw on the fire, and when they are only warmed, or half-roasted, they eat them with such great appetite that the blood thereof drips from their mouths.

Chap. 18. The principal work of the men is to laze about, unless hunger force them to work for the Europeans for a piece of tobacco or some rice. But so soon as their hunger is stilled, they go off again, and for this reason we gave them nothing to eat until they had first done the work given them.

Those who live far from the Dutch Fort go hunting, and what they catch, indeed with great toil, they devour together.

If this people knew how to hunt game with nets and guns as in Germany, they would indeed be happier, since the whole land is full of game. But since they lack these, it is a great piece of good luck when they can lay in wait for and catch something. They also eat dead beasts without repulsion, whatever they find. I have seen how such a crowd of men and children sat together where perhaps there was a pool of water, and made the clay into little shapes [‘Küchlein’], round below and on top pointed like a wedge, and threw these into the water, and when they splashed had their amusement* therefrom.

Chap. 19. There are few craftsmen, since because they have no agriculture they need no smiths, locksmiths or other workers in iron. Also there are no carts here and no roads, but when they will carry their scanty gear across a water-course, they tie it to the backs of their oxen, and sit on it with their wives and children, and so journey. And since their houses are made only of sticks, they need no carpenters, joiners, masons, &c. In place of such craftsmen there are those who know how to hammer out between stones the iron heated in the fire, although with great toil, and this serves them well enough. Others make arm-rings of ivory and copper, others know how to make the rawhide soft and pliable by rubbing it. Their tailors use the quills of the porcupine for needles, and for thread the sinews of the animals, and therewith make their mantles very close and neat.

Chap. 20. Since they know nothing of money such as gold and silver coins, nor of clothing and other garments, still less of household furniture, trade is here very scanty; but they barter their beasts such as sheep, oxen &c. with the Dutch for tobacco, glass beads, copper rings, and brandy. (They love tobacco above everything, and when the Dutch smoke and knock out the ashes, they gather these up and fill their pipes with them, to get a little more smoke therefrom.) They indeed bring milk, ostrich-eggs, ostrich-

feathers, sweet-smelling gums [‘Rauchwerck’] and suchlike to the freemen (NB) as also to the Servants of the Company; and among themselves they barter goods for goods and cattle for cattle.

(NB. The freemen are those from all the nations [*sic*] of Europe who have settled there, and are free from all taxes. The Dutch do this so that more folk shall settle here, and cultivate the land.)

They transport their goods, children and sick on oxen trained to this, and guide these by a little stick thrust through their nostrils. Of carts [‘Wagenketten’] and other conveyances they know nothing, and in a hundred miles no road is to be seen, but only footpaths across hills and valley, and sometimes over such high hills that one looks deep into the abyss so that one's eyes become dizzy; but the Hottentots know the ways over them, and guide the Europeans.

Chap. 21. They carry their houses, and indeed whole villages at a time, on their oxen. A hut* is about 7 feet high and 20 wide: some long poles are stuck into the ground in a circle, and tied firmly to each other above, and on these they fasten reed-mats. On the side towards the centre of the village they leave a hole, through which they creep in and out. 15, 18, 20 to 25 such huts make a village, and these huts always stand in a circle, one separated from the next by a fence. In the centre they keep their cattle, which stands there unsheltered from rain and wind.

They however tether the wildest of the oxen at night with leather thongs, and also they set apart a place for the young animals in the centre.

Chap. 22. Their furnishings are one or two earthen pots, which they are accustomed to make with their hands from clay, each for himself, and set them in the sun to harden. Also little wooden troughs [‘Tröglein’], 3 or 4 leather bags, and their weapons, which are their throwing-spears, a large knife sharp on both edges, and arrows which they shoot from wooden bows.

They boil and roast when their hunting has been successful, or when for special occasions they kill one of their beasts and eat this together; and since this folk know nothing of agriculture, and sow no grain, they have no toil with the baking of bread and other cooked foods, and die without having ever seen or tasted any bread or what else comes from corn.

Chap. 23. When they wish to slaughter an ox or other beast, they do so as follows [see Hottentots*, Butchery]. They tie the two forelegs together, throw the beast down and hold it fast, and when still alive cut open its belly and pull out all the guts and entrails. Then when all the blood has run together in the cavity of the belly, they scoop it out into the pots, and this is for the women, wherewith they must be satisfied. When it has been warmed a little on the fire, and curdles, it is eaten without salt.

Meanwhile the men hack the flesh apart in the skin, and the fattest and most meaty parts are put in a pot and set on the fire without salt (which best of spices is unknown to them). Around this the guests sit, squatting on their heels in their fashion. Each has a sharp wooden hook, and when now for a time the fire has been tended, and the flesh is

boiled, each takes a piece for himself; and when he has gnawed off therefrom whatever is cooked, he puts the rest back into the pot and again seizes another piece with his hook. Such a meal lasts pretty long, and meanwhile they carry on their mealtime conversation, of which however we can know nothing since their language is not understood.

Instead of table-napkins they use their so-called mantles, which they so greatly thus saturate with the fat of the oxen, that they can truly be called very rich [‘fett’, a pun on ‘greasy’ and ‘rich’].

Meanwhile the younger amuse themselves with the entrails; and after they have turned the guts inside-out and shaken the dung from them, they throw them unwashed on the fire, and when they are half-roasted gobble them noisily with good enjoyment.

In front of the house of whoever has provided the ox a few poles are planted, on which the head, the skin, and other parts are hung up and put by for the next day, and such flesh is cooked as follows: They make a pit in the ground, throw a few stones therein, and rake a fire onto these. When now the stones are hot enough, they take away the fire and lay the flesh thereon. On this again they throw stones, and on these wood and fire, and let it thus roast until the flesh is cooked to their taste.

They dry the skin, and put the same by, which must serve for thongs to be cut therefrom, to tie together their gear, which leather they make soft by rubbing it between their hands. Also sometimes, when they are very hungry, they use it for food: they cut off a piece of it, singe the hair away, throw it into the fire, and when it has somewhat shrivelled together, they hit it on a stone until they can bite it with their iron-hard teeth, and devour it.

Chap. 24. Just as the women are not permitted to eat of fat oxen, so also custom forbids the men to take ewe-milk and hare-flesh [see Hottentots*, Taboos], which are for the women. The men indeed take cow-milk, but this is prepared by the women in a special manner.

Namely, they tie together the hindlegs of the cow, and bring the calf below. This must as it were tap the cow, and when it begins to suck, they take the teat from its mouth and milk the cow. If this will not let the milk flow, they pull open the *posteriora* widely and blow into it, when the cow will again give the milk.

In a similarly unpleasant manner they make their butter, and this is done thus: They put the milk into a leather sack with the hair inside, in which there is a small hole below, which they tie up. Then two of them take the sack, each at one end, and shake and throw about the milk in it until it becomes butter. Then they let the buttermilk flow out through the little hole, and take out the butter, which, as is readily to be expected, is so full of hairs that it is repulsive. But it does not repel them, since they can eat everything that we find loathsome.

This is also to be seen in that they eat their comrades the lice, which they neatly pull out of their hair and bite in their teeth, since they have very many of the same in their hair, in the mantles, between the rings on the arms and legs in quantities, very large and fat. At times they beat them out of their so-called mantles with a little stick, and they

fall out pretty thick like hempseeds.

Chap. 25. They bury the dead in the following manner: When anyone dies, his nearest relatives cut their hair in different fashions, some leaving half the hair, some a little here and there, some none at all.

The women bewail him, and call over-loudly lo lo lo lo lo: this they begin with a shrill voice and let it fall to a deep tone, and this they repeat many times. Then they carry the corpse somewhat out of their dwelling, make a round hole and set it therein, throw earth thereover, and on top a heap of stones, to keep it from being dug up by the wild beasts.

There is neither bell-tolling [‘Leuten’] nor singing nor any other ceremonies used, except that beside the dead man they lay his stick* which he had always carried in his hand, fearing that if they should sit by a fire in which this stick burned, or if food were cooked by it, they would at once become itchy or unclean of skin.

Chap. 26. The sons are the next heirs, and failing sons, the daughters; or if neither, then the nearest relatives. The inheritance consists of cattle, since they have no household-gear or clothing of any value, still less fields, pastures, gardens, gold or silver, since they do not cultivate the fields like other peoples but go from one place to another to pasture their cattle, so that none of them has any land of his own.

They do not need to trouble about winter-fodder, since there is no Winter here for the cattle to endure, but they are driven out all the year to the pastures, and from one hill to another. It must be mentioned here that the nearest relatives of a dead person, including the women, bite away a joint of a finger* because of their great sorrow: as is often to be seen, how 2 or 3 joints have been bitten from the fingers and are lacking.

As far as is known, all of them have almost the same way of burying the dead, except for the Numiquaea [Namaquas] who live about 50 miles* north of the Fort Capo de bon Esperanze, and differ somewhat from the others. Adjoining this folk live those of the Captain Goamoa [Gonnema*] (since they call their leaders Captains), who are pretty numerous, and are allied with the Captain Odasva [Oedasoa*], as also the Great and Little Chouri Keriquas [Griquas] who must dance to his piping.

Much could be related of happenings between the Dutch and the natives of this country. They have indeed many times tried to resist the newcomers, namely the Dutch, but since they have no such equipment as the Europeans they have usually been defeated, and must surrender to the enemy, and suffer the loss of some hundred oxen and sheep.

Schreyer's book, in addition to having the earliest first-hand account of the Hottentots, also contains the earliest first-hand attempt at a comprehensive account of the fauna of the Cape. This is surprisingly accurate for its period: it will be noticed in the following how he corrects generally-accepted errors regarding ostriches, the porcupine and the rhinoceros.

It will be obvious that I am not myself a naturalist. I have relied on books, especially the 1957 revision of Roberts' ‘Birds of South Africa’; Smith's ‘Sea Fishes’, 1961; Gilchrist's 1900 paper in the ‘Proceedings of the Philosophical Society’ (allowing for changes

in the Latin names;) *and on the help of experts*, *especially Mr. P.A. Clancey of the Durban Museum and the staff of Kirstenbosch. The errors are mine*.

Chap. 27. The largest among the birds is the ostrich, which is sufficiently well known from its feathers. Now although many write and tell various things concerning these birds, they are for the most part contrary to the truth. These birds roam the wastes in great numbers, and after diligent enquiry we have found that this bird is from 6, 7 to 8 feet tall, reckoned from the feet to the head: its legs are long and have two claws, on which with the help of its wings (though useless for flying) it can run so fast that no horse or dog can overtake it.

But its body, and yet more its head, are small compared to the legs. Its food is grass, and everything that can pass through its greedy gullet, but it is false that its stomach can digest iron, since I saw one die from a key it had swallowed.

Their increase is like that of all birds. When the female conceives she scrapes a hollow in the sandy soil, and lays therein, not one egg as some assert, but from 7, 8, 12 to 15 eggs, which are not hatched by the sun [Herport, Hoffmann, Langhansz, etc.] but sat on and protected by the hen-bird [in reality by both parents].

The Hottentots diligently search out such nests, and barter the eggs for a piece of tobacco. They taste as well as hens-eggs, and because of their size are very convenient for an egg-cake, since one ostrich-egg has as much white and yolk in it as 24 hens-eggs; and we have eaten very many of the same. If anyone has touched even one egg in her nest, the ostrich will trample it with her feet, and abandon the nest. The newly-hatched birds are very feeble, and cannot well be reared if they are found. But that they seek to hide only their heads is shown by experience to be entirely false, since no bird is harder to shoot than these, and it would be difficult to get hold of one were it not that its love of its nest betrays it. They often go in flocks. I have often counted 40 to 50 running together.

2. Cranes are the second in size, also they are larger than those in Europe. They are little seen, and still less sought for, since their meat is quite hard, and oily, and unpleasant to eat.

3. The Pelican [‘Kropf-Ganss’] is also a large bird, and lives by the sea-shores, as also near salt streams, on fish, which it catches with great cleverness with its beak: this is half an ell long, and three fingers thick, with a little hook in front, and attached to it a long bag, which well could hold eight to ten Leipzig cans of water; and these it swallows, so that its meat also is very oily, and cannot well be eaten.

4. Similar fish-eaters are the Divers [usually for Cormorants], of various sizes. The largest, which are called Maalgasen, are as large as a goose, others as a duck, and there are also smaller ones, all with very sharp and hooked beaks and clear grass-green eyes, and these exceptionally well chase and catch the fish below the water.

In their breeding-season they fly in unbelievable numbers to small and uninhabited islands, where, with other fish-catching birds such as gulls and pelicans, they lay their

eggs on the rocks lying beside the water, and hatch them. They are not used for food, because of their oily taste, but in times of want nothing is forbidden to the hungry stomach.

5. Gulls (which are little fish-hawks) of various sorts are also found here. The largest, which live only on that which the sea casts up, are as large in plumage though not in body as a hen. Some are grey, some grey-black on the backs but as white as snow on belly and neck. They are to be seen for hundreds of miles out at sea, flying and swimming, and since they often come fearlessly to perch on the ships, and let themselves be caught with the hands, the sailors have given them the name of Stupid Gulls [‘Albere Moeben’, Booby] and find them good to eat, although on land they are little esteemed.

6. Blue Gulls [‘Blaue Moeben’, Great Grey Shearwater] are somewhat smaller. They fly always just above the water, and as soon as they see a fish, they shoot down like an arrow into the water, so that it splashes and closes over them, and they remain below until they have their prey; and this hunt they keep up all the day.

7. Those which are called Starling-Gulls [‘Stahr-Moebigen’, perhaps Sterretje] are smaller, and fly with great cries in large flocks, so that at times whole rocks are covered with them. The smallest are speckled [Cape Dove], and the sailors are glad to see them, since they follow the arriving ships in great numbers, and from this it may be concluded that some land or other is soon to be reached.

8. The birds called Bigiwinnen [Penguins] are very swift in the water. They are as large as an average goose, black and white with thick feathers, very short above, set on a tough skin. They have no wings, but instead two fins. They walk quite upright on two black goose-feet, and since they follow one another orderly in large numbers when they leave the water in the evening, and the two fins hang down at their sides, one could well think that men were coming from afar, with black capes and white facings.

They dig holes in the sand, like rabbits, in which they lay and hatch their eggs, and these eggs, like those of the Divers and Gulls, are much sought after and used by the common folk. They can bite very sharply, and therefore any who put their hands into their holes must take great care not to be caught. Their dwelling is on desert islands and little islets. We took various of them aboard, and wished to bring them to Europe, but they all died on the way.

9. Waterfowls which appear on our tables are Wild Geese, tasty when young, Hill Ducks, Snow Ducks; Black Ducks, Yellowbills, Schloben [Slopeend]. They all are different sorts of ducks, some larger than others. In the months of August, September, October they float in great numbers on all the streams and still waters, and many are shot; and indeed even in flight, since they fly many together. They are exceptionally fat and tasty, though some are better than others. They lay their eggs in October and November, and hatch them in marshy and reedy bushes.

10. The Flaminck is a bird as large as an average stork, and also has red legs like this. Its feathers are white, but blood-red on the wings. The beak is as long as a finger, bent downwards in front, and the lower bill is thicker than the upper, contrary to other

birds. Their flesh is also red, so that soup made from it is as red as blood.

11. There are also various sorts of Pool- and Water-Snipe, of which the former are the more esteemed.

12. In December, January, February little birds are seen flying and walking in great numbers on these shores, for which reason also they are called Shore-Birds or Uferläufer [Strandlopertje. 'Traitors' is by a confusion with German 'Überlaufer']. They are of various sizes, and are also called Traitors because of their screaming. They are fat and tasty, so that indeed they resemble the larks here.

13. Waterhens are also eaten. They are as large as small hens, pitch-black, with short but very sharp beaks, having on them two small outgrowths like those which the turkeys have on their heads. They have long and exceptionally sharp claws, with which they seek their food under water.

14. There are great numbers of Herons here, of three or four sorts, as large as doves, snow-white below, some with a tuft on the head, exceptionally lovely. They are often to be seen running through the shrubs on the plains, and are there called Wild Peacocks.

15. Kornhühner [Korhaan], Pheasants and Partridges are very fleshy here, and good to eat. We have also Quail and Larks in great quantity, but since they are small, and the larger birds are to be had in abundance, little pains are taken to catch them.

16. Starlings and Blackbirds are somewhat different from those in Europe. They fly in large flocks, and do much damage in the vineyards.

17. As also the Sparrows come in great numbers, and know how to find the ripening wheat as well as those in Europe. Surprisingly, our Sparrows make fast their nests to the thin twigs of a tree standing in the water, or to a reed. The nests are as round as a ball, with a hole below, and are very neatly arranged with a wall inside, behind which the young lie: this they do to make safe their young from snakes and other beasts of prey.

18. Wild Doves and Turtle-Doves also come flying in great flocks to the fields at the time of sowing, and can well be shot by a lover of them, and even better eaten.

19. Of the songbirds the Canaries are the most appreciated, and next to them the Siskins ['Zeisige', Sysie]. Innumerable kinds of smaller birds are found here: the most beautiful is small and a brilliant blue-green [Malachite Sunbird]; some are as large as a titmouse and all of one colour [too vague for identification]; some are smaller and so beautifully ornamented on the breast with red and yellow feathers [Lesser Double-Collared Sunbird] that nothing lovelier can be seen. They have long beaks and long tongues with which they suck the honeydew from the flowers, and live therefrom.

20. Some birds are as large as sparrows, and as yellow as wax on their backs [Cape Widowbird]; some as red as a glowing ember [Red Bishop in breeding plumage] and the belly like fine black velvet, and live by the brooks. Some have tails longer than a quarter-ell [the 17 cm. tail suggests the Pintail Wydah].

21. There are three or four kinds of birds of prey, such as Hawks; Ravens as large as in Europe but with a thick beak and a snow-white ring round the neck; black and spotted crows. Among this company we must include those called Dreck-Vogel, because

they eat their own droppings. They are of three kinds: the first as large as a goose, white, with large and sharp claws [Cape Vulture]; the second with longer legs and grey, with a tuft of long feathers on the head [Secretary-bird]; the third somewhat smaller [Egyptian Vulture], and much esteemed by the Hottentots, because they betray the lion by their presence when he has caught a prey, whereat the Hottentots drive him off and take what pieces are left for their own nourishment.

22. There is also a sort of bird, not unjustly called Flower-Pecker [Sugarbird], because of its beak. The largest are the size of a sparrow, grey and a little yellow with a long beak and an even longer tongue which divides at the tip like a painter's brush, wherewith they suck the dew from the flowers, this with the little midges being their food. Their tails are three-eighths [of an ell] long.

Chap. 28. Although the earth brings forth and feeds a great, aye an unimaginable quantity of all sorts of beasts, yet its fruitfulness does not attain by far the fruitfulness of the seas, the beasts of which far excel the former both in size and number.

The Whale witnesses sufficiently its claim to be the largest of all that draws breath. In the months of August and September many of them are seen in this region swimming and playing, and although these are not so large as the ones which are caught below Greenland, yet they are such that one finds cause in them to marvel at the great works of GOD. They are large and heavy beasts, which always avoid the shores, since shallow water cannot float them and if they err, they run aground and die, which at times happens.

I saw one lie thus, which, although not one of the largest, was forty-six feet long and at least 12 feet high. The head of this fish is large, the eyes are very small, and on its head it has two holes by which it breathes in and out, and at times with such a noise that one might think an ox was bellowing nearby, although the whale was a full mile distant. They can also draw in water through these holes, and blow it out again very high, though not in such quantities as was thought previously, that it would be enough to sink a ship. Also today there is no need to throw them empty barrels in order to escape them, but they are chased with small fast boats, and killed with a throwing-spear or sharp lance.

Their internal organs and their flesh are in all ways similar to those of the four-footed animals, and their coupling, giving birth and suckling of the young are also like these, as also they are provided by Nature with all the organs needful to such actions. They are full of blood and natural warmth, and can therefore live for many years, as is shown by the moss and mussels which grow on their bodies.

What is called whalebone and is sewn into dresses is no bone, but a horny growth in the mouth, which Nature has given them instead of teeth, so that they can take in their food, which is of very small crabs.

It is amusing to watch when these great beasts throw themselves with their whole body out of the water, and fall back into it with a crack as if a cannon were fired.

2. Pritzköpffe seem also to be of the race of whales. They are caught up to thirty feet long, and live on the Sea-Cats [Sepias] and Manylegs [Octopi].

3. Rappen or Sea-Dogs are of two sorts here, large and small, the former larger than an ox. In the month of November they come in quantities onto the small islands, and breed there, when also many are killed, since the train-oil which is tried-out from their blubber is needed for lamps, for cart-grease and the preparing of leather.

4. All these beasts must breathe, and cannot live without air, in which also the Dolphins are like them. A dolphin is as fast in the water as a bird in the air, as can be seen when they drive the small fish in great numbers to the shores, which at times gives us a rich fish-harvest.

5. Crabs without claws [‘Krebse’, Crayfish] are so large here, that one makes a good dish. Pocket-crabs [‘Taschen-Krebse’, not identified] are also caught of many kinds. Oysters are taken about six miles* from here [the distance suggests the far side of False Bay: cf. Le Vaillant (1792, page 30)]. But in fresh-water streams and brooks there are no other fishes to be had but Barbel [Catfish], perhaps from little search, since the sea-fish can be caught in abundance.

6, Lachs and 7, Salm [both words are usually translated as Salmon]; 8, Shad [Skipjack]; 9, Steinbeissen [probably misprint for Steinbrassen]; 10, Stumpnose; 11, Hottentots Fish [see Index]; 12, Herder; 13, Mackerel; 14, Horse Mackerel [‘Maasbancker’] are all good and tasty to eat, and are caught in great numbers, so that one draught of a large net can draw out 16 casks full, as I have seen.

Chap. 29. The great wastes of this land support so many kinds of wild beasts, that a traveller, if he go but ten miles* inland, will see all day an innumerable quantity of such running and grazing, both grass- and flesh-eaters, among which the largest and most important is

1. The Elephant, a beast which was already famous in ancient times for its strength, intelligence, and usefulness in war. Those which graze here in large herds are molested by no one except the Hottentots, as said above.

I have never been able to obtain well-founded information as to their birth, so I will rather direct the kind reader to the zoologists than trouble him with dubious tales.

No one among the Hottentots or Europeans has ever seen a fight between an elephant and a rhinoceros, although both beasts are often seen here.

It is certain that the rhinoceros always avoids the elephants, though it is not much smaller in body than this, although shorter of leg.

The old writers [and even long after Schreyer: e.g. Spaan (318) in 1752] have described and depicted it as if it were dressed in armour, which however is not the case, its skin being indeed an inch thick but very soft and full of wrinkles. It is a fierce and violent beast when it is made angry, or when it has its young with it, and runs at its enemy like lightning, taking no heed of bushes or of whatever else may be in the way; and if it catches its enemy it throws him up in the air, and catches him on its heavy and strong horn, of which one weighs over ten pounds; and it has no need to lick him to death, as had been written of it from ignorance [this also persisted: e.g. Kolbe (161)].

I have seen how this beast struck the ground with the strong horn which stands on

its nose or snout, and made such a furrow that bushes and large stones and all else that was in the way were thrown out. It has exceptionally sharp smell but poor sight, and therefore those whom it chases must run before the wind; and then if they can only hide behind a bush, it runs past; but to escape from it otherwise is impossible.

Its character is almost that of a pig, and it likes to live in marshy places. Its flesh is used here by the slaves and the natives, and it is tasty so long as it is young.

2. The Water-Horse, which here is falsely called Sea-Cow, is a very large and heavy animal, like the rhinoceros in body, feet and skin, but with a quite different head, since it has very small ears and a very large mouth, in the lower jaw of which are two crooked teeth half an ell long and as thick as an arm. Between these there stand further forwards two straight ones, not much smaller, which snap as sharply together as a flintlock.

Their dwelling-place is in the water, in which also they breed and give birth to their young; but they cannot remain for long below water but must soon come up again to fetch breath. Also they go by night fully a mile from the water for their pasture.

That they themselves let blood [medicinally] through their inch-thick skin, as some write, I cannot believe; but that they indeed wound themselves involuntarily on sharp rocks and reeds is well enough to be seen from the scars on their skin.

For the rest, it is a timorous beast, which at once hastens to the water if it hears or sees anything.

3. There are many Elands here, larger than an ox, with short grey hair and a small head on which stand two twisted upright horns.

An almost similar animal, with two very long straight horns, is called here a Gemsbock. Also there run on the high hills many sorts of wild buck, such as Gemsbock, Bluebock, Pied Bock [‘Bundte Bocke’], Roebuck, Klippsteiger [presumably Klipspringer], Steenbock, and Wildbock [‘Wilde-Bocke’, perhaps Wildebeest, Gnu]. In flesh and taste they are almost all similar, only that they differ in size, colour, and horns; and there is such a quantity of them, that they run in thousands in the bushes on the very high hills, and pasture there. It is difficult to come near them, since they wait for no one but run up the high hills and rocks so that they cannot be pursued. Now and then the Hottentots lie in wait for and catch one, and come and barter it with us for rice and tobacco.

5. Deer go in herds, but not of the same form as ours in Europe: the antlers stand straight up without branches, twisted below but sharp as a needle.

6. Hares, Wild Boars, Porcupines are also found here. These last have quite short legs, and bristles one and a half spans long, black and white, and as sharp as needles, which the Hottentots use in place of such. When they are angry they run backwards at a man, and stick their quille into his legs: these, if they are ripe [? ‘reiff’] fall from its body and remain in the place where they were thrust in, which causes great pain. But that they shoot the quills out from their body is not the case: I have had them in my room, and well studied their nature.

7. There are also Baboons here, which dwell in the highest hills. If anyone tries to come near them, they know how to defend themselves with stones, which they can throw

down from the heights harder than a man, so that one must indeed cease to pursue them. They are strong-bodied, like a pretty large dog. They feed on roots and wild almonds, which the Hottentots also eat. When these wild almonds are ripe, the Hottentots are accustomed to collect them and bury them in the ground. But the baboons well know how to seek these out, and dig them up and steal them. When they call to one another their cry is Hu hu hu, which can be heard from far off, almost like the owls in our country.

This tale of them is worthy of note. Our gardener noticed that many lovely fruits such as water-lemons, melons and the like had gone from the gardens, no one knew whereto. Indeed the soldiers were suspected, but when the gardener kept watch in the moonlight, he saw that a great number of these beasts had climbed over the fence and were stealing the fruit. These one of them plucked, and handed it over to the next to take it out from the garden; but one kept watch on the fence, and when they became aware of the gardener they left the garden as if the wind had blown them away.

8, Leopards; 9, Panthers; 10, Wolves; and 11, Wild Dogs are found here, but no bears have been seen. 12, Wild Cats are very plentiful here, which are taken by the Hottentots, and also shot by the Europeans, and the furs sold [of *Felis lybica* for gout, as in Kolbe (153), Buttner (111), Sparrman (I 149); or of Tiger-Bushcat as in Tappen, Hesse, etc.]. They are far more beautiful than any of Europe. The skins of panthers are exceptionally lovely in colour, like an orange. Those of the young animals have black spots as large as peas, the half-grown as large as a groschen, the adults as a dollar. I took a live panther back with me to Mittelburg and sold it there, also three tiger-skins and three panther-skins: those of the tiger are white with black spots, an extremely lovely garb [no such skins have been traced].

Chap. 30. King David indeed says [Psalm 74] of the good GOD, that He makes Summer and Winter; but here there is no such Winter as in the Northern lands, although one season is somewhat wintry. This Winter begins in March and ends in September: it is usually rainy and sometimes showery, but without snow or ice, except that in August such is to be seen on the highest peaks of the mountains, and also there is then at times a hailstorm, as among us in April. The ground is green all the Winter, and well grown with flowers.

The Summer begins here in September and lasts until March. In December wheat, oats and rye are harvested, in February the grapes are ripe. Throughout the Summer no rain falls, but by night a pleasant dew. At noon it is so hot that one cannot remain or work out-of-doors because of the heat.

In this land very strong and terrible winds blow, especially in the Summer, so that one can scarcely stand before them. They come down over the high hills, and at times bring so much sand with them, that it lies in drifts like snow in Europe.

Chap. 31. Many lovely flowers grow here, which however are not at all like those of Europe. I had their shapes and forms painted for me, but gave such paintings to a good friend in Europe.

I also brought some boxes of bulbs with me to Holland, but left them with an emi-

nent man in Seeland. There also I learned that, although these were planted in a very good soil in a fruitful garden, they did not by a long way produce such lovely flowers as they were wont to do in their native soil.

The aloe, which is considered a rarity among us and is cultivated in the gardens with great pains, is there so common that whole hills are covered with it.

Artichokes grow there also, but far larger and finer than those here. I have seen how seeds of this plant fallen outside the gardens have grown up by themselves, since the soil is very fruitful.

Rosemary, marjoram and suchlike need not be taken from the earth because of the cold, but stand in their places Winter and Summer. I have had these so abundant in the East-India Company's Garden [both probably introduced] that I had the flowers plucked [illegally; but Schreyer was on the Hospital staff] by the black Moor-slaves [= Moslem] (since these must do all the work in the Garden, and where else they are needed) and from this distilled the loveliest rosemary-oil, of which I sent a few pounds to Europe, a few to the Indies, and kept a considerable quantity for myself.

Marjoram grows continually, and at last becomes so thick of stem, that it must be rooted up and got rid of; and other garden-plants the same.

We also found an unusual and marvellous flower there [see Night-scented*]. It grows on the streets where one walks, like ox-eye daisies, and by day has no scent; but as soon as the sun sinks behind the hills, it begins to smell so strongly that one thinks to find all the loveliest scents combined in this one flower.

I could also tell much of the fine and excellent Garden* which the East-India Company has had built there. It lies quite flat, is very long and wide, and the water can be led to all parts of it, so as to refresh the plants in the hot Summer. The hedges are made only of rosemary bushes, in other parts there grow only Centifolien [Cabbage-Roses] and Persian Roses, which grow extremely beautiful and large.

Quinces grow here of such sweetness that one can eat them from the branches like pears. Apples, pears, cherries, plums are also found here, as also olives, lemons, oranges; but all these plants were brought here by ships from Europe, and planted in the fallow soil, which then richly gave these foreign children their nourishment.

There is no need to fear here, that the Spring-blossoming of the fruit-trees might suffer damage, since no hoarfrosts are seen, and therefore the fruit-trees hang full of fruit all the year, so that they can scarce support it. One thing only is damaging, that such strong winds may blow that many of them are thrown off and spoiled.

Chap. 32. Vines were brought from Europe [chiefly from the Rhineland at this date] and planted here. The grapes grow to such a size and sweetness, that one cannot sufficiently marvel at them.

But this is enough concerning the inhabitants of this land, those Hottentots, as also of their manners, customs and food, and of the nature and fruitfulness of the whole land.

[His Second book, on the Indies, appears to be entirely second-hand: it is omitted in the 1931 reprint.]

Background - continued

13/12/1668 ... the ships *Burgh van Leijden*, *Eendracht*, *Elburgh* ... out of sight ...

[1669]
General peace. December 31 secret treaty between France and Brandenburg.
Background - from official documents in the archives

24/3 ... Also come in ... the ships *Cogge* and *Nuytsenburg* ... from Gaale ... under the orders of the Hon. Ryckloff van Goens Junior, Upper-Merchant ...

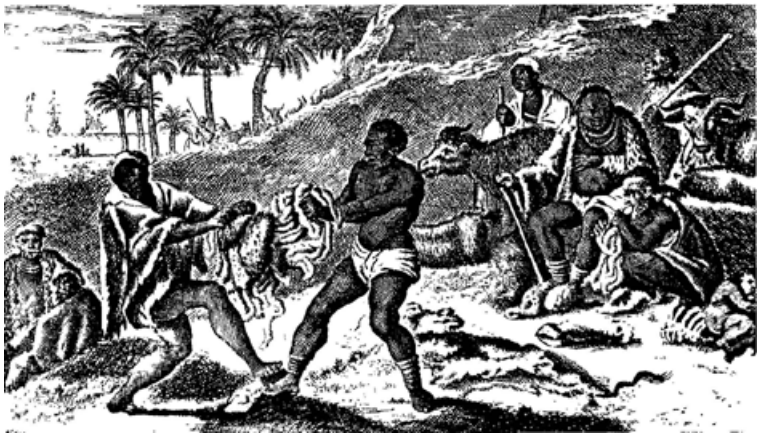
2/4 ... come to the roads the ship *Brederoda*, with the flute* *Sparendam*, from Ceylon ... also the ship *Vlaardinge* ... sailed January 5 from Tessel ... and the hooker* the *Wyting* ... sailed on December 7 last year from the Maas.

3/4 Comes also from Patria the hooker the *Barm* ... 14 men ... Towards evening comes also ... the fine ship the *Jonge Prins* ... sailed December 14 from Texel with 324 men, of whom 25 must be given over to the sea on the way, the rest fairly fit ...

11/4 ... came two ships named *Tarnaten* and *Cattenburg* ... both sailed December 13, 1668 from Tessell ...

13/4 [sailed *Cogge*, *Nuytsenburg*, *Brederode*, *Sparendam*] ... towards evening comes ... *Amerongen*, left Tessel December 13 last year ...

15/4 ... late in the evening the flute *Hassenberg* comes to the roads ...



[22] HOTTENTOTS AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE From the 1686 French edition of Dapper. The seated figure is a 'Captain', with his staff of office.

22 Nicolaus de Graaff

(*See also items 28, 36, 39, 49, 62.*) *If de Graaff had written up his voyages fully, his 'Reisen na de vier Gedeeltens des Werelds' would have been six or seven times its length, and of quite incalculable value. Unfortunately he did not do so: in compensation he included with it a second part, the 'Oost-Indische Spiegel', which is invaluable for details of the organisation of the Dutch East-India Company's ships: much of it was translated with my notes in the QB for March and June 1964. Both parts were published at Hoorn in 1701, and reprinted with changes and additions in 1703, 1704; and in 1930 by the LV, with a few notes. The translations here are from the first edition: the accounts included are practically unaltered in the later editions.*

Like many of the early Dutch writers, he was a ship's surgeon, taking service with the Hoorn Chamber in 1639, and sailing in 1640, touching at the Cape and reaching Batavia in September that year. Voyages followed to Goa, Surat, Persia, the Red Sea, Japan, and with other employers to Brazil, Barbados, Cadiz, the Mediterranean, Copenhagen etc.; and as a Navy surgeon he was in the 1666 raid on the Thames.*

His sixteenth voyage was again with the V.O.C., sailing from Texel in Jonge Prins *on December 14, 1668.*

Continuing our journey, on April the 2nd [1669] we sighted the high hills of the Cape of Good Hope, and on the 3rd [DR] anchored in the Table Bay. Here we found the yacht* *Vlaardinge* [arrived 2/4, DR], which had left the Fatherland three weeks before us, and three days [DR 11/4, 13/4] after our arrival there came in the ships *Tarnaten*, *Amerongen* and *Kattenberg*. At this time there also arrived from Ceylon the ships *Brederode* [DR 2/4], *Nuisenburg* [DR 24/3 as *Nuytsen*], *de Koog* [ditto as *Cogge*], and *Sparendam* [DR 2/4] under the command of Heer *Ryklof van Goens the Younger* [in *Cogge*]; and from Batavia the flute* *Hasenburg* [DR 15/4]. Having refreshed ourselves at the Cape, and provided ourselves with water and other necessities, we sailed on the 16th [DR 17/4] with the yacht *Vlaarding* and a hooker [DR with two hookers, *Wijting*, *Barm*] from the Maas. [Thence to Batavia and Ceylon, taking six elephants from Jaffna to Bengal. Here he made a land-excursion to Patna, and took part in a tiger-hunt before returning to Ceylon].

Background - continued

16/4/1669 ... at noon *Jonge Prins*, *Vlaardinge*, *Wyting*, *Barm* given their letters [sailed 17/4]

17/4 ... arrives the flute *Delffshaven*, very greatly damaged, having fought in latitude 36^{o} 5 North with a Turkish [Moroccan] pirate during 12 glasses,* and ... beaten her off [losing 8 killed, 8 died of wounds, 23 wounded]

22/4 ... four soldiers sent to Saldanhia Bay to take possession ... until the Serjeant Jeronimus Cruse shall have arrived to set up his posts at the upper and lower watering-places ...

24/4 ... orders by the Lords Proprietors dated December 19, 1668 that Saldanhia Bay be held in the possession of the Hon. Coy....

25/4 ... come from Patria ... the ships *Wapen van der Goes* and *Loosduijnen* ... the former sailed January 16 ... the latter December 14 last year from before Vlissingen with 140 head, of whom 10 must be given to the sea ... had called at the Duyns ...

23 Jean de Lacombe

A translation of his MS account was published in London, 1937, as 'A Compendium of the East ...' It is so full of ridiculous statements that one cannot avoid the suspicion that the whole thing is a fake. According to it, he sailed in Losdune (*flute** Loosduynen) *on December 14, 1668: this date is correct by Hague codex 4389. He claims to have been in command of the soldiers on board: he certainly was no sailor, to judge from his statement that from 'Cap Falso' (Hanglip) 'we pursued our course' to Cape Agulhas and* then *entered Table Bay, on 'August 22', actually April 25, 1669 by the DR. Mis-statements then abound: 'the water ... is indifferent ... a little trickle ... and even then it is not very good'; 'a fortress of stone composed of four bastions'; 'the Lions Head forms a promontory' and has on it 'a stronghold' (the two-man signal-station); the Hottentot huts composed of 'three or four branches of trees'; their cattle 'strangled' for food; the Hottentots as cannibals, 'even telling us that they do not know of any better flesh than our own'; the Table Mountain unclimbable; 'pigmies ... not even two feet in height.' He gives the sailing as in October: actually May 12 by the DR.*

Background - continued

12/5/1669 ... *Wapen van der Goes*, *Loosduijnen* ... given their despatches [but held up by wind at Robben Island, sailed 14/5]

14/6 ... at the ronde bosie ... the vineyard is flourishing lustily ... at the Coy's schuer the folk are busy with threshing ...

8/7 [Report of Fiscaal* Cretser on Saldanha Bay] ... the watering-place held by 3 men ... marker there with the arms of the East-India Company ... and Jutten Island ... at Hoeties Bay with guard of two men [etc.]

25/8 ... appears from Patria the fine ship the *Vrijheyt* ... put to sea April 30 with 323 men [including two miners: five more arrived in *Polaenen* on 19/9]

[1670]
General peace. June I secret Anglo-French treaty.
Background - from official documents in the archives

8/3 ... Towards noon came the ship the *Cogge* ... had put out to sea on December 7 last year ...

15/3 ... came the flute* *Wimmenongen* ... was sent out October 13 last year ... with 106 heads ...

18/3 Arrived ... the fine ship the *Stight van Uytrecht* ... left December 7 with 264 souls of whom 5 died on the way ... with which came also the Hon. Pieter HACKIUS to replace the present Commandeur Jacob Borghorst ...

20/3 ... reached the roads the Delfft hooker* the *Swemmer* ... sailed December from the Maas with 17 souls ...

21/3 ... about noon reached the anchorage ... the *Huys te Velsen* and *Soetendael*, the former ... put to sea December 7 ... the latter December 8 ...

24/3 The ships *Cogge*, *Wimmenum* and the hooker *Swemmer* ... given their letters [sailed 25/3]

30/3 ... sailed in ... the yacht* *Batavia*, sailed on December 7 last year with 175 souls ...

31/3 ... arrived ... the Zeeland ship *Middelburg* ... left on December 8 last year ...

24 Frederick Andersen Bolling (Plate 23)

(*See also in item 31.*) *Translated from Danish microfilms of* '*Friderici Bollingii*, *Oost-Indiske Reise-bog....*', *Copenhagen 1678*, *by courtesy of the University Library*, *Leiden. There is also a translation into Dutch by Mrs. J. Visscher*, *in* '*Bijdragen tot de Taal-*, *Land- en Volkenkunde van Nederlandsch-Indie*, *Part 68*, *The Hague 1916*, *with valuable background-information. He was from Tönsberg in Norway*, *student in Copenhagen and private tutor to the sons of a Norwegian Major-General* (*Visscher*)*; but on December 1*, *1669 signed on with the V.O.C. at Amsterdam as a Cadet**, *at 10 gld. per month. Two months advance of pay. Oath taken at the East-India House* (*now a Museum*), *and issued with full kit*, *chest*, *mattress*, *hammock. December 5 by lighter** *to Texel and embarked in* Sticht Utrecht, '*a magnificent large ship of 500 last**, *with 60 guns*, *most of them metal** cannon-royal (halve kartouwen). Various nationalities aboard, Danish, English, French, *Norwegian*, *Italian*, *Dutch*, *Polish*, *German*, *Swedish. Sailed December 8* (*Hague codex 4389 folio 60 has December 7*). *339 souls including 14 women. 7 to a mess. Two watches of 139 men each. Hackius on board*, *going out to be Governor at the Cape*, *Admiral** *of the fleet of seven ships. Channel. December 19 heavy storm*, *fleet dispersed*, Utrecht *now alone. Already 69 sick. January 5*, *eve of Epiphany*, *the 15 students on board* (*German*, *Dutch*, *English*, *French*, *Danish*) *performed the* '*Star-Procession*'*: given 30 ducats** *by Hackius January 14 near Cape Verde*, *first flying-fishes seen*, *in thousands*. '*One pot of beer daily*, *called in Dutch a flapkan*, *holding 6 pints*' (*see Can**). *Soldier who had wounded another condemned to be keelhauled thrice*, *300 blows with rope's-end* ('*but if a soldier*, *with a wooden club shaped like a musket-stock*'), *and hand nailed to mainmast with a knife until he should tear it loose*, *6 months' pay forfeited;* '*but this last excused*, '*because of his wife and small children who drew the half of his pay each month from the Company*'. *February 12*, *Equator: no ceremony*, *but everyone swam. February 12*, *the students performed the story of Holofernes* '*as in the Bible*', *and March 5 that of the Prodigal Son. March 7 Abrolhos passed: double rations and a flapkan of Spanish wine to each mess. March 9*, *course now westerly for the Cape. March 10*, *beer finished*, *now water only*.

On the 14th we saw various signs of the *Cabo de bona Esperanca*, which were principally swallows [? Cape Doves], whales, *Trombas* (long floating reeds with stems and all, thus called because they are shaped like trumpets) and a quantity of particoloured birds called *Mangas de Veluelo* [*sic: Velludo*], in Danish 'Floyels Ermer' ['Velvet Sleeves'] because the wings are black: we caught some to amuse ourselves, although they are uneatable because of their oily taste. All this is a sure sign, that the *Cabo de bona Esperanca* is not far away, since all of them remained with us until we reached the Cabo. Also it is an

nfailing sign of sighting the *Cabo de bona Esperanca* when the compass shows true South-North [without Declination*; but incorrect], and then land must be looked for. That same day the Captain announced that whoever first sighted land would receive a fresh-milk cheese, a new hat, a little keg ['Anker'] of brandy, and 4 Rixdollars in cash; every day was now called 'Land! Land!', but it was always imagined land and soon disappeared. (It was clouds which looked like land.)

On March 20 a sailor who sat at the masthead ['op ved Floyen'] also called 'Land! Land!' as soon as daylight came ... and at 8 o'clock we clearly saw land, namely the Taffel-Baj, for which we were all joyful, and each of us longed to see *Africa* and set foot on it, since we should then be at the *Antipodes* of our Fatherland [*sic*]....

This *Cabo de bona Esperanca* is the outer edge and uttermost point of Africa [*sic*], lying on 34½ degrees South, and is formed by the Taffel-Bay, where the late noble lord Ofve Giedde had carved on a stone the name and *Symbol* of our most gracious King CHRISTIAN the Fourth [in 1619]. The Taffel-Bay has received its name from the hill which lies near it, and was first discovered by the Portuguese, who later fortified the place with a fine castle [*sic*] and laid up supplies there, because it was half-way to the Indies, namely 1600 miles* from Norway, and the Portuguese called the place *Cabo de bona Esperanca*; but later the Dutch called the place *Caput bonae Spei* or 'Fort of Good Hope', that is to say the Castle where they had good prospects. The Dutch have fortified the *Cabo* with two large forts: the one which was first built has two walls around it; around the first wall, which is made of brick, there is no water, but within the second, which is made of mud and clay, there are moats [confused and incorrect]. The Governor and also the Council live within the inner wall.

As soon as we had dropped anchor on *March* 21 [DR 18/3] the Admiral* went ashore with his wife, children and servants, since he was to be the Governor of this same land. We at once struck our Admiral's flag*, since the flag was flying from the Fort and from all the watch-posts, until further orders from the Governor. When the Admiral bade us farewell and went ashore we fired 9 guns in his honour, and when he stepped on land all the guns of the Fort were fired, and all the soldiers fired three volleys from their muskets.

On *March* 22 our Captain received orders from the Governor to fly the flag and go on to the East Indies as Admiral. At the *Cabo bonae Spei* we found the ship *Gouda* [error for *Cogge*, DR 8/3], which had arrived three days previously, and our other 5 ships joined us here day by day [*Swemmer* 20/3, *Huys te Velsen* 21/3, *Batavia* 30/3, *Middelburg* 31/3, *Gouda* 1/4 by DR]: we had not seen them since the storm dispersed us in the Spanish Sea as has already been told. The sailors set the ship in order, by scrubbing and so forth, and brought out fresh water every day: moreover, refreshing was issued daily, as much as we wished, fresh mutton, water-lemons, radishes, 'Barcken-Roder' [? beetroots], 'Kabuss-Kall' [? cabbages], and all sorts of the tasty greenstuffs which grow in abundance in that land, also fresh and dried fish. The Dutch keep a very vigilant watch, not from fear of the Heathen but of the Christian rulers, who, as is well known, are at war with the Dutch in the Fatherland [?]: for this reason when a ship approaches, a flag is flown by all the

[23] Frontispiece of item 24. The bird may be intended for a cassowary or an ostrich: the rhinoceros has the legendary armour-plating.

watch-posts, and then it is soon known what sort of a ship it is [confused: see Flag*]. Also as a rule they bring out farmers from Holland each year [*sic*] to cultivate this *Cabo*, so that there are already nearly 100 farms which have spread themselves over the land, and who day by day plant vineyards. The soil in itself is very fruitful. The Taffel Mountain is covered with clouds before storms and bad weather, and it is lovely to see when the evening star rises on a clear evening: it rises just over the Taffel Mountain, and it looks as if a fire were burning in the centre of the table.

At this time a Lieutenant came aboard, and from our ship took off 28 soldiers, 6 cadets* and 8 sailors, in all 42 men, who must at once let down their chests into the longboats ['Baaden'] and go ashore to remain there: my comrade was among these men, and although we parted unwillingly we could do nothing about it, since it was as though we had sold ourselves for money and must therefore obey orders: our parting grieved us as though we had been husband and wife. Now also we must sell the few goods which we had bought on our joint account: we got 32 Rixdollars at the Cabo for a little keg of brandy which in Amsterdam had cost us 6 Rixdollars; for 40 pounds of tobacco half a Rixdollar per pound, or 20 Rixdollars in all, which had cost us 5 Rixdollars; for 20 sweet-milk cheeses 1 Rixdollar each (14 of which we had ourselves brought from Holland and 6 had been given us on board as rations, since the Company gives each 3 cheeses, which must suffice him for the whole journey). And so we bade each other a sorrowful good-bye.

As regards the Heathen found here at the *Cabo bonae Spei*, who are the [original] inhabitants of the land, they are the most hideous folk that can be found in the world. A party of these *Hottentots* came to our ship (since these inhabitants are called *Hottentots*).

The men are as tall as a boy of 15 at home, very slim-bodied, but with flat noses: their hair looks like black wool, and in it they hang as ornaments beads ['uechte Perler'] which they get from the Dutch. Their skin is brownish, but they take the fat and the dung of animals and smear themselves with it, which makes them foul-looking and foul-stinking. They are quite naked, except that they wear on their shoulders a sheepskin, as it might be a cloak, this skin being just as it is taken off the sheep: they turn the wool inwards towards their bodies for warmth (since there are Winters and Summers here, the Winter beginning in *March*). On their arms they have copper and iron rings, which among them is a great ornament, while around the left arm [*sic*] they have some guts, just as they are taken from the beasts with the dung in them, as also around their necks and their waists, which guts they change and renew each year in *May*, since this is their New Year [in no other writer]. They have large holes in their ears, in which they hang false corals [beads] which they get from the Dutch. They have always a spear in their hands, of which the end is hardened in the fire and made like a spike. They can throw stones with great accuracy, even to killing a bird in the air: the men practice themselves in such throwing. They run races against a horse, never losing ['uden all Skade'].

As regards the women, they are no taller than a girl perhaps 12 years old among us.

Their heads are always covered with a sheepskin, and they have another sheepskin hanging over their shoulders, and a scrap like the tail of a fox before their privities. They have also these aforesaid guts* hanging in quantities around their necks, arms and legs, also copper and iron rings and false pearls. Of these 10 came aboard our ship, with women and children: the women had the children on their backs, and their breasts were like long and narrow flasks, which they could throw back over to their backs and feed the children from them. They leapt and hopped up and down before us, so that we should give them a piece of tobacco. They are very avid for tobacco, one can get them to do anything one desires for tobacco: while we lay at the *Cabo Bonae Spei* they killed a Pole because they saw that he was carrying a roll of tobacco under his arm [not confirmed elsewhere]. Their speech is rather inarticulate than articulate, we could understand no word of it since when they speak they click with the tongue against the palate. Good tobacco they call *Tubaccum tzicum* [*sic:* actually 'bad tobacco']. They must go back ashore again at once, since we did not wish to have them on board any longer, because they are thievish, and take all the iron and small things they can lay their hands on.

As regards the religious observances of these *Hottentots*, I learnt much from a Hottentot who had been with the Dutch for a long time and spoke good Dutch. [Was he a humorist who liked to tell tall tales to strangers?] Chastity is regarded by them as one of the greatest virtues, so that, if a man or a woman live together outside or before marriage, both if found guilty must be stoned to death. They pray to the moon and the sun, and believe, that there is a Great Captain above and a Great Captain below. The Captain who is above is sometimes good, when he gives good weather, and sometimes evil, when he gives storms and cold; but the Captain below is always good, since he gives them cattle for their food, fish for their sustenance; and indeed this Captain makes it unnecessary for them to work (since they find it strange that we, the Christians, work, and they say, that we are all mortal, that we gain nothing from our toil, but at the end are thrown underground, so that all we have done was done in vain).

[None of the following is supported by any other writer.] As regards their marriage, they enter this when they are 12 years old, and when it pleases the elders of both (but they must [? 'not' omitted] be cousins in the first or second degree. Then they are brought together, and before they may enter into copulation they are first examined by the priest. (He is distinguished from the others since the priest wears two sheepskins, one on his shoulders and one around his waist, further a priest is not allowed to marry, and above all no one may be a priest who has not first let both his testicles* be cut away). They are examined by the priest as to whether they are sound in health and lack nothing. Then the priest cuts off the right testicle of the man, and a joint from a finger* of the woman's right hand (so that it can be seen how often she has been married, since she must lose a joint for each marriage, whereas the man loses a testicle at the first occasion only). When now the man is recovered, and the woman's finger is healed (since these signs serve as engagement tokens for them) then they come together in *May*, when their New Year begins when the moon is full: they are then both adorned with sheeps' guts full of

dung, and with a garland of ostrich-feathers on their head and waist (since their country is full of ostriches, but an ordinary *Hottentot* may not go adorned with ostrich-feathers, but only their Kings or Dukes, but they are allowed to wear them at their marriage). Thereafter there is a great assembly, the bride and bridegroom come hand in hand, and the whole assembly shouts and screams when the priest approaches with a burning torch in his right hand, and with his left hand waves up and down a piece of wood in the shape of a half moon. As soon as the priest waves the fire and the moon around them they both fall on their knees, pointing with their hands to the half moon and to heaven, thus declaring that sun and moon shall turn away from them if they are not true to one another. After that the priest speaks some words over them, and then everyone returns home to his dwelling.

When any of them dies, they bury him entirely naked, and the priest again comes with his fire and half moon, whereby he bears witness, that the dead man lived properly in his marriage [unconfirmed elsewhere]. But if a woman dies, and she still has a suckling child, the child is buried alive with her, saying that a child who is still a suckling will not be cared for after the mother's death [elsewhere in cases of death in childbirth only: see Hottentots, Infanticide].

Also every evening when the sun sets they keep watch by a large fire, all leaping and shouting so that the lions shall not come to do them any harm.

As regards their food, these *Hottentots* eat raw flesh and raw fish (just as they catch it in the water). As soon as they have taken off the skin from a sheep they eat it up. They have stone knives, and they live for 100 years and are seldom sick.

The Dutch now and then send some horsemen, sometimes 100, sometimes 200 [*sic:* or ? 'miles' omitted] on expeditions* inland into the *Hottentot* country, with tobacco, copper and iron rings and false pearls, with which they barter horses, which are as small as those in Norway [Zebras or Quaggas; but never bartered], cattle, and sheep. These sheep are as large as one of our one-year-old cows, with broad rumps and very short rumps ['Rumpen' twice]. The *Hottentots* at times sell such a sheep for a piece of tobacco as long as a finger. But it is noteworthy, that no merchant or soldier may trade* with these *Hottentots* on pain of severe punishment, but the Company wishes to have the profit for itself, and sells such a sheep for 8 gulden.

I went ashore every day to see how things were at the *Cabo*, and saw there various beasts which I had never seen previously. Here in *Africa* all sorts of beasts are found: lions, *leopards*, *tigers*, black-furred bears [*sic*], foxes, wild horses with black and white stripes which run like a mottling over the whole body [Zebras], and the legs of which are as thin as those of a roedeer. Sea-horses, otherwise called *Hippopotamos*, are found in the Taffel Bay as in the river *Nilo*. These have cloven hoofs like an ox ['Aabne Klaer', which Visscher translates as 'very short legs'], a short and blunt tail, long and narrow teeth, the head of an ox with long moustaches: they sometimes come on land and eat the grass that grows on the shore. They are full of oil, which is smeared on against swellings, causing them to disappear: their teeth are good against toothache, if the teeth are rubbed

[? 'sticker'] with them: their blood is used by painters in the East-Indies as colouring ['farve'].

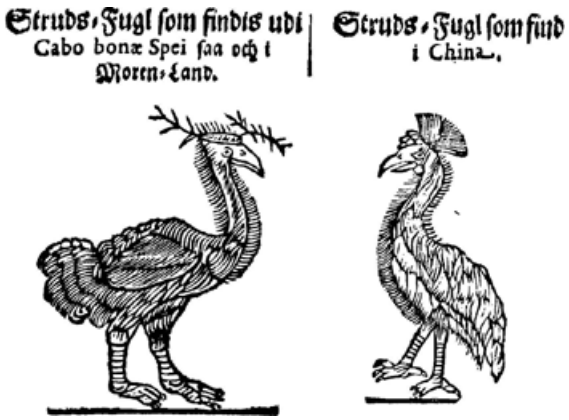
Baboons are also found here, which are as large as pigs but in shape are like apes. Towards evening these Bavianen assemble in great numbers, and themselves make fire with two stones [!], and haul in wood to their fire, and make a hubbub as was told for the *Hottentots*, so that the lions may not attack them.

The animal *Rhinoster* or *Rhinoceros* is also found here, as also is found in India in *Bengala* and *Patana*. It is of a dark blue colour, though somewhat whitish, is 5 ells high and 4 ells long, and has quite short legs: its snout resembles that of a pig, and it has a crooked horn on the nose, 1 ell long. Some have white horns and some black horns (during my return journey I bought 4 of each sort at the *Cabo bonae Spei*, paying 2 rixdollars for each, which the English took from me [in item 31]). They have also another crooked horn on the neck, half an ell long, and from its back to its legs it has as it were hard scales [*sic*], just as if they had been fixed to it, and has so sharp a tongue that it can devour a man with legs and all [*re-sic*]. Its appearance is that of the picture [Titlepage, Plate 23]. This beast is the chief enemy of the elephant [a stock yarn], and when he will attack it he sharpens his horn on a stone, and runs between the legs of the elephant and thrusts his horn into its belly, since the elephant has thin skin under its belly. But should he fail in this, the elephant beats him to death with its long trunk and tears him in pieces with its long tusks. Everything that is found in his body is used as medicine in the Indies.

There are various opinions regarding the questions whether this animal is the Unicorn, as it is called, since one cannot find the unicorn in the shape depicted by some, and it is argued that it in no way resembles that form, since these show it like a horse, with the horn in the forehead. Some assert, that the roedeer found at the *Cabo de bona Esperanca* are the unicorns, since some of them have on the forehead horns 2 ells long, and others have horns of 1 ell, some have white horns and some have black horns, and these horns grow in knots like a Japanese cane ['Kiepper of Ror'], or others look as if they had been twisted.

Elephants are also found here, which are the largest land-animals anywhere in the world: they are also to be seen in *Java Majori* in the East-Indies. [Elephants there, and their use in war.]

Ostriches are also to be found here, as in the land of the Moors. They are so tall that when they raise their head in the air their head comes higher than that of a tall man on horseback. Each of the paces they take is 18 feet long when they are running at their slowest speed. They cannot fly high in the air. Their claws are like the hooves of deer: when anyone chases them they are so clever, that they can take up a stone in their claws and throw it at their pursuer [*sic*], so that he must take to flight. It has been written, that they eat steel and iron, but I threw such to them and they would take no notice of it; but they eat stones. The greatest profit from them is from their eggs and feathers: the egg-shells are used as drinking-bowls, and the feathers as plumes. [List of biblical



references to ostriches.]

The ostrich found in *China* is entirely different: it is as tall as the African ostrich but has more slender legs, and carries its feathers on its head and not on its back like these. Hence it is easier to catch than those here. Its eggs are as large as those of the other [in Africa], but are yellow whereas those are white.

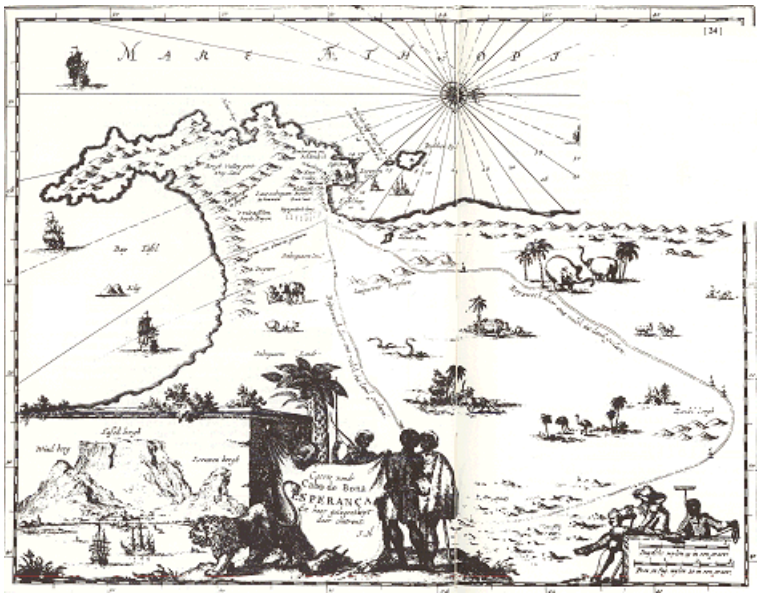
At the *Cabo* a sort of bird is also found, called *Pingvin*, thus named, not because they are fat, but because of their white heads: they are black on the back, their bellies are white, and they have a white ring around the neck. The skin is as thick as that of a pig, the beak is as large as that of a raven, the neck short and thick, the body as large as a goose; instead of wings they have some little winglets hanging down, with which they can swim. Many of them are found in the water, and when they come

28 FRIDERICI BOLLINGII

ſagde os at være ſlagne aff Dragen / om hand ſielff ſkulle haſve ſlagit aff ſig ; de vare runde och ſtoere / och ſiuntis ſom de vare forgylte : At jeg inꝛet ſkal tale om dend gemeene Mands tale udi Norge ſom tit har fortælt mig hvorledis de haſver ſeet Dragen flyſve fra it Bierg paa ti anden dit. Mens Diodorus, Arabo, Ælianus och Ariſtoteles de ſkriſver at der ſkal findis Drager ſom ere 240 Fod lange / de kand opſluge Mand och Heſt / der er och altid Strid (ſom de ſkriſver) imellem Dragen och Elephanten / och naar de komer tilſammens at ſtride / da omkomer de begge.

Draco.

Den Fugl Kaſuarus ſom ellers udi Oſt-Indien kaldis Emme, kommer fra det Eiland Banda udi Oſt-Indien har ſvartactig Coleur, mens brun paa Fæderne / er halff ſaa ſtoer ſom en Struꝛ / mens Beenene och Fødderne ere gulactige / med Fødderne kand hand ſlaae bag op ſom en Heſt / for Bryſtit har hand en haard Plade / ligeſom it Skilt / paa Hofvedit haſver den en rund haard Hielm / ligeſom en Skaael / ligeſaa haaer ſom it Been / blaa och rødactig paa Farſven / Halſen er ſom en Kalkounſke-Hanis Hals ; Vi haffde med os 6 ſaadanne ſom vi ſkulle haſve fort



[24] MAP OF THE CABO DE BONA ESPERANCA AND THE SITUATION AROUND IT From item 25. For the canal-line see in item 26: Nieuhoff does not mention the survey, nor the inland expedition shown. The captions in translation read: Hout Bay. Walvis Rock, 'blows like a whale because it is hollow.' Robben Island. Bosbergen, 'unclimable [? Grootklip in Twelve Apostles]. Berg Valley, 'good pasturage'. Wintberg [Devils Peak]. Table Mountain. Dassen Island. Hout Valley [? valley of Goede Hoop River]. Lion Hill. Salt River. Steenbergen, 'om te sluyten' [?]. 'Land unsuitable for agriculture.' Hollandse Rietbeek [Liesbeek River]. Fort. 'Good land'. Table Bay. 'The land between both bays.' 'Allotted lands.' 'Line to be dug through [for proposed canal]. Salt-pan [Riet Vlei]. 'Bay Tafel' [error for Bay Vals, False Bay]. 'Unsuitable land'. 'Dunes'. 'Rock' [Seal Island]. Leopard Hills [Tygerbergen, Tierbergen]. 'Route of journey made inland by our people'. 'Unsuitable land'. Saddle Hill [? Riebeeks Castle]. In the cartouche: Wind Hill [Devils Peak], Table Mountain, Lion Hill. Scale of Dutch/English or French miles* [giving 5 Dutch = 4 English].

on land it is always in threes and fours. Their legs are black and like those of a goose, and they walk erect. They are quite tasty to eat, and although they eat nothing but fish they do not at all taste of these [contradicted by other writers]. In an hour one can catch 100 of them, so numerous are they. They are easily caught because they cannot fly.

Besides these a sea-cow [Elephant-Seal] can be seen in the slaughterhouse, stuffed with hay [see Museum*], which was caught alive, and much oil was got from it. It had two large teeth in its mouth, short legs, and the skin looked like a sail.

[Description of dragons, chiefly from early writers and the classics 'although many think, that no dragons exist'; and of the Cassowary of Banda, with its picture on the title-page, Plate 23].

All sorts of other beasts and fishes are also to be found there, of which some hang in the entrance-hall of the Governor's residence, all stuffed with hay [see Museum*], with which I will not however detain the kind reader, but will return to the completion of my voyage. Thus, when our ship had taken in the necessary stores, I went back to sea.

On April 1 [DR] we left the *Cabo bonae Spei* and continued our journey to Batavia.... [April 13 'we saw the island called the Terra de Natall'. April 16-18 at Madagascar. June 7 Batavia, and in garrison there until 1671.]

Background - continued

1/4/1670 ... the ships *Huys te Velsen* and *Soetendael*, both for Ceylon, and the *Stigt van Utrecht* for Batavia reached the open sea ... there tacked into the bay ... the ship *Gouda*, having left the Vlie December 7 last year ... [DR 23/8 to 2/10 see in item 15]

[1671]
General peace. Treaty of neutrality between France and the Emperor.

Background - from official documents in the archives

11/1 ... towards midday the Hon. Rycklof van Goens the Younger came ashore with his family ... from *Brederode*, bound for Ceylon ...

1/2 Arrived the return-fleet of 8 ships, bringing the Hon. Isbrand Goske, lately Director in Persia and now commanding this fleet, being *Sticht van Utrecht*, *Middelburg*, the *Vrye See*, the *Wapen van Hoorn*, the *Gerechtigheyt* and *Prins*

Willem, all having sailed from Batavia on November 20 last year together with the little flute *Bunschoten* ...

8/2 ... came the little flute *Bunschoten* ... from Batavia with rice and other provisions for the Cape ...

11/2 ... by the Hon. Commissioner Goske in Council it was resolved to send tomorrow some burghers and farmers by horse to the Hottentoos Hollandt to study the fertility, convenience, and situation of the same ...

16/2 Resolutions ... our State very probably again to be involved in a war ... the weak and indefensible state of the old small fort* ... the one bastion built of the new fortress, not yet enclosed at the back ... resolved to throw up some earthen breastworks or similar small redoubts, and keep a good watch at the coming of any foreigners, to prevent them from landing [mention of the letter from the XVII dated 20/11/67 as in item 15]

21/2 Resolutions ... to enclose the back of the western bastion ... with palisades and a wall of earth ...

24/2 ... About 9 in the morning the Hon. Isbrand Goske embarked, with the firing of the customary salutes, the burghers and soldiers all standing to arms [sailed 26/2]

2/3 ... anchored ... the flute* *Sparendam*, had sailed on October 13 ... bound for Ceylon, having lost on the journey 5 of the 170 souls aboard, and with only 3 sick ...

4/3 ... a smart 'spiegelschip*' sighted ... *Damiate* ... for Batavia ...

5/3 ... came sailing into the bay ... *Gecroonde Vrede* ... from Hoorn October 23 ...

6/3 ... the return-fleet, being the ships *Vryheyt*, *Zuytpolsbroek*, the *Wapen van der Veer* and the *Hoff van Breda* ... under the command of the Skipper Pieter Coopman (who at his arrival was deadly sick) ...

25 Johan Nieuhof
(Plate 24)

(*See also items 2*, *6*, *8*, *29*.) *Sailed from Batavia December 17*, *1670 in the flagship*, *apparently* Vryheit.

On the 6th of March [DR] about five hours before sunset we dropped anchor in the Table Bay in front of the Fort, in eight fathoms, thanking God that He had so mercifully preserved us thus far.

We found there three ships, the Gekroonde Vrede, Damiaten, and a yacht* [apparently *Sparendam*, but not a yacht] ready to sail for the Indies, and learnt from our friends of the good state of the Fatherland, and that the Commandeur Ysbrant Gotske had arrived there safely on the second of February, and had left again for the Fatherland with three return-ships [DR].

And since our Commander [Pieter Coopman] had fallen sick some days before, one of us went to advise the Commandeur of the Cape, Hakkius, of our arrival and condition; but next day he himself went ashore, and took up his abode in the usual place.

On the eighth there came in the yacht* Maria [DR 7/3: ? 'yacht'] coming from the Island of Madagascar, with the Marquis de Mondeverguin on board, Viceroy of the King of France for that island and its dependencies. He was a person of great dignity,

nearly 70 years of age. He advised the Commandeur Hakkius that he would be happy to come ashore, if he were received according to his rank. To this a reply was sent; but, whether he was displeased by it, or because of his own doubts and the rumours current of a war with France, he set sail as soon as he had taken in water and firewood, before this was expected.

[Although he does not mention it, Nieuhof must have taken part in the 'cursory examination' of the route for the canal* mentioned in item 26, nor does he mention having taken part in any inland expedition*: see his map, plate 24].

We were busy until the seventeenth of March in providing ourselves with our needs and wants and refreshing. [Decided by the Broad Council* to sail without waiting for the two return-ships that had remained behind. All ships to make ready to defend themselves, in view of the war-rumours.]

On the 20th the crew went ashore by turns, according to custom, to refresh themselves....

On the twenty-second [DR], after the farewell feast, the commander gave the signal to depart. We were then five ships, Vryheit, Wapen van ter Veer, Hof van Breda, Zuid-polsbroek, and Spanbroek. At this each did his best to get up the anchor before the bow, but because of the strong wind this took more than three hours....

Next day the commander hoisted the white flag, in order to consult regarding the declination* of the compass, which was established as three degrees westerly....

Council near Saint Helena to decide on the course for Ascension. Sargasso: 'the ships got whole fields of the weed before their prows, and could go through only with difficulty'. Death of Coopman, corpse put in a coffin 'aft on the kampanje' [poop*], for burial on land later. Northabout*. Near Foula news that peace still reigned: shirts and shoes bartered for codfish. Cruisers* met, warships. Many sick. Several deaths 'from the water, from which many suffer in the return-journeys from the Indies' [? dropsy]. Texel July 9, 1691.*

Background - continued

7/3/1671 At dawn we were astonished to see on the far side of the bay a fine 'spiegelschip*' wearing a French flag at her topmast ... On the arrival of the flute *Sparendam*, in which came the Upper-Merchant Robert Padtbrugge, it had been thought fit to allow the same to fly the flag* on the mainmast, and that now with the arrival of the four return-ships with the Skipper Coopman in command he also had a flag at the main topmast ... contrary to all naval custom ... resolved to let the said Coopman be asked if he had any special commission, and if not he was to strike his flag ... came the shallop* of the said French ship named the *Maria* ... with officials to salute the Hon. Commandeur in the name of Monsr. de Mondavergne, ex-Viceroy of Madagascar, requesting that H.E. might be allowed to remain here for some days in order somewhat to refresh, which was politely accorded ...

9/3 ... tacking into the bay .. the flute *Spanbroeck*, left Ceylon January 14 ...

10/3 ... from the flute* *Sparendam* 25 soldiers [taken ashore], this chiefly at the request of the Merchant* Padtbrugge, in that these men were suspected by him in matters of consequence ...

[Then see in item 26]

26 Robert Padbrugge

Translated from microfilms of Hague codex KA 4399, Nr. 71. Sailed from Texel on October 13, 1670, in Sparendam *for Ceylon, with* Brederode (*Hague codex 4389 folio 62*) *which however went on ahead.*

March 2 [1671] at dawn we were in the passage between the Robben Island and the Lion Hill, drifting in a calm, and towed with the longboat* and skiff* in order to remain in the fairway. We saw no ships in the roads except ... a little flute [*Bunschoten*] which had come from Batavia with rice for this promontory. On land all was well, except that the new French Viceroy of Madagascar, H.E. de la Haye [action at Saldanha Bay as in item 15]....

March 6. There arrived 4 ships from Batavia for the Fatherland and a little flute* [*Sandlooper*] with rice for here [DR].

March 7 arrived in the roads from Madagascar the ship *St. Maria* with the ex-Viceroy of that place, the Marquis Mont Ambergne [DR].

March 8. We went to make a cursory examination of the possibility or otherwise of cutting off the promontory from the mainland by joining the fresh water which flows both along the Liesbeek and elsewhere, and thus runs separately into the Table Bay and the Bhaij Fals, the Hon. Advocate of the Hon. Coy. having been informed of this and ordered to look into it closely with the knowledge of the Hon. van Goens Junior; but since his Honour had already departed [see DR 11/1/71] and this close examination could have awakened ill-feeling concerning the Hon. Commandeur, it was done in a cursory manner only; and so far as the time allowed us to investigate, it was found to be possible and quite well to be done, nature having already almost thrown up two dykes, along which flowed the Liesbeek on the Eastern side, and an arm of the Salt River on the other side.

This entry is puzzling. Who were '*we*'*? Almost certainly Nieuhof was one: see his map, plate 24. And why should a careful examination have caused* '*ill-feeling*' ['*Jaloesij*']? *And why is there very oddly no mention of the trip in the DR?*

March 11. The small flute* *Spanbroek* arrived from Ceylon [DR: with vague news of trouble with the Sinhalese].

March 14. Towards evening we went aboard again in order to put out to sea at the first fair wind. [Note on coastal currents as reported by Spilbergen, Houtman, Linschoten.]

March 15 ... In the evening the wind suddenly blew from the S.E.... we made ready in all respects to set sail at dawn ... The French yacht* [?] in which was the Viceroy set sail without any salute, as also when she had come into the roads ... so many diffi-

culties were made as regards the acknowledgement of his salute gun for gun, which he considered his due as a French Admiral and a Viceroy. He was also offended by the *Gekroonde Vreede* having passed close to the Marie without any signs of respect....

[Elaborate details of Padbrugge's suspicions, clearer in the Diary:]

DR 16/3 ... the Frenchman which sailed yesterday still lies at anchor at the point under the Lion's Tail [Mouille Point].... About 9 o'clock the shallop* of the ship *Sparendam* came ... with a Mate bringing a letter to the Commandeur and Council: 'The Frenchman which sailed yesterday still remains above the Robben Island, which gives us some suspicion of evil. Yesterday when I was on board her to take leave of the Viceroy ... he mentioned that there was a ship in the bay of Saldanhia which he thought to be French, so that there is room for doubt whether by arrangement the other now watches for us. We are making everything ready for defence, and if we receive Y.E's. orders to put out to sea, we anticipate an immediate attack.... By our reckoning he has 26 to 28 guns on deck, and we have only 16, with two small ones at the hut*'.

Reply sent that we here are extremely surprised at his timidity ... his unfounded suspicions ... in God's name to proceed on his voyage....

About one-thirty the same Mate again appeared on shore, and delivered a second letter from the said Padtbrugge ... 'we await orders in writing ...'

Reply sent: 'without delay continue your voyage ... our great discontent ... on receipt of this at once strike your flag, raise anchor and set sail ... in case of yet further delay contrary to our orders we shall be forced to replace you on board.... nevertheless she still delayed for three hours ... out to the open sea ... the French ship remaining in her former position....'

Background - continued

17/3/1671 [*Maria* sailed without salutes]

22/3 [The return-fleet sailed]

25/3 In accordance with the resolution taken while the Hon. Commissioner Goske was here, that the new fort* should be put in hand [in suspense since 10/5/1667], today the Compy's. Surveyor pegged out the same, and already a good party of soldiers worked in bringing earth thither.

27/3 ... The vessel *Bruydegom* left for the bay of Sandanhia, taking a Corporal ... and 5 other soldiers to reoccupy the said bay, as resolved in the presence of the Hon. Commissioner Goske ...

3/6 [Mine-exploration abandoned, miners to go to Batavia]

1/12 ... H.E. the Commandeur Hackius at twelve o'clock last night ... fell asleep in the Lord [Lieutenant Breitenbach in charge until March 1672]

18/12 ... we heard that a certain Hottentot girl of about 24 years, living from childhood with certain burghers here ... had hung herself ...

[1672]
April 7 England and France declare war on Holland; April 14 Sweden ditto. June, July alliance of Emperor and Brandenburg with Holland. The de Witt brothers assassinated. July 4 William of Orange becomes Stadhouder [*to 1702*].
Background - from official documents in the archives

25/1 ... a rupture in Europe between our State and the Lily Crown is to be presumed as imminent ...

11/2 ... at about four o'clock ... three sails ... yacht* *Gouda*, put to sea on September 11 last year for Ceylon ... few sick, in addition to some deaths ...

12/2 At dawn we saw also the other two ... *Amersfoort*, sailed on August 12 last year with 296 men for Ceylon, the other the *Doorth* on December 28 last with 246 for Batavia ... the former already some 72 dead and fully 73 unable to move, the latter not more than 7 dead and no sick ... matters between us and the Lily Crown worsening more and more ...

24/2 ... the two ships for Ceylon [*Gouda*, *Amersfoort*] ... set sail ...

29/2 Since the general letter from TT.EE in Patria dated May 15 last year advised that they had resolved to let the new Fort* be set forward ... and by the ships recently arrived they very earnestly direct us to continue the effective building of the same [work therefore pressed]

7/3 ... sighted ... the *Hoff van Breda* ...

17/3 ... came to anchor ... the *Stigt van Utrecht* ... about noon appeared also ... the flute* the *Vliegende Swaan* ... from Ceylon ...

21/3 ... came the flute *Swaenenburgh* ... from Ceylon ...

23/3 ... also the other return-flute from Ceylon, namely *Sparendam* ... the north wind brought us a sail to the roads, wearing the flag at the main topmast ... the newly-built pinnace* ['pynas'] *Macassar*, put to sea on December 10 with 280 men, in which came out the Merchant* Albert van Breugel, in the quality of Secunde* here [who now took over the administration ad interim]

25/3 ... came the return-ships *Tidor* [with Overbeke of item 18 on board and in command of the fleet], *Ternate*, *Gecroonde Vrede* ...

26/3 At daylight ... appeared in the roads ... *Wapen van ter Goes*, *Wapen van Zeelant*, *Wapen van Zierickzee* and the *Voorsightigheijt* ... in the afternoon also the *Goudtvink* anchored ... very busied yesterday and today in landing from the *Macassar* all the woodwork sent out for the new fort* ...

30/3 ... the *Wapen van Rotterdam* came tacking rapidly into this bay, but with the loss of her fore topmast ...

5/4 ... *Delfftshaven* and *Oostenburgh* ... seen nearing these roads ...

9/4 ... two sails ... the *Geregtigheijt* ... the flute *Grootenbroeck* ... [later] the flute *Goyland* ...

12/4 ... in the afternoon came in a well-sailed little ship the *Pijl* bound for Mauritius ... about 40 heads ...

13/4 ... arrived unexpectedly the ship ... *Vrye Zee* ...

13/4 Resolutions [Suggested by Overbeke] that we should try to enter into an agreement with some Hottentoos ... whereby they should declare us to be the rightful

and lawful possessors of this Cape District ... legally sold and ceded to the Company ... we resolved ... to enter into such an agreement with the Hottentoo Captain ... Schacher [19/4 agreement signed: '4000 reals* of 8 in sundry wares' the official price, actually about fl. 33]

14/4 ... arrived two capital ships ... *Prins Willem* and the *Wapen van Middelburg* ...

19/4 ... to the roads ... the flute* *Ipensteyn*, put to sea on December 11 last year bound for Ceylon, with 53 heads ...

20/4 ... to anchor ... the *Jonge Prins* ...

22/4 ... reached these roads the flute *Laren* ... 60 men ... left on December 15 last year ...

23/4 ... the ships' carpenters ... very busy putting together the knocked-down boat [*Boogh*] brought by the *Wapen van Zierickzee* for use at the island of Mauritius, so as to give the *Pijl* her despatch ...

27 Johan Christian Hoffmann

(*See also item 34*.) *His* '*Oost-Indianische Voyage*' *was first published at Cassel in 1683*, *and reprinted at The Hague in 1931*, *with some notes by Naber. Practically all that he has on the Hottentots is stolen from Schouten*.

At the age of 21 he went from his studies at Hanau to Amsterdam, *and was taken on as an unordained Pastor by the Dutch East-India Company*, *sailing in* Waepen van der Gouw *from Texel on September 9*, *1671* (*as in Hague codex 4389*, *folio 63*). *The details of the organisation on board are valuable: a quite exceptional feature of this outward iourney is that they touched at Cowes because the crew was so worn out by storms*, *landing for water*, *firewood and recreation - he makes special mention of the bumboats bringing out fresh bread* '*so hot that the butter melted in it*'. *His ship was also visited by local* '*English Grandees and their Madames*', *to whom a collation was served. Another landing was made at São Tiago in the Cape Verde Islands*, *for cattle and fruit and to refresh the many sick. The Equator*, *as usual in such voyages*, *brought more sick and many deaths: near it they overtook* Amersfoort *which had left Holland a month before them and had already had some 64 deaths and 100 sick*, *none being really fit* [*DR 12/1*].

Meanwhile the wind increased more and more, and not only made the miles short, but also awakened in us great hopes of soon seeing the long-desired Cape; and not in vain, since before long we saw, about 10 to 12 miles ahead of us, the heaven-high tops of the African promontory, and among them the famous hill, called from its misty height and flat top the Table Mountain. So we sailed at a brave pace towards the land, meanwhile seeing among the sea-creatures a considerable number of the whales called 'Nortkapers', which played merrily around our ship and blew the water through their air-holes like high towers into the air, so that it was a joy to see. Not until the following day, February 11th 1672 [DR as 'yacht* *Gouda*'] in the evening, did we arrive, safely and happily according to our desires, into the Table Bay in front of the Dutch Castle of Good Hope (commonly called the Cabo de bon Esperance, and so christened by the Portuguese), thanking the Lord for His Fatherly help so mercifully shown us in the whole journey thus far. At this time we found no ships here, but were the first to arrive, although soon after us many others came to touch here to refresh themselves, some from Holland which were to go on to the Indies, some from the Indies bound for Holland.

Here we were replenished with everything needful. After the death a few days previously of Commandeur Hackij [Hackius] the Hon. Conrad von Breytenbach, a German nobleman and like myself from the Pfaltz, was in command here for His Screne Highness the Prince of Orange, in the name of the States General and by the orders of the Lords Proprietors. He now richly provided us with everything, oxen, African sheep (which have no wool but hair, and carry such fat tails that one often weighs more than 15

pounds), also with cabbages, turnips, lettuce, rosemary, parsley and such garden-fruits.

I made my way ashore, somewhat to stretch my legs which I had not been able to do for a considerable time, as also to regard the nature of the country and its beauties. Nothing was so insignificant, no plant so small, that it was not worthy of my special attention: indeed everything seemed a marvel to my eyes, since even the smallest things were unknown to me. In a word, I found myself in a new world; and at the same time enjoyed unusual favours from the [acting] Governor, since he not only regarded me as a fellow-countryman but also brought me ashore from the ship for my greater advancement. There I remained for some time, but the ship went on with others after lying there for 3 full weeks, bound for Ceylon [DR 24/2].

The Cape, more exactly Caput or Promontory bonae spei (so called by the first discoverer, who now hoped to complete fortunately his thus-far dangerous voyage) is the outermost part of Africa [*sic*], and lies at 34 degrees and 21 minutes of south latitude. It has many mountains, of which the Table, Lion, and Tiger Mountains (thus called both from their shape and because of the beasts found there) are the most famous. For the rest, it has a healthy and temperate climate, neither too hot nor too cold but between the two. Instead of Summers and Winters it has a Dry and a Wet Monsoon*, the latter beginning in the month of May and continuing until November, while the former begins in December and ends in April: thus on our arrival (namely in mid-February) we found ripe corn, cucumbers, grapes, and such delicacies, as also melons and water-lemons. (This is a fruit looking like a pumpkin and growing on similar runners. When it is ripe it is red inside, and quite crisp and full of water. It tastes very agreeably sweet, and is eaten against the thirst. It has black seeds of the same shape as pumpkin-seeds. The Dutch sow whole fields full of them, and sell them to the ships.) Because of the good qualities of this land the Dutch have taken possession of it, so that here the Dutch ships travelling to and fro can conveniently be provided with fresh victuals. For this purpose they have built there a fine Fort*, and close to it a handsome village, which is inhabited by the Dutch. The Castle is garrisoned by Dutch soldiers, and well provided with cannon against any enemy. The settlers maintain themselves by trade and agriculture.

Everything here seemed strange to me, but strangest the wild nature of the natives, whom at first I took rather for huge apes than for true men; and in truth because of their beastliness there is hardly anything about them that resembles a man. They are the most miserable folk that ever I saw. Because of their incomprehensible clucking speech (more like the cry of turkeys and the snapping of one's fingers than human speech) they are called Hotten-totten by the Europeans [see Hottentots*, Name]. They are of a middling height and ugly form, in colour indeed yellowish, but by the daily smearing with grease made so repulsive, dirty and stinking, that one can hardly come near to them without horror and holding one's nose. The hair of their heads is like black sheeps-wool, curly, and moreoever inextricably matted by their horrible greasing.

For the rest, they have wide brows, black eyes, flat noses and thick lips. The women have revoltingly long breasts which hang down half an ell long like leather bags, so that

they can easily throw them over their shoulders and thus give suck to the children they carry on their backs. They are unusually fleet of foot, so that anyone who wishes to chase them must have a good nag under him. Also they grab and steal whatever they can get, especially beads, copper, knives, rice and tobacco. They are very avid for this last, and can so draw it in that at last the smoke comes out of their mouth and nose. They bring oxen, sheep, cattle etc. from their flocks to the Castle, and barter them for wire, beads, rice, tobacco and brandy, at such a low rate that for a piece of tobacco as long as a finger one can usually have a sheep, and for a piece an ell long a good fat ox, of which the Governor thus obtains so much that all ships going to and fro can have enough meat. Their clothing is as poor as it is disgusting, since they have only a sheep's or other skin hanging around them like a cloak, which barely reaches to their calves. If such a skin is somewhat too small, they take another and sew them neatly together, by means of a sharp bone and thread which they know how to prepare from the sinews of a certain long-legged bird. This cloak, after they have first soiled it well and truly with their nasty greases, they hang around their filthy body, with the wool outside or inwards according as it is hot or cold. When they are now thus wound about with their furry ornament, they can well turn their bent-down backs to rain and wind, and so endure them. On their heads both men and women wear wide caps of untanned wild-cat skins, which at times they tie under their chins. Their privities they cover with the tail of a wild beast. Most of them wear around their necks filthy cow guts* as an ornament, just as they come from the beast, and the women especially use them as bands around their necks, arms and legs, and indeed in such numbers that they can hardly walk for them; and when they are most filthily decked in this manner, they are in their opinion most magnificently adorned. When they go abroad, the women customarily carry one child on their backs and another in their arms, whereas the men carry in their hands one or two Asagayen or throwing-spears (which are smooth thin rods, 4 to 5 feet long, with a sharp iron in front almost like a pike, which they can throw so well that they rarely miss), and in addition a little stick about an ell long, with the tail of a wild-cat nailed to the end, which serves them as a handkerchief to wipe away the dirt from their face; and thus they go abroad.

They are not delicate as regards their food, but indeed feed very wretchedly. Their daily bread is a root*, not unlike a potato, bitter in taste, for which reason it cannot well be eaten unroasted. They kill no cattle although they have great store of them, unless one is deadly sick, or because of its age can no longer follow the herd. They are not easily disgusted, since they are well content with the stinking guts that they find on the rubbish-heaps; and when they get them they only press out with their hands the coarsest of the dung and gobble it down thus with skin and hair, unwashed and uncooked, and regard such food as a delicacy. If guts are lacking, they feed on dead and half-rotten fish which they gather on the shores, or take skins such as they find here and there and which have been long gnawed by the dogs and worms: these they hold to the fire so that they are singed a little, and make their meal thereof, and this pleases them as well as the most delicate foods. These folk know nothing of the preparing of food, nor of sowing and

reaping. What foods they are given they eat with great appetite, and can indeed well eat for 3 or 4 men, but can also fast for several days on end.

Their riches consist only of cattle and beads, which they barter from the Dutch for their beasts. They have no houses, but live in little huts which they make from bent sticks or hoops and hang with old rags, skins and reed mats, so that if needs be they can be safe from the rain under them. These huts they usually set 10 to 12 together in a circle, which they call [*sic:* it is Portuguese, not Hottentot] a Krale, within which their cattle stand by night, and by day roam widely around to graze. As soon as they see that their cattle have no more pasture, they take down their huts, lay the hoops on their pack-oxen trained to this, and set them up again elsewhere, wherever they find good grass.

Now indeed each such Krale has its own Authorities, so that without doubt they live according to certain laws of the Policy, yet no one, however much I enquired, has been able to detect any sign of a Religion. I noticed only, that at certain times, especially at sunrise and at the Full Moon, they came together in their horrible cloaks in front of their Krales, and the men passed the whole night doing strange and wonderful antics and laughable posturings, with leaping, hopping and dancing; but the women made a continual hand-clapping and did other such rare antics, and sang only ha, ho, HO, HO, until one almost lost hearing and sight because of the terrible noise. Whether this now is a part of their religion I do not know. Shortly before my departure I noticed that almost all the women lacked one or more joints of their little fingers; and since I would gladly know from whence this came I asked one of their Captains who could talk a little broken Dutch as to the cause. From him I received the information, that their women must bite off so many joints of their fingers as many times as they marry. Also they have this custom, that when two become engaged, the girl gives to her lover a greasy cow gut* instead of an engagement-ring, which he must wear so long around his neck until it so putrefies that pieces are falling off from it of themselves. It is said, that further inland, and especially in the region of the Kingdom of Monomotapo more civilised folk are to be found. It is to be lamented that among the human race such folks are to be found as I have described, in whom, although they are descended from our forefather Adam, nothing in the least human is to be detected, so that indeed they are more to be reckoned to the senseless beasts than among reasonable men; and since they are in this world without a knowledge of God, they are thus in a very pitiable state in this transient life. O miserable lost folk, how lamentable is thy condition! But God be thanked, that He has called us from the abyss of such darkness to His wonderful Light; aye that He has so loved us, that He gave His only begotten Son, so that all who believe in Him should not perish but have everlasting Life [from Schouten, item 14, word for word].

Moreover this land has no lack of wild and strange beasts, but indeed has such in great abundance: Elephants, Rhenoster (in the Greek tongue Rhynoceros, a beast somewhat smaller than an elephant and carrying two horns, the longer on its nose but the shorter in the centre of its forehead. It has a pale, crumpled, thick ox-like skin which is almost unpenetrable. Many think it to be the true Unicorn, and that the horn, flesh and

blood are excellent antidotes), Lions, Tigers, Elands, Deer, Hares and Steinbuck. Of birds one often sees Ostriches, which lay their eggs in the sand to be hatched by the sun [*sic*]; Flamincken (or Flamengos) of the size of geese but with longer legs, the necks and wings blood red but for the rest snow-white. Their flesh is cinnaber-red, and they are very tasty when young; also Wild Geese, Heathcocks ['Auerhanen'], Hill-Ducks and Wild Ducks, and such like. Furthermore the soil there boasts of many excellent local herbs beneficial to health.

When now I had sufficiently contented my mind with my observations of the conditions of this place during the 3 months which I passed there, I was accepted as a Teacher by the assembled Council of the place after previous ordination, and sent with the ship De Pijl, commanded on this occasion by the newly-appointed administrator of the island of Mauritius, Herbert Hugo, to the said island to do duty there; and therefore made my way aboard:

On the 27th of May of the year 1672, and on the 30th [DR 8/5] set sail with the Lord's guidance, together with two other ships, Boge and Goutvinck or Goldfinch.... [Arrived Mauritius February 13, 1673, and there until 1675 when he went to Batavia to join the return-fleet.]

28 Nicolaus de Graaff

(*See also items 22*, *36*, *39*, *49*, *62*.) *From Ceylon he sailed homeward in the flute** Sparendam, *with* Dolphijntje, *flute* Swaenenburg, *yacht** Swaantje (*or* Vliegende Swaan), *which was sent ahead to make sure that the Cape was still in Dutch hands*, *arriving 17/3* [*DR*]. Swaenenburg *arrived 21/3* [*DR*], Dolphijntje *not traced*.

On March the 23rd [as DR] we arrived at the Cape of Good Hope, having had no difficulties from enemy ships, finding at anchor in the bay the ships *Hof van Breda* [arrived 7/3, DR] and *Stigt Utrecht* [arrived 17/3, DR]. On the same day [23/3 DR] there arrived from the Fatherland the ship *Makassar*, and three days later from Batavia the ships *Tidor*, *Ternate*, *Gekroonde Vrede* [DR 25/3]; and later *Wapen van ter Goes*, [*Wapen van*] *Sierikzee* [*Zierikzee*], *Voorsigtigheid*, *Nieuw Rotterdam*, which had lost her mainmast [DR *Wapen van*, and fore-topmast]. Also [homeward] the flute *Delfshaven* [DR 5/4], the *Oostenburg* [ditto], *Grotebroek* [DR 9/4], *Goyland* [ditto], and *Kasteel van Medenblick*, which last because of contrary wind and bad weather could not however enter the bay, but after losing three anchors must continue her course to the island of *Saint Helena* [DR nil], to await us there. Also while we lay at anchor at the Cape there came from the Fatherland the ships [*Wapen van*] *Middelburg*, *Gerecgtigheid*, *Vrye Zee*, the yacht* *de*

Pijl, *Prins Willem de Derde*, the little flute* *Ipenstein* and the *Jonge Prins* of Hoorn [arrivals see DR above]; and from Brazil a little ship with tobacco [? DR 22/4, flute *Laren*].... While lying here justice was done on various mutineers. Some walked the yard [ducked from mainyard], and were punished before the mast [flogged], some set on Robben Island, and others who had stowed away in the return-ships were sent back to Batavia. All being made ready, and the farewell-feast held at the Castle, we sailed with 13 return-ships from the Cape of Good Hope on April the 24th [DR].... [Arrived home August 3.]

29 Johan Nieuhof

(*See also items 2*, *6*, *8*, *25*.) *From log kept by the Skipper of* Pijl. *Sailing not given*, *but through the Channel*, *and January 1 near Tenerife. Cape April 8 to 30*, *setting up* '*a little ship or shallop**', Boogh, *brought knocked-down. Madagascar*, *Comoros etc. for slaves. Nieuhof up a river in Comoros in* Boogh *and ashore in skiff*, *while* Pijl *waited at mouth. Nieuhof did not return*, *and after* '*two or three days*' Boogh *reported to* Pijl, *and both back to the Cape for provisions*, *arriving December 17. January 1*, *1673* Pijl *sailed for Mauritius* [*DR*], Boogh *back to where Nieuhof and his party had been left: then no news of her for a long time*, *when it was discovered that the Mate had run off with her to Mozambique and sold her there. By orders from Holland* Voorhout *sent from the Cape May 22*, *1676* [*DR*], *back September 29* [*DR*] *with slaves*, *but without news of Nieuhof.*

Background - continued

24/4/1672 ... the [return-] fleet raised anchors and set sail ...

19/5 ... a cook's mate in *Pijl* able to distil brandy ... trial made ... as excellent as could be wished ...

30/5 ... the ships *Jonge Prins* and *Laren* ... raised anchor ... in the afternoon those bound for Mauritius set sail, namely the *Pijl*, *Goutvinck* and *Boogh* ...

30/7 ... a ship tacked into the bay, but was compelled to anchor on the far side ...

31/7 ... the flute* *Saxenburgh* ... left April 16 last ... storm of war between the King of Great Britain and France on the one side against our State on the other ...

2/10 ... arrived ... *Zuyd Polsbroek*, and in her the Hon. Governor GOSKE ...

14/10 [Census 64 freemen, 53 'lent*', 486 cattle, 6172 sheep, 38 horses, 39 wives, 65 children, 63 slaves]

16/10 ... resolved to take possession of the Hottentots Hollandt in accordance with the orders of our Lords and Masters, and to send thither Serjeant Cruythoff with 12 or 14 men ...

30/11 ... resolved to carry out the exploit at the island of Saint Helena at once, using for this the flute* *Cattenburgh* and the little ship *Vliegende*

Swaan [but the Resolutions of 30/11 have 'the ships *Vrijheijt*, *Polsbroeck* and *Cattenburgh* with the addition of the little flute *Vliegent Swaentje* ... 330 men, being 180 soldiers and 150 sailors']

6/12 ... a ship with Danish colours ... must anchor under the tail of the Lion Hill ...

9/12 ... since it was thought that if the Danish ship came from the Indies she might well continue her homeward voyage via Saint Helena, and ... reveal our designs on that place ... therefore the skipper of the little flute the *Vliegende Swaan* was sent ... in case she came from the Indies to persuade her to come to the roads ...

10/12 ... the Danish ship *Oldenburgh* outward bound had had a most disastrous long passage, and was burdened with many sick. [Her Merchant* called on the Governor and was allowed to buy unrestrictedly from the freemen, and was entertained to dinner: had sailed on April 23 with 154 men, losing 16 on the journey, now with 50 very sick and the rest unable to handle the ship]

11/12 ... *Oldenburgh* reached the roads about 5 o'clock ...

13/12 ... the fleet [see 30/11] raised anchor and set sail ...

30 Jan Pietersz. Cortemünde

His account, translated from MS, was published as 'An Adventure at the Cape ...', Cape Town 1952. He gives the dates of arrival and departure of his ship Oldenburgh *in the Old Style*, and allowing for this they tally with those in the DR, from which the following is taken - the relatively few points of interest in his own account will be found in the Index under the respective headings.*

DR 20/12 ... to our consternation it was reported that yesterday evening a certain burgher living behind the fortress here was so wounded with a rapier by the Upper-Surgeon of the Danish ship ... Jan Pietersz van Carteminden ... that the wound was very dangerous and could readily prove fatal [search for the culprit ordered].

[21/12 no trace. 24/12 sentries posted on the shores. 27/12 arrested: after dressing the wound he had made for Wouter Mostaert's house, obtained a disguise there, and had then walked round the back of the Fort towards the Salt River and hidden there in the scrub - his statement that he saw there 'a herd of 50 to 60 elephants, rhinoceroses, tigers, lions, lynxes and wolves' speaks more for his imagination than his reliability.]

DR 5/1/1673. In the morning the trial was held of the Danish Upper-Surgeon ... who was sentenced to be keelhauled on one of the ships of the Hon. Company now lying in the roads ...

6/1. At about 9 o'clock yesterday's sentence on the Danish delinquent was carried out on the hooker* the Goutvinck ... in the afternoon ... the Danish ship raised anchor and ran out to sea ...

[1673]
England and France at war with Holland. Spain at war with France in Belgium. September 16 the Emperor declares war on France. Background - from official documents in the archives

[5/1, 6/1 see in item 30]

19/2 ... in the afternoon ... a troop of cavalry, 25 strong, chosen from the best and most presentable of the soldiers, were paraded for the first time within this fortress ...

5/3 ... towards noon reached the mouth of the bay, all decked out for victory ... *Vliegende Swaan* coming from Saint Helena ... the fortunate conquest of the said island without any resistance worth mentioning ... the garrison did not await our force, taking flight in an English ship which had arrived with ... soldiers and ammunition from England ...

22/3 ... on the Lions Head ... a flagstaff to be planted ... three men to keep watch there, with one or two little guns [‘camerstukjes’] ... the number of the ships arriving given by the firing of that same number of shots ...

15/4 ... shortly before dark arrived ... *Frans Europa* which had sailed for the Fatherland from Batavia on February 4 with five other flutes* ...

20/4 ... the remaining five return-flutes safely reached these roads [*Alphen*, *Wapen van ter Veer*, *Pynacker*, *Stermeer*, *Papenburgh*]

29/4 ... resolved to send ... the Captain Bredenbagh to Saint Helena as Administrator, in the flute the *Frans Europa* ... the commander of the soldiers here to be the Ensign Dircq Jansen Smient, with promotion to Lieutenant ... and as Ensign the Serjeant Jeronimus Cruse ...

1/5 The flute *Frans Europa* with Captain Breitenbagh ... bound for Saint Helena ... set sail ...

11/5 ... the return-ships [as 20/4] set sail and soon left the bay ...

31 Johan Struys

Translated from xerographs of his ‘Drie aanmerkelijke ... Reysen ...’, Amsterdam 1676, by courtesy of the University Library, Leiden. It contains three voyages: 1, 1648-51 to Ispahan; 2, 1655-57 to Venice; 3, 1668-73 via Moscow and Astrakhan to the Caspian, to work there as a sail-maker. His ship ran aground there and he was taken prisoner and enslaved by the Tartars, and sold by them to a jewel-merchant of Derbent (married to a Polish wife, the ‘Altijn’ whom he mentions below). He was again sold to the Polish Ambassador, but in 1672 bought his freedom with a loan from the Batavia authorities, and went by caravan over the Taurus Mountains to Gamron (Bandar Abbas), sailing thence to Batavia. There in September 1672 he enlisted with the V.O.C. as sailmaker in Hollandische Thuijn, *ordered to cruise off Bantam watching for French and English ships.*

Meanwhile my longing for my dear wife and children became so continual and so great, that I had no more enjoyment in life. This caused me to take the liberty of writing to the Hon. *Heer Speelman*, Ordinary Councillor* of the Indies, and the Hon.

Heer Pieter van Hoorn, and beg for my release, which also the said Hon. gentlemen were good enough to

grant, and therewith sent orders that I should return to Batavia with the flute* *Nieuwpoort*, and there go aboard the flute [*Frans*] *Europa* with my chest and belongings: wherewith I set sail on *February 4*, *1673* for the Fatherland, in company with 5 other ships: the ship ter Veer as Admiral*; Alfen, Vice-Admiral; Pijnaker, Rear-Admiral; also Starmeer and Papenburgh. We set our course West and by South for the *Sunda* Strait.

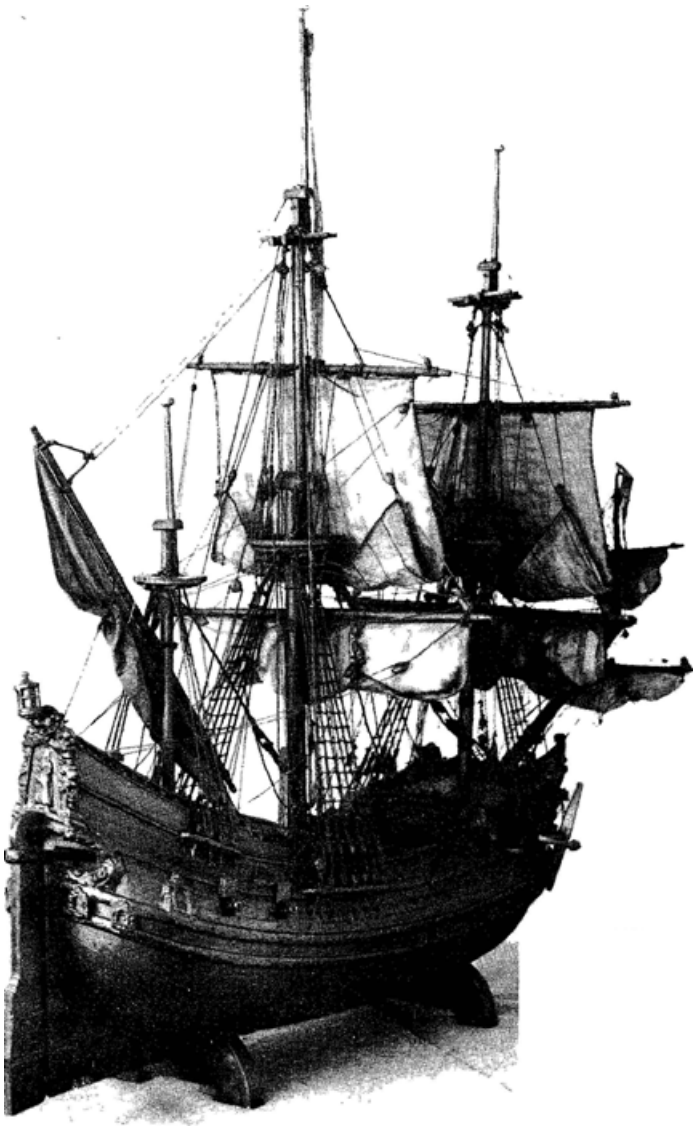
On the 5 we came to anchor before *Bantam*, finding there 7 smart ships, to watch as previously for *English* and the *French*.

On the 6 we found ourselves outside the *Sunda* Strait, and set our course South-South-West until we reached the latitude of 14 degrees; then we changed our course and steered West-South-West to the latitude of 28 degrees, when we steered South to 32 degrees, this being the latitude of the *Cabo de Bona Esperance* [*sic*]. There we came to the roads on April 15 [DR], and found lying there some ships sent from the Fatherland to the *East Indies*. Here we heard with sorrow the doleful tidings of the *French* invasion, and that they had already made themselves masters of three of the Seven Provinces, that the *Pensionary De Witt* and his brother the *Ruwaart* had so terribly died, and that His Highness the *Prince of Orange* was raised to be the Stadthouder.

We tarried till *May 1* [DR] at the Cape, when we were ordered by the *Governor Ysbrant Godsken* to leave with our ship [*Frans*] *Europa* for *St Helena*, this having been taken from the *English* with about 300 men on January 13 last. The other ships were to follow us 7 or 8 days later, and then set sail in company for the Fatherland.

Thus we set sail at the said time with a brisk gale, taking in our ship the Captain *Bredenbach*, to be set at *St Helena* as Governor. We set our course North-West, and on Whitsunday, May 31, came before *St Helena*. But hardly had we rounded the cape than we soon saw that the chart was upside-down, 7 large *English* warships lying there before the bay together with a fireship and three merchantmen. The *English* on finding us within range at once welcomed us with their lower and upper tiers [of cannon], and gave us such a Whitsun bouquet that we were presently quit of ship and cargo, not without having some dead and wounded. We had aboard not more than 60 men, and could use no more than 5 or 6 guns. Being then in such a great strait, and being able to do little with our guns, we boldly resolved to grapple the *English* frigate* Assistentie of 50 guns which followed us with the fireship, and board her. Thereupon our Skipper gave orders for all the hatchways to be nailed up, so that no one might hide himself but thus all together leap aboard the *Englishman;* but to our great misfortune we could not lay hands on half so many weapons as we had need of. Thus we were compelled to surrender our ship with crew and cargo, since the *Englishman* with balls, bar-shot and grapeshot from his 12- and 18-pounders so intimidated us that we could endure it no longer, without our being able to do him any notable damage with our weak crew and few guns.

The *English* were no sooner aboard than they fell to plundering, and I was repeatedly searched and re-searched so that I no longer knew how to hide my little wallet with my jewels, which caused me no little alarm. My good-hearted and exceptionally kind Patroness *Altijn* had given me eleven rough diamonds, of which I had sold one of the



[25] FLUTE, excellently showing the rounded stern and the standard rig (see 'Spiegelschip' in Index), with the low mizzen-mast and small lateen sail. From the Ned. Hist. Scheepvaart Museum, Amsterdam.

smallest at *Batavia* for about a thousand guilders. Now I had repeatedly shifted my treasure from one hiding-place to another, but the greedy *English* again and again made new searches, so that, seeing no hope of saving the whole, I thought to make sure of a part of it. For this purpose I called one of the *Englishmen* aside and revealed my treasure to him, and my intent, namely that I would give my diamonds into his hands on trust, if he would swear that if we came safely to *England* he would there return me again five of them, and keep the other five for himself, and that he would reveal this to no one but faithfully fulfil it, to which he swore with strong oaths. The *English* sailors, wishing to have much gain from their conquest, broke open our chests, and threw the cottons and silks in heaps so that one could scarcely get through. My Treasurer for a long time kept his peace, but at a certain time coming to be drunken he revealed our secret to one of his messmates, and it did not long delay in reaching the ears of the Skipper who did not tarry in making himself master of the diamonds, well paying the incautious Treasurer with blows; and thus the last of my fruits was plucked. The only things that they left me were my papers and the journal of my journey and doings on Mount *Ararath*: indeed a poor payment for my toilsome travels, so that in this case I had no more cause to thank the Christians than the Heathen, rapacity setting aside all pity as much among the ones as the others.

And thus my unfortunate self, barely delivered from my slavery and misery, was thus deprived of my last means of support, so that I should have entirely lost my wits and fallen into despair, had I not thought of God and of His eternal destiny; and although as I write this I believe that no one will be found so lacking in pity that he shall not lament my misery and be somewhat affected by it, yet it is impossible for me to express what were my own feelings.

The *English* had taken the island eight days previously, being forced to do this for lack of water, since they were come there only for this, not then knowing that the island was no longer *English*, having been sent there to look out for their ships awaited from the *Indies* and convoy them home. Being now come into the bay to take in water, they were greatly taken aback to be received with cannon-fire, and withdrew from the roads; but their great need forced them to seek some escape, unless they wished all to die of thirst, since one ship had two hogsheads of water only, another only one, and some not even that amount. The *English* Admiral *Monday* therefore gave order to attempt to land on the South side in the gorge of a hill, as also was done, although it was so narrow there that no more than four men could go abreast, so that, if the *Dutch* had set only 50 or 60 men at this post they could have killed them all with stones; but they could not spare so many men from their fort, and thus the *English* came ashore to the rear of the fortifications. The *Dutch* Governor finding himself thus surprised, and not having within the fort a garrison sufficient to resist so large a force, surrendered the Place on honourable terms. Thus the *English* related the story to us.

On June 4 the *English* got their claws on two more ships of the five which followed us. These, together with a hooker* from *Ceylon*, came sailing to *St Helena* without any

suspicion. The *English* let the Prince's flag* fly from their ships, and set up a red a red flag on a height, this being our signal to sail in without fear. Seeing this, I got the idea of doing my Fatherland a good turn, and therefore went little by little to the shore, the ships then being barely half a mile* from land. I took off my shirt and made it there into a little flag, hoping to cause them at least some misgiving; but it seemed that they took no heed of it, since otherwise there would still have been time enough to avoid the dance. It was not long before I found myself seized by two *English* sentries who had spied me. These gave me, under a hail of insults such as Dog, Rascal and so forth, so many blows and kicks that I thought my last hour was come. After this they brought me before the Governor, who asked me, What was my intention with that signal? So I replied openly: *That I had done this for love of my Fatherland*, *to warn the ships*. He began to smile, saying *Well*, *well*, *it is not to be wondered at*, and with that he let me go free.

At these signals our ships came sailing in together; but having barely rounded the cape they at once saw how things stood, all the *English* ships making for them at the same time: now each sought for a good escape, since the ships were jammed full of cargoes and the guns stowed, so that there was nothing else to be done; but the *English* were so close on their heels that two ships fell into their hands, to wit our Admiral* Ter Veer and the Vice-Admiral Alfen, the others escaping from the dance. The ship Ter Veer defended herself as bravely as her condition allowed, and also would not have been taken, had her maintop-yard not been shot down: she fought with the ship West-Vriesland, being a *Dutch* ship captured in the previous *English* war [1665] and now carrying 54 heavy guns. Our Admiral would very fain have grappled her, but the *Englishman* avoided this and met him bow to bow, so that being unable to do this he was at last compelled to surrender, the commander himself being badly wounded in the leg.

Ascension June 19-23: turtle-hunt, *200 to 300 lb. in weight. Ireland sighted August 22: Baltimore August 23; released there*, *on foot to Kinsale*, *there for 10 days. Cork September 9*, *thence by ship to the* '*False Channel*' *and to Bristol. On foot to London*, *arriving September 15*, '*and stayed there three days to rest*, *and with great astonishment viewed the magnificently rebuilt city*, *arisen from the ashes of the well-known Fire of* London *in the year 1666*, *now even more finely built than before. From* London *I travelled through many villages and lovely country to* Harwits, *from where I embarked for my long-desired Fatherland*, *and after so many miseries and strange adventures*, *on October 7*, *1672 I saw with joy my house*, *my wife and my children whom I had a thousand times despaired of ever seeing again*.'

With this may be read:

Frederick Andersen Bolling, *1673. (And see item 24.) In garrison at the Batavia Castle until 1671*, *when engaged to teach Hebrew to a partly-qualified Preacher*, *and offered a post at the school on condition that he would pass from Lutheranism to Calvinism*, *which he refused. Appointed book-keeper for a private voyage to China*, *sailing June 17*, *1672*,

and at Macao June 21 to November 3, *when back to Batavia. Helped by his Preacher-pupil to be allowed home after* 2½ *years instead of the 5 of his engagement. Sailed February 4*, *1673*, *in* Alphen, *with* Wapen van de Veer (*Admiral**), [Frans] Europa, Pinacher, Papenborg, Stormer (*confirmed by Struys above and by Valentyn I: the Visscher translation is defective here*).

Thus we arrived safely on April 20 [DR] to the *Cabo bonae Spei* without any storm, and had one death near the island of *Mauritius*, who after prayer was thrown overboard.

We lay and refreshed ourselves at the *Cabo bonae Spei* until May 11, when we set sail [DR], and had orders to go to *St Helena*, which at that time the Dutch had taken from the English [DR 13/12/72, 5/3/73], and we carried with us a Captain who was to be Governor at *St Helena*, who had previously captured it [Breitenbach; but he had sailed ahead in *Frans Europa*, DR 1/5].

St Helena is only a small island, on which the English had built a fort, and there all the [? their] ships that went to the East-Indies refreshed themselves. The said island is full of pigs, sheep, oxen, fowls, geese and ducks, and good water is found there.

On June 5 we came to *St Helena*, and since we had with us a hooker* ['Huggert', not traced] (it is a small ship thus named, which was an excellent sailor, which the Dutch use as a scout, which must always go ahead of the fleet and advise us how matters stood in the islands); she went far ahead of us, and when she came into the bay in front of the roads she saw lying there 14 English ships: she fired a gun, turned away, and continued her course to the Fatherland (the English had taken *St Helena* from the Dutch, but left a Dutch flag hanging over the fort to deceive us).

We turned our ship about, but had the misfortune that our sail tore in pieces, but with great toil we got up another sail; but meanwhile we were surrounded by the English and our ships were altogether scattered: at last the English Admiral came with his ship, named Assistentia, and the name of the Admiral was *Mundei*, the ship had about 60 guns. He neared us, and also a fireship called the Castel de Freyheit. They called to us to strike our flag to the King of England; our Chief Mate, who was now acting as First Lieutenant, replied that they must strike their flag to the Prince of Orange.

The Dutch are economical, they do not incur the cost of having [military] officers, therefore they take no one into their ship-service unless he also understands military matters; therefore if they come into a fight the Skipper must be the Captain, the Chief Mate the First Lieutenant, the [Second] Mate steers the ship, and the Book-keeper is Second Lieutenant, the Third Mate is Commander, etc.

Since evening was approaching we did not begin the engagement, and hoped that GOD would send us a storm that night so that we could escape out of the enemy's hands, but our prayer was not heard: when at night we turned our ship about they were at once near us, they could sail as fast with two sails as we with all ours. We nevertheless prepared for the night and would fight them: we could get up not more than 12 guns, the others lying in the hold among the cloves. Next morning the weather was lovely, and our only

hope was to fire at the fireship and board the English Admiral, and when the fireship was quite close to us we fired 6 guns together at her, but she was very fast, and ran so far from us that she could be clear of our guns.

Towards midday the English Admiral neared us, and again asked if we would surrender to the King of England: our Chief Mate or Lieutenant asked him to strike his flag to the Prince of Orange. At that same moment he fired at our mainmast but missed, and we gave him a broadside which damaged him near the waterline, so that he must leave us and heel [‘kraencke’] his ship, which gave us great courage.

So we sailed away from them until we could no longer see them, and were glad; but within four hours the fireship was again not far from us and followed us closely, and at night she set a light on her mainmast so that the Admiral could see where we were.

Next morning at ten o'clock the Admiral came back to us and gave us a broadside: he did not shoot to damage the ship but our crew, firing above the hull with bar-shot [‘Knipler’] and chain-shot [‘Laencke-kugler’], by which two of our men were killed and one was wounded in the arm. We were not idle but fired lustily back at him, and turned our ship towards him with the intent of boarding; but he avoided us, and when night fell did not again come near us.

That night we prayed the LORD for a storm, and each of us promised two months' pay to the poor, if GOD would give us a storm so that we could escape the enemy. Also we then opened our letters to see what orders we had, where we found that the four small chests that were in the sailroom should be thrown overboard if the enemy proved too strong for us.

Since our Chief Mate had been captured by the English in the last war when coming from the East-Indies, he thought it desirable that we should not surrender without [the promise of] keeping what we had on our persons, and wished therefore that we should open one chest, as was done, and thereupon were dealt out among us the jewels that were found in it, with the orders that the Dutch Company should receive the half if we came safely to Holland.

On June 7 early in the morning (after the three other chests had been thrown overboard) the English Admiral again neared us and asked as before if we would surrender. Our Lieutenant replied Yes, on condition that each should keep what he had on him, and not be made a prisoner in England: the ship, the cargo and our chests would be for them. This the Admiral swore to with uplifted fingers, so we lowered our sail and took in the red flag*. They came aboard and greeted us as brothers, and I with 18 others was set aboard the fireship which was called Castel de Frjhed....

Ascension, finding there Wapen van ter Veer *and* Frans Europa *as English prizes. The hidden jewels betrayed by an Italian, one of captured crew: all stripped and searched, but Bolling successfully hid three jewels in his mouth - the Italian later killed in Ireland by others of the crew. August 23 Kinsale, where he escaped ashore with the Mate and sold one diamond there for 30 Rxd. Seven days on foot to Dublin, where his standing as*

student got him hospitality from 'the Academy' and a pass for London. Ship to Chester, and on foot to London and Harwich. October 26 Amsterdam: asked for his pay but told 'Ship lost, all lost'. November 7 safely back home. Then (*Visscher*) *teacher of languages at Copenhagen, publishing a small English textbook and dictionary.*

Background - continued

29/6/1673 [rumours of action by Gonnema against freemen on expedition to shoot big game] but since the rumour seems truly somewhat impossible, it was regarded as false ...

1/7 ... arrived the ship *Europa* ... sailed from Holland on February 4 with 270 men ...

6/7 ... the two freemen* coming from the Fatherland to settle here came ashore yesterday and today with their families [first reference found to immigration of families]

12/7 ... [rumours as 29/6 persisting, expedition left under Cruse against Gonnema]

14/7 ... the freemen's vessel *Bruijd* ... came from the Saldinhiabaay ... with a soldier from the garrison there ... from whom, as also from the freemen we learn of the terrible massacre by Gonnema's people, under a pretext of wishing to barter, of the Corporal ... also a soldier and two freemen ... not only miserably beaten to death but afterwards the Company's properties stolen and this remaining soldier attacked, had he not escaped to the freemen's vessel ... warning sent to the Ensign Cruse ... also 18 men, burghers and Company's Servants ...

24/7 ... In the evening came the skiff* of the ship anchored at the Robben Island ... the *Vliegende Swaan* coming from Saint Helena ... retaken by the enemy ... 'After we sailed with the said [return-] ships on May 15 last [? May 11] from the Table Bay ... reaching there on June 6 ... coming as near the coast as was possible ... the better to recognize the agreed-on signals; but not seeing them in spite of having made the proper ones on our part ... we put back to sea ... a white flag* with a red cross flying at the fort ... 60 to 70 shots mostly from heavy guns, of which however only one struck our flag ...'

25/7 ... about noon Ensign Cruse arrived with a troop of fully 800 excellent cattle and 900 lovely sheep [but Gonnema had evaded him]

20/8 ... two Hottentot Captains of our allies, Cuyper and Schacher, arrived at the fort ... having with them as prisoners four of the Chief Gonnema's people [tried, convicted of having taken part in the Saldanha Bay murders, and clubbed to death by the Hottentots]

15/10 ... comes the ship *Ternaten* ... left Texel June 11 ... having lost about 80 men, most by a very malignant fever ... also encumbered with 90 sick unable to walk ...

32 Willem ten Rhyne

His account is translated from his '*Schediasma ...*', *Schaffhausen 1686, in Schapera's* '*Early Cape Hottentots*', *Cape Town 1933. He arrived in* Ternaten *on October 15, 1673* [*DR*] *and sailed on November 10* [*DR*]. *He is chiefly valuable for his*

observations on the Hottentots, *and most of the value of these lies in Schapera's footnotes: references to them* (*with Schapera's pagination*) *will be found in the Index under the appropriate headings*, *e.g.*, '*Apron*', *Hottentots Beards*, *Buchu*, *Dagga*, *Huts*, *Roots*, *Testicle*.

Background - continued

21/10/1673 ... arrived about noon ... *Mayerberg* and *Grotenbroec* ...

8/11 ... the ships *Ternate*, *Grootenbroeck* and *Mayerberg* receive their despatches [sailed 10/11]

[1674]
February 9 Second Peace of Westminister between England and Holland. Dutch war with France continues in Belgium. Background - from official documents in the archives

13/3 ... a proper garden-house erected almost in the centre of it ...

25/4 ... appeared the flute* the *Beemster*, part of the large return-fleet awaited ...

2/5 ... anchored ... *Burgh van Leyden*, *Buren*, *Prins Willem Hendrik*, the *Hoff van Breda*, and *Spanbroeck* ...

5/5 ... today comes to the roads the *Hollantsen Tuijn* ...

19/5 ... the crews of the return-ships having thus long worked at the demolition of the said walls [of the old Fort], they have so far progressed in this that these now lie practically level with the ground ...

33 Gerrit Vermeulen

(*See also item 20.*) *In 1673 he was time-expired, and therefore wished to return home for discharge.*

I then returned to Macassar, to ask leave to return to Batavia; but when I came there, I lost all hope of this, since I learned there that our Nation was at war with the French and English, and therefore imagined that no one would be allowed to leave. But I was very opportunely attacked by a certain palsy in my limbs, which gave me reason to ask for my return; which I obtained, by the help of some of my friends who were much esteemed by the Governor. So I left Macassar on October 13, 1673, in a little ship, taking six weeks to reach Batavia, with no roof but the sky to shelter me from rain, wind and sun, since I lay stretched out without being able to move; and during this time I had nothing to eat but dry rice. So after six weeks I came to Batavia, at which I was as happy as if I had already reached Europe. Being come there I handed myself over to the Indians to be cured, and in a month my palsy was so far decreased that I was able to walk. I therefore decided to leave for Europe, since the fleet was then made ready to return to the Fatherland, although there was great anxiety since the enemy were much feared: but while we were thus undecided there fortunately arrived two ships from Holland bringing good news [of the Peace of Breda]. Eight large ships [by Valentyn *Hollandse Tuin*, *Burgt van Leyden*, *Prins Willem de Derde*, *Beemder*, *Nieuw Middelburg*, *Buuren*, *Hof van Breda*, *Spanbroek*] were being loaded to send to the Fatherland: it should be mentioned that the ships leave Batavia for Holland once only in the year, between November and February. We hastened to leave Batavia because the Monsoon* was already half over, and we should have great difficulty in reaching the Cape.

We left Batavia on the 4th of February of 1674; and no sooner was I aboard than

I wished that I had stayed ashore, since I must help to wash down and clean the ship and do all the work of a sailor. In a word, I was almost in despair; but when I saw that all this work and trouble was aimed only to the speedier attainment of our purpose, and considered the journey of the Children of Israel to the land of Canaan, which lasted for forty years and in which they suffered great hunger and thirst, I thought myself fortunate since I saw that my journey would last for a few months only.

We arrived at the Cape of Bone Esperance three months after leaving Batavia, but not without great danger on the way, since in the latitude of Madagascar a heavy squall blew our foremast overboard, which made it impossible for us to keep up with the fleet. It can well be imagined what toil had to be endured, since despite this we must continue our voyage. I was free from all this toil, since I had again become palsied, and lay on a sea-chest at the mercy of the waves which at every moment broke over me. Nevertheless, we reached the Cape eight days before our fleet came there [DR 25/4 *Beemster*, 2/5, 5/5 others: he was therefore in the named ship] so that our crew was already half refreshed. But I remained in a pretty bad state in the Hospital*, whither I had been taken, and could hardly eat, and must therefore make do with what I was given, so that I suffered great hunger: since each of us, fully two hundred in number, received daily not more than two ounces of bread, and a piece of mutton as big as an egg, as can be imagined since a sheep must be divided into two hundred pieces.

When our fleet was refreshed and provided with everything, all those in the Hospital who were fit and able must go aboard again. Not wishing to be among the last, for fear of being left ashore, I went into the shallop* to embark; but I was greatly disappointed since when I was seen walking on three legs I was sent back to the Hospital. Then I lost all hope of completing my journey, and greatly feared to have to remain at the Cape; and indeed one is as badly treated there as in Turkey, since the soldiers there must continually labour, and have nothing to eat but dry rice only, so that I wished myself back at Batavia. At last I decided to go aboard for the second time, where I was received with much difficulty. During the fifteen days that we yet remained in the roadstead to await our Vice-Admiral, I was in great fear lest I be sent ashore again were I seen thus lying flat, so that for three weeks I hid behind the casks which were set between the two upper decks.

Having long awaited our Vice-Admiral's ship [*Middelburg:* DR 13/11/74], and seeing that she did not arrive, we weighed anchor [DR 3/6] and set our course for the island of Fernando, sixty miles from Brazil and on three-and-a-half degrees from the Equator, to see if our Vice-Admiral were there, since this was the place agreed upon should any of our ships be unable to reach the Cape de Bone Esperance; but on arriving there we found no ship, nor any sign which he should have left had he been there. It was judged that his ship had been lost, since, while we were at the Cape, a ship had been seen from the top of a hill [Lions Head: the sighting not in DR] lying there near the shore, which steered directly for the Cape, but which suddenly disappeared because of the contrary wind, and therefore it was believed that she was lost because all her crew lay sick and could barely work her.

This island Fernando is only seven miles around, and has for some time been uninhabited. Before this it was inhabited by the Portuguese, since it is very fertile, and they would not have left it could they have remained there in peace; but the Dutch privateers in the last war repeatedly attacked and despoiled them, since they had no fortress or defence and dwelt there only as farmers. There are various strange things on this island: for example on the top of a hill lying near the sea is a stone image carved by nature, which looks just like a monk and is therefore called Fernando [Noronha, but named for the 1504 discoverer]. It is about twenty fathoms thick and a hundred high. A great number of large birds is found there, which let themselves be killed with sticks without taking to flight: they are as large as herons and very good to eat, although they have a gamy smell. We caught many fish on lines there, but found no fresh water. We also took a great quantity of wild goats, our skipper and the officers being continually out hunting.

After we had been there for four days we weighed anchor to continue our voyage. Fifteen days after leaving there we saw a Portuguese ship coming from Brazil and bound for Lisbon. When we neared her, the skipper came aboard to show his Pass*. He was asked for news from Europe, and told us that peace had been made between the English and the Dutch, which greatly rejoiced us. This Portuguese skipper was very well received on board our Admiral, and many toasts were drunk, at each of which a gun was fired. This ship came most conveniently for us, providing us with tobacco, which we lacked, and we bartered linens and other things for tobacco and sugar. When the evening came the Portuguese skipper took leave of our Admiral, to return to his ship, and was saluted by five guns as he went into his boat, to which his ship replied with seven guns. Our Admiral thanked him with three more, to which he replied with five. This was a fortunate day for us, since all our skippers were gay, and gave their crews wine, so that everyone was contented. Three weeks after this we had more definite news of the peace between the English and the Dutch, meeting a small English ship coming from England and bound for New England, which also told us that peace had been made. Thus we were no longer so apprehensive as we had been until then, since we no longer should have to fight more than one enemy. Three weeks later we sighted three warships, which caused us great perplexity, since we did not know if they were friends or foes; but when we neared them we saw that they were Dutch warships, sent out to await and escort us. It cannot be doubted what joy this gave us. From these ships [cruisers*] we received all sorts of refreshment, which made us forget all the discomforts we had suffered, since during all our voyage we had received nothing but rice and dry food. We got also much refreshment when we were near an island which lies behind Scotland [Northabout*] since as we sailed by, the inhabitants came aboard with small vessels laden with fresh mussels, fish and fowl. We bartered linen and old shirts for fish and fowls, and each of us provided himself for the rest of the journey, which would not be longer than ten days. Those who live on this island live as if savages: they have no bread to eat, but only dry fish which they use in place of bread. There are many sheep there, and one can buy a large leg of mutton for

two stivers.

After we had received this food and refreshment we were less content than before, since now we had no thought other than of getting ashore now that we were so near home, and the days seemed to us like months. Six days later we saw from afar off a little herring-fisher, which made for us since he was sure that we were the East India fleet, and when he neared us he welcomed us after his manner. Our Admiral had the shallop* launched to bring her skipper, so as to have verbal news from him, which however was not very good news for us, since his companion, another fisherboat, had been taken by the privateers from Dunkirk, and he himself had twice escaped by rowing. We were greatly astonished that we should meet with such danger so near land. Our Admiral sent this fisherman to Amsterdam, to take the news of our coming to the Proprietors of the Company, promising him more money than he would have won with all his fishing, and he had been under way only three days.

Two days after this we saw in the evening a Dutch privateer which had lost one of her masts. We made for her, and on nearing her asked if we were yet far from the coast: he said that we were not more than fifteen miles from the Texel, although we could not think that we were so near there. We passed that night in great impatience, hoping to enter the next day. When day broke each looked out as closely as he could, to spy land, since our skipper had promised a certain sum of money to him who should first sight land. We sailed slowly onwards, since we awaited our fleet, which was so far behind us that we could not see it. At ten in the morning we saw five towers, which we thought were five little ships since they were on the seashore; but at last we found that they were churches, so that we were near land. An hour later we sighted land, and found ourselves at the place where we must enter: we therefore took in all our sails, and fired our guns to advise our fleet following us. We let fly all our flags, setting them to our masts. An hour later we saw a galliot* making directly for us, to put a pilot aboard us to bring us in. We entered that same day, a Sunday, at three in the afternoon. On the right side of the passage a village lies, called de Helder, the inhabitants of which ran out of church, and stood on the shore to call Welcome! Welcome! to us. All the ships that lay in the roads welcomed us with firing of their guns, and we thanked them in the same fashion. When we were come in the pilot who had brought us in also welcomed us, and said we were now out of danger. At once the bells were rung, so that each should be given wine, and I can add that we were unbelievably happy. Soon after we took in our sails and let fall our anchor, but as soon as it had reached the ground such a strong wind arose that we must strike our topmasts and lower our yards. When this wind was over, a little ship was sent to Amsterdam to take the news to the Lords Proprietors, who came on the following Wednesday morning to us with many vessels, to take the folk to Amsterdam. When they were come aboard the bell was rung to assemble everyone on the upper deck. When we were assembled, the Proprietors asked if we were well content, and when we had replied Yes, they said to us: The Company thanks you for the good service that you have shown it, and releases you from your oaths - since it must be mentioned that when one comes

aboard to sail for the Indies, everyone must take such an oath. Being thus freed from our oaths we went into the vessels to go to Amsterdam, where we arrived that same evening at ten o'clock, so that we must remain in them all that night. Next day we came ashore at Amsterdam, where my astonishment was as great as when I first arrived at Batavia.

Background - continued

3/6/1674 This morning the bay was emptied of all ships awaiting sailing, all having left during the night ...

13/11 ... the return-ship *Middelburgh* ... anchored [had been forced back by storm to the Mayotte islands, lying there for 4 months]

[1675]
Dutch war with France continues.
Background - from official documents in the archives

Resolutions 26/2 Since we learn from the little flute* *Huys te Bergen* just arrived here from the Fatherland ... that yesterday she spoke the ship *America* near the Dassen Island ... in a very bad state, having lost over a hundred and fifty men by death during the journey and encumbered with another 80 sick, and further that a conspiracy had been discovered in her ... therefore *Vliegende Swaan* to leave for the Saldanha Bay as soon as possible, well provided with water and all sorts of refreshing ...

[1676]
Dutch war with France continues. Secret alliance England and France. Denmark at war with Sweden.
Background

1/1 ... unexpectedly came from Hottentots Hollant ... a letter from the Hon. Governor designate ... JOAN BAX called ‘of Herentals’, who sailed in the yacht* *Voorhout* from Gale's bay on November 26 last year, but was forced by the sickness of himself and his wife to make for the first available harbour, and had run into the Baay Fals [arrived by land 3/1, installed 14/3]

12/1 ... at dawn we saw the yacht *Voorhout* lie here at anchor ... in the dusk of evening came also the ship *Prins Willem Hendrik de Derde* ...

22/1 ... towed into the roads ... the flute *Nardenburgh* bound for Ceylon ...

4/2 ... arrived eleven return-ships [as listed in item 34, plus *Mauritius Island*]

1/3 ... towards evening arrived ... the flute the *Beemster* ... from Gale ...

2/3 ... at noon came in the other return-ship *Spanbroeck* ...

12/3 ... the flute *Sparendam* arrived with her cargo of rice from Ceylon.

34 Johan Christian Hoffmann

(*See also item 27*.) *Sailed from Batavia November 26*, *1675 in the return-fleet*, Ternate, Oostenburg, Sumatra, Hoveling, Hendrik-Mauritz, Kouwerven, America, Africa, Blauwe Hulk *and the* '*Advys-yacht**' Posthoorn, *under Nicolaus Verburg*, *whose letter of appointment he reproduces* (*incidentally signed by Jan van Riebeeck*, *now Secretary to the Council of the Indies*). *Reproduces also in full the fleet-orders*, *signals*, *etc.*, *and states definitely that the* '*Prince-flag*' *was red* (*not orange*), *white and blue. Rations detailed*.

On the 28th of January we sighted the Cape de boa Esperance with great joy, and made ready to be there soon; but we reckoned without our host, since before we knew it the favourable wind left us, and instead the gloomy air and many-coloured clouds threatened the coming of a mighty storm, which not only chased us out to sea again but so fell on all our ships that not one of them was to be found which had not some damage to sails or elsewhere. When the storm ended after 2 full days we had delightful sunshine and a pleasant south-east wind, which accompanied us into the Table Bay, where we arrived safely on the 4th of February with all the fleet [DR].

Although we fully expected to find there the Ceylon return-fleet, this had not yet appeared. On the other hand we met on our arrival here the ships Printz Wilhelm, Aardenburg, and the yacht* Voorhout, coming from Holland and bound for the Indies [*sic:* DR 12/1, 22/1]. Also the awaited Ceylon ships Beemster and Spanbroek arrived two days after us [DR 1/3, 2/3].

As soon as the anchors were down, the greater part of the folk went ashore to refresh themselves somewhat after such a dangerous journey. Meanwhile the seamen brought aboard water, firewood, cattle, victuals, and whatever else was necessary for our further journey, so as not to be delayed when the time came for our departure. On this second visit I found the Cape in a far better condition than before, so that it served excellently well to our entertainment, in that it was not only enlarged, but also ornamented with a new Fort*, not yet entirely finished. We had spent six whole weeks at this pleasant place, when:

On the 18th of March, 1676 [DR] we left the shore, entrusting ourselves to God and the sea, and set out, now twelve ships in all, with a favourable and steady south-east wind....

*Sargasso Sea for 8 days. Northabout**. *People of Fair Isle and the Shetlands brought fish*, *eggs*, *etc. for sale*. '*Cruisers**' *met near there. Discharged at Texel: Amsterdam for pay*.

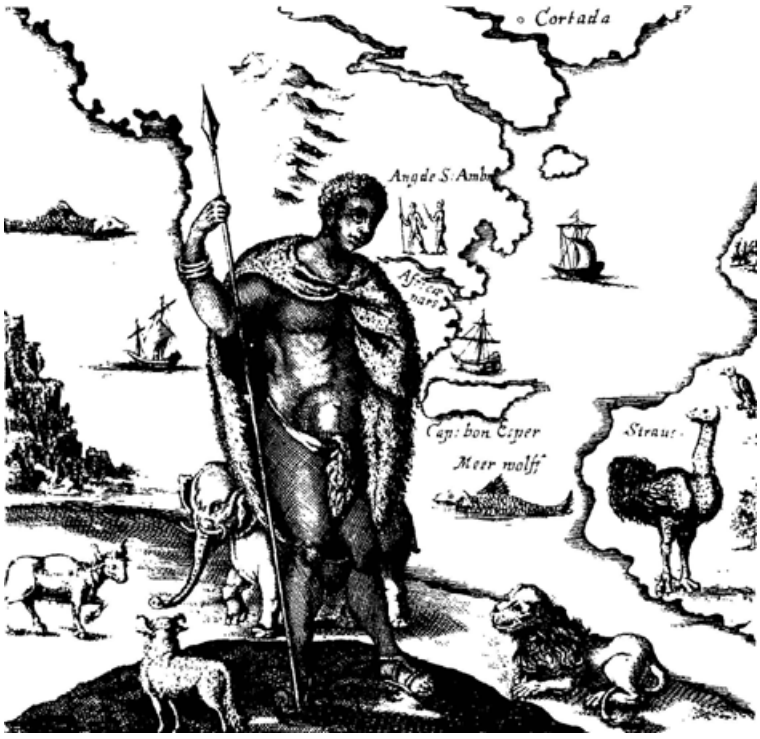
Background - continued

18/3/1676 ... the [return-] fleet set sail [with Goske].

20/3 ... letter received from Serjeant Lourens Visser in charge of the post at Hottentoos Holland ... 3 of our freemen who had gone inland to shoot sea-cows murdered near Groote Rivier [later 'Breede R.'] by Gonnemas Hottentots or at least their dependants ...

26/3 ... a kraal of Souquas, called Hottentoos Obiquas but dependants of Gonnema ... murdered three freemen ... to despatch tomorrow Lieutenant Cruse with 50 soldiers, as many burghers, and a party of Hottentoos [returned 17/4 'having, to our regret, accomplished nothing']

18/4 ... 4 ships sighted ... *Asia*, *Tidor*, *Cortjene* and the hooker* the *Croonvogel* ... left Duijns in England on January 18 ...



[26] A SAVAGE AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE IN AFRICA From item 35: the map is of course quite ridiculous, with the Cape shown as an island and the ostrich on apparently another, non-existent, island.

35 Christophorus Schweitzer (Plate 26)

(*And see item 45*.) *His 'Journal- und Tage-Buch seiner sechs-jährigen Ost-Indianischen Reise' was first published at Tübingen in 1688: it was translated into Dutch by Simon de Vries in 1694*, *into English as 'A Relation of several Voyages made to the East-Indies by C. Fryke and C. Schewitzer* [*sic*], *Done out of the Dutch by S.L.'*, *London 1700. This last is very unreliable*, *there being omissions*, *additions*, *and even deliberate mis-statements as was found when I checked it against the original in preparing the section dealing with Ceylon for publication there*. '*S.L's*' *translation was reprinted in 1929 in the 'Seafarers' Library'*, *unfortunately with no check against the original and with none of the errors corrected. Nevertheless the 'S.L.' version has been used here for the sake of its picturesque style*, *but it has been duly corrected (in the same style): the variants of importance are given*, *and will indicate the little reliance to be placed on early translators*.

I was accepted by the East-India Company on the 15th of November 1675 as a so-called Cadet* ['Adelborst oder Gefreyter']: my pay was 10 Florins per Month of Dutch money [the standard rate: 'S.L.' has 20 gld., ridiculously], that is 6 Florins of German, and I was to serve them for five years in the *Indies*; and upon these conditions went off in GOD's Name

On the first of December 1675 from *Amsterdam* in a little Ship to the Texel. There the fleet lay that was ordered to go to the *East-Indies* which consisted of Five Ships, *viz.*, the *Asia* Admiral*, the *Macassar* Vice-Admiral [with de Graaff, item 36], the *Stifft Utrecht* Rear-Admiral, the *Cortgene*, the *Tidor*....

The 2d of December 1 Embark't on Board the *Asia*, together with several other Soldiers engaged in the same Service....

The 14th, early in the morning [Hague codex 4389 folio 68 has January 10], sailed first the Admiral, with Flags* and Pendants on her Main-Mast; after her the Vice-Admiral, with a flag on the Foremast; and then the *Utrecht*, with a flag on her Mizzen-Mast, and then the other common ships.

[Alarm of French enemy ships. Salutes exchanged with Dover. Rations. Tenerife sighted. Engagement with Moroccan pirates. Calms, sicknesses and deaths.]

The 22d of *April* [DR 18/4] we came happily into the Road near the Land call'd *Capo de Bonne Esperance*, or the *Cape of Good Hope*.... The Prisoners [36 from the pirate ships] we sent immediately to the *Roppen* or *Seadogs' Island*, to gather Musselshells, and others, for the burning of Lime.

The 23rd of *April*, early in the morning, I went on Shore of *Africa* with our Admiral: From this place to *Amsterdam* they reckon usually 2,100 miles*. At this Cape we lay still nine days, and in that time provided ourselves with Water, Wood, and other Necessaries.

As to the Qualities of this Land, by what Observation I could make of it, I found it to be: First, Fruitful; and for that Reason, our *East-India* Company hath caused some years ago, very many strong Places to be Built there by the Water-Side, close under the *Duyvel's-Bergh*, *Lewen-Bergh*, and *Tafel-Bergh*, well stored with Soldiers, and all things necessary, and are sufficiently provided against the Incursions of the Wild-Men; so that their Ships going to and from the *Indies*, may safely, and without any danger, put in there at any time, and take in Provisions, whether it be of Cattle, Water, Wood, or other Refreshments. And here are already a great many Boors that are come from *Holland*, and by reason of the great Priviledges that are granted them, have settled there, and have Tilled the Land and made it very fruitful, for a matter of 10 to 20 miles round about these Places. Secondly, Very Populous: The Inhabitants are called wild Africans, or *Hottentots*. Their Colour is like that of the Egyptian Heathens, or as we call them corruptly, Gypsies. The Hair of the Head grows entangled in one another, like the Wool of a young Lamb; upon which they hang for Ornament all manner of Sea-shells. They are of a middle stature, and well-proportioned, only that they have their Noses a little too flat and broad.

They wear no manner of Cloaths, only a Sheeps-skin or Calf-skin on their Shoulders, (and that's besmeared with Grease to make it soft and pliant) when it is a little Cold, or when it Rains. They wear the Tail of a Fox, or of a wild Dog, hanging before their Privy-Parts. The Women among these *Hottentots* have a different Ornament from the Men, which is the Gutts of their Cattle fresh killed. These they wrap about their Legs, not minding the inconvenience it puts 'em to, which is such that they can hardly go, and they leave 'em there till they are quite dry.

I had often-times been told, that these Women had naturally a little kind of a Flap [see ‘Apron*’] growing over their Privities, like that of a Turkey-Cock's Bill, which I had a mind to see if it were true; but upon Examination, I found nothing of Truth in it. My Experience cost me only some Tobacco.

These People have a very strange Speech, and make such a disagreeable Noise with their Mouth, as other Nations cannot imitate; but a great many of them that live near to the *Cape of Good Hope* can speak some Dutch. They have no manner of Religion, Prayers, or Laws, only they Worship the Moon. The first time that they see it; they spend the whole Night in Dancing, Singing, and Bawling, Ha, ha, ha, ha. They do not at all trouble themselves with Building or Planting; so that they have no constant Abode, but move from Place to Place with their Children and Wives, where they can find Pasture for their Cattle. They eat all sorts of the Fruits and Roots* that grow in the Fields. They make no difference, whether their Meat is kill'd, or dead with any Distemper, or whether it be Man's Flesh: Whatever it be, they throw it upon some Coals, leave it there a little while, and so Eat it.

They live in small Hutts or Holes, every one with his Wife. If any of the Women have two Children at one Birth, they kill the weakest, that the other may have the Breasts to himself, and grow stronger and lustier. As soon as the Boys come to be about Twelve years of Age, they cut off his right Testicle*, that he may be the fitter for Running.

They have some Kings among them, and a great many Captains, and have cruel Wars between one another. They shoot Darts, and are excellent at hitting a mark with a Stone. The Women too will come in often and carry their Husband's Arms: If they take any of their Enemies, they kill 'em and eat 'em with great Joy and Satisfaction. And in the same Manner they use the Europeans (who come often to Truck many Cows and Sheep for a little Tobacco or White-Metal Bracelets) if they can get them into their Hutts.

Thirdly, Rich. They have all manner of Wild Beasts. For here are the furious Lions, which regard no Man, and when Hungry, fall upon Men and Beasts and Devour them. The Lurking [SL 'Grinning'] Tygers. The vast Elephant. The Angry Rhinoceros. The skipping and climbing Apes (Pavianen): besides Wild Dogs, Bears [*sic*], Wolves, and wonderful fine Wild Asses, all in great number; as also Ostridges, which indeed have Feathers and Wings, but cannot fly by reason of their bigness and weight, yet run fast with the Help of their Wings [all distorted by SL, who omits 'yet run ... Wings' and then has 'Their eggs are hatch'd of themselves, yet not ... continually looking after 'em.' Valentyn (X 115) attributes the 'looking at 'em' to 'a certain Arab writer', not further identified]. Their eggs they hatch themselves, yet not (as some misinformed Persons have given an account of it) by their continual looking at 'em. Sea-Cows, that lie in the fresh Rivers all day, and at night come on Shore to feed: Their Flesh is better than that of Swine. Elks and Deer, Wild Boars, Porcupines [omitted by SL], Peacocks, Pelicans ['Kropf-Ganze' which SL mistranslates as 'Geese'], Wild Ducks, Partridges, and other sort of Poultry, too long to give an Account of, all which are here very plentiful.

The 1st of *May* towards night [DR 29/5] the *Asia*, *Tidor* and *Cortgene*, set out together.... [Batavia from June 1676 to October 1677, then Ceylon until January 1782.]

Background - continued

28/4/1676 ... three ships ... *Ceylon*, *Alexander* and the *Voorsigtigheyt* left Batavia February 9 ... At noon the ships from the Fatherland received their despatches [as listed 18/4]

29/4 ... were out of sight ...

30/4 ... Towards evening anchored ... the ship *Macassar* ... left the Duijns on January 18 ... 200 men, of whom 31 must be given dead to the sea, and 26 brought into our hospital ...

3/5 Early in the morning ... arrived the ship the *Stadt Grave* ...

4/5 Early in the morning found anchored in the roads ... *Stigt van Utrecht* ...

5/5 ... at nightfall arrived the ships *Muyderberg* and *Den Briel* ...

36 Nicolaus de Graaff

(*See also items 22*, *28*, *39*, *49*, *62*.) *On January 13*, *1676 he sailed in* Makasser *from Texel*, *with* Stigt Utregt *and three other ships*, *five more joining at the Downs*. (*Schweitzer*, *item 35*, *was in the same fleet*.) *Near the Canary Islands a Council* decided that the two ships named should break off for São Tiago because they already had many sick aboard: this was done*, *but adverse winds prevented the call. Near the Equator touch with* Stigt Utregt *was lost*, *and* Makasser *went on alone*.

On April 30 [as DR] we anchored in the Table Bay, learning that 4 of the ships that had sailed with us from Holland had left the day before after a stay of 10 days [see DR above]; anf that 13 return-ships had sailed a few days previously [but DR 18/3] for the Fatherland, with the Director-General Nicolaus Verburg in charge, and Ysbrand Goskens, formerly Governor at the Cape, as Vice-Admiral*. We found lying there the three last return-ships *Ceilon*, *Voorsigtigheid* and *Alexander* [DR 28/4], which had sailed [as 'After-ships*'] from Batavia on January 24 [but DR 9/2]; as also the flute* *Sparendam*, coming from Batavia with rice and other necessities for the Cape [but DR 12/3 as from Galle], the yacht* *Voorhout* [stationed at the Cape], and two hookers* [not identified]. On May 3 there came to the Cape the flute *De Graaf* [*Stadt Grave*]; next day the *Stigt Utregt;* and two days later the ship *Briel* and the yacht *Muiderberg*. On the 22nd of the same month [DR confirms all dates] nine ships set sail from the Cape, being *Makasser*, *Stigt Utregt*, *Briel*, *De Graaf* and *Muiderberg* for Batavia; *Ceilon*, *Voorsigtigheid* and *Alexander* for the Fatherland; and *Voorhout* for the island of Madagascar.

Batavia July 23. Colombo. Cochin and stationed there until 1678, *with journeys to the Persian Gulf*, *Malabar*, *etc.*, *sailing on December 3*, *1678 for Colombo and Galle*.

Background - continued

22/5/1676 [Sailed *Ceylon*, *Voorsigtigheyt* homeward; *Macassar*, *Utrecht*, *Briel*, *Muyderberg*, *Grave* for Batavia; *Voorhout* to Madagascar for slaves]

8/6 ... the redoubts Kyckuyt and Keerdekoe ... threaten to collapse ... resolved to raze them and rebuild with stone...

3/9 ... this day entirely completed the last bastion of the new fort ...

1/11 [Instructions for Captain Dircq Smient and Lieutenant Jeronimus Cruse for expedition against Gonnema]

17/11 ... came a smart ship ... *Nieuw Middelburg* ... another ship sighted ... the *Vryheyt* ... sailed July 18 last ...

18/11 ... among those in her the Hon. Jacob de Werelt as Chief Mine-Director, especially for employment on the coast of Sumatra ...

19/11 ... arrived at noon Captain Smient ... leaving behind the Lieutenant Cruse, who set out for the Saldanhiabaay with 24 men ... to surprise a certain Hottentot Captain there ...

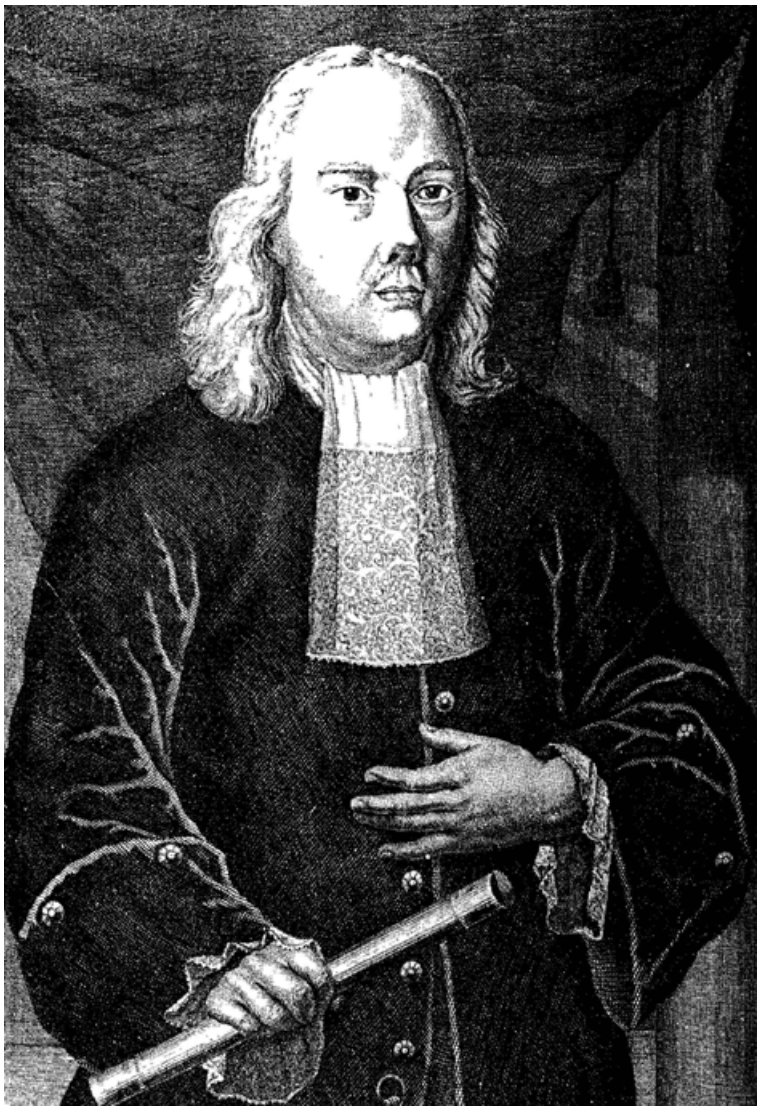
23/11 The Hon. Governor rode ... early morning fully an hour from the fort to meet the awaited expedition [Cruse]

28/11 ... [letter sent to Hottentots Holland post] to send two Dutch with the same number of Hottentots ... to the place where the miners worked previously, to bring some mineral from there ...

29/11 ... at dusk to our joy arrived the little yacht* *Voorhout* from the island Madagascar ... bringing slaves to the number of 254, of whom 22 had been lost by death during the voyage ...

30/11 ... brought ashore in the afternoon ... 257 including babies ... given clothing and good refreshing ...

1/12 ... the ship *Nieuw Middelburg* ... set sail ...



[27] ABRAHAM VAN RIEBEECK as Governor-General, 1704-1713. (From Dubois, *Vies des Gouverneurs-Généraux*, Amsterdam 1763.)

37 Abraham van Riebeeck
(Plate 27)

Translated from xerographs of his log, Hague Archives van Hoorn-van Riebeeck papers 15: kept in Vrijheid, *sailing from Enkhuisen on July 18, 1676* (*Hague codex 4389*). *He was Jan van Riebeeck's second son, born at the Cape on October 14, 1653, and was sent to Rotterdam for his education. After taking his Doctorate in law at Leiden he took employment with the V.O.C. as Under-Merchant*. Unfortunately the pages of his log before November 17 are missing.*

November 1676 in the ship De Vryheyt.

Tuesday 17 [DR] we sighted the land of the Cabo de goede Hoop and its many hills. Now many sorts of birds came from the Cabo de bon Esperance to welcome us, among which many black cormorants which were also seen sitting on the water: here also a great number of tunnies showed themselves, somersaulting through the water so that it foamed in various places therefrom, as also some seals, which often showed their heads above water. We saw also some strombas [trombas*] or sea-bamboos, of which many [usually] float around here, although very few at this time. The sight of the hills was pleasing, not only because of their height, but also because of the driving clouds, which sometimes covered their tops so that it seemed as if they emerged from the hills like steam, and sometimes again drove towards us between hill and hill, and in passing threw their shadows on the slopes. In the afternoon we saw the above-mentioned ship going ahead of us, gaily sailing into the Table Bay with a good wind, which well served her but had forsaken us: may the Almighty grant that we may soon join her! This day everyone was very busy making ready the ropes, cables and anchors for our arrival at the roads of the Cabo de bon Esperance, the sea now being very green because of the lesser depth. We reckoned to have sailed 26 miles E. by N. in these 24 hours, with a W.S.W. wind, at noon being 6 miles* from the Table Bay. In the evening at sunset we ran into the Table Bay (God be praised), and dropped anchor in front of the Fort, where also we made ready to go ashore to salute the Governor. But no sooner had we entered our shallop* than a boat came out to us, advising that the Governor desired that we should come somewhat further into the bay, and should not come ashore until the next day about noon. By the Governor's orders we also handed over our letters, with the list of our sick, now 70 in number, and at the Governor's wishes changed our position that night into barely 6½ fathoms depth.

Wednesday 18. In the morning there came aboard the Fiscaal*, the garrison Bookkeeper, the First Clerk of the Secretariat, and the acting Doctor, each on duty: the Fiscaal G. Mulder to affix a certain placcaat with orders for the crew [see 22/9/54], the Clerk of the Secretariat to publicly proclaim the same, the garrison Book-keeper to inspect the ship's books, and the Doctor to examine the sick, of whom he judged that 45 only needed

to go into the hospital on shore. At their request I also handed over to the said Clerk of the Secretariat a note of the dates of our sailing and of our arrivals, as also the number of our dead and of those actually sick, but not the names of places where we might have touched on the way, since we had touched nowhere. These said friends were entertained with food and drink as best we were able, and we were invited to the Governor's table towards noon, by his orders, after which they went over to board the ship Nieuw Middelburg.

In accordance we went ashore; and on setting foot on the Jetty* we were first welcomed by Hottentots with a letter from the Governor to us, whereby we were authorised to entertain on board their Captain, Cuyper by name, with the Hottentots subordinate to him, friends of the Company, with brandy, tobacco and bread. After this, coming to the Hr. Governor, we were very amiably received by him, as also later at table, where for the most part the talk was as usual of the latest conditions at home, so that it is very desirable that one should be ready to answer all questions regarding this. Our request for refreshing was very generously granted, namely that we might take as much greenstuff from the garden each day as we wished. Also meat during the first 3 days (which are called the 'play-days' because during these the crews are excused from work; and after these the crews must go ashore into the forests, and then the meat-days are only the alternate days at first, and after that every third day only).

After eating we went for a stroll in the Company's Garden*, which now was greatly increased in size, being provided with almost every sort of ground- and tree-fruits which one has in Holland, as also with medicinal herbs. Currants and gooseberries do not thrive well, but on the other hand the orange, lemon and citron trees are seen to grow very fruitfully, having the height and thickness of an average appletree. In it there is also an olive-tree which already had a great quantity of small olives. The coconut-palms planted beside a certain long avenue were not growing well. The banana-plants bear leaves only, with no fruit, these plants consisting only of a stalk with a growth of leaves around it, which shoot out above, some forward, some backward; and this stem is repeatedly cut off when it has borne fruit, and then grows up again out of the ground. The laurel-trees grow very tall here, as much as eighteen feet high, and are seen everywhere planted as hedges (as also are the uncultivated trees) as defence against the squalls, and to shelter the trees. Rosemary is also seen growing very tall here, but is cut away at about 3 feet from the ground, and used as if large box-trees. This stroll being ended, we went again to the residence of the Hon. the Governor, by name *Johan Bax* of Herental, to return aboard again after thanking him for his friendly reception.

Thursday 19 we went ashore with those of the Cajuyt* to dine with the Governor. In the afternoon while taking a walk we got the wish to climb up the Kloof. Being arrived there, the more enquiring of us wished to climb up the Table Mountain as far as time would permit, reaching to half-way before the steepness ahead discouraged our further progress, since, had our intention been to climb the mountain, we had not chosen the proper route. At first the climb was smooth, then somewhat steeper and mixed with

stones, which when they lay loosely caused our progress to be very dangerous, especially when it began to be so steep that we must hold fast with hands and feet. Now the clouds were already far below us, so that at times we sat above in the clear air while it was so misty below because of the clouds that the ground was invisible: sometimes again we were in the clouds, as if in a thick mist. Evening began to draw on, and we were hindered from climbing further and higher by the steepness of the mountain (which from here upwards is nothing but overhanging broken rocks, which at every instant threatened to be blown loose to crush someone of us), so that we went to sit in the hollow of the overhanging rocks, somewhat to recover from our fatigue; but we did not delay there for long, lest the wind should cover us with some fragment of that mountain. Of such fragments all the hills at the Cabo de bon Esperance are very full, as also are the valleys, which without doubt must be caused by the blowing of the wind. We then climbed down again, which at first we must again do on hands and feet because of the steepness and the loose-lying stones, in order not to fall down from above or break our legs at every step, since here it is more dangerous to descend than to climb up. On the way we found here and there several little brooks of fresh water flowing down in various places, from this, as from all the other hills, so that everywhere drinking-water is to be found, well-tasting because the water flows for the most part over stones and rocks, or else over stone-hard clay, of which nearly all the hills are composed. This earth looks reddish, and is as hard as half-fired brick, and below on the foot of the hills as also in the valleys is mixed with very large and hard boulders and rocks; but all the hills are almost entirely terrifyingly steep slopes higher up, with broken-away rocks on all sides.

At last we got right down, which however is the case only on reaching the shore, since the Lion Hill on one side and the Devil's Hill on the other unite with the Table Mountain to form as if an arm or semi-circle, within which the old and new forts lie enclosed as if in half of a deep pit, the lowest part of which is first found at the shore, so that when one looks from the old fort to seaward one finds oneself already a good distance above it.

Before we went aboard we however first went to inspect the new Fort*, which stands to the right side of the old fort towards the Salt River [*sic*]. It consists of 5 bastions, all built up very high of hewn stones, which cost great toil, both in obtaining them and in making use of them. These stones are for the most part got from or near the Lion Hill, about 1 or 1½ feet below the surface, where rocks like churches and castles are found. In order to tear away the stones for use long holes are bored in them, filled with powder and stopped up, and then this is fired so that many rifts are made, after which work must be done with crowbars and other tools to tear them apart. Thus already very many deep and large pits are to be found in the Lion Hill, from which the stones have been extracted. When these stones have thus been obtained, they must then be transported on carts drawn by 6 oxen to the new Fort, which also is very costly, since each cart can transport 3 or 4 stones only because of their weight. These stones, irregular [Hoeks* en Cabeljauws] as they are, are set together as best is possible and practicable and mortared

with lime, and filled in with smaller fragments between stone and stone. With such stones and masonry are built not only the Fort, but also many of the freemen's houses, which now have been built here in large numbers, with gardens behind them, both around the new Fort and behind the Devil's Hill, as also to the left side of the old fort, where it well resembles a little Town*.

The ramparts of the old fort are now demolished, although for the convenience of a house the Governor still resides there, having had a very long, cool and pleasant dining-room built of wood behind the hall of [read 'used as'] the old church (and having in addition the whole living-quarters at his disposal), from which the view of the Table Mountain is very fine: this view was previously spoiled by the then-standing walls, which now having been thrown down into the moat leave an open view. Behind this is the kraal of the animals and the slaughter-house, in which we saw also some porcupines, ostriches, and 2 pelicans which had been brought from the Sardinia Bay, and were being reared here as curiosities for His Highness [Prince Willem II]. Except for their grey colour these look like cassowaries, and have below their beak a very large pouch which lies like a goitre under their chin, and looks like an empty cellar when their beak is opened. Their natural food is fish and raw meat [*sic*], of which these are deprived because it would be too costly on account of their devouring greediness, and instead of this, bread is thrown to them; but it seems that this will not be a success, since one of them has already begun to die.

This day a part of the men returned that went out against the Hottentots at the Sardaigne Bay [DR 1/11-19/11], without having been able to catch any, but bringing with them a little cattle which had been left behind by the fugitives. These Hottentots were under the rule of Cochoqua [actually of Captain Kees of the Cochoqua tribe], a sub-king under a certain Gonnema, and had attacked the Dutch garrison at the said Sardaigne Bay a few years ago [DR 14/7/73] and massacred all the Dutch, for which reason various expeditions* against them had been made by our people here, as now also this one, on the information given by the above-mentioned Captain Cuyper with his Hottentot subjects, who now wish to seem to be the friends of the Company; but it was asserted, that just as this Cuyper gave us news of the Hottentots, so also he had given the Hottentots news of our expedition.

Friday 20. This day we remained on board to take some rest, sending more than 40 soldiers to the forest behind the Table Mountain, to get wood both for the Fort and for the ship.

Further, we had a strong sea-wind from the North, so that it was difficult to go ashore or come aboard.

Saturday 21. Now the 'playdays' were finished, and the crew, both on board and on land in the forest, had their hands full of work. Our Upper-Merchant* Hr. Jacob de Werelt, going out with us to the Indies as Director of Mining [DR 18/11] had the task, according to the orders of the Lords Proprietors at home, of looking into matters relating to the minerals here at the Cabo de bon Esperance, in which I promised always to assist

him (in order the better to be able to examine the conditions of my birthplace by this means, as far as time permitted), as did also our Skipper. We three thus went ashore, and in the afternoon, with the permission and advice of the Hon. Governor, made our way to the Devil's Hill, where certain red pits can be seen from far away; but discovered nothing of importance there.

Sunday 22. We went ashore to church, where our Preacher gave the sermon in the morning. At noon the Governor again entertained us at his table, namely we three, the Upper-Merchant, the Skipper, and myself....

Monday 23. In the morning the Merchant* Crudop, Secunde* of this place came aboard, with the Under-Merchant and Winkelier* van Banchem, the Fiscaal* Gerbrant Mullert [Mulder], and the First Clerk of the Secretariat A. de Man, to take note of the declarations made on the 19th instant at the Ship's Council [no other details given]. This being done, we entertained them on board to the best of our ability. They requested us in the name of the Hon. the Governor to come ashore, and go with the calash [‘Calesse’] and horses made ready for us, to meet the Hon. the Governor behind the Devil's Hill, where he was busy with the remainder of the expedition sent out, now returned with the booty. For this reason we went ashore, and on arriving found the animals already coming to the kraal, being in number about 70 cattle and 40 sheep. We then took horse, the young women of the Upper-Merchant's family and wives and nieces mounting the coach, and rode past the new Fort and the side of the Devil's Hill to a valley, where we found the Hon. the Governor with his lady and two other young girls, together with their slaves and the usual number of escort-soldiers, and the Governor's coach [‘Carosse’] and carts with baggage and provisions, all camped there in a tent set up against the sun. Lieutenant Croese who had commanded that part of the men was still there, but soon left for his house from fatigue after the expedition [DR 1/11, 19/11, 23/11]. After the Hon. the Governor had entertained us there in his tent with food and drink, he also did us the honour of leaving the party and going somewhat further inland, first namely to the [Groote] Schuer of the Company behind the Table Mountain, set up for the reaped corn, as also for the lodging of the woodmen there at the beginning, which now had been somewhat enlarged and built up around with hewn stone.

It is very enjoyable here to see the hills and dales as one rides through them, with on one side the woods growing high up on the Table Mountain, and on the other side the cultivation of the crops. Here we saw a small rhinoceros which they called ‘Jochum’, being as heavy as a large calf, but the legs thicker and shorter. It had as yet no horn on its nose, but looked oblong in shape, its skin black but without scales through very rough and hard. From there we went on to a place called ‘The Ronde Boschje’: formerly there used to stand here only a little round grove or 6 or 7 trees, which place because of the good nature of the soil was first sown with corn [DR 17/8/56]; but now is very beautifully planted with trees and vineyards, so that it now brings in 3000 gld. of rent yearly to the Hon. Company. Below this plantation there runs a river called Liesbeek, in some places dangerous to cross because of its depths, in others because of the presence of tigers

or leopards. After we had seen everything with great content, we returned again to the Fort after we had first refreshed ourselves with some tea [‘Thee-drank’, an early mention], and went aboard after giving our thanks to the Hon. the Governor. That night we sent out our shallop* with the seine, to fish in the Salt River.

Tuesday 24. In the morning our people brought in a little fish they had caught, such as Harders, Crayfish, Steenbraessen; and also a ‘Death's-Head’. This fish has a little beaklet hanging on its nose, and below this its nose and mouth somewhat resemble a skull: moreover its body, fins and tail are like those of a shark, but it is only as large as a ‘blok’ [?] or whiting. This morning and yesterday were brought ashore the 80 tanks [‘kelders’: ?] loaded for the Caep de Bon Esperance.

In the afternoon we went on horseback to inspect the mines behind the head of the Lion Hill (thus named because this hill closely resembles a lying lion, when seen from this side of the Lion's Head) [the text is obviously corrupt, reading ‘(soo genoemt om dat desen bergh een liggende leeuw seer gelijk zijnde) aen die zijde des leeuwen hooft repraesenteert)’, with a surplus parenthesis. My reading is guess work], the Upper-Merchant finding there some good stones, after doing which we returned again. On our way back we also examined the little Hottento tents or huts, which are round, made of sticks and stakes covered over with old mats and old pieces of tarpaulin. We talked somewhat with them, principally to understand a little concerning their religion (since some among them spoke some broken Dutch), but we found that they knew nothing of God or the Bible, and also nothing of the Devil: no shape of the heavens, noise of thunder and lightning, wind or storm, rain or hail had ever been able to imprint them [the idea] that there was a God, but they said that things happened according to the custom of time immemorial.

Wednesday 25. Going ashore at dawn we took horse for the mine lying near the Hout Bay, being six in number: myself, the Upper-Merchant, the Skipper, two Burgomasters* of the Cape named Elmer Dieme and Jan Mostert who were here from the beginning, with the Governor's groom. Our route was first past the Company's Garden and behind the Devil's Hill and the Table Mountain, and thence past the Ronde Boschje, where we rested for a little so that the two sailors who followed with our food and drink might catch up with us. From thence we went along by the hills to the farm of the aforesaid Mostert lying on the Wynberg behind the Table Mountain, and there in his house left the provisions so as to go onward unhampered, and somewhat to refresh ourselves there on our way back. But before we mounted again, we first looked at his vines, of which he had a good number there, all well provided with grapes which were still growing, since it was not yet the time for them. The said Burgomaster Mostert said that some years he had pressed 9 leggers* of wine from them, and once even 12 leggers.

He let us try also the Cape wine pressed by him, which had the colour of French wine, but tasted somewhat of the fennel with which he cleaned the vats, and the wine was not strong in taste, although if much is taken it can well cause one's head to turn on the next day. From there we went forward to the hill of our destination, riding now over hills, now over stones, now through valleys, then again beside the hills, and for the most

part also through little brooks which flow down in great numbers from all the hills and are full of large stones, in which the water flows so bright and clean, and which are like avenues grown with wild trees on both sides, these trees having rounded openings at the places where the streamlet is customarily forded; and all these little rivers are nothing but streamlets and brooks of the water that flows down from the hills. At last we reached the desired hill, where at the side a bridle-path runs to the mine. Up this we rode, seeing far away on the left the Table Bay with the rocks lying in it; and close to us was a forest lying below us in a deep valley, which, because it lies in a deep and very gloomy pit, has got the name of 'Hell', as also [the forest] which lies on the top of the hill was called 'Paradise', so that the mine which lies between the two is 'the place between Hell and Heaven'. Being arrived there we dismounted, finding there two dug-out openings, one small, the other somewhat larger and at first straight, propped up above and at the sides with planks, and then running downwards for the height of a man. Here the groom fired off a pistol into it before entering, for fear of any wild beasts, after which we went into the shaft; but since it was very dark in this, and we had brought no candles, we were forced first to light a fire, and then make loose bundles of dry heath, set light to these, and enter with them, by which means we could see a little. Having examined everything briefly (since the shaft soon filled with smoke which quickly drove us out) we returned homewards, the fatigue of the horses not permitting us to go onwards to the Hout Bay since it was already past noon, although on the other hand our curiosity indeed pressed us to this. Having arrived at the farm of the aforesaid Mostert we there somewhat strengthened our bodies with food and drink, and also went to see his citron- and lemon-trees which were very full of fruit; but everything was out of season, since the seasons of the year here in the South are the reverse to those in the countries towards the North Pole, so that for our refreshment we could get nothing at this time of the year except vegetables and some carrots and artichokes. From there we rode on towards home, and were joined by the Skipper Basting and the Under-Merchant Dykman of the Zeeland ship, with his wife and other company, to whom the Hon. the Governor had given the use of his calash and some horses for an airing and recreation for them. So we arrived after dark at the Fort, and went back aboard again, after thanking the Governor and taking leave of him, nothing having actually been found in this mine by our aforesaid Upper-Merchant, except for very good indications that by further digging there was hope that something might be found.

Thursday 26. The Doctor came off with a Surgeon from ashore to look through the ship's medicine-chest, taking from it some drugs for the Cabo de Bon Esperance, as authorised by the Hon. Governor.

Friday 27. The Skipper of the hooker Quartel visited us aboard. Having entertained the said Skipper to the best of our ability we went with him aboard his ship, chiefly because of some little chameleons which he had brought from the Robben Island, to collect these in accordance with his offer. These beasties are of the size of a lizard, and almost of the same shape. They change their colours according to the colour of whatever

they are set upon, and live on air, dwelling in the branches of certain greenery which he had also brought, and so long as the twig remains fresh they remain alive. When they are put on the floor and a fly is thrown in front of them, they follow it, and when they are within range they thrust out their tongue like a little arrow, and shoot it fully an inch out of their mouth, being thus able to carry the fly into their mouth with it. After leaving his ship we went ashore, and back aboard after a short stroll.

Saturday 28. We being on shore with the Hon. the Governor, he gave us the pleasure of hearing his black steward and another slave playing on harp and tiorba*, in which the steward showed a very pleasing skill, principally in the roulades and preludes which he played like a master; but he never played from notes, only by ear. Towards evening the Hon. the Governor sent a letter to Hottantots holland, this being a fortification of the Dutch on the False Bay, with orders to send some Hottentots from there to the Cape d'Aguilhas to bring in some minerals from there [DR], sending out also the Lieutenant Croese with two assistants on horse-back, and some foot-soldiers with some baggagewaggons, to a certain hill called Riebeeks Casteel lying near Gonnoma's lands about 20 miles* from the Table Bay, to bring some stones from there.

Sunday 29 there arrived [DR] the yacht* Voorhout with the Skipper van Asperen, who had been sent more than six months ago [DR 22/5] to Madagascar to buy slaves, now returning very well provided with these.

Monday 30. The Zeeland Skipper Bastingh received his orders to sail, being entertained, together with us and his above-mentioned Upper-Merchant, to his farewell meal by the Hon. the Governor. In the afternoon the slaves purchased at Madagascar were brought ashore, 257 in number, and given clothing. Among the slave-women many plump ones were to be seen, whom the sailors (it was said) had well looked after by day in return for their favours by night: these also were brought ashore, and could not part from the sailors without weeping and wailing.

Tuesday December first. Today we first had the S.E. wind, and that pretty strongly, so that we must remain on board. This is the surest wind to blow at the Cabo de Bon Esperance, coming with great strong blasts down from the Table Mountain. The aforesaid Zeeland ship Nieuw Middelburg ran out with this wind to below the Robben Island, where she found it dead calm because the Lion Hill interposed, so that it was not until the evening that she was out of sight. To avoid this calm and keep the wind Skippers are accustomed to run South of the said Robben Island.

Wednesday 2. This morning we received aboard 27 men, soldiers and sailors. This being done we went ashore, since we were advised that Lieutenant Croese was returned from his expedition to Riebeeks Casteel. In the afternoon the S.E. wind began to rage so strongly, that we could not go aboard, nor the crew, so that for once we tried how it was to sleep ashore, with the hope of being able to go aboard after midnight, if the wind would fall then; since this wind, which rises after midday and towards evening, also decreases after midnight and towards daybreak. But it continued to blow very strongly all night.

Thursday 3. This morning the wind fell about 10 o'clock, and was replaced by a

gentle sea-wind, just at the time we intended to go aboard. In the afternoon the S.E. wind again began to blow, but dropped around midnight again, so that we sent the shallop* out to fish at the Salt River, where the fish always appear before a S.E. wind. That night our Cajuit* steward, Jan Houthuys of Munster, a cannoneer ['Bosschieter'], also went with the fishermen, to his misfortune, since wishing to wade ashore from the shallop through the [shallow] water, he came unexpectedly into a hole and because of the darkness could not be helped, being drowned and sunk before anything was known of it.

Friday 4. This morning, not being able to guess why the shallop delayed so long, we were advised of this entirely unexpected misfortune: wherefore the Skipper at once went ashore to notify the Hon. the Governor, who at once ordered the Fiscaal* to have the corpse fished for, the person who had been the nearest being taken from on board to show the Fiscaal the place of the accident.

Saturday 5. Going ashore at midday we found the Hon. the Governor very troubled, because no news came of the 2 Dutch who had set out from Hottentots-Holland with some Hottentots for the Cabo de Aguilhas fully 8 days ago, fearing that the enemy Hottentots might have murdered them.

Sunday 6. We went ashore to take the farewell meal with the Hon. the Governor, having been busy the previous night and this morning in despatching both letters to the Company and private letters to Holland. After the meal I went aboard again to prepare the accounts of certain men ordered ashore (of which for the first time I had the responsibility). Having done this I again went ashore, and there learnt that our departure was postponed for another day. The drum was nevertheless beaten, and the crew ordered to betake themselves aboard, by order of the Hon. the Governor, on pain of being put in irons. When evening came we went aboard, receiving the news, just as we pushed off from the Jetty*, that the men from the Cabo de Aguilhas were returned, but they having gone to a wrong place their journey had been fruitless. Also as we left we were invited by the Hon. the Governor to a farewell meal the next day about noon.

Monday 7. Early this morning our aforesaid Upper-Merchant went ashore to assay the minerals brought from Riebeeks Casteel, together with some stone found in the rockcavities near the Lion Hill, finding all to contain some silver, but not to be compared with the cinnabar ['Sinnabaraensche'] ores by a long way.

Meanwhile there came aboard us the aforesaid Fiscaal, the garrison Book-Keeper Philip Theodoor Weloken [Welker], and the First Clerk of the Secretariat to muster the crew, after which we exchanged with them the accounts of those sent aboard and those taken ashore here, as also we handed over to them the muster-roll, to remain at the Cabo de bon Esperance, it being the custom throughout all the Indies that a muster-roll of all those alive in the ship, with their names and pay, shall be left at the places she departs from, so that by this means, in case of the loss of any ship, it may be known who are dead, which otherwise would be uncertain and toilsome both for the Company as for their friends. After we had somewhat entertained these aforesaid Cape gentlemen ['Signoors'] with food and drink we went ashore, the sooner because the Hon. the Governor had sent

a message aboard that we should somewhat hasten ourselves, and not allow ourselves to be delayed by the Fiscaal. When we came ashore, we were entertained very cordially and magnificently by the Hon. the Governor for the last time at our farewell-feast, as also during the same by the music of harp and tiorba* played by the blacks, and of a violin [‘hantfiole’] which a soldier played, from time to time replacing the others.

After the meal we were regaled with some tea and sweetmeats, and then for those who so desired and were able a little dancery [‘dansereijtje’] was added. By then the night began to fall, and we made ready to go aboard; but the Hon. the Governor did not allow his politeness and kindness towards us to rest there, but did us the further honour of accompanying us, together with his lady wife and his little son, together with their domestic slaves and personal escort, as far as the end of the Jetty*. Being come there, the last glass was drunk in farewell, whereat, after all our demonstrations of respect and thankfulness for His Honour's great friendliness, we boarded our shallop*; and we had barely pushed off with the same before we were honoured by the Hon. the Governor with a salute of 7 guns from the new Fort, after which we went aboard.

Tuesday 8. This morning I was busy with the preparations of a certain opinion for the Hon. the Governor, concerning a certain matter as regards which he had done me the honour of consulting me during the previous evening, and sent it to him in writing with the Equipagie-Meester* who remained on board until after midday. Meanwhile, our anchor having been weighed, and the wind beginning to blow across the bay from the S.E., we bent our sails, trying to fetch the wind by towing the ship out of the calm in which we still were. About 4 in the afternoon, having got into the wind and now first making proper progress [DR], we fired 8 guns in farewell and as thanks for the aforesaid honours done us yesterday, and to honour the Hon. the Governor, then sailing successfully through above the Robben Island, in order that we might not find ourselves in a calm had we gone around the Island towards the Lion Hill, and there plod along all day as the ship N. Middelburgh had done. Before sunset we had reached the end of the said island, and for greater safety during the night pushed out as far from the shore as was possible, having always a good breeze.

Wednesday 9. At noon we were already out of sight of the Cape hills....

Batavia February 16, 1677 by Hague codex 1212, where he remained in the administration, rising to Governor-General in 1709, and until his death in 1713.

Background - continued

8/12/1676 ... in the afternoon the ship the *Vryheyt* ... put out to sea ...

Resolutions 10/12 ... Captain Claes, one of the chiefs of the Sousoas has shown a wish to trade ... resolved (in hopes of a good trade, both with the Captain Claes as with the Hosequas) ... to send an expedition* ... Lieutenant Cruse, with a Serjeant, 2 Corporals, and 24 soldiers [DR 6/1/77 returned successful]

[1677]
Dutch war with France continues. November 15 William of Orange marries the English Princess Mary. War between Sweden and Denmark continues.
Background - from official documents in the archives

23/6 ... Towards evening ... news received of the arrival of ... certain envoys from the Chief Gonnema ...

25/6 ... The prepared articles of peace ... discussed in Council ... accepted under a general cry of 'Sam, Sam', that is 'Peace' [conditions detailed]

30/7 ... resolved ... to send Lieutenant Cruse with a Serjeant, 2 Corporals and 18 men [to bring Gonnema for the ratification of peace]

5/8 ... Lieutenant Cruse returned from inland, bringing with him the 3 African generals named Gonnema, Oedasso and Cochensona ...

17/9 ... a fine 'spiegelschip*' ... *Ternaten*, sailed from Texel on May 26 last with the ships *Oostenburgh*, *Voorsightigheyt* and the three hired ships *Bloemmendael*, *Saint Andries* and *Crygsman* ... all for Batavia except the *Oostenburgh* for Ceylon and *Saint Andries* to be unloaded here at the Cape [she damaged, to Bergen] ... having sailed Northabout* ... and of the 306 souls brought out having lost 11, and bringing a further 11 sick into the Company's hospital ...

19/9 ... In the morning we saw the ship *Oostenburch* at anchor on the East side of the bay ... at midday the ship the *Krygsman* ... two other ships at the East side of the bay ... *Voorsigtigheyt* and *Berckmeer* ...

20/9 Today we sent the soldiers and sailors of the *Ternaten* into the forest, to cut and bring out wood during their stay.

21/9 ... came to the roads ... the ship *Blommendaal* ... having had no deaths and bringing no sick ...

38 Georg Meister

(*See also item 68.*) *Translated from his* '*Orientalisch-Indisch ... Gärtner ...*', *published at Dresden in 1692. In 1675 from Thuringia as Gardener at the court of the Duke of Saxony. Thence in 1677 to Amsterdam, where he was taken on as a Cadet**. *Embarked in Ternate at Texel: the Admiral* set up* '*a little tub-garden aft on the Campagne* [*Poop**] *where the flagstaff stands, over the cabins of the Mates*', *and put him in charge of it. Sailed May 18, 1677* (*but Hague codex 4389 folio 69 as May 26*), *with five other ships. Northabout*. Two watches only. Messing. Lice. Mention of the* '*Dutch flag*' *as* '*red, blue and white*'. '*Abriholos*', *the usual thanksgiving and extra ration of wine. Equator. Sighted Cape Verde Islands.*

After about 14 days we reached the long-desired Caput bonae spei or Cape of Good Hope, the outermost corner of Africa. For about 100 miles* before this some hundreds of Land-gulls (the so-called Seelen-Verkauffers*) gave us assurance of its nearness....

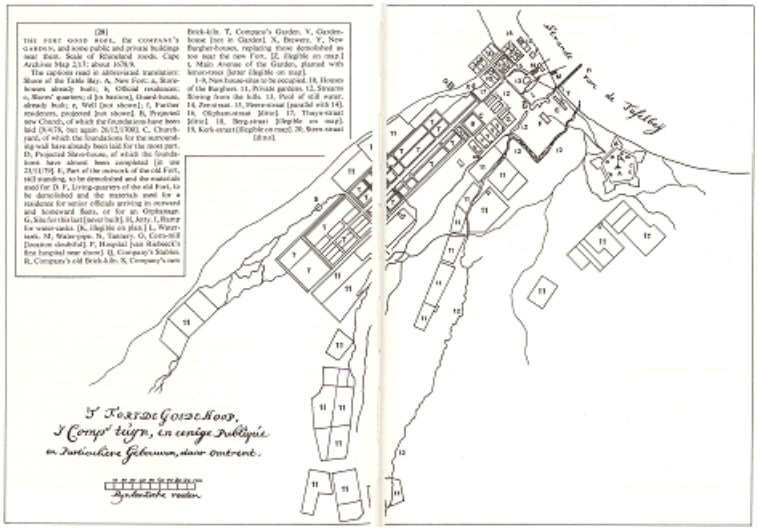
Also we met with an incalculable number of seadogs here, which swam in hundreds around our ship until we entered the harbour. At 3 p.m. on September 14, 1677 [DR 17/9] we dropped anchor, thanking the most gracious God that he had shielded us and brought us thus far. After this the Mates must lower the mainyard and topmasts because of the strong south-east wind, which always begins to blow exactly at noon, so that this fierce blusterer could do our ship no damage. We found here the ships of the Vice- and Rear-Admirals, and the others of our fleet at anchor in the roads when we arrived [*sic:* DR 19/9, 20/9], which had arrived safely the previous day by God's help, and undamaged. Then our sick, about 30 in number, were set ashore somewhat to refresh themselves. By the Admiral's wishes I went ashore with him, like an inquisitive man, where we were welcomed in state with the firing of the cannon and the thunder of the cannon-royal [‘Carthaunen’] from the Fort. During the 3 weeks that we lay here I looked all around the place, but especially visited the famous Garden, and as far as possible noted down the most remarkable things, which I will set out truly, as follows:

The Dutch were building this Fort*, which lies close to the seashore, for over twenty years, from 1668 to 1680 [*sic:* 1666-1676] when it was completed. It has 5 strong bastions made of excellent dressed stone, thick walls, and a good moat towards the Table Mountain on the landward side, so that with a garrison of 3 to 400 men it can boldly look any enemy in the face. Inside the fort there are no high buildings, as with us in Europe, since here all barracks, offices, the fine Church*, and even the dwellings of the Governor and all other officials have flat roofs like the palaces in Persia and Italy. On the outermost corner towards the roads and the open sea [Katzenellenbogen] there stands a large ship's-mast with a crow's-nest, and about it a topmast on which the great Sea-Flag of the Company is hoisted when ships come from the Fatherland or from the East Indies. The fort is well provided with excellent cannon, and towards the Water-Pass has many metal* cannon-royal [‘Carthaunen’], and also sufficient provisions and munitions. We leave this for the present, and pass to the great Garden* of the East India Company, to enjoy ourselves therein. This is rich in fruits and flowers, and lies on a fine flat between the Castle and the hills, between the Table Mountain and the Lion Hill. By eye-measurement (since I had no time or opportunity to measure it exactly) it is about 1000 roods [*sic:* read ‘yards’, cf. item 55] long and 300 broad, taking the rood as 12 feet. It is protected around with thick quickset hedges, beside which a wall a rood high and a moat half a rood wide were under construction while I was there, on the side of the so-called Devils Peak, which will in time be continued all around. Inside the Garden were many fine double laurel hedges a good pike's-length high and 2 to 3 ells thick, which are diligently kept to their shape year in, year out with shears or other sharp cutting-irons on long handles. As regards pleasure-pavilions, grottoes and ornamental water-devices, it can readily be supposed that the previous Governors were not particularly fond of such, although it may also well be that the necessary buildings such as the Castle, the offices and such-like, were considered more important. But I can say with truth that I have seen hardly any other place where God and Nature have granted finer and better con-

ditions than in this region; and although one may say what one will of the ornamental waters many miles long built at exceptional expense by the Kings of France at the famous Versailles, yet here the loveliest and most healthful water from the cloud-threatening and most renowned Table Mountain could with very low costs be led for about 3 to 400 paces and then watermains and fountains could be made as high as the highest towers. Nevertheless I saw nothing here but little canals led here and there along the main avenues. The squares were divided and bounded, in part with rosemary which is cut at the due season like our current-bushes, in part with hyssop and sage, which I thought an oddity in this so large and long garden. Besides these the most excellent and never-sufficientlypraised tree- and ground fruits are to be seen there, brought from the Indies, to which I myself (to tell it without boasting) much contributed when I was in Batavia with my master Andrea Cleyer, since he sent many to it. For example there is the tea-tree which I brought from Japan, grown only from seeds, which no traveller has found anywhere else in Africa: it well endures the climate and weather here, since the alternation of Summer and Winter is the same as in Japan, the geographers reckoning that Japan and the Cap bon Esperance lie at the same latitudes from their poles. This Garden also received the true camphor-tree from us, and the Guava, the *Cambuse grande*, the Banana, Pineapple, and many others such, which on my return journey I personally handed over to the Governor, as are listed by name in the specifications below [not in his book]. Of the fruits of their own country, there were in the aforesaid Garden all sorts of fine pears and apples, also a special sort of large chestnut-tree, large quinces, almonds, grapes, watermelons, and all sorts of root-crops in great abundance, which there is no need to list here.

As regards the country itself and the high African mountains, I will pass over these in silence, since they have been so fully described and shown in engravings in so many books of travels. I will however mention that the Castle overlooks the roadstead, and lies against three main hills, the Devil's Hill; the Table Mountain, so-called because on its top it is quite flat and level; and the Lion Hill, because it presents the shape of a lion towards the shore and to seafarers. The Dutch with great toil have brought up to the top of this Lion Hill some small field-pieces, 6-pounders, and indeed to its highest peak, together with a flagstaff (such as was mentioned at the Castle), and this so that when those on watch up there sight a ship at sea, they may fire so many rounds as there are ships in sight, and hoist the flag: if it is a Dutch ship, a Dutch flag, if however French or English or Danish the flags corresponding, so that those in the Castle may act accordingly, and if it is an enemy be prepared against it. Somewhat more will be told of the incomparably lovely rivers, plants and other things in our return journey, where there will be time and opportunity. Now we will describe the ‘spotless’ natives of the land, the Hottentots.

This outermost part of Africa, where these bestial men dwell, lies over against Asia Major, and is called the Cap de bon Esperance, for the reason that it was first discovered in the life and reign of King Emanuel of Portugal by that nation in the year A.D. 1498, according to Petrus du Valls' General Description of the World. These regions have also had other names, such as Des Tornements, the Promontory of Storms, and such like.



[28] THE FORT GOOD HOPE, the COMPANY's GARDEN, and some public and private buildings near them. Scale of Rhineland roods. Cape Archives Map 2/17: about 1678/9.
The captions read in abbreviated translation: Shore of the Table Bay. A, New Fort: a, Storehouses already built; b, Official residences; c, Slaves' quarters; d [in bastion], Guard-house, already built; e, Well [not shown]; f, Further residences, projected [not shown]. B, Projected new Church, of which the foundations have been laid [9/4/78, but again 26/12/1700]. C, Churchyard, of which the foundations for the surrounding wall have already been laid for the most part. D, Projected Slave-house, of which the foundations have almost been completed [in use 23/11/79]. E, Part of the outwork of the old Fort, still standing, to be demolished and the materials used for D. F, Living-quarters of the old Fort, to be demolished and the materials used for a residence for senior officials arriving in outward and homeward fleets, or for an Orphanage. G, Site for this last [never built]. H, Jetty. I, Ramp for water-casks. [K, illegible on plan.] L, Watertank. M, Water-pipe. N, Tannery. O, Corn-mill [location doubtful]. P, Hospital [van Riebeeck's first hospital near shore]. Q, Company's Stables. R, Company's old Brick-kiln. S, Company's new Brick-kiln. T, Company's Garden. V, Gardenhouse [not in Garden]. X, Brewery. Y, New Burgher-houses, replacing those demolished as too near the new Fort. [Z, illegible on map.] t, Main Avenue of the Garden, planted with lemon-trees [letter illegible on map].
1-9, New house-sites to be occupied. 10, Houses of the Burghers. 11, Private gardens. 12, Streams flowing from the hills. 13, Pool of still water. 14, Zee-straat. 15, Heere-straat [parallel with 14]. 16, Oliphant-straat [ditto]. 17, Thuyn-straat [ditto]. 18, Berg-straat [illegible on map]. 19, Kerk-straat [illegible on map]. 20, Steen-straat [ditto].

Others have called it the Lion of the Sea, others again the Head of Africa. It lies on 35 [*sic*] degrees, below the Tropic of Capricorn, with a healthy and temperate climate, enjoying alternately little Winter and more Summer. It is a country full of many terrible wildernesses, high rocks and mountains, and not less full of lions, elephants, leopards, rhinoceroses, and other terrible beasts. But since I do not propose to describe the country, already sufficiently depicted by other writers, but the natives of it, the Hottentots, we leave it there and make a beginning on them.

The wild Africans living in this outermost seacoast are called bestial or animal-like for two reasons: their bestial life, and their equally bestial deaths, as will be seen from the following description. [Most of what follows is taken from Schreyer, but the vividness of Meister's writing, and his accounts of personal experiences warrant its inclusion.]

The men are tall and strong, the women much shorter. Both are of a yellow-brown colour of skin, like the wandering Tartars or Gypsies. The hair of their heads is black, thin, short and curly.... They have thick protruding lips and wide, bent-in noses. The women are of finer form and well-made. These people, both men and women, come into the world with almost white skins, like the Europeans, but, since they much prefer a black colour to white, they make use of an entirely loveable and charming cosmetic. This consists of sheep's dung mixed with soot, and with it they smear themselves and their children thoroughly, by the fire or in the hot sun, and indeed so repeatedly that neither the body nor the limbs nor the hair is free from this sweet-smelling balsam. The clothing of both sexes, men and women, is like the rain-cloaks which the Germans wear, but instead of cloth they wear a raw and undressed sheepskin with the hair turned inwards, hanging from the shoulders. Similarly they cover with a small skin that which God in Nature has ordained to be kept hidden, and this they fasten with a thong around the body. With this clean and stately clothing they go around in Winter and Summer, for the most part barefoot. Guts are their ornaments, and their costly arm-bands and ear-rings are of iron, brass and ivory. The ear-rings are often a quarter-pound in weight, and stretch their ears outwards and downwards like those of a hunting-dog, often so widely and so long that they hang almost to their shoulders, which is held to be an exceptional ornament in the eyes of these poor and simple folk. In addition to these ear-rings and armbands (which better resemble parts of a Turkish slave-chain than anything else) the women wrap the guts of sheep around their arms and legs, with all the dung in them, so that they look more like elephant-legs than human legs because of their thickness. When now these lovely daughters of the land, thus beautifully ornamented, come towards you, and the guts are not yet dry, they stink horribly, worse than a hundred polecats-I mean those that live in the knackers' yards.

At times the Dutch slaughter fully 100 sheep and some cattle for the refreshing of their ships coming from the Fatherland (since, as we have said, they have set up a Government here and erected a strong Castle, ‘The Good Hope’, on the shore): then these Hottentots assemble in great numbers and make for the slaughterhouse, and take the guts of these slaughtered cattle which otherwise would be thrown away. Then they make a

little fire, and let them just get warm, and so devour them with such appetite as if they were the best cervelat-sausage from Italy, without removing the dung which is still in these tripes. When they are really hungry they eat the guts raw and uncooked, as also they do when the butcher or slaughterer throws them a piece of raw meat, as if to a dog: such they take, and lay it on a stone and beat it with another stone until somewhat soft, and then tear it and eat it, as a hungry wolf devours dead carrion in a severe Winter, as I myself saw in the year 1677 with my own eyes. As soon now as these delicate folk have well filled their hungry bellies, they bow most humbly, and give thanks in their language, and go off two by two in their leather cloaks like the merchants of the Exchange in Amsterdam or Hamburg in their silken ones, back to the seashore and their holes there. Otherwise their usual food is roots* of all kinds, which they dig up at certain seasons of the year and make into a side-dish, which the Dutch call Hottentot bread.

Just as no French modiste should come here to earn money from these bestial people, so also they give no work to carpenters and masons to build their houses, but like pregnant she-bears gather together all sorts of bushes and roots from the forest, and along the seashore below the hills make hollows like round bake-ovens for their nests, instead of houses, and such old bushes are their tapestries and paintings. In these they live with their whole families, great and small, male and female together; and when one passes by such cleanly dwellings such an unusual smell of ambergris and musk is perceived (as may well be supposed) from these tripe-eaters, that one must cover up one's mouth and nose.

Regarding their work and doings, it could almost be doubted whether the daily work and toil laid by God on our forefathers and on us after them ‘In the sweat of thy face thou shalt eat thy bread’ (Genesis I), can apply also to these bestial folk, since they live like the dumb beasts without care, from one day to the next. Their chief work is nothing more than to dig up and eat the roots* at certain seasons (as with us in Autumn the pigs eat the acorns). When they are satiated they lie down without a care, and cover themselves with their Spanish cloaks, I mean the sheepskins, under which they can pull in their body like a snail into its shell or an African tortoise under its carapace, and thus lie and sleep, as I have seen them; although they are much plagued by those many-footed Lusitanian beasties, the lice, of which they have an incredible number under their skin mantles, and therefore enjoy but little repose. The men use a very sharp flint to shave the hair of their beards, as the Jews are said to do in their circumcisings, with which they can smooth their chins as neatly as if they had the best razors. Such stone knives as used for shaving they use also on occasion for castrating young bulls, which they can do exceptionally well. One thing concerning these stupid folk is worthy of praise: that they know how to make fine lances from an old scrap of iron or an old ships' nail*, without hammer or tongs, to be used in their wars as shall be told. These they make thus: they take the said piece of iron, lay it on a stone (as hard as those black stones found near Stolpen in Saxony, used there by the gold-beaters and book-binders), and tirelessly beat it with another stone as if with a hammer, until the said ships' nail or old piece of iron takes the

shape of a lance [head]. Then they go to a rock, and sharpen it so neatly that many Europeans would think that it had been made by a regular German sword-smith. This I myself have often seen, and not without astonishment that such stupid folk could be thus skilled, and can make such beautiful lances without any tools, without fire, hammer, tongs, anvil or bellows.

As regards their speech, this is in no way whatever to be compared with any other language, but when they speak together of some serious matter, it sounds no otherwise than as the gobbling of angry turkeys. They click and smack with their tongues as French dancing-masters click with their castanets when teaching women to dance. Further, these bestial folk know nothing of letters, still less of reading and writing, so that no one of another nation can learn their speech, although in my time this was much endeavoured for the sake of trade.

It is also noteworthy that the men have a member surprisingly longer than that of Europeans, so that it more resembles the organ of a young bull than that of a man. So also the females are something exceptional in this respect, and by many are taken for hermaphrodites, because of a *supra membrum genitale* [see 'Apron*'], a hanging flap a quarter ell long, like the wattle of a turkey's beak. The reader must not take it amiss that I reveal such secrets of Nature, nor ask how I could examine them so closely, since this is contrary to polite usage: be it known, therefore, that these spotless mountain-nymphs are so shameless, that even in the presence of Europeans they pass their maidenly water, and are accustomed even thus to relieve themselves, not to mention that these bestial folk perform their marital duty like dogs in the street, although even dumb beasts are ashamed to couple thus, as the naturalists write of the elephant. Since also they are extreme lovers of the noble weed Nicotine or tobacco, these charming females will show an inquisitive and salacious amateur everything that he may ask, for a pipeful of tobacco.

Although the Hottentots or wild Africans who live inland have their greatest wealth in cattle and sheep, on the other hand those at the Cape (with whom alone we have dealt with until now) assemble like thieves and robbers on the seashore (like the Shore-swallows, birds of prey that fly to and fro in great flocks), and wander out through the great wildernesses, driving off whole herds of sheep and cattle from their nearest neighbours. When they come safely to the port they bring many hundred head to sell to the Dutch, bartering them for things of small value such as rolls of tobacco [false: the cattle were brought in by the tribes owning them]. This is carried out as follows: These bringers of oxen and sheep must sit down in the Castle in a circle, as when the Germans play 'Schuhes*'. Then an officer, or a junior accountant of the Trade-Office goes into the centre of the ring, and gives [? each] a piece of tobacco according to whether the cattle and sheep were many or few. With this they go off to their dwellings, as happily and with such a shout of joy as if they had received the richest booty of some tons* of gold. This then is the profit and excellent gains of these poor folk for the many kinds of great danger to which they have been exposed before they can bring these stolen beasts (beasts bringing beasts) through the great wildernesses. From this one might almost deduce that these

savages have some agreement with the Devil, since they can safely bring this cattle hither without any fear of harm from their enemies, the many terrible beasts such as lions, elephants, leopards, tigers, bears [*sic*], rhinoceroses and such like. On the contrary, a few years ago the Dutch sent out with great costs some men through these wastes to obtain information of the country and help forward these barterings, well provided with stores and arms; but because of the said beasts they must seek their way back to the Cape, without success and indeed only by compass-bearing, as I was told by one who himself had been with their vain expedition* [there were many such].

Regarding the Policy of these folk, they live like the dumb beasts from day to day, since they know nothing of God, His holy revealed Word, or any of His Laws, and far less are able to regulate or arrange their life by it. Among other customs, they have this - that those who have the most cattle and are thus the richest in their manner must be served by the others as if their serfs; yet this is to be understood only of those who live inland, and not of the hungry gut-gobblers of the seashore at the Cape. Also since war, enmity, hate and envy are the first children of the Devil, as is to be seen from Cain's brother-killing in the Bible, he has also not forgotten to sow these among this folk. As regards their weapons, these are arranged according to their intelligence, so that for the common soldiers they are sticks and stones, but for the officers the aforesaid lances, as also bows* and arrows. As to the former, sticks and stones, the Hottentots are so skilled with these that they can hit a nail at almost a hundred paces, or even more. For their defence they always carry sticks* with them, and with these they parry, turn aside, or hit away whatever is thrown at them, with unequalled skill and speed, just as a perfect fencer parries the thrusts. Similarly they also throw very exactly with the lances and shoot with the bows and arrows, since they exercise themselves from youth therein.... It is also worthy of note that these men run as fast as an African horse [? Quagga], so that no European, however good a runner, could scape from their clutches thus, if it came to that. Their war-assembly, consisting of certain bands or hordes, is made with no order, discipline or array: nevertheless those chosen to be their leaders or heads must first have proved themselves by one or other test of unusual bravery in their fashion. Although it is true that in their encounters no hundreds are left on the field, let alone thousands as (alas!) in our wars, yet it is seen how these heroes attack each other with their stones and sticks, until they force their enemy to flee or bring him under their feet.

These miserable folk remain until now in the darkness of heathen atheism, since they neither believe in nor fear a God in Heaven or a Devil in Hell, and far less hope for another life after this one; but they revere certain created things, such as the moon when it is full, which they worship as a god, and in this manner: They come together in a green field by hundreds or often more, men and women, towards evening when the moon rises. Then they take each other by the hands, and now stand in a row, now make a closed circle, and sing and shriek bravely, and dance until daybreak, with such a terrible noise that the nearest hills give back an awful echo in the silent night. When now the lions or other beasts prophesy a change of weather or a south-east storm by their frightful howling,

and at the same time these pleasing nightingales add their tenor and bass, the hellish noise is to be compared with nothing else but itself, since it is a union of all that is horrible.

Further, as regards their propagation, one of our folk tried to convince me that a proper Hottentot never takes to bed more than one wife, and in token of a chaste fidelity and permanent memory in love the man lets a joint of a finger* of his left hand be cut away, but the woman of her right hand.... It was also told me that when a man or woman is caught with another woman or man, the adulterer or adultress is subject to the death-penalty, by stoning before all the folk as in the Law of Moses. But since I heard much in my time of such doings and of their courtesies with other women and men, but saw none of either stoned, I cannot confirm this. This I freely admit to have seen, how more than one family dwelt all together in a hollow or cave like swine in a pigsty, young and old, male and female; and since their whole life is bestial their is no doubt that herein also they lay no bridle or barrier of chastity to their affections. And thus far briefly of their life.

Be it far from me that, although I call these wild Africans bestial, I should either damn them to Hell or promise them Heaven. God has them in His Judgment, to which they may rightly be left. Yet there is to some extent a difference between the Turks, Jews, West- and East-Indians and these Hottentots, in that those others have yet a spark of knowledge of God and of His Will, and are therefore as far from these savages as is the Sun from the Moon. What the Turks and the Jews believe is sufficiently known to everyone who has even a little grounding in the Christian religion: the West- and East-Indians also believe that there is a God, Creator of all things; and, further, they regard Him as the highest Goodness when they say that He is by nature a good and gentle being, welldoing beyond measure and never harming any; that on the contrary the Devil is entirely evil, and in order that he shall do no harm to them, their children, or their crops, they must appease him with offerings and the like.... [Lengthy pious passage omitted.]

Sailed '*after three weeks*' (*DR 30/9*). *Batavia*, *where he was employed as gardener*, *and later as steward* (*majordomo*) *to Cleyer*, *and with him made two voyages to Japan*.

Background - continued

30/9/1677 ... gave the ships *Ternaten*, *Blommendaal* and *Krygsman* their despatch for Batavia ... sailed in the afternoon ...

1/10 ... *Voorsigtigheyt*, *Berckmeer* and *Oostenburch* ready to sail [adverse winds, sailed 2/10]

[1678]
March Anglo-Dutch defensive alliance. August 10 Treaty of Nymegen, peace between France and Holland. September 17 peace between France and Spain. Continuation of the war between Denmark and Sweden.
Background - from official documents in the archives

24/3 ... five messengers came from the Obiquas ... sent by their Captain to beg that they might henceforth live in peace and friendship with us ...

9/4 [First stone of permanent Church laid; but letter from Holland 20/6/80 ordered that its building 'must wait'. See 28/12/1700]

6/5 ... discovered that the four Hottentots [Souquas: apparently four of the six brought in by Cruse 'charged with ... the thefts ... committed against the inhabitants'] confined in the prison had broken a hole through the wall, built of stone and five feet thick, with nothing but their hands ...

18/5 Letter to Holland ... we are now convinced that there is no such place as Saint Helena Nova to be found anywhere in the world ...

29/6 It pleased Almighty God to bring over to heavenly bliss this morning the Hon. Governor Johan Bax ... as provisional Administrator ... the Hon. Hendrik Crudop, Merchant* and Secunde* ...

10/11 ... arrived the *Tommers Wall* ... news of the marriage of H.R.H. the Prince of Orange with the daughter of the Duke of Yorck ...

[1679]
February 5 peace between France and the Empire. September 2 between Denmark and Sweden.
Background

4/3 ... arrived ... a large 'spiegelschip*' ... *Ceijlon*, sailed in company with the *Briel* ... on January 10 last from the bay of Gale ... in charge of the Hon. Captain Gerrit van der Donc ...

5/3 ... the *Briel* ... reached the roads and anchored ...

15/3 ... came the flute* the *Juffer Cornelia* ... sailed September 17 last year from Texel, bringing the most welcome news of peace between the French King and our State ...

26/3 ... arrived the *Blauwe Hulk* ... sent by the High Command [Batavia] with rice for this station ...

12/4 ... arrived *Nieuw Middelburg* ... sailed from Texel on December 19 last year with the ships *Asia* and *Hollandschen Thuijn* ...

39 Nicolaus de Graaff

(*See also items 22*, *28*, *36*, *49*, *62*.) *He made no stay in Ceylon*, *merely calling at Colombo and Galle*.

On the 9th of January 1679, being ready to sail [still in *Briel*], and our crew mustered, we sailed from the Bay of *Punto Gale*, but when without must drop anchor again until the next day, when our crew was again inspected and the ship closely searched, to see

whether any had stowed away. After this we weighed anchor towards evening with a salute of some guns, and set sail with pleasant weather and a northerly wind, steering for the Equator.

Our companion ship, *Ceilon* of the *Amsterdam Chamber**, wore the flag* at the maintop, Captain *Verdonk*, lately Administrator of *Negombo*, being in charge of the two ships *Ceilon* and the *Briel*. During the whole voyage to the *Cape de Bone Esperance* we had continual fair weather, and for most of the time ran before the wind, making good runs up to the 5th of March [DR] when we arrived safely at the *Cape*, finding there in the Bay our companion the ship *Ceilon*, she having arrived a day or two before us [DR 4/3].

Ten days later there also arrived at the *Cape* the little flute* the [*Juffer*] *Cornelia* [DR 15/3] and the ship *Blauwe Hulk*, laden with rice and other goods from *Batavia* for the *Cape* [DR 26/3].

We stayed at the *Cape* for seven weeks awaiting the ships from *Batavia*, to go with them to the Fatherland under the command of an Admiral*; or the ships from the Fatherland, whichever should turn up first, since we were unsure of the conditions in the Fatherland. Meanwhile our crew went ashore daily to refresh and amuse themselves: some set out with horse and cart to visit the gardens and vineyards and the dwellings of the farmers; others were busy shooting or fishing; but I, with my Assistant-Surgeon *Gerrit van Laar* of *Hoorn* and *Kersten Erasmus* of *Tonderen*, wished to see the high and renowned Table Mountain, having already tried twice to climb it but having been compelled to return half-way without success, partly because of the toilsome and impassable ascent, partly because it was for the most part covered with clouds. On the 19th of March we set out between 7 and 8 in the morning, the air being clear and pleasant, since not only the Table Mountain but also the Lion Hill and other hills around were fully and clearly visible. From the Fort we walked uphill by many difficult paths and gullies, climbing through the hills, rocks and bush. We found also a deep valley in which there stood much bush and various tall and thick trees, whose roots were washed and watered by the fresh water running down from the hill. There we met with a great [Platteklip] gorge, at its start about a stone-throw wide, but decreasing above to 6 or 7 feet, being from the bottom to the top very steep, grown with coarse grass and marram, which we had to take hold of in climbing and so clamber up with hands and feet. On both sides were incredibly high cliffs and rocks, which seemed to reach the clouds. Passing through this gorge we came to a valley, and must then ascend another difficult but short cleft before reaching the flat top of the Table Mountain.

We arrived there between 1 and 2 of the afternoon, and having strolled around there together for a time, my two companions wished that we should go down, since the evening was approaching, and we were without arms, and had nothing to eat but a piece of dry bread that we had in our bag; and also since otherwise we should be compelled to pass the night on this high and dangerous hill as if in a desert, not without danger of being devoured by the lions, bears [*sic*], tigers and other wild beasts, of which many dwell in these valleys and caves. It happened that seven men of the ship *Pijlzwaard** were

inquisitive enough to climb the Table Mountain: of these four made their way up by the usual route through the gorge, three arriving at the top and one remaining behind on the way. The other three went by the valley between the Table Mountain and the Devil's Hill [Saddle] and were never seen again, and were undoubtedly devoured by the wild beasts, one being from *Harlinge*, one from *Hoorn*, and the third an Easterner*: since the lions and tigers are so bold there, that they dare not only to drag a sheep from the flock and devour it, but even take the shepherds and the sheepdogs, or at times by night the cattle from the stalls and farmhouses. My companions put forward also the objection, that bad weather might come, and the hill be covered with clouds and storms, so that we would not be able to find the paths nor descend. But all their arguments could not persuade me to go down, since I was fully resolved to remain there, whether alone or with the two others, during the coming night and most of the next day, so as to examine everything on all sides and take note of it.

As they would not stay, they set off downwards between 4 and 5 o'clock, and according to their report arrived at the houses late in the evening. Being thus alone I strolled in solitude on the flat top of the Table Mountain until 8 in the evening, the moon and stars shining very brightly, and then lay down to rest in some scrub between the rocks; but little sleep could I get, especially when I thought of the height of the hill, and the dangerous solitude of the same, where dwelt so many man-eating lions and evil tigers, and where, should anything happen to me, I could be heard by no one, and far less helped. But GOD shielded and protected me, not only that night but also in many other dangers. I heard no roar or howl of any wild beast, nor any noise but from some small frogs dwelling in the scrub and marshes here, who sang all night in their fashion. Sometimes also I heard some small birds sing; also I saw five roebucks, as large as an ordinary dog, chestnutbrown in colour and fur, short-eared, with a long sharp snout and jet-brown eyes. Also I found under the rocks two nests of Dassen or Steenbokjes, as if hollowed out, much of their dung lying around these nests.

As to the upper-flat of the Table Mountain, the same is for the most part flat, but in places hilly, with flat and shallow valleys, in which grow bush, grass, and here and there some low trees.

Arriving on the flat one finds a long and wide area, seeming as if floored with hard rocks and flat stones, between which are hollows, and in many other holes and waterworn rocks there is very lovely fresh water, so that there is no lack of drink.

About half an hour's walk from the place where one comes up, eastwards, there is a shallow valley, where there are many wonderful rocks looking as if piled up by hand, this valley being grown with scrub and marram.

Passing over this one comes to a ravine [Saddle] which divides the Table Mountain from the Devil's Hill. This is dangerously deep, with many cliffs and incredible clefts, holes and caves, to look at which affrightened me.

Standing on the edge of the Table Mountain one can see over the other hills that lie around, which look small from here though they are in reality high.

The large ships at anchor in the Table Bay look no larger than herring boats. I could see the longboats* and shallops* rowing to and fro between the ships and the land, looking like black spots on the water.

From the east side I went along another deep valley breast-high in marram and scrub, to the west side of the hill, and found it almost the same, with hills and scrub and full of stones. After that I made my way to the north side, again crossing the hill, and found about in the centre of the same some shallow and marshy water- and mud-pools, like the water-pools on the flatland below. The water was still and very clear, but when I moved it, it became turbid and thick. However closely I examined the marshes and pools I found no fish, as some have tried to deceive us, but many small grey frogs which as I have said amused me all night with their song. These pits and water-holes are not above a foot or a foot and a half deep. Around the marshes I found here and there some water-channels and clefts in the rocks, through which the water ran slowly westwards. From there I walked to the north-west end of the Mountain, finding it of the same nature. Here also are boulders, just like grave-stones, and between them very lovely and clear water, as also in other hollowed stones.

The whole Mountain has on all sides many projections and gullies, so that one needs fully 24 hours to walk over and inspect the top of the Table Mountain.

Having walked on the same alone for about 24 hours, I came next day in the afternoon to the gorge by which we came up, and descended the same, being compelled at times to hold on to the marram and long grass to avoid falling. Having passed the large cleft, the descent became somewhat more gradual, and I found in a dip in the ground a large and long smooth stone [the Platteklip], over which a water-course ran like a little rivulet; and having come to the foot of the Mountain, I came towards evening to my two companions, and told them my adventures.

After resting somewhat I measured with some geometric instruments the exact height of this, and also of the other hills near by, and found the Table Mountain to be 298 Rhineland roods above sealevel, or 3578 feet. The top of the Devil's Hill is 3298 feet above sealevel and the Lion Hill is 2172 feet high.

We also took cross-bearings of the whole Table Bay, being busy with this work until the 12th of April [DR], when the ship *Nieuw Middelburg* arrived in the Bay of the *Cape de Bone Esperance* from the Fatherland [*sic:* news DR 15/3], bringing news of a complete and long-wished-for peace between the *King of France* and the *States-General of the United Netherlands* and their allies. In rejoicing at this news we let fly the flags and pennants, and fired the cannon until the echoes resounded in the hills.

We also now received orders from the *Governor* to make our two ships ready to sail for the *Fatherland*, since the ships from *Batavia* still did not appear.

Having provided ourselves with stores and fresh water, we sailed from the *Cape de Bone Esperance* on the 19th of April [DR] after some salutes, steering for the island of *Saint Helena*....

Background - continued

19/4/1679 ... the return-ships from Ceylon ... set sail [as 4/3]

28/4 ... arrived ... the *Hollantschen Thuijn*, sailed with the ships *Asia* and *Nieuw Middelburg* from Texel on December 19 last year ... having been at the island Saint Jago to refresh ... of the 290 heads brought out 14 had died, but bringing no sick at all ...

14/5 ... five shots from the Lion's Head ... to advise us of the arrival of that number of ships ... *Africa*, *Hendric Mourits*, *Silverstein*, *Jonas*, *Juffer Maria* ... from Batavia ...

22/5 ... yesterday arrived the French ship ... *Le Soleil d'Orient* ... for Suratte ...

40 Johann Wilhelm Vogel

(*See also item 67.*) *Translated from his 'Ost-Indianische Reise-Beschreibung ...', Altenburg 1716: the first edition, 'Diarium ...', Frankfurt and Gotha 1690, is much less complete. In 1678 he went from Ernsterode to Rotterdam, the journey given in detail. There taken on by the Dutch East-India Company as Assayer, at 20 guilders per month, plus 3 Rxd. ration-money and 40 lb. of rice, relatively high pay. Embarked in* Holländische Thuyn *at Texel, sailing with two other merchantmen and a frigate* on 'December 9', but December 19 by Hague codex 4389 folio 70: Vogel generally uses Old Style* dates, as here. Channel. Canaries. Abrolhos. He gives some twelve pages of valuable details of life aboard the Dutch East-Indiamen of the period.*

On the 18th [April 1679; but DR 28/4] we sighted the long-desired and wished-for promontory Cabo buon Esperanza, and at once water was issued in unlimited quantities, and we were given three meals a day. We made for it, passed to the right of the Robben Island, and anchored in the Table Bay or harbour under the fortress or Castle called 'Good Hope', with a W.N.W. wind, in 6 fathoms, sandy bottom....

On the said Robben Island there are very many birds called Pingvins, almost as large as geese, as also a great quantity of rabbits, and in the sea many seals or sea-dogs. The said Pingvins have quite short wings and cannot fly, so that they can easily be taken by the hands though care must be taken lest they wound one with their very sharp beaks. Their skin is so tough and hard that one can hardly cut through it with a good cutlass. They are no use for food since they are very oily, but the feathers are as good as swans' feathers, and well to be used in mattresses.

The said Cabo buon Esperanza is the outermost corner [*sic*] of the southern part of Africa: it lies on 34 degrees south of the Equator, and extends for some hundred miles* along the sea. Some believe that it is a continent, of some thousand miles in extent. It has very large and high hills which can be seen from far out at sea. Among them the

principal ones are the Lion, Table and Devil's Hills, which three close in the Fort and the Burghers' houses near it, in one site. The first two may have their names because the one has the form of a lion, the other of a table.

The Castle or Fort* called ‘The Good Hope’ lies close under the Devil's Hill: it has five bastions, and always a garrison* of 4 to 500 European soldiers. The buildings in it are flat on top, and the platforms on these are provided with iron railings, and here at times the Governor eats, and entertains officers from abroad and Company's Servants coming with the ships. Otherwise the principal use of these terraces is that on hot days one can get fresh air on them.

Near the Castle towards the Lion Hill the European burgher-settlers have built their houses of brick in the Dutch style, to the number of about 70 or 80 [see Town*]. Also on the flat below the Table Mountain and the Lion Hill is the Company's lovely and remarkable Pleasure- and Vegetable Garden*, which is 1400 paces long and 220 to 230 paces broad [say 33 morgen*]. In this garden are to be found all European and Indian fruits, and the beds and sections are neatly edged with rosemary, growing almost to the height of a man. In the avenues and beside them and also elsewhere citron, pomegranate, orange and other rare Indian trees are to be seen in fine arrangement, as also European apple, pear, peach, quince and other trees, which at all seasons richly yield their fruits. In addition there is no lack of melons, water-lemons, cabbages, sweet potatoes, salads and other kitchen-herbs, of which a good quantity is given to all Dutch ships when they arrive, for the refreshing of the crews. In this Garden are also the most lovely herbs and flowers to be found in all Africa. Towards midday or the South such herbs and flowers from Asia are to be seen, towards midnight or the North such plants from America. In addition a good quantity of vines is to be seen, and the white grapes are considered the best, and even better than those in France. In a word, the Garden is a brief epitome of all the finest plants, flower herbs, and fruit-trees to be found in Europe, Asia, Africa and America.

The land of the Cabo buon Esperanza lies in such a temperate climate that it is never really cold there, and far less is anything known of snow or frost: the S. and S.E. winds alone cause unfriendly and showery weather. The Summer begins in November and ends in January, the Autumn begins in February and ends in April, Winter arrives in May and bids farewell in July, and the lovely Spring appears in August and is followed after the end of October by Summer. And since the land is blessed by God with such a healthy and temperate climate, more and more Europeans settle there, and cultivate the soil more and more, so that now the loveliest farm-fields and pastures are to be found there, and a great quantity of wheat is produced each year, as also a tasty wine, closely resembling French wine. Here also much attention is paid to cattle- and sheep-breeding by the farmers living some miles* inland, but especially by the real inhabitants of the country, the Hottentots, and each year a great number of cattle and sheep is produced, so that there is no lack of these in this land, nor of milk and butter.

Besides this attention is also paid to feathered fowl, such as hens, geese, ducks, and

the like, so that these also are available here in great quantity.

The oxen in general have high humped* backs, and many have no horns. The sheep are considerably larger than those in Europe, and most of them have hair like goats instead of wool. Their tails are thick and fat, and many of them are as heavy as the thigh of a wether. The cattle and sheep are driven out by the farmers early each morning to graze, but in the evenings they are driven back into the stalls (which are set around with palisades, but open above and without roofs) to prevent them from being devoured by the wild beasts.

The grass in general grows so high that it comes up to one's knees, and, when it is too old and tough to be any more eaten by the beasts, it is set on fire by the inhabitants, so that at times it is to be seen burning for several miles. But in order that the fire may go no further than the inhabitants wish, they dig out a trench, at which the fire decreases and dies out when it reaches it, for lack of more near-by grass to feed it. The ashes of such burnt grass manure the land where the fire was, and make it so fertile that, when light rains fall, in a short time new or young grass grows up, into which the animals are driven to graze; and thus in one region after another where the grass has become too old, it is thus renewed by the operation of burning it. Inland the best game is found, such as deer, wild boars, roebuck, steinbok, hares, rabbits and suchlike. There is also no lack of peacocks, pheasants, partridges and other feathered game, and certain hunters* are appointed to provide the Governor yearly and weekly with such game, and who also sell it to the European farmers, although it is not forbidden to these to shoot it [on their own lands for their own use].

At times whole flocks of cranes are to be seen in the fields, which however are very difficult to shoot, since they keep a keen watch, and fly off as soon as they see Europeans with firearms. In the deserts and the forests are many dangerous beasts, both of prey and others, such as lions, elephants, tigers, rhinoceroses or ‘nose-horners’, wolves, wild dogs, as also elands and apes, and in addition many snakes; and at times some of them are shot and taken, the skins of lions and tigers, as also of leopards and snakes being dried and stuffed, and hung up in the entrance to or within the Castle, and shown to newly-arrived strangers [see Museum*].

Some of the Europeans living at the Cabo buon Esperanza keep ostriches, the young of which they rear, letting old and young walk about the streets. This bird has a wonderful nature, in that if iron or steel is thrown before it, it swallows it; and also digests it, since anyone who goes near them can hear how in the body or belly there is a boiling as if in a strongly-heated pot, so that there must be a terrible heat or fire therein. If anyone wishes to annoy this bird, especially an old one, it defends itself with its feet, kicking out behind it like a horse, and this with such strength that it can readily knock down and lay out anyone who is not careful.

About 12 or 14 Dutch miles* inland from the Cabo buon Esperanza there is a very pleasant and fruitful region, quite flat and level, and in compass almost 16 miles. Here Governor von der Stell, a man of great experience in administration, has set and founded

[*sic:* DR 3/11 named only, and this after Vogel had left] a village called Stellenbusch, with many sheep- and cattle-farms belonging to the East-India Company; and this stretch of land is not so much exposed to the storms and squalls as are the regions on and near the seashore.

If now anyone wishes to settle here, or elsewhere in the country but lacks the means ['Verlag'], the Governor gives him a house and as much land as he asks for, with the right to bequeath it ['erblich']; and so that he may properly start his husbandry, and can prepare and sow his fields, he is given oxen, cows, sheep, pigs, a waggon, a plough, seed-corn and farm implements, all at a definite taxed valuation, which afterwards he pays in reasonable instalments, according to their value, to the East-India Company, or rather to their office at the Cabo buon Esperanza [see Freemen*].

For the first three years such a newly-established farmer is free of all taxes and duties, but after the expiration of this period he must surrender the tenth part of all the corn grown. After the harvest, when the corn has been reaped and brought into the barns and threshed, twenty to thirty farmers or inhabitants in the region of Stellenbusch form a waggon-convoy ['Gespannschaft']. Each loads as much corn as he can conveniently transport, and they set out towards evening from the said Stellenbusch; and in the morning (since they travel all night) they arrive in good time at Cabo buon Esperanza. There they go to the Governor, and each lays before him a sample of his corn, whereupon he strikes a bargain and takes over the corn, and, after deduction of the tithe due to the East-India Company, pays for the rest in cash. This is then stored up in the granary and provision-house, and later sent by ship to Batavia and elsewhere.

The said Governor Herr von der Stell, diligent to examine everything closely and carefully, started an inland expedition* in the year 1685 [Vogel anticipates by six years] at the end of May [August], to obtain as much information as might be possible of the lands inland from Cabo buon Esperanza, and at the same time to see if any gold or silver mines could be discovered in these. For this purpose the Mine-Overseer Werlinhoff and 4 miners were ordered to prepare themselves and accompany the expedition: they were at the said Cabo at that time and had begun to prospect for metal and ores at the Steenberge, but he later, in 1686 [DR 8/6/86] arrived on the west coast of Sumatra (as will be told later) and there told me of this journey. Their departure from the said Cabo buon Esperanza was at the end of May [*sic:* August] 1685, that is to say in the middle of the Winter, so that there should be no lack of water during the journey. Governor von der Stell in person led during all the expedition, and had with him, besides the aforesaid Mine-Overseer and miners, also 54 well-armed soldiers including 2 trumpeters and some musicians who could play on flageolets and viols, as also some Hottentots to serve as interpreters during the journey. In addition there were 40 waggons, 150 oxen, 300 sheep and 28 horses, together with 2 small cannon and their ammunition, and a shallop* loaded on a waggon and flying the Prince's Flag*. This was for use in passing the streams or rivers to be met with, the sheep for food on the way, the waggons for the transport of the provisions taken, the baggage and other necessary items, these waggons being drawn

by yokes of oxen and horses.

In this manner the journey was now set forward, over hill and dale, through hedges and bush, now over sandy land, now over wide heaths, sometimes through waste valleys in which they were in great danger from wild and huge beasts, and then again through pleasant and agreeable lands and fields filled with the most beautiful herbs, during the whole journey keeping the sea 10 to 12 miles* to the west of them. Where they halted for the night they set very strong and diligent watches, and lit many fires all around the camp. Then, after they had as aforesaid had marched now over rough, now over pleasant lands and regions, in which they met eight different African tribes, and from each the Governor had taken a few men along with him with the good consent of the people, they reached a hill, or better said a region which rose little by little like a hill and was very dry and barren. To climb over this took them 40 days [cf. in item 55], and the waggons must be taken to pieces and loaded on the oxen and horses, since it was impossible to use them on this hill.

It is easy to imagine how difficult must have been the passage over this barren region, where moreover no grass or bushes were to be found, everything looking as if burned; and no water, or very little, so that all the party suffered great privation. However, having got over the said hill and being come to the far side of it, and the dismantled waggons being again put together, they now met with a lovely and fruitful land full of all sorts of plants and animals, where whole troops of Africans came to meet them. At their coming, by orders of the Governor the 2 trumpeters and the flageolet-players must let their instruments be sounded, together with the other musicians who were with the company, as was said; and this so pleased the Africans that they all began to hop and leap, showing thereby all good will to the newly-arrived travellers. Indeed these Africans [Namaquas] were the most civilised and most intelligent of all those met with in all the journey.

The aforesaid Herr Governor would willingly have continued the journey further, but since a considerable time had passed, in which they had discovered 250 miles* of territory and advanced as far as the 25th degree [*sic*, 29½] of southern latitude, he must consider whether, if they marched further, the return-journey might not be too difficult, and also too dangerous for lack of water and other provisions. He therefore resolved to return to Cabo buon Esperanza, and tried to hasten this as much as possible. He took along a few of these Africans, as he had done previously with the other eight tribes, with agreement of their folk, intending that these and the others should be instructed in the Dutch language, to make use of them as interpreters in any further inland expedition. With them and the rest of his followers he arrived safe and sound back at the Cabo buon Esperanza, after the lapse of 5 months and having endured great discomfort. And it is worthy of note, that various streams which previously were so deep that they could not be passed without the help of the shallop*, were now on the return-journey entirely dried up, so that they were crossed dry-shod. Also that in this return-journey they saw far fewer wild beasts than previously in the outwards march, since these had now retired towards Cabo buon Esperanza because of the lack of water. As also that they found no

lodes of gold or silver, and met with no single mineral-deposit [‘Berg-geschick’: the copper was obviously kept a secret]: far less did they find the region of the River or Stream Vigita* magna, which according to the legends carries much gold with it. Thus far what was related by the aforesaid Mine-Overseer and the miners.

[Tavernier quoted for gold in Abyssinia. Gold from the rivers of Monomotapa brought to Sofala and Cairo.]

But I consider that something more must be told regarding the Table and Lion Hills. As concerns the former, the Table Mountain, this touches the Lion Hill to the South: it is very high and, as already mentioned, is shaped above like a table. At its foot there flows a little streamlet of clear water, which takes its course through low bush growing beside it to the Company's Garden, and thence into the sea, where it provides the ships with fresh water.

I was anxious to climb this so widely described hill, and see for myself how its highest summit was composed; but I must let pass this curiosity and desire, since during my stay here the weather was stormy every day, cloudy and mixed with rain, in which such sightseeing was impossible. I must therefore be satisfied with what was told me by a reliable person travelling in our ship, who had already twice made the East-Indian voyage, and during his second homeward passage had been on the top of the hill with another of his companions. They set out at daybreak, and at the foot of the hill (which here projects as a large corner) had passed through some bush; and then came into a valley, or better said a gorge [Platteklip Gorge], with many sharp rocks and overhanging cliffs which looked as if they would fall down at any moment. They clambered onwards over many of them, holding fast by their hands to them and to some bushes growing on them. After they had passed these they arrived at a rock, past which rushed a rapid stream: this rock was very narrow on top, so that they crept over it on hands and feet, with much toil and not without danger. After this they came with great difficulty into a passage or path, which was at the most 4 feet wide. On the left of this one looked down from the high rocks into a terrifyingly deep abyss, but on the right side the rocks stood up vertically and seemed to reach the sky with their tops. At last they came to the summit or flat of the hill, at 1 or 2 of the afternoon by their reckoning. What seemed the most wonderful thing in this dangerous clambering up the hill, was that none of the rocks fell down while they were crossing them, although they seemed to hang entirely free in the air without any support. The hill was quite flat and level on top, as if paved. There they took their midday meal of a piece of biscuit and a little arrack or brandy, and quenched their thirst with a drink of the water which they found and gathered in the crevices of the hill. After this midday meal they wandered around on the hill and looked at the lovely landscape. On this hilltop they found the finest grass and the most lovely flowers, and judged by all appearances that the winds were not so strong on the heights as in the valleys. In brief, the east, south and north sides of the hill filled them with great pleasure; but on the contrary the west side was horrible when one looked down from it towards the sea. The Castle or Fortress ‘The Good Hope’ at the Cabo buon Esperanza and the houses standing near it looked,

from this great height, like only the smallest sentry-boxes, and the large ships lying in the bay like little canoes [‘Canoën’], vessels in which there is barely room for one person.

After they had sufficiently looked around, and when it seemed to them time to return, they left their noonday table, and clambered down the hill again, with the same toil and danger as when climbing up; and late that night came, with hungry stomachs, tired legs, and torn stockings, to a farm-house where they took shelter, revived themselves with fresh milk and butter, which was then for them the most delightful of all food, and there rested, making for their ships again the next day. This is what the afore-mentioned person told me of the Table Mountain and of its nature.

Next follows the Lion Hill. This looks like a lion, and stretches its tail to the west, its head to the east [NW - SE]. On this head one man keeps watch, and when any Dutch or other ships are sighted at sea, as a signal hoists a Prince's Flag*, which is some 30 ells long and about 14 ells broad (although from below it looks only like a large napkin or small table-cloth) on a strong and high mast set up here for this, and at the same time fires a shot from a small iron cannon there. This flag serves also as a signal to the ships arriving, to enter and run in more readily into the Table Bay. [The 1690 edition adds here a mention of ‘many slaves, mostly Caffers from Angola and Madagascar’.]

I think it will not now be amiss if some mention is also made of the real inhabitants of the land, namely the Hottentots. These are a very uncivilised and rough folk. Men and women go entirely naked, having in place of clothing only a sheep-, seal-, or ox-skin, with the rough side inwards, covering their upper body; but also before their privities they hang a piece of undressed bush-cat or other skin, the women indeed a somewhat larger piece than the men. Over this the women also cover their posteriors with a wide piece of the same skin, made fast with two thongs. The men have a testicle* cut away in youth from their privities, and this because in their opinion they will thus be more skilful runners - and indeed they are so practised in this that a well-mounted rider finds it hard enough to overtake a Hottentot. When one of their cattle or sheep runs off, they are after it at once, and can quickly overtake it and grasp it by the horns or the hind feet, so that it must stand still as they wish. At times they go off inland to the province of Monomotapa* and to the Sardinie-Bay, and rob their neighbours there of oxen, cows and sheep [false], which afterwards they barter to the Dutch at a low price. 80 and more years ago, when the Dutch had not yet a firm hold at the Cabo buon Esperanza, and Cornelis Houtman, and later the Admiral Cornelis Matelieff first came there [*sic:* Houtman never came ‘there’] with their ships they could get 6 sheep for a bar of iron about 30 pounds in weight, or two fat oxen and three sheep for another bar broken into five parts, weighing some 70 pounds in all, or a sheep for a knife or the hoop of a cask. But now they are somewhat smarter in their trading, and do not give the beasts for so low a price; yet a fine sheep, if I reckon up the value of the goods given them such as iron, brass rings, tobacco and the like, does not cost more than half a dollar. They are great lovers of tobacco, and will work all day for the Europeans for a small piece of it. They know nothing of sowing, planting, or fish-catching, but for the most part make do with roots* and

a sort of onion, which they find in the waste lands and dig up. When they are given cooked food they gulp it down like hungry wolves. The intestines and guts of beasts thrown away by the Europeans are delicacies for them, only pressing out the dung and dirt a little, and then devouring them, whether fresh or half-rotten. For the rest, they live without cares, and consider the Europeans as slaves, in that they cultivate the land and live in forts and houses. The huts in which they live are made by them of reeds or straw, and are in shape like bake-ovens. Into these they creep through a low door, and sleep fully 10, 12 and more in one such hut. Around these huts they light fires by night, to be safe from the wild beasts, and similarly they have a hollow in the centre of the hut, in which they light a fire and crouch around it. When they have eaten up all the provender for themselves and their cattle at one place, they go off in a troop until they find another spot where there is fresh food for them and their beasts. And of such sort are only a few Hottentots to be found at the Cabo buon Esperanza, since when the ships sail they go off inland to their beasts. They have among them certain 'Captains', as they say, or Chiefs, who also perform the office of executioners and beat evildoers to death with sticks.

When they speak a word they always clack with the mouth, as when one snaps the fingers and thumb, and their speech is hard to understand; yet some few are to be found among the Europeans who have lived there for long, and have to do with them daily, who can manage to talk with them and can understand them. Of God and of His Knowledge they know little or nothing; yet it may be detected, that they have some veneration for the moon, since when this is new they come together and shriek and rave all night, and dance in a circle, in such dancing clapping their hands. At times also they have been found in dark and gloomy caves, where with hand-clapping they murmur something which none of the Europeans understand or know what it may be. And with this they have acted strangely, turning their eyes to heaven, and with a red stone making crosses on one another's brows, which is perhaps a sort of religious observance. Further, they are not uncharitable nor greedy, but gladly help one another, and they are seen to be generous in that when they possess anything they divide it up. The women, as has been said, wear instead of clothes just such raw skins of sheep, seals or oxen as do the men; and on the head a cap of the same skins. Moreover, they have a large bag hanging on their back, in which they often put their food, or else at times tobacco, roots, and other things. They hang many beads in their ears, and ornament the arms and neck with rings and chains of copper and brass, and also iron. Around the legs they wind many guts of oxen and sheep, which become dry and hard, and cause a considerable rattling or clattering as they walk. When they marry the girl gives the man, instead of an engagement-ring, the fat gut* of a sheep or ox around his neck, which he wears until it rots and falls away from there. Also the girl must let a joint be cut from her little finger*, and this she gives to the man as a sign of her trueness. Polygamy exists among them, and a man may put away his wife if she does not suit him.

The women who are mothers carry the small suckling-children on their backs, and throw their long breasts, hanging down almost to the navel, back over their shoulders,

and so feed them when they ask for it. Both men and women stink strongly, and when they are coming towards one from up-wind, they can be smelt further than seen; and this comes from the fact that they smear themselves with nasty stinking fat over the whole body from head to foot, not omitting their skin cloaks which they call Courussen. When they come aboard the ships their first request of the Captain is to be allowed to go to the cook and the Steward. Having got this leave, they first go to the cook in the galley, and ask him for grease, and when they get this they smear the whole body, and rub their hands on the kettles, and go again over their well-greased body with them full of soot, now considering that they have well adorned themselves. After the smearing is completed they come to the Steward, who has his room just above the galley, and by orders of the Captain he gives them tobacco and brandy, on which they usually get so drunk, that they do not know how to get ashore again; but before they are allowed to leave the ship they must first dance in their fashion. This they perform in a circle, and for accompaniment clap their hands and sing therewith, thinking that thus they do everything well. In short, the Hottentots are like a people that hold to no manners or virtues, but live as do the dumb beasts; since on various occasions trial has been made of clothing some of them in the Dutch manner, and teaching them all forms of behaviour; but such clothing and teaching has not pleased them for long, since they have thrown the clothes off them and again taken a raw sheepskin in their stead, and so gone off to their compatriots; and I almost believe that no other so barbarous a nation is to be found in the world. Nevertheless, they know how to make lovely weapons such as lances or pikes, from an old bit of iron, held of no account by us but often thrown away, and this without the aid of a hammer or other implement; and this is done in the following manner; They take the piece of iron just as they get it, seek out a stone which is very firm and hard, lay the iron on this and beat it with another which must serve them as hammer, until they have brought it to the desired shape; and then they polish it so beautifully that one should think it had been made by a proper German armourer. These lances and pikes they use (especially the officers) in wars against their enemies. Besides this they know how to throw stones very accurately, and to defend themselves with long sticks*: indeed they are so skilled in this that they can artfully catch a stone thrown at them, and parry it to one side. It is nothing rare among them to hit with a stone at 100 paces a target the size of a threepenny piece [‘Dreier’].

But I must return to our ships which lay at anchor in the Table Bay, and tell all that happened there. In our ships the crews were busy bringing water, firewood and other necessities aboard from the land. Meanwhile on April 27 [DR 14/5] the East-India returnfleet of 13 sails [5 only arrived this day], with Admiral*, Vice-Admiral and Rear-Admiral came to anchor in the Table Bay not far from us. Their Admiral [Wayen, of the Council of Justice, by Valentyn] refused to strike his flag* to our Admiral [Member of the Council of the Indies]: therefore it was resolved first to fire a blank shot at his ship. But since he left his flag flying as before and did not strike it, our Gunner was ordered to fire one shot ahead of and another astern of the said ship; and in case the flag was not then struck, to

shoot it from the mast with coupled shot or chain-shot. But the said Admiral did not await this last shot, but let his flag be struck and taken in after the two loaded guns had been fired at his ship as ordered, and in place of it set up a pennant [‘Wimpel’], which is a long, narrow flag, tapering to become quite sharp at the end; and this was not disputed him, since it is sea-custom. So ended this flag-quarrel; and thereafter he was also welcomed, together with the other return-ships, by [cannon-salutes from] our Admiral and our other ships.

On April 29 the south-east wind rose, blowing so strongly that on land many stones fell down out of the air, no doubt torn from the Table Mountain by such a wind; and this, as several told me, is nothing new in such gales.

During this storm no one could come ashore from the ships, nor go out to them. The sea in the Table Bay began to be so rough, that it was necessary to bring up and drop more anchors: we were lying, as is usually the custom, to two anchors, one called by the Dutch ‘'t Dagelyckse’ or ‘Daily-anchor’ [Bower], the other the ‘Tuy’ or ‘Richt-Ancker’ [Small Bower]. In addition to these two others were also now taken by the longboat a certain distance from the ship, and there dropped; but these four were not able to hold the ship in these raging waves, since we noticed that the said anchors began to drag, and we were thus in great danger of being driven, either against the other ships or onto the shore. Therefore our Captain had yet another three anchors* taken out and dropped, among which the so-called ‘Plecht’ [Sheet-anchor], the largest of all, called ‘Esperanza’ by the Portuguese; and this held fast. Meanwhile those which had come loose from the bottom were wound up one after the other and dropped again: of these, however we lost two in this two-day storm, and must leave them lying, since their anchorcables, although six inches and more in diameter, had snapped like viol-strings, and thus we lost them. We indeed attempted to get them again, since the usual signal- or markerbuoys were still fast to the broken cables, and by these it could well be seen where they lay. But our toil was in vain, and it proved impossible to wind them in, since it seemed as if they held fast to the rocks of the bottom, although later, after our departure, they were brought up and salvaged with the greatest toil, by care of Govr. von der Stell.

On May 1 a French ship arrived outside the harbour [DR 22/5, *Soleil d'Orient*], which hoisted a white flag and fired a gun, to which our Admiral fired three guns in reply. But the said ship would not trust herself to come nearer and into range of our guns, because she had cruised for so long in the Red Sea that she knew nothing of the peace made between Holland and France [DR 12/4]. However, after our Admiral had made her a signal by hoisting a white pennant beside the Prince's Flag, she entered the harbour and anchored, with great rejoicings and shouts of joy and the firing of 17 guns, being welcomed by our Admiral with 19 guns [?] and by the other ships with fewer guns, as the case might be [‘nach Advenant’].

Early in the morning of [May] the 12th [DR 1/6] our Admiral gave the signal to sail by firing a gun and hoisting the blue flag, at which all his ships raised anchor and sailed, with the firing of the cannon from all the ships around the harbour, the East-Indian

return-fleet and the French ship for Holland and France, but we to continue our journey to Batavia. We drifted under the lower sails only ... out of the harbour, and were bidden farewell on our journey by 17 guns from the Fortress, which our Admiral acknowledged with 19 from his ship, the others each with two guns less.

After we had passed the Robben Island and were again in the open sea outside the Bay, the aforesaid return-ships broke off from us, and we set our course for India....

Arrived Batavia June 17. Then stationed at Sillida in Sumatra, for the gold-mines on Pulo Chinco island, until 1687.

Background - continued

1/6/1679 ... sailed the *Hollandsen Thuijn* ...

28/7 ... the new Slavehouse* in hand ...

9/10 ... came to these roads ... an English ship ... *Caesar*, of about 350 lasten* ... sailed on May 31 from England for Bantam ... politely requesting to take in water freely and to buy some refreshing from the burghers, and especially for their sick, [blank] in number, to be allowed to be lodged by one of our burghers ... which was politely granted ...

10/10 ... the English friends this morning brought their sick ashore to the house of a certain burgher ...

12/10 ... the *Vrye Zee* with our Commandeur-Designate the Hon. SIMON VAN DER STELL ... reached the roads about noon ... since there is no convenient accommodation in the new Castle, he took up his residence in the old Governor's house [installed 14/10]

13/10 ... the Hon. Commandeur ... riding in the afternoon to visit Roustenburgh ...

15/10 ... had arrived during the night ... the yacht* *Poleroon* ... sailed June 1 from Zeelant ... 4 or 5 days at anchor in Saldania Bay ...

41 William Pearse

Transcribed from photographs of Sloane MS 3669, British Museum: also partially transcribed in QB, December 1952. From Gravesend May 13, 1679 in Caesar, *for Bantam: all his dates are of course Old Style*.*

September the 29th ... through the Blessing of the Almighty we had a faire view of the Land ... as we stood in we kept our lead working & Gradually shoaled our water to 25 fath ouze, at which tyme we had sight of Pinguin Island, which is a loe Isle & hath 2 flagg staues to spread their Colours if they discry more then one saile.... Then we kept directly with the Peaked hill that makes like a Sugar loafe, & from thence hath its name deriued, upon whose top is likewise a flagg staff & a peece of Ordnance ... after we anchored [DR 9/10] saluted the Fort with 5 guns. When mored we were Employed the remaining pte of the day in sending on shoare our sick men, 20 of which ware hoysted out in Cradles, one dyed per the way in going ashoare ... most of the rest ready to Expire, but per the strength of Cordialls reviued....

The 30. We careened our ship & scrubd her. Got on Board 7 tunns water. The weathr faire till night & then the S.Ey winds forced downe our Maine & Fore Yards.... But oftentymes the S.Ey proues soe Impetuous it puts there ships from there Anchors & forces them out the roade.

The first. This day we filled 15 Tun water. Weather faire. Sight of a saile in the offin. Our Capt made a presant to the Comodore [Crudop, acting as Administrator] Consisting of a Butt Beere, a Firkin Red herrings, 2 Gam[mons] Bacon, a Large Cheese, A pot of Caveare, some Wine & Ale &c he return'd 3 sheep.

The 2nd Filled 6 Tuns which ware all our Empty Caske* ... about noon the Ship Came into the roade her name the Freesea [*Vrye Zee*] of Amsterdam Burden neare 3000: she hath been five months out. She brought hither a New Govr named Senior [blank in MS. Simon van der Stel]. We saluted him with 5 guns [DR 12/10].

The 3rd. This day pte of the men Went to recreate & refresh themselues with the delightfull Fragrancy of their Mothr earth....

The 4th. This day the remaining pte of our men went on shoare, toward Noone the Heavens were much Obnubilated but after 2 hours became cleare againe.... About 7 at night the Poleroon of Holland arrived [DR 15/10].

The 5th. Got off all our sicke men, the worst able to come up the side with out assistance....

The 6th the morng unmored our Ship per 11 had her under saile the wind at W.S.Wt....

Background - continued

3/11/1679 [Van der Stel to Hottentots Holland, back 8/11] having found in the ride thither that from about two hours* from the Cape the uncultivated land all the way to Hottentots Holland is suitable for agriculture ... lacking only industrious Dutch farmers ... the Hon. Commandeur took his rest one night in a grove ... naming the same ‘Stell en Bosch’ ...

Resolutions 17/11 ... prohibiting everyone ... from giving money to any of these natives or receiving any from them [as spoiling the Company's barter-trade]

Cape Good Hope
Volume Two

II

List of illustrations

	Africa at the Cape, 1682	*Frontispiece*
29	The shipwreck that never was (from item 43)	224
30	The *Asia*	249
31	Table Bay (from item 51)	256
32	Chevalier de Forbin	263
33	The ceraste or horned snake (from item 55)	272
34	Table Bay (ditto)	273
35	Hottentots dwelling at the Cape (ditto)	280
36	Rhinoceros (ditto)	282
37	Zebras or wild asses at the Cape (ditto)	283
38	Deer of the Cape (ditto)	284
39	Map of the lands and peoples of the Cape (ditto)	285
40	Namaqua tribesmen (ditto)	288
41	Hippopotamus (ditto)	290
42	Chameleon and small lizard of the Cape (ditto)	293
43	Large lizard of the Cape (ditto)	294
44	Hottentots and Namaquas (from item 56)	296
45	Map of the Cape Peninsula and Saldanha Bay, 1687	312
46	Sketch maps of the Cape, 1687	318
47	Hottentots	320
48	Cape flora (from item 64)	326
49	Cape flora (ditto)	327
50	Cape flora (ditto)	328
51	Chart of False Bay, 1687	332

52	Hottentot woman (from item 68)	341
53	Milking the cow (ditto)	344/5
54	Hottentot man (ditto)	348
55	Flying fish (from item 74)	375
56	Captain William Dampier	379
57	‘Pintado’ bird (from item 75)	383
58	Fishes (from item 78)	393
59	Rhinoceros (from item 85)	430
60	Hottentot woman (ditto)	434
61	Hottentot in summer costume (ditto)	435

62	A pinnace, later 17th century	449
63	Table Bay and the settlement, about 1700	456/7
64	Abraham Bogaert	476
65	Cape of Good Hope (from item 104)	488/9

Typographic Conventions

The reader's attention is directed to certain conventions that have been consistently maintained throughout this book, intended to facilitate the understanding of the many categories of text.

The extracts in small print (double column) following the yearly headlines and between items are translated from the manuscript Diaries (Dagregisters, 'DR'), occasionally supplemented by translations of the Resolutions of the Council of Policy (the Governing body at the Cape), and of Letters between this, the Council of the Indies in Batavia, and the 'Lords XVII' in Holland, the Directors of the Dutch East-India Company; from memoirs of departing Governors for their successors and Instructions of visiting Commissioners; almost all these documents being in the Cape Archives. The extracts are not intended to give a history of the Cape, but should be read as a background to the accounts printed, and therefore as some indication of their reliability: for this purpose the entry 'DR' in square brackets is to be read as 'Confirmed by the Diary entry for this date'; but 'DR 10/3' as 'But the Diary has this for March 10' (of the current year unless otherwise stated).

With very few exceptions, my own introductions to the quoted extracts and explanatory notes are set in italics; and the quoted extracts are in roman (upright) type.

R.R-H.

The Index

Apart from its normal function, the Index contains: identifications of places and of fauna and flora as far as is possible from the vague descriptions given by the authors; the fuller titles of books referred to by authors' names; and notes on those subjects marked with an asterisk (*) throughout the text.

The Illustrations

These have been taken, mainly, from contemporary books, reproduced from photographic copies. In many cases a detail of the original has been selected as illustration. Most subjects have been retouched, in varying degree, for reasons of clarity.

Cape Good Hope
Volume 2

Chapter three Expansion and Exploration 1680 - 1698

42	Elias Hesse	226
43	Christopher Fryke	229
44	David Tappen	236
45	Christophorus Schweitzer	243
46	John Preston	244
47	John Hallwell	245
48	Elias Hesse	246
49	Nicolaus de Graaff	252
50	Jos. Haddock	252
51	John Tyrell	255
52	Christopher Fryke	258
53	Chevalier de Forbin	261
54	Francois-Timoléon de Choisy	264
55	Father Guy Tachard	271
56	Chevalier de Chaumont	295
57	Chevalier de Chaumont	299
58	F.T. de Choisy	301
59	Father Guy Tachard	305
60	Captain Ambrose Cowley	307
61	Philip Leigh	313
62	Nicolaus de Graaff	314
63	Simon de la Loubère	317
64	Father Guy Tachard	322
65	Masurier	330
66	(Father Marcel le Blanc)	331
67	Johan Wilhelm Vogel	336
68	Georg Meister	340
69	Simon de la Loubère	352
70	Father Guy Tachard	352

71	Father Marcel le Blanc	358
72	John Bonnell	367
73	(A. du Quesne-Guiton)	370
74	François Leguat	374
75	William Dampier	377
76	'Dr Browne'	386
77	Robert Everard	389
78	John Ovington	391
79	Christoffel Langhansz	400
80	John Dorrill	412
81	Thomas South	415
82	George Phenney	416
83	William Erle	417
84	Richard Laycock	424
85	François Leguat	426
86	John Dorrill	439
87	William Gyfford	440
88	William Erle	441

[NB][+]

The double-column text that follows contains extracts from the Cape Council's Diary, supplemented by other documents in the Archives. The texts of the authors are in large, Roman type, my comments and notes are either italicised or in square brackets. [DR] in the text means: *Confirmed by the Diary entry for this date*; whereas [DR 10/3] means: *But the Diary has this for March 10*. An asterisk* following a word means: *Refer to the index for further information*, where also will be found identifications of places, people, flora, fauna, the titles of books cited by authors' names, and notes on points marked with asterisks in the text.

+ '[red. dbnl] zie verantwoording'

[29] From item 43. The Shipwreck that never was.

[1680]
General peace.
Background - from official documents in the archives

20/2 ... arrived ... *Landt Schouwen*, *Europa*, *Schielandt*, *Tidoor*, *Asia* and the hired ship *Saint Andries* ... all having sailed from Batavia on November 24 last year [sailed homeward, plus *Sumatra*, *Tertholen* from Ceylon, on 29/3]

9/3 Resolutions ... a hedge of growing thornbushes to be set around the Garden* ...

27/3 [Letters to Holland requesting permission for the Commandeur to undertake an expedition* to the Namaquas with 20 men]

20/6 [Letter from Holland] ... we see very little chance of being able to provide you with industrious farmers from here ...

3/7 ... arrived here ... the new little yacht* ['jachtie'] *Necombo* ...

9/7 ... arrived here ... the newly-built yacht *Jambi* ...

21/10 Resolutions ... considered desirable to undertake the expedition* to the said Namaquas, the sooner the better, and to employ thereto as commander the Ensign Oloff Bergh ...

26/10 Resolutions ... resolved, contrary to the opinion of the Hon. Commandeur van der Stell, to allow the said Captain of the English ship [*Surat Merchant* for Bantam, 'having lost 15 of his best sailors and carpenters, and with many sick'] to buy some refreshing from the freemen ... and to give him a carpenter from the ships now here, to be handed back at Bantam ...

1/12 ... arrived ... the yacht *Craanvogell*, having sailed from Holland on June 1 ... not one fit man on board ...

30/12 ... an English ship in a very miserable state coming from Mocha ... if the Captain requests it, allow him to buy refreshing from the freemen and take water freely ... neither he himself nor any of his officers or crew ... to enter the castle, nor even to approach it or pass near it ... no one to be ashore in the evening or by night ... and to make the sojourn of this inconvenient visitor yet more unpleasant [as ordered by Holland] resolved also to insinuate to the colonists by the messenger that no one is to sell sheep for less than fl. 18 each, and similarly greenstuffs and vegetables only at exorbitant prices ...

[1681]
General peace. September Strassburg annexed by French.
Background

13/2 ... letter from the Hon. Admiral* [of return-fleet lying at Robben Island] the Extra-Ordinary* Councillor, ex-Governor of Ceylon Ryckloff van Goens Junior ... ships *Burgh van Leyden*, *China*, *Alkmaar*, *Prins Willem Hendrik de Derde* [to the roads 14/2]

17/3 ... arrived last night at the roads ... *Landt van Schouwen* ... sailed on November 17 last year ...

19/3 ... about noon arrived the ship *Sumatra* ... sailed from Texel November 9 with 262 engaged men, of whom 24 died on the journey including the Skipper ... with 36

unfit. In the said vessel travels also a certain [blank] Oliths ... for employment at Sillida ...

30/2 [Memoir of van Goens: now fully 600 freemen*-colonists]

20/3 [Letter to Holland advising the foundation of Stellenbosch with 8 families]

42 Elias Hesse

(*See also item 48.*) *His 'Ost-Indianische Reisebeschreibung' was published at Dresden in 1687. It is very rare, but there is a reprint edited by S.P. L'Honoré Naber at The Hague in 1931: this omits all Hesse's descriptions of the Hottentots, as has also been done here - it is all second-hand, from Dapper, Schouten, Ten Rhyne, often word for word. But it omits also his notes on whales, civet-cats and the 'Tiger-Bushcat', which have been supplied in item 48 from the Dutch by De Vries (Utrecht 1694, with Fryke and Schweitzer) except the part of the note on whales which deals with Spitzbergen and Holland, apparently inserted merely to get in some useful publicity for another book. Fortunately the Dutch translation is pretty accurate, to judge from a comparison of it with the parts published by Naber.*

Hesse was recommended by one of his employers in Saxony to Benjamin Olitzsch, just appointed Director of the V.O.C. goldmines in Sumatra, and was engaged as Mine-Clerk ('Berg-Schreiber'). In July 1680 he went down the Elbe to Hamburg and thence by sea to Amsterdam, arriving there on September 1. Took oath to the V.O.C. Crimps, women especially successful as such. Embarked in* Sumatra *at Texel, sailing November 9. Galerefuge in Torbay. Canaries sighted. Sufferings from thirst at the Equator: life aboard 'like slavery'. Martin Vaz island. February 23 much reeds seen in the water, 'by the seamen called Trombes', sign that the Cape was not far off. Land sighted March 11, 1681, but driven off by contrary winds, and in danger from reefs.*

On March the 18th we sighted the cloud-high Table Mountain lying on the Cap de bon Esperance; yet at nightfall we must cast anchor because we were close to the land. Next day we sailed again with a very adverse wind, and at 10 in the morning anchored [DR] in the Table Bay. Here we found the *Land Schauwen* [DR 17/5], outward bound from Zeeland to the Indies, and also four other ships come from Batavia which had already lain there for about five weeks [DR 13/2], and gave thanks to GOD that he had brought us hither without mishap.

From Holland to this Cape we had now successfully laid behind us, thanks to Him, a distance of 2100 miles*, or 2000 as some reckon it, and during this journey had lost 26 by death [DR 34, including the Skipper], among them three of the best of our miners.

Now that we were come here, our other miners, some of them weak and worn out, were brought ashore to recuperate somewhat, as also twenty-two sick, these latter being taken into the hospital*. Our Chief, the Mine-Director, also left the ship, with his dear wife and children, much fatigued and very unwell. He was received most amicably by the Commandeur vander Stelle, and lodged in the old Dutch Fort* or Bon Esperance Castle, and there provided with everything available, at the costs of the Company. But all the refreshments of the land proved to us more damaging than helpful, since from them

most of us suffered from the flux; but the reason was that they observed no measure of diet, but drank all too much wine, and ate too many Spanish Speck* and water-lemons, and thus fell into a mortal sickness.

Now the longing of many of us was that GOD should grant them a happy ending, since the terribly wide sea on which we had been well tested was become very repugnant to them and to us all. For this reason also no one had great desire to re-embark, and had it been done according to their wish, we should have remained there, at least for a time, so as to examine somewhat the copper mines* of the Cape, to see if they would yield something of advantage to the Company, a beginning in this having also been made previously.

According to my humble opinion this would not have been without benefit; and at least it would have yielded the advantage, that these Saxon miners would, with GOD's help, have been able to regain their full strength. Moreover, they would thus, little by little, and the more slowly, the better, have become accustomed here to a hot climate (the air here being otherwise very healthy); and then later, if it were found that nothing of profit was to be had from mining in these hills, they could all have been taken on to the East Indies. There, having become somewhat accustomed to the climate, they would better have preserved their health, and thus have been of much greater service to the Company than by setting them on board the *Sumatra*, again to travel onwards to the Indies with entirely exhausted and weak bodies.

I turn now to the conditions of this land, to examine them a little. Petrus de Val tells in his General Description of the World as follows: The Cape, or Promontory of Good Hope, lying on the southernmost point of Africa, is indeed one of the largest and most famous parts of the world, but also one of the most dangerous. It was given its name in 1498 [*sic*], when the Portuguese came here, and now hoped to reach the Indies; before then it was called the Capo des Tormentes, because of the many storms which are common here. Some have also called it the Lion of the Sea, and others the Head of Africa.

For my part, I will give the following information as regards the Cape of Good Hope, which is also the name of the newly-built Fort*, raised with five bastions just below the Devil's Hill. In the same are to be found very commodious quarters for the Commandant and the other Servants of the East-India Company, all built in the European fashion. This fortress is richly provided with all manner of war-stores. When I was there the garrison* was between three and three-and-a-half hundred, including those who were otherwise in the service of the Company.

Without the Cape, as the Fort is here called, there dwell some sixty or seventy Freemen*, all of whom have well-built houses and are able to maintain themselves by agriculture and from the ships which call. Not far from the Castle lie three large hills. The largest is called Table Mountain, because it is as flat and even as a table; the second is called the Lion Hill, either because it shows the form of a lion or because many lions are to be found there; the third is the Devil's Hill.

The Table Mountain, from which the Bay receives its name, is said to be 1350 feet [*sic*] high. The only thing to give one pleasure there, is the very beautiful Garden* and Orchard of the Company, in which I saw rosemary growing as tall as a man. Here grow just the same trees, fruits, and herbs as in Germany, apples, pears, chestnuts, and especially vines of which very many have been planted here, quinces, etc. It is a special delight to see how the leaves of the European apple-trees fall off, whereas on the contrary those of the African trees such as oranges and lemons remain always green. From this Orchard are daily refreshed all the ships that come, Dutch and other, with all sorts of fruits so long as they lie here, as also with water-lemons, radishes, cabbages, carrots, turnips, lettuce and such like, besides what is consumed in the Castle; so that it can readily be concluded that this Garden and Orchard is not of the smallest. It lies right under the Table Mountain, and has a long avenue extending from the houses of the Freemen to the foot of that Hill. On one and the other sides lie the Lion and the Devil's Hills, but the former nearer than the latter.

No land under the sun is so well endowed and adorned with pleasant and agreeable plants and trees as this, therefore the Dutch farmers there have bettered it year by year and day by day with ploughing, sowing and cultivation; from which they profit there in butter, milk, corn and other grain in great abundance. Stock-breeding is also successful here: especially there are found very large herds of sheep, of which some are more than 1200 in number, belonging to the Company, in great abundance for a distance of six or eight hours* from the shore. The Dutch farmers are especially skilled in the rearing of their livestock, whether oxen, cows, sheep or pigs. They drive their stock out each morning, but for fear of the beasts of prey bring it in again in the evenings. But otherwise they live very simply, especially as regards their houses, in which lonely peasant huts windows and glass are not to be found.

[Notes on Hottentots omitted.]

Wild beasts are also often captured in this region and brought to the Dutch Castle, so that at this one can see all sort of such animals, namely Lions, Tigers, Rhinoceroses, Snakes and Wolves, but all dead and stuffed [see Museum*].

After we had now lain for 20 days at the Cape of Good Hope, and meanwhile provided our ship with the excellently good local water, which is very clear and sweet especially in the Table Bay, and can also be brought quite easily without heavy trouble to the ships, and also with firewood and other necessary provisions, we set sail on April the 7th [DR] together with the *Land Schouwen*, with GOD and a favourable wind..... [June 10 Batavia until November 12. December 29 Pulo Chinco, and at gold-mine there until 1683.]

Background - continued

7/4/1681 ... the ships *Landt van Schouwen* and *Sumatra* sailed ...

27/9 ... arrived a large ship in the roads ... *Ternaten* ... sailed on May 31 in company with *Europa* ... Channel ... 334 men, having lost 18 by sickness, and loading our hospital with 50 very sick men ...

28/9 ... arrived the ship *Europa* ...

43 Christopher Fryke
(Plate 29)

(*See also item 52*.) *His* '*Ostindische Reise ...*' *was published at Ulm in 1692*, *and translated into Dutch by De Vries*, *Utrecht 1694; and into English by* '*S.L.*' *in 1700*, *very unsatisfactorily: this last was reprinted in the* '*Seafarer's Library*' *in 1929*, *but unfortunately without any check against the original*, *and consequently without any correction of* '*S.L's*' *mis-translations and deliberate mis-statements. The 1700 edition has however been used here for the sake of its picturesque style*, *but the errors have been corrected* (*in that same style*) *by use of the 1694 edition*, *De Vries being known to be reliable from other works translated by him where check with the originals was possible* (*Hesse*, *Schweitzer*). *Important variants in* '*S.L.*' *are indicated*.

Fryke, *or Frick*, *or Frikius left Ulm in February 1677 for Viennd and Zurich*, *and thence by boat down the Rhine*, *reaching Amsterdam by Christmas 1679. Sailed in* Ternate *on May 31*, '*1680*' (*1681 by Hague codex 4389*). *Canaries sighted. Sicknesses*, *deaths. Scurvy*, *smallpox*.

In these afflictions the Hope consoled us, that we should soon come to the Capo de bonn' Esperance.

But in this we were not a little Deceived, in that we were far from our Course, since around *Africa* there is customarily every day a great Fog, so that two men cannot readily see one the other a Ship's Length apart. For this cause our Master ordered that diligent Watch should be kept from the Crows-Nest of the Main-Mast, since we could expect to see Land at any moment. At Sunrise I went on deck, and having drunk my Ration of Brandy went forward to Larboard where one can go up into the Bow. Here I busied myself with the smoking of a pipe of *Tobacco*, in company with my comrade *Johan Legner*, a Hatter, of *Zurich*.

While now we were in the middle of a cheerful Conversation, and rejoycing with all our hearts since we hoped soon to set foot on dry land, we heard an unexpected cry of Land, Land, which mightily increased our Joy, since we did not know how close we were come to the peril of a Shipwreck. Suddenly the Master (who just then had the early watch) ran with astonishment down from aft, calling out Jesus, my poor ship! At this we all fell silent from fear, knowing of no way in which we could be helpful.

Meanwhile the ship ran with a Mighty speed towards the land, driven on by the strong Wind; And therefore some ran with knives to cut the Ropes of the mainsail, since there was no time to lower it. Indeed the wind so raged that it carried the sail overboard, with such a terrible Noise and Clatter that we must think that Heaven and Earth were falling. So we ran, one here, the other there, confused by our fright, until at the last the ship began to break up, so that we implored the Almighty most fervently to have Mercy on our poor souls.

It will be easy for any to imagine how Miserable was now our plight, if he sets before himself the Lamenting, the Prayers and the Shrieks of so many men, since we were yet three hundred and forty-three in number. At last the stern of the ship began to break up, and the hugely high waves broke in so that the Keel was forced to sink down little by little.

Here one danger greeted another, and we were threatened by death from all sides, here by the depths of the Sea, there by the inaccessibly Steep shore; Yet although Terror surrounded us on all sides, and danger met our eyes wherever we looked, we were resolved, if die we must, to put off Death as long as we could. One now sprang thither into the sea, another thither, to fight his way to the Land with all his strength; And I for my part also committed myself to the Waves, with a fervent call to GOD's Mercy, that he would vouchsafe to deliver me in this need. Thus I let myself be carried forward by the Billows, but without knowing whether the land would be my Salvation, since the rocks stood high out from the Water: Nevertheless I tried my utmost to reach them, being greatly encouraged and urged on by the shouts of some of my Comrades, who were already fortunately come out of danger.

Once I reached the rocks, and then a Second Time, but was thrown back by the Waves. None of my companions could lend me help, and little by little my strength began to fail me; But at last my hand hit on sandy Ground, and by the help of the Almighty I came safe to land.

After me yet seven more saved themselves, and before me thirty-five had thus escaped from the raging Billows, so that in all forty-three of us came through this Deadly Peril alive: To wit, the Master, the Chief Mate, my Upper-Surgeon, myself, our Barber*, three Carpenters, the Cook's Mate, two of the Gunner's men, the Handlanger*, the Bosun's Mate, twenty-two Sailors, and eight Soldiers. The rest, three hundred souls, lost their lives Miserably in the Savage Depths.

We gave heartfelt thanks to GOD for His Help; yet at first we did not know where we found ourselves. Also our misery was here increased in that we had with us three Sick, who were in a very ill state from the cold of the Water. The Ship was so entirely lost that we could see not even a fragment of her; Also all the ready Cash, over three hundred and twenty-eight thousand Dollars, and all the cargo, worth many thousands of Guilders, were buried under the Waves.

Now at last we perceived that this region was that of the False *Capo de bonn' Esperance*, more than forty miles [*sic:* see miles*] from the true one where the Dutch Garrison lay, so that we were forced to go on into the Country, which was the more tedious, by reason of the sick men; But since we knew that this region hath an abundance of good Fruits, we found, after we had gone on for a little time, some very good Water-Lemons, which must serve us as meat and drink. At last we saw some *Hottentots* at a distance, whom we could not come to speak to, for they run away from us. But it was to fetch some of them that could speak Dutch; and when we had made our case known to them, they immediately went and acquainted the Governour with it, who streight sent

another parcel of these Hottentots (who are the Wild Inhabitants of that Country) together with a strong Escort of Dutch Soldiers [SL ‘a file’, two] to fetch us. They took up our sick men, and carried them on their shoulders upon Beds made of Reeds; and we were confortably entertained with good Canary, cooked Rice, Bisket, and all sorts of excellent fruits, all which were extreamly welcome to us.

When we came to the Cape, our Master and the Chief Mate went immediately before the Governour, to clear themselves from whatever might be laid to their charge, for the loss of the Ship, and of so many men's lives; and there alleg'd, that it could not be imputed to their negligence, or want of due care, but that it was rather due to the many and long-lasting contrary Winds, and even more to the good Pleasure of Providence to afflict them in that manner. After which we were all lodged within [*sic*] the Fort*, and furnished with the usual allowance, and there waited [*sic*] for the *Europa's* coming; which was no less than three weeks: So that we gave that over for lost too, fearing it had undergone like fate with ours.

A good story, *excellently told*, *and illustrated with a vigorous picture* (*plate 29*)*; a complete lie. Yes*, ‘*Cristof Frit from Ulm*’, *soldier* (‘*S.L.*’ *has Surgeon*, *another lie*) *at 9 fl. per month*, *did sail in* Ternate (*Hague codex 31 folio 277*)*; but* (*DR*) *she arrived safe and sound in Table Bay on September 27. And yes*, Europa *did sail with her*, *but arrived at the Cape the day after her* (*DR*), *not* ‘*three weeks*’ *later; and* Ternate *arrived*, *still unwrecked*, *on December 31*, *1681*, *at Batavia* (*Batavia Diary*). *Nevertheless*, *Fryke's observations at the Cape are by no means without value*, *although many of them are stolen from Saar*.

What observations I made in this Country during the time of our stay, I will now give account of. I know well, that this Capo de bonn' *Esperance* hath already been described by many, but because I found the conditions thereof at my time different in many respects from what I had read, therefore I will add my Observations to those made before and after me. Also I shall not be able to give the exact Date when this or that occurred, because, on account of my being much busied with my Calling, I could not always take note of it. Also, the first Description which I made was lost at Sea, so that I can now set down nothing but what has remained in my Memory.

In the year 1650 [*sic*] a Fort was built by the Dutch at this Cape, and ever since all the shipping that comes thither, whether French, English, or any other Nation, must pay their Anchorage*, Water, and Customs Duties. This Land, for its situation and fruitfulness, is very commodious for all that go from any part of *Europe* to the *East-Indies*, for the refreshing of themselves, and recruiting of provisions, and taking in of fresh Water, which comes out of the Rocks and Mountains of the Country and waters the Lands around. Within the Land, it is richly adorned with abundance of Fruit-Trees; But near the Shore, there are few, or none, by reason of the terrible Winds and Hurricanes, that beat upon it in a fearful manner, which come generally down from the Mountain called by the Dutch *Tafel-Bergh;* And by reason of these stormy winds, this Cape goes frequently with us by the name of the *Storm Cape*.

The Dutch, that are there in Garrison, have planted good Orchards and Gardens, which afford all sorts of Sallads, Cabages, Turnips, Cowcumbers, and all sorts of Kitchen Herbs; All which are great refreshments to those that come from Sea. And likewise the free Inhabitants, of which there were already some hundreds when I was there, have Land which produces good Corn, Wheat, and Oats, &c. and Vineyards: So that one finds there plenty of good Beer, Wine, excellent Bread, and such sort of things as well as in *Europe*.

I dieted at one of these Free-men's houses, and I had a very good Dinner of Meat, roast and boiled, and Fish, with excellent Sallad, and Butter, and Cheese, and delicate Beer, all for one *Shelling*, (which is but six pence English); but Wine I was forced to pay for, after the rate of half a Ricks-doller the quart.

Besides the great store of Fruits which are common in *Europe*, there is great plenty of admirable Lemon and Orange Trees, which afford a very beautiful prospect.

The Haven is called *Tafel-Baey*, which is to say, *Table-Bay*, so called from a vast Mountain just by the Shore which is called *Tafel-Bergh*, in English *Table-Hill*, from its figure, which is seemingly square and flat on top: It is seen a vast way off at Sea; and it lieth about fifteen Miles* from the utmost point of the Cape; between which, lieth the Hill *Lewen-Bergh*, or *Lion's-Hill*, so called, by reason of its resembling a Lion in shape; the head comes quite up to the Table-Hill, and the tail comes down into the Sea.

I had great desire to go up to the top of that Hill e're I went from the Cape; So having got some others who desired it too, we got leave and set out the next morning early. It is about a Mile distance from the Castle; we went up it a good pace for a matter of four hours, and yet we were not near to the top: We were pretty well tired, and more afraid of being too long about it, and of being belated; for in the evening it is extraordinary dangerous being there, by reason of the wild Beasts that then come abroad; for we thought it better to return, to get in by daylight: Yet our Curiosity on the other hand pressed us to climb onwards. But a Cloud came over us which wetted us to the Skin, whereupon we again changed our intent, and returned back streight, and came into the Castle about half an hour before night; so that we could not compass our desire, nor could ever yet hear of any one that had been up to the top of it.

Shortly before my coming, the Dutch *East-India* Company set and maintained here some Miners* with their Foreman, since it was believed that there were some Veins of Gold hereabouts; But when I came here again on my return from the *Indies* I could hear no more of this.

Provision is here so plenty, that the Dutch have it mighty cheap, for a little Copperwire for Bracelets, for Tobacco, and for any such trifle; So that a large Beast doth not stand a man in more than a couple of Shillings.

There are a great many Lions and Porcupines. In the Governour's Hall [see Museum*] are two Lions Skins. The one was of a Lion, that one of the Hottentots shot with his Arrow: The other was killed by a Porcupine. This Creature hath on its back a sharp sort of Prickle; near a spang long, and so hard, that one can bore a hole in a Plank with

them, so that they serve many Trades-Men for Bodkins. And the Lion falling furiously upon this Creature, it struck him with his prickly bristles into the Breast, and made him bleed to death, tho' the Porcupine perished likewise in the fight; and they were found dead by one another, and both their Skins were hung up for a *Memorandum*.

Besides these, there are many Elephants in that Country, and a sort of Beast they call *Bavians*, the same we call Baboons; which very much resemble aged men of 80 years. Some of our men had orders once to go into the Wood to cut down part of it. Amongst them was one comical fellow from the *Tirol*, who had beaten one to Death in a quarrel at *Presburgh*; and being forc'd to fly, had listed himself a Soldier in the *East-India* Company, and so made his escape. He staid a little after the rest to ease Nature; and laid his Satchel down at some distance from him; One of these Baboons came and took away every thing, which made very good sport for the rest. Ostridges are here also very common; many of the Eggs whereof I have eaten. In Holland the Barbers hang up their empty Shells in their Shops, and keep usually their Cotton-Wool in them. On my return voyage I took two such along with me, to bring them to my Fatherland, but from the great Tossings to and fro they became broken. And among many other sorts of Birds, which they have, that are uncommon with us, there is a sort called *Sea-Ravens*; but of these there hath been account enough given by several Writers.

In the Sea, all round this place, one may see abundance of great fish called *North-Capers*, but none of them are catched about the Cape; They have a snout like that of an Hog, thro' which they throw up Water as high as an house, and in such a quantity, as to fill almost a whole ship, and it comes down like a violent shower of Rain: They are always to be seen about the Cape, but they do no manner of harm.

There is a prodigious quantity of other sorts of Fish, both in the Sea, and in the Rivers too. We went one night with a Net to have some sport, and at two pulls had so many, that we stood Ankle-Deep in 'em. The fish we catched were made very much like our Carps; and here are also abundance of Tortoises.

The natural Inhabitants of this place, are called *Hottentots*, meer Heathens; of no extraordinary size; for the most part very lean and meagre; their Language very unpleasant, rattling like Turkies when they speak. They go stark naked, only having a Sheeps Skin about them, the Tail whereof comes before their Privities.

When a Ship is new come in, as soon as the Boat lands any of the Men, then as it comes back, they also come to the Ship, always four by four, whereof one is a Head-Man, to beg Bisket of the Sea-men, which they love exceedingly; when they ask for it, they cry *Broqua*, which signifies Bread; and when such is given them, they tread it under their Feet [item 10, word for word], and then lift up their Sheep-Skins and let it be seen, How they are Made, and how in their Youth one of their Testicles* is cut off. Their chief Ornaments (if such may be so called) is on their Legs; they take an Ox, or Sheep's guts, and thrusting out the excrements a little, just to let them lye close and flat; and while they are moist, they wrap them about their Legs, and there let them stick. These very guts is part of their food too; for just in this same pickle, they broil them a little over the fire,

and eat them. So it may properly be said, That they are meat and cloth to them: But to see them use it either way, might very probably give any man besides them, a vomit. They use to besmear their body with all manner of dirt and nastiness, which makes them stink worse than a Goat.

Upon their heads they stick all sorts of little Sea-shells, and small Copper Rings, that come from *Neurenbergh*, which the Seamen bring with them, to give them: And for one of them they will shew you some of their Tricks; Among which one is, to throw a Dart or long Stick*, with which they will hit within the compass of a farthing a mighty distance off.

As for their Religion, little can be said of it: Also their Language is not understood by any, that ever I heard of. They use Commonly to get together near to the Sea-shore in the morning by Sun-rising, and there they get in a Ring, holding each other fast by their hands, and dance about on the Sand, looking up towards Heaven, saying something in their Language; and then write some strange unintelligible characters and figures in the Sand, and so depart; all of which undoubtedly is intended in honour to some Deity. I have asked some of them that could speak a little broken Dutch, what thoughts they had of a God, and whom they believed in: They answered, that they thought that there was one above, that had made the Hills, and that Sea which we saw, and all that was in them.

They are very good Footmen, and run very swiftly, which make the Dutch keep always a Troop of Horse there, to catch them in case of any Insurrection: For they dare not trust them in the least. In mischief they are cunning enough, tho' wonderfully stupid in any thing else. If they are not hungry, they will not work, tho' you beat them to death; but when their hungry belly incites them to it, they will work like horses. It is not safe to break one's word with them; and if one should not give them what was promised when their work is done, a man would go in danger of his life.

Their Habitations are most on green Meadows, and grounds that bear sweet Herbs for Pasture for their Cattle. Their Houses are made of Sea-Reeds joyn'd together, and fastned on top; just like our Hop-poles, when they are laid up for the Winter; and when their Cattle hath eaten up all the Pasture all about them, then they remove their Houses, to some fresh place, and settle there again for some time.

As to what belongs to those we call Free-men, of which I made some mention before, they are such of our Men, as have served the Company in the station of a Soldier, or any other way during the space of ten or twelve years, and then desired to settle there, to trade or plant, which they may then do, paying a certain sum of Money, and all Imposts and Customs to the Company. These have dwelling-houses built after a manner like as in *Holland*, but not so high nor so fine.

The chief Commodities which the Company trades in, to quit the Costs of their Garrison there, is Sea-Dogs, which are catched here in vast quantities. They boil the fat out of them, and the Skins are hung up to dry, which they send afterwards to *Holland* [*sic*].

When any ship comes there, an Order is read to all the People that are on Board,

forbidding them to buy any thing of the *Hottentots* except Ostridges Eggs, and other like trifles. All Commodities of any use or value, as Rhinoceros Horns, Elephants Teeth, and Sea-Dog Skins, are wholly ingrossed by the Company.

Justice here is very severe, in respect of any of these Heathens especially; one instance whereof I was an eye-witness of, while I was there; Three of them having ravished a Christian Maid-servant, were hung up by the heels on a Gibbet, and so ended their lives, after they had hanged there about thirteen or fourteen hours.

There are four Seasons of the year here, tho' in a quite different time from ours: For our Summer is their Winter; and in *September*, which was the time I was there, it was their Spring-season.

Their Winters are cold and always foggy and misty, but there is never any Frost or Snow. Thus far will suffice to inform the Reader of the Nature and Customs of the *Capo de bonn' Esperance*. I proceed now with the continuation of our Voyage.

After we had spent a pretty while here, and were very well recovered from our late Affliction, we prepared our selves to be gone in the *Europa* [*sic*], which by this time was come, and ready to sail off again for *Batavia;* and with the first fair Wind we set sail [DR 15, 16/10]....

Arrived '*November 30*, *1680*', *actually* (*Batavia Diary*) *December 30*, *1681. Indonesia. Ceylon: this part translated in my* '*Germans in Dutch Ceylon*', *Colombo 1653. Japan. Siam*.

Background - continued

15/10/1681 ... *Europa* set sail ...

16/10 ... towards evening *Ternaten* set sail ...

[1682]
General peace.
Background - from official documents in the archives

15/2 ... towards evening came to the roads ... the little boat ['bootje'] *Posthoorn* ... December 18 last year from the Sunda Strait ...

16/2 ... this afternoon reaching the roads ... *Land van Schouwen* and *Africa*, and in the former ... the Hon. Governor-General Raykloff van Goens [and his wife] ...

4/3 About noon comes here from the Fatherland the ship the *Burgt van Leyden* ... sailed from Vlissingen on November 16, 1681 ... The news was of the seizure of Straatsburg by the King of France, without it being known what were his further plans, which might well lead to disunity throughout Christendom, and the threat of war to our State ...

5/3 [Broad Council*: work on Fort hastened]

13/3 [Broad Council: resolved to hold *Burgt van Leyden* at Cape]

24/3 ... sighted the ship the *Vrijheydt* ... sailed from Batavia January 10 ... all her four pumps continually at work ... her bowsprit and 'guallioen*' cut away to lighten her, also 8 cannon thrown overboard ...

25/3 ... this morning arrived ... the said ship *Vrijheydt*, in a lamentable condition everywhere ... two pumps working day and night ...

2/4 ... comes to anchor the ship *Couverden* ...

4/4 [Broad Council: resolved to send *Burgt van Leyden* with the return-fleet, for the reasons given in item 44] ... in the afternoon came tacking into the bay the long-awaited ship the *Hollandse Tuyn* ...

5/4 Before noon ... the ships *Courtgene* and *Wester Amstel* anchored [from Galle]

6/4 [Resolutions: details of the transfer of cargo to *Burgh van Leyden* from 'the leaky return-ship *Vrijheyt*', *Hollantsen Thuijn*, *Landt van Schouwen*, *Africa*, and *Courtjene*]

44 David Tappen

(*See also item 19*.) *From Batavia December 20*, *1681 in* Vryheid *in fleet commanded by Governor-General R. van Goens in* Land van Schauen, '*with his young wife*, *about 18 or 19 years old*, *he being of some eighty years.*' *With them* Africa *and* Hollandse Tuyn, *and according to Tappen* Swordfish, *but in Valentyn I as hooker** Posthoorn: *three more from Ceylon joined at Cape*, *being* Westeramstel (*incidentally with Schweitzer on board*), Koeverden, Cortgene.

On March 30 [1682] we sighted land, and recognised from the Table Mountain that we were near the Cabo de boa Esperanze; and the same evening we anchored off the bay. Next morning we made ready and sailed to the roads [DR 25/3], finding there the ships which had left Batavia before us [DR 15/2, 16/2], except that the Hollandische Thuyn had not yet arrived, so that we gave her up for lost; but after two days [DR 4/4] she also came, having lost her mainmast in the aforesaid storm [and the three from Ceylon, DR 2/4, 5/4]. Thus the Lord God brought all the nine [? 8] ships safely here.

The ship Burg van Leyden had also arrived [DR 4/3] from Holland, bringing the news that the Kings of Denmark and Norway would go to war with the Dutch. Next day all the ships' carpenters were sent into the woods to cut timber for the repair of the damaged ships, and they worked 3 weeks on our ship [very leaky, DR 24/3, 25/3]. Also Morgensterne* were made ready for the defence of the ships, and two women were sent ashore, as also the wife of General Rykloff von Goens remained there, since it was feared that if there were an action with the enemy, the women would howl and shriek and so make the crew afraid. Also in order to increase our strength, on the responsibility of the General [*sic:* of Broad Council*] the ship newly arrived from Holland was unloaded and her cargo stored ashore, and she was then loaded from our ship with 600 pounds of cinnamon, 1000 pounds of pepper, and from the other ships with cotton, silk, cloves, saltpetre, sandalwood, Kalliatour* wood etc., so that by these means each ship could in case of need use her guns against the enemy without hindrance.

After a few days I went ashore, and tasted the grapes, new wine, apples and pears, the trees of which were planted by the diligence and toil of the Dutch. And as we had nothing to do, we went out into the country among the savages who are called Hottentots, to amuse ourselves. We saw here many sheep with large tails, but they fell far short of the Persian sheep, since among these latter some are found with tails so heavy that they must pull them after them on wheels, some weighing 20 or even 24 pounds.

We got many fine oxen and sheep from the savages by barter, as shall be told [he does not do so].

For a Maas* of wine we paid 3 groschen, and for a meal 6, whereas in Batavia a Maas of wine costs a dollar, and a can of Zerbst beer a florin, or 16 groschen at the least.

And after the ships were again repaired and made ready for the journey we sailed on April 29, 1682 [DR] in God's Name. This land whereon the town lies is a protruding corner of Africa, said to be 1800 miles from Holland. It is inhabited by Dutch, who excellently cultivate its soil. They have fine gardens in which they grow cabbages, turnips, lettuce, cucumbers, water-lemons and other lovely fruit, and the grapes are ripe here in February. They sow their fields with rye, wheat, oats, peas, and lentils.

Behind the town lies a large and very high hill called the Table Mountain, on which the large apes called Pavianen dwell. These are clever in stealing the water-lemons from the gardens: they come by night in large bands from the hills, and set themselves neatly in line behind one another. Then some climb into the garden and pluck the fruit, and throw it to the others who are standing outside. These catch them and throw them one to the other, until a fruit reaches the last one of the line, who takes it and goes off; and so they continue until each has his share and then go away. But if any one comes in sight they begin to shriek and some run at him, and meanwhile the others run off, and then these follow. These apes live in the bush and forests, and it has often happened that when the soldiers or sailors go there to cut wood, and by chance leave their axes lying or forgotten, these apes run and take them away, and climb with them into the trees and there do their apish foolery, but at last throw them down. They are strong animals and have no fear of dogs, and if anyone chances to come to a place in the hills where they are, when they become aware of him they throw large stones at him. When their young are with them, and if they are chased and the young cannot run off as fast as their parents, these hit them with their fists and drag them along.

Near this hill there lies another, called by the Dutch the Lion Hill, on which a special watch is kept. Next to this lies the so-called Devil's Hill.

The true natives of this land are the Hottentots. They are brown in colour and well built. They stink greatly, and their hair is quite curly, but all matted because they smear much fat and soot on it. They also hang many cowries in their hair. They wear rings in their ears, and red beads around their necks, as also a cord on which hangs a little leather sack, in which they keep their money when they get any, their tobacco and pipe. If they meet anyone they do not ask for money, but only for tobacco, which they call Tobackum (also they speak of a Hollanderman). If they get some tobacco from anyone they fill a pipe and light it, and when one of them has taken two or three draws he passes it to whoever sits next to him, and so it goes to all present even if there are 50 of them. They do not sit down on the ground, but rest their buttocks on their calves.

They wear no shirts or coats, but use sheepskins, which they can fit very neatly to their bodies. For needle they use a sharp-pointed grass to make holes in the skin, and in place of thread they use sheep-guts which they render very thin and flexible, and so prepare their sheepskins ['Humpen'], which must serve them for cloaks, coats, shirts, shoes and stockings as well as blankets. On their arms they wear rings made of copper or ivory. Their lower bodies are quite naked, except that in front of their privities they hang a little piece of sheepskin which they call *koros**; and this is the clothing of the men. If one

wishes them to dance, one need only give them a pipeful of tobacco, and then they stiffen their legs and continually leap up and down, and meanwhile sing *Hottendott Brukwa* [Dutch 'brok', 'piece', e.g. of bread] and this is the beginning and end of their continual song. If one says to them *Koros op Zey* they push the scrap of sheepskin from before their privities to the back, and let the whole gear be seen, and laugh therewith.

The women are clothed as follows. Their hair is like that of the men, and like them they wear red beads around their necks, and a sheepskin on their upper body: this they tie in front with thongs, and behind the back it remains loose like a sack. In this they set their little children, and when they wish to give suck they throw their breast over their shoulder and so feed them. I had often heard that if one said to them *Kutykum* they at once lifted the sheepskin and showed their little under-parts. It happened early one morning that a Hottentot woman came in front of my lodging, to whom I said *Kutykum:* she stretched out her hand and said Tabackum, at which I went and got a scrap of tobacco, and came back and gave it to her. When she had it in her hand she asked *Kutykum?*? I replied Yes, and therewith she raised her sheepskin high up and let me have a good look, and then laughed and went off. They have roots wound around their legs, which the Dutch say are sheep-guts. [In Tappen only, and incorrect; but nearer to the facts than the 'guts'.] When they delouse each other they kill none of them nor throw them away, but eat them all up. The wives must be bought by their husbands, and the parents give for this a cow or an ox or a few sheep.

When the husband dies the wife must let a joint of her finger be cut off [see Hottentots*, Finger-mutilation], so that it can be seen from their fingers how many husbands they have had. If a wife or an unmarried girl is caught in whoredom, she is taken into the open with her partner in evil, and there they are beaten to death with sticks an inch thick.

They dwell in huts, which the women or the men take on their backs and carry when they wish to move. Where they set down their huts they make so many holes in the ground as they are in number, and in these holes they and their children sleep; and when it is cold or a cold wind blows they pull their sheepskins over these to throw off the cold and the wind. Under their bodies they have only a little grass. The huts are made of two hoops and covered with old mats above and on the sides.

They eat whatever they can get, dead dogs, cats and rats (that is to say the poor folk, the rich feeding from their herds). From such they pull off the skin, lay it on the fire, let it roast a little and so devour it.

They get their food on the shore from fish which they catch thus [see Hottentots, Fishing*]: they take sharp-pointed sticks and go into the water, and stab with them here and there in the same. When now they feel that the stick moves they hold it fast to the ground until the fish dies. These fish are called rays: they are as wide as a sea-bat, with long thin tails and a tough skin, and like to lie buried in the sand.

Their speech is amazing, and can be learned by few Christians. When they speak they gulp, and hit their tongue against the upper gums, and often click with their tongues, etc.

When the New Moon rises they set themselves exactly facing it, and dance and shriek all night long; and in their dance there is nothing to be seen except that they leap up and down. From this it may be assumed that they have made the Moon their God, and by such dancing think to do it honour. Their wives are very fruitful, and their children are born one after another so that one of them can hardly look over the shoulder of the next, and in their huts there are often 9, 10, and indeed even more children [contradicted by other early writers].

They so greatly like brandy and strong tobacco that they were once much deceived by a Dutch Lieutenant. This officer was sent out into their land with 40 soldiers, and had with him much tobacco and brandy, to be bartered for oxen, cows and sheep. When now he came into the land of the Hottentots these took council how to kill him and his soldiers and take as booty the tobacco, brandy, red beads, ivory and copper bracelets. The Lieutenant learnt of this from a Hottentot who was accustomed to keep company with the Dutch. To prevent it, he ordered a large heap of tobacco to be cut up and much brandy to be broached; and when this was done he had some Hottentots called to him, whereat the whole heap broke loose and came also. The Lieutenant at once ordered brandy to be given and the pipes to be filled and distributed among the savages, and meanwhile the soldiers stood to arms. The savages drank the brandy and enjoyed the strong Brazil tobacco, so that they became drunken and almost robbed of their wits, so that they fell down like cattle and slept. Now the Lieutenant took good advantage of the opportunity, and ordered his soldiers to fall on the sleepers and strangle them, which was done very quickly. Then he went and took all the beasts and drove them away without any hindrance. [Episode not traced.]

Those who must pass through their land have no less danger from the wild beasts [than from the savages], and they must watch especially for the lions, since if such a beast meets them and they do not sacrifice an ox, cow or sheep to it, but seek to kill it or drive it off with firing, it pays no heed to the shooting but attacks them, and whoever it seizes it polishes him off. The old historians tell that the lions and tigers, as also the elephants, can be driven off by fire, but here the contrary has often been seen.

[Examples of lack of fear of fire in tigers, elephants and lions, from Malacca and Bengal.]

The Hottentots run so fast that the best horse cannot keep up with them. They are masterly shots with stones or sticks, hitting anything flying or running with them. If they can surround an elephant in the forest they throw very many sharp sticks or Sagayen into its body, and chase it until it falls down tired out.

The large ostrich is found here. It lays large white eggs in the scrub, and these are collected by the savages and sold to the Dutch for a scrap of tobacco. They also catch the young ostriches, and sell most of them to the East India Company.

Many sea-cows, which seek their food in the bays or arms of the sea, are either shot there by the Dutch with muskets or killed by the savages with their Sagayen or throwingspears. As soon as they are hit they sink, and are drawn by the current to shallow places

or sandbanks, where they are found again by the Dutch who well know such places. These cows have short ash-grey hair, short legs and very small eyes: they have a very fat but oily flesh which can be eaten. I was informed that the Hottentots milk their cows, and when they wish for butter they put the milk into a cow- or sheep-skin previously sewn together at the end, and bind it up tightly, and shake it to and fro until it becomes butter. And just as many of our cows are found which hold back their milk so that nothing can be got from them, so are such cows also found among them, and if they will not give their milk they blow into the vulva until they let it flow.

When they are gay and happy they use the following game: they dig a hole in the ground, and stretch a wet cow- or sheep-hide over it tightly on wooden pegs, and let it dry somewhat so that it becomes quite hard and stiff, and then they beat it with sticks and dance on it [unique in Tappen, but by no means improbable].

At their marriages they kill a beast, and take off the hide or skin and lay it on the fire, and when it begins to burn on one side they eat it up; and, as I have been told as certain, they often devour also the entrails, and bite into them so that the dung runs down their chins; and this may well be credible, since their piggish manners give good witness thereto. They are very true to their wives, and if they earn any food from the Dutch they take it with them to their huts and share it with their wives and children. The Hottentots are of three races, namely Hesiquas, Bruckwas [he quotes two only: the latter are the Briquas, a Tswana tribe] and these are again divided into families, in which only one Paterfamilias is to be found. When one of them comes with his cattle too near to the pasture or waterhole of another, they attack, take the cattle and murder the shepherds and those who assist them.

They can more easily be smelt than seen, since they wear all sorts of clean and unclean fats in their hair, and soot with it. When they go afield they seldom go quietly, but make one leap after another, carrying sticks in their hands.

A Dutch woman of our ship had heard that the Hottentot women had over their privities a piece of flesh hanging [see ‘Apron*’] such as the turkeys have in front of the head, and that this covered the vulva. She wished to examine a Hottentot woman, but this was quicker, and lifted the Dutch woman's skirt up to her navel, and we watched this with amusement through a window; and when we could not contain our laughter the woman heard it and perceived us and went off, but the Hottentot woman laughed.

When the ships arrive from Holland or the Indies and they see them far off on the sea, they run together and make a great shouting, and then many also come from inland, and all go to the ships to see if they can get some rice or bread to eat. They bring many ostrich-eggs and barter them for tobacco, also the lovely ostrich-plumes which one is accustomed to wear as ornaments on hats here.

They catch the seagulls or sea-birds and wild ducks on the water, or hit them in the air with sticks* so that they fall dead to the ground.

They catch and bring wild horses and asses, and kill the wild dogs, which are twice the size of the English mastiffs.

The wild horses, which are of a lovely shape and have a black stripe from nape to tail, are caught by the Dutch in specially made barns filled with hay, and given away as curiosities.

The asses are marked all over, and are very lovely beasts, and are sent as gifts to the great lords of the Indies. Many tiger-cats and tigers are shot here, as also other beasts of prey, and the skins taken to Holland.

The sheepskins found here are of no value, since there is no wool on them but only hair, therefore most of the sheep- or wether-skins are thrown away.

The ostrich-chicks are taken and brought in, and reared and kept in the Fortress, and sent with the ships to Holland, as also at times the Pavianen that are caught young. It also happens that rhinoceroses are killed by the lion-guards [‘Hunters*’], and their horns, if they are still good and not split, are taken to Holland and Germany.

[*At the end of the book he returns to the subject*, *apparently to fill up blank space.*]

The Hottentot. He is of medium stature and not very stout, brown in colour, and has some bunches of long hair, curly, matted from grease and fat, in which hang some cowries. The head is well-proportioned, as also the ears (in which he wears some small copper rings), the mouth and the nose. He has a neat and rather long neck, arms of medium thickness, and is narrow of body with a thin belly, good sexual gear [‘Klopffzeug’] and sinewy legs with somewhat long toes. He wears a cord round his neck which reaches to the pit of the stomach, on which he hangs a little leather sack for his pipe, as also one or more chains of red beads. Around his arms he wears rings of white ivory or brass or copper, and on his shoulders a sheepskin. His privities he covers with a scrap of sheepskin fastened to a strap around his body. In his hand he carries a stick, club, or throwing-spear. He knows nothing of agriculture but lives from his herds of sheep and cattle.

The Hottentot Women. These are generally short, brown in colour, heavily built as a rule but not always, with hair like the men. Many of them smear the upper part of the nose with red colour. Their ears and lips are pretty thin, but their necks somewhat thicker than those of the men. Their nails are coloured a golden yellow. They have long hanging breasts. The navel and what is below it are in their proper places, and this latter is in many cases hung over with a piece of flesh like the wattle of a turkey [see ‘Apron*’], and they laugh when for a scrap of tobacco they let the Dutch or Christians see it. Their legs are well-made, and in their opinion are well adorned when they are wound around with some roots [as above] of trees. They go barefoot. Their body from navel to knee is covered with a sheepskin. The upper body is fully covered behind, but in front only to the breasts, with a sheepskin hung from their shoulders, which at the back stands so far away from the body that they can set their little children in it and so carry them and let them sleep there, nor need they fear that they will fall out. The thongs which are fixed to the sheepskin are tied together in front, the long breasts hanging down naked. They are arch-heathens: their religious service is that at the New Moon they set themselves exactly facing it.

I will leave further writing of this to others better acquainted with this country, and pass to the further description of my journey; and so continue by saying, That on April 29, 1682 we set sail in God's Name, taking with us 2 ostriches for H.M. the Prince of Orange, and other ships took also 8 such; also the Admiral took along 2 Hottentots [statement not traced elsewhere]. And when the other savages learnt in advance that two of them were kept in the Fortress and should be taken to Holland, there came some 100 from inland. When now the time came to embark, and since the savages were not to be trusted too much, soldiers fully armed and with burning linstocks [see Muskets*], were set from the Fortress to the seashore, between which the General marched down, and after him the Hottentots, and all the cannon of the Fortress were fired thrice. And since those savages who were come from inland stood close below the cannon and were not accustomed to the roar of the cannon-royal ['Carthaunen'] they set up a great shrieking and made off inland, and did not return to see the Hottentots depart. These Hottentots cannot well be brought to the Christian faith, since firstly I cannot believe that anyone could attain such a complete mastery of their language as to be able to set before them God's Will clearly and explicitly and thus lead them from heathendom; and secondly because if some were brought to Christianity they would not long hold to it, since they would endure the fierce enmity of the other savages, and would at most hold their Christianity in low esteem. Of this the Hottentot woman [obviously Eva*, but Tappen's 'returned' makes no sense], who returned in 1667 gives a good example: she married a Surgeon, but when he died and she had run through most of his legacy she maintained herself by whoring. She was warned by the authorities here to leave off this evil life, but nevertheless continued in it, and at her death [1674] was despised by many, since shortly before this she fell away from the Christian faith into heathendom.

When now we were near the Robben Island (or Seadogs Island) which lies not far from the town, we saw the Robben (or seadogs) there in great herds together, as also the large fish called Nord-Capers. These are as large as half-grown whales, and can blow the water up to 10 or 12 ells high.

On the said Robben Island are set the rebellious rulers brought from the East Indies, where they must end their lives in very bad conditions, since very many of them who are now at the Cabo de boa Esperance must now work like the Angola Caffirs or slaves for their living, and often get more kicks than ha'pence ['Schaffkäse'] for their hard tasks such as carrying wood and stones, burning lime, etc. Indeed many of their own slaves were brought with them from the Indies, but so soon as these reach here they are freed from their slavery, although bound to serve their masters, and wait until these take them to Holland, if indeed they are pleased to do so. To this Robben Island come not only the rebellious East-Indian rulers and other black folk, but also the rebellious Dutch are kept in slavery there for some years.

Saint Helena for news. Fleet dispersed by storm, *only* Holländische Thuyn *and* Westeramstel *now with his ship. Met by* '*Cruisers**' *from Holland. Northabout**. *Arrived Zeeland August 31*, *1682*, *and so home to Halle*.

45 Christophorus Schweitzer

(*And see item 35*.) *Sailed from Galle January 14 in the flute** Wester Amstel, *with* Cortgene *and* (*he says*) Africa; *but by Valentyn I and DR 2/4 read* Coeverden.

On the 30th [April] we came in sight of *Tafel-Bergh*, *Lewen-Bergh* and *Duyvels-Bergh*.

The 1st of May [DR 23/3] we came to the *Cape of Good Hope*.... We lay still there seven days more, and in that time took in fresh Water, Wood, Turnips, Herbs, Cabbage, Sheep and Goats. I lay at a Dutch Countryman's House under the Devil's Hill: he was forc'd to keep several trusted *Hottentots*, and great Dogs, to secure his Vineyards (which however were harvested before we came there), Cabbage and Turnip-fields from the Wild Beasts. General Reitgloff [van Goens] with his Wife, Stewards, Trumpeters, 12 Halbardiers, all in yellow Taffeta Doublets with Silver Buttons and Lace, and wide red Breeches, and some *Bengal* and other Slaves, was lodged in the Fort with the Commandeur....

The 8th, the General went on Board with all his Retinue, only he left his Wife behind him; for what Reason there were various opinions [see Tappen's impolite ones, page 236. She went home as his widow, DR 7/6/83].

Early in the Morning [DR 29/4] we hoisted up sail and weigh'd Anchors. The Wind was very good for us at South-East; and we went by the *Zee-honden* or *Banditen* Island.... [St. Helena. Northabout*. Amsterdam. Home to Württenburg.]

Background - continued

29/4/1682 In the morning the return-ships ... ran out to sea ...

16/6 Resolutions [Specie and cargo brought by *Burgh van Leijden* for India and unloaded here to be distributed between *China*, *Java*, *Silversteijn*, *Blauwe Hulcq*]

20/6. Resolutions ... Captain of the [English] *Joanna*, wrecked 8 miles* East of the Cape and left sick at a kraal, to be brought here by waggon ... an Assistent*, a Serjeant and 10 to 12 men ... sent to salvage her cargo [later also Olof Bergh sent]

27/6 [104 sailors from her now in the town]

[1683]

July 30 death of Queen Maria Theresa of France: Louis XIV marries Madame de Maintenon. December, war between France and Spain in the Netherlands. Monmouth exiled to Holland.

Background - from official documents in the archives

24/1 [‘*Looff en Vrintschap*’ of ‘Nieuw Casteel’ from Madagascar, requesting water and refreshing: former politely allowed, referred for the latter to the freemen ‘where he will find little’]

29/1 [‘*Fyrebrasse*’ also from Madagascar: requests as last]

4/2 ... two English ships ... tacking in to the roads ...

5/2 ... ships *Charles* and *Prudent Mary* ... for Suratte ...

6/2 ... *Looff en Vrintschap* and *Fyrebrasse* sailed towards evening ... for Barbados
...

46 John Preston

(*Transcribed from photographs of Sloane MS 3672*, *British Museum: also partially transcribed in QB*, *December 1952*). *Log kept in* Charles, *bound for Bombay*, *anchoring in* '*Saldinia Bay*' *on* '*January 25*, *1682/3*' (*DR 5/2: see Style**).

You must keepe in goeing in Nearer the Mayne than the Island called Penguin, within a ½ mile of the Shoare if you will, Noe danger but is visible ... we found here at Anchor the firebrass & and Loveing friend Ship from St Lawrence with Barbados: & a Dens Ship homeward bound verry Rich ... Friday the 26th ... sent our Longbt* with all our Empty Caskes ashoare, to fill Water & likewise sent a present to the Governour, for the better Entertainmt of our Ships Companey; This day reced on board 2 Longbots Loadings of Water, haveing a good conveniency to fill with Troughs the Water into the boate at the end of a bridge [Jetty*], with a Hose from the Trough to the funell in your boate abt two faths long is enough Your boat allways a floate at the lowest Ebb, The Tides ebbing & flowing but little.

Satterday the 27th.... This day gott all our Water a board & scraped our Ship cleane on both sides, The Barnicles and fowless all off under & above the Wales with long scrapers & scrubbed Broomes haveing faire Weather.

Sunday the 28th. This morn we weyed from hence ... about 4 miles off Shoare & there came to an Anchr* with our best Bower.

Munday the 29th.... Yesterday the Firebrass Captn Golam sayled hence Towards Barbadoes, & the Loveing friend Ship Capt. White who came from Madagascar with Negroes [DR 6/2].

Tuesday the 30th ... on the Afternoon accompanied the Corps of the chief of Deans The Comander offcers Merchts being envited to see him interd with the rest belonging to the Shoare.

Wednesday 31st ... about 4 of the clock afternoon weyed Anch: in Compy with Capt: Lake in the Prudt. Mary [DR 8/2]....

Background - continued

8/2/1683 ... *Charles* and *Prudent Mary* having provided themselves with the necessary drinkingwater, their Captains came to take farewell of the Commandeur ... set sail ...

8/4 [arrival from Galle *Hendrik Mouritz*, *Croonenburgh:* latter badly in need of repair]

9/4 ... arrived the return-ship *China* ... from the bay of Gaele ...

13/4 ... anchored ... the flute the *Chivetkat* ... with rice for this place ...

30/4 [mention of lease of 'the Company's pleasure-house Rustenburgh']

6/5 [mention of 'our little flute *Baaren*']

11/5 ... reached the roads the new yacht* *Hoogergeeste* ... intended for the slave-traffic at Madagascar ...

19/5 ... reached the roads ... the flute* *Westeramstel* ...

30/5 ... Mevrouw Joanne van Ommeren, widow of the late ex-Governor-General ... went aboard the ship *China* to return home in her ...

31/5 ... late in the evening came to these roads from Bengal a little English ship called the *Susannah* ... request for refreshing and to take in water ... granted, but by the messenger it was insinuated to the colonists that they were unable to sell any refreshing whatever ...

1/6 ... the Ceylon return-ships ... set sail ...

6/6 ... arrived the return-ship *Goudesteijn* ... had sailed with 8 others named *Huys te Spijk*, *Tidor*, *Schielant*, *Asia*, *Europa*, *Strijen*, *Java* and the little yacht* *Schiebroeck* ... under the command of the Upper-Merchant ... Hendrik van Oudtshoorn ... from the Sunda Strait on March 25 ...

7/6 ... anchored in the roads ... *Schielant* ...

47 John Hallwell

Transcribed from xerographs of log MR 72, *kept in* Susannah, *from Balasore* '*towards England*'. *His dates are of course Old Style**.

Tusday 15 [May] ... Mangofullaces [Mangas de Velludo, Velvet Sleeves] seen and black birds with whit bills [Cape Hens]....

Thursday 17 Last night att 4 a cloke wee saw Cape de gulles bearing NbE about 12 Leagues of ... att 5 this morning wee haled up ENE the wind att SE to goe In for Cape bonn Esperance pray god send us well in....

Friday 18th These 24 hours ... wee haue stood two and fro butt cannot fetch into the Cap ... att this day noone wee haue sight of a flag upon a Sugar Loafe which as they say mackes the bay wherethe shipps rides seuerall sealles seen and flocks of pigeons [Cape Doves].

Satturday 19 ... rainey durty weather and foggy lickewisse wee tacked and stood off....

Sunday 20 [still in sight of Table Mountain].

Munday 21. Last night att 10 a Clock the wind being Contrary att NNWt a consultation [Council*] was Called which was agd on to goe in for Cap Bonn Esprance ... thincking itt more conviently to tacke in Watter and refreshments here then to trust

to St. Hellena, att 2 a Clock this day itt being foggy weather ... we brought to and houe

our Lead feinding 20 fatham wattr ... and then itt pleased god to Cleere up a Littell Wee saw the Iland of Pinguin and Immediatly afterwards wee saw the Shipps in the road being in all 7 Saille 3 bound homeward [DR 8/4, 9/4] the rest ellce where bearings of Land att anchor the Westermost Land [Mouille Point] West the towne SSW and the fort under the Body of the Table Land SbWt [DR 31/5]....

Tussday 22th. The 3 ducth shipps which ware homeward bound sett saylle this morning, one great square sterne shipp with a flagg* att toppmast head the other 2 fligh boats [flyboats*]: all 3 come from Zealon-our boat went ashore this day to aquainte the gouernr of our wants which wast watter and fresh prouisions who ciuilly made

answer wee may haue whatt the place aforded [*sic:* see DR 31/5].

Wednessday 23th. the wind blowing hard att SE these 24 hours.

[Then nothing until:]

Wednesday 30 [DR 8/6]. This morning att 6 acloake haueing taeken In our Watter and other Nessesaryes wee waid ancher....

[The log ends on June 25.]

Background - continued

8/6/1683 ... the *Susannah* having provided herself sufficiently with water ... and being ready to sail, we sent a short little letter by her to our Lords and Masters ...

10/6 ... anchoring in these roads the returnships *Asia* and *Strijen*, the former so leaky that 4 pumps must be continually manned ...

13/6 Towards noon ... reached the roads ... the little yacht* *Schiebroeck* ...

15/6 ... resolved to unload the said return-ship *Asia* sufficiently to be able to find the leak, her cargo to be loaded provisionally into the little flute* *Baren* and the Company's large sailing-shallops* ...

22/6 [cargo of *Asia*] to be put into the flute* *Wester Amstel* ... and her cargo to be transferred into the little flute *Baaren* ... to be taken to Batavia ... *Azia* and *Wester Amstel* to join the return-fleet homewards ...

28/6 ... The Hon. Commandeur, accompanied by the Hon. Majoor St Martin, rode out to the wood [? Hout Bay: back on the following day]

48 Elias Hesse

(*See also item 42.*) *From Pulo Chinco June 22, 1682. July 23 Batavia. Sailed February 27, 1683 in* Goudenstein (*under* '*Major Andreas Martini*', *Major-General Saint Martin*) *with return-fleet* Huys te Spyck, Tydor, Schïeland, Europa, Asia, Java, Huys te Stryen, Schiebroek *under Governor-General van Outshoorn* (*Valentyn I confirms*). *Sunda Strait: March 20* Goudestein, Tydor, Schieland, Java *lost touch with fleet and went on alone. May 26, storm*, Goudestein *now alone.*

But it seemed, as if the raging storm-winds lessened a little, so that our almost vanished hopes somewhat revived, as also the speckled birds [Cape Doves] which were sometimes seen in great numbers, and the great cold which we had already begun to feel for some days, gave us new hope and trust that we should soon reach the Promontory of Good Hope or Capo de bona Speranza; and in this anticipation we were also not deceived....

On May the 30th we sighted the coast of Africa, but our navigators did not know exactly whereabouts we were.

On June the 4th we had fourty-four and a half degrees south latitude and therefore reckoned that we could not be far from the Cape de bon Esperance. For that reason the same evening (since we had again lost sight of the land seen four days previously) a Ship's Council* was held, and it was resolved, That if in the next two days we did not again sight land, we should set our course for Saint Helena.

The wind still blew steadily from the south-east, and next day we perceived the Table Mountain, which fortunate sight caused a yet greater joy among the crew because all had given up hope, and despaired of ever seeing the Cape, thinking that we had already passed it.

We now neared the Table Bay with a longed-for speed. Early in the morning of the 6th the Commandeur van der Stell sent a shallop* far out to sea, to enquire from us whence we came, and whether we were Oorlammers* or Oorambaren. To inform him of this we therefore fired three guns slowly, indicating thereby that we were a return-ship coming from the Indies. About noon the Major sent back the skiff [*sic*] with letters to the Commandeur, on receiving which written advice the Commandeur sent two officials aboard us, to salute and welcome the Major by them. Another skiff [*sic:* '6 sheep'?] followed these, with all sorts of refreshments for us, including 6 sheep, which were at once slaughtered by the soldiers and sailors, and a joyous start on the mutton and the green refreshments was made by Jan Hagel*. Many took the cabbage and ate it uncooked and quite green, saying that this was indeed a recompense for four months of privation.

Since now because of a dead calm that had fallen we could not sail in that day to our desired Table Bay, by orders of the Commandeur four shallops came out to us, which then must tow our ship with great toil to the roads, where we dropped anchor with good fortune and in GOD's name. All that night both in the Castle on land and in the other ships lying in the Bay there was a continual firing or salutes in honour of our coming and especially because the Major was on board [DR 6/6].

We had indeed hoped for have found here the others of our fleet which had been the last to leave us, as also the rest of the return-fleet which had already separated from us at the beginning of the journey, but no one knew anything of them. Instead, we found here an English ship together with two Dutch outward-bound vessels, the ship *Hoogergeht* [*Hogergeest*] and the flute* *Wester Amstel*, the latter bound for Batavia and the former for Madagascar; as also two small vessels, the flute *Cat* for Ceylon and the little flute *Baeren* for Mauritius. These all lay at anchor in the Table Bay [see DR 13/4, 6/5, 11/5, 19/5 and item 47].

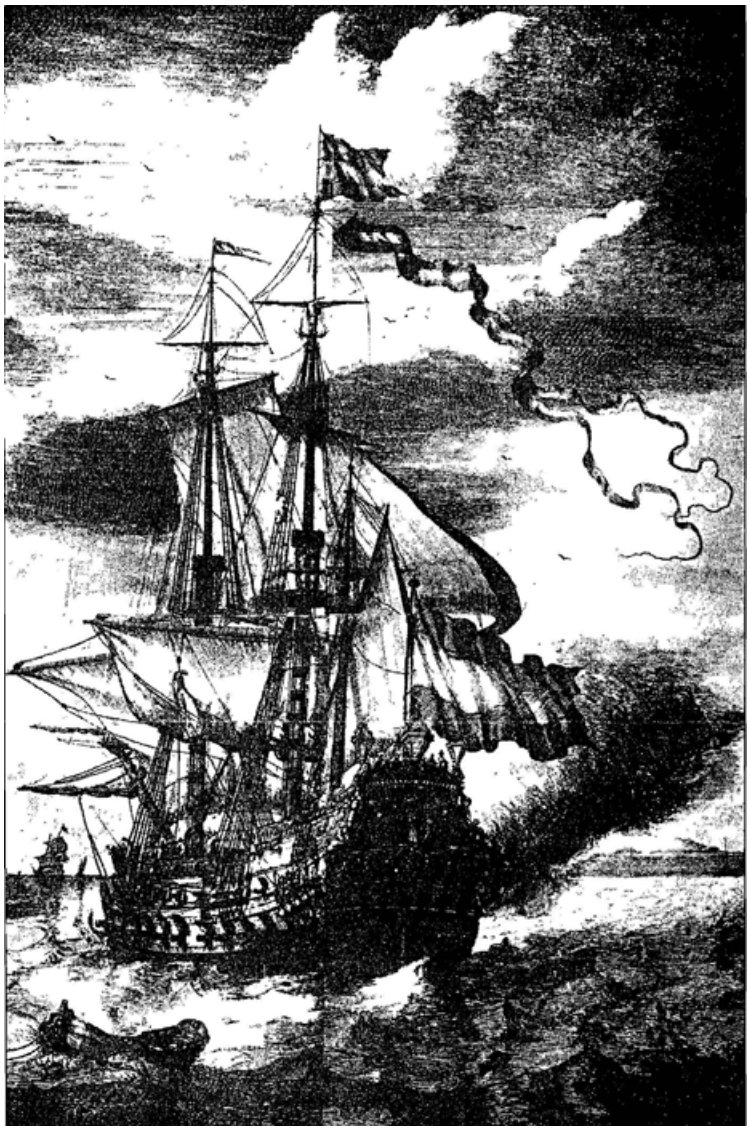
On June the 7th the Commandeur himself came out with trumpets and drums in a very fine shallop*, to take ashore our commander Major Martini; and before they left the ship a toast to welcome him was drunk with the noise of the trumpets and the thunder of the cannon, while the Captain commanding in the Castle of Good Hope did not let his guns grow cold.

For my part, after I had sent news of my arrival I was taken ashore that same day with the young Olitzch [both of whose parents had died] in a land-skiff, by a good friend, a Silesian [Claudius*], sent thither from Batavia in the service of the Company. There I was at once welcomed by an honest Saxon, and regaled that same evening with the fruits of the country and African wine. In this agreeable company and with this good refreshment which at once restored me, I soon forgot the manifold discomforts of the journey, the often-endured dangers to life, and all that had troubled, grieved and oppressed me.

Next day, June the 8th [DR 7/6], our Vice-Admiral, *Schieland*, at last arrived safely at the Cape. Within the next eight days there also appeared the flute *Stryen*, the *Asia* [DR 10/6], and finally the yacht *Schiebroek* [DR 13/6] of our scattered return-fleet. From these we had indeed much news, and none of them could find words sufficient to tell what misery, need and distress they had endured. It was thought that *Tidoor* and *Java* had made for Saint Helena. [*Java* reached home: *Tidoor* wrecked, as below, page 251.] *Asia* arrived in Table Bay with three pumps continually in use, having lost her Gallion* in the great storm: all her men complained bitterly of the dangers endured, and were very worn out by the continual pumping, as also her Skipper would not and could not go out to sea in her again. The *Huys te Spyck*, in which was our Admiral, became so leaky in the first storm that ... she must return to Batavia. The ship *Europa* was also lost sight of in that first storm, and it was not known, what was become of her [see DR 26/11]....

After this a Council* was held in the Castle of Good Hope regarding *Asia*, whether she should go on to Holland or remain at the Cape. All the Masters were called to this, and by a majority it was resolved, That after she had been repaired as well as could be foreseen, she should go on to Holland. This being decided, the other ships were ordered to remain here until then.... It was also resolved, that the flute* *Wester Amstel* should be taken along to Holland [with the most valuable cargo from *Asia*], and that her cargo from Holland should be loaded into the little flute *Baaren*, and this was now ordered to Batavia instead of Mauritius. [Repairs day and night to *Asia*, and a new shallop* built for *Goudestein* to replace that lost in Sunda Strait.]

Meanwhile I went ashore almost daily to stroll around inland with my good friends, finding it extremely pleasant everywhere. Since I hope to have sufficiently touched on the country as on the nature of its inhabitants in my second chapter above, I pass over them here in silence, and concern myself no further with such description. But I nevertheless add here that such passing of the time and such conversation with my compatriots here for a whole month, pretty well emptied my purse of the money brought from the Indies; and as the well-known proverb says, not only ‘Amici sunt fures temporis’, but also adds



[30] *Asia*, Admiral Ship of the 1678 return-fleet (items 35, 48) as the mainmast flag and pennant show. Topgallants are shown, furled, as also the spritsail and spritsail-topsail. [From a 1680 engraving by W. Swidde.]

'non solum fures temporis sed etiam pecuniae'-they not only steal one's time in their friendly conversation and chatter but also steal one's money. This I now well experienced myself here, since it is very costly to eat at the Cape, and those inhabitants or Freemen who seek their sustenance from the ships arriving know well how to attract to themselves with special kindnesses the folk from those ships, when they come ashore, but also manage to gain from them what they own. Here money only is regarded, and nothing else, as in other places in the Indies, and without it one can do but little.

Worthy of note besides this were the waterfowl called Penguins seen in the Bay, which the French call Tauquets and Happevoye. These birds are just the size of a small wild duck, and swim very fast under water. Their food is small fishes, and when they catch up with their prey they follow and grasp it, and then show themselves again above the water like ducks. We also saw in lovely clear weather two whales, a male and a female, which coupled together and sought for this a calm sea, and chased each other.

[Notes on whales in Spitzbergen and Holland omitted.]

I must however make a short mention of the enemies* of the whale, which are the dolphins, the tunnies, and especially the swordfish.

This last-named fish is indeed not of the largest, since it is seldom seven ells long (and in many places shorter), so that it is far from reaching the size of the whale, for which however it has a natural enmity. From its snout there extends a bone about three or four inches broad, as long as a Brabant ell or somewhat more, set all along the sides with sharp spikes, as wide as the length of a finger. I have often seen them in the sea. This bone it uses against the whale in place of a sword, but it does not attack the same alone but rather in company of a good number of comrades. They all together attack the whale or other large fish, and cut it with the said sword so much in the belly that at last it must die from loss of blood, tired out and helpless. Then its enemies eat nothing of it but the tongue from its mouth, from which it occurs that dead whales are often to be found without tongues [eaten by the Killer-whale].

As greatly as the whale is hated and persecuted by the swordfish, as truly also it is loved and led by the little Trusch-fish*, of which Arnoldus Montanus tells in his description of Japan that it continually swims ahead of the whale, whose sight is not very clear, and warns him by a gentle touch of the tail should he come into danger of running aground on shallows or reefs.

Here I take my leave of the whales and swordfish, and from the sea make my way ashore, to let my readers take note of some things there which I passed over in my previous description of the Cape of bon Esperance; but I will not say much concerning these.

In Africa an unusual sort of cat is found, from which is obtained the Civet or Musk. The Civet-cat is very rough-haired, and from head to tail about an ell long. In short, it is the size of a marten or fox, in colour almost like a wolf. It eats very greedily raw flesh, mice and eggs, as also rice and all manner of sweet things. Near its genitals or kidneys these animals have a pouch full of small holes in which the Civet lies, like a white froth or

pus, and flows from it, and is thus collected.

This Civet-froth has at first a very strong and unpleasant smell, which however becomes agreeable when it has run together and stood for a time in the air. From this cat a quarter ounce of Civet is usually collected daily in a silver, copper, or horn spoon. Before this matter is collected (which some think to be the sperm of these animals) the cat is often chased hither and thither with a stick, to anger it, so that the Civet may run out in greater quantity.

Another sort of cat is also found here, called Tiger-Bushcat. Their spotted and very lovely furs are valued quite highly and exported to many parts, being especially used for inner linings.

I was also told much of a strange sort of sheep with very large tails, of which one alone (without the sheep) sometimes weighs more than 30 pounds. I did not indeed see here such Persian sheep with large tails, but did so at Batavia.

Before we now set off on our voyage from here to Holland we had in the Table Bay on some days very strong gusts and squalls; also afterwards such a strong storm from the sea that our ship could not safely lie to three anchors*, but in this weather little by little was driven, with those anshors, towards the shore, for which reason we found ourselves in no little danger, as also did some of the other ships; but at last the good God saved us by the subsiding of the storm. After we had stayed a month longer in the Table Bay, and during this time provided our ship with firewood, water and other provisions, and *Asia* had been considerably repaired, the day of our departure was fixed, and all those who were ashore were ordered by beat of drum to go aboard. Therefore I also for my part bade a last farewell on the 5th to my two good friends, the Saxon and the Silesian, and made my way on board with the rest, and on July the 6th [DR] we left the Table Bay, or El Cap bon Esperance under sail with 6 other ships, with a south-west wind.... *St. Helena*, *now English. Equator*, '*taking up again our consciences which we had left here on the way out*, *as the saying is*': *saturnalia*, *crew disguised as pirates raiding officers' quarters for drinks. Storm: mizzen-mast and yards of mainmast lost*, *cabin window* (*in square stern*) *broken by a wave*, Asia *sunk but all crew saved. Sargasso. Channel. North Sea: news of wreck of* Tidor *on Ameland Island. Dutch coast: skipper forced to hide from riotous crew. Amsterdam: offer of re-engagement refused. Handed over young Olitzsch to his uncle at Dresden. Did not remain in Saxony: his preface is dated from* '*Colln an der Spree*', *today Neuköln*, *part of Berlin*.

Background - continued

6/7/1683 ... *Goudesteyn*, *Schielandt*, *Azia*, *Schiebroeck*, *Stryen*, *Wester-Amstel*, and *Hoogergeest* reached the open sea, the first 6 for the Fatherland, the last for Madagascar ...

8-10/7 ... busied ourselves making ready the little flutes* *Baaren* and *Civekat* ... the former laden with the goods from the flute *Wester-Amstel* to take them to Batavia, the latter ... for Ceylon ...

8/9 ... arrived safely ... the newly-built yacht *Castricum* ... sailed with the newly-built ship the *Ridderschap van Hollandt*, the *Courtjene* and the *Couverde* ... on May 9 from Texel with the *Huys te Neck* ... in the afternoon reached the roads *Courtgeene* and ... *Princes Marye* ...

14/9 ... arrived the newly-built yacht* the *Ridderschap* ...
20/9 ... anchored ... the ship *Couverde* ...

49 Nicolaus de Graaff

(*And see items 22*, *28*, *36*, *39*, *62*.) *He was at home in Egmont-on-Sea from 1679 to 1683*, *acting as Sheriff* (‘*Schout*’) *there. On May 9*, *1683 he sailed from Texel in* Ridderschap van Holland, *with* Cortiene, Koeverden, Castricum, *and the flute** Langewyk. *Northabout**. *São Tiago. Abrolhos: service of thanksgiving and feast*.

On September the thirteenth we sighted the land of the Cape, and next day [DR 14/9] anchored in the Table Bay, finding there two of our companions, *Cortiene* and *Castricum*, which had arrived the previous day [DR 8/9]. We found here also the *Princes Maria* [DR arrived 8/9] ... which had set sail a month before us. Also on the 20th of this month [DR] a third of our companions, *Koeverden*, arrived safely at the Cape. The next day a general feast was held in our ship, the Governor and the principal Servants on shore being invited ... our business at the Cape being completed we made our farewells, and sailed on the last day of September [DR]....

Batavia November 27, *thence in 1684 to Macao and back*, *in 1685 to Bengal*, *arriving back in November; and then to the Moluccas*, *Ternate*, *Amboina*, *reaching Batavia again on September 19*, *1686*.

Background - continued

30/9/1683 ... the ships lying here ... sailed ... we still await the flute* *Langewyck* which sailed with them from Texel on May 9, and the *Huys te Neck* ...

22/11 ... the English ship *Metsenburgh* [request for water and to buy refreshing, action as above 31/5] ... shortly before her departure from England another ploth (as they call it) against the King was discovered [Monmouth]

23/11 ... the ship *Europa* ... anchored about ten o'clock ...

50 Jos. Haddock

Transcribed from xerographs of his log (*MR 80*) *kept in* Massingberd. *All dates are of course Old Style**. *Sailed from England for Surat June 15*, *1683*.

Nouember 12th [DR 22/11. Margin: ‘Anchord in Saldina or table bay vnder cape B: Sprance in 5. faths good ground.’] Munday. about 3 this morn. began to heaue short, & at 5 ... wayed. about 6. it proued calme Anchord againe with our streame Anchor*.

At 10: aclock the seabreze cominge in wayed againe & made the best of our way. ouer for the Castle ... about 5. At night we Anchord. in 5 faths about halfe amile from the Shoare, At 8. moord. caryd out our smal bower to the Wward, our best lyeinge to the Soward, the hardest winds here are SE. winds which sometymes come voyalently from the high Mountaines: soone after at an anchor, I sent our boate ashoare, with 2d: mate & P'sur, to request of the Gounr liberty to Watter &c which he very freely Acquested vnto; After we Moord, first veerd out acable & ½. Struck our Yards & topmast. bloweinge very hard at SE.

13th [Margin: 'I prsented the Gounr with 2 Punch: Stronge Beere a bar Brum: Mumm*: a kegg of Sturgion, 2 Wfalia hams 6 tong: a gar Olives, a glass with capers, cauiare, Anchoues & a hamper with sack, claret, & reneis Wine 3 doz'] Tuseday this Morn had these bareings when moord, vizt charles Mount So½E: the Table hill SoSoW½ Wt. the Sugar loafe hill WtBSo½So. the SE End of Pengwin Ile NoNoW.-This morn helded our ship & scrubd one side, got abord 2 Longboates Watter for the which here is very good conuenancy the watter beinge caryd out by abridge or apeere hed [Jetty*] that fill the watter with the caske in the boate by 2: spoutes this morn came in agreat E india Dutch ship from Battauia [*Europa*, DR 23/11], that wintrd at Mauritious where winterd, alsoe 3. English Ships, vizt the President, the Pertia Marcht & Surat Marcht & went thence in Augt. I went ashoare to pay respects to the Gouener who Inuited me to diner, where he treated me very Kindely. after diner caryed me to his country house about 3 or 4 miles* in the Bay & is amost pleasant place as any in Europe, beinge planted with most sorts fruits & flowers with many pleasant walks in the garden [Constantia].

14 Wensday this morn Erley made an End, scrubing the other side & got a board 3 boates watter....

15 Thursday. this morn got vp our Yards & Topmasts & sent our boate for Watter this Afternoon the Gounr went Abord the Dutch Ship & as he past by vs Saluted hime with 5 guns goeinge & returninge the castle, returninge 3. in Answer.

16 Fryday ... fetcht Abord our best bower Anchor*, intendinge to saile in the Afternoone, but beinge little winde could not - Wee this Noo: See Aflag out vpon Sugar loafe hill beinge asignal for aship in sight, this forenoone I went ashoare, to pay my thancks to the Gounr for his Kindeness, & left with hime my letters for England beinge, Aletter to ... 3 of my Owners & aletter to my deere Wife, he promis'd to send them by this Ship in the Roade or p[er] first conueyance, for Europe - At takeinge leaue of the Gounr he pesented me with 10: very good Sheepe, agreat quantity of garden herbs, as collwarts, Spinage, lettis, carotts &c. he has indeede bine very courtious - he hath bine Gounr here 4 Yeares, his Name Simon vander Stell borne at Murutious.

17 [DR 27/11. Margin 'At 8 this morn weigh'd from Saldina or Table Bay'] At 8 this morn weighd with asmall breeze at WNWt but soone after fell. little winde & varable, till towards Noo: then a fresh gale at So & SSWt: that we went betweene the Ile Pengwin & the cape, had soundings from 12: to :16 faths: the Ship that the flag was put out for proues to be a great dutch ship I supose form Euroape [*Vryheyt*, DR 27/11]....

Background - continued

27/11/1683 ... came in about 10 o'clock ... the *Vryheyt*, having sailed on August 7 from Holland ... the English ship set sail ...

[1684]
Franco-Spanish war continues in Luxemburg.
Background - from official documents in the archives

16/1 ... news that some Namaqua Hottentots had come to the kraal of the Cape Hottentots... some of their chiefs appeared [at the fort] today ... the Commandeur questioned them closely as to the mine of which they had spoken so highly two years ago, and they not only adhered to their story but offered forthwith to show the way to it [Schryver sent with them 23/2, back unsuccessful 20/5]

12/4 Resolutions ... experience has taught us that much reliance cannot be put on the English, who according to their usual treacheries might well undertake something ... against the Company without previous declaration of war ... the total strength of the Coy's Servants here, military and civil, does not exceed 310 ... not more than 80 fit soldiers [for the Fort] ... resolved to take 37 soldiers from the flute *Boven Caspel* [arrived 11/2 outwards bound] ... resolved to build a small ravelin outside the gate of the Castle ...

30/11 Letter to Holland ... It is from the Sonquas that we may expect the greatest mischief ... a people of this sort called Obiquas last month took the cattle of a party of freemen who had gone inland ... and killed one of the party ... They ... live in the mountains, and maintain themselves exclusively by robbery ...

10/10 ... Goens ... had to be carried to his room ...

28/11 Resolutions ... a hill of copper has been located on the indications of a certain Capt. of the Namaqua tribe ... the ore ... found to be very rich in copper ... not more than 7 or 8 miles* from the coast ... resolved ... to send at the first opportunity a hooker* or other small vessel ...

[1685]
Franco-Spanish war in Netherlands continues. February 6, death of Charles II of England, James II reigning until 1688. June 11, Monmouths rebellion put down, he beheaded July 15. October 18, Revocation of the Edict of Nantes.
Background

11/3 [arrived *Silversteyn*, *Coeverden*, from Galle January 9]

30/3 [sailed homeward *Princes Maria*, *Vryheijt*, *Princeland*, *Courtgeene*, *Honsholsredyck*, *Silversteyn*, *Langewyck*, *Romeijn*]

7/4 ... seen lying at anchor in the roads the King of England's ship the *Phenix* with also a merchantman from London the *Prudent Maria* ... shortly before them anchored here the ship the *Ridderschap van Holland* ...

51 John Tyrell
(Plate 31)

Transcribed from photographs of Sloane MS 854, British Museum: also partially transcribed in QB December 1952. Log kept in H.M.S. Phenix, *bound for India. All dates are of course Old Style*.*

27th March 1685. This day at 6 in the Morng we see Severall Corus Trunks [Trombas] and peeces of Trees and 3 albitros by which Sines we did judge that we Could not be far from the Shore at 8 we Se 3 Mangofalugos [Mangas de Velludo, Velvet Sleeves] and at 10 we See the Table Land Bearing ENE distnce by Estimatn 10 Lgs.

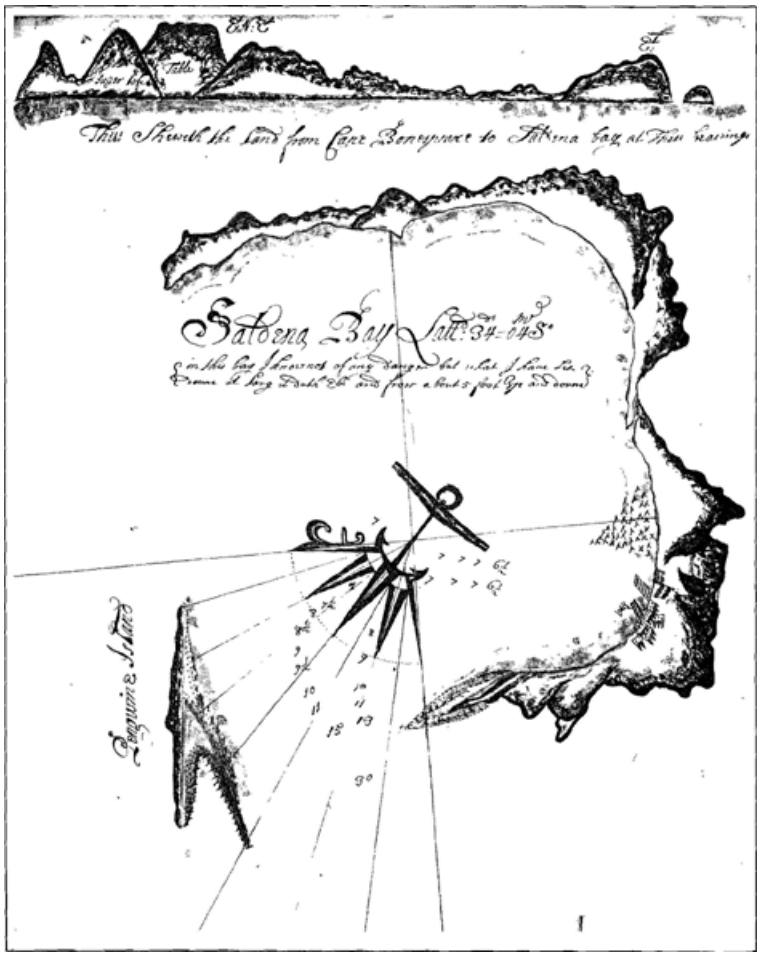
....

Ditto we Munted 10 Gunes and Stocked 2 anghors and Clered oure Ship, we Stearing for Saldine bay and at 4 we was abrest of the Suger Lofe, haueing the Cape to beare S by E and at ½ past 7 we Got in betwene Pengwine Island and the Shore and anghored [DR 7/4]....

The 28th Ditto at 6 in the Morning we waighed and New Berthed our Ship goeing furder in and anghored in 7 fadam haueing the westernmost point [Mouille Point] to bear Wt ½ So and the Body of Pengwine Island to beare NNW½W and the Town SWbS and at 8 Came in a great duch Ship [*Ridderschap van Holland*] which Come from amsterdam and bound for Batauia at 9 our Second Lieutenant, Mr Bingo, went in the Bardg* ashore and the Longboat followed hime, haveing Caske* in her, and found Good wattering the duch was Very Sivill in thayer expression in promising to supply us with any thing that thayer place did afford.

We filled 41 Tunns of Watter and bought Sum Sheep at 2 doller and a halfe each at a hous distane from the Towne about a Mile by a small River in the bay [Salt River ?] but at the Towne they Sould none Under 4 dollers. There is plenty of foules 5 for a doller, and Green Trade as Cabetches, Carrets, Millions [Melons] and Jnions [Onions], but deare they have wine that they make there at 9d a quart the Nearst prise and frute as Quinces plenty and aples Sum Small Quantity in the Companyes Garden*, and other frutes.

From the 28th Until the 31st in which Time we fild oure watter heeld oure Ship and fitted Sum of oure Rigeing and Block which was Chaft and worne. I was a Shore Severall Times the duch Makeing great inquiry for brandy and Chees but it was not Suferd to Come a Shore Except you brought it so that thayer Custom Masters did not see it. Nither is any of the Inhabitance Suferd to goe a board of any Ship for the Gouerner would not admit any one to Come a board of us, only a young man which did belong to hime.



[31] From item 51. Note the misidentification of the Devil's Peak as ‘Sugar Lofe’, and the two jetties.

We Sould Sum brandy to the Quantity of 10 Gallone for a doller and a half per Galone and Chees 5 pound for a doller.

We Could not get any Catle, only Sheep are plenty wood is Very Deare in the Time that we lay ther the weather was Moderat and Sumtimes we had gusts of wind and Raine at SSE and So but it did not Last Long the wind Verable from the No to the WNW & to the SE but for the Most part it Laye at the SSE and WNW Moderat gales.

Thayer Moneys are Spanish dolers and they pase but for 4 Shilling they are of all Coines but Small Moneyes is Sumthing Lease.

The 3rd of aprell we had the wind at SSE a fresh gale haueing Ended all our Bisnes we waied at 6 in the Morng [DR 13/4] and at 8 we Lay by for aboat which Came out of the Bay after us, and went on board of the Prudent Mary in which Time we Got in oure boats and Stowed oure anghors.

At 9 we Made Saile at 12 at Noone the Suger Lofe boare ESE ½ E distance by Estimation 3 Lgs and at 4 in the Eveng Cape boanesprance boare SEbE distance by Estimatn 10 Lgs from whence I doe take my depart home God preserve....

Background - continued

13/4/1685 ... both of the English ships ... set sail for Surat ...

16/4 [mention of 'the Company's Orchard Rustenburgh alias Rondebosje']

18/4 [arrived French *St. Anthonis* from Surat]

19/4 [arrived *Emmenes*, *Eenhoorn*, yacht* *Bantam*, flute* *Adringhem*, *Stavenis*, with van Reede as Admiral* and Commissioner. He, with Councillor de St. Martin and Upper-Merchant Banchem came ashore into the Fort]

19/4 ... imprisoned Hottentots ... four condemned to death for the murder of a freeman's servant* ...

27/4 ... the imprisoned and condemned Hottentots ... were beaten to death with sticks by their own tribe, in the presence of their Captains ...

28/4 ... arrived the two return-ships the *Beurs* and the yacht* *Jamby* ... the French ship again set sail and at last got out to sea ...

2/5 ... *Emmenes* and the *Eenhoorn* received their despatches ...

4/5 ... arrived the return-ship *Saint Maartinsdyck* ... this evening the flute* *Stavenesse* reached the open sea ...

52 Christopher Fryke

(*And see item 43*.) *He sailed from Batavia in* Beurs, *Admiral* of the return-fleet*, *with* Jambi, Saint Maartensdijk, *on February 12*, *1685. Bantam. Princes Island. Mauritius*.

And came at last, after nine weeks Sail, in sight of the great Promontory of *Africa*, the *Cape of Good Hope*, which rejoyced us much. One of the Carpenter's Men had the good fortune to spy Land the first of any; for which good Tydings, the Master presented him with two Ducatoons and a Can* of Canary, as it was ever the Custom on Board our Ships, to gratifie those that first discover Land. We immediately loosned our Anchors, and fasten'd them to their Cables, and made directly towards *Tafel*-Bay, which lay 20 miles from us. The next day we were within two Hours of it, there being a very great Fog and the weather being very Calm, which was very extraordinary, it being for the most part very Blustring there nearly all the year round. We hall'd out our Shallop*, and Long-Boat*, into which having sent some of our Men with Oars, they hall'd the Ship into the Haven. This took up over half a day, before we were come to a place where we could cast Anchor; and hoisted up our Flags, after which they at Land did the same likewise from the Tower of the Castle [DR 28/4].

Then our Master went on Shoar, and gave the Governour of the place an account of our Success thus far on our Voyage. Here we found three Ships [*sic:* five, DR 19/4] from *Holland*, and one English Fly-boat [Text 'Flute*': not traced], riding at Anchor. We took off our sails, bettered the Yard, and then all that was defective alow and aloft. By the first boat that came out there were sent us some Sheep, and good Herbs, on which our Folk could refresh themselves; also a few *Hottentots* came on Board of us, to some of which, our Men made several little Presents, but only of Eatables. Our men were likewise permitted to go on Shore by turns for a day or two: Some of the Crew were sent into the Woods to fetch Fuel, and others were sent with the casks for a Recruit of fresh Water.

I and my Upper-Surgeon received also our turn to go on Shore. I found the place extraordinary full of those Soldiers, which belong'd to the three Dutch Ships that lay there. I took some Meals with the Free-men [sentence omitted by 'S.L.', and in fact seems to be intrusive]. Among those arrived I knew not one, but they were all of good Spirit, and said that they had had a good Wind and a fortunate Voyage thither. Never-theless the Hospital* was pretty full of sick Men, so that I told over 200 there, which were forced to be left behind at the Cape, not being recover'd before their Ships were obliged to go on, on their Voyage. These Ships being gone off, the Town was left quiet and empty, and everything was cheap again; for that we had more conveniency of making our selves Merry. I spent some time very pleasantly. My Landlord where I took my meals was of *Newrenberg*, and by Employment a Brewer. He had two Daughters, one of whom

was very Beautiful, and already Ripe for Marriage. He had lost his Wife about two years before, by her Death. He was well-to-do, but wished to go again to *Europe* and his Fatherland, but was loath to abandon so much of his Goods: Since (if my memory does not fail me) when such a Free-man* is desirous to leave the Country, he must give over all his Estate, Gardens, Houses, and all the Beasts, to the Company, without receiving any thing for them. As for his Ready-Money and Moveables, these he can take along by paying some little for them. I had here the best Opportunity to take the said Daughter to Wife, since she became very obliging towards me, and let it be seen that she esteemed me highly. But I was heartily set upon my Return home, that I might once again Enjoy the free Liberty of my Religion [? Lutheran].

So that without entering upon this Marriage, I made all necessary Preparation, and made ready to go back to my Ship; and the very lovely Estate of the said Freeman, which lay directly behind his House, could in no wise blind my eyes; but I could well believe, that it would have been to him a great Soreness of Heart to abandon so pleasant a place, and such fair Orchards and Gardens stocked with the loveliest Trees and Fruits of the Land, to return to his Fatherland.

Once I went out with no other Company but my Thoughts, in very fair weather, to fetch a Walk for half a day, and came unexpectedly after but a short quarter-hour [half mile: S.L. ‘quarter mile’ in error], to the so-called *Leeuwen-Bergh*, between which and the Sea, I saw some of those Hutts which the *Hottentots* dwell in. Upon sight of which, my Curiosity led me to enter one of them and see what kind of a life these People led. As I came within, I found a parcel of 'em lying together like so many Hogs, and fast asleep; But as soon as they were aware of me, they sprung up and came to me, making a noise like Turkies. I was not a little concerned; yet seeing they did not go about to do me any harm, I pull'd out a piece of *Tobacco* and gave it them. They were mightily pleased, and to shew their Gratitude they all lifted up those flaps of Sheep-Skin which hang before their Privy-Parts, to give me a sight of 'em. I made all haste to be gone, because of the nasty stench; also I could readily perceive, that there was nothing special to be seen there. Moreover, some I found at their Eating, which made the Stink yet more unbearable, since they had only a piece of Cow-Hide, laid out upon the Coals a Broyling, and they had squeezed the Dung out of the Guts, and smeared it with their hands over one another. And the Hide they take when it is broyl'd, and beat it, and so Eat it. This so turn'd my Stomach, that I made haste to be gone, and went from thence and climbed a little up the *Leeuwen-Bergh*, which is not at all Rocky, but cover'd over with Grass. When I had gone a little upwards, I sat me down, and took a view of the Country all round me, since from there I could see deep into the Sea and far over the Land. While I turn'd my eyes to Seawards, I espied far at Sea a ship making to the Fort with full Sails; and presently after I saw the Flag hoisted up in the Castle. Upon this I came down to go towards the Fort, and as I was going along the Shore, there stood a Servant Maid, who was come to fill a little Tub with Sand: As soon as she saw me, she cry'd out to me in *Malay* as loud as she could, *Maridi Sini Senior:* Oh Sir, Pray come and help me. I ran full speed towards her

to help her, and when I came up to her, she shewed me a dreadful long Serpent, that had just then been devouring a young *Hottentot*, and had swallowed him up all but the Legs, which still stuck out of his Mouth. This put me in so great a Consternation, that I made ready to flee, which the Maid seeing, she gave a great Shriek, whereat some *Hottentots* that lived thereabouts came running towards us. As soon as they saw what was the matter, they got themselves ready to catch the Serpent; And having brought out some long Ropes, they threw them with wonderful Dexterity about its middle, and drawing the Ropes, some at one end, some at another, as hard as they were able; they held him so fast, that it would not have been wonderful had they cut him in two. At last came some of the Men with great Poles, with which they killed him. He was about sixteen feet long, whereat I wondered not a little. Then they took this dreadful Creature, fastened it to a Stick, and let it dry. What was further done to it I cannot say, since I went back to the place from whence I was come.

In my return I met with some Wild *Hottentots*, who were come down thither from the *Cafre's* Country, about 100 Miles from thence. They, as I observed, are almost blind in the day time, at least extream Dim-sighted; so that they do most of their Business by Night [not confirmed elsewhere].

In the time that I staid in the Cape, I saw once one of these Wild Men of the Land judged, in a near-by Village, for Theft: He had some time before stolen some Cows and Sheep from some of the Freemen, without the Approbation of their King, (which is a Dignity they confer on some one amongst 'em; and wherever they are, tho' but to the number of five or six together, they always make them a King or Captain to Rule over them, without whose Consent no kind of thing is to be done; and in this the Company does not at all interpose, but leaves them to their own Customs). The Criminal was tied Hand and Foot, and stretched betwixt two Posts, about half a Man's height from the Ground; after which some Men came with great Sticks, and beat him from above and below so that a quantity of blood ran from him. If they hit him on the Head or Breast he is soon dispatcht; but they never give over as long as they find any Breath in him. When he is expired, they carry him to the Wood, and there fasten him to a Bough, and leave him for a Prey to Wild Beasts [cf. DR 27/4].

The Ship I espied coming from the top of the Hill, was an English Fly-boat [‘Flute*’], which came and cast Anchor by the other English Ship that lay there before....

After we had staid there full three Weeks, which is more by a Week than Ships generally do, every body was ordered on Board, to make ready to be going. Our Master being Commodore of the Fleet, call'd a Council* of the Masters and Mates, to settle the Orders of their Voyage. The next day a Review was made, where all were found in very good order, except for two that were sick; but yet, as ill as they were, they would not stay there, but would venture on their Voyage.

The next day, after the Review was made, our Master, with the Book-keeper and the Masters of the other Ships, went once more a Shore to wait on the Governour to enjoy the Farewell Feast: They came back that same night in order to go out of the Bay with

the fair Wind; which was done that very night, being the 25th of *May* [DR 14/5]; and then we steer'd our Course North-West.... [St. Helena; Sargasso Sea; Amsterdam; home to Ulm.]

Background - continued

14/5/1685 [*Jamby*, *Beurs*, *St Maartinsdijk* given their despatches]

15/5 ... the Dutch return-ships set sail ...

17/5 ... arrived at anchor in the roads ... the ship *Voorschoten*...

31/5 ... two French ships reached this bay by tacking, taking the utmost pains to reach the proper roads ...

1/6 ... were the two French Royal warships *L'Auseau* ... and *Lamaligne* ... carrying H.E. the Heer de Chaumont, Ambassador of His Most Christian Majesty to the King of Chiam ... and this morning H.E. van Reede was visited by the Chevaliers de Fourbin, Grammaison and Dufay ...

2/6 This morning 3 French noblemen were given leave at their request to amuse themselves by hunting ...

3/6 Westerly wind with fine and pleasant weather which tempted the Ambassador to take his pleasure incognito in the Hon. Company's Garden ...

4/6 Weather and wind as before, which again induced the Ambassador to visit the Hon. Company's Garden in the afternoon, where by chance H.E. van Reede, accompanied by the Hon. Saint Martyn, met him ...

[It is noticeable that there is no mention of the Jesuits, still less of their being granted the use of the Garden-pavilion, although van der Stel was fully covered by the presence and approval of the super-Commissioner van Reede]

53 Chevalier de Forbin (Plate 32)

Translated from his '*Journal ...*', *Amsterdam 1730: it is also translated in Strangman*, *with valuable background material. He was born in 1656*, *and from 1675 to 1682 served in Holland*, *the Mediterranean*, *the West Indies*, *etc. In 1684 he was one of the witnesses to the secret marriage of Louis XIV to Madame de Maintenon. When de Chaumont was appointed Ambassador to Siam he wished to form* '*a retinue that would do him honour*', *and invited de Forbin among others. He accepted*, *and early in 1685 was sent to Brest to take charge of the equipping of the flagship* L'Oiseau *and the frigate** La Maligne.

Next day, Saturday March 3 ... we set sail....

The voyage was very prosperous ... At last, after a journey of three months we arrived at the Cape of Good Hope, so exactly in accordance with the dead-reckoning of our Pilots that the error was of 15 leagues only, which is of no importance in such a long voyage.

The Cape of Good Hope, which is nothing but a long chain of mountains, extends from North to South, and ends in a point pretty far out to sea. By the side of these

mountains opens out a large and wide bay which runs very far inland, and of which the

shore is very clean [navigationally] along the mountains, though very dangerous everywhere else. We did not dare to go ahead during the night; but next day, although the wind was pretty contrary, we thought that there would be no danger in entering [DR 31/5].

We had hardly reached the centre of the roads when the wind suddenly fell; but while we were being carried by the currents towards some rocks [Walvis Rock] not a musketshot distant, by good luck the wind rose again and took us out of danger. We had not had such a perilous day: at last, after much toil, we anchored a hundred and fifty yards from the fort built by the Dutch, where they have a strong garrison. Two shallops* came at once to inspect us; next day I was put ashore to go to salute the Governor, and arrange with him the salutes to be given, and the refreshing which was greatly needed by the crews. I found this official in the fort* which I mentioned: it is a regular pentagon, very well fortified. I was received very civilly and everything I asked for was granted: it was agreed that the salutes should be gun for gun, and that we should be furnished, on payment, with all sorts of refreshing [DR].

I came back to report my negotiations to the Ambassador, who was charmed by the good manners of the Dutch, and at once had two shallops* launched; and everyone thought only of going ashore to relax from the fatigue of such a long passage.

The Jesuit Fathers went first to salute the Governor, who overwhelmed them with kindnesses. They told him that while ashore they would greatly like to spend their time in observations which could be useful to the world, and which they could not carry out so conveniently elsewhere. He very agreeably allowed them to do this, and to facilitate it he lodged them in a magnificent pavilion built in the Garden* of the East-India Company. In fact, they made various very useful observations, and fixed the longitude* of the Cape, which had not been determined until then except by the dead-reckonings of the Pilots, a very dubious manner of calculation and subject to many errors.

While the mathematicians made their observations I was very glad to make mine also, and inform myself exactly of the conditions of the country. This is all that I was able to find out during the short stay we made.

The Dutch are masters of it. They bought* it from the principal Chiefs of the tribes which inhabit it, who, for a sufficiently small quantity of tobacco and brandy, consented to go further inland. There is a very good watering-place there. The country is in itself dry and arid, but in spite of this the Dutch have a Garden* there, which is without dispute one of the largest and most beautiful in the world. It is surrounded by walls. Besides a great quantity of plants of all sorts, the most lovely fruits of Europe and the Indies are there in abundance.

Since the Cape is a sort of entrepot, where all the ships plying between Europe and the Indies and vice versa come to refit and take in the refreshments they need, it is abundantly provided with everything that one could wish for. Twelve leagues from the Cape the Dutch have established [*sic:* 1688, 1689] a colony of French, to whom lands have been given to cultivate. They have planted vines there, and sow wheat, and obtain there in abundance all the foodstuffs necessary to life.

[32] LE COMTE DE FORBIN

The climate there is temperate, the latitude is 35 degrees [*sic*]. The Natives of the country are Caffers, a little less black than those of Guinea, well made of body, very amiable, but otherwise the most uncivilised and brutish people in the world. They speak without articulating, with the result that no one has ever been able to learn their language. It is not however impossible to educate them: the Dutch take several in infancy, who first serve as interpreters, and later become reasonable beings.

These tribes live without religion. They feed without choosing on all sorts of insects that they find in the country. They go naked, men and women, except for a sheepskin that they wear on their shoulders, and in which vermin breed which they eat without horror.

The women wear as their only ornament the guts of freshly-killed sheep, with which they surround their arms and legs. They run very fast. They rub their bodies with fat, which makes them disgusting but very supple and good in all sorts of leaping. Finally, they sleep all together pell-mell without distinction of sex, in miserable huts, and couple like beasts with no regard for relationship.

Bantam, *Batavia*, *Siam. When the Embassy sailed homewards at the end of 1685 he remained in Siam as Generalissimo and Grand-Admiral*, *which post he resigned after 10 or 11 months*, *reaching Pondicheri in January 1687 and Brest in July 1688. He again served in the French fleet*, *being taken prisoner in 1689 when in command of a frigate. Escaping from captivity in Plymouth he again took part in naval warfare against England*, *retiring in 1710 and dying in 1733 or 1734* (*Strangman*).

54 François-Timoléon de Choisy

(*And see item 56*.) *Translated from his* '*Journal du Voyage ...*', *Paris 1687: there is also a translation in Strangman*, *with occasional errors and with the omissions not indicated*, *but with valuable background material. It is an entirely delightful account*, *and perhaps reflects something of the writer's odd character - in 1668*, *at the age of 24*, *he was a notorious transvestite in Paris society*, *but then reformed in rural solitude*, *and by 1671 was living in a monastery. In 1676 he acted as secretary in Rome to four French cardinal-conclavists*, *and was proposed by one of them as Ambassador to Siam; but de Chaumont had already been appointed*, *and de Choisy had to content himself with the title of* '*coadjuteur*', *carrying the right of succession himself should de Chaumont die. The whole book is very well worth reading*, *but preferably in French: only the part dealing with the Cape is included here*.

He sailed from Brest in L'Oiseau *on March 3*, *1685*, *with the authors of items 53*, *55*, *56 and the returning Siamese Ambassadors etc. mentioned at the beginning of item 56*, *accompanied by the frigate** La Maligne.

May 25 [1685]. We are on our way: that is something, but we go very gently. Where then are the so-furious seas of the Cape of Good Hope? since those in *La Maligne* are sure that it is not far off. A very gentle wind, and a very calm sea.

May 26. Always little wind. But we are studying wonderfully hard: my Siamese will go ahead. We do not reach the Cape; but we learn a thousand lovely things. Everyone is in despair. Oh, we'll never reach the Cape! Oh, we'll not get to Siam this year! But I tell them: All will be well - things have started too well for them not to finish well. If we do not reach Siam, we'll pass the Winter at Surat or at Bantam, in those lovely lands. We are all good friends: we shall be longer together: I shall know Siamese better. They feel like chasing me away, with my fine consolations that they find hard to swallow. Father de Fontenai continues his explanation of the globe: this morning he showed us very clearly why the latitude is so easy to find, and the longitude so impossible. During the discussion I thought that I had found this longitude: my reasoning was good, I neared the goal; but unfortunately I was wrecked near harbour. A little unsurmountable difficulty turned up: otherwise I would have sent you my authorisation to collect the hundred thousand écus which the Dutch have promised to anyone who shall discover [a means of finding] the longitudes*.

May 27 ... This morning we saw flights of small birds: the Daimiers [Cape Doves] are back.... Our Pilots differ in their reckoning: some think us a hundred leagues* from the Cape, others fifty. We see lots of birds; but we see none of the floating weeds that are a sign of the nearness of the Cape [Trombas].... *La Maligne* has just passed us to port, and those in her called out that we were not more than 15 leagues from the Cape: we don't believe a word of it. They are to sail ahead, carrying a light by night: they draw less water than we, and anyhow they are reckless fellows.

May 28. We are contented: the wind is strong and there is a mountainous sea ... the small birds appear, a piece of floating wood has just been seen - all signs of near-by land....

May 29 ... flat calm all day....

May 30. A quartering wind, all sails drawing, a good sea: we are making more than two leagues an hour. No sign of the Cape as yet, although they say it is very high land. There are no clouds: we must still be more than twenty leagues off.

Land! Land! All's well: land in sight, the Cape in sight! We are about twelve leagues off. What a pleasure after so long an absence! We shall eat green things. The wind is not too good for anchoring, but it will become tolerable tonight.

May 31. We did not dare to enter the roads by night; but at dawn, in spite of an adverse wind, we took our chance; and today has been the most dangerous and the most tiring of the voyage. We had a very nasty quarter of an hour: in the centre of the roads the wind suddenly fell, and we found ourselves very close to a rock [Walvis Rock], towards which the current was setting us: we were at less than half a musket*-shot from it when fortunately the wind returned and got us out of this awkward fix. We had to tack all day, and change course twenty times. The wind was strong and contrary. Both our

topsails were carried away. At last, after much trouble, we anchored [DR]. Two ships' Captains and the Fiscaal* of the Cape came out to see who we were, to pay their compliments to our Commander, and offer everything in their power.

June 1. There are four ships in the Cape roads, carrying a Commissioner-General on his way to the Indies for the Dutch Company, to inspect their settlements and put all in order. He is Baron de Reede, and holds complete authority, even to change the Governors. This morning he sent a gentleman to the Ambassador with his compliments. The ship in which he is wears the flag of an Admiral*, as is the Dutch custom in the seas of the Indies; and as soon as they pass the Equator they wear the flag, even if only a small merchantman. The Ambassador sent the Chevalier de Fourbin to pay his compliments to the Commissioner-General and to the Governor. We saluted the fort with seven guns, this replying with the same number. All the ships in the roads, even their Admiral, saluted us with seven, five, or three guns: we replied to each with the same number, and each thanked us with one gun. Our sick, our Jesuits, our Missionaries went ashore: I shall go tomorrow well accompanied, since they say that on the mountain are some bad-tempered lions, and very impudent wild elephants.

The Commissioner-General has just sent a present to the Ambassador, of fruits, vegetables and fish. We shall eat salad! I care nothing for the rest.

June 2. The Commissioner-General is very polite: he has just sent us twelve fat sheep. I was ashore this morning. The fort* is very fine. The houses in the town* are thatched with reeds for the most part, but are so clean, so white, that one sees they are Dutch. There is a Garden* laid out by the Company: I wish it were in a corner of Versailles. There are avenues of orange- and citron-trees as far as the eye can see, vegetable beds, espaliers, dwarf trees, all traversed by streams of fresh water. All the produce is stored in good order, and nothing is taken out except for the ships of the Company. All our youngsters have gone shooting: they were provided with horses and dogs, and with hunters* to take them to the good spots [DR]. The lions and elephants have withdrawn somewhat since the country has become more populated; but the monkeys have remained on the mountain. They are very fond of melons: at times two hundred come in array to take them from the garden. They first post four or five sentries on the rocks or trees, which give a certain call when they see anyone.

The pluckiest apes enter the garden in a line, and pass the melons back from hand to hand. They go back on three legs, each with a melon in one hand; and when they are chased, they very carefully put the melon onto the ground, and defend themselves by throwing stones. This happens several times a year. There is a big monkey at the fort, at which more than twenty stones were thrown this morning without being able to hit it: I think he would make a good fives-player.

Our hunters have just returned, laden with roebucks and partridges. They were entertained at a house two leagues from here. They found many houses and much game, but a difficult country: they walked all day in grass up to their necks - they will sleep well! For our part, we went out fishing: it is a more peaceful pleasure, and no less

a great one. All the fish caught here is excellent, firm-fleshed, plump, tasty: it seems to us better than your turbots, perhaps because we are really hungry.

June 3. The watering will be finished tomorrow: on Wednesday everyone will re-embark. Our scurvy patients are already fit; and we sail on Thursday, if God wills. It is very pleasant here, but we must go on to Siam.

I shall sleep ashore in the pavilion of the Jesuits, in the centre of one of the loveliest gardens of the world. No sooner did these good Fathers appear than the Commissioner-General offered to put them up, and give them a place suitable for their observations: they took him at his word. Their lodging is between two terraces, where there is plenty of room for their largest telescopes: they lack nothing, bread, wine, fruits. They entertain guests. Are they stupid? They show the Dutch Jupiter's satellites, Saturn's rings, the Milky Way. They have little microscopes, with which very pretty little shapes can be seen. In fact, I believe that, if they wished to remain here, a house would be built for them. Intelligence is well-regarded in every land.

June 4. This evening we had a good observation, and claim to have rectified the longitude* of the Cape of Good Hope: it is 3 degrees less easterly than is believed. However, in this region 3 degrees of longitude make forty-eight leagues; and that is very important in navigation. Here is the proof. The emersion of the satellite occurred here on June 4 at 10.40 p.m., and thus 74 minutes later than at Paris. In these 74 minutes the satellite covered only 18½ degrees, and consequently the Cape is only 18½ degrees East of Paris [actually 16^{o} 10′], whereas the ordinary charts still show it as 3 degrees further East. This one observation has repaid the cost of all the instruments which the King ordered made. Don't you find me a great astronomer? [Hardly! For the correct explanation see in item 55, page 278.] I was not altogether useless there: while Father de Fontenei was at his telescope, and the others looked after the clocks, at times I counted ‘one, two three’ to mark the seconds.

June 5. This morning I went to call on the Commissioner-General. The Ambassador is the prisoner of his rank; but since I am a nobody, I went to thank him for all the kindnesses he has done to the French. He received me most cordially. He is a man of sixty, not unlike the late M. de Navailles: good-looking, with much intelligence. He spoke Portuguese and I French: we had no need of an interpreter. He is very well versed in the concerns of rulers: your teaching helped me greatly. Our conversation did not flag: it almost always concerned the King, all of whose great gifts he knows as well as if he had spent his life at Versailles. Your King, he said to me, speaks like Holy Writ: he orders, and everything is done. You tell me that he spends four or five hours at the Council every day, but for my part I believe that he is always there, to judge by the way he handles his neighbours. We took tea two or three times. M. de Saint Martin came in: he is a Frenchman, Major-General Commander-in-Chief of all the armies of the Company in the Indies. He now came from Holland, on his way back to Batavia. These two men are closely united: more than thirty years ago they were young, penniless, job-less and brave, and with muskets on their shoulders went aboard a ship for the Indies. Since then they

have risen step by step [‘par les formes’] to the highest posts under the Republic. They had a friend who began his career as long ago as they did, and who died two years ago as Governor of the Cape of Good Hope [Bax, in reality seven years ago, 1678]. They are going to build him a magnificent tomb, with an inscription explaining the careers of the three friends.

Two wounded men and a dead tiger have just been brought in from two leagues away. These two men were on their way, each with a loaded musket*: the tiger leapt on one: the other at once fired at it, and wounded his comrade: the furious animal ran at the man who had just fired: the other, thus freed and wounded as he was, fired at it, hitting it between the eyes and killing it. I don't know if this is quite clear, but at least it is quite true.

The Ambassador came incognito for a stroll in the Garden*: he met there the Dutch Generals. Great politeness, much compliments on both sides. Pure chance led to this interview, and both sides were very pleased to have made each other's acquaintance. I was in the confidence of both.

I have come back aboard to sleep, since we sail tomorrow.

June 6. All our officers came back from the hunt yesterday evening, with partridges as large and as fat as pullets, little roebucks, turtle-doves. Everything is good here, meat and fish.

The gun for departure is fired: we shall set sail. But it did not depend on us: no wind, we must stay here. We have gained by it some sucking-pigs and some Canary wine which the Commissioner-General has sent us.

June 7. We set sail at dawn, with a good north-wester. We had to tack to get out of the roads, but as the wind was not strong we did not have so much trouble as when we came in [DR]. *La Maligne* finds it hard to keep up with us, although she boasted of being faster than *L'Oiseau*. We are still drinking Brest water: that of the Cape is not so good. Our sick are fit again, their gums are healed: six days on land is a good medicine. The rest of the crew are somewhat tired: the poor fellows have done in five or six days what the Dutch spend three weeks over, watering, wooding, other provisions. They have hardly slept: they will rest at Bantam. That is now the goal of our desires; and when we have been there for five or six days, we shall hope for Siam. All the Dutch Pilots feel sure that we shall arrive there this year.

We have doubled the Cape: so we entered the roads and came out from them in spite of the wind. But I do not advise our successors to imitate us: when arriving from Europe with a strong adverse wind it is better to drop anchor to the North of Robin Island, which lies at the entry to the roads, and wait there in peace for the wind to change, so as to enter without fear of the rocks. The Dutch told us, that when they saw us tacking so boldly into their roads, they thought that at any moment we would break ourselves up on the rocks which lie below the surface.

June 6. I think it is as well to tell you all that I know about the Cape of Good Hope, while I remember it.

The Dutch settled there in 1651 [*sic*], and bought* about a league of land from a King or Chief of the local people, at the place on the roads where the ships are most sheltered. First they built a wooden fort* where they set twelve or fifteen guns; but for the past four or five years [*sic*] they have been building a stone fort with good ramparts, in which there are more than sixty guns. The Commander or Governor is well lodged there. It has no outworks or moats, and thus is good only against the folk of the country, who have no arms but poisoned arrows. There are more than a hundred houses [in the town*] within a musket*-shot of the fortress, all clean and white in the Dutch fashion.

The people for forty leagues around the Cape are called *Outentots* by the Dutch, because they often make use of a word in their language which sounds like this [see Hottentots*, Name]. They are separate and independent one from another. They have a King or Captain whom they obey. All their wealth consists of herds, and they move from place to place as necessity compels them. They have hardly any religion: only, when they have need of rain for their pastures, they ask this from a certain Being whom they do not name, who lives, they say, right up above, and offer him a sacrifice of milk, which is the best thing that they have. The Secretary of the Commissioner-General [not identified] has seen them around a bowl of milk, their eyes raised to heaven and in a deep silence: he is a very reliable man whose word should be believed [cf. item 21]. At the Cape there are some thirty families living in caves [*sic*], who from time to time bring to the Dutch herds of sheep, which they barter for tobacco and brandy. They seem good folk: they are well built, with a cheeky air, pretty thin, with fine legs, white teeth, lively eyes full of intelligence, swarthy in colour, always in good humour, but very dirty and stinking. They put grease on their hair, eat their lice (of which they have no lack), cover their shoulders and their privities with a sheepskin, the rest of the body being naked. The women put guts around their legs, eating them when they are hungry. For the rest, they are very lazy, liking better to go hungry than to work, although eating is their greatest pleasure.

They very severely punish murder, theft, and adultery, and when one of them is convicted of such a crime the whole tribe assembles. The criminal is brought, and the King or Captain gives him the first blow, which is followed by the others until he dies of the beating. A month ago the King of the *Outentots* came himself to the Cape to beat to death five of his subjects who had killed a Dutchman [DR 27/4]. He left them lying there, and the Dutch hanged them up on a gallows, where they still are.

The Dutch go forward little by little into the country, which they buy with tobacco [see 'Bought*']. They have already made a colony ten leagues inland, where there are eighty families [Stellenbosch]. Last year they sent out an expedition* [DR 16/1/84]: I talked for a long time with one who went with it, and he told me that he went more than a hundred leagues, finding everywhere the same nomad people with their flocks. He will go again next August, and hopes to reach the Kingdom of Manamotapa, which cannot be far from there [perhaps Claudius*].

For the rest, I doubt if there is in the world a better land to live in: everything is

good there, the oxen, the sheep, the poultry. The game there is exquisite: three sorts of partridge, white, red, grey, some of them as large as pullets. They do not have the flavour of the partridges of Auvergne, but their flesh is firm, white, and at least as tasty as that of hazel-hens. The roebucks, the lambs, the turtle-doves are excellent: I mention only what we ate. All the foods of Europe are found in abundance, and an infinity of others which you do not know of. And, what is surprising, amidst all this everywhere is full of deer, wild boars, tigers, leopards, lions, elephants, wild asses [Zebras], wild dogs without tails or ears [*sic*] which hunt in packs, elands of a prodigious size, wild horses [Quaggas] marked in black and white and more beautiful than Barbary steeds. It has not yet been possible to tame these: they are caught in traps, but kill themselves. The Commander told me that he is having a sort of net made, to catch them without their being able to harm themselves in struggling.

All these wild beasts are moving further away as the country becomes inhabited. Nevertheless, it is not long ago that a lion took a large horse at a hundred paces from the Cape [town], and dragged it by the tail to the top of the mountain. A trap was laid for it, where there were five or six loaded blunderbusses around a piece of an ox: he did not fail to return to it, and the guns went off and killed him. His skin is in the Fort [see Museum*].

The wine of the country is white, very pleasant, with no earthy taste, and much resembles that of the Genetin: it improves at each harvest. Each year there come more than twenty-five ships of the Company to refresh at the Cape. They take in provisions, which cost them practically nothing, sheep, fruits, vegetables: their lovely Garden provides them with these.

I am tired of writing about the Cape. If later on I remember anything else, I will shove it in where I can. This is not a formal account: these are very familiar letters [to Abbé de Dangeau] where everything is put in that comes to the tip of my pen. For instance, should I omit the roots, the plants, the flowers? There is an infinity of them which M. d'Aquin does not know, and which he would put to good use for the service of mankind: I shall try to bring him some of them.

We ran South all night, and the Cape is far away.... [Batavia. Siam until December 22, 1685.]

55 Father Guy Tachard
(Plates 33 to 43)

(*See also items 59*, *64*, *70.*) *Translated from his 'Voyage de Siam ...' Paris 1686: it is also in Strangman*, *but with a number of errors and many unindicated omissions*.

King Louis XIV having ordered that Jesuit mathematicians should be sent with his Embassy to Siam 'six were chosen from various who offered themselves ... as Superior Father de Fontenay ... the five others were Fathers Gerbillon, *le Comte*, *Visdelou*, *Bouvet and myself.... We were provided with the Tables of the satellites of Jupiter ... also a gift of several large telescopes*' [*and sea-charts*, *quadrants*, *clocks*, *microscopes*, *thermometers*, *barometers*, *etc.*]. *Arrived at Brest February 10: delay to await* La Maligne, *a 30-gun frigate*. Abbé de Choisy embarked in* L'Oiseau, *with the returning Siamese Mandarins*, *four missionaries and the six Jesuits: de Vaudricourt in command*, *with two Lieutenants including de Forbin of item 53. Twelve young gentlemen*, *3 in* L'Oiseau, *9 in* La Maligne '*commanded by M. Joyeux*, *who had already made several voyages to the Indies*'. *Ambassador de Chaumont embarked on March 1. Sailed at dawn on March 3. Daily Mass*, *Vespers on Sundays and feast-days*, *sermons to crew*, *catechism thrice weekly to servants*, *soldiers and sailors. Porpoises*, *sharks*, *bonitos*, *flying-fish. Equator April 7*, *with 'the badly misnamed Baptism*'.

May 17 ... we began to see ... the large greenish reeds, ten or twelve feet long, called Trombas* ... the surest sign of nearing the Cape of Good Hope ... birds now in greater numbers than previously, which did not leave us until far beyond the Cape. Some had black backs and white bellies, the ends of their wings a mixture of these two colours much like a chessboard, and no doubt for this reason called *Daimiers* by us French: they are about the size of a pigeon [Cape Doves]. Others were even larger than these, dark above and entirely white below, except the tips of their wings which look like black velvet, and which the Portuguese for this reason call *Mangas de veludo*, Velvetsleeves....

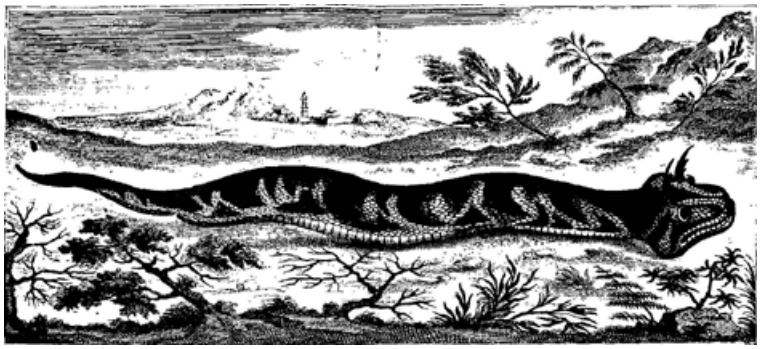
[May 29. Cape sighted, 15 or 20 leagues away.]

May 31. The Cape of Good Hope, as it appears when coming from Europe, is a long series of mountains which run from North to South and terminate as a cape in the sea. The two of the chain which we first saw from about ten leagues distance from this cape, are the Table and Lion Mountains. We first sighted the former: it gets its name because its top is very flat and looks much like a table. The Lion is thus called because it has nearly the form of a lion crouching on its belly: although it lies nearer to the sea than the other, we saw it only after this. From a distance they seem to be one mountain, and in fact they are not far distant from one another. Below these mountains there lies a great bay, oval in shape, which extends to the East for about two or three leagues. At its

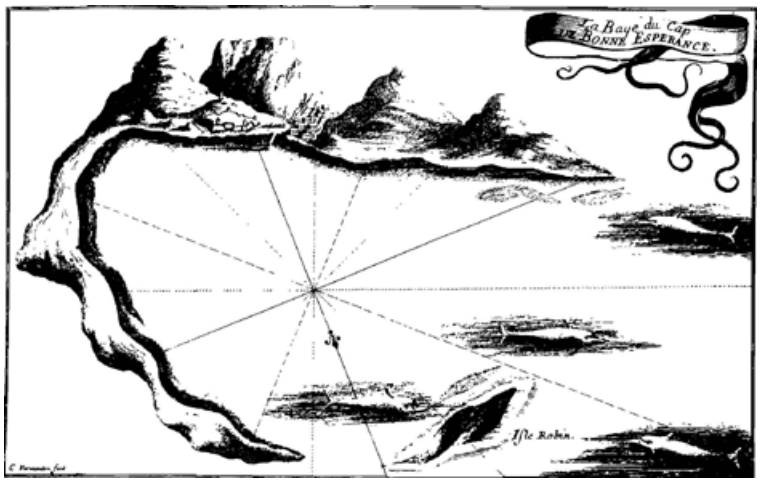
entrance it is nearly two leagues wide, and in circumference about nine leagues. South [*sic:* North] of the mountains the whole coast is clean [without sunken rocks], but everywhere else it is dangerous. The Commissioner-General of the Company of the Indies [van Reede], of whom much will be said later, told us one day that he had repeatedly felt alarm as he watched us tacking so near the land, and had even contemplated ordering a cannon to be fired, charged with ball, as a warning to us to keep to the open sea and await a more favourable wind.

Towards the centre of this bay the Dutch have built a pentagonal fort* under the Table Mountain, which covers it to the South, and behind the Lion, which, about a land-league away, affords it protection from the West. As one enters the bay a low-lying island is left to port, called Robin Island, in the centre of which the Dutch have planted their flag. Thither are relegated natives of the country, and sometimes also of the Indies, whom they wish to punish by banishment. They are made to work on the making of lime from the shells cast up by the sea.

The weather being favourable for entering the bay, we were hoping to come to anchor at about ten in the morning; but just as we entered the wind dropped suddenly, and in the calm we found ourselves carried rapidly by a current towards a rock lying near Robin Island [Walvis Rock], on which we could see the waves breaking violently. The longboat* and the shallop* were launched at once to tow us away from this dangerous place. In spite of the vigilance of the officers and the alacrity of the men in carrying out their orders, we none the less were in great danger of running onto this rock, by reason of the speed of the current or the tide, which carried us to less than half a league from the breakers, when suddenly came a land-wind which compelled us to tow the shallop in our turn; and soon we were free of our troubles. We nevertheless lost two of our topsails



[33] The CERASTE or HORNED SNAKE. From item 55, probably by Claudius.



[34] TABLE BAY. The coast-line to the West is of course ridiculous, as is the size of the Fort. The building near the Jetty is probably the first Hospital. The Devil Peak is exaggerated in size.

... which the wind tore to pieces. We were obliged to keep tacking about all day in the channel, in a most tedious manner, so that ... it was nightfall when we reached the anchorage. Even then we had to weigh anchor next day, to come nearer to the fort and seek shelter in the lee of the mountains from the extremely violent westerly winds which prevail at the Cape in Winter, the season we then were in. We thus came to anchor next day one hundred and fifty paces from the fort [DR 1/6].

There were in the roadstead of the Cape four large ships which had been there for a month, although they had sailed from Holland more than eight weeks before us [DR 19/4]. The first was flying the pennant of an Admiral* below the flag: this is a sign of the sovereignty that the Dutch Company claims in the Indies. It was commanded by the Baron Van Rheeden, who was sent by the East-India Company with the title of Commissioner-General to visit the Company's settlements there. He had authority to give whatever orders he thought fit, to change the officers in the factories and even the governors of the stations, if he considered it necessary. The second was under the command of the Baron de Saint-Martin, a Frenchman by birth. He is Major-General of Batavia and, as such, commands all the troops of the Republic in the East Indies. The Sieur Bocheros, formerly a ship's captain and now councillor on the staff of Van Rheeden during the period of his commission, commanded the third. The fourth ship was also

under the orders of Saint-Martin, who was to proceed almost immediately to Batavia.

All these gentlemen, with whom must also be included Monsieur Vanderstellen, the Governor, or, as the Dutch say, the Commandeur of the Cape, are of singular merit, and it was a happy chance that enabled us to make their acquaintance during our stay here.

We had no sooner anchored than two boats came alongside to find out who we were. On the following day, towards seven o'clock in the morning, the Commissioner-General sent his greetings to the Ambassador. The latter, in turn, despatched ashore the Chevalier de Forbin ... and three other officers to salute him, and request his permission to take in water and the necessary refreshing. He granted the request with much politeness, and, being told that there were on board several gentlemen in attendance on the Ambassador, caused an invitation to be sent them to come ashore to shoot. He also enquired if there were no Jesuits on board. It is probable that those who had come alongside on the previous evening and had observed us somewhat attentively, had spoken to him about us on their return. M. de Forbin replied that there were six of us who were going to China, and that there were also other ecclesiastics on board on their way to Siam.

Then they spoke about the saluting, and it was agreed that the fortress should return gun for gun when our vessel had fired. This point was badly explained or badly understood by these gentlemen, for when at ten o'clock the Ambassador had ordered seven shots to be fired, the Admiral* replied with five only and the fortress with none at all. The Ambassador sent ashore at once, and it was agreed that the Admiral's salute should not count. So the fortress fired seven guns, the Admiral seven, and the others five, to acknowledge the salute of the King's ship. After that the shallops* were made ready, and we thought of nothing but getting to land and resting ourselves on shore after the toils endured.

From the moment of our arrival in this bay we found the place so suitable for making observations that we resolved forthwith to seek the means of doing so. For this purpose a commodious house was required, to which our instruments could be transported, and where we could work day and night during the period of our short stay. But there was a difficulty: Jesuit mathematicians going ashore with sundry appliances might well wound the susceptibilities of a Dutch governor in a colony of such recent date, and lead him to suspect some thing other than that intended. We were even advised to disguise ourselves and not appear as Jesuits, but this we deemed unseemly, and in the outcome we found that our robes did us no harm at all.

After considering the matter, it was decided that Father Fontenay and myself should call on the Commissioner-General and the Governor, before the others went ashore; and that, if an opportunity presented itself in the course of the conversation, we should take advantage of the opportunity to set forward our project. So without any other introduction we went straight to the fort*. The sentry stopped us at the outer entrance, as is the custom in fortified places, until the coming of the officer on duty. As soon as this latter was informed that we came to visit the Commissioner-General and the Governor, he

ordered that we should be permitted to enter, and gave us a soldier to conduct us to their quarters.

This house is a large double-storied structure, very solidly built. Up above there is a very handsome terrace paved with hewn stone, with balconies and iron balustrades around it: one goes there usually to take the air. The climate in this land is so temperate that it is never very cold except when the south wind blows, and although it was then the middle of their Winter, the heat during the day was sufficiently great to make us seek coolness in the evening.

We entered first of all a large hall where they hold their services on Sundays, while awaiting the completion of the church* they have begun to build [*sic*] outside the fort. On each side of this hall there are handsome chambers. We were shown into the one to the left hand, where we were received by Monsieur de Vanderstel and where, a moment later, we were joined by the Baron de Vanrheden. The latter is a gentleman of rank, about fifty years of age, well-made, courteous, and a scholar of sound judgment who discourses well on all topics. We were greatly surprised to find such refinement at the Cape of Good Hope, and very much more so by the attentions and marks of friendship which we received at this first interview. Father Fontenay, for whom on this occasion I acted as interpreter in Portuguese, seeing such propitious conditions for our project, said to the Commissioner-General that we were six Jesuits on our way to India and China; that, unaccustomed as we were to travel by sea, we needed a short rest on land to recover from the effects of so long a voyage, and that we had not dared to do this without knowing whether it would be pleasing to them. The Commissioner-General did not allow me to translate all that Father Fontenay had said, but interrupting almost at once, he answered in Portuguese: 'It will afford us the greatest pleasure, Fathers, if you will come ashore and rest: we will do everything we can to contribute to your recovery from your fatigue.'

A reply so favourable encouraged us to proceed. We told him that, once on shore, we would be very glad to employ our time on a matter of public utility, and then to inform him of our observations, in order in some measure to require his kindness. [We told him] that, on leaving France, we had taken on board various mathematical instruments, among which were several very suitable for ascertaining the longitude of any locality we should pass, without having recourse to the eclipses of the sun or moon. We explained to him the new method of calculation by means of Jupiter's satellites, whose ephemerides have been so excellent set out by the learned Cassini. I added that we should render a great service to their pilots, by giving them the exact longitude* of the Cape of Good Hope, which they computed only by means of their dead-reckonings, a very uncertain method which often deceived them very considerably. He replied that he would be very pleased, and that, since we wished to work on this investigation, he would offer us a place very suitable for making observations. At the same time he ordered a pavilion which stands in the Company's Garden*, to be prepared as a lodging for us during the Ambassador's stay in the harbour.

We answered, that the favour he accorded us extended beyond ourselves, and that

we hoped the Ambassador would wish to thank him for it and participate in the boon. Then we showed him our Letters-Patent as mathematicians of the King, which we have already mentioned. 'You add to my pleasure, Fathers', the Commissioner continued, 'by letting me see that I am fulfilling the will and the orders of the greatest monarch on earth, for whom I shall always have a profound respect; and yet I am not sorry that it is only after constraining you to accept the lodging which I offer you with all my heart, that you speak to me of them'. Then they brought in tea, as is the custom among the nations of the East Indies, and, after a sufficiently long conversation on many different subjects, we took our leave of these gentlemen. The Commander accompanied us to the dwelling that they had offered us in the Company's large Garden.

Great was our surprise to find, in a land that seems the most sterile and horrible in the world, one of the fairest and most interesting gardens that I have ever seen. It is situated higher up than the houses, between the little town and the Table Mountain, and near the fortress, from which it is distant only two hundred yards or thereabout. It is 1411 ordinary paces long and 235 wide [say 35 morgen*]. Its beauty does not lie in flower-beds and fountains, as in the gardens of France: these could easily be had here, if the Dutch Company wished to undertake the expense, since there is a stream of fresh water which comes down from the mountain and flows through the garden. But there are avenues there as far as the eye can see, of citron, pomegranate and orange trees, growing in the ground and protected from the wind by thick and high hedges of a sort of laurel that they call spek, which is always green and not unlike filaria. By the arrangement of its avenues this garden is divided into several fair-sized squares, some of which are filled with fruittrees such as apple, pear, quince, apricot and other European fruits. Then also there are pineapple, banana and other plants which bear the rarest fruits found anywhere in the world, these having been transported hither and carefully cultivated. Other squares are planted with roots, vegetables and herbs, and some with the choicest flowers of Europe, with others of singular perfume and beauty that were unknown to us. The gentlemen of the East-India Company, to whom it belongs, as we have already said, ordered its construction so as always to have in this place as if a storehouse of all sorts of refreshing for their outward- and homeward-bound vessels, which never fail to touch at the Cape of Good Hope....

The ships which come from the Indies arrive here at the beginning of March, singly or several together, and there await the fleet from Europe, which arrives there in April. In this manner they learn the news, whether they are at war or not, and [those of each fleet] leave all together so as to be sure against any attacks by pirates or by enemies, by reason of their large number and the strength of their ships.

At the entrance to the Garden they have built a large structure, where dwell the Company's slaves, in number, it is said, about five hundred, of whom some are employed in the cultivation of the garden and the rest at other necessary tasks. Towards the middle of the wall, on the side facing the fortress, there is a little pavilion in which no one lives. The ground floor contains an open vestibule that looks towards the fort and the garden,

with two rooms on either side. Above there is a chamber open on all sides, between two terraces paved with bricks and surrounded by balustrades, one of which faces North and the other South. This pavilion seemed to have been built expressly for our purpose, since from one side we beheld all the northern sky, the view that was essential to us since it is the noonday side in this land. While they were preparing the pavilion, which like the Dutch I shall call our observatory, we returned aboard, to give account to the Ambassador and the Fathers of all that had taken place.

On the following day the Commissioner-General and the Commander sent aboard all sorts of refreshing. The officer whose duty it was to make this present to the Ambassador, told us that these gentlemen had also sent a boat to take us ashore with our mathematical instruments. As we had, during the night, prepared the ones we thought we would need, they were put into the boat, and in this manner we repaired to the observatory on the 2nd of June of the year 1685.

A seconds-clock, made in Paris by Monsieur Thuret, having been set as near to the true time as we could guess, we began the following observations: At three minutes past eleven, by this as-yet uncorrected clock, the first satellite appeared distant from Jupiter a little less than the planet's diameter. Through the telescope we observed two parallel bands on the planet itself, the wider one towards the southern edge, the narrower towards the northern. At 11.57′ 30″ the first satellite began to touch the rim of Jupiter: at 11.58′ 50″ the satellite had disappeared. We made these observations with an excellent twelvefoot telescope made by the late Monsieur Le Bas: the times given are always those of the uncorrected clock. We continued observing Jupiter until five minutes past two in the morning, when it disappeared behind the Lion Mountain, by which our view was bounded on the West: we were therefore unable on that night to witness the emersion of the first satellite.

[Observations recorded on June 3 for the correction of the clock; and of the declination*, ‘11½ degrees North-West’.]

On the night of June 3, as we had no special observation to make, we examined some of the fixed stars through the twelve-foot telescope.

The foot of the Cross ... is a double star, that is to say, it is composed of two bright stars, distant one from the other by only about their diameter, somewhat like the more northerly of the Twins - not to mention a third star, further away and much smaller.

Under the Cross, in the Milky Way, there are several patches which in the telescope appear to be filled with an infinite number of stars.

The two Clouds that are near the South Pole do not appear to be a mass of stars like Praesepe in Cancer, nor are they of a sombre light like the nebula in Andromeda. Through the big telescopes next to nothing can be seen, although to the naked eye they seem quite white, especially the bigger cloud.

Nothing in the sky is so beautiful as the constellations of Centaurus and Argo. Close to the Pole there are no bright stars, but there are a quantity of little ones. Bayer and the other books that speak of them omit several, and the majority of those which they

do give are not located in the right positions.

[Observations recorded on June 4, for the correction of the clock.]

On Monday [June 4] after dinner we went to the fortress to visit the gentlemen, to give them an account of the observations we had already made, and of the one we proposed to make that evening, by which alone could the true longitude of the Cape be determined. On our return all the gentlemen wanted to come with us to witness this observation. We were all together on the terrace busy showing them our instruments, which they thought beautiful and interesting, when we perceived the Ambassador, who had come ashore incognito on the previous evening for a stroll in the Garden, and had found it so pleasant that he had now come again and was walking along an avenue accompanied by most of the officers of the two ships and by the gentlemen of his suite. From the time of our arrival the Ambassador and the Commissioner had exchanged many compliments, and not a day had passed without gifts being sent. As soon as Monsieur Vanrhêden now saw him, he at once went down from the terrace where he had been observing with us, and accompanied the Ambassador for a turn or two in the avenues as if the meeting were a matter of chance, the interview passing off to the entire satisfaction of one and the other [DR].

After they separated, the Commissioner, Saint-Martin, Vanderstel and Bocheros remained with us in the observatory until ten o'clock in the evening.

The emersion of the first satellite took place at 10 hours 5 minutes 40 seconds by the uncorrected clock.... After the emersion of the first satellite from the shadow of Jupiter, and having compared the observations of the height of the sun made in the mornings and evenings of June 3 and 4 ... it was found that the clock was ahead of the sun on both days by 28 minutes [so that] the true time of emersion was 9 hours 37 min. 40 sec.... His [Cassini's] tables of eclipses calculated to the nearest second give this same emersion as at 8:25:40:, [so that] the difference of meridians between the Cape of Good Hope and Paris is of 1 hour 12 minutes, that is to say 18^{o} difference of longitude [actually 16^{o} 10′]. Thus, taking the longitude* of Paris from the first meridian passing through the Isle of Fer [Hierro], the most westerly of the Canaries, as 22½ degrees according to the same author [actually $20^{o}16'$], the longitude of the Cape from that same meridian will be forty degrees and a half, little different from that given by the modern charts.

The following day, Tuesday June 8, these gentlemen returned to the observatory, and remained there until about two o'clock in the afternoon, watching us take the height and distance of the Table Mountain, and examining our instruments. More particularly did we explain to them the use of the equinoctial quadrant, by means of which we ascertained the variation [Declination*] of the compass-needle, which on that day again proved to be eleven and a half degrees North-West.

Thus two advantages can be derived from these observations. The first is the variation of the compass, which, by means of the astronomical circle, we found to be eleven and a half degrees North-West. The second is the longitude of the Cape, based on this emersion of the first satellite of Jupiter, which, on the meridian of Paris, was due to

occur at eight hours twenty-six minutes [more exactly 8h. 25′ 40″ as above] in the evening. Having observed that it took place at the Cape at nine hours 37′ 40″, we found a difference of one hour and twelve minutes between the meridians of the two places, which converted into degrees, gives eighteen. Consequently the [? older] charts are defective, and place the Cape nearly three degrees more to the East than it is in reality. The Abbé de Choisy wished to see this for himself, and for some time deigned to live with us the life of an astronomer.

Towards evening we received a message from the ship, telling us to be aboard early on the following day. All six of us went at once to the fort to take our leave of the Dutch gentlemen and express our gratitude to them, for it is indeed true that the courtesy and hospitality we received from them could not be exceeded. We even found, when we returned to the ship, gifts of tea and Canary wine that the Commander had sent us, indebted, as he thought he was to us, for a microscope and a small burning-glass we had given him.

All these gentlemen were apparently very affected at our departure. ‘We pray God’, they said as they embraced us tenderly, ‘that the object for which you are going to China may be happily realised, and that you may lead many infidels to a knowledge of the true God’. We left them at last, deeply touched by their kindnesses and their attentions. As we passed through the Commander's apartment, he showed us two little fishes, about the length of a finger, in a tank full of water. The Portuguese call the one a gold fish and the other a silver fish, because the tail of the male indeed appears golden while that of the female is silvery. He told us that these fish come from China, and that persons of position in that land as well as the Japanese prize them greatly and keep them in their houses as objects of curiosity. We have since seen them in Batavia in the palace of the [Governor-]General, and in Siam in the residence of Seigneur Constance, chief minister of that kingdom, and in the houses of some Chinese mandarins.

The Ambassador had requested Monsieur Van-Rheden to write to the Governor-General in Batavia so that he should provide us with a pilot to take us to Siam, and the Commissioner had expressed his pleasure in executing this request. On the next day, therefore, he sent the Ambassador a most gracious letter for the [Governor-]General, in which he did not omit to add at the end, of himself and without our asking it, some very kind words about ourselves. We spent the night in repacking our instruments, and before daybreak we embarked in a shallop* placed at our disposition by the Commander, and so returned aboard.

This is what happened at the Cape as far as our astronomical observations are concerned. Although we worked at them night and day, they were however not our sole occupations. No sooner had we settled into our little observatory, than the Catholics of the Colony, who are there in considerable numbers, heard of it and expressed their great joy thereat. Morning and evening they came in secret to visit us. They were of every nationality and of every condition in life, some free-born, others slaves, French, German, Portuguese, Spanish, Flemish and Indian. Those who could not express themselves

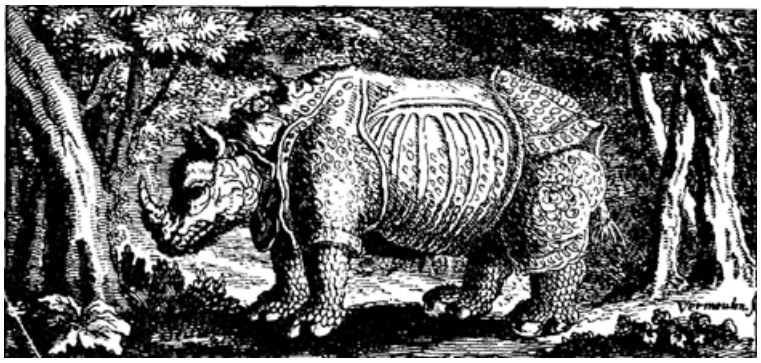
[35] HOTTENTOTS DWELLING AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE From item 55, by Claudius: the text (page 286) calls them ‘Sonqua’, but this is doubtful. The huts are of course ridiculous.

otherwise owing to our ignorance of their language, fell on their knees and sought to kiss our hands. They pulled forth their beads, and the medals round their necks to show that they were Catholics: they wept and struck their breasts. This language of the heart, much more touching than words, affected us profoundly, and constrained us to embrace these poor people whom the love of Jesus Christ made us regard as brothers. We comforted them as best we could, exhorting them all to perservere in the faith of Jesus Christ, to serve their masters faithfully and obediently, and to support with patience their trials. Particularly did we recommend them to examine their consciences at night, and to honour the Holy Virgin as the One who could obtain for them the grace to live as Christians and be preserved from heresy. Those who spoke French, Latin, Portuguese or Spanish were confessed. We visited the sick in their homes and in the hospital. That was all we could do for their consolation in so little time, for neither were they permitted to come on board to hear Mass, nor were we allowed to say it on shore. And yet we must have been suspected of taking them communion, since two of our Fathers, coming one day from the ship with a microscope cased in gilt morocco leather, were accosted on the beach by two or three of the inhabitants, who imagined that it was the Holy Sacrament that was being taken to the Catholics in a box. They approached the Fathers to ascertain the truth: he told them what it was, and, to convince them, had them look through the microscope. Then one of them said: 'I had indeed thought so, for I know you to be most bitter foes of our religion'. At that we simply smiled and without making any reply went straight to the fortress.

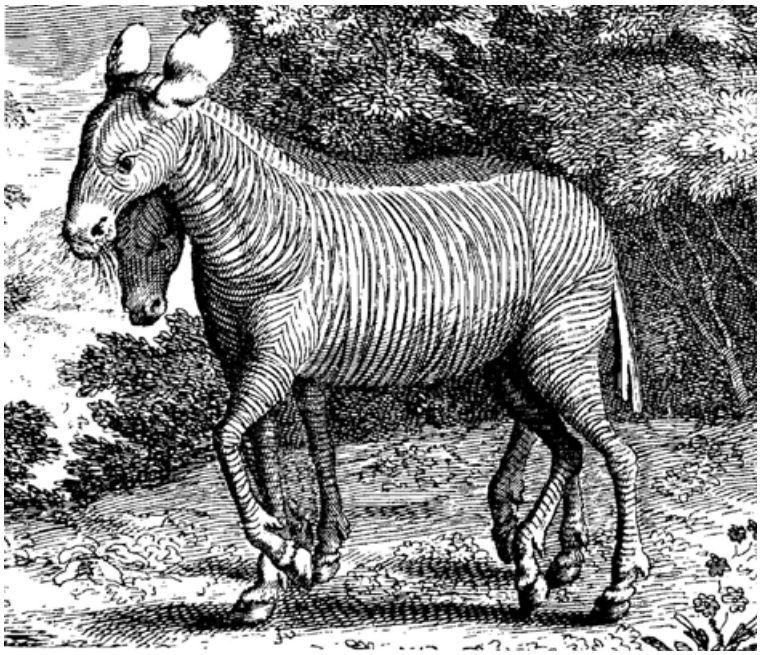
All that remains for me to say about the Cape of Good Hope has to do with what we learned about the state of the country, for some of our Fathers were allotted the task of making enquiries as to this while the others worked at our observations. In the various interviews we had with M. Vanderstellen we endeavoured to obtain all the information we could for this purpose. We also made the acquaintance of a young doctor from Breslau in Silesia, named M. Claudius*, whom the Dutch maintain at the Cape on account of his ability. As he has already travelled in China and Japan, where he acquired the habit of noting everything, and as he draws and paints to perfection both animals and plants, the Dutch keep him there in order to assist them in the exploration of new regions and to work at a natural history of Africa. He has already completed two thick folio volumes of various plants [see plates 48-50], painted from nature, and has collected specimens of all kinds which he has pasted into another volume. Doubtless M. Van-Rhêden, who always keeps these books in his own apartment and showed them to us, intends publishing soon a '*Hortus Africus*', after his '*Hortus Malabaricus*'. Had these books been for sale we would have spared nothing to send them to the Royal Library. As this learned Doctor had already made several journeys, to a distance of one hundred and twenty leagues North and East of the Cape to make new discoveries, it is from him that we obtained all our knowledge of the country. He gave us a little map made by his own hand, and some drawings of the inhabitants and animals which I am inserting in my book [Plates 33 to 43].

When the Dutch perceived that an establishment here would be convenient for the ships they annually send to the Indies, they entered into an agreement with the principal chiefs of the native tribes, who, for a certain quantity of tobacco and brandy [see 'Bought*'] consented to retire further into the interior and to cede the land there. This arrangement was made about the year 1653 [*sic:* DR 13/4/72], and since that time the Dutch have worked hard to establish themselves firmly at the Cape. They now possess a town* of considerable size, and a fort* of five bastions, which commands all the roadstead. The climate is very good, and corn grows as in Europe. They have planted vineyards, which yield a very delicate wine. Game is found in abundance everywhere: our officers returned from shooting with roebuck, gazelles, pheasants, and a quantity of partridges as large as pullets in France. Oxen and sheep are obtained further inland, from the savages. This traffic may be undertaken only by those of the countryside ['ceux de la Campagne': ? error for 'ceux de la Compagnie' - see Trade*], who purchase the cattle for a little tobacco, and afterwards sell them to the inhabitants of the Cape and to foreigners who come seeking refreshing. We saw sheep that weighed up to eighty pounds and were excellent eating.

Civet-cats are also found, and many wild cats, lions and tigers with very lovely skins, and above all large monkeys which at times come in bands from the Table Mountain into the private gardens, to carry off the melons and other fruits. At nine or ten leagues to the East of the Cape there is a mountain range [Bottelaryberg], full of lions, elephants and rhinoceroses of a prodigious size. Trustworthy persons who have travelled have assured me that they found an elephant's footprint of two and a half feet in diameter, and that they saw various rhinoceroses of the size and height of an average elephant. All that I can say regarding this, is that I saw the two horns which this animal carries on its nose, fixed together as they are naturally, of a size and weight which

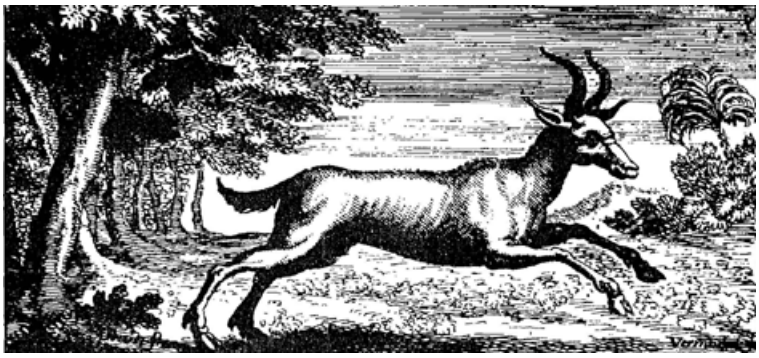


[36] RHINOCEROS. From item 55: certainly not by Claudius, since the legendary and false armour-plated skin is shown.



[37] ZEBRAS OR WILD ASSES AT THE CAPE From item 55, almost certainly by Claudius.

inclined me to believe what I was told. The Lieutenant of the Fort [Ensign Isaac Schryver] who was with this journey, told me that the rhinoceros when enraged thrusts its larger horn into the earth, making a sort of furrow until it comes near to whoever hit it. The skin of this animal is so tough as to be musket-proof, unless one waits to shoot it until it exposes its flank, the only part of its body which can be wounded by firearms or by the halberds with which the travellers are armed. Horses and asses of a rare beauty have been seen. The former have extremely small heads and somewhat long ears: they are entirely covered with vertical black and white stripes of the width of five fingers, which give a very pleasing effect [Zebras, though usually 'wild asses' as in his Plate 37]. I saw the skin of one which had been killed, bought by the Ambassador to take to France as a great curiosity. As to the asses [Quaggas], they are of all colours, with a wide blue stripe on the back from head to tail, and the rest of the body covered, like that of the horse, with pretty wide stripes of blue, yellow, green, black and white, all very vivid colours.



[38] DEER OF THE CAPE. From item 55, probably by Claudius.

Deer are in such abundance here that they are found in herds like sheep, and I have heard the Commander's Secretary [Grevenbroek] and the Commander himself say that they had seen up to ten thousand together in an open plain which they met with in the forests [suggests Springbok]. There are not so many tigers or lions as there are deer, but nevertheless there are many; and this I have no difficulty in believing because of the large number of skins of these animals which is sold at the Cape. They do not altogether remain in the forests only, but at times come even into the populated regions, where they attack everything they meet with, even men. There was an example of this while we were there: it was the Commissioner-General who told me of it. Two men, walking far from the houses, saw a tiger. One shot at it and missed, and the tiger at once leapt on him and knocked him down: the other, seeing the extreme danger of his comrade, fired at the tiger but wounded his comrade in the thigh; but the tiger, without having been wounded, left its prey and attacked the second man, at which the first one got to his feet and killed the tiger in time to save his friend. It is said, that this animal has the instinct to attack, out of a hundred persons, the one who has fired at it, and ignore all the others but make for this one only. A month previously an almost similar accident occurred with a lion, which tore apart a man and his servant pretty near the houses, and was itself killed afterwards.

In fishing at the Cape we caught a quantity of excellent fish, amongst others mullets and those called dorades in France, which are very different from the real dorade, this latter being larger and better deserving its name from its yellowish colouring with golden tints, which cause it to be regarded as one of the most handsome of sea-fish. Soles were found in great numbers, and a few ‘torpedoes’, which are soft to the touch and very ugly. When touched, it has the property of causing a sensation of numbness in the hand and arm. We saw many sea-wolves, which seem well named. There are also Binguins, large aquatic birds, which are veritable amphibians, seldom out of the water.

In the year sixteen hundred and eighty-one M. de Vanderstel founded a new Colony composed of eighty-two families [*sic:* eight only, Letter 20/3/81], nine or ten leagues inland, and gave it the name of Hellenbok [Stellenbosch].

Some folk feel sure that at the Cape there are gold-deposits. We were shown stones found there, which seem to confirm this opinion, since they are heavy, and under the microscope show everywhere small particles which resemble gold.

But we found nothing at the Cape more curious that an exact map of the surroundings recently discovered by the Dutch, together with a Latin note of the peoples living

[39] 'MAP OF THE LANDS AND PEOPLES OF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE' From item 55: full of errors-False Cape is identified with Cape Agulhas and both are shown at Cape Point; the Cape of Good Hope is located at Mouille Point; 'Robin' Island is shown outside Table Bay; etc. It is difficult to believe (page 281) that Claudius drew this.

there. Both these were given me by a trustworthy person [Claudius*] who has noted down nothing which he has not himself seen, and of which the following is an exact translation:

'The most southerly point of Africa is not less distant from Europe than are the customs of the inhabitants different from ours, since these peoples are ignorant of the creation of the world, the Redemption of man, and the mystery of the most holy Trinity. Nevertheless they adore a God, but their knowledge of him is very confused. In his honour they slaughter cows and sheep, offering him their flesh and milk as sacrifices, to show their gratitude to this deity who gives them, they think, now the rain, now the fine weather, according to their needs. They do not expect any other life after this one. With all this, they do not lack some good qualities which should prevent us from despising them, since they have more charity and faithfulness one to another than are usually found among Christians. Adultery and theft are capital crimes for them, always punished by death. Although each man is allowed to take as many wives as he can support, no one is found, even among the richest, who has more than three.

These folk are divided into various tribes, all of which live in the same manner. Their usual food is the milk and meat of the herds which they rear in great numbers. Each of these tribes has its Chief or Captain, whom it obeys. This post is hereditary, and passes from father to son. The eldest have the right of succession, and in order to preserve their authority and standing, they are the sole heirs of their fathers, the younger sons inheriting nothing except the duty of serving their elders. Their clothing is only plain sheepskins with the wool, dressed with cow-dung and a certain grease which makes them insufferable to sight and smell. The first tribe is called Sonquas in the language of the country, of whom I give here a picture from nature [Plate 35]. The Europeans call these folk Hottentots, perhaps because they continually say this word [see Hottentots*, Name] when they meet strangers. Because they are agile, robust, hardy, and more skilled than the others in the use of arms, that is to say of assegais and arrows, they go to serve with other tribes as soldiers, and thus there is no tribe which has not Sonquas among their troops in addition to their own people. In their own country they live in deep caves, or sometimes in houses like the others. Hunting, in which they are very skilled, gives them a good part of their food: they kill elephants, rhinoceroses, elands, deer, gazelles, roebuck and many other kinds of animals, of which there is a prodigious quantity at the Cape. At certain times they also collect the honey made by the bees in the hollows of trees and rocks.'

I will interrupt this account for a moment, in order to tell what we saw of them ourselves, and what we learned about them from trustworthy persons. These people, convinced that there is no other life, do only what is necessary to pass this one quietly. According to them, even to such as serve the Dutch to earn a little bread, tobacco and brandy, these Dutch are slaves who cultivate the lands which really belong to them, and are faint-hearted folk who take shelter from their enemies in forts and houses: whereas they fearlessly camp wherever they will ... and disdain to plough the land. They main-

tain that this manner of life shows that they are the true owners of the country, and the happiest of men, since they alone live in peace and freedom; and in that, they say, their happiness consists. When we were in the Company's Garden one of their chiefs, noticing the civilities which the chiefs of the Dutch were showing us, came to the observatory, and, meeting with Father Fontenay, presented him with two oranges, saying in Portuguese: 'Reverend Father, Hottentot general to your highness', wishing in this manner to indicate the joy his Captain and his people had at our coming.

In spite of the good opinion they have of themselves, they lead a miserable existence. They are dirty to excess, and it seems that they try to make themselves hideous. When they wish to adorn themselves they rub their heads, faces and hands with the soot from the cooking-pots, and when they have none of this, they have recourse to a certain black grease, which renders them so stinking and hideous that one cannot bear to be near them. From this it results that their hair, which in fact is naturally almost as woolly as the hair of negroes, is reduced to little tufts, to which they affix pieces of copper or glass. The more important among them have, as additional ornaments, large ivory rings worn on their arms above and below the elbow. Their food is even more surprising: they regard as a delicate dish the vermin that breed in the skins they wear. We saw this more than once, otherwise we could never have believed it. The women, in addition to this clothing, wind around their legs the guts of animals, or little pieces of hides cut for the purpose: this they do to protect themselves from the pricks of thorns as they go through the woods, and in order also to have a meal handy in case of need. Their finery consists of different-coloured bones which they put around their necks and waists, and thick copper rings which they wear upon their arms.

Barbarism has not however so completely effaced all traces of humanity that no vestige of virtue remains. They are faithful, and the Dutch give them free access to their houses without fear of being robbed by them. It is said, however, that they have less restraint with foreigners and new-comers from Holland, who cannot recognise them to have them punished. They are charitable and helpful, although they possess scarcely anything. When given something that can be divided, they share it with the first of their fellows they meet: they even seek out their companions with this intention, and they usually keep the smallest portion for themselves.

When any among them is convicted of a capital crime such as theft or adultery, the Captain and the principal men assemble, and after trying the criminal they themselves carry out the sentence: they kill him with clubs, each giving him a blow in order according to his rank and standing, after the Captain has had the honour of beginning; or also they pierce him with their assegais. They are said to be astrologers and herbalists, and reliable persons assured us that they know the sky pretty well, and that they can distinguish simples, even at night by touch and smell. They are jealous for their liberty, even to excess. The Commandeur told us that he had wished to tame one, by making him his servant when young; but when he grew up he had to be given leave to go, which he continually asked for, saying that he could not subject himself to the constraint of a

[40] 'NAMAQUA TRIBES discovered towards the Tropic of Capricorn'. From item 55, undoubtedly by Claudius.

regular life, that the Dutch and suchlike nations were the slaves of the soil and the Hottentots its masters, that they were not compelled continually to carry their hats under their arms and to observe a hundred inconvenient customs, that they ate when they were hungry, following in this no other rules but those of nature. For the rest, they are gay, lively, of few words, and seem to be intelligent.

They have some very bizarre customs. When a woman has lost her first husband, then each time she remarries she must cut away a joint of her fingers, beginning with the little finger. The men are made semi-eunuchs in youth, it being asserted that this greatly helps to preserve and increase their agility. They are all either hunters or shepherds: the former live in caves from what they can kill, the latter from their herds and their milkproducts, and dwell in huts made from the branches of trees covered with skins and mats, shaped like tents, the doorway being so low that one can enter only on all fours. Four or five families [*sic*] live in one of these huts, which is only about six geometric paces in circumference: the fire is made in the centre, and the apartments are distinguished only by holes cut two feet deep into the ground. Let us now continue the description we interrupted:

'The second tribe is that of the Namaquas, of whom you see here the picture [Plate 40]. We discovered them for the first time in 1682 [see the next paragraph]: we entered their village, and sent some tobacco, a pipe, brandy, a knife, and some coral beads, by the hands of some of the Caffers who served us as guides. Their Captain accepted our small presents, and in return sent us two fat sheep, of which each of the tails weighed more than twenty pounds, together with a large beaker full of milk, and a certain herb which they call Kanna.' This is apparently the famous plant which the Chinese call Ginsseng, since M. Claudius, who has seen it in China, assures us that he found two plants of it at the Cape, and showed us the complete picture of it which he had painted from nature, ... in the form which you may see engraved with the Sonquas [Plate 35; but see Canna* in the index]. 'They use Kanna as often as the Indians use betel and areca. Next day one of their Captains came to see us: he was a man whose great height and a certain air of pride recognisable in his face made him respected by his people. He brought with him fifty young men, and as many women and girls. Each man had in his hand a flute* made from a certain reed, very neatly worked, which gave a very pleasing sound. At a sign made by the Captain they began to play these instruments all together, to which the women and girls added their voices and the sound of hand-clapping. These two groups of people were arranged in two circles, one within the other, the first, formed by the men, outside and enclosing the second, that of the women. Both danced thus in circles, the men moving to the right and the women to the left, while an old man, standing in the centre of them with a stick in his hand, marked the time and regulated the beat. Heard from a distance their music sounded pleasing, and even harmonious enough; but their dance had nothing of exactitude and was indeed nothing but a confusion.

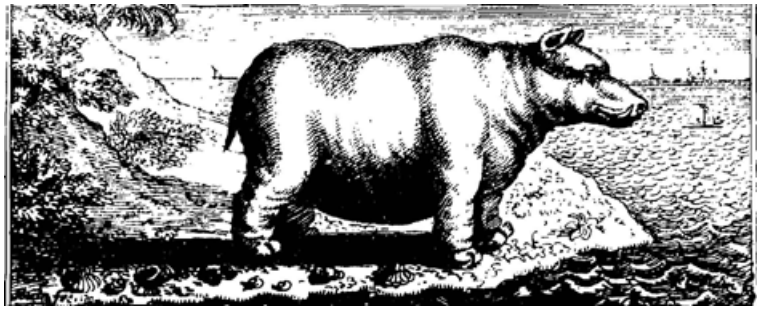
Actually discovered in 1661 (*DR 10*, *11/3*)*: Bergh's 1682 expedition* (*which Claudius accompanied*) *met a few stragglers only. The account on page 291 contradicts the circular*

movement of the dancers, *but adds the tuning of the reed-pipes and the conductor's horn: neither of these two latter are in the 1661 account nor in that of 1685* (*Valentyn X71*).

'These Namaquas are much esteemed among the tribes, being considered brave, warlike, and powerful although their greatest strength does not exceed two thousand men under arms. They are all tall and robust. They have a natural good sense, and when asked a question reply only after having well weighed their words, and all their replies are short and given seriously. They laugh rarely, and speak little: their women seem crafty, and are nothing like so serious as are the men.

The third tribe is that of the Ubiquas. They are thieves by trade, robbing the Africans as well as foreigners. Although they cannot muster five hundred men it is not easy to destroy them, because they retreat into inaccessible mountains.

The Gouriquas are the fourth of the tribes, and are not many in number. The Ilassiquas [? Hessequas] are the fifth, larger in size, rich and powerful but little experienced in war unlike the sixth, that is to say the Gouriquas [*sic:* "fourth" above], who are very warlike. The seventh tribe is that of the Sousequas [Chainouqua], and the Odiquas are their allies.'



[41] SEA COW (Hippopotamus). From item 55, perhaps by Claudius.

In the large rivers a monstrous animal is to be seen, called Sea-Cow, as large as the Rhinoceros: its flesh, or better said its fat, is good to eat and very tasty. I have set its picture here [Plate 41].

As regards trees, plants, and flowers, there is an infinite number of them, and very interesting ones, both for their beauty and their special qualities.

In the voyage made [actually in 1685-86, so that all this should be in his item 59], which lasted five full months, the expedition* pressed northwards as far as the Tropic [of Capricorn: *sic*]: that is to say that two hundred leagues of country were explored, keeping always ten or twelve leagues from the sea to the West. Commandeur Vanderstell himself was with it, accompanied by fifty-eight well-armed men. He took along his coach, and forty wagons, together with twenty-eight horses, three hundred sheep and one

hundred and fifty oxen, these last carrying the baggage and pulling the wagons, the sheep serving for food for the travellers. He left the Cape of Good Hope with his party at the end of May [*sic:* August], winter time in this country: he chose this season in order not to lack water and grazing on the deserts which had to be traversed. Various different tribes were discovered towards the twenty-eighth degree of latitude, living in a pleasant country abounding with all sorts of fruits and animals. Before arriving there they met with a number of deserts and mountains, one of these being so high that the Commandeur assured us that it took them forty days to reach the top. They all expected to die of thirst with their animals, and were often in danger of being devoured by the wild beasts which they met with in quantities. He himself had much ado to save himself from an enormously large rhinoceros, which came within three paces of him ready to tear him up, had he not evaded it by throwing himself to one side and thus getting out of sight of the animal, which for a long time searched for him in order to tear him apart.

But when they arrived at the twenty-seventh degree of latitude, ten or twelve leagues from the seashore, they met a very large tribe, much more docile than all those encountered until then [Namaqua]. M. Vanderstell had taken with him two trumpeters, some oboe-players, and five or six violinists: as soon as they heard the sound of these instruments a crowd of them came, and brought their musicians, nearly thirty in number, almost all of whom had different instruments. The one in the centre had a sort of very long mouthpiece-horn, made from the gut of an ox dried and shaped: the others had flageolets and flutes* made from reeds, of varying thicknesses and lengths. They hollow out these instruments much like ours, but with the difference that there is one hole only, extending from one end to the other and much wider than that of the flutes and flageolets generally used in France. To tune them to one another, they make use of a disc with a small opening in the centre, which they move within the tube by means of a rod, according to the note which they wish to produce. They hold their instrument in one hand, and with the other they press the instrument against their lips so that all their breath enters the tube. This music is simple, but harmonious. The leader, after making all the other musicians tune their instruments by the sound of the horn, which is close to him, gives them the tune which they are to play, and beats the time with a long rod which can be seen by everyone.

The music is always accompanied by dancing, which consists of leaps and certain foot-movements made without moving from where each is standing. The women and girls make a large circle around the dancers, and merely clap their hands and sometimes stamp their feet, in time with the music. Those who play on the instruments are the only ones who change their positions when dancing, but the conductor remains standing in his place to regulate the tune and the time.

The men are well-made and robust, with long hair loose on their shoulders. Their weapons are arrows and zagayes, which have a certain likeness to lances: their clothing consists of a long cloak of tigerskin down to their heels. Among them some are found as white as Europeans, but they blacken themselves with grease and a certain black stone

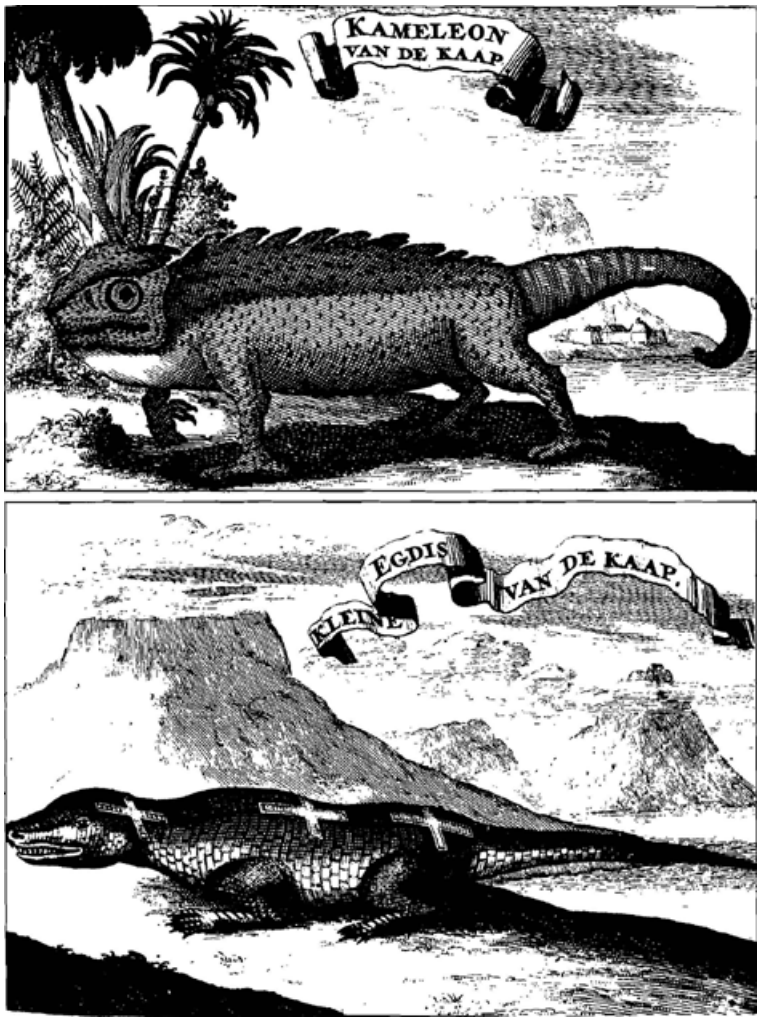
powdered, with which they rub their faces and all their bodies. Since there are many and very rare herbs in their lands and forests they are all herbalists. Many have a good knowledge of minerals, which they can smelt and prepare, but they esteem these little, perhaps because there are a large number of gold-; silver-, and copper deposits in their country. Their women are by nature very white, but in order to please their husbands they blacken themselves as do these. Those who are married have the top of the head shaven, and large pointed shells on their ears. They cover themselves with tiger-cat skins tied with thongs around their bodies.

This tribe greatly esteem a certain substance found only in the heart of certain rocks, pretty hard and very dark in colour: experience has taught them that this mineral has a miraculous effect in delivering women in difficult childbirth, and in similarly aiding their cows, ewes and goats. When the Dutch blew up a large rock in which there was much of this, and took it away, they showed as much regret and complaining as if a great treasure had been taken from them. When I returned [in 1686, item 59] I was given a piece of this mineral, with some others that had been found in that country.

Various sorts of animals and insects are also found, of the most important of which I give the pictures [Plates 33, 42, 43]. The first is of a horned serpent, called Ceraste, never seen until now, of which the venom is extraordinarily dangerous. The second is a chameleon, which takes on all sorts of colourings, and the call of which resembles that of a cat. The third is a lizard: when hit it complains like a crying child, and when angry it lifts up the scales with which it is entirely covered. Its tongue is bluish and very long, and when one nears it, it is heard to blow very violently. Another lizard is also found, the bite of which is not so dangerous as that of the first-named.

From all that I have just said, it may well be seen that this part of Africa is not less populous, less rich, nor less fertile in all sorts of fruits and animals than the other parts already discovered, although it has been so long neglected. The peoples that inhabit it are neither cruel nor fierce, and do not lack docility and wit. Every day this is becoming clearer. But their great misfortune, which cannot sufficiently be deplored, is that so many and so populous tribes have no knowledge of the true God, and that no one tries to instruct them. It is true that all their lands are entered, that they are visited even in the thickest forests, that their burning deserts are traversed and their steepest mountains scaled with much toil, cost and danger; but all this is done only to discover their mines, to know the wealth of their lands, to learn their secrets and the value of their herbs, and to become rich from their trade. This enterprise, and the execution of a task so great and so difficult, would truly be very praiseworthy if zeal for the salvation of their souls had even a small part in them, and if in trading with them they were taught the path to Heaven and the eternal truths.

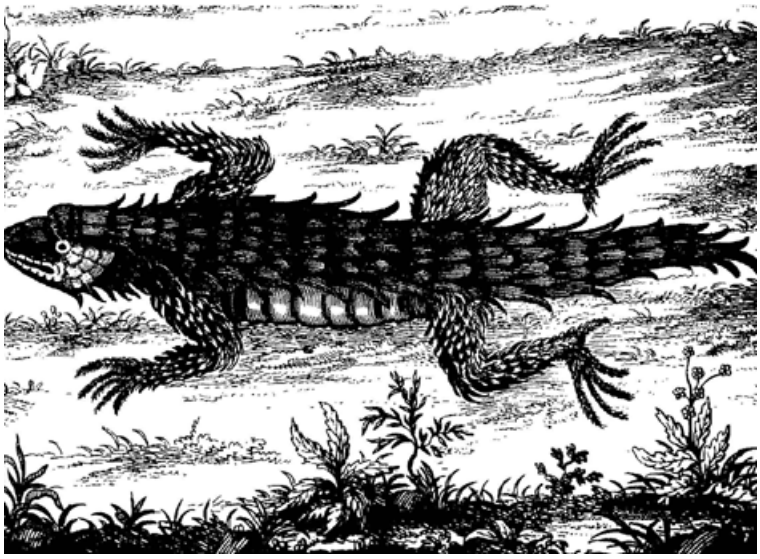
Zealous missionaries who would regard these peoples as redeemed by the blood of Jesus Christ, and as well able, savages as they are, to glorify God to all eternity as are the most civilised nations - such would be most necessary in this distant part of Africa. They would first aid the Catholics of the Cape, who for many years go without Masses and



[42] CHAMELEON OF THE CAPE and SMALL LIZARD OF THE CAPE. From item 55, both probably by Claudius.

Sacraments for lack of Priests: at the same time they would teach the Hottentots already contacted, and the more easily to be gained to Jesus Christ in that they have no great vices to keep them from Christianity. And later it would be possible to penetrate among the most distant peoples, of whom many would without doubt be brought, by the Grace of God, to the sheepfold of the Saviour.

Such are the particulars about the Cape that we learnt of during our stay. It had been arranged to weigh anchor on the 6th of June, and everyone was on board by that morning; but lack of wind prevented us from leaving. Early on the 7th a light wind came from the North, so we set sail about 7 o'clock, and after tacking about a little to pass the Lion's Tail we doubled the Cape without difficulty [DR].... [Scurvy rife. Bantam. Batavia August 18. Siam September 22.]



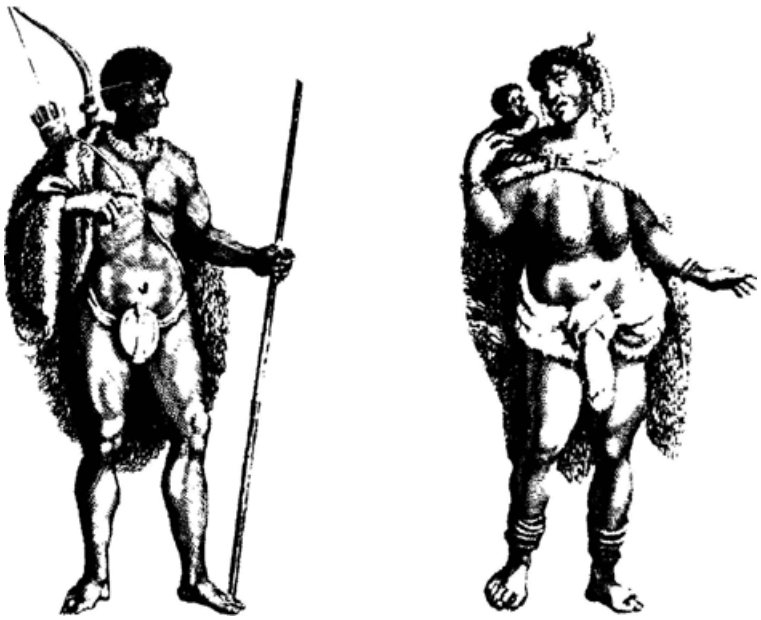
[43] LARGE LIZARD OF THE CAPE. From item 55, probably by Claudius.

56 Chevalier de Chaumont
(Plate 44)

(*See also item 57.*) *Translated from his 'Relation de l'Ambassade ...';, Paris 1686. There is also a Dutch translation of 1687, and an English one in Strangman, but with a number of unindicated omissions. He was sent out as Ambassador to Siam, in return for the two Siamese Mandarins who arrived in Paris in 1685 to propose an alliance, and who now returned with him. In addition there were in his ship the authors of items 53, 54, 55, five other Jesuit Fathers, four missionaries, and the 'young gentlemen' mentioned in item 55.*

I left Brest on the 3rd of March, 1685, in one of the King's ships *L'Oiseau*, in company with one of His Majesty's frigates* *La Maligne*. The wind was so favourable that in seven days I found myself abreast the island of Madeira. I had the same good fortune up to four or five degrees north of the equinoctial line, when we encountered calms. The heat was considerable, but by no means oppressive. The wind returned and we crossed the line in longitude* 350½ degrees, thirty-three days after our departure from France. The water in the main hold was as good and as fresh as though it had just been drawn from the fountain and we drank it in preference to the water in the tanks. Five degrees south of the line we found the wind very changeable, but the heat did not trouble us, and throughout the voyage I never left off my winter suit. The winds, though variable, none the less bore us on our way, so that we arrived at the Cape of Good Hope on the 31st of May [DR]. There I took in provisions and water, although I still had sufficient of each to last another forty days. What I found rather astonishing was the answer I received from one of the pilots whose countenance showed no indication of any special aptitude; for, having inquired of him how far he thought we were from the Cape, he assured me as positively as if he had already perceived it, that we should see land in two hours' time. This happened exactly as he said, after a navigation of more than two thousand leagues during which no land had been visible.

I anchored very late in the evening and found in the harbour four Dutch ships [DR 19/4 etc.]. One of them was flying the flag on the main mast. They came from Holland and were on their way to the Indies, whither they were conveying a Commissioner of the Company, who was to take command over the settlements which the Dutch Republic owns in those parts. Monsieur de Saint-Martin, a Major-General and Frenchman by birth, who for the last thirty years has been in the service of the Dutch and is very popular with them, was also on board one of these ships. He was on his way to Batavia to resume the duties of his post. The day I arrived the Commissioner-General [van Reede] sent to greet me, and on the day following he sent his nephew and his secretary to offer me anything that I might wish for. Some inhabitants of the place then brought me, by his orders, presents of fruit, vegetables and sheep, and the four ships were ordered to fire a



[44] From item 56, probably redrawn from Tachard's plate 35 (with ridiculous additions by the French artist that have been deleted in this illustration).

salute in my honour. In short, nothing could exceed the kindnesses and attentions I received from the Dutch gentlemen of this place.

On the strand of this bay the Dutch Company has a small five-bastioned fort* and, a musket-shot from it, about a hundred houses [see Town*]. These houses, within and without, are as clean as those of Holland. The majority of the inhabitants are Catholics [*sic*], but they are forbidden to practise their religion. The situation is very beautiful, although its extent is limited by a very high mountain, where dwell numerous monkeys which come into the gardens after the fruit. Three or four leagues away there are several country houses, and a plain nearly ten leagues across lies on the other side of the mountain. Beyond there is a settlement where houses have been built and where the number of inhabitants is rapidly increasing. The climate of the Cape is fairly temperate. Spring begins in October, summer in January, autumn in April and winter in July. The heat at times is great, but it is not unendurable, as a wind constantly blows.

At this place the Dutch Company of the East Indies has a very fine garden*, with handsome palisades of a plant that is always green. The main walk, which has a length of fourteen hundred and fifty paces, is almost entirely planted with lemon trees. This garden is arranged in compartments. In one may be seen the rarest fruit-trees and plants

of Asia, in another the choicest fruit-bearing trees of Africa, in a third those that are common in Europe, in a fourth some that have been introduced from America. It is very well kept and because of the great quantity of herbs and vegetables it produces, its utility to the outward- and homeward-bound Dutch fleet is very great. I met a French gardener there who, before coming to the Cape had learned his trade in the gardens of Monsieur at Saint-Cloud. The soil of this land is excellent and produces wheat and other grains in abundance. A man, worthy of credit, assured me that he had seen one hundred and sixty ears on a single stalk. The natives of the country appear shrewd of face, but this appearance is deceptive, for they are very stupid. They go naked, except for a paltry skin with which they cover a part of their bodies, and they do not cultivate the soil. They possess, however, cattle in large numbers, and sheep and pigs. They scarcely ever eat these animals, for they nourish themselves almost entirely on milk and the butter which they make and preserve in the skins of sheep. Instead of bread they eat a root* which has the taste of a filbert. They have a knowledge of herbs and use them to cure their diseases and wounds. The greatest lords among them are those who possess the most cattle, and they look after it themselves. They often go to war with one another about their pasture lands. Wild animals cause them much annoyance, for where they live there are many lions, leopards, tigers, wolves, wild dogs, elands and elephants. All these animals harm them and their cattle. The weapon they use is a kind of spear which they poison in such a way that it causes the death of the animal it wounds. At night they shut their cattle into a sort of enclosure. These people have no religion. It is true that, when the moon is full, they observe certain ceremonies, but these have no religious significance. Their language is very difficult to learn.

There is a great quantity of game, such as pheasants, three or four sorts of partridges, peacocks, hares, rabbits, roebucks, deer and wild boars. The deer are in such abundance there that at times thirty thousand of them are seen together on the plains, as I was assured by reliable persons [? Springbok]. We ate some of their venison, which is very good and wonderfully tasty. The sheep are astonishingly large, often weighing eighty pounds. There are also many oxen and cows.

Wild horses are numerous in the country. They have black and white stripes, are exceedingly handsome and very difficult to tame. I brought back the skin of one. The Bay is full of excellent fish. There is one, big and thick, which has the taste of salmon. Seals are plentiful. They used to play around the bow of our shallop*, when we went about the bay. We fired at them, but we did not succeed in killing one.

As this is an excellent country the Dutch will not fail to establish large colonies in it. Every year they send expeditions into the interior, and it is said they have discovered mines of gold and silver, but they take good care not to talk about them. The water is good and springs are plentiful. There are numerous rivers, and they are well stocked with fish.

We left this roadstead on the 7th of June [DR] and set a course for Bantam [and thence to Batavia and Siam].

Background - continued

7/6/1685 ... the French ships ... at last tacked out of the bay in the afternoon ...

16/6 ... the ships *Bantam* and *Voorschoten* received their despatches ... the Hon. St Martin went aboard the *Bantam*...

16/7 [Van Reede's Instructions include orders to build the Kat* within the new Fort*] ... still commanded by the Lions Rump; and in short no fort can be placed in the Table Valley so as to command the water and the anchorage, without being subjected to being commanded in its turn ... now 30 families near the Fort plus 24 between the Table Valley and the Steenbergen ... 99 families at Stellenbosch ... a Superintendent to be appointed with the title of Landdrost ... over the village of Stellenbosch ... 'garrison' 332, but including civilians ...

17/7 ... sailed ... *Purmer* and the flute* *Adringhem* [with van Reede]

31/7 Kaapse Grondbreve [grant of Constantia to Simon van der Stel, more than 891 morgen,* by van Reede confirming the verbal grant by van Goens Junior]

8/10 [Letter from Holland of that date advises the sending of 45 orphan girls, for marriage at the Cape]

12/10 This morning two ships were seen lying in the roads ... *Pylswaart* and *Mierop* [no mention of men from *Pylswaart* lost on Table Mountain as in item 39; and this appears to have been her only call, in her maiden voyage during which she was wrecked homewards]

30/10 Resolutions ... the new [water corn-] mill behind the Coy's garden ... already working...

[1686]

Franco-Spanish war continues in Netherlands. Empire, Holland, Spain etc form the 'League of Augsburg'; against France.
Background - from official documents in the archives

21/1 [mention of *Java* as in the roads]

26/1 [Van der Stel arrived] very unexpectedly about 11 o'clock, in good health (God be praised!), with his son [Frans] and 3 or 4 horsemen. [Rest arrived in the afternoon, with 'a captured Hottentot of the Cameson tribe']

9/3 ... *Java* lying in the roads fired two guns ... came to the roads ... the Batavia return-ship named *Schieland* ... after which came to the roads the ships *Bantam*, *Hendrik Mauritz*, *Goudestein* and the *Ridderschap van Holland* ... as commander the Hon. Willem Carel Hartsing ... also arrived safely the flute* *Langewijk* [outwards]

11/3 ... came to the roads a little Portuguese ship *Saint Anthoni* ... with slaves from Mozambique ...

12/3 ... a smart ship ... at anchor this morning at the Robben Island ... [later another] also anchored there...

13/3 ... coming to the roads the return-ship the *Bergh Sina*, followed by the two French ships which were forced to anchor yesterday at the Robben Island, named *l'Oyseau* and *la Maligne* ... with the Ambassador Chaumont ... and two Ambassadors from the King of Siam to the King of France ... Heer Ridder Grandmaison came ashore to salute the Hon. Commandeur ...

16/3 ... the Lieutenant and the Fiscaal, with the Secretary, went aboard to salute H.E. the Ambassador, taking some refreshing ...

57 Chevalier de Chaumont

(*See also item 56.*) *He sailed homeward from Siam on December 22, 1685, touching at Bantam, from where he sailed on January 11, 1686. The frigate** La Maligne *was separated from Chaumont's* L'Oiseau *in a storm near Mauritius.*

On the 10th of March, towards two o'clock in the afternoon, we sighted a ship. At first I thought she was our frigate that had parted from us, but on drawing nearer we saw her hoist the flag of England. As I was anxious to learn the news and as I guessed she came from Europe, I steered towards her. When I was near enough I launched my longboat* and sent one of my officers to inquire if there was war in Europe: for when one has been away from France a long time, one knows not whom to trust or among what foreigners it is safe to anchor. The officer brought me word that the vessel was an English merchant ship which had left London five months before, that she had touched at no place on the way, and that she was making straight for Tongking. He said the Captain told him that France was not at war, that all Europe was at peace, but that the Duke of Monmouth, at the head of ten or twelve thousand men, had lately raised a rebellion in England, that this rebellion had been suppressed by the troops of the English King, that Monmouth had been taken prisoner and beheaded, that many captured persons had been hung, and that the insurrection had ended before he sailed. The officer added that the English ship had been within seven leagues of land the day before. This led me to conclude that we must be about thirty or thirty-five leagues from it. We continued our way the rest of the day and throughout the night and on the following morning, towards 10 o'clock, we saw the land to leeward of us. I ordered soundings to be taken and we found bottom in eighty-five fathom, by which we knew that we were on the Bank of Agulhas, as was also indicated by the many birds we saw.... The following day at dawn we saw the Cape of Good Hope and doubled it. Towards 10 o'clock we sighted a ship to the leeward of us and, on drawing nearer, we recognised our frigate.... Thus, for the second time, after a long separation, did we meet again on the very day we arrived in port....

As I was preparing to anchor there came a head wind so strong that I was forced to run before it to Robben Island.... There I stayed until the following morning [DR. 13/6], when I went and anchored beside the fort*. It was then about 2 o'clock in the afternoon. I found nine [?] vessels there which had come from Batavia, and which were returning to Europe. I sent the Chevalier de Cibois to present my respects to the Governor and request permission to take in water and provisions, and to send eight or ten sick men ashore. He received my greeting in a very civil manner and told the officer that I was the master and could do anything I wished. As it was then their autumn season, when fruit of every kind is ripe, he sent me melons, grapes and greens for salads. I saluted the fortress with seven guns, for the King's orders are that we should fire first. It replied gun for gun,

and the vessel which was flying the Admiral's flag also saluted me with seven guns. I answered with a similar number. There were in this fleet three flags, those of Admiral*, Vice-Admiral and Rear-Admiral. The fruit they sent me was excellent and so were the vegetables. The melons were very good, and the grapes better than those in France. I walked in their beautiful garden*, which reminds one of the gardens of France. The vegetables grown there in quantities, were a source of pleasure to our crews, for the Governor gave orders that they were to be supplied with as much as they could take. The quinces, too, which were there in numbers, we found excellent for the voyage....

The Governor is a very intelligent man, and very suitable for a colony, and it is said that if he remains here for long he will make it a very lovely one. If there are any Dutchmen who wish to settle there, he gives them as much land as they desire, has houses built for them, and gives them oxen for ploughing and all the other animals and tools which they need, the value of them to be repaid to the Company when they are able. They must sell all their produce of their lands to the Company only, at a fixed price which is profitable to it and to the colonists. The wine which it buys at sixteen dollars the hogshead from them, it sells again for a hundred to foreigners and to their own fleets which come here: that is to say, to the sailors who drink it here. Sheep, oxen and other things are sold in a similar way, bringing a large income to the Company, and allowing the fleets to refresh there at small cost, staying a month or even six weeks.

When I arrived the Governor was not long since returned from an expedition* he had made to search for gold and silver mines: he had brought various ores with him. It is said, that these mines have much gold and silver, and that they are very easy to work, not being deep. He went inland more than 250 miles, taking 3 or 4 Cape Hottentots who spoke Dutch: these took him to the nearest tribe, from which he took along others. He met up to nine different tribes, taking men along from them as the tribes changed, so as to make himself understood, and thus got very much information in reply to his questions. He said, that the last tribe met [Namaqua] was the most civilised, and that men, women and children came dancing to meet him, all clothed in tiger-skins, long cloaks that hung to their feet. He brought one of these Hottentots back with him [*sic*: not a Namaqua], and was having him taught Dutch, to go again with him next year. All these tribes have much cattle, their only riches. The Governor had with him 50 soldiers; an artist [Claudius*] to paint in colours the animals, birds, snakes and plants which he should find; a surveyor to map the route; a Mate (since they marched always by the compass); and three hundred oxen to carry their provisions and draw 13 or 15 carts. When they encountered hills, they took the carts to pieces and loaded them on the oxen, to cross them. When he had gone somewhat far inland he was for three days without finding water, which greatly irked him. The journey took 5½ months, and in it he met with many wild beasts. He said, that the elephants there are large, and much larger than those of India. There are also terrifyingly large rhinoceroses: one of these nearly killed him, since when this animal is enraged no weapon can halt him. His hide is very hard, even hard enough to turn musket-balls: to kill them they must be hit just at the right

spot, at the bend of the shoulder. They have two horns: of these I brought three with me, two of which are still fast to the animal's hide.

While we were at the Cape the Governor sent me many fish during the fast-days at that time. I saw a whale of a startling size which passed half a pistol-shot from my ship. There were also many birds....

On March 26th at 3 in the afternoon I set sail with a good wind, and ran out of the Bay [DR]....

Arrived Brest June 18, 1686. For van der Stel's expedition see in Valentyn and Waterhouse: it also figures in various items of this period, notably Tachard's item 55.

58 François-Timoléon de Choisy

(*See also item 54.*) *Sailed from Siam December 22, 1685, taking 'three Siamese Ambassadors, 8 Mandarins, 4 Secretaries and about 20 servants' in* L'Oiseau, *in company with the frigate** La Maligne, *but separated in storm near Mauritius.*

March 10 [1686] ... We fear that we have been carried too far South: we need a good [observation of] latitude to fix our position. Sighted a ship and neared her. She is English bound for Tonquin: she told us that the King of England is at peace, and that de Mommouth, who had started a revolt, has had his head chopped off.... She saluted us with five guns: we replied with three, she being a merchantman. She told us also that she sighted land yesterday at seven leagues distance, and found bottom in 93 fathoms: so we were fifty leagues nearer the Cape than we had thought.

Latitude observed 36 degrees.

March 11. Good way all night. Sounded, and had 75 fathoms, sand. We are on the bank, and at nine in the morning: 'Land, land! The Cap des Aiguilles!' We sailed North-West until night, to come nearer the land. Sounded at ten in the evening, and found bottom at 150 fathoms: we are already clear of the bank. Good fresh wind: if it holds, we shall anchor at the Cape tomorrow.

March 12. At dawn the Table Mountain was recognised. We are a little too far off, because we steered West all night: now we must make for land. Sighted a ship making for the Cape: it would be quite amusing if it were *La Maligne*.... If God wills, we shall eat salads tomorrow.

We entered the bay of the Cape safely, and were about to anchor when such a terrible wind got up that we had to take in all sails except the foresail, and make for Robin

Island before the wind. There we found *La Maligne* at anchor, which had made the same manoeuvre as we, and was forced to put in there; and now we are anchored near her [DR]. The darkness and the high sea do not permit our shallops* to be used. Tomorrow we shall tell each other of our adventures; and if the wind changes and God wills, we shall anchor in front of the fort, a good ten leagues from here.

March 13. M. Joyeux [commanding *La Maligne*] has come aboard, and tells us that he parted from us because his foresail split in the first squall, and he was forced to run before the wind. He suffered three storms, like ourselves, and took a more northerly course than we, sighting land above the Cap des Aiguilles. We have a Dutch ship anchored near us [*Bergh Sina*] coming from Batavia and bound for Europe: he had always the best weather in the world, because he went further South. Chevalier de Sibois is going to the Robin Island in search of refreshing: it is said to have an abundance of cabbages.

The wind is from seawards. We are setting sail to go and anchor in front of the fort of the Cape: the Dutch ship is doing the same. Sibois has come back: the commander of Robin Island was most friendly to him, and told him that the King had married the Infanta of Portugal: I don't believe a word of it [and correctly].

Here we are at anchor [DR], together with *La Maligne*. Tomorrow we must stretch our legs by a stroll in that lovely garden*, of which I think I sent you a pompous description. When we came, it was a wintry garden; and now it is an autumnal one, where we ought to find the fruits of all parts of the world. For my part, I prefer the madeleine peaches in preference to the durian, the oranges, and the pineapple.

Sibois returns from the Cape: the Governor offers everything in his power. We saluted the fort with seven guns: it thanked us with the same number. Then the Admiral* of the Dutch fleet [Hartsing] saluted us with seven and we thanked him with that many; and finally the fort again thanked us with seven guns.

March 14. It is a busy life aboard ship. When under way it is Take in, Hoist, Make fast, Port, Starboard, Midships, Steady as you go, Ease the helm: always something to be done. No sooner is one arrived in the wished-for port than nothing but hammering is to be heard: the ship has strained, she must be repaired, tightened, caulked: water for three months must be taken in: the lower part of the hold must be re-stowed. One has no time to be bored; and if one had nothing to do, if one had neither paper, ink, nor pen, the one question ‘What are they doing there?’ would fill the time.

One good dinner makes forgotten three months of poor food. Soles in the European fashion, a big white fish with a trunk like an elephant [Deaths-head], salads, grapes, melons, fresh eggs: we will try to refresh ourselves....

March 15. There is such a terrible south-easter that we cannot think of going ashore. There are three or four of our officers who will be unable to return aboard to sleep: the shallops* will not dare to risk themselves. Just now we saw a Dutch one capsize: the men are safe because they could swim, because they were helped, and because the tide was setting shorewards. So we might as well be out to sea, without salads, without fish, without eggs: it is anything but agreeable.

The Governor of the Cape is pretty casual. The Ambassador has as yet heard nothing from him: not the least little compliment, far less any refreshing.

March 16. The wind has fallen somewhat, and the really plucky men can risk going ashore. I shall certainly not go except in a dead calm: to be drowned in a puddle after having been to the ends of the earth - I am becoming like a real sailor, afraid to cross the Seine.

March 17. At last the Governor has woken up, and has just sent his compliments to the Ambassador [DR 16/3], together with two sheep and some melons, salads and grapes. They come a bit late, but we shall not leave them uneaten. The weather is excellent, and we are taking in as much water as possible.

March 18. This night there was a terrifying wind. We lay to two anchors*: a third was dropped for greater safety, and a fourth was in readiness. If these winds return so often, it really looks as if we shall not get ashore, and we care little about it: there is nothing new to see. The Garden* is not so fine as it was last year: the heat of Summer has somewhat dried it up, and we already have all the refreshing from it. If God gives us the grace of arriving in France we shall eat melons and grapes twice this year.

March 19: Fair weather. The chief of the Siamese Ambassadors went ashore: he was saluted with nine guns as he entered the longboat*. He thought the Garden beautiful, and bathed in a spring, although he was warned that spring-water would harm him: he came back from it with a bad cold.

March 20. I also went ashore, and tired myself out with walking. The Outentos amused us by running, and by some fencing with sticks*, which they did very adroitly, for a few Dutch two-sou pieces.

The Governor of the Cape went himself last year on an exploring expedition*: he has forbidden those who were with it to tell anything of what they saw, on pain of death; but we do not despair of discovering something.

March 21. Having well studied the news of the King's marriage to the Infanta of Portugal [above, March 13] we can learn nothing definite concerning it, and I do not believe it at all.

March 22. Today our watering will be completed. Five hundred hens on board, fifty sheep, some very good dried fish, all our hulls caulked. Who will prevent us from sailing the day after Lady-day? And who says that we shall not see the Saint John bonfires in France?

The youngest of the Siamese Ambassadors went ashore: he was given seven guns.

March 23. It looks like a boring calm; but we hope that the wind will not fail us when we ask for it. Today I tired myself out by walking.

March 24. A small Portuguese ship [DR 11/3], coming from Mozambique and bound for Brazil, set sail four times this afternoon, and each time re-anchored for lack of wind. She has a load of negros, and is scantily manned. The eight Dutch ships [? DR 21/1, 9/3, 13/3 but seven only] lying in the roads are awaiting four more from Batavia, to go on to Europe together. They are having themselves tarred, and look quite new. We are not so

finely dressed, but our swords are as good. They will not leave for another fifteen days. Those folk never hurry: the skippers amuse themselves on shore, and the sailors take it easy with the watering. They hardly ever row, using sails as much as they can.

March 25. All our youngsters have gone hunting. A good day's run ashore makes up to them for three months' rolling about.

March 26. I was right: no sooner were our businesses finished, and all our folk on board, than a southerly wind got up, with which we soon lost sight of the Cape [DR]....

March 27. Our ship rolls worse than ever: it was impossible to sleep last night.... I shall tell you tomorrow everything I have gathered up regarding the new discoveries made by the Dutch around the Cape....

March 28. Last year the Governor of the Cape himself went exploring. He had with him sixty Dutch, two hundred slaves and some Outentos, five horses, thirty-eight oxcarts, and a hundred and fifty draught animals. He went, he says, two hundred leagues to the North, through very difficult country, and found nothing noteworthy except certain tribes, pretty well built, white [*sic*], very friendly, and always dancing. One day when he was camped on a low hill the Outentos who were with him told him that he was about to die, and that they saw two of the greatest sorcerers of the country coming to him. In fact, two men approached gravely, dressed in bizarre fashion, followed by some hundred others; but he warned them, and had them told, that he was a greater sorcerer than they; and to prove it, he had a glass of brandy brought in their presence, set fire to it, and drank it alight. The poor sorcerers threw themselves on their knees before him, admitted his superior powers, and went away. [Simon van der Stel was famous for his tall stories.] He said also that he thought he was going to be killed by a rhinoceros, that some of these are terrifying, and that they dig up the ground with their horn while coming straight at you: they fear only the sound of a drum. The Governor told no more than this; but he is not paid to tell us the secrets of the Company. Here is what was told me by one of those who accompanied him, a man of good sense [Claudius*]: that they found the loveliest lands in the world (and this can well be believed, since they made use of their carts there); that the people are very friendly; that there are mines of gold and silver [*sic:* no mention of the copper actually found]; that from time to time they found small hills entirely composed of alabaster or of crystal; that these mines are more than a hundred and fifty leagues from the Cape, and three or four leagues from the sea. In any case, a fact which makes one think that there is something worth doing there, is that the Governor has recently sent a large vessel there to examine the coasts and try to enter the rivers [not traced].

....

March 30. The wind was pretty strong last night. We rolled and pitched, and I was as sick as a dog. I was fit when we came out: I must have aged a lot in twelve months. You will be surprised to see my hair all white: it was too hot in the Indies to wear a wig, and my hair regrew white. I shall leave it as it is: you will have to be so good as to get used to it....

Arrived at Brest June 18. Besides this 'Journal' Choisy wrote an eleven-volume 'History of the Church';, several devotional books, and his 'Memoires': they earned him Membership of the Academy before his death in 1724 at the age of eighty (*Strangman*).

59 Father Guy Tachard

(*See also items 55, 64, 70.*) *After the arrival of the Embassy in Siam it was decided to send Tachard back to France with the Ambassador, to bring out twelve Jesuit mathematicians, for the purpose of founding in Siam an observatory 'like those of Paris and Pekin'. On December 22, 1685, he sailed in* L'Oiseau *with de Chaumont and de Choisy* (*Forbin remaining in Siam: see end of item 53*). *At Bantam January 10, 1686. Separated by storm from* La Maligne.

On the 10th of March we sighted a vessel making for the East Indies, and on nearing her we saw by her flag that she was English. The Ambassador, wishing to learn the news from Europe, sent to her Skipper Monsieur de Cibois and his secretary, who spoke English well. They reported, that the ship had left England five months previously and was going directly to Tunquin, without touching anywhere. They reported that all was quiet in Europe, that the King of England had defeated the rebels and taken prisoner their leader the Duke of Montmouth; that, after trial and sentence pronounced upon him, he had been beheaded; that several others of his accomplices had also been executed, while a few had experienced the clemency of His Britannic Majesty.

All this pleased us greatly, and especially that he said that the coast of Africa had been sighted the evening before at a distance of seven leagues. We saw then that we were much nearer than we had thought, and the following day, at seven o'clock in the morning, we found by sounding that we were on the Bank des Aiguilles in ninety fathoms, and at midday we sighted the Cape des Aiguilles. The wind being favourable we took advantage of it during the night, so that on the morrow we recognised the Cape of Good Hope eight leagues away. We arrived at the entrance of the Bay at about three in the afternoon; but as the wind was too strong for us to enter we anchored between Robin Island and the mainland beside our frigate.

Next day, March 13 [DR], the wind having fallen, we dropped anchor in the Bay among seven large Dutch vessels forming their Indian fleet [DR 21/1, 9/3, 13/3], which were to sail for Europe as soon as three or four others arrived, which were expected

daily. The Ambassador sent an officer to present his compliments to the Governor of the fortress, who received him no less cordially than when we touched before. We saluted with seven guns and the fort replied gun for gun.

While we were taking in water and other necessary provisions, I went to visit the Governor, who made enquiries about the six Jesuits he had seen the previous year. He made me a thousand friendly offers, and suggested, in case I wished to remain on shore, the house of one of his friends, because the observatory, which had been demolished in order to be rebuilt more magnificently, was not yet completed. On learning that I would probably be returning to the Indies with several other Jesuits, he added most obligingly that everything would be ready for us on our arrival, and invited me and all my companions to come and rest ourselves there. After all these courtesies, he made me a present of four handsome tigerskins, and a little tamed animal which he had captured during his recent journey. In fur and size it resembled a squirrel, and it had almost the same sort of face. When giving it to me he told me that it was a deadly enemy to snakes and that it waged a relentless war on them [Meerkat].

It was the time of the vintage and they were well ahead with it. We ate the African grapes, which grow abundantly and have a marvellous savour. The white wine is very delicate, and if the Dutch knew as well how to tend their vines as they know how to plant colonies and carry on trade, they would soon have good red wines as well.

The Governor told me that he had just returned from a long journey to the regions lying to the North of the Cape, and that he had discovered many tribes which appeared to have a form of government and a settled policy, as may be seen in my description of the Cape of Good Hope [in item 55].

Our provisioning being completed and our sick restored to health by the land air, we left the Bay of the Cape on March 26 [DR].... [Equator April 27. Brest June 18.]

Background - continued

26/3/1686 ... the French ships *l'Oyseau* and *la Maligne* set sail ... and with them the Portuguese ship *Saint Anthoni* ...

15/4 ... the return fleet set sail and reached the open sea [no names given]

8/5 Resolutions ... certain Portuguese arriving here today informed the Hon. Commandeur of the pitiable mishap on April 16 last by the stranding of their ship between Cape Agulhas and False Bay ... resolved as far as possible, and as far as the orders of our Lords and Masters allow, to help them ... the Hon. Coy's Hospital,* by God's grace empty, as a lodging ... provide them with the necessary sustenance on payment ...

11/5 Resolutions ... the Captain ... and other officers of the wrecked ship *Nra Senora de los Milagros* ... requesting to be assisted during the time they remain here ... resolved to grant them this ... and to permit them to go to the Fatherland with the daily-awaited ships of the second sending [aftership*] ... informed the Council that three Ambassadors from the King of Siam ... had sailed with them, that the oldest had died soon after the wreck ... and the other two had set off alone ... presumed that they had lost their way ... resolved to send a Serjeant with six soldiers as soon as possible to rescue them ...

17/5 ... about noon arrived safely to anchor in the roads the ships *Oosterland* and *Jambi* [outwards]

21/5 ... foot and horsemen sent out to seek for the wrecked and abandoned Siamese ... towards noon came to the roads ... the *Beurs* ... in the afternoon the Siamese Ambassadors were entertained to dinner ...

21/5 Resolutions ... resolved to grant them the requested thousand Rxd., and as a gift coloured silks [‘allegies’] and other small things for clothing, as also their sustenance while they are here ...

27/5 ... at three in the afternoon came to anchor in the roads the long-awaited yacht* *Eemland* ... sailed from Pallicatte on February 22 last ...

5/6 ... the ship *Couverden* arrived [outwards]

6/6 ... came to anchor here the little hooker* *'t Hoefijser* [outwards] ... followed by the little flute* *Klaverblad* [ditto]

6/6 Resolutions [10 soldiers, 3 horses etc. lent to the Siamese Ambassadors to go in search of their chief and some of his followers who had remained behind]

8/6 ... *Oosterland* set sail ...

8/6 Resolutions [Miners working at Witteboomen report negative results, and suggest their transfer to Sumatra: investigated]

13/6 This night came in the ship *Sillida*, having sailed from Batavia on March 10 ... the Skipper ... died five days ago ... the ship the *Krygsman* in sight since this morning ... the ship *Emeland* unable to get out of the bay because of contrary wind ...

14/6 ... in the afternoon came to anchor the flute* the *Krygsman* ...

16/6 ... came to the roads the yacht* *Spierdijk* ...

21/6 ... this morning the ship *Beurs* set sail ...

22/6 ... the little hooker* the *Klaverblad* ... put to sea ...

23/6 ... arrived here in the roads the little flute *Bronste* [outwards] ... hardly had she anchored than the ship the *Vryheid* came in under full sail [outwards]

60 Captain Ambrose Cowley

From his ‘*Voyage round the Globe*’ *in Hacke's* ‘*Collection of Original Voyages ...*’, *London 1699. He was in Virginia in 1683*, *and was persuaded to go as Master of the privateer* (*or pirate*!) Revenge, *John Cooke Captain*, *Dampier* (*item 73*) *with them. Sailed August 22*, *1683: Cape Verde Islands*, *Guinea coast*, *Brazil*, *Magellan Straits*, *Galapagos Islands*, *Western Mexico. To* Nicholas *as Master*, *leaving Dampier and* Revenge. *Philippines*, *Canton*, *Timor: owing to mutinous crew thence* ‘*in a large boat*’ *to Cheribon and Batavia. There granted passage in Dutch homeward-bound* Sillida (*his* ‘*Salida*’), *sailing on February 24*, *1686* (*Valentyn I*) *with* Krygsman (‘*Critsman*’). *Note that the passage from* ‘*Wednesday the third at night*’ *to* ‘*one to Holland*’ *essentially repeats* ‘*We staid no longer*’ *to* ‘*cape from Holland*’, *and is printed out of the proper place*.

From hence to Thursday *May* 27th nothing happened remarkable; on which Day we had the Wind very furious, it blowing extream hard at W.S.W. We lay at a Trie* with our Main Sails, and found our selves in the Lat. of 30 deg. 2 min. South, coming in with the Land, which made very high with many small Hammocks.... But on the 29th at 12 a Clock, we went out, and finding the Wind veer to the W.S.W. stemmed

N.W. her Top sails being set, and was so leewardly a Ship, that she would not make her way better than

N. by W. with this Sea: And to increase our Difficulties, this Day we were brought to one Pint of Water a Man *per Diem*; our Water being but little in the Ship, and we fearing withal least we should lose our Passage about the Cape, thought to bear away for the Island of *Mayota* or *Joanna*, our Captain at the same time being sick and lame with the Gout, and of whose Death some of us were not a little apprehensive, and not without reason for he did not survive that Night....

It was now become the first Day of *June*, when we saw the Land at about 10 Leagues distance. It appear'd like a round Hill, flat at the top, and bore from us N.N.E. with a smaller Hill to the Eastward of it: We reckon'd it to be the Cape Land of *Buena Esperanea*, we having had the Wind at East this 24 Hours, a very fresh Gale, our Ship running 8 knots, till 6 in the Morning, then the Wind came up at North, little Wind.

Next day we were before the Harbour of the Cape, it bearing from us East, with the Wind at North, fair Weather; we having sailed to the Northward since Yesterday Noon, 25 English Leagues, the Variation [Declination*] there is 6 deg. Wednesday the third [DR 13/6] at Night about six a Clock we came to an Anchor in the Bay before the Castle in 9 Fathom Water, we having had the Wind at W.N.W. steered into the Bay at E.S.E. till we were within the Point of Land, then S.E. by E. afterwards S.E. for half an Hour, we having little Wind: There lyeth a low Island [Robben Island] in the Bay, so that as you go in you may sail on either side thereof, there is also a Rock or Ledg [Walvis Rock] at some distance from the Island; on the South side, in the Bay where lay 7 Ships, six thereof were bound to *India* [DR 17/5, 5/6, 6/6] and one to *Holland* [*Emeland*]. We had three Days since lost the Company of our other Ship the *Critsman* [*Krygsman*]; but this Afternoon we saw a Ship at Sea, which we thought must be her, she being not yet come in ... Was told moreover that the King of *England* had taken the Duke of *Monmouth*, and that he was Beheaded: Besides, that there was a Caract of *Portugal* cast away upon the Reef, having on Board at that time 4000000 of Guilders in Gold, which was sent as a Present by the King of *Siam* to the King of *Portugal* [*N.S. de los Milagros*].... This day came down four of the Natives of the Place; they (being the foulest Men that ever I saw) dancing Naked, and shaking their Privy Parts, with an offer to the *Hollanders*, that they should lye with their Wives for a bit of rolled Tobacco. They had nothing to cover their Bodies, but a Sheeps Skin hung over their Shoulders.

We staid no longer here [i.e. 'before the Harbour' above] than till the Morrow, when finding the Wind at North, we steered for *Tafell-Bay*, bearing from us East, and the Land making upon the Point, with two low Hills to the Northward of the *Tafell Berg*, and to the Northward of the Lowland Bluff, with an Appearance almost like the *Southforeland* in *England*; whereas to the South-ward of the *Tafell Berg* lyeth Land, about two thirds as high as the *Tafell Berg*, made ragged with small Hammocks higher than the rest, and to the South-ward of that lyeth a round Hill, which maketh Wood Bay [Hout Bay]. The Northernmost Land is called the *Lyons-Head*; then the *Devils-Hill* lyes behind the *Table-hill*, or in Dutch the *Tafell Berg*, and the *Lyon's Head*. I had made out in longitude from *Prince's Island* 82 deg. and 25 min. [actually 86° 45′]. But the Ship out-run our

Expectation 3 deg. more, if the longitude* is laid down right in the Maps, as cannot be expected; for I reckon'd to be before the Ship 2 deg. but she was 3 deg. before me: The lat. of the Cape must be falsly laid down to be in 34 deg. 30 min. whereas it lies but in 34 deg. 20 min. South [actually 34° 21′],

I have set down the Course we steered Yesterday, but not minding the Variation [Declination*] of the Compass, (whereof we had one to set to the Variation, which had not altered since we had 15 deg. Variation) and finding but 7 deg. our Course in the Bay was South, 71 deg. East. When we came to an Anchor in the Bay in 9 Fathom Water; the top of the *Lyons-Hill* bore from us W.S.W. but we lay too far off in the Road: If we had been further in, it had been a much better Riding, but then we should have brought the top of the *Lyons-Hill* to bear from.us W. by S. and the Castle to bear S.S.E. we having heard that we were like to have War with *France*, by those six Ships which came from *Holland*.

It cannot be thought but that we must have been very desirous to go ashore, which I did the very next day with my two Friends. The Town* which is inhabited by the *Dutch*, is but small, and the Houses are built very low, by reason that in the Months of *December*, *January* and *February* they are visited with great Gales of Wind: There is not above 100 of those Houses in all the Town, but they have a very strong Castle [Fort*], with about 80 good Guns mounted therein. There is also a very spacious Garden*, with most pleasant Walks, which is maintained by the Dutch *East-India* Company, and in which is planted almost all manner of Fruit-Trees and incomparable good Herbs. This Garden is about one English Mile in length, and a Furlong in breadth. This is the greatest Rarity that I saw at the Cape, for it far exceedeth the *East-India* Companies Garden that is at *Batavia*. They have also abundance of very good Sheep here, but very few black Cattle, and not many Fowls. We walked moreover without the Town, to the Village inhabited by the *Hodmandods*, so called by the *Hollanders*, to view their Nasty Bodies, and the Nature of their Dwellings, which we found to be as followeth: When we came thither, we were scarce able to endure the stench of them, and their Habitations. They build their Houses round (with their Fire-place in the middle of them) almost like the Hutts, which are built in *Ireland* by the wild Irish; the People lying in the Ashes, and having nothing under them, but a Sheeps Skin.

The Men have but one Stone [Testicle*] in appearance, which is very strange; but the Women are more to be admired, who have a flap of Skin [‘Apron*’] that covers their Nakedness, but are so Ignorant, or I may say Brutish, that they will not stick to prostitute themselves, or do what ever else you would have, for the least Recompence Imaginable; and of this I am an Eye-witness.

Their Apparel is a Sheep's Skin (as I have already said) over their Shoulders, with a Leathern Cap upon their Heads, as full of Grease as it can hold; their Legs are wound about with Guts of Beasts (from the Ankle to the Knees) well greased.

These People, call'd the *Hodmandods*, are born White, but make themselves Black with Sut, and besmear their Bodies all over; so that by frequent Repetition their Skins become

almost as black as a Negro's.

Their Children are of a good Comely Shape, when they are Young: Their Noses in Form resemble a Negro's. When they Marry, the Woman cutteth off one Joint of her Finger*; and if her Husband die, and she marry again, she cutteth off another Joint; and so many Men as she marryeth, so many Joints she looseth.

They are a People that will eat any thing that is foul: If the *Hollanders* kill a Beast, they will get the Guts, and squeez the Excrements out, and then without washing or scraping, lay them upon the Coals, and before they are well hot through, will take them and eat them. If a Slave of the Companies should have a Mind to have Carnal Knowledge of one of their Women, let him but give her Husband a bit of Tobacco-Roll of about three Inches long, he will fetch her forthwith to the Slave, and cause her to lye with him.

They are Men not given to the least Jealousie, yet they will beat their Wives if they lye with the *Hodmandods* themselves; But they value it not for them to do it with any Man of another Nation.

They are Worshippers of Dame *Luna*, and when they expect to see the Moon, there will be Thousands of them by the Sea-side, Dancing and Singing: But if it be dark Weather, so that the Moon appears not, they will say, That their God is angry with them; whereas on the contrary when the said Luminary shines, they will say, He is not angry.

There happened at this time that we were amongst them, that one of the *Hodmandods* had drunk himself dead in the Fort, whither the other *Hodmandods* came with Oyl and Milk, and put them into his Mouth; But finding they could get no Life into him they began to make Preparation for his Burial, which was in the following manner. They came with Knives and Shaved his Body, Arms and Leggs through the thick Skin; then they digged a great Hole, and set him in it upon his Breech, clapping Stones round about him to keep him upright: After came a Company of their Women howling about him, and making a most horrid Noise; Then they cover'd the Mouth of the Hole, and left him in a sitting Posture. But to return on Board again.

Sunday, *June* 6, we had the Wind at N.W. a fresh Gale, when there came into the Bay a Ship from Amsterdam, call'd the *Speredike* [DR 16/6, *Spierdyk*], burden about Eight Hundred Tuns; And next day the Wind continued at the same Point, we having done nothing but caulking Work between Decks, and clapt a Fish* to the Foremast. But the following twenty four Hours we had it at N.W. by N. it blowing hard right into the Bay, with thick misty Weather, during which time we took up our Water Cask* from out of the Main Hatch to the Floor, and cleared the Limbers amid-Ships. Wednesday the 9th proved also to be misty and foggy Weather, with the Wind at N.W. little Wind, when we began to take in our Water for our Voyage. The Wind continued at N.W. the succeeding Day, with the same Weather; and indeed the Fogg was as great as small Rain. We had gotten in 36 Liggers* of Water already, thinking this Day to get all our Water on Board. But on Friday the Wind coming to S.E. a fresh Gale, we got up our Yards and Top-Masts.... At the same time the Ship, call'd the *Burs* [*Beurs*, DR 21/6] of *Amsterdam*, set sail for *Batavia*, on the Island of *Java*, and at their going off gave us nine Guns. The

Wind continued on Saturday the 12th at S.E. a fresh Gale; when the Ship, call'd the *Clover-blade* [*Klaverbladt*, DR 22/6] of *Delf*, set sail also for *Batavia*, and that we got in all our Water, and sent our Boat ashore for Wood for our Voyage. Next Day the Wind came to N.W. thick foggy Weather, a fresh Gale; we got now all our Wood on Board, and were in a manner ready to sail with the first fair Wind: That Day the Ship called the Freight [*Vryheid*, DR 23/6] of *Flushing* came also into the Bay, she being a Vessel of 60 Guns and 1400 Tuns; had 80 Men on Board, and a stump Nose. The Wind held in the same Corner still, and the Weather was dark. However, we had got our Men and every thing else in a perfect Readiness; and among our Company there happened to be one Gentleman Soldier, who had been in the Duke of *Monmouth's* Army, and told us how it went with them in the Fight, and more News than will be pertinent for me to take notice of in this place.

At length Tuesday, *June* 15 [DR 25/6] came, when the Wind being at S.W. a small Gale, we set sail at 8 a Clock in the Morning, with 5 Ships more in Company; three of us being bound for *Holland*, and the other three to *Batavia*; whose names were these, the *Cowmburgh* [*Coeverden*] the *Rocker* [not traced: possibly misreading of 'hoeker'], and the *Toseser* [*Hoefyser*]; whereas ours for *Holland* were the *Salida* (*Sillida*), the *Critsman* [*Krygsman*], and the *Emeland*, a *Bengal* man; At two a Clock we parted Drinking of Healths and Firing among us to the number of 300 Guns.

Next Day at six in the Morning we found, the flat Land, call'd the *Taffelberg*, bore from us S.E. by S. distant 10 Leagues....

Equator June 22. Maas September 28. Helvoetsluys September 30. Thence by land to Rotterdam, and in English ship to London, arriving October 12.

Background - continued

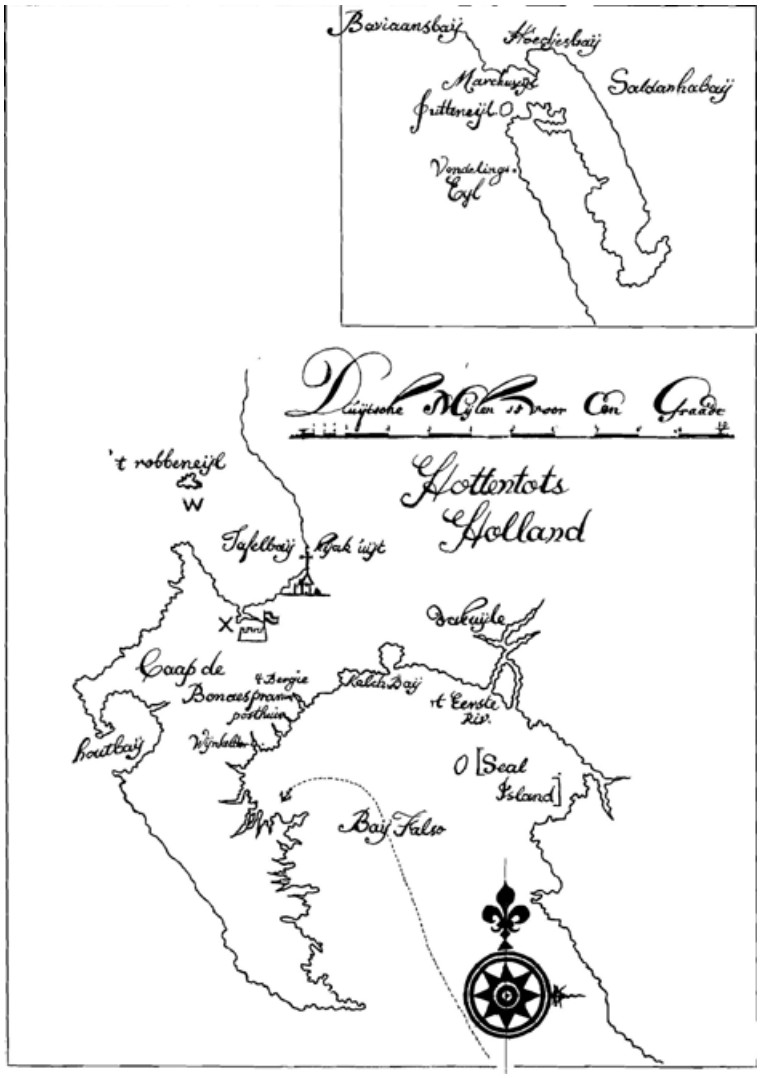
25/6/1686 ... the ships *Sillida*, *Emeland*, *Coeverden*, the *Krygsman* and the *Hoefijser* set sail ... tacking out of the bay ...

1/7 Resolutions ... the mine at the Witteboomen ... without the least sign of any lode ... agreed to send the Mine-Overseer Frederik Math. van Werlinghof with the other miners to Batavia ... for employment on the West coast of Sumatra ...

29/10 ... reached the roads the English Company's ship the *Touwr van London*, having sailed 4 months ago from the Thames bound for Bombaya with 130 sailors, 100 soldiers and 50 guns ... having touched at Saint Jago ... lost her foretopmast near the coast here in a storm ...

31/10 ... the Captain of the English ship ... came to salute the Hon. Commandeur ...

2/11 ... came to the roads the English King's ship *Courtgene* [?: name of Dutch ship] of 100 last,* manned with 32 guns and 62 men, having sailed four months ago from Portsmuyden ... with the *Touwr* ... both having touched at Saint Jago, being new ships, the smaller bound for Ballaser [Balasore] in Bengal ... having met a French warship in the Channel which told them that war between her King and 'Haar Hoog Mogende' was regarded as a certainty ...



[45] SALDANHA BAY, FALSE BAY, CAPE TOWN Cape Archives map 1/982. Much small lettering omitted (soundings, bottom, 'Sandy Bay', 'Good Firewood', etc.). The Kuyle is mislocated (Kuils Rivier).

61 Philip Leigh

Transcribed from xerograph of his log kept in '*Berkley Castle*' (*which he consistently calls* '*Castile*', *and which the DR unexpectedly makes* '*Towr van London*'). *Dates are of course Old Style*. From England June 27, 1686.*

Monday 18 [October] 1686 ... wee saw the land bearing EtNEt the Etmost which is a smooth land with a rising in the middle that wee made to bee Cape degullis ... tackt and lay of SSWt till morning then Cape degullis bore EtNEt½N and Cape falsoe No this Cape falsoe is a very scragged land and the Wt most end makes like an Island....

Tuesday 19 ... at 12 the Lyons Mount or the sugerlofe hill bore So some 2 miles* of ... [went into Table Bay, DR 29/10] here wee [had] very good refreshing but very deare 23 dollers for a Cow and 5 for a Sheepe....

Satarnday 23. This day Capt Welldon came into the roade [*Courtgene*, an unexpectedly Dutch name, DR 2/11].

Sunday 24. This day abought 4 after noone having dispatched all our business wee came to saile and stood into the shore and fired to the fort 7 guns which was answered with the like then stood of with the wind att SWt till 9 then it fell calme and wee droue upon Penguin Island that wee were forced to anchore in 14 fathom.

Monday 25. att 5 in the morning wee came to saile [DR 3/11]....

Background - continued

3/11 ... the English Company's ship *Touwr* set sail ... was forced to anchor again in the evening for lack of wind ...

4/11 ... still near the Robben Island while the other ... was busy in the roads [cleaning, caulking, tarring]

29/12 ... arrived the ship *Cronenburg* ... from Masulipatam on October 8 last ...

31/12 ... this morning appeared here also the ship the *Wapen van Alkmaar* ...

[1687]
War continues between France and the League of Augsberg.
Background - from official documents in the archives

3/2 ... the English ship named the *Pelikan* ... at anchor in the roads [sailed 18/2]

1/3 ... At noon appears here the Skipper Willem Knyf with ten other of his crew ... their ship *Stavenesse* having been wrecked on February 16 ... on the Terra de Natal [his report included in full]

13/3 ... a light breeze from the north-west, which was able to bring the ship *Zalland* to the roads...

19/3 ... the ships *Land van Schouwen* and *Voorschoten* arriving...

20/3 ... arrival of the ships *Oosterland*, *Klaverblad*, *Spierdyk*, *Schelde* and *Princeland* ... in *Oosterland* was brought Heer Rycklof van Goens [Junior], weak in body and limbs...

21/3 ... the ships *Langenwyck*, *Guldenwagen* and finally *Castricum* came here to the roads ...

24/3 ... towards evening reached the roads the English ship *Providentia* [for Madagascar to get

slaves for Barbados: her Skipper and Surgeon went ashore at Struys Bay on March 14, and did not return]

25/3 ... arrived here the ship the *Helder* ...

29/3 ... the yacht* *Jambi* given her instructions ... buy slaves at Madagascar for the West coast of Sumatra [mention that she had arrived at the Cape on July 3 last year]

30/3 ... the yacht *Jambi* no longer in sight ... *Zalland* given her despatch [31/3 out to sea]

3/4 ... the Mate of *Providentia* set out by land to seek his Skipper at Struys Bay ...

62 Nicolaus de Graaff

(*See also items 22*, *28*, *36*, *39*, *49*.) *He sailed from Batavia on November 30*, *1686 in* Spierdijk *to Bantam*, *and waited there until December 24 for final orders. While there* Saint-Maartens-Dijk *called*, '*bringing with her from the Cape the two Siamese A'mbassadors who had been sent from the King of Siam in a Portuguese ship with large gifts for the Kings of Portugal*, *England and France*, *who had lost their ship at the Cape* [N.S. de los Milagros; *and see below*]'. *From there with five other return-ships*, Castricum, Schelde, Oosterland, Honsholsredijk, *and the flute** Gulde Wagen.

Having sighted the land of the Kaap de Bone Esperance on March 9, on March 20 [DR] we anchored in the Table Bay, finding there the ship *Salland*, coming from Holland [DR 13/3], also the Ships *Alkmaar* and *Krossenburg* which had sailed from *Maselpatnam* on the coast of *Koromandel*, and had lain at the Cape for 3 months [DR 29/12, 31/12/1686]. We found also the ships *Helder* and *Voorschoten* [DR 25/3, 19/3], which had sailed from *Bengal* on December 16. At this time there also arrived at the Cape the ships *Land Schouwen* and *Langewijk*, which had sailed from the bay of *Punto Gale* in *Ceilon* on January 22 [DR 19/3, 21/3].

We will tell the reader of some special happenings while the fleet lay at the *Cape* to refresh the crews and to provide the ships with what they needed.

The Yacht* *Jamby* which arrived at the *Cape* before us [see DR 29/3], coming from the island of *Madagascar*, brought from there ten sailors who had gone ashore with the longboat* to get water for their little ship, the *Westerwijk*, which was lying in the roads to purchase slaves, this being about 14 months previously; and this little ship was taken by a pirate which lay there; and having sailed off with *Westerwijk* she set the rest of the crew that were still in her, on land in *Ceylon*, and these aforesaid ten of their mates came with *Jamby* to the *Cape*.

At the beginning of March [DR 1/3], about 3 weeks before our coming to the *Cape*, the Master *Wilhelm Knyf* landed here at the *Cape* with 10 sailors of his crew, in a vessel which they had built. They had sailed on the 18th of December of 1685 with the ship *Stavenes* [see *Stavenisse**] from *Bengal*, and the same had been lost on the 16th of February 1686 on the south-east coast of the *Cape*. All the crew reached land, but for 13

who were drowned in the breakers. Some Hottentots or natives of the *Cape* told the Master Knyf and his crew that a little to the north from them another ship had been lost, and that there were white men there. Thereat *Knyf* went thither with his crew, and found them to be English, with whom they agreed together to build a vessel and journey in the same to the *Cape*. When this vessel was ready, *Knyf* and 10 of his sailors and some English sailed from there to the *Cape*, but the rest of his crew, about 48 men, would not go aboard, but went inland, and up to now have not been seen again.

This Master *Knyf* was an old and good friend of mine, since once we had sailed to war together, he as a Lieutenant. There came also here to the *Cape* a little English ship with 4 to 6 guns, called the *Vergulde Pellikaan* [error for *Providence*, DR 24/3], with nine English sailors: these had lain at anchor in the Vlees-Bay about 40 miles south of the Table Bay, where their Master went ashore in the longboat* with the Surgeon and 6 sailors, to barter or deal with the natives; but they were never seen again. The Mate, who had remained aboard with the rest of the crew, could not think where the longboat might be delaying so long, and waited for a few days; but perceiving nothing, and suspecting that they had been killed by the savages, they sailed for the *Cape*, and now anchored near us.

The Portuguese ship lost here the previous year with the *Siamese Ambassadors* ran ashore about 60 miles south of *Table Bay* near the Struis Bay, and still lay aground there and had not entirely broken up; and it was suspected that there was still much of value in the wreck, since in her there had been many gifts, of gold, jewels and other rarities, and she also had a valuable cargo. The Governor of the *Cape* [Simon] *van der Stel*, having learnt of the loss of this ship from the Ambassadors and Portuguese who arrived at the *Cape*, at once sent thither *Olof* [Bergh*] *the Swede* and Serjeant *Kristoffel van Dieringe* with 7 or 8 men, to take charge of her and exercise good care that the goods that were saved should be justly dealt with, and that the same should be duly restored to their owners. But these pious souls thought rather to look after themselves, and did not heed the orders which the Governor had given them; but instead so soon as they were come to the vessel began to loot, hack, break and rob, not like guardians of the gold who had been set to watch over it, but like folk who had been brought up on coasts and islands where ships were often lost, and where it is an honourable act to steal from and rob those whom their duty it is to help and aid. When they had soon raked together a great treasure, with their axes they cut in pieces the gold and silver hand-basins, cans, cups, beakers and other gold and silver work, and weighed it out among them with baconscales for lack of a goldsmith's balance. Then when they came to the *Cape* the work which they took in hand day and night was drinking, dicing, and womanising. They sold to hosts and hostesses and such the gold and silver work, and other rarities too many to mention, for less than half their value. This carousing was not done so silently that it did not come to the ears of the Governor, and he had them all arrested because they had looted [text ‘gesloken’, smuggled]. They were still in arrest when we sailed from the *Cape*, and how things will go further with them, time will tell. The Lieutenant was accused of having

taken a small lacquered coffer, in which were some valuable jewels, but up to now it was not proved against him....

On the 20th of April [1687, DR] we weighed anchor to continue our journey to the Fatherland, and sailed from the Cape ....

He lists the thirteen ships of the fleet (as above) agreeing with the list in Valentyn (I) except for variant spellings. Death of van Goens Junior on May 4 in Oosterland, *and of his wife a few days later. Northabout*. Arrived at Texel August 14, 1687, and home to Egmont-on-Sea*: '*and so our voyages came to THE END*'.

Background - continued

20/5 ... the whole [return-] fleet set sail [no names given: see item 62]

9/6 ... in the evening comes to the roads the King of France's flute* *la Loire*, having sailed on March 1 from Brest with 300 men in company with the ships *la Gailard*, *L' Auseau*, *la Maligne*, *la Drommedaire* and *la Normande* ...

10/6 ... The Lieutenant of the French ship called to salute the Hon Administrator [A. de Man], requesting leave to buy refreshing and to bring their sick ashore, which in the absence of the Hon. Commandeur was refused in part. In the evening the Hon. Commandeur returned to the Castle...

11/6 ... after some French officers had called to compliment the Hon. Commandeur at his residence, and requested permission to bring 25 to 30 sick ashore, and to purchase further refreshing, this was granted them. His Honour however refused to permit the posting of some of their officers with the sick [to maintain discipline]... none of their crew except the sick being allowed to remain on shore at night ... Between 4 and 5 in the afternoon there came in good order to anchor the ship *Le Gaillard*, with the commander of the squadron in her, Monsieur de Vaudricourt, and the General of the Infantry Monsr. de Farges with three of his sons; the ship *L'Auseau* commanded by the young Monsr. Duquesne, with in her Monsr. de la Loubert and Sebret [blank], Envoys from the King of France to him of Siam; the ships *le Drommedaire; la Normande*; and *la Maligne*, all smart and well-manned ships ...

11/6 Resolutions ... [request by French] granted to bring sixty of the sickest ashore [with doctors and attendants] ... no one else armed or unarmed to land before dawn or remain on shore after sunset ... nor approach this fort ... all possible men to be called in from the outposts, also all woodcutters and waggon-drivers ... and sailors to be posted in the fort and armed... from Stellenbosch forty fully-armed men to come here as soon as possible ... all burghers living near the Castle to be in it, armed ... the imprisoned Lt. Berg to be brought from Robben Island and only a Corporal [and two others] to be left there...

12/6 [Complimentary visits exchanged] In the evening three French shallops* which wished to come to the shore after watch-setting were sent back to their ships ... all posts manned ... patrols along the shore and around the Castle ...

14/6 ... 50 well-armed and smart men from Stellenbosch are come into the Castle ...

16/6 ... the Hon. Commandeur ... taking a walk in the Company's Garden met there the General de Farges and the Envoy Sebret, accompanied by various officers and ecclesiastics ...

19/6 ... variable winds and fine weather, and the French are seen going about on sticks and crutches ... to enjoy the fresh air ... in the evening the Hon. Commandeur receives the visit of 13 Jesuits ... whom His Honour entertained with vocal and instrumental music performed by some gentlemen and cadets ... the sickness and deaths among the French increase rapidly ... so that they are not in a state to take fresh water aboard, and fully 279 are on shore and another 359 lying deadly sick ...

24/6 ... one of the Jesuits being sick ... his companions requested permission to leave him here with another Jesuit and a servant until he should recover ... granted; but on reconsideration they took him aboard ... This evening only 51 French were on shore, fit or sick ... this night a fire broke out in one of the freemen's houses, by carelessness ...

63 Simon de la Loubère
(Plates 46 & 47)

(*See also item 69.*) *Translated from Vol. II of his* '*Du Royaume de Siam ...*', *Paris 1691: there is also a very defective English translation*, *London 1693. He was the new Ambassador to Siam*, *sailing from Brest on March 1*, *1687*, *with the fleet of six ships detailed in item 64*, *and-arrived in Table Bay on June 11 (DR 9/6)*.

I give three different views, of which two are entirely new, and the third, the view from the roads, is copied from a good Dutch map.

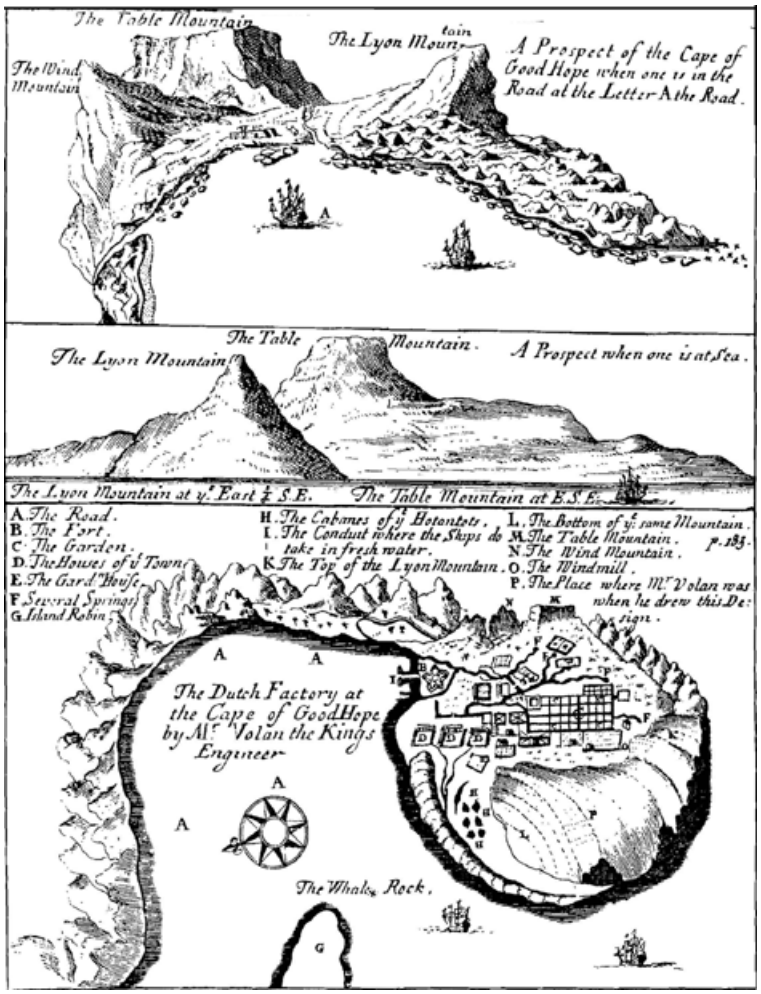
Everyone knows that the Dutch have an important establishment here, which safeguards their navigation to the Indies. The Fort* which defends it would perhaps not be greatly regarded in Europe, but it suffices in a country which has no neighbours to be feared, and where no enemy can come except from far off, and therefore with great difficulty.

The Company's Garden*, of which one of my plates gives the plan, is very spacious, as may be judged by comparing it with the fort; and although the soil is not too good, it nevertheless produces an abundance of cabbages, pumpkins, oranges, pomegranates-in a word, the fruits which keep well at sea, and are therefore greatly desired by those who make long voyages.

I saw in one corner, and under one and the same shelter, a camphor tree, a European fig, and a shrub some two feet high, said to be that which bears the tea, but which I mistook for a young peartree. It had neither flowers nor fruits, and very few leaves. Next to these, and under another shelter, were two or three pineapple plants; and these were all that were shown me as rarities in this country. Grapes are no longer rare, but there are only those which the Dutch have planted. The wine is white, and tolerably good. Some of our party went up to the top of the Table Mountain in search of unusual plants, but found none: nevertheless if they are closely examined it will be seen that there is none of them which does not have some peculiarity not found in our plants here [in France]. The shells found up there are not the remains of the Flood, as some have suspected [*sic*]: the birds, the monkeys and the Hottentots carry them up and leave them there.

The avenues of the Garden need hardly any attention, since the soil produces nothing but moss if it is not cultivated. For the rest, the neatness of the Garden has everything to demonstrate a wise economy, and nothing to indicate too great a neglect, like a commercial market-garden, the owners more interested in the profits to be gained from it than in its pleasantness, in which they are not interested.

The water which irrigates it by various small canals, enters it after passing through a mill [DR 30/10/85] which it operates, and below the garden it is used for washing clothes,


The Table Mountain
The Lyon Mountain
The Wind Mountain
A Prospect of the Cape of Good Hope when one is in the Road at the Letter A the Road.
The Table Mountain.
The Lyon Mountain
A Prospect when one is at Sea.
The Lyon Mountain at y. East ½ S.E.
The Table Mountain at E.S.E.
A. The Road.
B. The Fort.
C. The Garden.
D. The Houses of y Town
E. The Gard'House
F Several Springs
G Island Robin
H. The Cabanes of y Hotentots.
I. The Conduit where the Ships do take in fresh water.
K. The Top of the Lyon Mountain.
L. The Bottom of y same Mountain.
M. The Table Mountain.
N The Wind Mountain.
O. The Windmill.
P. The Place where Mr Volan was when he drew this Design.
p. 185.
The Dutch Factory at the Cape of Good Hope by Mr Volan the Kings Engineer
The Whale Rock.

[46] From the English edition of item 63.

a part only being diverted and led to a reservoir on the shore of the roads, to which the ships send to take it.

The Garden is divided into various squares, each about the size of a quarter of the Place Royale [Paris, now Place de la Concorde]. They are surrounded by espaliers, to protect them from the winds, which are at times fierce enough to wreck the ships in the roads, unless they have good anchors and good cables. These winds form clouds, which at times gather between the Table Mountain and the Wind Hill, thus called because of these storms. An avenue of lemon- and orange-trees, planted directly in the soil and running from one end of the Garden to the other, greatly suffers from their fury. Except for this, the situations of the Garden and of the village lying a little nearer to the roads, are good, since they are fully exposed to the sun and shielded from the South winds, in this country the cold ones, The Dutchmen who are accustomed to these, say that if the South-East wind does not blow during their Summer (which is our Winter), lung-ail-ments are frequent and dangerous.

The short stay which I made did not allow me to learn thoroughly the customs of the Hottentots, the indigenous natives of the Cape; although, because of the great simplicity of their life, this could not be a lengthy study. They are called 'Hottentots' because when they dance they sing nothing but the word 'Hotantot' [see Hottentots*, Name]. They can be made to dance as much as one desires, because of their love for the brandy and tobacco given them by foreigners (and which indeed induced them to admit the Dutch into their country): that is to say, they stamp, now with one foot, now with the other, as if treading grapes, and say continually and energetically 'hotantot, hotantot', but in a quite low voice, as if they were out of breath or feared to awaken someone. This silent song has no diversity of pitch but only of beat, in that the first two syllables of 'hotantot' are always crochets, the last one always a minim.

They go all naked, as is to be seen in the picture I give of them. They have nothing but a skin on their shoulders like a cloak, and moreover they take this off at every instant; and then there remain only a little leather bag hung by a cord on their neck, and a piece of skin a little larger than one's hand, hung in front and attached to another cord around the waist; but this does not cover them when they are seen from the side or when they move briskly.

They have a pleasing build, and their walk is smoother than I can tell. They are born as white as Spaniards, but their hair is very woolly, and their features somewhat resemble those of negros; and for the rest they are very black only because they grease their body and face. They also grease their hair, and can be smelt at twenty paces if they are up-wind. Our folk give them the pots and kettles to clean, and before all else they take off the fat by handfulls and anoint themselves from head to foot. The grease protects them from the air and the sun, and makes them healthy and fit, and they prefer these natural advantages to those of a pleasing odour and to attractiveness. They are so nimble that many of them can outrun a horse. There is no torrent that they cannot swim [contradicted by practically all writers]. They are good shots with bows and spears, and courage-

From the English edition of item 63.

ous almost to recklessness. At times they even overcome a lion, provided that they have enough skins or enough old clothing to protect their left arm: this they thrust into the animal's jaws, and stab him with a spear or knife held in the right hand. If there are two of them, one kills the lion while the other distracts its attention: if they are several, and have nothing to protect them from its blows, they do not hesitate to attack all together - as a rule one is killed, but the lion also dies, from the wounds given it by the others, although sometimes they all get off safely and nevertheless get rid of the lion.

Their women grease themselves as they do, although they pretend to some dressiness, such as fixing little bones and little shells to their short, curly and greasy hair. They also have necklaces of various colours, of glass, of bones or of any other material according to what the foreigners give them, or sell them. On each leg they have some fifty leather bands, which hit together and make a noise when they dance, and also protect them from the thorns when they go to gather wood, since this is their task.

Both men and women eat the guts almost without cleaning them, when our folk give them these, after putting them on the coals for barely a moment. If we offer them brandy, they pick up the first shell they can find to receive it in, and after blowing into it they use it for drinking. They eat their lice, as do those of Cochin-China; and if we find this odd, they explain that they do this because the lice eat them.

They all dwell in little huts made of branches and large rush mats, hardly as high as my waist, and it seemed to me that I should have been unable to lie down within them at full length. Under these mats they make a hole in the ground about two feet deep, and in this hole they make their fire, without troubling about the smoke, of which their huts are never free. They live by hunting, fishing, and from the milk and meat of their herds.

In such poverty they are always gay, always dancing and singing, living without occupation or toil, and troubling themselves as regards gold and silver only to buy a little brandy and tobacco, the vices which foreign trade has introduced into their customs.

When some of them had exercised with spears before me I offered them five or six

necklaces of coloured beads; and they all so seized my hand that I could not open it to let go of the necklaces, nor could I explain myself to them. I was in this fix for some time, until they realised that they must set me free in. order to get what they desired. They love to obtain these necklaces for their wives, and after we had set sail I learnt that one of us had sold one such to one of them, for an écu [crown, Rxd.]. What little money they have, caring little for it, is the pary for work which they do at times for the Dutch, or for foreigners that touch at the Cape; although these do not greatly hasten to pay them.

They have only one wife apiece, except that their Chief has three; and they punish adultery with death. They kill their children when they have too many; and since as a rule they marry off those whom they keep when very young, one sees among them many little girls who are already widows and lack one joint of the little finger*, since when a woman loses her husband she cuts off a joint of the little finger, or of the fourth finger if she has repeatedly been widowed and has cut off all those of the little fingers. Nevertheless, she can dispense with this if she wishes, and there are also some husbands who observe the custom, when they lose their wives. Most of them are demi-eunuchs, so as to be more pleasing to the women [? 'propres aux femmes': see Testicle*]; and when the suitable age arrives they make themselves entirely eunuchs, to deprive themselves of sexual intercourse and enjoy a more healthy old age [in no other writer]. The Dutch once reared a Hottentot boy as a European, and sent him to Holland [not traced]. Some time later they brought him back to the Cape, where he could be useful to them among his people; but as soon as he again found himself among them, he remained with them, discarding the clothing and the manner of life of the Dutch.

They do not steal among themselves, nor in the Dutch houses, in which they are allowed without any oversight; and should theft occur, they punish it with death. Nevertheless, in the country where they can do it safely and hope not to be detected, they sometimes even commit murder in order to rob, showing that their contempt for riches is in reality nothing but their hatred of work.

Their Chief is appointed by the Dutch [better 'is confirmed in his position by the Dutch'], and this chief is also their Judge; but those who have not been able to tolerate such dependency on foreigners have gone inland, to live there with the other Caffers.

I was told at first that they have no feelings of religion; but later I learned that, although they have neither priests nor temples, they never neglect to celebrate public rejoicings at New and Full Moons, which suggests a religious observance. I suspect that they have some trace of Manicheism, since they recognise a Good Principle and an Evil one, whom they call the Captain above and the Captain below. They say that the Captain above is good, there is no need to pray to him, one merely leaves him alone since he always does good; but that the Captain below is evil, and must be prayed to, to keep him from doing them harm: at least, that is what they say, but what can be seen of their conduct does not make it appear that they pray much. An intelligent Dutchman who knew them, told me that among the Hottentots he had found the names Hasdrubal and Bocchus.... [Sailed for Siam June 25.]

64 Father Guy Tachard
(Plates 48, 49 & 50)

(*See also items 55*, *59*, *70.*) *Translated from his* '*Second Voyage ...*', *Paris 1689: it is also in Strangman*, *but with errors and un-indicated omissions. He returned from Siam in 1686* (*item 59*) *to collect twelve Jesuit mathematicians*, *for an observatory to be formed there. Actually there were so many applicants that fourteen* (*including Le Blanc of items 66 and 71*) *went out with the Embassy under Simon de la Loubère* (*of item 63*). *A military force also went out*, *as requested by the King of Siam*, *636 in all under General Desfarges. There were six ships*, Le Gaillard (*flagship of de l'Aulnay de Vaudricourt*, *in which Tachard travelled*), L'Oiseau (*commanded by Abraham Duquesne-Guiton of item 73*), *the flutes** La Loire, La Normande, Le Dromadaire, *and the frigate** La Maligne *which was to return from the Cape: all sailed from Brest on March 1*, *1687. Equator April 17.*

At one o'clock in the afternoon of the same day [June 11], as the mist cleared away and the sky became clear, we suddenly saw, at a distance of not more than forty leagues, the Mountain of the Table and all the other mountains that go to form the famous Cape of Good Hope. Those who first saw it pointed it out to the others, and the joy of everyone was indescribable. Greedily each sought to breathe in the land air, and it seemed as though it already refreshed us. We had aboard more than three hundred so sick that they could not move, and the rest were so enfeebled, especially in the Flutes, that they could scarcely get up on deck. Yet they tried to do so, and their longing to see land already caused them to forget the sufferings caused them by the sea.

There was at first some discussion as to whether we should enter the channel that night, to come to anchor. The Commander at first doubted whether to do this, since he feared that the Flutes, which were still some distance behind us, might not have the time to reach the anchorage before dark, since usually there is a lack of wind when this bay is approached between the Lion Hill and Robin Island, which is in addition a dangerous passage. It seemed to him that it was somewhat too risky to enter near dusk. However, he made up his mind to ignore these difficulties, since on the other hand he learned that if he missed the favourable opportunity of entering, he perhaps would not get it again so easily, because of the clouds and the mist which as a rule cover these lands at this season; and further because he had no doubt but that when the other vessels saw him enter the bay, they would set all sails to follow him. And since it seemed very probable that the wind would not drop soon, he made up his mind to steer for the harbour at once. It was well that he did so that day, for afterwards the weather became so misty for six days that it was almost impossible to see a ship at a musket*-shot's distance. The other vessels had all the time they needed to reach their positions before dark. And so, after a voyage of three months and eleven days - since we left on March 1 and arrived on June 11 [DR] -

after much hardship and many dangers we found ourselves at last in a position to relax a little and seek to renew our strength before continuing the voyage to Batavia and Siam.

Since we had anchored by night Monsieur de Vaudricourt could not send anyone to the fort, not only because it is not allowed to land at night in foreign harbours, but also because no salutes whatever are fired after sunset. So we waited till the morning, when Captain de Saint-Clair ... was sent to the Governor to present the Commander's compliments, and at the same time to request permission to provision the ships and set the sick ashore.

While this officer was carrying out this commission, Monsieur de Joyeux, Captain of the Loire, came aboard the Gaillard. He had parted from us in the latitude of Lisbon ... and had arrived at the Cape three days before us [DR 9/6].... After he had given the Commander an account of all that had taken place in his ship during the voyage, he told us of the friendly reception given him by the Governor, who was that same Monsieur de Vanderstellen whom we had seen in our previous voyage. Thus no doubt remained but that we would again receive the same civilities as had been shown us on that occasion. Of this we were soon assured on the return of Monsieur de Saint-Clair, who reported that the Governor had expressed great pleasure at our coming, and that he would be delighted to see that we were furnished with all the provisions we required. With regard to our sick, however, he begged Monsieur de Vaudricourt to put himself in his position and consider whether he could allow ashore so large a number of foreigners, there being quite three hundred of them, so that he asked that sixty only might be sent at first, and then another sixty as soon as the first had recovered.

This procedure appeared to everyone as both courteous and reasonable. Nevertheless our necessity was such that we felt constrained to redouble our prayers to the Governor, and, while assuring him of the perfect understanding that existed between France and Holland, to beg him not to allow so large a proportion of our sick to suffer on board, where they could not remain longer without risk of death.

When I left the Cape the last time to return to France, I told Monsieur de Vandestellen that I should be calling again the following year on my way to the Indies, and would have with me a number of companions, regarding whom he had then made many kind offers. During the conversation that he had with Monsieur de Saint-Clair he recalled these, and the promise I had given him, and the Captain assured me that he had inquired particularly after me. I did not fail to go and see him that very day, taking with me one of our Fathers. His greeting was most friendly, and, having learnt that I had brought fourteen Jesuit mathematicians, all holding royal patents like the first six, he said that the pavilion where we had previously lodged could not conveniently accommodate so many persons, so that he would place at our disposal a large country-house [Constantia] he owned, about a league from the Cape, with a very pleasant garden, where we should find everything we needed for the recovery of our health, and a place suitable for making astronomical observations. We thanked him very gratefully for his kindness, but explained that the shortness of our stay at the Cape and the necessity we

were under of being continuously in touch with each other, and above all with our sick, made it impossible for us to lodge so far away; and that, since he had so obligingly offered us the observatory which he had given us in our former voyage, we would occupy it again. As we found that nothing had been changed, I have nothing to add to the description I have already given of it [but in item 59 it 'had been demolished'].

De Vaudricourt and Desfarges had charged me most particularly to do all I could to persuade the Governor to allow a larger number of the sick to go ashore. So earnestly did I implore him, saying that we Jesuits would be his hostages should he fear some mischief, that he yielded to my entreaties, and asked me to go and tell these gentlemen that tomorrow they could send all the sick ashore, and he even offered his Surgeons to assist ours: he told me only to beg our officers not to permit any of the men to abuse the privilege. Having returned aboard I told Monsieur de Vaudricourt of the promise given me by the Governor, and at the same time I let the Jesuits in the other ships know of the favour he had done us, and added that I should be very glad if they would all come ashore the next day, to go with me to thank him.

It was an exceptional joy for all fifteen of us thus to find ourselves together and in good health after so rough a passage, for although some of us were indisposed they soon recovered, with the good food and the land air. The Commander received us with fresh marks of kindness and offered to do everything he could for us. We had no need to make use of his offers, since Monsieur de la Loubère had sent me word, just as we were disembarking, that throughout the duration of our stay he would in no wise permit us to have other table than his own. He would not even allow the sick to be quartered anywhere but in his house, and in spite of all my pleading insisted on giving his own room to the Father who was the most indisposed....

Monsieur Thevenot, before our first voyage, had suggested that we seek enlightenment concerning a very curious matter, which he had nevertheless been assured was true: this is that indubitable evidence could be found on the Table Mountain that the sea had formerly covered it. Fathers Le Blanc [of items 66, 71] and de Bèze were inquisitive enough to investigate the truth of this statement. It will be of interest to learn the result, from a letter written to one of his friends by the latter, which I quote verbatim [it seems to contradict the statements above regarding de la Loubère's 'house', and his 'table']:

'Here we are at last at the Cape, and our sick are already ashore. You will not find a more courteous man than the Governor of the fortress: all our officers are charmed with him. Our obligations are even greater than theirs, and we can never forget the kindness he shows us. I may tell you that he has never refused us a favour, and I myself asked one of him, which he granted with a politeness which I cannot sufficiently praise. Father Tachard went to call on him, and I was a witness of his friendliness. We dined that day with him, and from there we went to lodge in a pavilion which is in the middle of the famous Garden*. I shall say nothing, or at least very little, about this vast country, as you have the long account of it which our Fathers have published.

All I shall add is that I found it fairer, and the Hottentots more hideous, than had been told me; and yet there was not one of us who did not long for the privilege of converting these poor people, who from their birth are left in ignorance of the true God. They live much more like beasts than human beings, and I think that it would be difficult to convert them completely, but for the Grace of God by which one overcomes all obstacles. We do not pass our time uselessly here. As far as I am concerned, I go for walks in search of rare plants, or to make notes on others. I have found a great many, and some beautiful ones. Although it is Winter here, the land is as decked with flowers as are our fairest meadows in the month of May. The weather does not distress us in the least, and we do not feel it cold at all.

A few days ago I was on a famous mountain, a description of which you have seen in the "Voyage de Siam" [item 55]. This is Table Mountain, and it is about a league from the Cape [Town], although its height makes this seem to lie at the foot of it. I had been asked in France to examine its flora, and Monsieur Thevenot, in the introductions he gave us for the Cape, noted that he had been told that the sea had at one time covered the top of the mountain and that we would find it full of sea-shells - you can imagine for yourself what likelihood there is that one of Africa's highest mountains should have been submerged beneath the sea since the Flood. As it was desirable that some one made the ascent, and since also it was necessary to do so if a plan of the country which this mountain dominates in all directions were to be prepared, I offered to go, although another had already attempted the venture and had failed. Father Le Blanc had the courage to accompany me, with two of our servants.

At the foot of the mountain we observed a great quantity of water, falling in various places like a cascade down the high and precipitous rocks. Were all this water united it would make a considerable river, but the greater part of it disappears underground at the foot of the mountain. The rest unites in two big streams, which drive the mills near the Dutch dwellings. This water has no other origin but the clouds which, meeting in their path the summit of this high and sun-heated mountain, dissolve into rain which falls on all sides. Some most interesting observations might be made on this, and I will send something at the first opportunity. As we drew near the summit we heard the monkeys that live there making a great noise, by sending pretty large stones rolling down among the rocks.

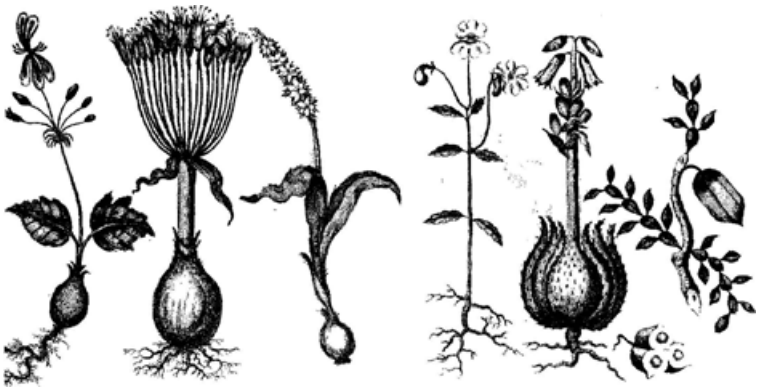
Our guide, who had never before climbed to the top, was greatly surprised, and told me that on the mountain there were animals bigger than lions, which devoured men. I perceived at once that it was fright which made him speak thus, and that he was weary of the way, like the others, who were thinking of turning back. I urged him on, and we continued our climb although very tired. Soon we saw numbers of monkeys along the mountain's crest, but they disappeared before we reached it. We found only their footprints.

The top of the mountain is a large esplanade, about a league in circumference. Almost all of it is rock, very level except where it dips towards the centre, where there is a

[48] From item 64, probably drawn by Claudius. The Kirstenbosch identifications from left to right are: unidentifiable, Gladiolus sp., Pancratium sp., Synnotea or Laperousia sp., Cotyledon sp.

fine spring of water, which comes, I believe, from the highest parts of the esplanade, where we found much water. We saw also quantities of odoriferous plants growing between the rocks. I am having drawings made of them to send to France: a few are being sent in advance to our Academicians; but what I found of special beauty were the views we had from the summit, which I am having drawn. On one side you see the Bay of the Cape and the entire roadstead; on another the seas towards the South; on the third the False Cape, and a large island which lies in between [*sic*]; on the fourth the African continent where the Dutch have several settlements. We shall make a plan of all this. I had some earth dug up for the satisfaction of Monsieur Thevenot: it is very black, and full of sand and small white pebbles. Such, my dear Father, is a brief account of our journey.

I am sorry to have to end my letter in an unhappy manner. We had been trying to improve the health of some of our Fathers, who were far from well when they landed .... But Father Duchatz, who was in good health when he disembarked, has been in bed for the past four days with a raging fever, and we shall be obliged to leave him here. Father Thionville has offered, in a most zealous and charitable manner, to remain with him, and we are leaving them a servant to attend to them. The Governor has promised to take all possiblé care of them, but that is no consolation for the sorrow we feel in parting from them. They will follow to Batavia in the first ships available. Farewell, my dear Father: pray to God to grant me grace to be worthy of the great work to which He has called me.'



[49] From item 64, probably drawn by Claudius. The Kirstenbosch identifications are: Pelargonium sp., Brunsvigia sp., Wurbea or Dipidex sp., Nemesia sp., Aloe melanocantha, Cucurbitacea.

On my return to France I met those interested in the affairs of our Missions, who were under the impression that Father du Chatz, mentioned in this letter, had died. Had that been so, great indeed would have been our loss, from which God willed to save us.

The day before we left I went to visit our dear invalid in the house of a worthy citizen of the Cape, who had promised to take special care of him. It was only with extreme reluctance and grief that I had decided to leave him there, although I took every possible precaution to ensure his having all the help he might need, and which was available in the country. My grief was increased on seeing him on that day in a condition so serious that the Governor's Surgeons, whom I found in his room, told me frankly that they despaired of saving his life. Delirium, brought on by a malignant fever, had necessitated their giving him a copious bleeding. The loss of blood had weakened him extremely, without at all diminishing the ardour of the fever or the violence of the delirium. They said, that if he survived the night it would be only to die on the following day.

So distressing a report led me to consider whether, in these circumstances, it would not be better to take him onward in our ships. Our surgeons were more skilful, our remedies were better, and the invalid would find on board many friends anxious to attend to him. This would be preferable to letting him die in a land where there were no services of the Catholic religion, where, consequently, he would be deprived after his death of all those holy rites which animate the pious to pray for the repose of the soul. Father de Bèze,

[50] From item 64, probably drawn by Claudius. The Kirstenbosch identifications are: Aloe variegata, Albuca sp., Asclepias pubescens or A. fruticosa, ‘vygie’ or ‘daisy’?, Diospyros sp.

who was with me at the time and whom I consulted about the matter, agreed with me, and we felt that we ought to do for the Father what we ourselves, were we in such a plight, would wish others to do for us. I therefore went to the Governor and begged him to let me have a shallop* to take us to our ships, and some men to carry the invalid. He granted both my requests most graciously and with his usual courtesy. At once therefore we transported the Father onto the Loire, where the Sieur de la Coste, Surgeon-Major of the ship, took such good care of him and gave him such efficient remedies that he recovered his health in a very short time....

Father du Chatz owed his illness to the fact that he spent one part of the night making observations, and the other part resting a little, during the cold and rainy season, on the staircase of a house which was exposed on all sides to a malignant atmosphere.

It was a special providence of God that the other Fathers were able to withstand all the fatigues, and especially Father Richaud, whose health is very delicate and who is already well-advanced in years. For, after a voyage of three thousand leagues, we spent all the time of our stay at the Cape working by day at various self-allotted tasks, and most of the night in making astronomical observations. It is true that the weather was so cloudy and unfavourable that it was only with the greatest difficulty that we observed two emersions of Jupiter's first satellite.

[Observations made on June 19 and 21.]

During an interview that Father de Bèze and I had with Monsieur de vandestellen,

he spoke to us of some curious plants which he had found on his travels, and shewed us a collection of them. He was good enough to allow us to have drawings made of the more uncommon ones, which I give here [Plates 48-50: Claudius*]. He also promised to present them all to me for the King's library, on my way back, with a short account of the regions where they grow and of the chief properties ascribed to them.

When leaving Brest I received a letter from a certain very learned person, desiring me to learn at the Cape of Good Hope, whether the rises and falls of the tide occurred there at the same times as in France, and whether they were equally regular. I enquired from the Governor and from two Dutch pilots, who replied very definitely that they occurred in the roadstead of the Cape as regularly as in European ports similarly situated. I say 'in the roadstead of the Cape', because on the side where the Cape looks southward the tides are not so regular, the winds causing them to vary greatly: so much so, that when the North wind blows there is hardly any ebb to be seen, and when there is a South wind the sea rises to a prodigious height and does not ebb at all....

[News from Siam and of a Persian Embassy there.]

At the same time as we thus diligently enquired for news from Siam, we were thinking also of sailing, to go and learn them for ourselves. Monsieur de Vanderstellen had told us that some time previously he had received an order from the [Governor-]General at Batavia, that he should this year send onwards the Dutch ships from the Indies earlier than was usual, because it had been noted that for some years the seasons were much in advance of the normal, and that the winds which previously blew at certain fixed times, now began to be felt much sooner.

On learning this Monsieur de Vaudricourt hastened the re-embarkation of the sick, and when it was put forward to him that most of the soldiers and sailors who embarked in their present state would be too feeble to resist the sea, he replied, that if we waited longer we should lose the season and [delay] the voyage and thus many more would be lost. Nevertheless he called a Council*, to which were called the Ambassadors and Monsieur des Farges. All those present at this Council not only resolved for departing, but themselves signed the resolution.

[Stores from *La Maligne* loaded into the other ships, she to go home with news of our safe arrival, and with letters from the Siamese envoys, of which one is given in full. Two of the Fathers transferred from 'the bad air' of the Flutes* to *L'Oiseau* on the invitation of 'Monsieur Duquesne' (of item 73).]

During the night before the day fixed for the embarkation of the troops, an incident occurred [DR] which distressed us, and which alarmed the Governor and all his garrison. He had already been informed of our intention to re-embark the soldiers on the morrow in their respective ships, to leave with the first fair wind. He had been thanked for the many favours he had shown us; and since he had good grounds for expecting from us both good faith and gratitude, he was surprised to see, towards 11 o'clock at night, a fire, from an unknown cause, break out in a house right in the centre of the town.... I cannot say what the Governor's first thoughts were when he saw this, but he acted in a

sensible manner, did not lose his head, took his precautions and lined the walls of the fort with soldiers, sending out some twenty well armed, either to extinguish the fire, if this were accidental; or to quell a hostile demonstration; and in any case to ascertain what had caused the fire. He was soon informed: a number of Frenchmen, staying in various parts of the town, had been the first to run to the fire, and had put it out just as it was threatening all the other houses of the town*, the roofs of which are merely of rush or straw. Thus did we acknowledge before our departure, in some slight measure at least, the kind reception which the Governor had given us during the twelve days of our stay - for we dropped anchor on the 11th of June, and weighed on the 25th. It is true that, after setting sail, a calm surprised us after we had gone a league, so that we were obliged to return almost to the same spot whence we had sailed. There we were compelled to remain for another two days, and it was on the 27th that we put out to sea [DR]....

Many deaths in the Flutes, *including two Jesuits. Bantam August 24*, *finding that Duquesne had left a few days before. Batavia September 1 to 7. Siam September 27*.

65 Masurier

From the translation by Dr. A.M. Lewin Robinson in QB June 1950, *by his kind permission. Nothing is known about the author. He sailed in the fleet* (*as in item 64*) *from Brest on March 1*, *1687. Equator April 19*: '*Baptism*' *fully described. Anchored in Table Bay June 11* (*DR*).

I think you know that the Dutch are the masters of this place. They were a little surprised to see six ships arrive, not being accustomed to such a large number at the same time, which made them ill at ease and on their guard all the time that we were there....

The description of the place can be given in a few words. It is just a village, quite small, with very low flimsy houses built solely of brick. The majority of the inhabitants are Dutch and the rest negroes. Some way off in a kind of grass-land live the original nhabitants of this place, who are called *Outantos*, and are, I believe the most repulsive ['infame'] race in the world. They are extremely black and have only a sheepskin for covering and only a rush hut for habitation, where they live all together, men, women and children, eating only the flesh of animals they find dead. The husband, to make himself agreeable to his wife, smears himself with old dung and on top of that with the blood of some animal. They let this blood congeal and dry on them. Their hair, which is like that of Moors [*sic*], is rubbed with a sort of greasy black stuff, and they hang from it a lot of sea-shells, nails and pieces of brass. The women, besides the same ornaments

as the men, go further in covering their arms and legs with sheep's guts, which they eat for nourishment when they find themselves stranded in the desert.

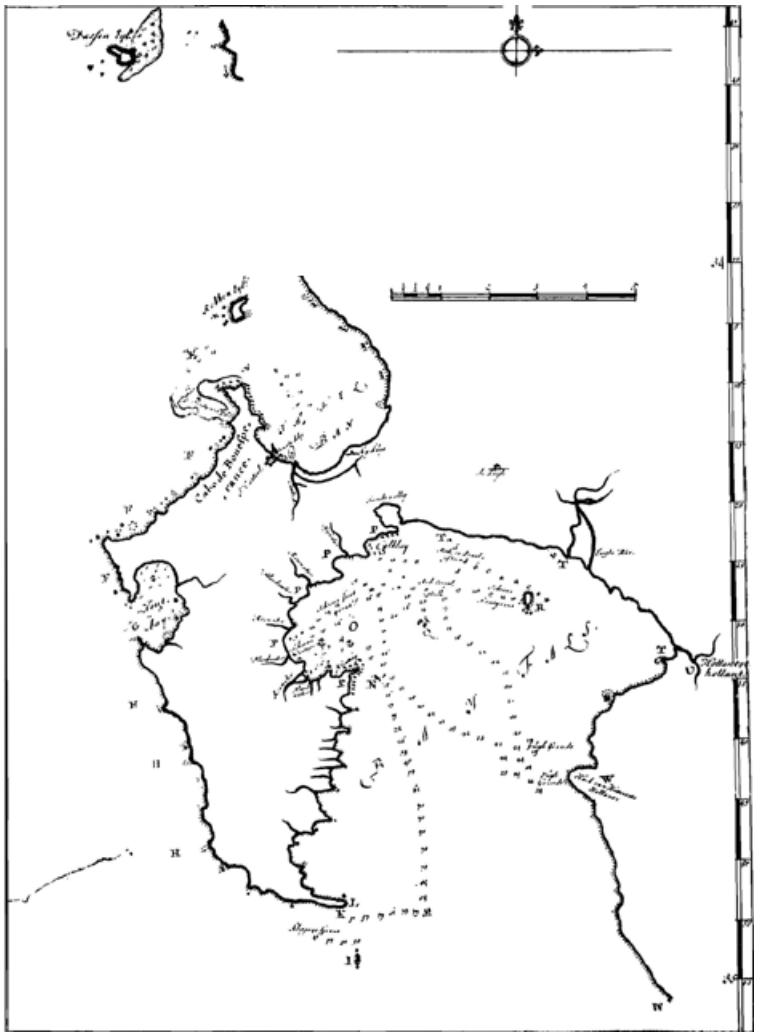
.....

While we were there we had some hunting with General de Farges' son, who had accompanied his father. We killed a lot of game, for it was extremely abundant in the places where the Governor had us taken by the beaters [hunters*] he lent us. The game we found was roebuck and gazelles (animals larger than roebuck but similar), pheasants, partridges and grouse in great numbers. In the last hunt on which we went with M. de Farges we took six roebuck and thirty-five head of game - partridges, pheasants and grouse....

66 (Father Marcel le Blanc)

(*And see item 71.*) *From the translation by Dr. A.M. Lewin Robinson in QB June 1950, by his kind permission. Tachard* (*item 64*) *says that Fathers Le Blanc and de Bèze climbed Table Mountain, and gives the latter's account, so that this one can safely be ascribed to Le Blanc.*

The stay at the Cape is delightful, and the Dutch settlement perfectly beautiful. There is an abundance of everything there - game, fish, corn, wine, fruit, vegetables, livestock, fresh water, fine gardens, a very large number of inhabitants, a fort* with five regular bastions, and a prodigious amount of game. Our officers have reported a lot of the latter in the four or five times they have been out hunting. The Commander of the fort, named Vadestes [Van der Stel], a friend of the French, furnished them with fifteen or twenty horses as well as dogs, and there was a great rout of game. M. du Bruant [Lieutenant-General of the troops] who has been inland is delighted with this country. The soil is very good, the sheep are fat and as big as donkeys, and the cattle are remarkable in that when harnessed to carts they go as fast as the best carriage-horses. The savage *Outantos* are the foulest and ugliest people of all the inhabited world. None of the pictures made of them comes near the truth. They go quite naked, covering only what Nature dictates they should hide, and when it is cold that make do with a sheep- or bear- [*sic*] skin which they put over their shoulders like a cloak. They rub themselves with an oily, stinking grease and with crushed charcoal, and are repulsive to look at and to smell. The women have shells and tokens of copper in their hair, which is like sheep's wool, black and oily with their nasty, smelly grease. They wind around the calves of their legs the guts of all sorts of animals, and when these are dry they make a feast of them for their husbands on special occasions. Their huts are low and covered with rush matting. There are seven or



[51] Chart of False Bay (see Resolutions 30/10/1687). The key (here abbreviated) has: F, Foul ground; G, Hout Bay, good anchorage on North side; H, Foul ground; I, Large rock, always awash; K, Large rock - safe passage between I and K; L, Rock; M, Course to be changed here; N, Large high rock; O, 'Simons Bay, where 14 or 15 large ships can lie as if in the safest harbour of the world'; P. Bays with much fish and abundance of fresh water and firewood; Q, Large rock, covered in strong S.E. winds; R, Island, so covered with gulls' nests that one cannot walk without treading on them, and with thousands of seals on the shores; S, Kalk Bay, good fishing; T, good landing and fishing; U, Hottentots-Hollant; W, Steep and rocky shores from U to here, bad landing. All investigated and sounded by the Hr. Commandeur Simon van der Stel with the Galliot De Noord on November 11, 1687. [Kyckuyt, the Kuyle and Eerste Rivier are also shown. The rest of the lettering gives depths and the nature of the seabed, and that of the water in the small streams.]

eight women with one man in these huts. They work sometimes for the Dutch in order to get the wherewithal to gorge themselves, but when they are gorged they do not want to do anything. At twelve years old the women have children and as soon as they are born [*sic*] these run and climb like bigger children.

The day before yesterday I went up Table Mountain, from whence I saw *omnia regna mundi*. The expedition is a silly idea, because it is necessary to climb from rock to rock through bushes and by the steepest road in the world. You need to be a goat to get up this dreadful mountain properly. The climb takes four to five hours. On the north side it is all flat rock: there is on the rock a kind of marsh, but it consists solely of rushes and water. The sea-route on the north side of Robin Island is much wider than the other by which we entered Table Bay....

I am writing to you by the ship *La Maligne* which it has been found fitting to send back to France. I forgot to tell you one important event: that is, that the supply-ship *Dromadaire* [error for *Loire*] which became separated from our squadron in the storm off Cape Finisterre ... arrived at the Cape on June 9, two days before our fleet. The Dutch, alarmed by our arrival, took the decision not to allow the sick to be put ashore; but out of the respect they had for the ships of His Majesty the matter was settled to the satisfaction of both parties. It was essential for us to find such a haven after so long a voyage, because the crews and the soldiers were sick, and the land air and the good food soon brought back their strength....

Background - continued

27/6/1687..the French raise their anchors and set sail [held up by calms]

28/6 ... they reached the open sea, *la Maligne* remaining to take news of them to France ...

11/7 ... towards noon the aforementioned *Maligne* raised her anchors and set sail ...

10/10 ... this morning the Hon. Commandeur left Stellenbosch, going towards the Berg River, accompanied by the freemen who had asked for land ... in the afternoon came to a very fruitful and large valley ... His Honour gave this pleasing region the name of Drakenstein ... 23 farms ...

30/10 Resolutions ... The Hon. Commander having considered the dangers run by the Company's ships ... resolved to make a tour to the said False Bay with the galliot *Noord* ... to survey it and make a chart ... to find a good roads or anchorage, or at least to see if no wellplaced fish-rich corner were to be found. [He was there in November: see Plate 51].

10/11 [*Centaurus* sent to seek the rest of the *Stavenisse* crew, and brought 2; and later 19 more according to letter to Holland 22/4/88 and DR 19/2/88]

25/12 Resolutions ... those wishing to move from the Cape to Drakenstein to make application ...

[1688]
War continues between France and the 'League of Augsburg'. September 24 France declares war against the Empire. November 15 William of Orange lands in England. November 26 France declares war against Holland: start of the 'Nine Years' War'. Background - from official documents in the archives

(These extracts are translated from microfilm, the Diary for this year being missing in the Cape Archives, and only recently located by the Hague Archives, by the courtesy of which the microfilm was supplied. Since there is no copy of this Diary except in microfilm, and the material has never been translated into English, the extracts are much fuller than those for other years. It should also be noted that the seven Resolutions here summarised in the entries for 8/4, 16/4, 30/4, 30/5, 9/6, 31/8, and 7/12 are not included in the Argiefstukke Kaap, Vol III, Cape Town 1961, these Resolutions being also missing from the Cape Archives.)

5/1 [Soundings taken near Lions Rump by galliot* *Noord* 'and the skiff']

8/1 ... at 10 o'clock comes in under full sail the English Coy's, hired ship *The Roijale Jacob and Marie* ... 300 men, half soldiers and half sailors, bound for Bombaia [sailed 13/1]

17/1 [Danish ships *Wolf*, *Antonette*, *Hoop* arrived from Surat where they had taken 'fully nine valuable ships from the Moors*', bringing one, a 20-gun frigate* renamed *Goude Leeuw*, previously bought from the English. Sailed 6/2]

21/1 ... The Hon. Commandeur ... made a trip to the Coy's. Pleasure-house Rustenburgh ...

24/1 .... *Jupiter* arrived from Saldanha Bay with oil and some salted fish for the Coy's. slaves ...

3/2 [Dragoons from Stellenbosch on parade at the Fort. Galliot *Noord* to Hout Bay and False Bay to survey them]

19/2 .... this morning arrives the little yacht *Centaurus* [from 'Terra de Natal' with *Stavenisse* survivors]

22/2 ... the Hon. Commandeur sent messengers to warn the Hottentots of Gouniman's kraals of their imminent danger from the Ubiquas ... in league with the Namaquas ... ordering them to come hither in the protec ion of the Coy.

27/2 ... at eleven o'clock in the morning comes to the roads the French ship *St Nicolas* ... requesting water and other small refreshings, which was allowed and granted ... bound for Pontecheri on the Coromandel Coast [sailed 13/3]

3/3 ... the Serjeant returns with his men, bringing the Capt. of the Sousequa Hottentots nicknamed Koopman by us ... promised to be obedient to the Hon. Coy. and to his chief Capt. Claas ...

5/3 ... the Hottentot Capts. Cuijper and Scipio come hither with their kraals, fearing an attack by the Namaquas ...

14/3 ... the Sousequa Capt. Dorha, by us nicknamed Claas, came to the Castle with 130 cattle and 227 sheep ...

19/3 ... the Hon. Commandeur made a trip to the Coy's. garden and vineyard Rustenburg ...

21/3 ... The Hon. Commandeur going to the Rondebosje ...

29/3 ... at 11 o'clock at night the Hon. De Bitter, Vice-Admiral* of the return-fleet, comes to greet the Hon. Commandeur, having arrived safely with his ship the *Waalstrom* and ... '*S Landswelvaren* and *Zalland* ...

30/3 ... the said ships came to anchor in the proper roads early in the morning, and the Heer Jacobus Coeper came ashore as Admiral, being greeted by the Hon. Commandeur ... seven ships from the Sunda Strait on January 15, the *Goudestein* being compelled to make for Batavia, having sprung a leak after a collision with *Waalstrom* ...

31/3 ... this morning the ship *Sion* was seen ...

1/4 With a N.W. breeze the little hooker* *Bril* arrives with provisions for this command, shipped from Batavia [arrival of *Eenhorn* not given, although reported in letter of 19/4 to Holland]

8/4 [Resolutions: with *Bril* to be sent to Batavia (blank) lasten* of wheat and as many leggers of wine as can be spared]

9/4 ... in the evening ... came the skipper of *Hobree* to deliver to His Honour the letters from the Governor of Ceylon, with the news that the ships *Bantam* and *Silverstein* had arrived safely to the roads with him ...

10/4 ... arrived the Coy's. ships *Courtgene* and *Ridderschap*, both having many sick on board, having sailed from Port de Gale on January 23 last.... In the afternoon comes also to anchor the French King's warship *L'auseau*, having left Siam on November 25 via Malacca, and February 2 from Pontcherij, being followed shortly afterwards by the little English frigate* the *Princes Marij* [with the Administrator of Tenasserim and his trumpeter, sole survivors of the English there from the massacre by the 'Moors*']. The Hon. Commandeur was at once greeted in the name of the French Envoy Monsr. de Sebret and the Capn. Duquiesen, with the request to take in fresh water and some refreshings here, also to bring ashore 14 or 15 sick, which was granted them. [News of the lamentable state of the English in Bengal from disease and famine, and war with the Mogul]

11/4 ... the said commander of the English at Tanasseri was entertained by the Hon. Commandeur, together with Messrs. Duquesne and Forbin, senior officers of the French ... there come here to the roads from the Fatherland the ships *Java*, *Saamslag*, *Honsholredijk* ...

13/4 ... in the afternoon comes in the ship *Pampus* without dead or sick ...

15/4 ... In the afternoon we received news overland that the flute* *Voorschoten* lay anchored in the Saldaigne Bay, her commander sending the following letter to the Hon. Commandeur [transcribed: forced to put in their chiefly for lack of anchors and cables; from Goeree December 31, 1687 with 98 sailors, 62 soldiers, 22 Huguenots, men, women and children, also two negroes, two European women with six children, all in good health; requesting two cables, one anchor, water, firewood, greenstuff, and that the Huguenots be taken off. Dated April 14]

16/4 [Resolutions: return fleet to sail about 25/4: *Silversteijn* many sick, to be inspected and reported on by the Admiral, Vice- and Rear-Admirals of the return-fleet]

17/4 ... towards midday two French ships come to the roads, one from Siam belonging to the King named *Le Drommedaire*, the other *Le Jeu*, a Coy's ship from Siam [sic], both bound for France ...

18/4 ... Monsr. Duquene [*L'Oiseau*] comes to thank the Hon. Commandeur for the favours enjoyed, taking also a letter for the Lords XVII [transcribed, dated 19/4: *Eenhorn* arrival mentoned, and *Le Jeu* now correctly 'from Suratta'] .. Letter sent to *Voorschoten* [transcribed: unable to help you; make for here with the actual N.W. winds as soon as possible. Dated 19/4]

19/4 This morning the French ship *L'auseau* departs, and in her stead comes here to the roads from the Fatherland the flute *Langewijk*.

20/4 ... Towards evening Mons: Samuel Weijts sets out to sea with his little frigate* the *Princes Maria*, bound for England.

21/4 N.W. wind and misty overcast weather, which cause the return-ship *Goudesteijn* to reach the roads in the evening only ... nevertheless there come to the roads the French King's ships *La Gaillard* and *La Loire*, having on board H.M's. Envoy the Hon. de la Loubere as also the Jesuit Tachart as Envoy of the King of Siam [*sic*], the ships being commanded by Monsr: de Vaudriecourt ... the said senior

officers being politely greeted by the Hon. Commandeur and their request for refreshing of water and other small things granted.

23/4 ... the officers of the French Coy's ship *De Jeu* having thanked the Hon. Commandeir for the favour received, their ship set out to sea. In the afternoon ... the Hon Sebert, lately Envoy of the King of France, comes to the residence of the Hon. Commandeur to greet him, being followed after an exchange of compliments by the French Jesuit Tachard, Envoy of the King of Siam [*sic*] to their Majesties of France and England and to the Pope, who expressed his great appreciation of the help given him. Towards evening the Coy's. ship *Spierdijk* comes to anchor here, bringing the Fiscaal* Mr. Dirk van Cuijk, together with some freemen ...

24/4 [Letter from *Voorschooten* at Saldaigne Bay, dated 21/4, repeating letter of 14/4 since no reply received]

25/4 ... This afternoon arrives safely the ship *Oosterland* ... from Goeree February 3 ...

26/4 ... the yacht* *Sillida* anchored under the Robben Island [her Skipper comes ashore in his skiff* and reports the forcible seizure of a

Frenchman of his crew by two French warships in 3 or 4 degrees of North latitude, and of being compelled to salute the French flag]

27/4 Variable winds but mostly calms, making it impossible for the ships anchored under the Robben Island to come to the roads ... the Hon. Commandr. himself went to the fleet ... to inform himself of the conditions of the ships, and to offer a helping hand to the French fugitives and freemen now arriving ...

28/4 ... The ship *Oosthuijsen* comes to the roads here, having ... lost 13 men by sickness during the journey [outwards]

67 Johann Wilhelm Vogel

(*See also item 40.*) *On September 24, 1687 he was given his discharge, and left Sillida the next month, reaching Batavia on October 30. From there he sailed on* '*November 21*' (*Valentyn I December 1: note the apparent use of Old Style* dating*) *in* '*Wahlstrom*', *the Vice-Admiral* of the return-fleet* (Waalstrom), *with* '*Wohlfahrt*' (Lands Welvaren) *as Admiral*, Sion, Goudestein, '*Sahland*' (Zalland), Eenhorn, Brill (*for Cape only*). *Storm in the Sunda Strait dispersed the fleet*.

On the morning of the 16th [March] we sighted the Cabo des Agoulles about 10 miles away, and that night heavy squalls and storm-winds again scattered the fleet, so that now only the Admiral* and Sahland were with us.... On the morning of the 18th only Sahland was with us, the Admiral having lost touch with us that night, and towards noon we were off Cabo fals, and then also sighted the Table Mountain at the Cabo de buon Esperanza about 6 miles away, North-East by North from us. That evening the wind fell to a dead calm.

On the 19th at daylight it rose again gently, but all day the weather was very dark and misty, so that we could not see 10 yards ahead and were therefore compelled to fire cannons and muskets every half-hour, as a signal to the Sahland not to come too near to us, lest we might collide; and she also made the same signals. In the afternoon the air cleared somewhat, and about one o'clock the mist lifted and there was a dead calm; and indeed God thus disposed it to our good fortune, since we found ourselves with our ship close below the Lion Hill, and indeed so near it that the shore was only a stone's-throw distant. Had it remained so dark, and had the mist not withdrawn a little, we should at that very moment have run onto the shore, which here is nothing but rocks and falls very steeply into the sea, and thus, instead of sailing into the Table Bay after a few hours as we hoped, we should have perished and everything would have been lost. Since now we were in such great danger the helm was at once put hard over, to turn the ship away from the land; and then some sailors must man the shallop* ['Ruder-chialoup'], make this fast to the stem of the ship, and by their continual and strong rowing tow the

ship away, or as the mariners say 'bucksieren' her. Also at that time God sent us a very gentle breeze, which was greatly to our advantage, so that with God's help we got a little way from the shore and made for the open sea, so as not to run aground on the Lion's Tail (the point of the Lion Hill), nor be damaged by the rocks which there stretch a considerable distance to seaward. We now sighted our Admiral* to the North of us; and then the mist fell again very heavily and it became as dark and gloomy as before. For this reason we anchored in 50 fathoms towards evening, not far from the Lion's Tail, since the light breeze fell away and it was dead calm. Also, since from where we were anchored it was not far from the Table Mountain, and not more than three hours* from the Fortress of Good Hope at Cabo buon Esperanza, that evening about 10 our Vice-Admiral went ashore in the shallop.

On the morning of the 20th of March [DR 30/3: note again the apparent Old Style*] we raised anchor, and with Sahland sailed to the roads of the Table Bay, anchoring close below the Castle 'The Good Hope'. Our Admiral was lying close below the Robben Island, but in the afternoon came to anchor in the Bay not far from us. I heartily thanked God the Most High, that by His gracious shelter and help He had brought us this far and had not only turned away from us all evil in our journey, but had now saved us from this evident danger; and therewith I also called on His Divine Power to give us further prosperity and good fortune in the journey still lying before us, so that the same may be accomplished in accordance with our desires.

On the 22nd I went ashore, meeting there a miner, by the name of Thomas Creutzig, who told me that he was working as Foreman at the mine a few hours* inland, and also asked me to be so good as to visit it. I had no desire to this, but at last let myself be persuaded, since he assured me that it was not a great distance to walk; and we arranged the journey for the following day, the place being called the Steinberg. That afternoon [DR 1/4] the ships Sion, Einhorn and Brill anchored close to us in the Table Bay or harbour, which ships had been in the fleet with us but had become separated near land not long before.

Early in the morning of the 24th I set out, with the Mine-Foreman and miners who had come from the Indies with me, and began the journey to the aforesaid mine of the Cape, whither the Foreman Creutzig also accompanied us, to show us the way. But it was not so close by as he had pretended, since before reaching it we had marched from early morning to dark night, over wide heaths, sandy fields, and high sand-dunes.

On the 25th I examined the mine, finding beside the shaft a considerable quantity of ore obtained from this, which was asserted to be copper ore but was in fact nothing but a coarse iron-glance mixed with copper dust. It was not possible to visit the shaft, since it had fallen in, and also the crossbeams and shores, together with most of the ladders in it were broken and crushed together. By the side of the shaft I saw some remains of a smelting-furnace, in which the Mine-Overseer Gabriel Möller (who had been there for a time, but who later came to the West coast of Sumatra, as mentioned above) had smelted the ore, but obtained nothing but cobalt-ore. After I had examined this I went down the

hill, where I was shown a tunnel which according to the said Mine-Foreman had been driven for about 7 fathoms into sandstone. About 3 fathoms from its mouth there was a cleft, from which some ferruginous mineral had been got, but the same had soon petered out and there was no more of it: also in front of that place not the least sign of a lode could be traced. I should have liked to inspect the shaft, but for the aforesaid reasons this was not possible, and I must content myself with what I had seen.

I took a few hand-samples with me, and returned to the hut which had been built by the miners working there; and passed the night there, since the daylight was nearly past and it was therefore impossible to reach the Cabo buon Esperanza; but at sunrise on the next day I took the route to the said Cabo buon Esperanza with my companions, arriving there about 8. On the way we met with a large flock of cranes in those fields, but could not come within gunshot of them, since they were far too much on the alert, and saw us in time and took to flight.

All Vogel's dates are confused and should be checked with the DR. According to him on March 30 and 31 arrived from Coromandel, *Bengal and Ceylon the return-ships* Curtigene, Ritterschaft, Bantam, Silberstein *and the flute** Hobre, *to join his fleet; also one French* (L'Oiseau) *and one English* (Princess Mary) *frigate**. *April 3* (*DR 11/4*) *arrived the outward-bound ships* Java, Zusammenschlag, Honslardick, '*with news of a general peace at home*, *except that the Empire and the Venetians were still at war with the Turks*'. *On arrival the Admiral** *in* Java *struck his flag** (*since he was only an Upper-Merchant whereas Jacob Couper in* Wohlfahrt *was a Commandeur*). *April 7* (*DR 17/4*) *two French ships arrived from Siam with Envoys from the King there to the King of France*, *as also those previously sent from France to Siam*, *now returning home* [*sic*: Le Dromadaire, Les Jeux].

Here I must mention, that all foreign ships which enter the Table Bay or roads of the Cabo buon Esperanza and anchor there, must pay to the East-India Company a certain sum of money for their anchorage*, or better said, for the permission to anchor, and must pay this in to the office at the Cabo: namely for each anchor 500 Dutch guilders or 200 dollars. No one receives any discount from this, even if he were at anchor only half a day; but on the other hand they need pay no more than this sum for each anchor, even if they lie there for several weeks, and they have the right to provide their ships with the necessary fresh water and firewood, and to cut this in the woods and take it aboard, without payment.

April 9 (*DR 19/4*) *the French frigate of March 30*, *31 sailed homeward*, *and the flute* Langwick *arrived from Holland. April 10* (*DR 20/4*) *the English frigate sailed for home. April 11 two more French frigates* (Le Gaillard, La Loire) *arrived from Siam. April 12* Guldenstein *arrived*, *which had been damaged in the Sunda Strait and repaired in Batavia. April 13* (*DR 23/4*) *another French frigate* (Les Jeux) *sailed*, *and the flute* Spierdyck *arrived from Holland. April 15* (*DR 25/4*) Osterland *arrived*, *having sailed from Holland* '*a little*

more than 3 months ago, *reporting a general peace except between the Empire and the Turks*'.

On the sixteenth, since the weather was fine, I wished to climb the Table Mountain, with the Mine-Foreman Remer and Mons. Meister, who was with us in our ship, having served as gardener in the Indies. We therefore set out at dawn, and for more than an hour and a half walked over a flat plain, through low bush and heath, which little by little rose gently to the foot of the Table Mountain. There we found a valley which divides the Table Mountain from the Devils Hill [Saddle], and thought that this would be the most convenient way by which to reach the top of the Table Mountain, since the further we could see into it the higher it became, rising with the two hills. We therefore went always upwards in it; but found in it nothing worthy of mention, except for various lovely bulbs and flowering plants, some of which Mons. Meister dug up and took along. We were already calculating how long we would wish to remain on the top of the mountain, when our ideas were entirely wrecked in an instant, so to speak, since such a thick and wet mist fell on us that we could not see ten paces ahead; and what was worse, our hands and feet were frozen by the cold and wet. Thus we were compelled to make our way back, and therefore clambered down the valley and hill again by the same way we had come, and arrived at the Cabo buon Esperanza again at about 3 p.m. It was surprising that on our way back, the further we came down the hill, the less mist and cold we found, and at the Cabo buon Esperanza it was quite fair and fine weather until the evening when the mist came down, but not so wet and cold.

On the 18th I went aboard again with the Mine-Foreman and the miners. In the afternoon we weighed our anchors (since, as is customary, each ship lay to two anchors*) and made ready to sail. That morning the yacht* Sillida entered the Bay and anchored [DR 26/4], coming from Holland and to go on to the Indies with the other Dutch outward-bound ships.

On the 19th we were all ready to sail, the wind being North-West, and our Admiral* hoisted the white flag* to call a [Broad] Council*, for which reason all the Captains of the return-ships went aboard the Admiral, remaining there until towards noon. Also there arrived the flute* Osthausen from Holland [DR 28/4] and anchored, to go onwards to the Indies with the ships bound thither which lay in the roads, having arrived while we were there. At noon the wind changed to the South-East, and in the afternoon all the returnships weighed anchor, and let themselves be driven by the said South-East wind close to the mouth of the harbour, where again we anchored.

On April 20 [DR 30/4] about 8 in the morning our Admiral hoisted the blue flag*, which was the signal to sail: first set sail the Admiral* (the ship Landes-Wohlfahren), then ourselves with the ship Wahl-Strom, then the Rear-Admiral, the ship Sion, followed by the other return-ships, namely Courtigene, Silberstein, Bantam, Guldenstein, Saaland, Ritterschafft, Einhorn and Hobre, each in the order laid down, and each in order as she followed bidding farewell to the land and the ships remaining in the roads, and

being thanked with many guns both from the land and the said ships. Towards midday we got out of the harbour and sailed past the Robben Island....

Sargasso, '*a sort of sea-grass*, *which bears little leaves and berries on a long stalk*'. *Northabout**: *this in times of peace because of* '*much transshipment* [*in the Channel*] *of all sorts of private wares*, *as also contraband goods* [*into shore-boats*]'. *Cruisers* met near* '*Fayerhill*'. *August 12 to Vlie*, *released from oath. To East-India House at Amsterdam*, *to claim chests and baggage after their examination. October 19 home to Gotha*.

68 Georg Meister (Plates 52, 53 & 54)

(*See also item 38.*) *He sailed in* Waalstrom *from Batavia on* '*December 1*', *1687* (*actually December 11 by Valentyn I: note the apparent use of Old Style* dating as in Vogel*), *with Vogel in the same ship*, *in the fleet as detailed in item 67. Storm in Sunda Strait as there*.

On March 18 only the ship Seeland [*Zalland*] was with us, and that afternoon we sighted Cap Falsch. A couple of hours later we saw the Table Mountain of the *Cap de bon Esperance*.... This Table Mountain, which is the furthest corner of Africa [*sic*], lay before us to the right, to starboard about 8 miles* North-East by North. There was little wind, and towards evening it fell entirely; and on the next day there was again a fog, so that we were again compelled to fire guns and beat drums so that the other ship Seeland could hear, since the wind again rose somewhat. Towards evening about 4 o'clock it was a little clearer and a dead calm, and we found ourselves close under the Lion Hill, within pistol-shot. On the other side of this hill lie the Castle and the Town and the large Garden of the East-India Company, so that we must go to the right, but since there are many unseen rocks hidden below water we must first stand somewhat out to sea.... On this Lion Hill or Head stands a little hut where 2 or 3 Dutchmen are set, and they have high up on the hill four small cannon ['Printzen-Stückgen'] and a high mast, on which they hoist the flag when foreign ships [*sic*: Dutch also] arrive, and fire so often as they see ships, and observe closely what flags the ships have, Dutch, English, French or Portuguese, so that the Governor in the Castle and those in the Town may know how many ships there are and of what nations. This Lion's Head is much higher [*sic*] than the Table Mountain, and difficult to climb. I dug out many bulbs on this hill, also the watchman brought me some, for which I paid in Dutch money. One of them must always be on the watch with his telescope, while the other goes down to the Castle (which lies on the harbour) and brings food and drink. Up at the flagstaff there is fastened a thick rope,

[52] HOTTENTOT WOMAN AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE IN AFRICA. From item 68. The earthenware (or ? metal) cooking-pot with handle is improbable, and the ? roots cannot be identified.

which hangs down the rock: it is about 4 fingers thick, and with it they must haul themselves up and everything they need. There are clouds almost every day on this hill, but often it stands up above them. Beside the Table Mountain many clouds also go up and down. When with great toil one reaches the top of it one finds large pools of water in the rocks. It is mostly flat on top, and Nature has formed it with many large and small stones. On it there stand here and there rocks shaped like pyramids, but by the great damp and rain of so many hundred years they are quite worn through, and many would not credit that clouds and rain could thus make holes in stone. There are also innumerable unknown herbs there. When one climbs down again through the [Platteklip] gorge, which lies almost at the centre, one finds there also many rocks which in the long years have been holed by the rain. From this gorge there issues fine sweet water, which flows to the Garden in the town, and thence out to sea. Its source is so high that there is in Germany no tower so elevated but that it could not be led above it: even if the Tower at Strassburg stood in the East-India Company's Garden or near the Castle, the water could be carried to the top of it.

Meanwhile however to return to our journey: the Admiral* was to the north of us, and on the 19th we came under the Lion's Tail so that we could see the roads. Next day, March 20th [DR 30/3] we raised anchor and sailed with the ship Seeland in a gentle breeze into the harbour or roads of the *Cap de bon Esperanza*. Here we anchored, our Admiral having already anchored the night before, arriving early in the morning under the Robben Island. He however now also weighed anchor, and in the afternoon came to anchor near us. We had the most gracious God to thank in that He had mercifully shielded us in our journey from Batavia to here, and to pray that He would aid us in the coming journey to Holland.

The gay thunder of our cannon-royal, and the happy echo from the Castle, were the pleasing signs of joy in our fortunate well-being: on March 22 we went ashore with the shallops*; and that afternoon Sion, Einhorn and Brill, the ships which had been with us in the fleet, also came to anchor.

All the following dates etc. are confused, and should be checked with the DR. March 30 and 31 arrived the return-ships from Coromandel, Ceylon and Bengal, to sail to Holland with his fleet; also towards evening a French (L'Oiseau) *and an English frigate** (Princess Mary); '*and each foreign ship which comes to the roads must pay 500 guilders for her anchorage**'. *April 3 arrived outward-bound* Java (*Admiral**), Zusammenschlag, Hanslardyck, *with news of general peace in Europe, except between the Empire and the Venetians against the Turks. April 5 arrived* Bambus, *also for the Indies. April 7 arrived two French ships* (Le Dromadaire, Les Jeux) *from Siam, with Ambassadors to the King of France, also those sent by him to the King of Siam* [*sic*]. *April 9 the first French frigate to arrive sailed for France; and that evening the flute** Langewyck *anchored. April 10 the English frigate sailed for England. April 11 in the evening arrived two more French frigates from Siam* (Le Gaillard, La Loire). *April 12* (*DR 21/4*) '*the ship Guldenstein* (*in which I travelled*

to Japan for the first time with my patron, *Herr Cleyer*) *arrived from Batavia or Unrust: she had been damaged in the Sunda Strait and repaired at Unrust near Batavia*, *and our other ships now must hasten to assist her*, *and take water and firewood to her*, *so that she should sail onwards with us to Holland*.' *April 13 another French frigate sailed* (*Les Jeux*, DR *23/4*) *and the flute Spierdick arrived from Holland. April 15* (*DR 25/4*) *arrived Osterland*, *three months out from Holland*, *bound for the East-Indies. April 18* (*DR 26/4*) *arrived the yacht Sillida from Holland*, *also for the Indies*.

While we lay in the roads I always enjoyed myself ashore in the Garden*. After I had handed over my Indian plants to H.E. the Governor Simon von der Stelle in pretty good condition, I visited the well-cultivated land, which was so well planted with all sorts of crops such as rye, barley, and various sorts of cabbage that it is almost indescribable. Especially I pass over in silence the many and lovely vineyards which the Dutch inhabitants have set along the hills in a few years of untiring diligence, and have extended little little. There is indeed only one harvest a year, which is in the month of March (since here Winter is reversed, that is when it is Winter in Europe they have their Summer here at the Cap bon Esperance). It is pleasant in taste, somewhat resembling the Spanish wine, but much of it is exported to Batavia and to Holland itself, and sold to the ignorant as the best French wine. I say but little of the lovely green meadows and fields adorned with a thousand strange colours and flowers, where God and friendly Nature combine to show a masterpiece; and this since not only are the Servants or Farmers of the beloved Company ignorant of the most strange language of the wild Africans and Hottentots, but also the lack of time did not allow me to ascertain their names, and far less to investigate their properties: thus at this time I can tell nothing specific regarding them. But this is certain: if there is anywhere in the world where Nature plays incomparably with the rare and lovely colours of her flowers and herbs, it is on this extreme point of Africa [*sic*], the Cap bon Esperance.

[Again on Hottentots, and again mostly second-hand.] They come at a certain time each year to the Castle, or the place where the Dutch live near the Cap bon Esperance, driving along great herds of beasts ... which are their greatest wealth. These consist for the most part of oxen, sheep, and goats [*sic*], and he who has the most of them is the richest among them; and it is easy to distinguish him, since he has the greasiest, foulest skin on his body. [As regards the sheep], stupid and bestial as are these Hottentots, they have learned much in many years, and there are special folk among them who can cut off the tails of the ewes quite neatly (so that the rams may better play with them) and heal them again so that seldom one of them dies. These tails are also very tasty, being nothing but fat, and one of them suffices for fully 16 to 20 men. They do not willingly kill their fit oxen and cows, but let them die of age and sickness. When one of their sick cows dies it is cut up by them while still warm, and the guts and intestines taken out and cut into small pieces: they do not cook them but eat them quite raw and warm, even when they are not cleansed of the dung. This can be seen almost every day when ships are lying at

[53] From item 68. For the apparent crater on Table Mountain cf. plates 21 (Dapper) and 65 (Bogaert). The Fort-tower and flag are fictitious, but the flags on the Katzenellenbogen bastion and Lions Head are correct. ‘D’ marks the Jetty.

the Cape, namely where the Company has its slaughter-house at the long jetty* in front of the Castle, which the prevent Governor von der Stelle has caused to be built [*sic*: DR 17/1/58]. This jetty is built of wood and planks, and there is a barracks next to the slaughter-house, where soldiers are on guard when ships are in the roads. The Governor has caused [*re-sic*] the water-course from the hills to be led to this jetty: in front stands a rectangular water-house into which the water flows, and when the sailors come from the ships they can let it run into their casks ... This jetty stretches far out to sea, and is very convenient for the shallops* and longboats ['Sluppen und Boots'].

To return to the said Hottentots: when the Dutch kill cattle at the jetty, many of them assemble, and squat on their heels here and there all around, like black ravens on a refuse-heap; and since otherwise the Dutch would throw the guts into the sea, instead they throw them before the Hottentots, with the dung and all in them (wherewith some are accustomed to smear or paint their face and body), and it seems that these tidbits are very pleasing to them, since they gobble them up greedily.

When they wish to kill cattle in their fashion, this is done with the following ceremonies: they tie fast the two front legs of the ox with long grass or thongs, throw it down and hold it fast, and cut open the belly while it is still alive, taking out all the guts and intestines; and when the blood has run together in the body they take mussels or pieces of broken pots and scoop it out into skins or pots, this being the best part of the women's share, due to them by right, with which they must content themselves. Thereafter they set it on the fire, and let it thus get warm and coagulate, and eat it without salt or lard. Their Lords and Masters are meanwhile very busy with hewing and cutting apart the flesh in the skin: the fattest and tastiest pieces are set in a pot on the fire, without salt, which they do not like. Around the fire and the pot the guests sit on the ground on their heels in their manner, each provided with a sharp little wooden hooklet. When the meat has cooked in the pot for a while, and the fire is bravely stoked and the meat half-boiled, each takes a bit for himself out from the pot with his little hook, onto his dirty cloak, and tears and claws from it what is ready, and puts the rest back into the pot, then taking another piece with his hook and in the same way clawing off from it what he likes.

Meanwhile also, all sorts of discussions are usually carried on by them (which however no one can understand), and at times these feasts last for a pretty long time, many of them in the streets under the open sky, or in the low bushes. Meanwhile their little children, boys and girls, amuse themselves with the guts and intestines; and after they have turned the same inside out and shaken out the dung they throw the guts on the ashes or embers. As soon as it is warm and only half-roasted, it is torn apart with their teeth and swallowed with good appetite and liking. Their plates, napkins and tablecloths are the skins hanging around them, which become bravely greasy therefrom, so that those of us who see them pretty well lose their appetite. In front of the *Craal* or house [*sic*] of the generous person who gave the ox on the previous day 4 to 6 stakes are set in the ground, to hang on them the left-over meat, the head, skin, feet and other parts which could not be eaten the day before. The shameless guests then come together again, and

after much gabbling make a hole in the earth, and throw down into it a layer of pebbles. On this they make a fire, and when the stones are bravely heated they take this fire away and lay the meat on them, and above the meat they again throw on stones, and then wood and glowing embers and thus let it roast. When now in their opinion the meat is cooked they drag it from the fire and ashes with their hooks, and eat it without more ado. The skin they take off and dry, which must then serve them for cutting from it small and large thongs, with which they tie together all their possessions and household gear. They make the skins soft by rubbing them with their hands, with lime made from shells; but when they are attacked by a keen appetite or by hunger they use them also as food: namely they cut them into small pieces, singe off the hair in the fire, and throw them onto the embers, and when it shrinks together they take it and beat it on the stones so long as they think fit, and chew it up quite small with their steel-hard teeth and so swallow it. When they are satiated they lie in the sun on the hills and sleep without care, drawing up their legs close to them and lying like tortoises with their leather cloaks, and with the long stick [kirri] which they always carry in their hands, and which remains also with them while they sleep; and if the sun shines warmly, they turn the rough side [of the cloak] outwards, and by night wrap themselves in the rough cowskin, and so forth. When the full moon appears they smear their black-baked skin with soot and fish-oil, thinking themselves the better as they are the greasier. When they come towards one, before they are seen they give off such a disgusting smell that one is entirely sickened by it. When we came from Batavia to anchor in front of the Castle, and our longboat went ashore to fetch fresh water, it brought also 4 such old rogues back to the ship, who at once danced before the Chief Mate so that he should give them rice. Then they went below in the ship to the Steward, to beg for strong arrack or brandy, which they greatly love. Meanwhile they went also to the Cook, who gave them cooked rice. Then a marvel was to be seen, how they painted themselves and smeared themselves with soot and fat from the pots in the galley, and thought themselves to be the fairest folk on earth. They began to devour the rice they had begged, with fat bacon which they had got from the Steward with the arrack, and squatted on the main hatch below and guzzled. When the arrack had somewhat gone to their heads it began to have its effect, and then there was a lovely table-talk. What a gabbling together there was! Dogs and cats would have burst from it, until at last our Bos'n could not bear to listen to it any longer, even if he were referee [a complicated pun on Schiedsman and Schieman*]. Then were heard all manner of things, such as ‘You damned dogs, can't you be at peace with each other? You beasts, the devil take you [“dat u de wint schitt”], you devil's claws!’ etcetera. However much these folk eat they never become fat or even stout like other heathen, but remain always slim like greyhounds. In their youth the left testicle* is cut away, so that they may run, fight and hunt the better, also that they may not beget many children: no one has more than 4, at the most. At a certain place in the body of the girls short hanging thongs are cut [see Apron*], the reason for this being unknown to us. Those who dwell near the sea live altogether miserably: they have no boats or canoes so that they could catch fish, but live

[54] 'HOTTENTOTS [*sic*] AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE'. From item 68: the hills are reversed right to left.

on roots* and on dead whales cast ashore in storms, which they nobly enjoy; but those who live further inland consider themselves somewhat superior, calling themselves Solthaniman. These carry out much cattle-breeding, from which they live. Their land is also very fertile, but they are altogether too lazy to cultivate it, preferring rather to suffer hunger than to labour. It best pleases them to live in their savage fashion, and they will not willingly abandon it. Shortly before my time it happened, as was told me, that the Dutch took a young Hottentot along to Batavia [? Doman, but the details do not tally], and clothed him, and instructed him in everything, to see if he would give up his bestial ways. So long as he was at Batavia not much amiss was to be noticed, but when he came back to his fatherland at the Cape his compatriots told him to take off his Dutch clothes, or they would stone him to death. He did not hesitate for long, but quickly threw off that clothing and put round him again a greasy, dirty skin in the fashion of the country, and perhaps in his own mind this better pleased him. They are well exercised in the throwing of lances and stones: when they are given a dubbeltje* or a stiver they can hit a marked target or a nail[-head] at about 100 paces.

In their marriages they use wonderful ceremonies: namely, when the boy has spoken with the father and mother and with the bride, and it is agreed to, the near friends of the bridegroom come together, and then he throws a thick, greasy cow-gut around the neck of his sweetheart instead of lovely pearls and golden chains, and this is the true bond of love, which is worn until it falls off of itself: and such is their coupling. At night about 8 or 9 o'clock the dance begins, not far from their houses and under the open sky, and is done in good order: namely, the men stand in a long row with bent-down bodies, and throw their heads from one shoulder to the other. On the other side the women stand in a long chain [‘rinken’], about 3 paces away, and stamp, and sing their usual song ho/ho/ho, which lasts through the whole night until full daylight, so that one cannot sleep because of it when they do it below the Lion Hill. When now they are in good health, and the full moon shines clear, they take their greatest pleasure, which is also their full-moon religious observation. They have so painted their faces with red earth and fat that it is disgusting to see. The women and girls clap their hands with an unusual movement, and make a peculiar soft noise between the teeth and through the nose, which accords pretty well with the song of the men. By their continued dancing they stamp out large and deep holes in the grass or earth.

Then again, while the dance continues a man comes stamping from one row and a woman from the other, and when they meet in the centre the man butts with his head like a goat towards the woman, and then they go back humming and singing, each to his or her place; and this continues by turns until the end. At times there may be a fine girl in the row who is by nature proud, and if she does not like the cavalier opposite her she does not come so near to him, but at once returns to her place. They have also their musicians to these joyous feasts, who are old women with a pot and over it a goatskin tied fast with the sinews or guts of sheep, and on this they beat with fingers and hands. Also they stretch a dry goat-gut on a bow, and take [a quill on] this in their teeth, as do

the Caffers in the Indies. Their conductor beats the earth with his long stick [Kirri], and then he strikes the earth with his cane ['Rakel'] with the word 'Satisso*' then all suddenly fall silent; and when they have paused for a long or short period, standing still, they again begin their former endless song of ho/ho/ho/ho with a loud shout. Such then are their acts of betrothal and of marriage. Those who have many cows are the richest, and may take 3 or 4 wives, as many as he can support. If one runs away from him, as often happens, and joins another man in another Craal, then if this becomes known and her former husband learns of it, great warfare between them begins, with their *Hasagayen* or throwing-spears, until at last one party must yield; but the rancour from this lies on their hearts for long, and since they have no judges they have also no advocates who could cause the case to be compounded. Such great warfare also begins among them when some secretly drive off and steal the cattle of others.

Of Hottentot milking: They take the cow, tie the hind legs fast with a leather thong, and give the calf the teat in its mouth, and when the cow lets the milk flow they take the teat from its mouth and milk into a pot or dirty skin. As soon as the cow perceives this she gives no more milk, and then a man must come and blow into her *Vitumel* through a reed about a span in length, and then she must let the milk flow again: otherwise she will give no more even if beaten to death. Many also thus blow into her without a reed-pipe, pulling the *Posteriora* wide apart and blowing into it, as is to be seen in the drawing which I brought home with me [Plate 53].

Of their delicate butter-making: With such clean labour and toil as they use in their milking they make also their butter, namely they have ready a long sack sewn up from a cowskin, with a little opening below it which they stop up. Into this they throw the milk onto the rough hair, and tie up the sack with thongs, and two of them take one end each and throw the sack to and fro until they can tell that the butter is in it. Then they open the little tap and let the buttermilk flow out. After that they open the sack, and indeed many would lose his appetite when he looks at this butter, both from its lovely smell as from the many cow-hairs that are mixed in it. But it does not disgust them, since it is natural and in-born to them, just as is the eating of lice. When the sun shines warmly they sit on the hills or by the seashore, and take a little stick, and beat their rough *Carosses* or cloaks: the lice then fall out like hemp-seeds, but they do not leave these lying, but pick them up and bite them open with their teeth, and spit out the skins. The women, who have them pretty thick in the guts on their legs, dig them out from these with a little piece of wood, and at once take them in their mouths as aforesaid. When they are asked, Why they do this? they say in their broken Dutch 'that beast bite us, we bite it again, it sucks our blood, we suck our blood again'. Such cleansing can be seen every day at the Cabo de bon Esperance, at the Lion Hill where their houses stand, [or] below at the Lions Tail near the town where the Dutch have their houses. Just as the Hottentots can neither read nor write, nor have any religion, so also most of the labour of the men is merely to laze and sleep, unless hunger forces them from their holes and they carry things to and fro for the Dutch. After they have done the task they are given a piece of tobacco or

biscuit, or rice, or money with which they buy bread. If they are given the agreed-on pay in advance they run off and leave the work standing. They are very agile in leaping, as some of us saw. Two of them came to us in our inn, and could drink down large glasses of wine, as also of punch ['Schamrade'] made from Brunswick Mumme*. which much amused us; and when this drink went to their heads, and we played them Dutch tunes on viols, there was to be seen a wonderful dancing and leaping. Also they asked us (and were themselves amused by it) to throw our canes at them; they bent down quite crooked on their heels, and whistled hoarsely through their noses, and when a cane was thrown quite hard at them they were never hit, since they leapt away like lightning, and themselves enjoyed it. The men can also have such amusement*, sitting by the water with the children and throwing stones into it; or they make lumps of mud and throw these in, and when there is a good splash they have their pastime and enjoyment therefrom. Those who live inland go out hunting, and what they catch with great toil they eat all together. They [the men] may not eat hares, and their women may not eat any fat oxen: thus it is fixed by their customs.

To mention also the red *Baboons* which dwell in the high crags and rocks there on the Table Mountain: when there is no wind at night and one goes into the Garden of the Company, they are to be heard calling to each other with the sound of hu/hu/hu. If anyone wishes to climb up to them they throw down large stones, and thus defend themselves better than any man. These large apes or *Baboons* are as large of body as a large dog. The Freemen say that they are very lustful, and a few years ago encountered a Dutch woman in the hills, and threw her down and held her, and one after another had his will of her; and at last they let her go, which otherwise seldom happens, since they would rather tear the human to pieces after such action. Also, as the gardener told me, they often came into the Garden by night towards dawn, and that when the *Bomasinen* or melons, guavas, sweet potatoes and other fruits are ready and ripe the black slaves must keep watch. When now they wish to steal, they set themselves one behind another, some standing on the hedges or trees, and throw the fruits one to the other, catching them perfectly; and if they see anything amiss the *Baboon* on watch calls out hu/hu/hu/hu, and then they run off with the stolen fruit from there, without looking behind them, to the Table Mountain. For the rest, they eat roots and wild almonds, as also the figs* of which there are many in the grass ... and these they share with the Hottentots. Now let us turn our eyes again to our ships.

After we had lain here for a month, and well provided all our ships anew with wood and water, we weighed our anchors on April 20 [DR 30/4] and set sail in God's Name. I was entrusted by H.E. the Governor with the following, and took charge of them at the Cape: 3 chests for H.R.H. the Prince of Orange; 5 chests for H.E. Caspar Fageln, Pensionary of Holland; and 9 chests of such trees, flowers and garden-plants for the Medical Garden at Amsterdam, in all 17 chests with soil and all sorts of plants. We bade adieu in ship's fashion with the firing of some cannon, as we had done on arrival, and the echoes from the hills joined with the inhabitants to wish us success in our journey...

Sargasso. Punishment by triple ducking from the mainyard, weighted to sink 'fully two fathoms deep'. Master of Silberstein *died, oaken coffin with a 100-pound ball, weft hoisted, bells rung, coffin carried thrice around the top deck; but a soldier or sailor merely sewn up in sheet, bells rung but no gun fired. Northabout*. Met by 26 warships at Shetlands, also by Cruisers* with refreshing. Arrived August 12, 1688. 1689 in service of Elector at Dresden.*

69 Simon de la Loubère

(*See also item 63.*) *During his return passage from Siam he was again at the Cape from April 21 to May 1* (*DR*), *but adds no further information.*

70 Father Guy Tachard

(*See also items 55, 59, 64.*) *Translated from his 'Second Voyage ...', Paris 1689: it is also translated in Strangman, with valuable background material. He sailed homeward with de Vaudricourt in* Gaillard *on January 3, 1688, with* Loire *and* Dromadaire *only*, L'Oiseau *having left for the Coromandel coast two months before, and* Normande *being kept in the Indies for the trade of the French Company: for her see item 71. Bantam. Lost sight of* Dromadaire, *which reached the Cape on April 19* (*DR*). *Agulhas: 'the sight of which caused Occum Chamnan, one of the mandarins whom I brought with me, to recall the wreck he had suffered some years before in a Portuguese ship'* - Nossa Senhora dos Milagros *in 1686: the story inserted at length.*

On the 20th of April we recognised the Cape of Good Hope. The wind, it is true, was in our favour, but we were prevented from taking advantage of it by the hazy weather and the approach of night, so that it was only on the following day that we were able to enter the bay. This we did not without difficulty and danger, since even when we were in the channel a mist came up every fifteen minutes between us and the land, so dense that we could see neither the shore at half a musket*-shot distance, nor our companion which was following close in our wake. For this reason we fired shots from our muskets at

intervals in fear of a collision, and beat the drum, so that the others, hearing these signals to which they replied in the same way, might be able to maintain a sufficient distance. Since, however, we had a captain who was experienced and skilful, and pilots with a good knowledge of the coast and the roadstead, we nevertheless managed to reach the anchorage and come to anchor at about 5 o'clock in the afternoon of April the 21st [DR].

Next day Monsieur de Vaudricour sent one of his officers to the fortress to present his compliments to the Commander of the Cape, from whom he received the same politeness as on our former voyages. When this officer returned to the ship we fired a salute of seven guns, and the fortress replied with gun for gun.

Monsieur d'Andenne, captain of Le Dromadaire which had arrived three days before us, came on board, and told us that L'Oyseau commanded by Monsieur Duquesne had left the roads two days previously [DR] for France. [She had sailed from Pondicheri in January, with Forbin on board, and reached Brest on July 17(Strangman.)] We found about fifteen large Dutch ships anchored at the Cape, besides Le Dromadaire already mentioned, and the ship Les-Jeux of the French West-Indies Company, homeward bound from Surat and richly laden. Since this last had already watered and taken on the necessary provisions, she left two days after our arrival, so as to lose no time [DR]. The Dutch fleet of eleven ships bound for Europe followed this ship of the Company a few days later [DR 30/4], taking the same course: the other four Dutch ships were joined somewhat later by six others coming from Europe [DR 19/4, etc.]. In most of these last were many French of the so-called Reformed Religion [see Huguenots*], who, having crossed into Holland, were sent by the States General to the Indies, there to cultivate the lands which the Dutch Company occupies there. Among these newly-disembarked people there was not one who was not greatly dissatisfied during the short time they had been there, not finding in these distant lands what they had been led to expect. Many among them whom I met at the Cape and at Batavia, grieved at the error they had committed in abandoning their fatherland in misguided hopes, even wished to repair it, if all means of returning to the lands they had left were not closed to them there.

All our supplies being taken aboard, we sailed from the Cape at about ten in the morning of May 1 [DR], after a stay of ten days, leaving there ten Dutch ships which were to refresh there for a considerable time before continuing their voyage to Batavia.

Equator '*April 29*' (*sic*). *Azores sighted June 5. Brest June 27. With the Siamese Ambassadors to Rome for a Papal audience. He went out again in 1690 with them*, *in Duquesne-Guiton's fleet* (*item 73*), *landing them in Bengal and himself reaching Pondicheri in January 1691*. (*Strangman*).

Background - continued

30/4/1688 ... the return-fleet raise anchors and set sail, and before evening are in the open sea and out of sight [listed 29/3, 31/3, 9/4, 10/4 plus *Eenhorn*] [Resolution transcribed: request of *d'Gallaird* to send four 'scammers' (?) via Batavia to Siam by one of Coy's. ships, granted]

1/5 ... the French, after thanking the Hon. Commandr. for the friendship shown them, their ships *Le Gaillard*, *La Loire* and *Le Drommedaire* this morning left for France.

4/5 ... the flute* *Nieuwland* was seen in the roads this morning, from Bengale Jan. 28, and about midday the yacht* *Saamslagh* set sail ...

7/5 ... the ship *Java* set sail ...

8/5 ... In the afternoon the flute *Voorschoten* was mustered, given her despatches, and made ready to sail [her arrival not given]

9/5 ... the flute *Spierdijk* set sail ...

11/5 The French Piemontoise fugitives were well received here, and this land pleases them immeasurably well, and each now seeks how best he can settle down. About midday the yacht *Sillida* reached the open sea ...

14/5 ... This norming the flute *Langwijk* sets sail and reaches the open sea ...

15/5 ... the ship *Oosterland* sets sail this evening at 9 o'clock.

18/5 This morning anchors in the roads the flute *Tannen* ... In the afternoon arrives here the French King's warship *L'Auriflamme*, 306 men and 54 guns, having sailed from Brest on Feb. 13 last bound for Siam. Three officers request in the name of their Captain to send their sick ashore, whom they reckon as 40 to 50 men, also to be allowed to buy some refreshing of flesh and vegetables, which is granted them, the Hon. Commandeur at once giving confidential orders that they should be sold these at the highest rates and with a sparing hand ... They also ... asked leave for their officers to go shooting, which was politely refused by the Hon. Commandeur under various pretexts, being however allowed to fish in the roads, with the condition that no skiff or boat should come to land before dawn or after sunset and that no fit persons should remain ashore overnight, except a few to care for their sick.

20/5 After the midday meal comes the Hr. d'Estrille [commander of *L'Oriflamme*] to greet His Hon. in the name and on behalf of the King of France, richly accompanied by 10 or 12 officers and noblemen, presenting him, as a sign of the great esteem H.M. had for him, with H.M's. portrait engraved on a golden medallion, attached by a blue ribbon to a broad chain of the same metal very artistically made [Van der Stel reported this to the Council, who confirmed that he could not have refused without giving offence: the Lords XVII did not agree. Much on various dates regarding d'Estrille, his opposition to the Siam adventure (now a disappointment at the French court with its great expense and so many dead); that in future French ships would refresh at 'Mascarines or the Island Bourbon' instead of at the Cape; and the unexpected suggestion that if he should leave the King's service and return here, he would like to become the owner of a small piece of land 'under the wing of the Hon. Coy.']

21/5 ... at daybreak the ship *Oosthuijsen* is under sail ... and reached the open sea ... The French brought more sick ashore, and it is believed that they have over a hundred, their ship stinking so greatly of filth that one cannot remain near her.

28/5 This morning the ships *Pampus* and *Bril* set sail ... reaching the open sea in the evening.

29/5 ... the return-ship *Rad van Avontuur* comes to anchor here ...

30/5 [Resolutions: quarrels in *Tannen* (?*Camen*) to be investigated in Batavia; some troublemakers in her exchanged for soldiers from *Borsenburg*]

1/6 ... Towards midday the ship *Moercappel* makes for the roads ...

2/6 Because of the N.W. wind the Coy's. ships *Borsenburg* and *Tannen*, together with the French ship *L'Auriflamme* still anchored at the far side of the bay ...

3/6 This night ... they get out to sea with a S.E. breeze ...

5/6 ... the ship *Schelde* comes to anchor about nine o'clock in the morning ... having lost her foremast, main-yard and bowsprit in heavy weather near the coast just before dawn [bound for Bengal]

7/6 ... Towards midday the ship *Helder* comes safely to the roads ...

9/6 [Resolutions: to allow the Lieutenant Bergh to come from the Robben Island to his house here with his wife and children, with the same guard who watched him there, of which advice will be sent to the Lords XVII by the return-fleet]

11/6 ... it seems that the French fugitives brought here by the *Schelde* are superior to those who arrived previously, both in character and eagerness to progress.

19/6 ... the *Dolphijn* to go to [Robben Island and the] Saldanha Bay fully laden with provisions [listed]

21/6 This night the return-ships *Moercappel*, *Rad van Avontuur* and *Nieuwland* set sail and reached the open sea.

26/6 ... the vessel comes from the Robben Island, bringing the ex-Lieutenant Bergh, together with the men guarding him ...

29, 30/6 .... the flute* *Helder* still at anchor under the Robben Island: meanwhile work continues day and night on the yacht* *Schelde*.

1/7 ... the ship *Schelde* mustered ... set sail towards evening ...

2/7 ... seen to reach the open sea ...

18/7 ... the vessel the *Dolphin* comes from the Saldaigne Bay with salted fish, and the yacht* *Centaurus* is ready to go to the Robben Island for shells ...

22/7 ... coming into the Castle the Hottentot Captain Koopman with a part of his people, men, women and children [left on 17/8]

4/8 ... towards two in the afternoon comes under full sail to anchor ... the ship *Berg China* ... having sailed from the Fatherland on March 20, having lost 19 dead during the journey and bringing fully 50 sick to the hospital here.

19/8 ... In the afternoon comes here the ship *Z. Beveland*, having left Zeeland on April 22 ... bringing the Revd. Pieter Simond ... together with his wife and various French fugitives ...

20/8 [her skiff wrecked, with loss of life including Mr. Cornelies Moerkerke, Fiscaal*-designate of Mallacca]

22/8 ... some of the fugitives came ashore, including the Preacher ...

24/8 ... this morning the ship *Berg China* ... sets sail and gets out to sea ...

26/8 ... the French fugitives brought ashore ‘met sak en pak’ ...

31/8 [Resolutions: the East Coast to be surveyed as ordered by XVII; *Noord* to Saldanha Bay for refit for this, yacht* *Centaurus* to accompany her to Terra de Natal to search for the rest of the *Stavenesse* crew (but see 12/10 below)]

3/9 This night the galjot* *Noord* set sail for the Saldaigne Bay, to be made ready and fit for her coming journey ... the yacht *Centaurus* also left for the Saldaigne Bay.

7/9 This morning the ship *Z.Beveland* ... sets sail and soon gets safely out of the bay into the open sea.

20/9 ... This morning the cavalry mustered ... 36 rank and file besides their officers...

30/9 ... *Jupiter* comes to anchor with shells from the Robben Island ... in the evening the galliot *Noord* arrives from the Saldaigne Bay, where she was made ready for her journey to Rio de la Goa ...

3/10 ... towards evening comes here the English Coy's. ship *Tonquen*, having left Souratta six months ago, via the island of Mauritius where sy lay for six months to refresh.

5/10 ... Robbert Knox*, Skipper of the *Tonquen* ... requested refreshing of water and other small matters ...

8/10 [Resolution transcribed: biscuits, bread, pitch sold to *Tonquen*; ewes and pigs for Huguenots] In the afternoon the ship *Centaurus* comes from the Saldaigne Bay to anchor here.

12/10 [Resolution transcribed: galliot *Noord* to go alone to Rio de la Goa, *Centaurus* being too leaky] [Letter to XVII by *Tonquen* transcribed: *Berg China*, *Z.Beveland*; wreck of skiff; Huguenots; 'six of the orphan girls and young women sent are now married, and the other two will soon find husbands'; *Tonquen* here outwards bound two years ago, now tells of English pirate through the Magellan Straits to the East Indies, 40 men and 14 guns, via Mindanao to Bengal, then at Mauritius while 'Cnox' there, then to Madagascar, St Maria]

13/10 This morning the ship *Tonquijn* raises her anchor ... and sets sail out of the bay ...

15/10 ... the Hon. Commandr. accompanied by the Revd. Petrus Simond and some officers set out for the outposts to examine these and help the French fugitives and other freemen to settle, remaining for the night at the Coy's. post the Cuijlen.

16/10 ... The Hon. Commandeur went on to Stellenbosch, arriving there about midday ...

17/10 ... the Revd. Petrus Simond, the French Preacher, this day gave a very edifying sermon

in the Church at Stellenbosch, to the Hon. Commandeur and all the French fugitives, together with some Dutch settlers who knew the French tongue.

19/10 ... the yacht* *Jupiter* comes from the Saldaigne Bay to anchor here with salted fish for the Coy's. slaves, and the galliot *Noord* ... sets out to survey the East coast of Africa between 25 or 26 degrees of South latitude and here. [Parade of militia at Stellenbosch, 40 dragoons and 160 infantry, including the French fugitives of Drakensteijn, who are to form their own company]

21/10. This morning comes here from the Fatherland the flute* *Princeland* ... from Texel on May 23 with 219 men, forced by storm to make for Hitland ... touched at St Jago, and lost not more than 4 men on the journey, of whom one ... fell overboard and the others died of sickness, and brings 12 sick to the hospital here. This morning the Hon. Commandeur continues his journey as far as the kloof of the mountains lying between the Berg River and the River Sonderent, camping there at midday, having on the way found many lovely and fruitful valleys where many families could settle. The Hon. Commandeur being desirous of speaking with the Captain of the Sosequa Hottentots Dorha alias Claas, who lay only a day's journey from there, sent two Hottentots to call him. In the afternoon His Honour went in person through the kloof and onwards over the high mountains until in sight of the River Sonder Ent, to find out whether it would not be possible to reach the land of the aforesaid Sousequa Hottentots by this route, and from there make one's way to the Hessequa Hottentots ...

22/10 ... This morning the Hon. Commandeur set out to inspect the nearest forests and the passage over the kloof, finding these well provided with timber-trees, and that the route ... could be made usable by carts and waggons although with toil and expense, which however would be richly repaid by the benefits to be had by the Hon. Coy. and the advantages to be awaited by her colonists in this direction ...

23/10 ... *Jupiter* ... hauled ashore and repaired ... In the morning ... there came down the mountains the Captain of the Sousequa Hottentots called Claas by us, whom His Honour at once ordered to go on with him to the Cape, to take from there such goods, tobacco, beads, arak and so forth as he should consider necessary for the barter-trade on behalf of the Hon. Coy. Meanwhile the Hon. Commandr. took his way along the Drake mountains as far as Drakensteijn, camping there at midday, having met with on the way on this side of the Berg River many lovely and fruitful lands very suitable to be occupied, and having seen with pleasure that the crops sown by the families at Drakensteijn were growing very finely.

24/10 ... This morning the Hon. Commandeur was busy at Drakensteijn ... allotting to each of the French and Dutch freemen his place ... although His Honour has had much difficulty with the French freemen before they were helped to settle, since it seems that this folk are not at all of such an industrious nature as had been expected of them ... This being done, the Hon. Commandeur continues his journey, crossing the Berg River to the Babilonische Tooren and [? back] into the district of Drakensteijn, where he arrived at nightfall, camping in the open.

25/10 ... Today the Hon. Commandr. gave the French freemen-colonists at Drakensteijn 120 good draught-oxen 20 pigs and 100 fine sheep ...

26/10 ... This morning the Hon. Commandeur set out for the Klapmuts, where he arrived about midday ... and rode on to the Tijgerberg, where he arrived in the evening and spent the night.

27/10 ... in the evening the Hon. Commandeur ... arrived back at the Castle.

29/10 This morning comes here to the roads ... the yacht* *Castricum*, having sailed on May 13 behind England [Northabout*] and touched at the island of St Vincent to take in fresh water and other refreshing, having had 9 dead and bringing 38 sick to the hospital here ...

5/11 ... The French fugitives landed here with the last-arrived ships today received their allotments of land, also on credit what they needed of pots, kettles and so forth.

7/11 ... in the afternoon the flute* *Princeland* ... sets sail and before evening reaches the open sea ... the Lord's Day was duly celebrated with the hearing of sermons in Dutch and French.

8/11 [Resolution transcribed]

10/11 [Planting of 40,000 saplings for a timberforest 'about a quarter-hour* from the Cape']

13/11 ... the French fugitives leaving for Drakensteijn and elsewhere every day, each seeking to be the first to settle.

16/11 ... the Hon. Commandr.... made a

trip to the Ronde Bosje [Letter to Batavia transcribed: 6 leggers of Cape wine being sent; poor harvest owing to winds]

21/11 ... *Castricum* set sail and was out to sea by the evening ...

2/12 ... the *Centaurus* comes with shells from the Robben Island, and the Coy's. works both in the quarries [‘Clipkuijlen’] ... and the Castle moat were zealously pressed forward.

7/12 [Resolution transcribed: request of a freeman to sell his properties and go to the Fatherland, granted]

21/12 ... the little Portuguese yacht* *Nra. Sra. del Valle* ... comes to anchor ...

22/12 ... this morning comes to the Castle an envoy from the Chief of the Inqua Hottentots, sent to the Hon. Commandeur to obtain knowsedge of and friendship with the Hon. Coy., and if possible to enter into the barter of cattle ... stating that his land is very rich in oxen, cows, sheep and other beasts ... that he was six days on the way hither, and that his land lies on the East side of Africa.

23/12 ... about noon ... come here at a guess 140 horses, driven from Hottentots Holland to be sold one by one by public auction.

25/12 [Christmas celebrated] also by the firing of some guns from the little Portuguese yacht *Nra. del Valle* anchored here ...

26/12 [Letter to Stellenbosch: slaves to be sent to Clapmuts to reap the Coy's. corn] [Proposed expedition to the Inqua Hottentots]

27/12 [Yearly prizes to the school-children, silver medals, money, sweet cakes ‘both to the free and slave children’]

31/12 [Monopolies sold: bacon, oil, vinegar; tobacco; Cape malt beer; imported beer; Cape wines; brandy]

[1689]
England and Holland join the ‘League of Augsburg’. The ‘Nine-Years' War’ continues.
Background - from official documents in the archives

27/1 ... The ship *Alkmaar* was seen to anchor in the roads, sailed July 27 from Texel ... Northabout* ... had 37 dead and brought about 104 sick ... so weak that they could not bring out their bower anchor* ...

1/2. The French fugitives brought by *Alkmaar* were provided with proper food, good care taken of their sick, and those fit sent ashore ...

26/4 ... In the afternoon a ship under a French flag sailed into the bay ... [two skippers] sent with armed longboat* and skiff* to board the said ship and seize for the Hon. Company. Meanwhile [an officer] came to salute His Honour in the name of his Captain Monsieur de Courcelles ... and was taken prisoner ... the *Normande*, here two years previously, had left Pondichery on February 17 for France ... 40 prisoners brought ashore ...

5/5 this morning comes from Saldaignbaay to anchor the long-awaited *Handboog* ... towards evening *le Coche* came to the roads ...

6/5 ... the ship *Nederland* seeing *le Coche* ... bringing up her cannon from the hold ... opened fire ... as did all the ships anchored here including the English *Nathanael* ... [*Le Coche* surrendered]

15/6 ... towards evening came the ship *Schieland* [outward]
19/9 [*Nederland* sailed]

71 Father Marcel le Blanc

Translated from microfilms of Vol. II of his 'Histoire de la Révolution du Roiaume de Siam ...', Lyons 1692, by courtesy of the Bibliothèque Nationale, Paris.

In 1688, during an illness of the King of Siam, a pretender seized the throne, and as a result Constantine Phaulkon, the Chief Minister, was executed for 'treason'. This Cephalonian Greek adventurer, the 'Constance' of item 55, had risen in Siam from a cabin-boy in an English ship to riches and to this post, and was strongly pro-French. After his conversion to Roman Catholicism he was knighted by the Pope and made a Count by Louis XIV. His fall caused the disappearance of French and Jesuit influence in Siam, and the Jesuit astronomers left there, Father le Blanc among them, he going first to Pondicheri and sailing from there in Le Coche, *with the flute** La Normande, *for France.*

La Normande had met with better weather than we along the coasts, and had arrived in sight of the Cape on April the twenty-fifth or twenty-sixth. The Dutch Governor there had been advised that three laden ships were to sail for the French Company, two from Pontichery and another from Surat, so that as soon as the fortress had been warned that a ship was approaching, by a cannon-shot from the look-out always stationed on the hill called 'The Lion's Head', he himself went up onto the Lion's Back to identify the flag; and to make even surer of the size and strength of the ship he sent out some men in a shallop* who pretended to be fishing close to where she passed. I do not know why this shallop was not hailed, nor why La Normande's shallop was not sent to speak with the men: she entered the roads under a white flag* without misgivings, and anchored near two large Dutch ships [*Alkmaar*, *Nederland*], one of which had her yards raised and her sails unfurled, and was apeak* to her anchor, ready to set sail and give chase to the Normande if she tried to depart. But no one had the slightest apprehension of war, having been informed [at Pondicheri] by l'Oriflamme that there had been no signs of it when she left Europe, so that no one thought anything of this action of the Dutch ship - it was supposed that she was making ready to set sail by weighing her anchor. The French Captain sent his Ensign in the shallop* to take his compliments to the Dutch Governor, and to request from him a gun-to-gun salute for the King's ship. This officer was taken prisoner at the gate of the fortress, and ordered in the name of the Prince of Orange to surrender his sword; and was then taken to the Governor, who told him that since his King had started the war and had seized more than two hundred Dutch ships, he had orders to seize French ships in reprisal, assuring him that no harm would be done to him personally even if he were loaded with gold and jewels, and that it was his good fortune to be already in the fortress, far from the danger to which his comrades would be exposed in the taking of their ship. To this the officer replied, that he cared little for his

own interests, but that it disquieted him to be no longer in his King's ship, to defend her with the others. The crew of the shallop which brought the officer had also been taken prisoners: it was now filled with Dutchmen and sent back with a white flag at the stern, this being the signal arranged if the fortress agreed to return the salute, in order then to fire it. As soon as this signal was seen by La Normande, her guns were fired in salute, and the fortress replied gun for gun. But before there had been time to reload, a Dutch shallop came alongside the flute*, and two Dutch officers came aboard as if to salute the Captain, carrying their arms concealed under their jerkins [‘just-au-corps’]. The Captain received them politely and invited them to enter his cabin, but since they could not understand one another and the Dutch seemed somewhat apprehensive, the Lieutenant had the idea of looking down into the shallop, seeing there firearms and swords hidden under the men's clothes; and at the same moment he saw a large vessel coming towards the stern of the flute as if to board her. He therefore gave the alarm; but unfortunately the arms were locked up in a box, and in the cabin there was nothing but a cane, with which the Sieur de sainte Marie held the entrance for some time. Other officers had now also rushed there: a few pistol-shots were fired at them, no one being wounded. The frightened crew, without officers or arms, surrendered without resistance. Everyone was made to go on board one of the Dutch ships, from which the officers were taken into the fortress, and the soldiers and sailors into a prison in the town.

Le Coche, still at a great distance away, had no idea of the ill-fortune of La Normande, and had no expectation of a similar mishap: bets had been made every day as to which of the two ships would first arrive at the Cape, and everyone was longing for this now-hostile country. The winds make game of the ships at sea, and Providence with the vain projects of man. The only person who feared to approach the Cape was our Captain, from I do not know what presentiment of the death that awaited him there; he seemed to have no desire to touch there, and if he had not been expressly ordered not to leave La Normande (which had to go to the Cape), he would undoubtedly have passed it by to go onwards and refresh at the island of sainte Hélène....

The Cape lies at 35 degrees 30 minutes of South latitude [*sic*] and 40 degrees or thereabouts of longitude*. The logs differ as regards this question of the longitude of the Cape, some putting it at 42 degrees, others at 38: we reckoned it as almost exactly 40 degrees. We had difficulty in reaching this cape against the winds which God sent us, as if to dissuade us from going there; but at times one obstinately seeks one's own loss. On the twenty-fourth of April the sea appeared to us to change in colour, which made us think that we must be on the aiguilles shoal, but on sounding no bottom was found at two hundred fathoms. Although the declination* we then had, 15 degrees 30 minutes North-West, was that of this shoal, and although the position given by the Pilots agreed with this, the Captain thought us to be further East, and therefore, in order not to be set back by the winds from South-East to South-West which reign at this time of the year, he decided to go further South as far as 37 degrees, from whence it would be easy for him to gain the Cape....

[Declinations tabulated from Pondicheri to the Cape.]

The first lands sighted on nearing the Cap de bonne Espérance, were those of the False Bay, which on the third of May appeared to be ten leagues distant. We found there extremely variable winds: during the day they allowed us to approach the land, but towards evening, veering towards the coast, they forced us to run out to sea again. On the fifth we came into the Bay with all sails set, when a thick fog, given off from the Table Mountain, entirely deprived us of the sight of the Cape, and prevented us from trying to run in, for fear of the tides and the breakers; and even more because of the little wish our Captain had to enter. He did not dare to take on himself the risk of not complying with his orders to remain with La Normande, but he sought an excuse in the bad weather which had thus far prevented him from obeying them. About noon he was preparing to put about and make for sainte Hélène, when by bad fortune the fog cleared and gave us a clear view of the entrance of the Bay. We entered at sunset by the main channel between the Robin island and the lands of the Baye de saldagne. In entering we saw four large Dutch ships [*Alkmaar*, *Nederland*, -?-, -?-], one English [*Nathanael*], and the Normande, still flying her flag and her white mast-head pennants [‘girouettes’] to deceive us, an easy task since no one had any suspicion of war. An important matter had been overlooked, the fixing of a signal in case we were separated, by which the first of our vessels to arrive should inform the other that she could enter in safety, if peace still reigned, so that if the second comer did not see this signal, she could still get clear: which makes it evident that at sea one cannot take too much care, that the worst should always be expected, and that in arriving anywhere one should act as if arriving among enemies, and especially during long voyages. The Dutch Commandant had expected that this should have been done, since he repeatedly asked those of La Normande what signal had been agreed on with Le Coche to reassure her when she arrived; but he was told, that there was none. He had thought, seeing us delay for so long at the entrance of the Bay, that we had our suspicions, and he was continually up above with his spy-glass to his eyes to watch our manoeuvres, trembling with fear of losing such a fine prize. I leave you to imagine how everything was made ready to receive us and entertain us well.

On arriving at the anchorage we saluted the King's ship La Normande from far away, with our sails still set. The fortress replied to this salute, which was not intended for it, and La Normande also replied to it; but since the Dutch who were on board her did not know our customs, they gave us gun for gun, and when we thanked them with three guns they replied with as many. [A Royal ship should have acknowledged with one gun less than the merchantman's salute, and in reply to her three should have fired one only.] This irregularity in saluting ... caused us some surprise, but not as yet any suspicion. We anchored, and then we saluted the fortress, according to the custom of saluting forts on arrival only after anchoring. It replied liberally to our salute for the second time: there was no sparing of powder that day! We did not send anyone to La Normande, because our skiff [‘canot’] was not yet ready for launching, and when La Normande sent no one to us, it was thought that their lack of promptitude was perhaps because their

shallop* [‘chaloupe’] was busy getting water, and the crew was fatigued. Nothing further was thought of it: the joy of having arrived left no room for suspicions - everyone thought only of going ashore next day.

About nine o'clock in the evening one of our officers saw in the moonlight a large Dutch vessel being towed towards us. He informed our Captain, everyone came on deck, and this manoeuvre gave rise to very unpleasant conjectures. We began to reflect on the irregularity of the salutes given us, and on the silence of La Normande: there was now no further doubt but that we were at war, and that the flute* was already taken. We shouted to her from Le Coche: she did not reply. We risked sending the skiff with a note: its crew were taken prisoner there, and the skiff sank on coming alongside. The detention of the skiff and of its crew fully revealed to us what they had wished to hide. We ran to arms: our guns were loaded with ball, and the batteries were reinforced with ten or twelve pieces which were still unmounted. The Captain, a resolute man, gave his orders, protesting that so long as he was alive he would never allow his ship to fall into enemy hands, that he would fight to the end, and would fire the powder-magazines if everything became desperate. It was no longer possible to get out of the Bay, because the sea was calm and the tide contrary, and it was equally impossible to defend her against 4 or 5 ships and under the guns of a fortress. However, the Dutch vessel of which I spoke, with three hundred men in her had come alongside us from poop to prow at half a musket-shot distance. Nothing was heard but the squeak of the blocks and the orders of the officers, and the musketeers were seen drawn up and the guns aimed in their ports. It was midnight: we had reason to think that the enemy would wait for dawn before attacking us, to avoid confusion in the darkness, and would first summon us to surrender; but exactly at one o'clock, when we had set up the last of our guns and as we were knocking on the deadlights of the gun-ports of the lower battery to open them, the enemy, judging that we were about to begin the fight, and to prevent us from killing any of their people, wished to surprise us before we could be better prepared. A musket-shot was fired from one of their ships as the signal of attack, and at once the three ships gave us their broadsides and fired all their muskets. Our Captain, who was leaning against the bulwarks to watch them called out ‘Oh, the traitors! They have not even declared that we are at war - boys, open fire everywhere!’ He had hardly given this order than he was carried off by the second broadside, and his body was torn apart by a ball and thrown between decks near the hatchways. Le Sieur de Saint Vandrille who was near him was covered with his blood, and himself thrown. down by a fragment of the bulwarks which hit him in the stomach. I came from my cabin at the first sound of the guns, and on going forward on the topdeck I saw several of our men fall at my feet, the head of one being carried off by a cannon-ball, others receiving various wounds and asking for absolution. The enemy was so near us that his musketeers could pick us off man by man thanks to the moonlight: the cannon breaking and ruining everything made the ship into a terrible likeness of a house being demolished. We were fired on by five ships, of which one took us diagonally at the poop and the rest at the sides: the balls caused fragments to fly everywhere, and the

fragments were no less dangerous than the balls. The mainmast and the mizzen were half broken. It is difficult to imagine a heavier cannonade against one ship; but it did not last. The crew lost heart on the death of the Captain, the gunners were disconcerted, and most of the sailors fled to the bottom of the hold. The Lieutenant and I found ourselves alone on the deck: he to give useless orders, I to help the wounded. I then remembered my companion Father Colusson who was still sick, and thought he might have need of my help. I passed through almost all the vessel without cover, and in this passage endured a broadside and a volley of musketry, from which God again preserved me by His goodness. I entered his cabin which I found entirely ruined: the shots had passed right through it. I thought the Father dead, but on nearing his bed I found that he had gone. On the table were two packets of diamonds which our Captain before his death had ordered to be attached to balls, to throw them into the sea should everything be hopeless, but no one had thought more of it and they were abandoned to the enemy. I was not at all tempted to open them, thinking then of nothing but death, which I expected at every step I took. To fortify myself against fear I tried to do my duty as a Missionary, and the thought that I should be killed in exposing my life for the salvation of souls sustained me and gave me joy in the midst of dangers: so admirable is the goodness of God in changing our weakness to strength, and our fears to consolations in what little we do for His service. Going out of the Great Cabin I found the chaplain of the ship and knelt down to receive the absolution of my sins, and in turn gave him absolution of his. I then went back up [*sic*] on deck, where the disorder was even greater than when I had come down [*sic:* the 'Great Cabin' was well above the top-deck, his 'tillac']. I then put it to our Lieutenant that we should not let ourselves be wantonly massacred, and that since we were not defending ourselves we should surrender. We asked for quarter; but although our enemies heard us perfectly well, they did not neglect to fire a few more shots at us, which made us believe that they did not intend to give us quarter, to punish us for our foolhardiness in defending ourselves hopelessly. But at the same time we saw the shallops of the Dutch ships filling up with armed men to board us. I went into my cabin to throw some papers overboard: I took my crucifix, my rosary, and the New Testament, and without wishing to save anything else I went out and set myself on the deck, awaiting the enemy and commending myself to God. They climbed aboard with sword in one hand and pistol in the other, crying 'Tuer! Tuer!', many knowing only this one word of French. They were surprised to find a black-robed man on deck: I went to them with open arms and said in Portuguese 'Gentlemen, we have laid down our arms: take everything and harm no one'. The soldiers in their first ardour of looting broke in everywhere, and threatened everyone to get money: no one touched me, nor demanded anything from me. An officer of the sailors who spoke French told me quite politely to embark in a shallop which he showed me; because, he added, when the men have had some drink, I should not be safe. I did not think however that I ought to abandon the others to save myself. I had all the wounded taken on board with me, and set myself with them to guide them, fearing lest some should lose strength and life on the way. The others were em-

barked in various shallops, and we were all taken ashore, where we were told that the Kaffers of the coast, stirred up by the noise of battle, had asked leave to massacre us. The shallop which took us left us at the end of the bridge [Jetty*] which sticks out to sea near the fort: we traversed it, passing one by one in front of all those who had run there to see us. It was for them a very agreeable sight, that of a Jesuit prisoner of war. They honoured me with various insults, and said that I ought to be thrown into the sea: little lacked but they did as they said, since the passage they made for me along the bridge was so narrow that I was often surprised to have passed without falling. We were all taken to prison in the hospital* of the town, except my companion [Colusson], who followed a Dutch officer and was put in the fortress with the other [officer] prisoners. He told them that he thought I had been killed at the last firing: various of these gentlemen were so good as to kneel and ask God for his mercy on me. The space [in the hospital] was so small for our large numbers that we had to remain standing for the rest of the night, fatigued as we were, so as to leave a space free for the wounded somewhat to take rest on the ground: it was hardly possible to breathe the suffocating air where we were until dawn, with doors and windows closed. At daybreak a young man entered our prison, and pushing through the crowd came to me and put a loaf into my hands, without saying anything to me or giving me the time to ask to whom I was indebted for this charity: he went away, nor was I able to see him again during the two months that we were at the Cape - apparently he was some Catholic who did not dare to let this be known. I shared the bread with those who had the greatest need of it, and soon afterwards a good Dutch lady also came to see us, from charity or inquisitiveness: she was so touched by the sight of so many unfortunates that she raised her hands and eyes to heaven and went away without saying anything to us; but when she reached her home she sent me, by the Serjeant of the guard, a plate loaded with meat, he telling me as he gave it that this meat was for me only, and that he would bring more for the others. I thanked him, but told him that I could not eat of it that day: it was a Friday, feast of St. John at the Latin Gate. In his presence I distributed it to the wounded, praising in my heart the fatherly Providence of God, who caused me to receive more help than the others in a place where I had less hope of it than they.

The Dutch Commander was that morning in the room of the officers of La Normande, and told them the sad circumstances of our capture; and when they asked him if it were true that I had been killed he said that as yet he knew nothing of it, but would go aboard Le Coche and enquire what had become of me. On his way back he took the pains to pass there [the hospital], and sent to have me taken out by the officer, together with the Lieutenant and the Chaplain of our ship. This was the same Commander who had been there three years previously when we touched at the Cape on our way to the Indies, by name Monsieur Simon Venderstel: I had then had the honour of saluting him at his home, and had given him a microscope. He recognised me and received me very well: I greeted him in Portuguese, and told him that in the happening with which God had afflicted us, it was a great consolation for us to have fallen into the hands of his lordship: to which

he replied that he regretted that the mishap had fallen on us, but that we could be sure that he would forget nothing to make it tolerable for us ... He said also that he much regretted [the death of] the Sieur d'Armagnan our Captain, but, he added, he was himself the cause of his own death, since how could he think of defending himself against so many ships. I replied that a Captain who defended himself on such an occasion could not be blamed, as being still in ignorance of how things stood; but that we had expected to be called upon to surrender before being attacked. I had also ordered this, he replied: it was to be done at dawn, but when you were seen to open up your batteries, it became necessary to be ahead of you, to prevent you from harming our ships. This first conversation took us as far as the Fortress, having entered which the Governor took me to the room of the officers of La Normande, and in presenting me said to them, 'Here is the Father for whom you feared; but he whom God guards,' he added, 'is well guarded.' We remained for about two months prisoners in the lodging of the Governor, with a guard at our door. He had us served as he was himself served at his table; or if this was not done, it was not for lack of his orders; he let us go for a walk each day, four of us with six musketeers and a Serjeant, who followed us everywhere that we wished to go. The Garden* of the Dutch Company is of extraordinary beauty and extent, full of all sorts of plants, flowers and fruits chosen from the four quarters of the earth; but we were in no humour to enjoy these pleasures - we longed only for the departure of the Fleet of the Indies [listed DR 30/6] which had arrived after us and was to take us to Europe. Our most agreeable walk was along the seashore, to watch whether these ships made ready to sail, which were to be our prison for four months. We consoled ourselves more seriously by our pious exercises, which we continued as far as we could. The usual prayers were said and the rosary recited each day, and on Feastdays a meditation was recited in the morning: the rest of the day was passed fairly agreeably in reading, in prayer, or in study according to the inclination of each: it was rather pleasant to see our Frenchmen play during a part of the day at backgammon, staking the keys which were all that was left them of all their goods, without the memory of the chests they had lost coming to trouble their amusement.

While awaiting the favourable time for re-sailing, the Commander came one day to say that he would divide us up with our sailors in four ships for our return to Europe, and left us at liberty to choose among ourselves those whose company would be the most agreeable during the voyage. As we were four priests, I believe that this arrangement came from a particular Providence of God, who wished thereby that each of the four parties should have one of us to help the sick. I put the matter forward to Father Colusson and the two Chaplains, suggesting to them, that we could do nothing more agreeable to God than by sacrificing to him the satisfaction that we had of being together, and by depriving ourselves of spiritual succour in order to give this to our brethren: that in this way we would fulfil to the letter the duty of a good shepherd who risks his soul for his sheep; but that we ought not to fear, in thus somewhat endangering for charity our own salvation, that any ill should come to us; that God in His mercy would keep this danger

from us, and that this would only oblige us to be more on our guard. The Sieur de Courcelles, who had brought from Bengal a malady from which he could not recover, requested the Governor that I might be with him in the same ship, saying that he wished to die in my hands: we were both of us detailed to be aboard their Admiral*. The others made their choices of the vessel they wished.

When these groups were arranged, on the morning of June the twentieth the Commander had us called one after the other, according to the order of the ships to which we were detailed; but before passing into his room there were in his anteroom three officials: to wit his Lieutenant [Secunde*, A. de Man], the Fiscaal* [Blesius], and a commissioner: these searched each of us, without the knowledge of the rest, in a manner unworthy of the place where it was done. When my turn came, I entered without knowing what was in hand, and asked these officials to let me speak with the Governor, who had sent for me. They said that I should see him in a moment, and nevertheless drank to my health and invited me to drink to theirs. I do not know whether it was from some consideration for my character and the habit I wore, but they discussed together who should propose to me to let myself be searched, as they had searched the others. They asked me if I had any diamonds: I said No. They wished to know if I had any money: I was no more obliged to tell them this than a wayfarer is obliged to tell highwaymen; but nevertheless, in order not to give these officials of the so-called Reformed Religion the opportunity to say, that our clerics did not fear to lie for base reasons, I myself gave them the little I had. As they then wished to search my clothes, I perceived the secular clothing which I had agreed with the Commander to wear in passing through Holland. I told them that I would put on this suit, and that I would abandon to them more readily than they supposed, all the gold and jewels that they imagined to be in my robe. They were surprised to find nothing there, and could not imagine how I came to be so poor, coming from the Indies and having been in a ship in which there were so many diamonds. I had on my neck a small copper crucifix on a wooden cross: they grabbed it, thinking it was of gold, but looking more closely they saw it was only copper, and left it. Soon after, to be sure that they had made no mistake, they asked to see it again, and having made sure that it was of little value they told me to keep it, testifying that they were much edified that I had kept this rather than diamonds. They gave me back also my rosary and a New Testament. This was all that God allowed to remain to me, to make me see the state of poverty in which a Missionary should live, so that he may have confidence in God only and no desire except for Him.

When these officials had sufficiently satisfied with me their inquisitiveness (rather than their avarice), they had me pass into the room of the Commander, who offered me his hand, and received me laughing at my new costume ‘O Senhor Padre ja Cavalhero de boã esperanca’, ‘Here is the Father become Chevalier of Good Hope’. I replied to him in the same language ‘Cavalhero não, mas de boã Esperanca si’, ‘Chevalier I am not, but I am of good hope. You have taken everything from me, Sir, I am left with nothing but the good hope I have in God.’ He had a collation served of fruits and preserves: I laughed

within myself at the comedies that are played there. Behind the scenes we are feasted, and on the stage we have just been stripped under the very eyes of a Governor of whom we are the prisoners of war, and who has fed us at his house for two months, chatting familiarly with us every day. I think that since wars have been waged, few similar examples have been seen.

We were set aboard, each in the vessel designated, but about a hundred of our sailors were sent to Batavia, because the Captains said that they could not transport so many French without danger. We remained another ten days in the roads, in very cold weather: all the mountains around were covered with snow, being the month of June which is mid-Winter for these lands. The Commander came aboard to wish us a happy voyage, and we set sail on June the thirty-first [DR 30/6]....

[Criticism of Dutch navigation.] They were to touch at three places in this passage: the Island of Sainte Hélène, which they missed; the Azores, where they wandered about for three weeks in that latitude but could get no sight of them; and finally they thought themselves in sight of the coasts of England when they had fallen more than two hundred leagues to the West of them. There is a spirit of slowness and lack of resolution in all that they do: they called Councils* thirty times for nothing but trifles....

[Idea of sailing Northabout* abandoned, season too late.] They feared the French and did not trust the English. Each of their ships has as officers only a Captain and three Pilots, all promoted from sailors, with the result that they have no authority over the crew.... In my ship on one occasion they challenged the Captain to come down from the deck and fight with his fists. In another they beat on the door of the Captain's cabin to break it in, demanding brandy, and he was forced to give them Spanish wine to pacify them....

.....

Numbers of our captors the Dutch died, and died miserably without aid for body or soul, as little helped by their Ministers as by their Surgeons: we lost two only, of whom one was the Sieur de Courcelles....

[Death of the Admiral (Johannes de Hartog) and his wife: embalmed and in lead coffins.]

We were near the English coast when the Admiral died: the Pilots reckoned that we were in the Channel, but it was the ‘False Channel’ called ‘of Bristol’....

[Escorted to Dover by two English ships.]

We arrived in sight of the islands of Zeeland on the twenty-eighth of October, 1689....

Background - continued

30/6/1689 ... the return-ships ... *Oostersouburgh*, *Saamslag*, *Suydbeveland*, *Spierdijk* and *Mierop*, with both the French prizes ... set sail ...

3/7 ... the English ship *Nathanael* set sail ... learned that with her went 5 soldiers missing from our garrison ...

5/7 ... *Nathanael* ... still below the Robben Island ... came ashore from her four English and one Portuguese ... rather risk their lives on shore here than sail with such a leaky ship ... only one meal a day ... pumping continually ...

11/7 ... two ships under full sail ... must anchor behind the Robben Island ...

12/7 ... being the *Voetboog* and the *Land van Schouwen* [outward]

25/7 ... comes to anchor the English Company's ship *Chadois* [*Chandos*], having sailed from the Theems on March 16 ... bound for Mombasa, 46 guns and 250 men including 120 soldiers ... 65 sick whom the Captain requested to bring ashore ... granted, as also his request to buy refreshing from the freemen ... shortly afterwards appears in the roads the ship *Dregterland* [outward] ... 68 dead during the voyage, including the skipper ... all crew sick except 15 or 16.

3/8 ... the ship *Emenes* given her despatch [homeward: sailed 5/8 as 'little flute']

22/8 ... comes here to anchor the ship *Zalland* [outward] ... 24 dead, 10 sick brought ashore ...

72 John Bonnell

Transcribed from xerographs of his log (*MR 89*) *kept in* Chandos. *All his dates are of course Old Style*. Sailed outwards February 4, 1689 for Madras.*

July 1689. Mundy the 15th [DR 25/7].... Anchord* with our best bower and moored with our small bower to the Eastwards with these Bearings ... Pengwin Iland from the NWbNo. to the NbWt: Grenepoint WNWt ... Jameses Mount or lyons Rump W½So. Sugar Loaf WSWt: Wtly. the fflagstaff on the ffort Bastion [Katzenellenbogen] SSWt: wtly: the bridge where we land [Jetty*] WbSo - Charles Mount So½wt: we rod about two miles from the shoar which is to far off but we found here three Dutch Ships [see below] which lay within us and we could not well birth ourselvs any nearer. We came in as I have sayd to the Et: ward of Pengwin Iland (which the Dutch call Robin Iland) but there is very good chanell betwene the Iland and grenepoint ... when yow come near the Iland yow may discern on it two or thre houses were they hoist Dutch colours and while yow are far in the sea yow may discern (if the weather be clear) the Dutch colours on the very top of the Sugar Loaf were a watchman is kept who spreads his colours when he sees ships and in a convenient place guns are mounted with which upon the Aproach of ships

he alarms the adjacent parts - Att my arivall in this port I saluted the Governour with 13 guns who very civilly as offen as I shott returnd me gun for gun. The Bay in which ride (and which the Dutch call Table Bay) is very spacious ... nearer to the Landing bridge [Jetty] yow ride the better yow secure yow self from the NWt. sea and winde which sometimes is very troublesome in this place - But what the people of this place relate of the force of the SEt. wind is almt. past creditt but may serv to warn us that we must sometimes expect in this place a hard road stead the country is pleasant in many places very rich soil and abounds with many good things -

Att my arivall here I found rideing in the Road three Dutch ships two ready to sail for Batavia [DR 12/7] and one being a flyboat* bound for Holland [DR 3/8, 'flute'] here were likewise four sloops belonging to the place [not identified] - the same day that we came in arivd likewise a Dutch ship from Holland [DR 25/7] who parted thence the midst of January past had touchd att St. Iago notwithstanding had buryed in their passage 70 men and there Comander and brought many more in very sick their complyment of men when they came out was with seamen and souldiers 260 persons.

The Governour could not spare us any room in the Hospitall* for our sick therefore I was obliged to provide houses in the Town for them which att last I did att the extravagant rate of two spanish dollars for one room for a night three rooms I took att this rate less not being sufficient for the number of sick we had -

Tuesday the 16th: was spent in Landing our sick which were of our ships company 47 and of the souldiers 35 these all helpless and forced to remain on shore besides 25 seamen and souldiers that went on shore to walk every day had their Dyet on shore but returnd on board these being such as were able to walk and needed not the takeing of house att the excessive rate - Lowered our yards and topmasts.

Wednesday the 17th: ... built a float stage and prepared for the heeling our ship to scrub and pay* her.

Thursday the 18th: heeled our ship scrubd her and payd her as far as we could reach [4 died, including 'one of our french souldiers' making a total of 53 deaths].

Ffryday the 19th: Imployed our selvs in righting and cleaning our ship and triming of water caske* [another death].

Saturday the 20th: Smoaked our ship with tar sprinkled her with vinegar [another death].

Sunday the 21st: This morning perceivd our best bower anchor* to have started* tho: wee have had noe hard gale to strain on him not withstanding fearing he was foul we fetchd it aboard stopeing our ship with a small anchor and hawser till we carryed it our again this day the two ships bound for India chose to depart tho: not a breath of wind they warped* three or four warpe then a small breeze helpd them out.

Munday 22d: fair weather gave our Larboard Watch leave to goe on shoar to walk -

Tuesday the 23rd: Base dirty weather ... being forced to send our Deal yeol [yawl*] on shoar for Provisions by carelessness of our people on shoar she broke away

from the bridge [Jetty*] without any person in her and drove cross the Bay and we know not yet what is be come of her -

Wednesday the 24th: untoward weather [no signs of boat].

Thursday the 25th: ... our people found our yeol here a shoar bulged [bilged*] ... this day wee tard our standing rigging [56th death].

Ffryday the 26th: ... our Longboat* made three turns for water this day ... about 4 clo: this morn the Dutch fflyboat* bound for Holland sett sayl [DR 3/8] by whome I sent letters [57th death].

Saturday the 27th: [yawl repaired and brought aboard].

Sunday the 28th: fair weather our men went shore to Walk.

[29th-31st loading stores and water. August 1-5 water, minor repairs, tar.]

Tuesday the 6th: ... our seamen that were put on shoar sick returnd on board well.

Wednesday the 7th: Cloudy hasey weather....

Thursday the 8th: ... the Dutch ship that came in with us sailed hence for Batavia going out betwene Pengwine and grenepoint, about 7 clo: this Evening ... our small bower cable broke we lett goe our Sheet anchor* which together with our best bower brought the ship up....

Ffryday the 9th: ... we ffetched aboard our sheet anchor and our small bower with the p [piece] of cable to it about 50 ffaths hove our ship over into her birth again with a hawser and small anchor then moored with our stream anchor* and cable....

Saturday the 10th: ... stayd fforeward our foremast and sett up our fore shrouds....

Sunday the 11th: very fair weather -

Munday the 12th: ... we got up our yards and topmasts most of our people from the shoar being come off. This day arrived here a Dutch ship from Zealand [DR 22/8] ... bound for the Iland of Zeloan ... hath buryed 22 men brought many sick ... in the afternoon the winde Blowing very fresh strook our yards and topmasts again.

Tuesday the 13th: ... sent our Long boat on shore to bring of all persons belonging to me there and what provisions and grene trade or what els we designed to cary from this place ... some two or three days since we missed three of our souldiers & one of my seamen by favour of the Governour I got souldiers to be sent to search the country one of my souldiers they brought back with them but the other three persons could not be found....

Wednesday the 14th: ... about noon sprang up a fine gale at SbEt: we imbraced the opportunity to sayl about ane of clo: were aweigh and stered of [DR 24/8]....

Background - continued

24/8 ... the English Coy's ship *Chadois* departed for Mombasa.

[1690]
The 'Nine Years' War' continues. Spain joins the 'Great alliance'. Calcutta established.
Background - from official documents in the archives

19/1 English '*Bredle Castel*' arrived [homeward: *Berkley Castle*]

25/1 [English *Dorothy* arrived homeward]

6/2 ... the English ships sailed ...

28/3 ... thunder and lightning ... the flagstaff on the head of the Lion Hill thrown down ...

31/3 Resolutions. The Council informed of the wreck of the galliot* *Noord*, and how her skipper ... intending to come here by land with 5 of the crew ... were attacked by the Houteniqua Hottentots and despoiled of everything [in all 14 men of various parties missing] resolved to send Ensign Isaak Schryver with 20 well-armed soldiers together with 10 to 12 freemen ... to seek for the men, and to take just revenge if it is found that they were attacked by the Attaquas, Houteniquas, or other Hottentots ...

9/4 The French fugitives settled here are wonderfully contented with the distribution of the monies ... sent by the Diacony of Batavia ...

73 (Abraham du Quesne-Guiton)

Translated from microfilms of the anonymous 'Journal d'un Voyage ...', Rouen 1721: there is also a very short English account (below) with differing dates. The former is included here as an example of the clotted nonsense which unfortunately gets into print; and even more unfortunately may be quoted as an 'authority' by later writers (see for example Cope, 'King of the Hottentots', Cape Town 1967).

The fleet sailed for Pondicheri from L'Orient on February 24, 1690, six ships in all: Tachard (of items 55 etc.) went out to India with it.

Tuesday, May 30 [1690] ... From five o'clock [p.m.] we could see the land ... and tomorrow, with God's help, we shall pass in sight of the Cap de Bonne-Espérance.

Wednesday, May 31. Monsieur du Quesne has hoisted the red [war] flag* at the maintop, and led the fleet. We went along the lands of the Cape, with the French flag at the poops. At noon we saw the Dutch fort, but from too far away to be able to say what it is like. We do not seek for their houses: we wish only to find some of their ships. They sighted us [not in DR], and can still see us clearly, since we passed at a distance of five or six leagues, and in addition they have look-outs posted on all the heights [Lion Head] which advise them of ships that come or go, their number, and their nationality. If they dared, they would make straight for us; but they capture no ships here unless these run into their jaws, as did La Maligne [*sic: La Normande*] and Le Coche....

Le Coche was commanded by a very brave and very resolute man, by name d'Armagnan, born at Saint Malo. He was returning from the Indies and did not know that war had been declared between France and the States General, owing to the invasion [*sic*] of England by the Prince of Orange; and unfortunately for him, he had

on board four Jesuit mathematicians [*sic:* two only], who also were ignorant of this fact. These got the

wish to make observations regarding the longitude* of the Cape, since its latitude is definitely known.

(In parenthesis, is this, or should this be their profession? Nevertheless, it is only with the aid of the profane sciences that they have entered, and maintain themselves in all the Kingdoms of Asia; that they have raised themselves to positions of authority; that they have caused revolts of subjects against their rulers and rebellions of children against their fathers.... Am I mad, to attack a Society which causes crowned heads to tremble ...? I return to those who were in Le Coche.)

Poor Monsieur d'Armagnan had some presentiments of what would happen.... They reassured him, and threatened him with the indignation of the Society, and consequently that of the King and Madame de Maintenon, if he refused their demands. It was in vain that he put forward good reasons to them, among others that it was not known whether we were at peace or at war: his ill-fortune caused him to give way. La Maligne [*sic*] sailed ahead and he followed soon after. He entered, and saw nothing to make him suspicious. La Maligne still flew her French flag; and he did not perceive his misfortune, until he saw three ships on the move, to attack him on both sides and from aft. It was impossible for him to defend himself: he wished to perish, by firing the powder on board. He entered the magazine, pistol in hand, but as he was raising the cover over the powder, a rascally gunner, seeing his intention, gave him a blow with a partisan from behind, which pierced his heart and killed him. The pistol exploded: at the sound the Dutch boarded and seized the ship, which was laden with merchandise worth two or three millions.

In this manner the two ships were taken in 1688 [*sic:* 1689, and the details are false], and all that the officers could do was to request that the scoundrel who had killed his Captain, should be handed over to them, which the Dutch did without more ado.... The officers tried him and he was hanged, which did not restore his life to d'Armagnan, nor its property to the Company. The officers were honourably treated; but the Jesuits were regarded as those to whom the Dutch Company owed two such rich prizes, and the Governor showed them all conceivable gratitude.

It is here [at the Cape] that the formidable Power of the Dutch in the Indies begins. This Nation, the most interested in trade and which best realises its true interests, suddenly realised the importance of this place, to make it an entrepôt as necessary as convenient for its ships, outward and homeward bound, and resolved to take possession of it by any possible means. The English had seized it, but had not sufficiently fortified it to make it safe from attack. The Dutch Company took advantage of a time when England and the States-General were at war, in the days of Cromwell. They sent there eight wellarmed ships, and a landing-party of two thousand men: the insignificant English fort was taken, and the Company became the rulers, and has refused to consider handing it back, no matter what the Crown of England has offered. [‘History’ re-written!] The entrance to the port is now better defended than is that of Constantinople by the Dardanelles: I have been there, and not having been at the Cape, I rely on our chief Pilot,

who has visited both.

The Dutch Company always maintains there twelve hundred regular soldiers [*sic:* Instructions 16/7/85 'garrison' of 332, but including civilians].

[Praise of the Dutch system as compared with the French, especially in that the Company has powers in the Indies to discipline even soldiers and sailors.]

If it takes care to punish offenders, it also seeks to reward merit, in whomsoever of its subjects this be found, regardless of nationality or of religion. The Governor of the Cape is a Frenchman from Paris, by name Monsieur Martin [*sic*], a name similar to that of the French General at Ponticheri, our goal, and both are Roman Catholics....

[Continued praise of the Dutch system, with an example of the failure of the French system in America, where owing to the lack of discipline he was captured by the English in 1687, and the French fort fell without resistance and was razed.]

I return to the subject of the Cape. Monsieur de Choisi correctly says in his Journal [item 58], that the Governor went out exploring. This indeed he did, and set up eight colonies [*sic*] to the North-North-East of the fort, at a distance of more than a hundred leagues, not far apart so that they can assist one another. They are suitably sited along the banks of a river which flows into the African Sea, at the mouth of which they always have a vessel, both to bring them what they need and take back the goods they barter, as also to evacuate everyone should the natives of the country force them to do this: which is however not likely, since the Dutch, besides being peaceable by nature, are daily fortifying themselves there. Our Armourer was in Le Coche, where d'Armagnan was killed: he told me, that a Frenchman with whom he had served in Flanders and who was now a Serjeant at the Cape, had told him that the States-General were going to send there all the vagabonds and libertines who infect Holland - that may well be called making use of everything.

[This Armourer is also responsible for the 'natural history' below.]

The first wheat sown in this Dutch colony did very well: the inhabitants harvest it, but in small quantity. The soil is more suitable for barley. They have there all the fruits which we have in France, but less tasty: they have also the indigenous ones, which are not very good either green or ripe, but make pretty good preserves. Their grapes are good: it remains to be seen whether they will make good wine, since none have as yet been pressed [*sic*], there being too few of them. Their domestic animals are like ours. The game is the same, but in small quantity [*sic*] because of the monkeys, which destroy everything except those larger animals which are too strong for them.

[Story of intercourse between the 'large monkeys' and the colonists as a regular custom, although punished when detected, and of the way in which the resulting progeny is dealt with, by the colonists if from women, by the monkeys if from a she-ape.]

I do not state this as absolutely true, not having seen or studied it: I was merely assured of it as a fact, and I repeat again that he who did this was certainly not clever to have invented such a yarn, and insisted that he had learnt it from the Serjeant whom I have already mentioned....

The maps show the Cap de Bonne-Espérance as at thirtyfive [*sic*] degrees of south latitude and forty-three degrees of longitude*. I have already said repeatedly, that this longitude is uncertain; and I again repeat, that it would be very desirable that the Jesuits should publish their observations.... [He wrote in 1690, and published in 1721: Tachard had summarised the observations in his 1686 book, item 55.]

'A New Voyage ...', London 1696. *This is not a translation, and it will be noted that the dates differ: also the name is given as 'Duquesne'. The fleet and the sailing are as above, but according to this account the Cape was not sighted.*

... In a little time we met with the western winds, which were necessary to gain the Cape of *Good-hope*.

The third of *May* we had them, but they lasted but a little while, coming about to the North, which serving our purpose as well, we sailed sixty Leagus [*sic*] in 24 hours with them, which made us hope we should soon be at the place where we were to anchor, which everyone earnestly desir'd, so that our joy was excessive when we reach'd the heighth of the Cape. The judgment of our Pilots was confirm'd by the sight of the *Velvet Channels* [*Sleeves*], call'd so from a large Bird which is only seen there, because half their plumage resembles *Velvet* spotted with *Pearl*. We saw two whales, with a great number of birds of different kinds, and all sorts of colours; the Calms delaid us there very much, and hinderd our passing it, as did likewise the contrary winds.

But with the blessing of God overcoming these difficulties, *Sunday* the 28*th.* of *May* we doubled the Cape of *Good-hope*, with a northerly wind as good as we could wish. It's here our ships refit going to the *Indies*, and meet with plenty of provisions; but being in War with the *Dutch*, who are Masters of the Cape, we were depriv'd of this happiness; and so without so much as passing within sight of it, we continued our Voyage....

It still blew so fair, that next day by seven a clock in the morning we arriv'd at the Bank of *Needles*, tho' it be forty Leagues from the Cape....

[1691]
The 'Nine Years' War' continues. The New English East-India Company formed.
Background - from official documents in the archives

No Diary is available for this year, so that the dates are largely guesswork, especially since neither Leguat nor Dampier are reliable in this respect.

1/1, 19/1 Resolutions [Quarrel between Claas and Koopman: Serjeant Hengst and later Ensign Isaac Schryver sent to settle it by the return of the cattle taken by Koopman from Claas]

22/1 Resolutions [Mention of *Berg China* and *Swarte Leeuw* now lying here for a considerable time, and unlikely to sail soon]

? 26/1 *Hirondelle* arrived.

74 François Leguat
(Plate 55)

(*See also item 85*.) *He was one of those who volunteered for the scheme of Marquis Henri Duquesne of colonising* '*Mascarenhas*' (*now Réunion*) *with French Protestants, refugees in Holland after the Revocation of the Edict of Nantes. They were already at Texel and about to sail, when early in 1690 the scheme was abandoned on account of the Franco-Dutch war; but replaced by a less ambitious one for which Leguat was again a volunteer, one of ten who sailed in* Hirondelle *from Texel on September 4, 1690. His account was published in 1708, simultaneously in English* ('*A New Voyage to the East ...*') *in London, and in French* ('*Voyages et Aventures ...*') *in London and Amsterdam: there were later editions in Dutch, German and French. The first-mentioned was reprinted by the Hakluyt Society* (*First Series, Volumes 82, 83*) *with a cross-check against the second, correcting several serious errors, but omitting the plates: it was also summarised by Strangman, with valuable background-material.*

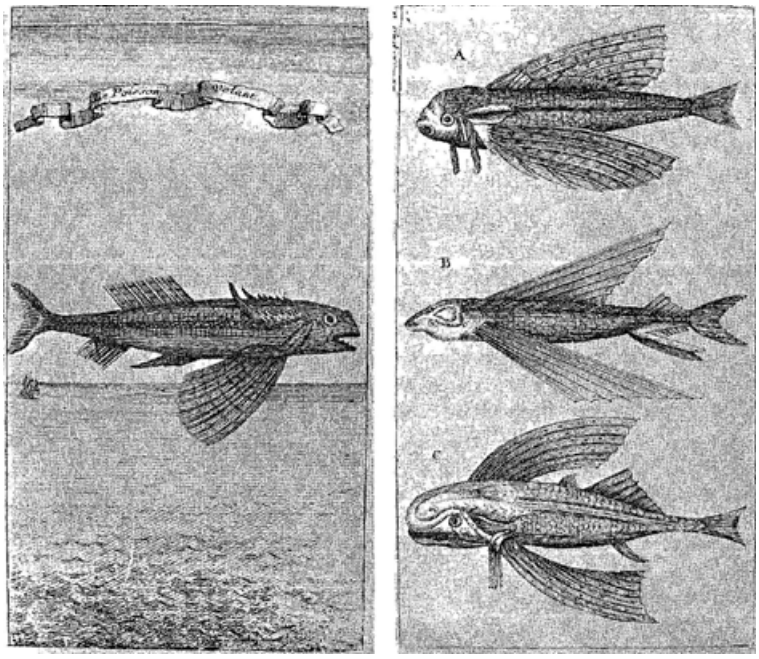
The party left Amsterdam on July 10, lying at Texel from July 13 to September 4 before sailing in a fleet of 24 Dutch and English ships. Northabout. At Salfrom October 30 to November 6. Equator November 23, with the* '*baptism*' *of the neophytes.*

The 13th [January 1691] we saw and knew the Cape of *Good Hope*, but lost sight of it again in a great Fog, which rose on a sudden, and oblig'd us to keep to Sea all that Night.

The next day we drew near and saw the Isle *Robben*, which is at the entrance of the Port. This little Island is flat, and has no Dwellings upon it but some Hutts where the *Lime-Burners* live, when they are sent thither to make it [*sic:* there was a permanent garrison, and the lime was burnt on shore].

All of us had a long while earnestly desir'd to arrive at the *Cape*, for we all wanted Refreshment extreamly, being almost eaten up with the Scurvy, and the Grapes beginning to ripen, the Season was very favourable to us. After having Coasted along the Cape two days ... we at last enter'd the Bay the 26th of January 1691 and cast Anchor about four in the Afternoon.

Tho' this seems to be an admirable Bay, its vast Bason being enclos'd on one side by a ridge of Mountains, and on the other by a long tract of Earth, which seems instead of a Mole for it. 'Tis however very often dangerous to ride in, the reason of which is, partly for that one of those Mountains which ought always to be a shelter to it, is sometimes, and even frequently a fatal Source of those impetuous Gusts, that presently put all the Ships into a terrible Disorder; besides, the Sea-winds are very furious, they blow with a frightful force, and the Anchorage not being very good, Ships are in great danger



[55] Flying Fish (from French edition)

of running a-shoar, or oversetting, and no Boats are then suffer'd to come off to them. This bad Mountain is near the Point of the Cape, and call'd the *Devil's Mountain*, on account of the mischief it do's....

There are two other Mountains near the *Devil's*, one call'd the *Lyon's Mountain;* for that when we see it from the Bay, some Men fansie it looks like a Lyon Couchant. On the top of it there's always a Guard, and ten pieces [*sic*] of Canon: And when any Ships are discover'd at Sea, notice of it is giv'n to the Port.

The other Mountain is call'd the *Table Mountain*, and with good reason; for its summit being cut off Horizontally, it naturally enough represents the figure of a Table. There's a little Lake* or Pond at the top of it, which supplies part of the cultivated Lands in the bottom with Water: We had several *Charts*, and took several views of the Bay, but this seem'd to us to be the best [Plate 34, which he 'took' from item 55].

We found four Ships there, two *Dutch* (the *Black Lion* and the *Mountain of China*) [Resolutions 22/1], one *English* [not identified], and one *Danish* [ditto]. Our Guns being still in the *Hold*, we cou'd not salute them at first according to Custom. 'Twas the next day before they were ready, and when fir'd, it had been better we had let it alone, unless we cou'd have come off more luckily; though, as it happen'd, 'twas well it was no worse; for one of our Guns which was loaden with Ball ever since we came from the *Texel*, and had not been discharg'd was forgotten to be loaden, and being fir'd struck the Wall of the Fort, after having past through the middle of thirty Persons, and brush'd a little the Beard of the Serjeant, who return'd us our Bullet. We were chid for our Negligence, and that was all....

The next day we went to deliver our Letters to the Governor, who check'd us for the Blunder we had made in entring the Port, and indeed we deserv'd it. However, he receiv'd us very civilly out of respect to the Treaty Monsieur *du Quesne* had made with *Messieurs* the Directors of the *East-India* Company, from whom we also brought Letters of Recommendation....

Those of us who were sickest Landed at the Cape, as soon as we arriv'd, to cure our selves of the Scurvy, staying at Land being the only true and sovereign Remedy for that Distemper.

The Grapes were just beginning to grow ripe when we came there (which was an excellent Refreshment for our selves, and our Ship's Crew:) We stay'd three Weeks at the Cape, as well to recover our Health, as to refit our Ship.

... all our Company being in a good state of Health, we weigh'd Anchor the 13th of *Feb.* 1691 after three Weeks rest a-shoar. We Saluted the Fort with five Guns, and so set Sail....

Reached Rodriguez Island on May 1, 1691, and there for two years, when the 7 now alive of the original 10 made for Mauritius in a self-built boat. There 2 joined the V.O.C., the 5 others being held as prisoners on a rocky reef-islet, where one of them died. The 4 survivors were at last taken to Batavia in September 1696, and held there for another year, one more dying there.

Background - continued

? 12/2/1691 *Hirondelle* sailed.

? 12/4 *Defence* arrived.

10/5 Resolutions [English *Defence* sold wine and gear, and allowed to buy provisions from the freemen]

75 William Dampier
(Plates 56 & 57)

(*And see item 101.*) *From his* '*New Voyage Round the World ...*', *London 1697 etc. After many adventures*, *chiefly in the West Indies and South America*, *and largely with* '*privateers*' (*or pirates*!) *he found himself employed as a military engineer in the English fort at Bencoolen in Sumatra*, *but* '*slipped away*' *to join Captain Heath's* Defence *of the English East-India Company. His dates are Old Style**.

And then we set sail for the *Cape of Good Hope*, on January 25, 1691 ... We had not been at sea long, before our men began to droop, in a sort of distemper that stole insensibly on them, and proved fatal to above 30, who died before we arrived at the Cape [scurvy]. We had sometimes two and once three men thrown overboard in a morning.

This distemper was so universal, that I do believe there was scarce a man in the Ship, but languished under it; yet it stole so insensibly on us, that we could not say we were sick, feeling little or no pain, only a weakness, and but little stomach. Nay most of those that died in this Voyage, would hardly be perswaded to keep their Cabbins, or Hammacks, till they could not stir about; and when they were forced to lye down, they made their Wills, and piked off in 2 or 3 days.

The loss of these men, and the weak languishing condition that the rest of us were in, rendered us uncapable to govern our Ship, when the wind blew more than ordinary. This often happened when we drew near the Cape, and as oft put us to our trumps to manage the Ship. Captain *Heath*, to incourage his men to their labour, kept his watch as constantly as any man, tho sickly himself, and lent an helping hand on all occasions. But at last, almost despairing of gaining his passage to the Cape, by reason of the Winds coming Southerly, and we having now been sailing 8 or 9 weeks, he called all our men to consult [Council*] about our safety, and desired every man, from the highest to the lowest, freely to give his real opinion and advice, what to do in this dangerous juncture; for we were not in a condition to keep out long; and could we not get to Land quickly, must have perished at Sea. He consulted therefore whether it were best to beat still for the Cape, or bear away for *Johanna*, where we might expect relief, that being a place where our outward bound *East India* Ships usually touch, and whose Natives are very familiar; but other places, especially *St. Laurence*, or *Madagascar*, which was nearer, was unknown to us. We were now so nigh the Cape that with a fair Wind we might expect to be there in 5 or 5 days; but as the Wind was now, we could not hope to get thither. On the other side, this Wind was fair to carry us to *Johanna:* but then *Johanna* was a great way off; and if the Wind should continue as it was, to bring us into a true Trade wind, yet we could not get thither under a fortnight; and if we should meet calms, as we might probably expect, it might be much longer. Besides, we should lose our passage

about the Cape till *October* or *November*, this being about the latter end of *March*, for after the 10th of *May* 'tis not usual to beat about the Cape, to come home. All circumstances therefore being weight and considered, we at last unanimously agreed, to prosecute our Voyage towards the Cape, and with patience wait for a shift of Wind.

... In a short time after this, it pleased God to favour us with a fine Wind, which being improved to the best advantage by the incessant labour of these ... men, brought us in a short time to the Cape.

The night before we entered the Harbour, which was about the beginning of *April* [DR 12/4], being near the Land, we fired a Gun every hour, to give notice that we were in distress. The next day, a *Dutch* Captain came aboard in his Boat, who seeing us so weak as not to be able to trim our Sails to turn into the Harbour, though we did tollerably well at Sea, before the Wind, and being requested by our Captain to assist him, sent ashore for a hundred lusty men, who immediately came aboard, and brought our Ship in to an anchor. They also unbent our Sails, and did every thing for us that they were required to do, for which Captain *Heath* gratified them to the full.

These men had better stomachs than we, and eat freely of such food as the Ship afforded: and they having the freedom of our Ship, to go to and fro between Decks, made prize of which they could lay their hands on, especially salt Beef, which our men, for want of stomachs in the Voyage, had hung up, 6, 8, or 10 pieces in a place. This was conveyed away before we knew it, or thought of it: besides, in the night, there was a Bale of Muzlins broke open, and a great deal conveyed away; but whether the Muslins were stoln by our own men, or the *Dutch*, I cannot say; for we had some very dexterous Thieves in our Ship.

Being thus got safe to an anchor, the sick were presently sent ashore, to quarters provided for them, and those that were able remained aboard, and had good fat Mutton, or fresh Beef, sent aboard every day: I went ashore ... where I remained ... till the time of sailing again, which was about 6 weeks. In which time I took the opportunity to inform my self of what I could concerning this Country, which I shall in this next place give you a brief account of, and so make what haste I can home.

The Cape of *Good Hope* is the utmost bounds [*sic*] of the continent of *Africa* towards the South, lying in 34 d. 30 m S.lat. in a very temperate Climate. I look upon this latitude to be one of the mildest and sweetest for its temperature, of any whatsoever; and I cannot here but take notice of a common prejudice our *European* Seamen have as to this Country, that they look upon it as much colder than places in the same lat. to the North of the Line. I am not of their opinion as to that: and their thinking so I believe may easily be accounted for from hence, that whatever way they come to the Cape, whether going to the *East Indies* or returning back, they pass thro a hot Climate: and coming to it thus out of an extremity of heat, 'tis no wonder if it appear the colder to them.

.....

But to proceed: This large Promontory consists of high and very remarkable Land; and off at Sea it affords a very pleasant and agreeable Prospect. And without doubt the

[56] CAPTAIN WILLIAM DAMPIER

Prospect of it was very agreeable to those *Portuguese*, who first found out this way by Sea to the *East Indies*; when after coasting along the vast Continent of *Africk*, towards the *South Pole*, they had the comfort of seeing the Land and their Course end in this Promontory: Which therefore they called the Cape *de Bon Esperance*, or of *Good Hope*, finding that they might now proceed Eastwardly.

There is good sounding [Agulhas Bank] off this Cape 50 or 60 Leagues at Sea to the Southward, and therefore our *English* Seamen standing over as they usually do, from the Coast of *Brazil*, content themselves with their Soundings, concluding thereby that they are abrest of the Cape, they often pass by without seeing it, and begin to shape their course Northward. They have several other Signs whereby to know when they are near it, as by the Sea-Fowl, they meet at Sea, especially the Algatrosses [Albatros], a very large long winged Bird, and the Mangovolucres [Cape Gannet], a smaller Fowl. But the greatest dependance of our *English* Seamen now is upon their observing the variation [Declination*] of the Compass, which is very carefully minded when they come near the Cape, by taking the Suns Amplitude mornings and evenings. This they are so exact in, that by the help of the Azimuth Compass, an Instrument more peculiar to the Seamen of our Nation, they know when they are abrest of the Cape, or are either to the East or West of it: And for that reason, though they should be to Southward of all the Soundings or fathomable Ground, they can shape their course right, without being obliged to make the Land. But the *Dutch*, on the contrary, having settled themselves on this Promontory, do always touch here in their *East India* Voyages, both going and coming.

The most remarkable Land at Sea is a high Mountain, steep to the Sea, with a flat even top, which is called the Table Land. On the West side of the Cape, a little to the Northward of it, there is a spacious Harbour, with a low flat Island [Robben Island] lying off it, which you may leave on either hand, and pass in or out securely at either end. Ships that anchor here, ride near the main Land, leaving the island at a farther distance without them. The Land by the Sea against the Harbour is low; but backt with high Mountains a little way in, to the Southward of it.

The Soil of this Country is of a brown colour; not deep, yet indifferently productive of Grass, Herbs and Trees. The Grass is short, like that which grows on our *Wiltshire* or *Dorsetshire* Downs. The Trees hereabouts are but small and few; the Country also farther from the Sea does not much abound in Trees, as I have been informed. The Mould or Soil also is much like this near the Harbour, which though it cannot be said to be very fat, or rich Land, yet it is very fit for cultivation, and yields good crops to the industrious Husbandman, and the Country is pretty well settled with Farms, *Dutch* Families, and *French* Refugees, for 20 or 30 leagues up the Country; but there are but few Farms near the Harbour.

Here grows plenty of Wheat, Barley, Pease, &c. Here are also Fruits of many kinds, as Apples, Pears, Quinces, and the largest Pomgranates that I did ever see.

The chief Fruits are Grapes. These thrive very well, and the Country is of later

Years so well stockt with Vineyards, that they make abundance of Wine, of which they have enough and to spare; and do sell great quantities to Ships that touch here. This Wine is like a *French* High Country White-wine, but of a pale yellowish colour; it is sweet, very pleasant and strong.

The tame Animals of this Country are Sheep, Goats, Hogs, Cows, Horses, &c. The Sheep are very large and fat, for they thrive very well here: This being a dry Country, and the short Pasturage very agreeable to these Creatures, but it is not so proper for great Cattel; neither is the Beef in its kind so sweet as the Mutton. Of wild Beasts, 'tis said, here are several sorts, but I saw none. However, it is very likely there are some wild Beasts, that prey on the Sheep, because they are commonly brought into the Houses in the night, and penn'd up.

There is a very beautiful sort of wild Ass in this Country, whose body is curiously striped with equal Lists of white and black; the Stripes coming from the Ridge of his Back, and ending under the Belly, which is white. These Stripes are two or three Fingers broad, running parallel with each other, and curiously intermixt, one white and one black, over from the Shoulder to the Rump. I saw two of the Skins of these Beasts, dried and preserved to be sent to *Holland*, as a Rarity. They seemed big enough to inclose the Body of a Beast, as big as a large Colt of a Twelvemonth old.

Here are a great many Ducks, Dunghil Fowls, *&c.* and Ostriges are plentifully found in the dry Mountains and Plains. I eat of their Eggs here, and those of whom I bought them told me that these Creatures lay their Eggs in the Sand, or at least on dry Ground, and so leave them to be hatch'd by the Sun [*sic*]. The Meat of one of their Eggs will suffice two Men very well. The Inhabitants do preserve the Eggs that they find to sell to Strangers. They were pretty scarce when I was here, it being the beginning of their Winter; whereas I was told they lay their Eggs about *Christmas*, which is their Summer.

The Sea hereabouts affords plenty of Fish of divers sorts; especially a small sort of Fish, not so big as a Herring [Harder]; whereof they have such great plenty, that they Pickle great Quantities yearly, and send them to *Europe*. Seals are also in great numbers about the Cape; which, as I have still observed, is a good sign of the plentifulness of Fish, which is their Food.

The *Dutch* have a strong Fort by the Sea side, against the Harbour, where the Governour lives. At about 2 or 300 Paces distance from thence, on the West side of the Fort, there is a small *Dutch* Town*, in which I told about 50 or 60 Houses low, but well built, with Stone-walls; there being plenty of Stone, drawn out of a Quarry close by [as in item 37].

On the backside of the Town, as you go towards the Mountains, the *Dutch East India* Company have a large House, and a stately Garden walled in with a high Stone-wall.

This Garden* is full of divers sorts of Herbs, Flowers, Roots, and Fruits, with curious spacious Gravel-walks and Arbors; and is watered with a Brook that descends out of the Mountains: which being cut into many Channels, is conveyed into all parts of the Garden. The Hedges which make the Walks are very thick, and 9 or 10 foot high: They

are kept exceeding neat and even by continual pruning. There are lower Hedges within these again, which serve to separate the Fruit-trees from each other, but without shading them: and they keep each sort of Fruit by themselves, as Apples, Pears, abundance of Quinces, Pomgranats, *&c.* These all prosper very well, and bear good Fruit, especially the Pomgranat. The Roots and Garden Herbs have also their distinct places, hedged in apart by themselves; and all in such order, that it is exceeding pleasant and beautiful. There are a great number of Negro Slaves brought from other parts of the World; some of which are continually weeding, pruning, trimming and looking after it. All Strangers are allowed the liberty to walk there; and by the Servants leave, you may be admitted to taste the Fruit: but if you think to do it clandestinly, you may be mistaken, as I knew one was when I was in the Garden, who took 5 or 6 Pomgranats, and was espy'd by one of the Slaves, and threatned to be carry'd before the Governour: I believe it cost him some Money to make his peace, for I heard no more of it. Further up from the Sea, beyond the Garden, towards the Mountains, there are several other small Gardens and Vineyards, belonging to private Men: but the Mountains are so nigh, that the number of them are but small.

The *Dutch* that live in the Town get considerably by the Ships that frequently touch here, chiefly by entertaining Strangers that come ashoar to refresh themselves; for you must give 3 *s.* or a Dollar a day for your Entertainment; the Bread and Flesh is as cheap here as in *England*; besides they buy good pennyworths of the Seamen, both outward and homeward bound, which the Farmers up the Country buy of them again at a dear rate; for they have not an opportunity of buying things at the best hand, but must buy of those that live at the Harbour: the nearest Settlements, as I was informed, being 20 miles off.

Notwithstanding the great plenty of Corn and Wine, yet the extraordinary high Taxes which the Company lays on Liquor, makes it very dear; and you can buy none but at the Tavern, except it be by stealth. There are but 3 Houses in the Town that sell strong Liquor, one of which is this Wine-House or Tavern; there they sell only Wine; another sells Beer and Mum*; and the third sells Brandy and Tobacco, all extraordinary dear. A Flask of Wine which holds 3 quarts will cost 18 Stivers, for so much I paid for it; yet 1 bought as much for 8 Stivers in another place, but it was privately, at an unlicenced House, and the person that sold it, would have been ruined had it been known; and thus much for the Country and the *European* Inhabitants.

The Natural Inhabitants of the Cape are the *Hodmodods*, as they are commonly called, which is a corruption of the Word *Hottantot*; for this is the Name [see Hottentots*, Name] by which they call to one another, either in their Dances, or on any occasion; as if every one of them had this for his Name. The Word probably hath some signification or other in their Language, whatever it is.

These *Hottantots* are People of a middle Stature, with small Limbs and thin Bodies, full of activity. Their Faces are of a flat oval Figure, of the *Negro* make, with great Eye-brows, black Eyes, but neither are their Noses so flat, nor their Lips so thick, as

[57] PINTADO BIRD from the Dutch edition of item 75.

the *Negroes* of *Guinea*. Their Complexion is darker than the common *Indians*; tho' not so black as the *Negroes* or *New Hollanders*; neither is their Hair so much frizled.

They besmear themselves all over with Grease, as well to keep their Joints supple, as to fence their half naked Bodies from the Air, by stopping up their Pores. To do this the more effectually they rub Soot over the greased parts, especially their Faces, which adds to their natural Beauty, as Painting does in *Europe*; but withal sends from them a strong Smell, which though sufficiently pleasing to themselves, is very unpleasant to others. They are glad of the worst of Kitchin-stuff for this purpose, and use it as often as they can get it.

.....

The *Hottantots* do wear no covering on their Heads, but deck their Hair with small shells. Their Garments are Sheep-skins wrapt about their Shoulders like a Mantle, with the Woolly sides next their Bodies. The Men have besides this Mantle, a piece of Skin like a small Apron, hanging before them. The Women have another Skin tucked about their Wastes, which comes down to their Knees like a Petticoat; and their Legs are wrapt round with Sheeps-guts two or three Inches thick, some up as high as to their Calves, others even from their Feet to their Knees, which at a small distance seems to be a sort of Boots. These are put on when they are green; and so they grow hard and stiff on their Legs for they never pull them off again, till they have occasion to eat them; which is when they journey from home, and have no other Food; then these Guts which have been worn, it may be, six, eight, ten or twelve months, make them a good Banquet: This I was informed of by the *Dutch*. They never pull off their Sheepskin Garments, but to louse themselves, for by continual wearing them they are full of Vermin, which obliges them often to strip and sit in the Sun two or three hours together in the heat of the day, to destroy them....

The *Hottantots* Houses are the meanest that I did ever see. They are about 9 or 10 foot high, and 10 or 12 from side to side. They are in a manner round made with small

Poles stuck into the ground, and brought together at the top, where they are fastened. The sides and top of the House are filled up with Boughs coursely wattled between the Poles, and all is covered over with long Grass, Rushes, and pieces of Hides; and the House at a distance appears just like a Hay-cock. They leave only a small hole on one side, about 3 or 4 foot high, for a door to creep in and out at; but when the Wind comes in at this door, they stop it up, and make another hole in the opposite side. They make the Fire in the middle of the House, and the Smoak ascends out of the Crannies from all parts of the House. They have no Beds to lye on, but tumble down at night round the fire.

Their Houshold Furniture is commonly an earthen Pot or two to boil Victuals, and they live very miserably and hard; 'tis reported that they will fast two or three days together, when they travel about the Country.

Their common Good is either Herbs, Flesh, or Shell-fish, which they get among the Rocks, or other places at low Water: for they have no Boats, Barklogs, nor Canoas to go a Fishing in; so that their chiefest subsistence is on Land Animals, or on such Herbs as the Land naturally produceth. I was told by my *Dutch* Landlord, that they kept Sheep and Bullocks here before the *Dutch* settled among them: and that the Inland *Hottantots* have still great stocks of Cattle, and sell them to the *Dutch* for Rolls of Tobacco: and that the price for which they sell a Cow or Sheep, was as much twisted Tobacco, as will reach from the Horns or Head to the Tayl; for they are great lovers of Tobacco, and will do any thing for it. This their way of trucking was confirmed to me by many others, who yet said that they could not buy their Beef this cheap way, for they had not the liberty to deal with the *Hottantots*, that being a priviledge which the *Dutch East India* Company reserve to themselves. My Landlord having a great many Lodgers, fed us most with Mutton, some of which he bought of the Butcher, and there is but one in the Town; but most of it he killed in the Night. the Sheep being brought privately by the *Hottantots*, who assisted in the Skinning and Dressing, and had the Skin and Guts for their pains: I judged these Sheep were fetched out of the Country, a good way off, for he himself would be absent a day or two to procure them, and two or three *Hottantots* with him. These of the *Hottantots* that live by the *Dutch* Town, have their greatest subsistance from the *Dutch*, for there is one or more of them belonging to every House. These do all sorts of servile work, and there take their Food and Grease. Three or four more of their nearest Relations sit at the Doors or near the *Dutch* House, waiting for the scraps and fragments that come from the Table; and if between meals the *Dutch* people have any occasion for them, to go on Errands, or the like, they are ready at command; expecting little for their pains; but for a Stranger they will not budge under a Stiver.

Their Religion, if they have any, is wholly unknown to me; for they have no Temple nor Idol, nor any place of Worship, that I did see or hear of. Yet their mirth and nocturnal pastimes at the New and Full of the Moon, looks as if they had some Superstition about it. For at the Full especially they sing and dance all Night, making a great noise: I Walked out to their Huts twice a these times, in the Evening, when the Moon arose above the Horizon, and viewed them for an hour or more. They seem all very busie,

both Men, Women and Children, dancing very oddly on the green Grass by their Houses. They traced two and fro promiscuously, often clapping their hands and singing aloud. Their Faces were sometimes to the East, sometimes to the West: neither did I see any motion or gesture that they used when their Faces were toward the Moon, more than when their backs were toward it. After I had thus observed them for a while, I returned to my Lodging, which was not above 2 or 300 paces from their Huts; and I hear them singing in the same manner all Night. In the grey of the Morning I walk'd out again, and found many of the Men and Women still Singing and Dancing; who continued their Mirth till the Moon went down, and then they left off: Some of them going into their Huts to sleep, and others to their attendance in their *Dutch* Houses....

As for these *Hottantots*, they are a very lazy sort of People, and tho they live in a delicate Country, very fit to be manured, and where there is Land enough for them, yet they choose rather to live as their Fore-fathers, poor and miserable, than be at pains for plenty. And so much for the *Hottantots:* I shall now return to our own affairs.

Upon our arrival at the Cape, Captain *Heath* took an House to live in, in order to recover his health. Such of his men as were able did so too, for the rest he provided Lodgings and paid their Expences. Three or four of our men, who came ashore very sick, died, but the rest, by the assistance of the Doctors of the Fort, a fine Air, and good Kitchin and Cellar Physick, soon recovered their Healths.... But we were now so few, that we could not sail the Ship; therefore Captain *Heath* desired the Governour to spare him some Men; and as I was informed, had a promise to be supplied out of the homeward bound *Dutch East India* Ships, that were now expected every day, and we waited for them. In the mean time in came the *James and Mary*, and the *Josiah of London*, bound home [as DR 2/6]. Out of those we thought to have been furnished with men; but they had only enough for themselves; therefore we waited yet longer for the *Dutch* Fleet, which at last arrived: but we could get no men from them.

Captain *Heath* was therefore forced to get Men by stealth, such as he could pick up whether Soldiers or Seamen. The *Dutch* knew our want of Men, therefore near 40 of them, those that had a design to return to *Europe*, came privately and offered themselves, and waited in the night at places appointed, where our Boats went and fetched 3 or 4 aboard at a time, and hid them, especially when any *Dutch* Boat came aboard our Ship....

About the 23d of *May* we sailed from the Cape, in the Company of the *James and Mary*, and the *Josiah*, directing our course towards the Island *Santa Hellena*.... [Downs September 16.]

Background - continued

?2/6/1691 *Defence* sailed with *James and Mary* and *Josiah*.

? 7/10 ‘Browne's’ ship arrived.

76 ‘Dr. Browne’

Transcribed from photographs of Sloane MS 1689 by courtesy of the British Museum: there is also a partial transcription by Forbes in QB of September 1951, with useful background information. From this, the MS is attributed on the spine of its binding to Dr. Edward Browne, 1644-1708, F.R.S. and Royal Physician, but since he is not known to have made any journey to the Indies it seems more probable that the journal was kept by Dr. Samuel Brown, a surgeon stationed at Madras at the end of the 17th century, who from time to time sent home collections of dried plants.

ffriday Septer the 18 ... at 6 this morning we see land from the E.b.N. to the E.S.E. and they jug'd us to bee 15 Leagues from it....

Saturday Septer the 19 ... at 6 in the morning the land bore from the N.N.E. to S.b.E.½ E. that southermost being the table Land of the Cap bonne Esperance at 12 Leagues distance....

Sunday Septer the 20 ... At 6 in the Evening the table Land of the Cape bore S.E.b.S. about 10 Leagues off....

.....

Teusday Septer the 22 ... The Captain shot this afternoon a fowl called Penguin which I dissected [described]....

.....

Thursday Septer the 24 ffair weather but the wind soe crose [?] when it did blow and at other times soe calm that wee could not get in to the road but were forc't about 1 or 2 of the Clock to cast anchor ... about 3 in ye afternoon there came a sloop [shallop] off the Master of one of the ships that lay in the road in hir and came one board of us [to give advice how best to enter]....

.....

Sunday Septer the 27 ... at 6 in the Evening the Sugger Loaf and the midle of the table Land in one bore S.E.b.S. Penguin island from S.S.E.½S.E. after 8 at night we had but whiffs of wind now and then and therfor they caus'd tow the ship into the Road where cast Anchor at 12 of the clock at night ... depth 7 Fathom hard sand.

Monday Depter the 28 ffair weather. after Dinner I went a shore wt the Captain, we saluted the Governour who invited us to dinner the next day, and then we went one board carring along with us Capt Etheringtonn and Mr Brandham his Purser, They came to the Cape in a little french bottom belonging to Holland from Maurushes [Mauritius] where the sd Captain and all his ships Companie landed safe in his Long Boat and Pinis 9 days after he had lost his ship the shrosberrie upon a bank of sand Laying by their reckoning from Carwar [Karwar] 14 Deg westward and in 16 Degrs S. Latitud: The little french ship which they came in, was sent by the Marquis de Quen [Abraham

Duquesne] for to bring ane account how Don Maskarin [Réunion] was inhabited, and what kind of ane Island De Grais is [Diego Rais, now Rodriguez], upon the last of which the said ship lost eght men. The Marquis hath a design soe soon as this litle vessel returns, to goe over wt a considerable number of french protestants to setell there and to take Don Maskarin [cf. item 74].

Tuesday Septer the 29 ffair weather all the forenoon. I went ashore wt the Captain and alsoe to the fort where the Governour lives. It is a regular pentagon without anie outworks or ditch, the Governour had din'd befor we came, but he regal'd us with crabfish, strawberries, butter, cheese and tea after dinner. He invited us to dinner the nixt day. In the Afternoon the clouds came upon the table Land and it did blow soe hard that we could not goe off. The Captain and I lay all night at one De Burs, he one a resting chair and I upon a table.

Wednesday Septer the 30 it continued to blow hard. I went with the Captain to the Governours to dinner. After dinner we took up our Lodgings at one Monsieur Einst's where wee did eat and Lay verrie well for 6 dutch skillings a day. It continued to blow hard Thursday Octor the 1 Friday Octor the 2 though all this while it was ffair weather and scarce anie clouds to be seen except those that were one the table Land.

Saturday Octor the 3d ffair and calm weather. After dinner I went one board with the Captain and came a shoar with him at night where we staid till saturday nixt being the 10 of Octor after dinner, at which time wee went one board, weighed Anchor, and went out to sea the same night to the northward of Penguin Island. The time I was ashore I gather'd the book of plants markt No. 2, some of them to the Eastward of the Fort, some betwixt the Fort and the town, and some betwixt the town and the top of the Lyon Rump, and alsoe one the sandie hills about the Gallows [Mouille Point]. It was ffair and dry weather when I gather'd them and the most part of them grow in Sandie Ground; noe fruits except Limons were ripe, though there was trees of all sorts Loaded with fruits in the Companies verrie large and prettie Garden, which trees they keep Low and besides by high hedges defend them from the wind that poures down the Hill. I was told by the intendant of the Garden Mr Henrich Bernard Oldeland [Oldenland] a German Phisician - verrie curious for Botanie, that good sarsparilla grows wild up a litle in the Countrie; that he makes scammonie 4 or 5 grains whereof purges anie ordinary man by wounding roots of a convolvolus that grows alsoe wild, that Euphorbium is made by the wounding of the root of a kind of Esula [now Euphorbia] but it hath prickles that grows alsoe wild; he let me see a little viol containing ane ounce of oyl in appearance like that of sweet almonds, and differing but a litle from it in taste being a litle acris, one drop whereof purges and vomits copiouslie but easilie, and if it chances to work to much, he told me he could stop it presentlie by giving the patient a draught of cold water, or by washing there hands or feet in cold water. This oyl is made by expression of the seeds of a kind of Ricinus that grows wild. About the Natives of the Countrie cald Hottentods: They will not work except when they are verrie hungrie for the Dutch, and soe soon as there bellie is full they leave of, and wear onlie sheep skins, the mens

cloaks coming a litle below their buttocks the womens below their Hams, the men have litle bit of skin which hangs befor their privie members, and the women a kind of apron the women have alsoe a hood like that of a Capucin made of the sam skin, and thongs of skin beat round in great aboundance wrapt about their Legs, which the men and they eat in rainie weather, or when they are in anie strait.

Munday Octor the 12.... The Women of the Hottentods carrie a bage made of skin upon their backs the men not, instead of bread they all eat roots, as that of ane arum of which I have a specimen, the roots of a kind of iris and a round root* which when roasted eats like a chasnut, I eat two or three of them the night befor I came away at my Land Lords, but had not the time the nixt day to goe out to the Countrie to see the plant. They eat noe swins flesh, have a great reverence for fire, water and several other things verrie necessarie for life, but they worship nothing that the Dutch can perceave. At new moon they make great noise dancing and singing. The men take a wife or two according as they can maintain, and discharge them again when their humours cannot suit, but if they agree the women are verrie chast and honest, withall most anxious for children because its a reproach not to have them. There are amongst them those that take care of the sick, whom the rest respect much. They use little or nothing internalie as I was told by the Intendant of the Garden, except to them who are verrie ill they give sometimes a draught of the fat of sheep melted. externalie they make great use of the same fat, and sometimes make it green with herbs, as I happen'd to see one day as I was passing by the Hutts into which they live, into one of which there was two women anointing a mans bellie who appear'd by his countenance to bee sick, with a green oyntment warmed in a shell, one of the women after they had well anointed, suckt it off of his bellie again with hir mouth this they did three or four times. when they make themselves fine they put about their necks wests [waists] and arms beads of which the women put great aboundance, and their woolie pait [pates] they dab with a past made of sheeps fat, and some black stuf upon which they stick Couries or as we call them blackiemoores teeth sometimes in the shape of a St Georges crose, sometims in other shapes; peaces of brase copper or shells. They value noe monie except it bee a skilling or a dubleke* with which they buy brandie or tobacco from the Dutch. The Language they speak is soe hard that the Dutch cannot learn it but they speak Dutch prettie well.

Teusday Octor the 13 blowing and verrie cloudie weather ... My Land Lord at the Cap told me that they gather the salt they make use [of] in vallies where the sea never coms its verrie white.

Wednesday Octor the 14 ffair weather with a fresh prosperous gail ... I eat at my Land Lords some Quinces preserv's since the last year after this maner. They cut and chop a great manie Quinces then put altogether over a moderate fire, which makes the greatest part of the pulp dissolve, after they have let it boyl a little they strain the Juice with which when cold they put up in Cask whole Quinces as they take them from the trees onlie with a Napkin wipt verrie clean, and by this means keep them from year to year, and send a great manie caske of them to Batavia.

.....

Thursday Nover the 12 blowing and cloudie weather ... I askt my Landlady at the Cape when I was there, whither she see a child of about 2 years of the sone of one of [the] slaves born. She told me she did, and that when he was born he was of a tawnie colour, but being now verrie black I askt her whither his mother had usd anie thing to change his colour, but she assur'd that she had not. I forgot till now to set this down....

Reached Surat towards the end of January 1692, *Bombay and Goa in April. The journal ends on May 8 of that year*.

[1692]
'*Nine Years' War*' *continues. English victory over French off La Hogue.*

Background - from official documents in the archives

25/2 ... a dangerous sickness is raging among whites and blacks ...

27/3 ... many, both white and black, suffering from an unknown sickness ...

22/4 Orders for ships ... But above all, no one bringing ashore the smallest quantity of brandy ... shall sell it ... nor the smallest quantity of tobacco ...

5/6 This night the North-West wind ... tore from their anchors and drove ashore the ships *Goede Hoop* and *Hogergeest*, also the English ship *Orange* ... a daredevil swam out to the *Hogergeest* with a rope around the body, by which they could use a raft whereby [blank] were saved ...

16/6 ... resolved to give the crew of the stranded ship *Orange* passage to the Fatherland in the return-fleet now here [sailed 22/6]

14/7 ... towards noon arrives ... the English ship *Samuel*, sailed from the Duyns on February 13 ... 20 soldiers, 40 sailors and 24 guns ... bound for Madras [sailed 21/7]

29/7 ... This morning came to the roads ... 5 English ships, by name *Bartly Casteel*, 60 guns and about 200 men; *Charles second*, 64 guns and 250 head; *Modena*, 66 guns and 280 men; *Samson*, 56 guns and 210 men; *Elizabeth*, 24 guns and 100 men ...

5/8 [the English ships sailed]

4/9 Resolutions [*Goede Hoop* a total wreck, to be broken up]

9/11 ... English ship *Diana* arrived ...

77 Robert Everard

His '*Three Years Sufferings ...*' *was published in the sixth volume of Churchill's 1732* '*Collection*'. *He sailed as an apprentice from the Downs in August 1686. S.Tiago. Cape not mentioned. Comoros. Bombay. Goa. Captured by natives at Madagascar: bought by an Arab trader to rescue him*, *sent to Muscat and Persia. There* (*at an unnamed port*) *picked up by* Diana *and in her to Surat and Bombay. He gives no dates*, *but see DR 9/11/92*.

About a fortnight after, we got in sight of the table land, where we were to go, and had such bad weather, that we thought we should have beaten away the lion [figurehead] off our ship's head* with the tree thereof, having lost all the rails of it before.

About four days after we had sight of land, it being the cape of *Good Hope*; and just as we were coming about the point, before we enter'd the harbour, a gun or two was fir'd from a house on the top of a hill [Lions Head] to give the town notice that there was a ship coming in; we answered them to leeward with another, as a signal of friendship. As soon as we came to an anchor, there came aboard a *Dutch* ship's boat, to know from whence we came, and what ship we were? Then we ask'd them what news in *England*, and what *Dutch* ships were there, and whither bound? They answered our questions, as we did theirs, and told us likewise that there was, besides merchant men, a *French* man of war of 50 guns, which they took from the *French*, and that she wore the *Dutch* flag, and rid admiral [*Swarte Leeuw*, previously French *Droite*]. Then we ask'd, what *English* were there last? they told us, the *Charles* the second, the *Modena*, and the *Sampson*, with one or two more, whose names I have forgot; all which sail'd out from the cape about a fortnight before we came in [*sic:* DR 5/8]. They also told us that the *Orange* [DR 5/6/92] was cast away there, by a hurricane, being loaden from the *East-Indies*, for *England*, with muslins, and many other commodities, besides great quantities of canes; and that there was a homeward bound *Dutch East-India* ship [*Goede Hoop*] cast away at the same time, of about 800 tons; and that the captain of the *Orange*, mate and purser, were on shore.

Next morning by break of day, we fired some guns, and the fort saluted us again, as also the admiral; and the day after the captain went ashore in the pinnace*, to visit the governor, but he was gone up into the country; then he went to the house where the captain of the *Orange* liv'd, and the mate and purser were there likewise, and they discours'd about the trade of the country.

The next day when the boat went ashore, I went one of the boat's crew, and saw the natives of the country, call'd *Hottentots*. They wore about their necks sheeps guts* with the dung in them, as they are taken out of the sheep; and the same about their legs, from their ankles to their knees, so that they stink like carrion, yet they would eat them in that filthy condition. They could be smelt a great way before one came near them....

Within two or three days after we were in, our captain, and the captain of the *Orange*, went up into the country [?Constantia] to the governor of the place, to get some necessaries for the ship's use, which he did, being half a barrel of pitch, and a pump can of tar, and two or three coils of ropes; and the captain of the admiral* granted us his long-boat* to moor our ship, and to fetch our water for us, for which kindness our captain allow'd them victuals, and gave them a case-bottle of arrack to drink, and so they had for every boat of water they brought aboard; and our captain gave the *Dutch* admiral a piece of *East-India* silk, flower'd with gold, for his kindness, and invited him aboard, where we welcomed him with firing of guns, at his coming on board and departure, having been treated very handsomely by our captain, whom he invited in return on board his ship, and treated him also with great civility.

We lay at the cape about six weeks to repair our ship, for we careen'd her on both

sides, and caulked her under water, and gave her, as they call it, a pair of boot-hose* tops; we likewise had the head* of the ship mended, and the lion shoar'd faster. The provisions we got there were mutton and soft bread.

Saint Helena. Ascension. Barbadoes. Northabout. Newcastle. Yarmouth. Arrived Blackwall, no dates given.*

[1693]
'*Nine Years' War*' *continues.*
Background - from official documents in the archives

27/5 This morning comes here to anchor the English ship *Benjamin*, sailed February 24 from Suratta, with 70 men and 40 guns ...

3/6 Resolutions [Decided that English ship *Amy*, two-masted, 16 guns, to be confiscated as a pirate, the crew to be sent with return-fleet: she was in Saldanha Bay in May, her passes* were not in order, and 12 men found hidden on board in addition to the declared crew of 23. She remained at the Cape for local service]

78 John Ovington
(Plate 58)

His 'Voyage to Suratt ...' was published at London in 1696: the dates are of course Old Style. There is also a French translation, Paris 1725, from which the plate 58 is taken. He sailed from Gravesend on April 14, 1689 in command of* Benjamin, *to take out the news of the 'Glorious Revolution' which put William and Mary on the English throne. Madeira. S.Tiago. Brazil. Saint Helena. He did not touch at the Cape outwards, but some of his notes are worth including: the pages are ridiculously headed 1699.*

Two days before I made the Cape of *G. Hope*, my Variation [Declination*] was 7 deg. 58 min. West. I was then in 43 deg. 27 min. East Longit.* from C. *Salvador*, being in Lat. 35 deg. 30 min. this was the first of *June*. The second of *June* I saw a large black Fowl, with a whitish flat Bill, fly by us; and took great notice of it, because in the *East-India* Waggoner or Pilot-book, there is mention made of large Fowls, as big as Ravens, with white flat Bills and black Feathers, that fly not above 30 Leagues from the *Cape*, and are look'd on as a Sign of ones being near it [Cape Hen]. My Reckoning made me then think my self above 90 Leagues from the *Cape*, according to the Longitude which the *Cape* hath in the common Sea-Charts: So that I was in some doubt, whether these

were the right Fowls spoken of in the Waggoner; or whether those Fowls might not fly farther off Shore than is there mentioned; or whether, as it prov'd, I might not be nearer the *Cape* than I reckoned my self to be; for I found, soon after, That I was not then above 25 or 30 Leagues at most from the Cape. Whether the fault were in the Charts laying down the *Cape* too much to the East from *Brazil*, or were rather in our Reckoning, I could not tell: But our Reckonings are liable to such Uncertainties from Steerage, Log, Currents, Half-Minute-Glasses*; and sometimes want of Care, as in so long a Run cause often a difference of many Leagues in the whole Account.

Most of my Men that kept Journals imputed it to the Half-Minute-Glasses; and indeed we had not a good Glass in the Ship beside the Half-watch or Two-Hour Glasses. As for our Half-Minute-Glasses we tried them all at several times, and we found those that we had used from *Brazil* as much too short, as others we had used before were long: Which might well make great Errors in those several Reckonings. A Ship ought therefore to have its Glasses* very exact; and besides, an extraordinary care ought to be used in heaving the Log....

But to return from this Digression: Having fair Weather, and the Winds hanging Southerly, I jog'd on to the Eastward, to make the *Cape*....

From my first setting out from *England*, I did not design to touch at the *Cape*; and that was one Reason why I touch'd at *Brazil*, that there I might refresh my Men, and prepare them for a long Run to *New Holland* [Batavia]. We had not yet seen the Land; but about 2 in the Afternoon we saw the *Cape-Land* bearing East, at about 16 Leagues distance....

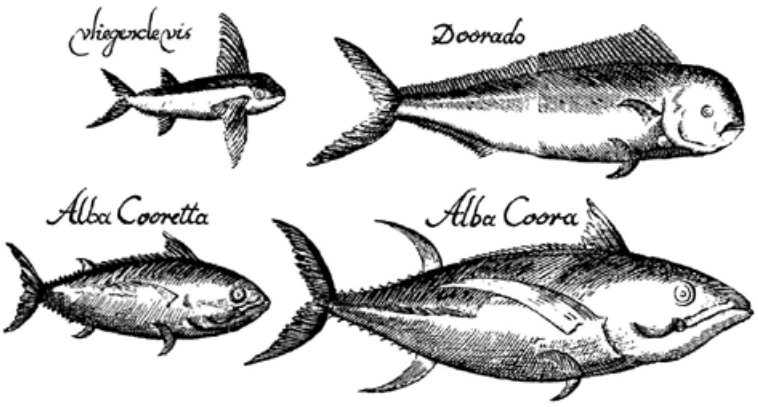
Comoros. Arrived Bombay May 25, 1690. Surat. Sailed homeward from Surat on February 14, 1693.

... We kept our Course with good Success 'till our Arrival at the *Cape*.

The Sailers have commonly notice of this Land before they Espy it, by the Soundings [Agulhas Bank] which run out sixty Leagues into the Ocean, and the Almitrosses [?Albatrosses] which is a large Sea-Fowl, and never fly very far from Land; and the Manga Voluchoes [Cape Gannet], another Sea Fowl that keeps thereabouts,...

On *May* the *16th* [DR 27/5], about ten at Night we came to an Anchor at the *Cape*, but the Commander being a Stranger in the Bay, fir'd two Guns, to signifie we were in Distress, which presently brought two *Dutch* Masters on board us, who told us that we Anchor'd in bad ground; whereupon we weighed and stood near the Shoar, and there dropt our Anchor in better.

We found in the Road ten *Dutch-East India* Ships, most of them of good Burthen, richly laden, bound for *Europe* [DR 12/6, etc.]; these staid expecting two or three more from the *Indies*, and six had sail'd a little before from thence to *Holland*. And every Year the *Dutch* Trade to the *Indies*, employs near 20 Ships, and as many return home; which with the Trade that they drive there, where they Traffick with at least an Hundred



[58] FLYING-FISH, ALBACORETTA, DORADO, ALBACORE, From the Dutch edition of item 78.

Sail, advances their Profits to some hundred Thousands, I had almost said some Millions every Year....

The Harbour here is very safe and commodious for Ships, free from all inconvenience and Danger; except it be towards mid Winter, which is there in *June*, at the Suns approaching the Tropick of *Cancer*; then the *North-West* Winds blow sometimes so very fierce, that the Ships are unable to ride against them....

All the *Holland East India* Ships, both those outward and homeward bound, touch in here for fresh Provisions, and furnish the place with plenty of all Commodities, both from *India* and *Europe*. By which means there is scarce one part of all the Tripartite Continent, that is furnisht with that abundance of Conveniences, which the *Cape* can boast of. And that I may present the Reader with a more regular Account of this famous Promontory, and give him a more methodical Idea of the place, I shall insist upon the following Description of it in this manner. First, in observing its situation, its pleasant Air, and fertile Soil. Secondly in considering the Nature and Customs of its Original Inhabitants. And thirdly, in shewing the Profit and Convenience, which this Plantation affords the *Dutch*.

First therefore the *Cape* of *Good Hope* is situated between thirty four and thirty five Degrees of *South* Latitude, and is the furthermost Tract of our Continent towards the most *Southern* part of *Africa* [*sic*], and esteem'd by all, the most Renown'd Promontory of the World....

The Neighbourhood of *Cape Bone Esperanse*, to that vast Ocean towards the *South*, cools the Air to some Degrees beyond what the proportion of that Latitude might other-

wise seem to give ... The Air however, is not scorching here for this Reason; nor very Cold, because of its nearness to the Fountain of Heat. It has no excesses, but what are tolerable to Children, nor any thing offensive to Old Age. 'Tis temperate and sweet, healthful and pleasant; and is very agreeable to the Constitution of the *Dutch*, as well as the Natives, to whom it gives Activity and Vigour. It quarrels with no kind of natural Temper, and cherishes all sorts of Animals, as well as Plants. Nor did I ever know any that had been in this Paradise of the World, who denied it the Character of one of the loveliest Regions they had ever seen.

And this fair Country which the Blacks inhabit, is blest with a Soil as pregnant as the Days are pleasant, and prepar'd for any Improvements. Beeves and Sheep, Hogs and Goats feed here upon the Herbage of the Field, which makes them flesht, and very well tasted. And all those sorts of Grain which are proper for Food, or for making strong Drink, thrive here, and grow in that plenty, that no part of *Europe* can abound with them more. Which is all to be ascrib'd to the indefatigable Diligence and Industry of the *Dutch*, who being forc'd to a good Husbandry of the Ground by the scantiness which they live upon at home, continue their thrifty Cultivating humour, when they are remov'd to a Soil where they may Cultivate what quantity they please; for they are a People remarkable for Improvements, for their commendable Pains and Care where ever they Inhabit.

But here grows the fruitful Vine, as well as the Wheat and the Barley, and the *Dutch* delight themselves in the double variety both of *French* and *English* Liquors, of Beer and Wine of their own growth, with the sprightly Juice of the one, and the healing Oily quality of the other. The Rivers and Ponds are full of Fish, of great variety and very delicate. The Country is cover'd with Woods and Forests, which abound with store of Beasts and Fowls, as Deer, Antelopes, Baboons, Foxes, &*c.* Ostriches, whose Eggs are transported to various Countries, Herons, Partridges, Feasants, Pelicans, Geese, Ducks. Tygers and Lions are very numerous, and so bold, that they range sometimes within Gun-shot of the Fort, and for that reason seldom return back, and do often prey upon the Cattle, for which cause they are kept within shelter in the Night....

The next description which I come to, *Secondly*, is of the Ancient Inhabitants of this Promontory, in what relates to their Nature and Customs. They retain the vulgar name of *Hotantots*, because of their constant repetition of that word in their hobling Dances [see Hottentots*, Name].

There is a vast difference between the nature of these People that dwell upon this place, and the Country they inhabit; for of all parts this affords a Dwelling most neat and pleasant, and of all People they are the most Bestial and sordid. They are the very Reverse of Human kind ... so that if there's any medium between a Rational Animal and a Beast, the *Hotontot* lays the fairest Claim to that Species. They are sunk even below Idolatry, are destitute both of Priest and Temple, and saving a little show of rejoicing, which is made at the Full and the New Moon; have lost all kind of Religious Devotion. Nature has so richly provided for their convenience in this Life, that they have drown'd all sense of the God of it, and are grown quite careless of the next.

They are more Tawny than the *Indians*, and in Colour and Features come nearest the *Negroes* of any People, only they are not quite so Black, nor is their Cottony Hair so Crisp, nor their Noses altogether so flat....

The *Hotantots* are as squalid in their Bodies, as they are mean and degenerate in their Understandings. For they are far from being Curious either in their Food or Attire, any further than what they find Nature reaches forth to them. They think it a needless Toil to spend time in dressing of the Hides of Bulls, or in Spinning and Weaving the Wool of Sheep, for Ornaments and Covering to their Bodies. They are satisfied with the same wrought Garments that Nature has clad the Sheep with, and therefore without more Labour or Art, they take them from the Backs of the Sheep, and put them presently upon their own, and so they walk with that Sheep-Skin Mantle about their Shoulders, or sometimes thrown like a Hood over their Heads, which seem to be the Ancientest Garments, according to *Gen*. 2. 21. *unto* Adam *and his Wife did the Lord make Coats of Skins*. They generally turn the Wool inwards, that the outside of the Garment may defend them from Rain, and the inside from the impressions of Cold. The Ornaments about their Heads are small Shells, or little pieces of Lead or Iron fasten'd to their friz'ld Hair, or put into their Ears. The Hair of their Heads, and of all their Bodies are besmear'd with Kitchin-Grease, tho' never so stinking and Loathsome, which when dissolv'd and heated by their Bodies, sends from thence such an unsavoury Smell, as may be scented at a Furlongs distance, and nearer hand it never fails of a strong Emetick to a weak Stomach. Stinking Grease is their sweet Oil, and the Dust of the Streets the Powder of their Hair. They anoint their Bodies to render their Nerves supple and active, and to fortifie the Pores against the violence of the ambient Air. For they are both nimble and swift of Foot, and of Courage to outface and worst a Lion. Before their Nakedness hangs a small Skin about a foot broad, tied by a string about their middle, which the motion of their Bodies, or of the Air sometimes turns aside.

The Apparel of the Women upon the upper part of the Body is the same with the Men's; but round their Legs are twisted Sheeps Guts two or three Inches thick, which are serviceable upon a double account, both for Food and Ornament. The Guts, which are made more savoury by the Dirt which sticks to them, affords them as good a Meal as the Flesh of the Sheep, and are eaten with as good a Gusto.

The Huts they dwell in, which are made of Bul-Rushes, or Branches of Trees, are fashion'd round almost like a Bee-hive, reaching about five Foot high, and nine broad, with a small Passage in the side to creep in at, and a Hole in the middle for the Fire.

They disallow Polygamy in all, but in their Chief, who may entertain three Wives at once. And the kind Wives, after the Death of every Husband, if they Marry again, cut off a Joint from the little Finger*, and proceed to the Middle, if they Bury many. The same is imitated by some fond Indulgent husbands, but on neither of them is there any incumbent necessity, only as they are led by Humour at those Times.

The Male Children at Eight or Ten Years of Age, are Cut in their Privy Parts, and depriv'd of one of their Testicles*. The same is likewise done at *Cape Comoron*, for

increasing their Valour and Activity. But here, I believe upon another Score, *viz*. For prevention of a too Luxuriant Increase by Generation; because when their Children Increase beyond their Desires, and the just number which they design, to prevent a heavier Charge upon the Parents, they dispatch the Supernumeraries to the other World, without any Remorse for the horrid Crime, or Consciousness of the execrable Sin of Murther, which is the Reason, I presume, of the *Hotantot's* losing part of their Virility, that they may debilitate that Native Heat, which powerfully prompts them to Propagation....

There is a vulgar Opinion which has formerly been receiv'd, that the Natives of this *Cape* were *Hermophradites*, which was founded only upon Conjecture; for two Gentlemen, who were resolv'd not to be liable to this Errour, assur'd me the Report was false, upon the Curiosity they had of knowing the Reason of it, which was because the Female Parts were cut in the fashion of small Teats hanging down [see 'Apron*'].

Those that can be induc'd to labour, and undergo any Toil among the *Hotantots*, are made Slaves of by the *Dutch*, and imploy'd in all servile Drudgeries. But their Native Inclination to Idleness and a careless Life, will scarce admit of either Force or Rewards for reclaiming them from that innate Lethargick humour.

Their common Answer to all Motives of this kind, is, that the Fields and Woods afford plenty of Necessaries for their Support, and Nature has Amply provided for their Subsistence, by loading the Trees with plenty of Almonds, which grow in the Forests, and yield them food; and by dispersing up and down many wholsome Brooks and pure Rivolets to quench their Thirst. So that there is no need of Work, when such innocent Diet offers it self daily without Pains, and on which they can live without Care. And Thus many of them idly spend the Years of a useless restive Life. But the Governour of the Fort, and several *Dutch* Inhabitants of the Town prevail upon some of them, and make Converts of them to labour and hardships....

The *Third* thing observable at the *Cape*, was the Profit and Advantage which that Plantation affords the *Dutch*. As this Climate is most delightful, and the Native Turf capable of producing any thing that may administer either to the Exigence or Delight of Man; so is it suited with the greatest convenience imaginable to the important Negotiations of the *Dutch*, whose Ships that Design for *India*, and those that return from thence to *Holland*, are refresht here with all Conveniencies, as in the mid-way between those two distant Regions ... The Refugees of *France*, who are received here with the same priviledge the *Dutch* enjoy, acknowledge the happiness of their Transportation; and boast that their Misfortunes are turn'd into their Felicity, since they are blest here with peaceable Dwellings and kind Accommodations, who had not formerly where in safety to lay their Heads.

The Encouragements of such as come hither to Cultivate the Land for their own Livelihood and Benefit of the grand Proprietors, is thus stated, as I understood it. Those that design to settle here, are allow'd their Transportation from *Holland* gratis. After their Arrival they are invited to range and view the Country, and survey such parts as lie wild and unmanur'd, where they may choose such a Portion as they fancy they are

able to stock and Manure, and will yield them a Commodious settlement for their Families. This is to be a Patrimony intail'd upon their Children, without any Rent or other Acknowledgment to the *Dutch East India* Company, but the Sale of their Goods to the Governour, and at his Price. This by the way presses hard upon the Tenants and keeps them under by running the chief Profits of what they possess into the Company's hands. The Governour and Council agree with the Country-man for his Goods and Cattle at a very low rate, and sell them again to the Ships that put in there, as dear as they please; because all Men are restrain'd from vending any Commodities to Strangers without the Council's leave. But however the Industrious Planters want neither plenty of Wine for their Tables, nor variety of Tame and Wild Fowls for their ordinary Entertainments, of which they have often rather too much Store than any Scarcity, because the Company has no occasion for them, and therefore they lie dead upon their Hands. Some upon this account quit the place, and very few of any Substance but easilier may increase their Goods than their Treasure.

Those whose Poverty renders them unable to stock their Land, the Kindness of the Governour provides with Necessaries 'till their Abilities can reach a Payment. Which has mightily increased the number of Inhabitants within a few Years. For whereas about nine Years since, they could scarce reckon above four or five Hundred Planters, they can now number almost as many Thousands; abundance of whom were sent hither by the *French* Persecution, who are much delighted with the Convenience of their Dwelling.

They have stretcht their Plantations in the Country above seventy five *English* Miles, and see still a vast space of untill'd Land before them. In this District they rear their Cattle, sow their Corn, plant Vines, and sedulously improve all things of worth to the best advantage. So that within the Revolution of a few Years, many valuable Commodities will be Exported thence, to the other Quarters of the Universe. Their very Wines, in which they will suddenly increase both to a great plenty and variety, are now able to supply their Ships, and to furnish the *Indies* with some quantity, where they sell it by the Bottle at a Roupie. 'Tis Colour'd like Rhenish, and therefore they pass it under that specious Name in *India*, but the Taste of it is much harder and less palatable; its Operations are more searching, and the strength of it more intoxicating and offensive to the Brain.

The Impositions which are laid upon Wine and other Liquors that are sold by Retail, seem almost incredible, especially when the small number of people that are presum'd to drink them, is consider'd. For in the Town* of the *Cape* are not reckon'd above 500 Inhabitants, besides those that are brought in Ships and come out of the Country; and yet the Annual Impost upon *Europe* Beer and Wine is four thousand Gilders; upon *Cape* Wine four thousand one hundred; and Brandy, Arak, and distill'd Water, pay twenty Thousand Gilders Yearly to the Governour of the place for a License to sell them. All which Taxes summ'd together, make up about twenty eight Thousand Gilders Yearly, which according to our Accounts, raise between two and three Thousand Pounds, for the liberty of selling Liquors by Retail. This exorbitant Fine upon the Taverns

and Tipling Houses makes them exact extravagant Rates from the Guests that drink the Liquor, who are indeed the People that pay it. For he that resolves to drink Brandy must pay at the rate of ten Shillings a Bottle for it; and the *Cape* Wine which in the Cask is sold for less than six Pence a Quart, is in the Tavern half a Crown, and such proportionably are the excessive Prices of the rest. A tame submission is the only Remedy for these Impositions, from which there is no Appeal or Relief, which is apt to imbitter the Lives of the People, nor can any be very happy, who are subject to the Tyranny of a Government that is under no Restraint....

The Governour of the *Cape*, *Min Heer Simon Vanderstel*, labours much in Improvements and Accommodations for the inhabitants and Sea-men, and to render it valuable to the Company. The Sailers are well furnisht with fresh Water and fresh Provisions; and in the Bay is caught great store of Fish, which is Pickled and put up in Barrels, and sent home instead of Pickled Herrings [Harders]. The Watering for Ships is contriv'd with such Convenience, that it is scarce equalled by any in the World. For from the Mountains are convey'd in narrow Channels clear Water down to the Shoar, from whence in Leaden Pipes it is carried above forty Foot in the Sea, and there rais'd so high above its Surface, that the Ships Long-Boats* can row under the Pipes, and fill their Vessels with much Ease.

The fam'd Garden* abundantly supplies the Ships with variety of Roots and green Herbs, which contribute not a little to the Health, and even preservation of Life, in these tedious *Eastern* Voyages. Here is that variety of Excellent Fruits, of Pulse and Roots, which either *Europe*, of *Asia* afford. Here are those large Walks, those stately Hedges, and Alleys of Cypres, and Beds of Flowers, which make it Beautiful and Pleasant as the Garden of a Prince, and useful as that of a Peasant. The Conveniencies it abounds with may denominate it a Kitchin Garden, but its Delights a Garden of Pleasure. It is of large Extent, at some distance from the high Mountains, but cut out upon a rising Hill, water'd with pure Springs descending from the Mountains, which make their Passage thro' various Channels that are cut out in every Quarter. The Garden in all its Walks is kept so very neat and clean, that even in the Winter Season, scarce a Leaf is seen upon the Ground. The Trees are Curiously Prun'd, and the Hedges Trim'd with such exactness, that no one irregular Excrescence appears. or Branch shooting out beyond his Fellow. Much of the Fruit in it comes to maturity twice a Year, and many Trees by their nearness to the Sun, are verdant and Beautiful all the Year. Three and Thirty Slaves, besides *Europeans*, are daily imploy'd in looking after it. This forc'd a Confession, even from the *Jesuits*, in their *Siam Voyage*, of allowing it an equality, if not precedence, to their most celebrated Gardens they had in *France* [item 55 etc.].

That the Inhabitants might be subject to no surprisal from any Enemies nigh their Plantations, the Governour with a few Attendants and Victuals necessary for such an Enterprize, travell'd by Compass for several Weeks, to find its Northerly bounds and Situation, 'till he was stopt by impassible Mountains, which forc'd a Return from any farther progress that way. In this Journey he travell'd over vast Tracts of Land, very

fit for Agriculture, but all Waste and Untill'd; and was very well satisfied that those inaccessible heights of Mountains which he saw, would stand as immoveable Bulwarks against all In-land Invasions; so that nothing was to be dreaded, but Attacks upon them from the Sea.

For their Defence from any Onsets by Water, is built a strong Fort* near the Sea, with Bastions and Guns mounted for its security, and Officers and Souldiers to guard it from an Enemy. 'Tis beautified with stately Convenient Lodgings within; as well as fortified without.

Near the Fort is a small Town* consisting of about an Hundred Houses; strong and neatly built with Stone Walls and pretty Apartments.

The present Governour, who lives with his Council in the Fort, is a very kind and knowing Person, is maintain'd in Grandeur, and lives Honourably. His publick Table wants no plenty either of *European* or *African* Wines, or *Asian* Liquors; and whatever the Land or Waters, or Air affords in that place, is serv'd up in his bountiful Entertainments. To Complete the Magnificence of which sumptuous Fare, all the Dishes and Plates upon the Board are made of Massy Silver. And before the departure of their Fleets, the *Dutch* Commanders are all invited to a publick Repast, where they Drink and Revel, bouze and break Glasses, what they please; for these Frolicks are the very life of a Skipper; and the Governour by indulging these Wild licentious Humours, ingratiates with them more, than by any thing else he could devise.

Sailed June 2 [*DR 12/6*]. *July 4 Ascension. Gravesend December 5*, *1693*.

Background - continued

12/6/1693 ... sailed the ships *Berkel*, *'t Hov van Ilpendam*, *Sirjansland*, *Pampus*, *Oosthuysen*, *Voorschoten*, *Purmer*, *Oosterland*, *Schiebroek*, *Emenes* and the English ship *Benjamin* ...

23/10 Resolutions ... since foreign and especially English ships ... frequently manage to carry away with them Servants of the Company, as also freemen and their servants [see 'Lent*'] ... resolved to order the freemen that in future they shall not sell or barter to such ships ... corn, whether ground or not, wine, firewood, sheep or any other four-legged beasts ... but refer them to the Market ... and on pain of death shall not tell the folk of foreign ships ... that such goods as they ask for are readily available ...

[1694]
'*Nine Years' War*' *continues.*
Background - from official documents in the archives

5/5 ... The English ship *Charles Second*, commanded by Capn Robbert Dorrell, here in July 1692 in her outwards passage, again returns to the roads this evening to refresh, having in her 170 men, mounted with 60 guns, sailed February 12 from Bengalen homewards: had 5 dead on the journey and brings 12 sick ashore ...

7/5 The English ship *Modena*, 180 men and 54 guns, sailed February 21 New Style* from Suratte ... reaching the roads this evening, having been here in July 1692 ... 3 dead ... no sick ...

22/5 ... the English ship *Samson* under Robben Island ...

24/5 ... comes to the roads ... 110 men and

40 guns ... having sailed on February last 21 New Style* from Madras ... 3 dead ... no sick ...

27/5 ... came safely to anchor ... the ship *Drie Croonen* ... sailed from Texel January 7 with the ships *Sparen*, *Meresteyn*, *Handboogh*, *Waalstrom*, *Schulp* and the hooker* *Roscam* ... Northabout* ... 23 dead, and brings 22 sick ...

28/5 ... the Fiscaal* went aboard ... the usual placaat announced and affixed [cf. 22/4/92 etc.]

1/6 At dawn comes here to the roads the English Comp's ship *Samuel*, with [blank] men and 24 guns, having sailed on February 11 from Madras ...

2/6 This morning the English ships *Charles Second*, *Modena*, *Samson* and *Samuel* unexpectedly set sail ...

5/6 [Mentioned as in the return-fleet in the roads *Nigtevegt*, *Nieuwland*, *Etersham*, *Agatha*]

12/6 ... the ships *Nigtevegt*, *Nieuwland*, *Etersham*, *Agatha* weighed anchor and set sail [delayed by wind at Robben Island to 16/6]

14/6 ... comes to the roads the ship *Meeresteyn* ... sailed January 7 ... from Texel with 236 paid men ...

17/6 ... *Drie Croonen* and *Meeresteyn* being made ready for an early departure ...

1/7 [575 in garrison* plus 66 in frigate* (previously 'yacht*') *Swarte Leeuw*, 116 in yacht *Tamboer*, 14 in galliot* *De Haen* ...

7/7 ... *Meresteyn* under sail ...

79 Christoffel Langhansz

Translated from his 'Neue Ost-Indische Reise ...' Leipzig 1715, an unusual account among the many published, and reflecting the unusual character of the writer. For one thing, he was 'soldier and sailor too', acquiring enough seamanship during his voyages to pass for Mate, and in this capacity (he tells us) making several voyages after the one here described, to Spain, Portugal, the Ionian Islands and Greenland. As a result his book is unusually informative on the seafaring side, and as such usefully supplements De Graaff's 'Ost-Indische Spiegel' (QB March and June 1964, June 1965).

Again, he was on old hand, having served several previous engagements; and like old hands everywhere he was an expert wangler. He got himself taken on as a soldier at Amsterdam ahead of the crowd by bribing a porter to let him in by the exit-door; he grabbed the best place for his hammock on board, 'near the main hatch, where I would be warm in the cold weather and cool in the heat'; he made friends with the Captain and 'did little of the work aboard'; he got himself extended shore-leave at the Cape; he learned all about smuggling brandy and tobacco ashore at the Cape, and how to get drinks at illegally low prices; he managed his discharge after little more than one year instead of the regulation five; on his return-passage he found himself a soft job as Steward to the Merchant in charge of the fleet, and so had plenty of food and little work; he got two chests of porcelain through the V.O.C. Customs (instead of the one allowed with goods to the value of four months' pay) by paying a homecomer with no chest to pass one through as his, and by asserting that he had been out for ten years, with the result that he sold for 80 Rxd. what*

had cost him 40 (*but he would have made 1200 per cent.*, *he adds sadly*, *had he brought tea instead*).

Most of his notes on the Cape are his own: in others he unfortunately follows Meister (*items 38*, *68*) *errors included. Practically all he has to say on the Hottentots is from Meister*, *who on this subject echoes Schreyer* (*item 21*) *- yet another example of how Schreyer permeates early Cape descriptions*, *either directly or* (*as here*) *indirectly*.

He sailed from Texel on January 4, *1693* (*Hague codex 4390 has 7/1*) *in* Drie Kronen, *with* Mehrenstein, Wahlstroom, Handbogen. *His ship new: sailing-qualities tested in detail. Storm*, *fleet scattered*, *the two last-named must put back to Texel. His Ship's Council* decided to go on alone. Northabout*. Abrolhos*, *thanksgiving and feast. 30 sick of scurvy: in all 38 deaths before Batavia. Longitude* by compass-bearings of rising or setting sun*, *very fully*.

... signs of the Cabo de bona Esperanza, as follows: Firstly, we saw various Cape-birds [Cape Gannet], seen nowhere but near this outermost corner of Africa. They are as large as geese, with black and white feathers, and never go more than 50 miles out to sea. For the rest, they are in all ways like the gulls or seabirds, and the Dutch jokingly call them crimps*. Secondly, we saw Trombas floating in the sea [described]. Thirdly, one looks out for the clouds*, since two small white ones always float over the Table Mountain, one somewhat larger than the other, although this last has already often deceived many. When these signs are seen, it is known that the Cabo is quite near, and therefore the sailors keep a sharp lookout, knowing that there is something to be gained, in that the first who sights land and calls this out is given a new hat, a ducatoon*, and a flask of brandy. [Danger of running ashore there.] We sighted the land very clearly towards evening, but since we could not enter the harbour by day, we took in our topsails and drifted under the mainsail, tacking a couple of times until the night was past and we could sail into the harbour or Bay. So after we had been 4 months and 20 days from Holland, on May 26 [DR 27/5] we ran into the Bay between the Robben and the Taschen Islands, and after firing the usual salutes came to anchor not far from the Castle in 18 fathoms, the Castle welcoming us with 3 guns.

As soon as we had dropped our bower anchor*, our Skipper and Book-keeper went ashore with our letters. [Methods of anchoring at the Cape.]

As soon as the Skipper returned on board, he ordered the sick, some thirty in number, to be taken ashore to the Hospital*, as also the Under-Surgeon. This being done, we set to work to clean the ship well, and the yards were lowered so that everything could be looked to and bettered. All the ports of the ship were opened, and where the men had lain during the voyage was sprinkled with vinegar, and all was made ready to take in fresh water and firewood for our further journey. After this the watches could go ashore in turns to amuse themselves; but I, who in any case did little of the work aboard and was a good friend of the Skipper, managed to go ashore with the first party and stay there until we sailed, so that during this time I had a good chance to see the

place....

Over against the sea is a very high hill, called the Table Mountain because it is flat on top, above which there are always two small unmoving clouds all the year. Somewhat to the north and near the Table Mountain is another, called the Devil's Hill: these two lie close together below, so that they could be taken for one hill, but from the sea the two can be clearly distinguished. Somewhat southerly from the Table Mountain is another hill, longer and lower, called for its shape the Lion Hill, and this protects the Bay or Harbour from the sea to the South. In front, at the entrance to the harbour, lies an island, called by the Dutch Robben Island because of the many sea-dogs or 'Robben' that are found there. On this island those who have somewhat offended must burn lime from the sea-shells [*sic:* collect shells for lime to be burnt on shore]. More to the north, or more towards the land, lies another island, called the Taschen [Dassen] Island. Below the Table Mountain the Dutch have a strong and well-built Fort* with 5 bastions, built of large blocks from a quarry* near the Cape. On the landwards side it has a fine and deep moat, and in it are 3 to 400 men in garrison*. It has one gate only, within and opposite which is built the Church*, and next to this the Governor's house, as also some storehouses and other houses for the officers. On the sea-point bastion [Katzenellenbogen] stands a flagstaff three pike-lengths tall, on which a Dutch flag is hoisted when ships come in. Up on the Lion Hill another such stands, with 4 small guns, and when they sight ships at sea they fire shots from there, and hoist and lower the flag as many times as there are ships sighted; and also they hoist the same flag* as that worn by the ships, so that those in the Castle and town can know how many ships are arriving, and of what nationality [*sic*: see s.v. Lions* Head].

About 100 paces from the Castle towards the Lion Hill is a town* of some 70 houses, most of them inhabited by Dutch and Germans, who have all their living from the ships that touch, by taking as boarders those who come ashore, these paying ⅛ Rxd. ['Reichsort'] for a meal. They also do a secret trade with the 'Bahren', as those coming out from Holland are called, whereas those coming from the Indies are called 'Orlammi'*. From the former they get especially brandy and tobacco, since both these are declared contraband here by the Company, and a Fiscaal* is set here who keeps a sharp eye on this through his slaves, called Caffers - but nevertheless this trade is practised ashore secretly to an extent that can scarcely be imagined, nor in what ways they trick the Fiscaal and his inspectors.

When the wind is at S.E. it often blows so strongly and for so long that for several days no one can go from shore to ship nor from ship to shore, so that those who are ashore and have spent all their money must give to these folk for their lodging the clothes that they have brought from Holland, and often go aboard in a linen shirt and linen trousers. These clothes are sold again pretty dear by the inhabitants to those who come from the Indies and are bound for Holland, so that they get a double profit on them.

Also, although there is an abundant production of wine, and plenty of it to be had, these folk may sell no other drinks but a beer made from sugar*: wine, brandy, arrack or

Indian brandy, as also Brunswick mumme* may be sold only in the taverns or inns of the Company. Of these there are two in the town, one selling only wine grown here at the Cabo, a flask of half a pot [‘halbe Topf-flasche’] costing ¾ Rxd., and the other selling brandy, arrack and mumme, an ordinary wine-glass of brandy costing 3 groschen or a Dutch schilling, such a glass of arrack one groschen or a Dutch two-stiver piece, and a half-pot flask of mumme ½ Rxd. Those who have rented these houses from the Company must pay heavy taxes, and since they alone may sell such drinks publicly they can do pretty well when many ships touch. But one can also get secretly from the Freemen (those living here who are not in the Company's service) a flask of wine for ⅛ Rxd. or half the price of the taverns, but this they must do secretly to avoid heavy punishment. The food one has from these Freemen is mostly mutton, which is very fat; also beef, which however is not so good. The mutton costs them little, since as I saw myself my host had two Hottentots always living by him: these went off by night and brought a sheep to the house by night, from one herd or another, and for their pains and the sheep they got a piece of tobacco as long as two fingers, together with the guts and skin of the sheep, which seemed cheap enough to me. Since they can buy things so cheaply they should not charge so much for the meals. With the meat they cook either sweet potatoes (almost like our turnips), or green cabbage, which also is very cheap. Also, since so much corn grows here, bread is cheaper than we have it at home, so that it is no wonder that the Freemen at the Cabo so quickly become rich. Also those Germans who live here are far more selfish and avaricious than the Dutch, so that it is better to take lodging with a Dutchman than with a German.

There are also other Freemen here who were set here only some few years ago and began to cultivate the land, most of them having been driven out of France; and since in France they were accustomed to vine-growing they have begun this here, and in a few years have brought it so far that in their houses a half-pot flask of wine, in my opinion as good as the best of the French wines, can be bought for 1 Dutch schilling or 3 groschen; and without doubt if the Company did not set such a heavy tax or excise on it, it would be even cheaper, since no Freeman is allowed to sell his wine except to the Company or to the Monopoly-holder to whom the Company has leased it. For this reason you must not say that they sold you their wine, but rather that they gave it to you from politeness. And since these folk have found good and fertile land, they have built various outlying farms even 3 or 4 miles inland [say 15 English; but Fransch Hoek where most of the Huguenots first settled, is fully 30 miles, even as the crow flies], so that now agriculture is carried out by them with great zeal, and bread and wine are cheaper than at home; indeed if more folk could have leave to settle there, a very fruitful and populous land could be made from a wilderness. But it seems as if the Dutch Company will not allow this, in their own interest. I visited these folk several times in their dwellings, whose only complaint was that they had not enough people to do the work, and that this was too much for them alone, especially the growing of wheat.

Below the Table Mountain the Company has a fine Garden, which is well worthy

of mention. It is about 1,000 roods [*sic:* read 'yards'] long and 300 wide, surrounded by a wall a pike-length high, and in it are found the loveliest and rarest fruits and flowers of the Indies. The avenues are made of fine laurel-hedges a pike-length high and 2 ells thick, which are continually trimmed by the slaves working there. The ornamental flower-bushes are set around with rosemary, which grows in hedges like our red-currant bushes, and are diligently trimmed. It would take too long to tell of all the flowers and fruit-trees even if I were to mention them only briefly. In a word, all the fruit to be found in the Indies are cultivated here as far as possible. Herr [Simon] von Stell, who was Governor when I was there, had also had made various grottos and fountains, which however were not yet completed. [Comparison with European Gardens.]

I leave this matter, and pass to the real inhabitants, called Hottentots. These folk (although they are for the most part rather to be considered as animals) which dwell here at the Cabo, the extreme end of Africa, are called Hottentots. They are well-proportioned folk, the men somewhat taller than the women. Their colour is not quite black, but by their frequent and excessive smearing they make themselves so black and stinking that their equal is not to be found among all the black nations. Their hair is short and curly, like sheepswool, their lips are thick and projecting, the nose wide and flattened, but the body (as said) well proportioned; and by the so-much smearing they become so agile that they would not yield place to any horse. The fat with which they smear themselves cannot be too stinking but that it is preferred by them, so that they can be smelt further than they are seen. Their clothing is as lovely as their bodies. Their heads are bare, but so that these may not lack ornament they hang in their woolly hair sea-shells, bits of lead or tin and other such: also they have holes in their ears in which they hang large rings of iron or lead, whereby they feel themselves well adorned. For clothing both men and women wear a sheepskin around the shoulders, the wool towards the body, which they call 'Carotze', and which is as full of vermin as if it were powdered with them; and this clothing or cloak is their bed and blanket. Before their privities they have a little piece of fur, made fast to two thongs bound around the body. The women wind around their arms and legs the guts of sheep with the dung and dirt in them, which also become alive with vermin like their Carotzes or cloaks, so that one can well believe that this clothing must smell as sweetly as they themselves.

When ships come into the harbour they do their best to come aboard with one boat or another, and when this succeeds, they go at once to the galley and beg the cook for grease or fat, however black and stinking it may be, and smear and anoint themselves quite openly with this from top to toe, including even that which God has made it natural to be kept hidden. Such smearing is indeed a habit among all East-Indian peoples, but not all use such stinking fat as these: in India they smear themselves with the oil of the coconut, especially their long hair, which thereby becomes as thick and strong as horsehair, and this oil keeps them as black as pitch, the colour which they prefer above all others. The first day when we were come into the harbour three came aboard with our shallop*, two men and a woman, and filled the whole ship with their stink. If one

gave the men a scrap of tobacco they danced and leapt and called therewith Hot: Hot: Hot:; and both men and woman pushed their Carotzes aside and let their privities be seen, and called out repeatedly 'de Dieber hal de Domine van Hammerfoort, Hammerfoort', 'The Devil take the Dominee of Hammerfort', which no doubt they had learned from the sailors [see Index s.v. Hammerfort]. For such dishonest dancing they got tobacco enough, and put it in a little bag which they had hanging on the front of their necks.

The houses, or rather huts in which they live well befit their life and clothing; and just as they have no tailors to make their clothes so also they need no masons or carpenters to build their houses, since they can make them for themselves. The start of their building is a long stake or pole [*sic:* no central pole was used] thrust into the ground, 9 or 10 feet high, and around this they push into the earth thin and flexible stakes, and then bind these together at the top so that the hut is about 12 feet in circumference. These they then cover with grass or reeds, and above these beast-skins. As a door they leave a hole in it about 4 feet high, but this they change now and then according to the direction of the wind. At night they make a fire and all lie around it, with all their feet towards it: the smoke gets out everywhere, since such construction is not too airtight, and so they lie like dogs together. When one sees such a palace from afar it could be taken for a haycock, since from a distance they look not unlike these. There is no policy or order to be found among these people, far less do they have a King, but they remain thus together in the country, where they dwell in groups and rear cattle, these being their only work and nourishment. He who has the most cattle and is somewhat elderly is their chief, whom all the others must obey as their servants. Also even if one kills another, there is no one to take revenge, unless the children of the victim do this. If they quarrel or are at loggerheads among themselves they come together in disorderly arrays to fight. Their arms or weapons are a lance and a club: some also have a bow, but their best weapons are stones. Each group chooses one as a leader, who must previously have already shown proof of his bravery. When they thus come together, they first throw stones in great numbers until they have no more, and then use their bows and lances, although usually all ends without bloodshed. The victory is that one group must yield the field to the other, and thus has lost the cause for which they fought.

Their speech is so unusual and crooked that it cannot be compared with any other. When they speak somewhat rapidly together it sounds like the clucking of turkeys when annoyed. And since they know nothing of reading and writing, nor of any alphabet or letters, it is somewhat unusual for anyone to learn their language, although this is not entirely impossible but can be done in time. In the Indies I voyaged with a certain Reinhart Jansen, the Steward's Mate in the ship *Java*, who in his outward voyage to the Indies was wrecked with his ship *Stavern S* [*Stavenisse**] about 100 miles from the Cape, being one of 18 who got ashore. Of these most decided to make their way by land to the Cape, but were all killed; but this Reinhart Jansen and 2 others remained with the Hottentots, and only after 3 years had the chance to escape from them. When he came

to the Cape and the Castle, entirely alone since both his companions had died, he looked like nothing else than a Hottentot, except for his hair which he had singed off, and the log of the aforesaid ship which he brought with him. He spoke good Hottentot, and told me of various of their customs, and among these how they were accustomed to marry, which was done as follows: When anyone had reached agreement with the parents, he then asked the girl, and if she said Yes, he threw a thick cowgut* around her neck as the tie of married love, and this she wore until it fell off of itself. Also that no one took more than one wife. In youth the left testicle of each boy is cut away, from which it results that they do not have many children, five at the most. And since Nature has marked them in a somewhat exceptional manner, I hope that the reader will not take it amiss that I reveal this. Without doubt it will be known to all who have been to the Indies and seen this Cape, how for a scrap of tobacco they show everything that God has ordained should be kept secret. The sexual organ of the man is unusually large, like that of a young bull, whereas the women have over their privities a little flap of flesh [see 'Apron*'] as long as a finger, such as turkeys have over their beak, which covers the rest; and just as they differ in their bestial life from other men, so also Nature has marked them off in this manner. When a woman has given birth to her child she goes at once with it to the water, or to the seashore, and washes herself, but otherwise observes no six-week lying-in, but it is as if a 'Good Morning' for her. When children are born they are somewhat yellowish, but in a few days become browner: they help this by smearing, and so colour them that they are like the adults. When they are barely six months old they can already walk because of this, but cannot as yet follow the mother: in general these have a piece of sheepskin hanging on their backs in which they set the babies, and when they wish to give them the breast they throw these back over their shoulders and thus give suck, since these are so long that they hang down in front like a couple of empty saddle-bags.

As to their religion, they have none, but live like the unreasoning brutes from day to day. Although some say of them that they reverence the moon this is not so, although it is true that by night, especially at the New Moon, they dance, or better said leap before it, and thereby howl rather than sing. But this dancing is done only for their pleasure, since leaping against their shadows and clapping their hands delights them especially, in that they see their shadows [not confirmed elsewhere] also do this; and this they continue so long as the moon shines on them, so that this dancing is thus to be considered as solely and entirely for their pleasure and amusement. Also although all the peoples of the Indies much like dancing by night, yet these most especially, since they take no heed of work: after they have lain asleep all the day in the sun, and sought for something to eat which they themselves produce [not true of Cape, but Jans was further north-east], all their task is then thus to tire themselves by night with leaping and dancing; and also they take little thought for clothing. If it rains, and they are asked Whence it comes? they say 'Groot Captain pissem', which in their opinion is as much as to say, 'The Captain of the folk who live above is passing his water'; since in their opinion very large

folk live above there. They wish to know nothing of God, but make do with the following excuse which they bring out in broken Dutch ‘Hollaender arbeitem sterbem dem Hottentot sterbem is storbem krup der als ock Hollaender mann’, which is to say ‘The Dutch work and toil but not the Hottentots, and at last both die and one is buried in the earth like the other’. If they are told of a Resurrection to a better life they shake their heads like the atheists, and say that they and their cattle have one and the same burial, and that one will rise again as little as the other. And let this be enough concerning the Hottentots.

This land is full of many terrible wild beasts, which find abundant prey since there is no lack of animals. The lions come even to the Cape, and often do great damage to the farmers living there, so that they must guard their houses well, and especially their cowsheds, since however well their animals are guarded they are harmed by these terrible beasts. One day I sought to amuse myself outside the town, and a Surgeon, by name Benjamin Hartleben of Speyer, offered to keep me company, which also he did. When we were gone about half a mile inland from the town [along the Liesbeek] we heard a growling: we looked all around, and on our left were various farmsteads, so that we went straight on without apprehension. But we had gone barely 20 paces when we heard yet stronger growling, which caused us to look around more carefully; and we saw that a large lion came towards us barely 50 paces away. At this we were greatly affrighted and took to flight as best we could to the nearest farm. When we reached it and in great alarm told the men there of our plight, they laughed at us and asked: Could we as mariners not tell which way was the wind? and added: The wind is blowing from where the lion is, so that you had plenty of time to escape it easily, and even had it been nearer it would not have seen you. Nevertheless they closed the gate to their yard; and when the master had sent for a flask of wine for us, he told us further: That what a lion catches must usually be by his sense of smell, but that he is so weak of sight that he can see barely 10 paces, and to this also contributes the shaggy hair which hangs over his eyes. If the men are in the fields and hear such growling, they first take note of the wind, and thus get away according to the circumstances. They had no especial complaint of the lions; and if the tigers did not do more damage to their herds than at present, they would have no especial complaint of these beasts either.

I must admit that this freeman's house greatly pleased me: he took us into his wine-cellar*and showed us 4 legger* of wine which he had pressed that year. We gave him about ½ lb. of Virginia tobacco, and in return he entertained us very well with food and drink, to the best of his ability, and would not let us go until the next day. He told us also that the Company would not allow them to sell their corn and wine to whomever they wished, but all must be sold to the lessee of the monopoly [*sic:* actually the corn to the Company, the wine to the lessee], who paid little for it, since he in turn must pay a heavy rent to the Company, or better said to the Governor. A flask of wine can be had from the freemen for 3 groschen, but from the lessee it costs on the contrary ½ Rxd. Moreover, if these folk were allowed to sell their wine and other things as they wished, they would

have far more inducement to cultivate the land, since both the climate and the soil are favourable to agriculture.

[Story of a farmer's wife who found 4 lion-cubs and took them to the Governor as young dogs: told to remain in the Castle until the parents could be killed, since they would follow the cubs by scent. The lioness killed by a baited spring-gun, and the woman sent home with 10 Rxd. bounty and a warning.]

The tigers are nowhere fiercer than there; but they are more beautiful than any I have ever seen [described]. Also at the Cape are a sort of wild-cats called Tiger-Bushcats [described].

At times, although rarely, wild asses come to the Cape, of which I saw a stuffed hide [see Museum*], and must admit that I never saw a lovelier beast-skin than this. They are very rarely caught, since they seldom come as far as the Cape, and are very wild and difficult to catch, and especially because they do not breed here. [Described: Zebras.]

Where it is somewhat hilly there is a sort of hedgehog, called by the Dutch, Iron Pigs or Porcupines [described].

The apes which dwell at the Cape, but chiefly in the hills, are called Baboons [described: said to rape women if alone].

The sheep at this extremity of Africa are so tasty that they in no way fall short of the Persian sheep. Some have 4 horns, which are said to grow back into the head if not cut off. Most of their tails are cut away, mainly so that the rams may cover them the better. The cattle are not so good, perhaps because the pastures suit the sheep better. Since the Dutch need many cattle and sheep for the refreshing of the ships arriving, the Hottentots come at certain times from inland to the Cabo, and bring large herds of oxen and sheep, which the appointed traders [officials] barter for a little brandy and tobacco, but after first inspecting them so that no old or sick beasts are among them. When they have thus received their tobacco and brandy for their beasts they think themselves rich enough, and go home rejoicing. At a rough estimate, it will be found that a sheep costs hardly more than a stiver or 6 pfennings, and an ox about 2 groschen. The lean and poor beasts are given to the ships for refreshments ... but the best are sold and eaten on land. Each ship, so long as she lies there, is given an ox or 6 sheep daily, which truly are so lean that they are nothing but skin and bones hanging together, whereas those eaten on shore are so fat that one can hardly eat them. But if the food on board were better, many would save their money and not pay the freemen so dear for their food. The sick who are brought ashore to be somewhat better nourished there, are no better off than the fit men aboard, of which I will say something further later.

Ostriches are not uncommon here, to judge by the many eggs which are for sale. They lay these eggs in the sand in the hottest or warmest months, that is in January and February, and leave them to be hatched by the sun [*sic*]. Two or 3 men can eat their full from one egg, which is as large as a child's head, if there is a little bread thereto. I saw 2 such ostriches in the Castle, of which one was as large of body as an average calf, but each leg was as thick as a man's ankle, and wide at the foot: when they run one may

well think it is an unshod horse. [Described: egg-shells taken to Europe as curios.]

The ravens here have a white stripe around their necks. Sea-birds, or gulls as the Dutch call them, are the same here as elsewhere, except those which I mentioned in the previous chapter, the 'Cape Birds'. There is also no lack of other tame fowls.

Just as the land lacks nothing, so also the sea here does not lack fish, such as sardines, steinbrassen, crayfish, crabs, sea-cows, Robben or sea-dogs, and rays. These last are called Hottentot fish at the Cabo, because these wade into the water as far as they can, and since these fish always lie on the bottom, they catch them cleverly - they have a pointed stick, and with this as with a harpoon spear them before then can get away, and bring quantities of them for sale. This is their only manner of fishing.

There is a sort of whale in the sea here, called 'Nord-Capers' by the Dutch.

Where the land is well cultivated it produces many sorts of fruits, so that I must mention these: the French refugees especially, in the few years that they have dwelt here, have given a good proof of what can be done with this land. [Wines 'well to be compared with those of Franconia', rye, wheat, lettuce, sweet potatoes, onions, cabbages, 'water-lemons' (described, water-melons), pomegranates, lemons, pineapples, quinces.]

In spite of all the good arrangements of the Company or the Governor, the Hospital* for the sick brought by the ships is as bad as it could be. It is left more like a dilapidated dwelling than a hospital, although its improvement is most needful, so that the unfortunate sick might have better care and beds: but instead of feather-beds, anyone who does not bring his own bed must sleep on a hard plank, and eat no better than the fit men aboard, not to mention how carelessly they are treated by the Meesters or Surgeons, so that they are truly to be pitied, the galley-slaves in Sicily being treated no worse than the sick here. The Dutch call it a 'Sick-House': they should rather call it a 'Death-House'; and if many sick did not go to some freeman and get some help there, I believe that very few would recover. The saying is 'He who does not die will recover', and this might well be the motto of an East-Indian journey.

Since many beasts are killed at the Cabo for the ships, a special slaughter-house has been built, in the following manner: not from from the Castle, where the shallops* usually come to shore, there is a long jetty*, called by the Dutch 'Hafft', so that the shallops run no risk of grounding on the shore and being damaged by the stones lying there, but can always come to a safe and convenient place, and so also that the Fiscal's people can keep a better eye on smuggling, for which reason a guard-house is built on the landward end of it. The slaughter-house stands beside this, and since beasts are almost daily slaughtered there the Hottentots have their raw-kitchen ['Gar-Küche'] near it, and are accustomed to be entertained there, since they pick up the guts, thrown out with all the dirt in them, and after they have warmed them a little over the fire they eat them with all the dung, so that this runs down both sides of their muzzles, enough to take away anyone's appetite; and nothing can be thrown away that does not serve them for food and as a lovely delicacy. Thus the butchers need not trouble themselves for dogs, whose place these willingly take, and what their teeth cannot chew they swallow whole;

and if they lack knives they beat it between two stones until they can tear it with their teeth. Oxhides and the like are not too tough for them, but they let them shrivel a little over the fire so that the hair is singed off, and so know how to deal with them, nor are they afraid that it will lie too long in their bellies. From all this, as also from what has been told of them above, it can be concluded whether their lives could be more bestial. But the rest I pass over in silence for the sake of brevity.

From the Table Mountain to the end of the Jetty or Hafft there are water-pipes laid underground, reaching to the end of the jetty where a special water-house has been built, below which the longboats* and shallops* from the ships can come and fill their containers with the water from the pipes, which otherwise would cost much toil.

The firewood needed by the ships is brought in carts from inland and loaded on the said jetty into the boats which take it to the ships; but it is bad, and there is little of it to be found near the Cabo, so that it is used very frugally.

After we had been there about 14 days and had aboard all that was needful for our further journey, we raised our anchor ['They-Ancker', small bower] and at the same time hoisted the blue flag* and fired one gun, to call all those ahore to embark. After this we came apeak* to our other anchors* and awaited the Skipper and the Book-keeper from the farewell-feast with the Governor, as also the sick who were ashore, of whom five must remain there since they were not strong enough to come aboard.

Meanwhile the ship *Mehrenstein*, anchored here in the harbour [DR 14/6], which had sailed from the Texel with us but had been separated from us in the North Sea, which we welcomed with many signs of rejoicing and the firing of our guns.

She was the only ship which was able to continue our voyage, although she had been very damaged and could barely reach the Salt Islands, where she had gone to one called St. Jago and there had repaired herself. In the continued storm she lost the commander of her soldiers, who, when she had remained heeled over for some time, had climbed to the other side and tried to go on deck, but then as she again heeled over in the other direction he came under water and was not seen again, which would not have happened had he remained below deck. They had already had 36 dead, and her sick were not a few. We could congratulate ourselves on being the luckiest ship of the fleet, since the two others that had sailed with us had thought themselves fortunate to be able to get back into the Texel, where they must suspend their voyage for that time.

Although we were now again together, we continued our journey [alone: DR 23/6], and on July 7 raised our anchor and sailed out of the harbour with a N.E. wind, with the firing of guns to wish us a happy passage, both from the Castle and the ship *Mehrenstein*, and so bade farewell....

Nord-Capers described. Compass-declination and check by bearings of sun.* '*Southland*' (*West Australia*). *Sunda Strait. Batavia on August 28: by Hague codex 152 folio 196 he was there until November 1694*, *then in* Spierdyk *to Surat*, *and back at Batavia until sailed 13/2/96 in* Eenhorn *as Steward to Merchant* Conradt*, *Admiral* of the fleet*, *sailing with*

wife and children, and two slaves 'who would be free as soon as they reached Holland'. St. Helena described, now English. Sargasso Sea described. Northabout. Cruisers* expected but not met. Texel September 25* (*Hague codex 4390 folio 5 as 28/9*). *Riot aboard, cook beaten with his own gear, Skipper insulted and had to hide. Released from oaths. Drew balance of pay* (*Hague codex 152 folio 196 as 35: 15: 6*).

Background - continued

[Sailing of Drie Croonen not given]

[1695]
'*Nine Years' War*' *continues.*
Background - from official documents in the archives

5/5 ... letter received ... dated at 's Gravenhage January 21 and 25 ... warning that the enemy was on the way, or would soon leave for the Indies, probably Malacca, with 6 ships, heavily manned and gunned ... authorising His Honour, if he had need of men to strengthen his garrison, to take them from the outward-bound ships [32 taken permanently, 100 provisionally]

7/5 ... letter to Stellenbosch ... send 100 men under good officers here ... to be relieved every 14 days ...

10/5 ... arrived, including 20 dragoons ... and since the number of freemen at Drakenstein is so increased, a new company of foot-soldiers to be formed there ...

22/5 [first sermon preached from the 'New Kat*']

1/7 [garrison* 644, yacht *Swarte Leeuw* 71]

[1696]
'*Nine Years' War*' *continues. Fort William built at Calcutta.*
Background

1/7 [garrison* 718 including outposts and 'those in the English ship *Amy*' and in *Jupiter*, *Dolphyn; Swarte Leeuw* 110, *Noordgouw* 54, flute* *Swangh* 47]

1/8 [Letter to Holland: 428 freemen, 202 women, 491 children, 75 'lent*'; freemen now have 322 male slaves, 72 female, 63 children; also formation of Town Watch, 6 companies of 30 each, duty in rotation]

3/9 ... arrived here the hooker* the *Nijptang* [outward]

7/9 ... arrived the frigate* the *Geelvink* [outward]

8/9 ... towards noon at last arrived the galliot* *'s Weeseltje* [outward]

29/9 ... came in towards noon the English ship *Doreil*, left Portsmuyden on May 18 last for Suratta in company with *Charles Second*, with 36 guns, 4 small iron guns ['bassen'] and 61 men, not having had any deaths on the way and bringing only 12 sick ...

1/10 ... towards evening came to the roads the other English ship *Charles Second* ... 60 guns and 200 men ... having lost 3 men ... landed 20 sick ...

3/10 ... the Captain of this latter English ship came ashore to visit the Hon. Governor ...

4/10 ... brought her sick ashore to accommodation hired from a certain freeman ...

11/10 At midnight the English ship *Mary* ... coming from Madras ... 30 guns and 84 men ... had been near here on June 11 but ... was forced to make for Madagascar where he was in the bay of Saint Augustine for 17 or 18 days ... had lost 30 men ... bound for Saint Helena and London ...

14/10 ... 3 English ships which had sailed in company from Plymouth on May 9 last ...

came here for lack of water ... *Samson*, 40 guns and 150 men ... 26 dead ... 50 sick, bound for Madras; the *Cepter*, 32 guns, 2 small iron guns ['bassen'], 118 men ... 30 dead, 16 sick; and *Chamberfregat*, 30 guns, 95 men ... 25 dead, 20 sick, this last bound for Suratta.

17/10 ... came the ship *Vosmaar*, sailed April 26 last ... from before Vlissingen ... 93 had died, the rest all sick and weak, so that out of 236 paid hands not more than 4 were fit ... and of the 10 French refugees only 5 were still alive [fit men sent to her, but wind contrary]. The English Captain Jan Hays [*Mary*] having shown that he had only one sail left, and that it was impossible for her to reach Saint Helena without more, therefore urgently requested the sale of two sails, which was ... refused; but finally ... he was allowed 2 old topsails, much rat-eaten and of little value ... for fl. 396: 15 ...

19/10 Since during the journey some mutiny or other offence ... had occurred in the *Mary*, this day (as we understand) one of the offenders was hanged ...

21/10 ... a reply to his letter of the 16th was sent yesterday to the skipper van Deyl of the ship *Berkel*, forced into the Saldaignbhaay by contrary winds ...

22/10... *Vosmaar* ... came to the roads, and at once all her sick were brought ashore [Suspicion of desertions to *Mary*, additional guards ordered 'as long as the English ships are in the roads', and patrols along the shore]

23/10 ... in the evening arrived the said ship the *Berkel* from the Saldaignebhaey ...

24/10 ... towards evening ... the English ship *Mary* left for Saint Helena ...

27/10 ... The said skipper Wm. De Vlamingh [of *Geelvink*] ... having got aboard all needful ... at last departed with the hooker* the *Nyptang* and the galliot* the *Weeseltje* ... for the Southland [Australia]

2/11 ... this morning came in the English ship *Rebecca*, an interloper*, sailed from England on April 3 via Cadix, bound for Bengalen, 22 guns and 44 men ...

3/11 [news from Saldanha Bay of *Huys te Duynen* there] sailed with *Vosmaar* and *Weeseltje* ... 42 lost by death, the rest all lying sick, requesting help since not more than 8 fit besides the cabin-passengers ... at once the *Amy* sent ...

80 John Dorrill

(*See also item 86*.) *Transcribed from xerographs of his log* (*MR 104*) *kept in* Charles the Second, *from England November 24, 1695 for Ceylon etc. All his dates are of course Old Style**.

Friday 18th [September] ... we saw very high land over the false Cape which through the Clouds did very much resemble the Table land. Cape Bona Esperanca then made like 2 small islands....

Saturday 19th ... Varia [Declination*] Wr. 12°:50′: - ″....

Sunday 20th ... at noon the SWt part of Cape Bona Esperanca bore NNEt Distant about 4 lea. & Cape falso Et½No Distt. 10 lea....

Munday 21st [DR 1/10] ... at 4 in the afternoon we anchored in Saldinia Bay... we found Capt Hide [ship *Dorrill*] who gott in Saturday last [DR 29/9].

Tuesday 22d: This morning I sent my Chyrurgeon & Purser to the Governour to

acquaint him of our comeing & also to request the liberty of refreshment for our people, which he hath granted ... In the afternoon I went with my Barge* towards the Shoare, but it blowing so very hard off the Table land & our people being so very weake we could not gett ashoare: In the Evening struck our Yards & topmasts.

Wednesday 23d ... we halled out our Small Bower anchor* & unbent our Sayles & fetcht off 9 Punchions water with Capt. Hides Longboat* & gott off some Sheep & green Herbs for our men. In the afternoon I went on Shoare to the Governour who is very kind in his Expressions [DR 3/10]; we have now about 35 men so dangerous ill that we dare not remove them out of the Ship, having in all about 100 people that have gott the Scurvy, not only with the Symptoms of it, but are Swelled in their Ioynts so that they cannot go into a Top....

Thursday 24th ... heeled & scrubbed both sides of the Ship ... we are bringing up some of our people upon Deck to ayre them gradually, for they no sooner come into the open ayre but they faint.

Friday 25th ... we have blackt most of our Yards and Masts and tarred our Sheathing* to the waters edge ... itt being a very warm Day, we gott up at least 50 of our sick men upon Deck....

Saturday 26th ... we have this Day made a general rummage [restowing] between Decks; & gott up as many of our sick people as could be brought up.... [No entry for 27th.]

Munday 28th. This morning being very faire weather & a warm day, we made a small tent on Shoare upon Green point & sent 45 of our scorbutick people on Shoare with all their Cloaths & bedding & some men with them & had all their Cloaths washed; & in the Evening brought them off againe; we have 28 more that we could not remove, being so very weake....

Tuesday 29th ... fetcht off a boat load water....

Wednesday 30th ... fetcht off 2 Boat loads of water....

Thursday pmo [October: DR 11/10]. Last night anchored without us about 12 a Clock the Mary, formerly Capt. Tho: Oyles Comdr: since him Capt. Vultures both deceased, & now Capt. Hayes that went out 2d: Mate: Itt blowing fresh all the morn: off the Table land they could not gett in; I sent my Boate on board, they came from Madras the 14th of February, but loseing their passage [i.e. the favourable Monsoon*] & the men mutineing, they bore away the 11th of June for Mauritius; but mist it & put for St: Augustin's Bay on the Isle of St: Lawrence [S.W. Madagascar] & from thence Departed the 6th of September...

Fryday 2d ... this Day our Carpenter having finished the Fore yard we gott him across & rigged him [*sic*].

Saturday 3d ... gott up our Topmast & fetcht off a boat load of water for the Mary.

Sunday 4th [DR 14/10] ... In the afternoon came in the Sceptre [Item 82], Sampson [item 83] & Chambers friggatt* [item 81], having buryed about 30 men each ship. So soon as they appeared I sent both my Boats out with about 30 men, who were very wellcome to them, having all their people except some few Officers down with the Scurvy.

Munday 5th ... In the morng. I called a Consultation [Council*] of the Comdrs. concerning the Mary, who gave me from under their hands that it was expedient to fetch on board the head of the Mutineers, which accordingly I have done & keep them till come to farther resolutions [DR 19/10, one hung]....

Tuesday 6th ... the ship which was yesterday seen ... is come to anchor between the Island & Maine, but I believe in much Distress for we have seen him fire several guns [*Vosmaar*, DR 17/10]: the Dutch have sent out 2 Sloops [shallops*] & a boate [longboat*] with men to her Assistance ... Capt. Earle [item 83] tells me he hath buryed 16 Saylors & 10 Souldiers, Capt. Pheny [item 82] 23 Saylors & 13 Souldiers & Capt. South [item 81] 11 Saylors & 17 Souldiers inall 90 men.

Wednesday 7th ... the Ship between the Island & the Main is a Dutch Ship, it came out from Zeland the [blank: April 26] & hath buryed 95 men & hath about 120 men sick with the Scurvy not above 12 men on board in health.

Thursday 8th ... gott up our Topmast & made an end of tarring our Rigging.

Fryday 9th ... gott up our Yards, but at 3 afternoon it blowing hard at SSEt we struck our Yards & Topmasts againe....

Saturday 10th ... Captn. Earle sent to me to borrow some men to moare his ship, not being strong enough with his own people; having broke his Small Bower Cable & lett go his Sheet anchor* in the Night: I sent him 16 hands ...

Sunday 11th ... I this Day lent Capt. Earle 16 men to gett up his Sheet anchor.

Munday 12th ... we have fetcht off 2 boat loads water, & in this morng: gott up our Yards & topmast; the Dutch Ship ... came in this Day [*Vosmaar*, DR 22/10].

Tuesday 13th ... in the afternoon came in a Dutch Ship from Europe in 9½ Months [*Berkel*, DR 23/10].

Wednesday 14th ... In the afternoon I went on board the Mary & gott her unmoar'd to sayle wtth the first [favourable] wind.

Thursday 15th ... the Mary sayled for St. Hellena [DR 24/10].

Fryday 16th: Fair weather....

Saturday 17th: About 12 a Clock last Night it blew very hard ... we struck our Yards and Topmasts; about ½ an hour past 12 at Night our Small Bower parted in the middle of the Cable, we veered out a Cable* & a halfe upon our best Bower; about 5 the morng: it fell Calme ... we gott on Board our Small Bower & about 1 a Clock the afternoon we weighed our best Bower to see if he were Cleare, but the wind ... blowing fresh, we drove out neare ½ a mile & let fall our best Bower againe & carryd out a Kedge anchor* & Hawser to steddy the ship. This day sayled hence a Dutch ship a Pinck* & a Hoy* that are gone to discouer Hollandia Nova [DR 27/10, respectively *Geelvink*, *Nyptang*, *Weseltje*].

Tuesday 20th: Since the 17th: we have had faire weather ... Munday morng: we gott up our Yards & Topmasts & bent all our Sayles ... & lent some men to Capt. Earle & South to fitt their Riggin & fetch water.

Wednesday 21st ... Sent our Longboate* ashoare for water but could not fill any

the Pipes being broke.

Thursday 22d ... we gott off a boate water....

Fryday 23d. In the morning about 10 Clock it began to blow fresh ... struck yards and Topmasts ... In the afternoon came in a Small Ship from Cadiz in 4 months named the Rebeckah [DR 2/11] Capt. Gutter Comdr. a private Ship or Interloper* going to trade to the Etward of the Cape.

Saturday 24th ... gott off a boat load of water & all our Sheep & green trade ... at 4 the afternoon it begun to blow ... which by 7 was so violent that we struck our Yards & Topmasts which we had gott up in the Morning ... In the Evening went out a Dutch Brigantine* [*Amy*, DR 3/11] to Saldinia Bay so called by the Dutch which lays about 18 lea: to the No: of the Cape; to carry water & fresh provisions to a Dutch Ship that is arrived there from Holland having very few men well [*Huys te Duynen*].

Sunday 25th ... all this Day it hath blown hard ...

Munday 26th ... we gott up our Yards & Topmasts & hove short upon our best Bower: I went my Selfe on board the Scepter & Chambers friggatt*, & helpt them gett up their Yards & Topmastes; & took from on board the Sampson 6 men of ours, that had been there assisting them for some time, & putt them on board the Chambers friggatt & about 1 a Clock afternoon weighed as did the Dorrill and Scepter, but the Chambers friggatt did not weigh till 6 Clock it blowing very hard at SbEt, we gott in all our Boates & made sayle out between Penguin Island & Green point [DR 5/11]....

81 Thomas South

From xerographs of his log (*MR 103*) *kept in* Chalmers Frigate*, *sailing on November 23, 1695 for Bombay etc. All dates are of course Old Style**.

October 1696 Sunday the 4th [DR 14/10] ... This afternoon aboute 4 we gott safe to Anchor in Saldinia Bay, where was Capt: Dorrell in the Charles the 2 [item 80], Capt: Hide in the Dorrell & the Mary homeward bound Capt: Hays....

Munday the 5th ... a Consultation [Council*] on board the Charles the 2nd: aboutt the Mutineers in the Mary.

Tuesday the 6th. This day unbent our Sailes & Dried them....

Wednesday the 7th ... Carried our Sick men a shoar.

[8th. Repairs]

Fryday the 9th. This morning fetched one boatt of water ... a Consultation of all India Commanders on board the Charles the 2nd: aboutt the Mutineers on board the ship Mary Capt: Hayes. Itt was agreed for each ship to take one [DR 19/10, one hanged]....

Satturday 10th ... the pinnace* sunk at the Buoy & lost all the thuarts & oares....

[11th to 14th. Repairs]

Thursday the 15th. This day rummaged [restowed] the Hold & fetcht two Boates of water & Mary sailed for England [DR 24/10].

Sunday the 18th ... our People Refresht themselves ashoar being Sunday.

[19th to 21st. Watering, repairs]

Thursday the 22nd ... The Longboatt* made one trip & brought off one Load of Water & 21 Sheep and our Sick men that were ashoar....

Fryday the 23rd ... the wind blowing very hard at SE in the evening Lowered our Yards.

Satturday the 24th. The wind Continuing Lowerd Y'ds and Topmasts.

Sunday the 25th. The wind Continuing no boats Can Stir to and again.

Munday the 26th ... aboutt Noon a Gale Sprang up att SE & we weighed our Anchors and putt to Sea in Company of the Charles the 2nd: Dorrell & Sceptre [DR 5/11]

82 George Phenney

From xerographs of his log (*MR 102*) *kept in* Sceptre, *sailing November 23*, *1695 for Bombay. All dates are of course Old Style**.

4th [October 1696, DR 14/10] ... about 4 a clock in the afternoon came to an anchor in 6 fathom water Penguin Island bore NbW and the Lyons Rump bore Wt Southerly we found in Port the Charles Capt. Dorrill [item 80], The Dorill, Capt. Hyde, and the Mary, Capt. Hawks from the Coast of Cormandell, 3 Dutch shipps and a Sloop* bound for Hollanda Nova [Australia] upon a Discovery [DR 27/10 for 'the Southland'], the Dutch Guard shipp [*Swarte Leeuw*], a Dutch Pink* and several other small vessels.

5th. This morning I went on board Capt. Dorrill, where we sent for the Cheife Mate of the Mary Mr. Norman, and the rest of the sailors, and examined them, about a Mutiny that had been in the said shipp Occasioned by Mr. Norman, so in the Conclusion it was agreed that he should remain aboard the Charles, not being safe to lett him return to his owne shipp, this afternoone I went ashoar to the Governour....

6th ... this night it blew very hard at SE.

7th. This day sent 25: of our sick men ashoare, Yesterday came in a Dutch shipp at anchor of off Penguin Island from Holland who in his Passage lost 96 men and all the rest sick but 4 or 5 [DR 17/10]....

8th ... we sent the rest of our sick ashoar....

[9th to 13th cleaning ship, watering]

14th. This day we heald our shipp and scrubd the other side And sent for a boate

loade of Water. This day came in a Dutch Shipp from Holland for Zelone [not traced] ... This day the Mary sayld [DR 24/10].

[15th to 22nd. Fair weather]

23th ... This day [DR 2/11] came in the Rebekkah an Interloper,* Capt. Gutter Comming from Cadiz.

25th. This day blows very hard off the Table Land.

26th. Att noone this day gott under sayle in Company with the Charles, Dorrill and Chambers Friggat*, leaving in Port the Samson, and the Rebekkah....

Background - continued

5/11/1696 Towards noon the following English ships set sail, to wit *Charles Second*, *Doreil*, *Cepter* and *Chamberfregat*, the *Samson* still remaining at anchor [Mention of discontent among their Captains concerning salutes, and the refusal to allow some junior officers to fish in the Salt River]

8/11 In the morning ... the ship the *Huys te Duynen* arrived at anchor from the Saldaigne baay ... sailed April 26 last ... from before Vlissingen ...

9/11 ... had lost 58 in the passage, and brought an equal number of sick to the hospital* ...

12/11 ... in the afternoon ... the frigate* the *Soldaat* set sail for Madagascar ...

83 William Erle

(*And see item 88*). *Transcribed from xerographs of his log* (*MR 107*) *kept in* Sampson, *sailing on February 12, 1696 from England for Madras etc. All his dates are of course Old Style**

Sunday the 4 [October 1696]. Wee had a fine easy gale as per Logg which put us in hopes of seeing ths Land last night, besides the Variatn [Declination*] ... which made 11°30′ Wt., strongly implyed as much ... this morning at 6 a clock wee saw it, and at 8 a clock it bore SE, being the Cape it self about 9 Ls. of ... About 10 or 11 a clock ... wee saw the Island Penguin (by the Dutch called Robin Island) bearing NE½Et. it is very low flatt Land, having in the midst a small house, where they spread the Dutch Colours: The Land on the Main (I mean the high Land in the Country, which appears then as the NoEtmost part of the Bay) at some distance appears to be an Island* ... I designe to goe to the Westward of Penguin, betwixt that, and the Green point, which is a long, low, point made by the Tale of the Lyons Rump, & is bold [deep water] within at Least half a Mile of the Shoar ... Att 12 a clock the Dutch Colours were spread on the Island ... Wee hauld within at least a Mile of the Shoar, and came to an anchor* ... with our best Bower & moard with our Small Bower to the Etward; the flaggstaff on the Fort

Bastion [Katzenellenbogen] bore SSWt. Lyons Rump WbSo. Sugar loafe Peake SWbW½Wt. Jame's Mount S½Wt. The Point of land, cald Greene Point WNW½No ... Wee rode about 1½′ [miles] from the Landing-bridge [Jetty*: DR 14/10]-//-I saluted the Port with 11 Gunns; which were not returned as I expected; the Charles [item 80] and the Dorrill, had been here 10 days [actually 13] before us ... Here was also the Mary, in service of the Honble Company bound Home for England ... There was 3 dutch shipps in the Port [see DR 27/10], besides the Guard shipp [*Swarte Leeuw*]. It was almost 10 a clock at night before wee had made an end of moaring our Shipp, tho. we had the assistance of the Charle's & Mary's boats and one of the Dutch shipps. The wind ... blew very fresh Soly [southerly] ... so wee lowerd our yards & with the few fatigued people wee had, made our shipp as snugg as we could; I sent my Purser ashoar with a Complement to the Governour; and 2 of my Passengers went with him.

Monday the 5 ... Employed in bending our Sheat Cable, getting up the Booms, & lowering the Topmasts &c ... I went aboard of the Charles, & with Capts. Dorrill &c went ashoar, & Waited on the Governour; then made it my business to provide lodgings for my sick men, & agree with the Butcher & Baker &c, & in the Evening came aboard againe.

Tuesday the 6 ... Capt. Dorrill called a Consultation [Council*], I waited on him, with the other Comandrs. He Accquainted us with a Mutiny that had been in the Mary, where they displaced the Lawfull Comr. deceased, & sett up one Mr. Robt. Norman, whose Character is not the Best; Wee consider'd the nature of the fact; and first secur'd Capt. Thos. Hayes, in the Comand of the shipp & confind Mr. Norman, & some of the Principall Mutineers, till we should resolve further. Afternoon, the Governour, who kept his Birth-day (which fell out yesterday) to-day, Invited us all ashoar to a supper, which was very sumptuous, & splendid, & celebrated with fireworks most part of the Night. The Governour expressed much respect for us, & excusd his not giveing us, that came in last, Gun for Gunn, protesting it was no designe, but neglect in his Gunners. I was very well satisfied, & it was day before he would suffer us to depart.

Wednesday the 7. Wee were employed in getting our sick people ashore, which are 57 Persons. The Soly wind ... frequently came down in hard gusts, insomuch that our Pinnace* was not able to tow the Longboat* ashoar, but put us to the necessity of borrowing of our friends.

Thursday the 8 ... There are 2 Dutch shipps comeing in ... but ... are not yet in the Bay [*Vosmaar*, *Berkel*]. They are large shipps, and have had a very tedious passage, and a great mortality. I have hired 2 houses for my sick people one not being sufficient, for which I must pay 2½ Doll. a Night....

Fryday the 9 ... I daily visit my people ashoar & hope to recover them all. I pay the Butcher 2½ [?what] a pound for Beef.

Saturday the 10 ... Capt. Dorrill called a Consultation concerning The Mary's Mutineers, and the Result was to distribute one to each English shipp, except Mr. Norman, who is still detain'd aboard the Charles. Capt. Dorrill pressed me hard to goe

to sea with him, in 8 or 10 days, which is a thing utterly impossible.... He was no lesse urgent to Capts. Phenny & South; and when wee sd. perhaps in three weeks time wee might be ready, he would have Persuaded us to have given him under our hands to goe then. I told him for my part, that a lesse time than he had been here, would not be sufficient for the recovery of my people ... & refus'd to signe any such Paper. Towards Evening it began to blow very hard at SEt, insomuch that our Small Bower Cable parted ... I dropped my Sheat anchor* under foot, & rode so all Night....

Sunday the 11 ... I was obliged to borrow 17 men from Capt. Dorrill & 16 Dutchmen, to help me get aboard a Sheat Anchor, & carry out a spare Anchor, instead of the Small Bower....

Monday the 12 ... I hired 16 Dutchmen to help me moar the shipp securely fast; Wee tript the spare anchor which we have made a Small Bower & hauld it out further to the Etward then brought the old small Bower to the Bows, and moar'd the shipp securely fast. I am obliged to pay every man that helps me ½ a Dollar a day ... The Governr refus'd Capt. Phenny's Present; I suppose, because severall dutch men were missing, for he told him he had rather have his Men againe. It seems he was informd they were aboard my shipp: It is a thing I detest, & desired the Governour to search my shipp ... A Great Dutchman from Zealand, that wee saw some time agoe, came into the Bay to-day [*Vosmaar*, DR 22/10].

Tuesday the 13. This morning a Consultation [Council*] was held aboard the Charles, occasioned by a Complaint from the Governour, that severall Dutchmen had deserted [DR 22/10]. The Mary was order'd to be searched, but no man found aboard her. Easy gales from the NWtward ... brought in a Dutch Hagboat* from Rotterdam ... she has been wanting from Holland 5 months [*Berkel*, DR 23/10].

Wednesday the 14 ... the Mary ... unmoar'd, haul'd home her Foretopsl. sheets, and fired a Gunn, but it was too late, to saile to Night, so she Birth'd herself further out.

Thursday the 15 ... The Mary sayled for St. Hellena [DR 24/10] ... Wee heeld our Shipp on both sides, & Breem'd*, & paid* her with Pitch & Tarr.

Fryday the 16 ... Att Noon it began to blow hard our Sheat anchor* was made ready, but not dropped.

Saturday the 17 ... in the Even: it began to blow hard, I ... secured my [Long-] Boat asterne, & lifted the Pinnace* up in the Tackles. Three Hollands shipps sayled hence, upon a discovery to the SEtward [DR 27/10, for 'the Southland', Australia].

Sunday the 18 ... The Comandore [?] tells me, the wind here from Aprill till August, are a kind of Monsoon*, & sometimes blow very hard between the No & NWt & from thence till Aprill againe, they blow from the SEt. qr. of the Compasse & sometimes exceeding hard.

Capt. Hide [of ship *Dorrill*] came aboard about dinner time, but would not sitt down at the Table with us, he used aboundance of imprudent, idle discourse, & amongst some of his reflections told me, that he had sent his Longboat* for water today; I told him, if only want of water detaind me, I would worke so late of other days, that I would

have no occasion to fill on the Saboath....

Monday the 19 ... The Longboat made one Tripp for Water, and went a second time, but the Cisterns were drye ... I have still 26 of my Seamen not fitt to come from the shoar. Capt. Dorrill Entertain'd the Fiscall, & the Governrs. Son aboard, he fired more than 100 Gunns [Blesius and Frans].

Tuesday the 20. Before day I sent my Longboat ashoar, to endeavour, if possible, to make 2 Turns for water, because the Bridge [Jetty*] is crouded with boats, & the Cisterns (whither thro. deisgne I don't know), afford but little water. In the morning the Charles called a Consultation, to know if wee could be ready to saile on Monday; I told Capt. Dorrill as formerly, that nothing but the Condition of my people would hinder me, and that It was such that I could not resolve him, but in all humane probability I thought I could not; he offer'd me men, & the assistance of his Boats, I thanked him kindly, and borrowed six men.... Hardly one of my men are yet perfectly recover'd, tho. ½ of them come daily aboard, to help as much as they can, but the rest are not able to doe any thing.... I Presented the Governr. with 4 doz Clarrett, 2 do. Canary, & a Large Cheese in Lead. To the Fiscall I gave 3 doz: Clarrett, & a Cheese of 25 d. To the Governour's Son a Long Campaigne Wigg* [Blesius and Frans].

Wednesday the 21. [Trouble with 'Mr. Walter Chisley, a Passenger on the shipp ... a very Turbulent fellow ... I hardly know what to doe with him.']

Thursday the 22.... The Longboat made 2 Turns for Water ... & 2 Turns more I believe will be sufficient ... I brought 5 men aboard, that are pretty well recovered, and have 21 ashoare still.

Fryday the 23d.... An English shipp came in this afternoon [*Rebecca*, DR 2/11] ... Capt. Dorrill cal'd us againe this morning to know if we could be ready to saile with him on Sunday: Capts. Phenny & South told him, they beleived they could make a shift to be ready on Monday. I told him, I could not possibly saile so soon ... having then 20 Men sick ashoar, & many aboard but very weak, besides our rigging is very much out of order....

Saturday the 24 ... wee Bent our Stream Cable; & now having an anchor* at each Bow, ready to lett drop, I think wee can't be well under any apprehension of danger.... I sent aboard all my people from the shoar, but some of them are so bad, that I fear they won't be recover'd in a great while, and those that are somewht. better, I intend shall goe ashoar every day, to enjoy the Benefitt of the Earth, and the Aire, and come aboard in the Evenings. I sent aboard all my Yeol's [yawl's*] load of firewood; Wee have for these 2 days past had six of the Charle's men. As I was comeing of in the Evening, the Governour chanced to see me, & desir'd to speak with me: He told me he wonder'd what was the matter with our English Commds. that they should seem to goe away affronted; he said he was sensible of none that had been offerd them, and if any Person had, and they would be so Civil as accqt. him with it, they should have what satisfaction they pleas'd. He told me he should be sorry if they went away without taking a friendly Leave, & intreat them all to come and dine with him tomorrow, & if they were disgusted

that he did not give them Gun for Gunn, (which he protested was through a mistake) he would give them as many Gunns, as they should appoint, the next day, to repair the Error, & as he always had a respect for Englishmen, he was very desirous to retain it still, & the failure should not be on his Part, It was only Civil, and I think ought to be resented so; This I had in Commission to accqt. those Gentlemen with, but it began to blow hard, & I could not gett aboard.

The shipp that came in yesterday is called the Rebecca, an Interloper*, Comanded by Capt. Wm. Gutter, she sayled out of the Downes whilst wee lay there, for Cadiz, and now Came directly from thence.

Sunday the 25.... Towards Night, the usuall prognostick of wind, in this place, showed it self, that is very thick, & Substantiall Cloud appearing over the Table Land, when the wind is likely to blow from the SEt.

Monday the 26 ... about 7 a clock this morning was Calme for some time ... I immediately went and took Leave of Capts. Dorrill &c, & as the Governour desired me, I told them he desired to see them ashoar before they went away ... Capt. Dorrill sd. on Fryday last, he sent his Doctr. ashoar to take Leave of the Governour & ask his Commands, the rest sd. Litle ... my Occasions calling me presently Ashoar againe, I order'd my Chief mate, when Captn. Dorrill had done saluting the Fort, to give him 7 Gunns; Mr. Wallis told me, that Early in the morning, Capt. Dorrill was by the side, and order'd him to send the six Men he had Lent me, aboard of Capt. South, to help him unmoar his shipp.... It was not long after I was gon ashoar, but he sent a Note directed to me, to intreat me to take aboard severall of Mr. Robert Norman's things, who he sd. was ashoar, provideing himself lodgings. But my Mate very prudently refus'd takeing them aboard because he wanted my order, which he did very prudently in, for Capt. Dorrill might have spoke to me when I was with him only I suppose he doubted I should deny to be concerned in a matter which he had taken upon himself, and so thought my Chief mate might receive them aboard.

About 12 a clock, they all, (except the Chamber's frigatt*) were at saile [DR 5/11].... Between three and 4 she gott under saile too. The Charles & the Dorrill saluted with 7 Gunns, which were return'd, then with one which they had againe; But Capts. Phenny & South took no notice at all, & went away without so much as a Civil Complement, which the Governr. highly resents, but I hope wont from thence infer, that all Commrs. are so Clounish & Uncivill. My Mate, as I appointed him, gave Capt. Dorrill 7 Gunns, but he was so Civil as to returne him but 5, so he en'e [even] let him goe without any thanks.... I carried some of my sickest people ashoare with me, that they might scent the Earth, & stretch their Limbs....

Tuesday the 27.... Wee hauld up our Sheat Cable upon deck, & Quoiled it down in it's birth upon the orlopp*. Afternoon gott up our Topmasts, bent all our Sailes, except our Courses*....

Wednesday the 28 ... a Lovely day....

Thursday the 29. Last night small breeze of wind ... which brought in a Dutch shipp

from Zealand, which has been wanting about 6 months [*Huys te Duynen*, DR 8/11].... Severall of the Dutch Commrs. dined with me to day.

Fryday the 30.... Erly this morning I loosed my Foretopsaile, to give notice that I intend to saile speedily.

Saturday the 31.... wee bent our Stay* sailes, & sent the Long boat for Water.

Sunday the 1 November.... I gave severall of my People leave to walk ashoar.

Monday the 2d.... To day the Fiscall & the Governrs. Son dined with me & the Commrs. of the Dutch shipps, with some Gentlemen from the Shoar, I entertaind them with the discharge of 102 Gunns; A small Dutch shipp bound to Madagascar loosed to day, but could not gett out [*Soldaat*, DR 12/11].

Tuesday the 3d.... The Madagascar shipp sayled. I brought aboard 39 Sheep.

Wednesday the 4.... In the morning I sent our Yeol [yawl*] a fishing, but they mett with no luck. In Honour of King William's Birth day, I fired 11 Gunns. The Dutch took no notice of it.

Thursday the 5. It blew fresh all last night ... so lowerd Yards & Topmasts.... In Commemoration of the Nationall deliverance from the Gun-powder-Treason Plott, I fired 9 Gunns.

Fryday the 6 ... this morning hauld home the Foretopsle. Sheets, to intimate my Intention of sailing to morrow; Wee hoisted our Yards and Topmasts....

Saturday the 7 ... the wind vear'd againe to NWt ... so I only loosed my shipp ... that nothing might impede our sayling to morrow: so I dropt my Best bower, & rode short; and hoisted up my Longboat* along side, to be ready to whipp her in, as soon as wee gott clear, & to morrow, if it please God, I am resolved to saile. I sent Letters ashoar for England.... The Governr. promisd to forward them by the first opportunity, but not being in Town I was forced to lye ashoar to wait his Comeing, and on

Sunday the 8. Betimes in the morning I came aboard, but having little or no wind ... I waited to see a settlement; Which, betwixt 2 and 3 a Clo: happened to be at SWt & WSWt so I hove up my Best Bower anchr*. and gott to saile. I saluted the Fort with 9 Gunns, and was answer'd with 11 to satisfie for the 2 Gunns they fired lesse, when I came in. I thanked them with one Gun, which was return'd me againe. After some time I fired 7 more, intended as a salute to the Comandore [*Swaarte Leeuw*] who rides with a fflag, but, I suppose, without Licence from the Governour he could not answer it; So the Rebecca Interloper* conceived it was to her, & gave me 7 Gunns, for whose Civility I return'd 3, which he fir'd againe, then one apeice. Wee went out between the Island & Greene Point.... When we were clear, wee hoisted in our Boats, & stowed them &c [DR 18/11].... In the Evening observed, and made ... $10^{o}56'$ Wtly Variation [Declination*]....

The Berg, a large Dutch Hagboat*, bound for Zeloan, sailed with us [*Berkel*], whose Company, if she goes well, will be very good; but if not, I shall part with ... her. I brought of all my people, pretty well recover'd, except ... two Soldiers, who run away: I now have 95 Seamen, and 12 Soldiers, with all the Passengers I carried out, except Mr.

John Hunter deceas'd who dyed at sea.

I can't omitt saying something of this place, before I leave it: The Bay (which the Dutch call Table Bay & some English men, erroneously, Saldina Bay) is large, & margind round with white sand; The nearer you ride, in towards the Landing place, the better you are secur'd from the SEt and NW Winds, which at some seasons, in this place, blow exceeding hard. The Town* is but small, & the Houses low, & colour'd white; the Fort*, which is a regular Pentagon, is built near the Bridge [Jetty*], & Commands, & secures the Town. Severall of the Inhabitants have very pretty Gardens, and the Company, a large & spacious one [Garden*], which might be made exceeding fine, if the Dutch men would take the Pains, but it is now very much out of order. The Soyle is rich, & the ayre very wholesome; There is plenty enough of all things in their Seasons, & the scarcity of Inhabitants in the Country, is the only reason, that every thing is not very plentifull. The Dutch say, they inhabit, scatteringly, above 100′ [miles] round; I believe not quite so much: and Doctor Henrick Holderland [Oldenland] tells me he has travelled 400 Dutch miles* into the Country. The Somost [Southernmost] Inhabitants, which are called Hottentots, (for no other reason that I know of, but their frequent singing, & repeating that word [see Hottentots*, Name]) are a Bruitish sort of People, lowe of stature, with costry[?] haire, and are void of Religion, & all manner of Civility: Tho, upon the New Moon, they always seem to show something of Worshipp, by makeing a great Noise, & Singing & Leaping up and down, (which is their modish danceing) but whither that be designed, as an act of Worshipp, I can't tell. Many more of their Fashions & Customs I could mention, but perhaps they are known better already-//-Further up in the Country they are of different Casts, and the Nomost [Northernmost: Namaqua] almost as white as wee are, & as Courteous, and Civill, as any people in the world, & have a Custom, of offering their Wives and Daughters to the Embraces of their Friends [? his source]. The Dutch report that in 24 hours time they can raise 7000 men: I believe it to be a stretch, only to amaze, & make them selves more Terrible than indeed they are. for I dare say they can't raise near that Number, with their Slaves and all-//-

To the Nod. [Northward] of this place is a very good Bay, called Saldinia Bay, seeming very formidable to the English; but Capt. Vandijle [of *Berkel*, see DR 21/10], (who came into the Cape directly from thence,) assures me it is a very secure, and good Bay, where Shipps may lye land locked; There is Plenty of sheep & cattel, & aboundance of fish, but the water is not good, which is the Reason why the Dutch have no habitation there, else they would have a ffort, & it would be more frequented than the Cape it self. ... The Dutch Commrs. that came in here, made more than 11^{o} Wtly Variation [Declination*]....

Monday the 9.... At 12 a clock at noon The Cape Good hope bore SEbEt: 19 L. from whence I take my Departure for Fort St. George....

Background - continued

18/11/1696 ... in the afternoon ... the ship *Berkel* and the aforesaid ship the *Samson* ... set sail ...

15/12 [Letter to Batavia: the 5 English ships carried off 12 Servants of the Company, 6 convicts, 2 sailors of *Geelvink*]

26/12 ... an English ship seen sailing in ...

28/12 ... the said little English ship arrived ... about midday to the roads, named *America*, 26 guns, 40 men ... September 19th last from Bombay, now coming from Galen, without dead or sick on the journey ...

[1697]
War ended by Treaty of Ryswyck.
Background - from official documents in the archives

3/1 ... at dawn arriving at the roads the long-awaited little ship the *Veenmol* ... sailed April 26 last from before Vlissingen ...

4/1 ... last night arrived the little English ship *Scherbra*, an interloper* and companion of the English vessel *Rebecca* ... 3 guns and 6 small iron guns [‘bassen’], 105 men, coming from Cadix ... bound for Bengal ...

7/1 ... came an English brigantine* named *Royal Dutch*, 4 guns and 15 men, coming from Barbados and now bound to Madagascar for the slave trade [Letter 20/1 to Batavia; suspected of piracy as confederate of Kydd]

9/1 ... between 7 and 8 in the morning ... four English warships including a fireship ... anchored behind the Lion Hill ...

11/1 ... came here to the roads, namely *The Windsor*, 56 guns, 350 men ... *Tyger*, 40 guns, 200 men ... *Advys*, 40 guns, 200 men ... *Vulture*, a fireship, 10 guns, 45 men. All bound for St Helena to await the English return-ships there ... but had been unable to reach there ... arriving here without sick ... and at noon ... anchored the *Oost Indische Coopman*, sailed on September 14th last in company with ... *Sidny* and *Maddras* from Plymuyden ... bound for Bombay ...

16/1 ... comes the said East-Indian merchantship *Sidny* to seek anchorage ... 40 guns, 133 men ... having lost 5 men and arriving with 30 sick ...

17/1 ... the aforesaid English ship *Madras* arrived ... 24 guns, 60 men, without deaths or sick ...

18/1 ... the chief officers of the English ships entertained to a collation on shore ...

21/1 ... the freemen to sell no corn or meal to the English ships ...

26/1 ... at last the aforesaid little English vessel *Royal Russell* set sail ...

29/1 ... the little flute* *Veenmol* set sail for Batavia ...

84 Richard Laycock

Transcribed from xerographs of his log (*MR 72*), *kept in* America, *from England in March 1695 for Bombay and Ceylon, and now homeward. All his dates are of course Old Style**.

Wednesday 16 [December: DR 26/12] ... we anchored at 2 a Clock in the afternoon abt a league from the Road ... the Sugar Loaf bearing SWt½So, the Table Land SSW½S,

Charles Mount & the ffort SbWt½Wt, the Lyons Rump SWbS, Penguin Island NWt.

Thursday 17th ... our Pinnace* went ashore to acquaint the Governour what we were & att night the Boat [*sic*] returned bringing word the Governour was gone to his Country house [Constantia].

Friday 18th ... weighed and stood in for the Road & abt. 2 in the afternoon anchored.... This afternoon we hoisted out our Longboat* & mored our ship with the Best-bower [anchor*] to the Sd. & small Bower to the Nd.... we Lowred our Yards & Topmasts [DR 28/12].

.....

Thursday 24 ... arrived here a Small Dutch ship from Europe [*Veenmol*, DR 3/1/97] & abt 12 ... the Scarborough an english Hagboat* Capt. Brown from Cales [?] & bound for Bengall [DR 4/1/97].

Monday 28 ffor these 4 days the wd variable ... got up some of our empty Casks & sent them ashore & abt 6 this Ev: arrived a small sloop* from Berbadoes bound to Malagasco [*Royal Russell*, DR 7/1/97 as 'brigantine'].

Tuesday 29 ... took our Guns up and mounted them....

Wednesday 30.... Abt 6 this Ev: anchored without the Road four sail [DR 9/1/97] of English men of war from the Coast of Brazile haveing mist the Isle of St. Helena vizt. the Windsor Capt. Warring Commod. the Advice Capt. Acton and the English Tiger Capt. Redman & the Wulter ffireship Capt. Simons.

[No entry for December 31.]

Fryday the 1st Jan [DR 11/1/97] ... abt. 10 this morning the men of war weighed & came to an anchor in the Road and likewise arrived here this morneing the East-India Mercht. Capt. Clark from Europe.

Wednesday 6th. For these five Days ... we are now fetching on board our water. This afternoon arrived here the Sidney Capt. Jefford from Europe [DR 16/1]....

Sunday 10 ... last Thursday arrived here the Maderas Capt. Prickman [DR 17/1].

Monday 11. This morn: a hard Gaile at NWt & a great sea ... so that we lett goe our sheet Anchor* & then heaving in of our Best Bower found the sheet Anchor was foul of him so we sent the Longboat* to weigh the Best Bower but the Buoy Rope broke that we were forced to bend our Stream Cable to the Small Bower & vere him away & soe weigh our Sheet Anchor with the ship but were forced to lett him goe again but Proveing Calme towds. night we weighed him & mored our ship.

Saterday 16. This Day sailed hence the sloop [DR 26/1].

Sunday 17 ... a hard Gaile ...so that we were forced to strike our Topmasts.

Wednesday 20 [got up yards and topmasts, but forced to strike them again: longboat sent for water]

Thursday 21 [longboat brought firewood]

[Then no entry until:]

Thursday 28 [DR 7/2]. This Morning att Six a clock beeing Unmoored Wee houe up our Ancker & Sayled without the Road being in Company with the Three Menn a Warr

& a fyer Ship that ariued heare and Are Bound for St. Ellena & liquise in Company with three Outwardbound East Indise the Commadour Capt. Tho Warren lay By Besiden Pengwin Iscland & the main about three howers Untill all the Oather ships came up with us & then made Sayle to Sea Wards.... [England October 1697]

Of the other ships mentioned, *there are logs for* Madras Merchant (*MR 110*) *but containing no entry for the stay in Table Bay; and for* Sidney (*MR 105 of item 87*) *but with nothing of interestfor the Cape except a mention that the interloper** Scarborough *was a* '*hackboat**'.

Background - continued

1/2/1697 ... all the said English ships, nine [? eight] in number, departed for Saint Helena or India, so that the roads are now empty of ships ...

24/5 ... at dawn it was found to our sorrow that by the heavy storm not only was the frigate* the *Swarte Leeuw* ... completely broken up and driven ashore, as also 15 longboats* and 11 skiffs* [also at Salt River *Oosterland*, *Waddinxveen;* and other losses]

1/7 [683 in 'garrison*', including those in the galliot* *Amy* and in the *Jupiter* and the *Dolphyn* ... in *Noordgouw* 43, *Standvastigheyt* 32, frigate* the *Soldaat* 63]

[1698]
General peace. Charter given to the English 'New East-India Company'.
Background - from official documents in the archives

3/2 ... arrived the frigate the *Pool* ... expressly sent out for Ceylon to take the good news of peace, by the mediation of His Royal Majesty of Sweden, between the King of France and the Allied Powers, solemnly made at the King's house at Ryswyk in Holland on September 20 last ...

14/2 ... towards noon six of the [return-] fleet seen, but could not reach the roads ...

17/2...at last 6 [sic:seven] ships have reached the roads, namely *'s Lands Welvaren*, *Beijeren*, *Meresteyn*, *Overnes*, *Schoondyk*, *Nigtevegt*, *Donkervliet* ... but *Domburg* and *Grimmesteyn* were ... forced to run out to sea again ...

20/2 ... the said ship *Grimmesteyn* comes to anchor, but could tell us nothing of the ship *Domburg* ...

85 François Leguat
(Plates 59, 60 & 61)

(*See also item 74.*) *This again is from his 1708 'New Voyage to the East ...' The three survivors of his original party of 10 were at last permitted to sail with the 17 return-ships in November 1697.*

Nothing Remarkable happen'd to us till we came to the *Cape* of *Good Hope*, unless that in our way we learnt from a *Dutch* Ship that was going to *Batavia*, that the Peace of *Reswick* was concluded and sign'd. As soon as the Fleet had understood this News, the

Cannons began to roar out our Joy, Doles were distributed to all the Ships Crews, and all the Seamen embrac'd, as if they had not seen one another for many years. Healths Went briskly round, and in a word, nothing was wanted that could contribute to our Rejoycing: But withal, we could not help thinking that this Peace would not last long. The next day we arriv'd in sight of the *Cape*, and about Noon approach'd the little Isle *Robben*, which lies at the entrance into the Gulph.

We then saw appear upon one of the Neighbouring Mountains call'd the *Devils Mount*, a certain Mist which was an infallible forerunner of furious Winds, that very much incommode Vessels even in the Bay, and our Captain fore-seeing what was like to ensue, immediately gave out his Orders concerning it. But hardly were matters got ready before we were oblig'd to drop Anchor to prevent our being forc'd out to Sea.

The Winds blew after that furious manner, that our Cables were not able to resist them, but broke like so many Threads. There was hardly one Vessel but lost one of its Anchors*, and several lost three. Four of the hindermost Ships were driven out again to Sea, and the Vice-Admiral among them. This last [*Domburg*], who had some private Reasons for not being extraordinary well satisfy'd, made use of this Pretence of the Wind, to sail directly for *St. Helena:* The other Ships rejoyn'd us some few days after before Isle *Robben*. At length the Wind being appeas'd, and becoming favourable, we Anchor'd in the Bay the 12th of *February* 1698 [DR 17/2]. Next day we went a-shoar, and every one provided himself with such Refreshment as the time would permit him to get.

Since we are happily arriv'd once more at the *Cape* of *Good Hope*, I'll keep the promise I formerly made, and add some Particulars to what I have before said....

The Point of the *Cape*, which is, as every one knows, in the 35th Degree [*sic*] of Southern Latitude, advances a great way into the Sea. The violent Storms that reign there are so terrible, that the most skilful Mariners are at a loss how to manage them, so that the Bay which seems to be fine, is render'd disagreeable by these Tempests. The Sea-Winds drive in such prodigious Surges, that no Cables hardly are able to oppose them.

The Last Fleet had a sad experience of them [DR 24/5/97], losing many of its Ships, and if the Tempest had lasted but half an hour longer, 'tis probable not one would have escap'd, since those few that did ride it out, did it by the good hold of their last Anchor.

This Bay seems to penetrate far into the Land, and is about three Leagues long, and two broad. Isle *Robben* lies on the *Larboard*, or left side of the Ship. It is very flat, and about two Leagues about.

I say *Robben*, and not *Robin*, as it is written by the greatest part of our *French* Travellers and Geographers, who not understanding the Word, have chang'd the Sence and Orthography of it, as I could prove by a great many Examples. When the *French* write *Robin*, they imagin, I suppose, this Island had its Name from some *Robert*, whereof *Robin* is the Nick-name, but this is grosly erroneous. The Isle was in truth so call'd from certain Fish nam'd in *Flemish*, *Robben*. They are a sort of Sea-Dogs, found in great abundance about this Island.

The Fort* is on the other side of the Bay to the Right, and almost South-Eastward

of this little Island: It lies behind some Hills, so that you cannot see it till you are got a good way into the Bay. It does not command all of it, as many have unadvisedly Written. It is a regular *Pentagon* fac'd with Stone, and without any Ditches or Outworks. 'Tis well pointed with Artillery, and has 500 Men [*sic*] in Garrison*. In it the Governor and all the Officers of the Company live.

About seven or eight hundred Paces from the Fort, and near the Sea, there is a little Town* with about 300 Houses in it. The Streets are strait, and drawn by Line; the Houses are built with white Stones, and at a distance it promises much more than you find when you come near, nevertheless it has wherewithal to content any body, and you observe the *Holland* neatness enough in it. There are a great many Inns which furnish what Provisions you have occasion for.

Hard by is the *Company's* principal Garden*; it is about 1,500 Paces long, and 250 broad, but to deal ingenuously, I did not find it so Magnificent, as I have seen it describ'd. 'Tis true, you see there most charming Walks of Orange and Citron-Trees of all kinds, which reach to the end. It is also furnish'd with Pear-Trees, Apple-Trees, Pomgranate-Trees, Fig-Trees, Peach-Trees, Quince-Trees, and all other Fruit-Trees, as well *European* as *Indian;* but all these grow low without being Dwarfs, yet they thrive as well as one could expect. A certain part of this Garden has been assign'd for Muscat-Vines, which bear good and fair Grapes.

It has likewise in great abundance almost all our sorts of Herbs, Pulse, Flowers and other Plants. It is water'd by divers Rivulets which fall from certain Places in the Mountains, and are distributed into several artificial Canals. All about this Garden there are a great many thick Trees, which tho' they defend it tolerably from the Wind, yet they cannot absolutely do it, which is the reason that things don't thrive there wonderfully well. The Trees themselves do not also grow so kindly as in other Places.

A little farther on the Declivity of the Mountain, you see here and there many Houses surrounded with Vines, Gardens and Groves, which together have a very agreeable effect on the Eye.

The *Company* has another Garden [Rondebosch] about a League off, which lies in a better Soil, and is more shelter'd from Bad Winds. You have there long Walks of Oaks, as far as your Eye can well reach, and a large Wood of young Trees of the same kind rais'd from Acorns. One day they may likewise make use of these Trees for Houses and Ships. At present there are Trees fit for the Carpenter, only in a Forest about two Leagues from the Fort.

The Governor has a pleasant House call'd *Constantia*, about two Leagues from the *Cape*. Here he lives the greatest part of the year, not only on account of the Air, which is Excellent, the fine Prospect, and the admirable Soil, but also by reason of the great quantity of Game which are thereabouts, Hunting being the greatest and most profitable Diversion of this Country.

Ten Leagues from the *Cape* up in the Country, there is a Colony call'd *Draguestain*. It consists of about 300 Souls as well *Hollanders* as *French* Protestants, which last fled

from *France* upon revoking the *Edict* of *Nantz*.

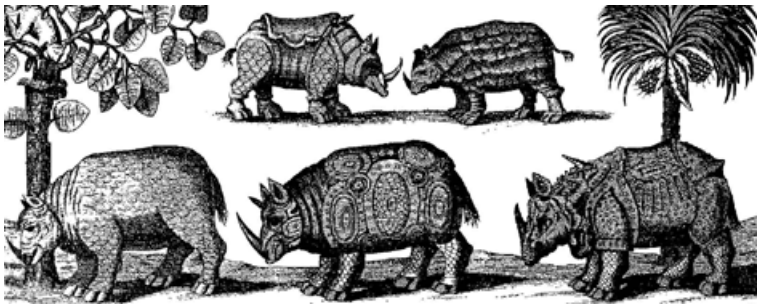
This Colony extends eight or ten Leagues about, because the Soil not being equally good everywhere, they were fain to cultivate those spots they found to be good, and which occasion'd them to scatter themselves abroad. The Earth produces here without much Labour, Wheat and other Corn, which yields from thirty to sixty for one. As every Grain shoots up a great many Stalks, they sow here very thin; the Harvest is in the Month of *January*.

The Vine bears Grapes two years after it has been Planted, and that in great abundance without cultivating, insomuch that in some Places a thousand foot of Vineyard will yield six Hogs-heads of Wine. To speak Truth the Wine is none of the best, being apt to be Green, which proceeds partly from the Peoples not giving themselves the trouble to chuse such Plants as are most agreeable to the Soil and Climate, and partly in that they are not accustom'd to support the Branches with a Vine-Prop. They are likewise wanting in not leafing the Vines well, for as the Soil is Rich, they shoot forth Wood and Leaves in such great abundance, that the Sun is not able to penetrate to the Grapes, and this Conjecture is the better grounded, in that I my self have frequently seen and eaten Grapes here, that have been incomparably better when exposed to the Sun, than those that lay hid under the Leaves.

They have their Vintage about the end of *February;* To this Article I must add, since the occasion presents for it, that the *Company* buys all the Wine at the rate of twenty Crowns the *Legre**, which contains about a thousand *Mingles*, only furnishing the Cask, so that there is none sold out but what comes from them, as is the practice at *Genoa*. The First Offence against this Law is punish'd with a Fine of a hundred Crowns, the Second with Whipping, and the Third with Banishment: This makes the Wine very dear. It is worth twenty *Sous* the *Mingle*, which is near the *Paris* Pint, and *English* Quart. You have likewise in this Country *Ananas*, Water and Land-Melons, Pulse and all sorts of Roots, so that the Inhabitants would have nothing to complain of, were they not incommoded with those bad Winds before-mentioned....

They have in this Country a prodigious number of Deer, many Oxen, Sheep, Roe-Bucks, and Apes. There are also Elephants, Rhinoceros's, Elks, Lions, Tigres, Leopards, Wild-Boars, Antilopes, Porcupines, Horses, Asses, Dogs, and Wild-Cats. But the most fierce of these Animals retire into the Country, so soon as the Countrymen begin to till the Ground. The Lions and Tigres are boldest in coming to search for Prey near the Habitations.

As for the *Unicorn* there is no such sort of Beast. The old and most curious Inhabitants of the *Cape*, are well satisfy'd with it, and he that made *Caesar's Commentaries* was a Lyar, as well as the rest. The Rhinoceros is the true four-footed *Unicorn*, for there are Fish, Birds, and some Insects, that have likewise but one Horn. I could heartily wish to have seen one of these Rhinoceros's by reason of the many Fables that are told of that Beast, as well as of the Crocodiles, and a hundred other Animals. My Friends that had seen of them, laugh'd at all the Figures the Painters gave of them, and which are here



[59] RHINOCEROS. From the French edition of item 85. On the left as described by Leguat, with one horn only.

subjoin'd for Curiosities sake [Plate 59]. Certainly nothing can be more Comical, than so many pretended Embossings; all which however is fabulous. The true Rhinoceros has a Hide like to that of an Elephant, and the older he is, the more wrinkled he will be: It is the same with us in that Respect. We may very well affirm that the Rhinoceros has but one Horn [*sic*], in spite of all the fabulous Relations of those we call Naturalists: This Horn is at the extremity of the Nose. He has a sort of Hair in his Tail that is black, as large as a great Knitting-Needle, and harder than Whale-bone. I'll say nothing of Camelions which are common in this Country, unless that it is not true that they live without eating, which we vulgarly call living upon the Air. They live upon Flies, and such like little Creatures.

The ordinary Game here are Partridges, both Red, Grey, and White, and very large and fat Pheasants, Woodcock and Turtle-Doves. On these for the most part the Inhabitants Subsist. The New-Comers to the Colony are forbid to kill any of their Cattle, till they have paid a certain Duty to the Company.

The Oxen are of three kinds, all pretty large, and very swift. One sort have a bunch* upon their Backs, another have their Horns hanging down, and a third sort have theirs extreamly elevated, and as fine as I have seen in South-*Britain* about *London*.

Some years before I came to the *Cape*, a Lion of monstrous size had leap'd over into a Wall'd Enclosure near the Fort, and having strangled an Ox, carry'd him almost whole over the same Wall to the *Table* Mountain; I say almost whole, because I dare not affirm it was entirely so, tho' I have every body's word for it. Next day they went to hunt this famous Beast, and having laid a Snare for him, he was taken and kill'd. I have seen his Skin, which was nail'd against a Board as one enters the Fort. There is kept the Skin of another Lion who was found dead, having four Porcupine's quills sticking on it; and of a Wild Horse that was kill'd in the Woods. He had no Tail, and was spotted like a Leopard.

The Tigres of this Country are very small, whereas they are exceeding large in the Island of *Java*. The Dogs who tho' never so strong and numerous, dare not pursue a

Lion, hunt boldly these little Tigres. When these Beasts can get into any Park, they strangle abundance of Deer [French original has 'sheep'], but only suck their Blood, unless they are exceeding hungry.

The *Company* gives twenty Crowns to anyone that kills a Lion, and ten to him that kills a Tigre, which has occasion'd many Stratagems to be invented for taking those Beasts. For Example one is, That they tie a piece of Flesh to the muzzle of a Gun with a brass Wire, and the other end being fasten'd to the Trigg, as soon as the Beast seizes the Bait the Gun goes of, and either kills or wounds him.

Bread here is not worth a Penny a pound, although the Bakers are oblig'd to buy all the Corn of the *Company* in like manner as they are their Wine, their Beef, their Mutton, and their Tobacco. The *Company* for three Crowns gives the Inhabitants a measure of Corn, that weighs a hundred and four-score Pounds. The Price of Beef and Mutton is setled at two pence a Pound, and Tobacco at forty Pence. Soap is sold at eighteen pence a Pound, and *Aqua-vitoe* at a hundred Pence the *Mingle*. Beer is exceeding cheap.

The Slaves, all *Negro's*, are worth between three-score and four-score Crowns a Head, according to the Age and Condition of the Beast. The Crown is worth eight *Skilling* as in *Holland*, and the *Skilling* six *Sous*. The Pound is of sixteen Ounces. The least piece of Money at the *Cape* is a *Sous*, as at *Batavia*.

The Colony I have been speaking of, which is about ten Leagues from the *Cape*, has been frequently augmented, and is almost every day, by a considerable number of *French* Protestants. The *Company* maintains a Minister and Reader for them, and affords them every day some fresh Tokens of their Respect.

I was told, if I remember well, while I was with those good People, that the Pastor of this Church [Pierre Simond], a very honest and sensible Man, was making a new Translation of the *Psalms* in Verse, or at least correcting, to the best of his Power, that of *Marot* and *Beza*, to render those sacred Pages more intelligible, than they were in this Jargon which is now become Ridiculous, Barbarous and Scandalous.

When our poor Brethren of the *Cape* had form'd a design in *Holland* to go and settle in that Country, they had a considerable sum given them for their Encouragement, were transported thither without any Charge, and upon their Arrival had as much Land assigned them as they could Manure. They were likewise furnished with Husbandry Tools, Victuals and Cloaths, without being obliged to pay any yearly Tribute or Interest, till such time as they should be in a condition to reimburse their Benefactors. There was also a considerable Collection made for them at *Batavia*, which Sum was remitted to them proportionably to their Occasions [DR 9/4/90]. They took up their Provisions on the prices before mentioned, which are highly reasonable considering the Place: Besides it was very advantageous thing for them that Slaves were not dear. Moreover, they have considerable services done them by the Natives of that Province, whom the *Hollanders* call *Hottentots*, because they often hear them pronounce that word [see Hottentots,* Name]....

Our *Refugees* made the *Hottentots* work in their Harvests, Vintages, and whatever else they please, for a little Bread or Tobacco. As they have leave to Hunt, their Victuals cost them little or nothing. Hardly any thing is scarce among them but Wood, and that is of no great Consequence, because the Climate being Hot, they have only occasion for it for the Kitchin. For the same reason they are put to no great expense for Cloaths, the slightest and meanest Stuffs, being good enough. They buy, moreover, a great many things at very cheap rates of the Sailors, who touch at the *Cape* from all quarters of the World. 'Tis true, to sell their Commodities they must carry them to the Cape, which as I have already told you, is about ten Leagues from the Colony; but this Inconvenience is not over great, because the way is good and their Oxen will easily travel it in a day.

Every one must easily conceive there are no beginnings without difficulties, and our honest Countrymen also did not meet with a few at first, but then they were charitably reliev'd, as I have already observ'd, and at length God was pleas'd so to bless their Labours, that they are at present perfectly at ease, nay, some of them are become very Rich.

In some parts of the *Cape* the Landskips are wonderful fine, especially where our new Inhabitants were settled, and the Air is admirably good. Fine and large Rivulets contribute to the fertility of the Soil, which furnishes Wine in abundance, with all sorts of Corn. The little Hills are cover'd with Vines, expos'd to the best Sun, and shelter'd from the bad Winds. Spring-water flows at the foot of these Hills, and waters in its course the Gardens and Orchards, which are fill'd with all sorts of Fruits, Herbs, and Pulse, as well *European* as *Indian*.

One of the *Refugees*, named *Taillefer*, a very honest and ingenious Man, and curious above all things in these Particulars, has a Garden which may very well pass for fine. Nothing there is wanting, and all is in so good order, and so neat, that it may very well pass for Charming. He has likewise a great Yard very well fill'd, and a large quantity of Oxen, Sheep and Horses, which, according to the Custom of the Country, feed all the year without-doors, and find so great plenty of Norishment, that they have no occasion for Winter-fodder. This generous Man receives and regales all those that are so happy as to come and see him. He has the best Wine in the Country, and which is not unlike our small Wines of *Champagne*.

All this consider'd, 'tis certain the *Cape* is an extraordinary Refuge for the poor *French* Protestants. They there peaceably enjoy their Happiness and live in good Correspondence with the *Hollanders*, who, as every one knows, are of a frank and down-right Humour.

The *Cafre Hottentots* are extremely ugly and loathsom, if one may give the name of Men to such Animals. They go in Companies, live in Holes or vile Cottages, and have no other care than to rear and feed their Cattle, of which tho' they have great Numbers, yet as I have been credibly assur'd, they will kill none for their Use, but eat such as generally die of Diseases. They are extremely Lazy, and had rather undergo almost Famine, than apply themselves with what Nature has produc'd of her self. They set

great store by a Root* that resembles our Skirrets. They roast it, and oftentimes make it into Past, which is their Bread and somewhat like our Chesnut. They eat raw Flesh and Fish, finding them, it seems, better, and more savoury so, than when they are boil'd or fry'd: Nay, they trouble the Kitchin so little that when they find a dead Beast they immediately embowel him, sweet or stinking, and having press'd the Guts a little between their Fingers they eat the remaining Tripe with the greatest Appetite that can be.

These People are almost all of that Stature which we call midling. Their Noses are flat, their Eyes round, their Mouths wide, their Ears the same, and their Foreheads low, They have very little Beard, and that which they have is black and wooly. Their Hair is extreamly frizled. They are not born very Tawny, but they quickly besmear themselves so with Soot and Grease, or some sort of Oil, that they become Black as Jet, upon which they lay themselves on their Backs expos'd to the Sun, that the Colour may better penetrate and dry in. This Embellishment renders them so noisom, especially when it is hot, that one cannot come near them without being ready to Vomit.

In Summer they go all naked, except that part which the Men put into a Case made on purpose for it, and which hangs to a thong of Leather that is ty'd about their Reins. In Winter they generally cover their Shoulders with a Sheep Skin. They never wear anything upon their Heads. Their Hair is all frizled, greasie, and powder'd with Dust and, moreover, matted together in Tufts, to each of which hangs a piece of Glass, or some small bit of Copper or other Metal. They pass thro' the lower part of their Ears, which are broad and large, a round Stick of the length of an Inch, and much thicker than one's Thumb. About this Larding-pin they hang Shells and such like Toys as they wear in their Hair, which, as you may imagine, occasions a pretty Jingling, such as their Horses likewise make with the same Materials. Strange that these sordid Creatures that live like Hogs should have any notion of Ornaments; In truth they have no Religion, yet I have been told they have certain mysterious Ceremonies, which seem to denote their having some Idea of a sovereign Being. I have many times seen them dance and clap their Hands, looking towards the Moon, which I know they salute at certain Seasons, from her *New* to her *Wane*. It seem'd to be a kind of Worship they pay'd that Planet. However, it might be only a simple demonstration of Joy, on account of the Light that it brought them.

Some take for a sort of Circumcision what the Mothers do to their New-born Males, whose right Testicle they always tear away with their Teeth and eat it, but I rather think they do so to render those Children more nimble and proper for Hunting. However it be, this is the general practice of the *Hottentots* at the *Cape*. After these barbarous Mothers have thus maim'd their poor Children, they give them Sea-water to drink, and put Tobacco in their Mouths, believing these two things, in conjunction with what was before done, would render them so robust and supple, that they might overtake a Roe-Buck in his full Course.

For all this nastiness they are made use of by the Christians of these Parts, and so for a bit of Bread or Tobacco, may be made to work a whole Day. But then care must be

[60] HOTTENTOT WOMAN WITHOUT HER SKIRT. From the French edition of item 85. The artist shows the fish as caught by hook and line, although Leguat's text has only fish-spearing.

taken of two things. First, rather to promise than threaten them, and by no means to abridge their Liberty; and Secondly, not to give them anything to eat till after their Work is done, this same Liberty which they are so fond of always enclining them to live at ease, and Necessity being the only Spur that pushes them on to work.

These vile Huts which I have before spoken of, are low and almost round. They are compos'd of Earth, Branches, Leaves, and so ill built, that the Rain never fails to pour in on all sides. Their Fire is in the middle, and they lie all about higledy pigledy in the Ashes. I will not affirm that the two Sexes are always chast there, but 'tis certain these Barbarians, as barbarous as they are, profess not only to confine themselves within the Bonds of Marriage, but also to punish Adultery severely. They cudgel all those to Death, that have been taken in the Fact, as they likewise do Thieves and Assassins. I have read somewhere, that they cut off one Joint of the little Fingers* of their Women, when they

[61] HOTTENTOT IN SUMMER COSTUME. From the French edition of item 85. The penis-case does not tally with Leguat's Text, and the root is unidentifiable. As for the brandished hind-quarter of some animal, is it possible that the artist read somewhere (not in Leguat) of the use of 'the tail of an animal' as a flywhisk?

offer'd to remarry, and so continu'd to do Joint by Joint where they marry'd several Husbands; but Persons worthy of Credit, that had liv'd among them divers years, assur'd me the thing was somewhat otherwise, for that they cut off only one Joint of the Women's little Fingers when they first marry'd, and which was done in token of their Subjection. The Men may take several Women, but for the most part they have but one, especially about the *Cape*. The Wives have somewhat yet more ugly and more forbidding Phyz's than their Husbands, for over and above that they are to the full as black and nasty as they, they have moreover the loathsom Custom to wear several rounds of raw Guts* about their Necks and Legs in lieu of Necklaces and Garters, which being green and corrupted, stink abominably.

They wear likewise Cockle shells, and bits of Coral and Glass fasten'd to their Hair and Fingers, and large Ivory Rings about their Elbows.

But what is yet more frightful, is their Necks; they seem to have two long, half-dry'd, and half-fill'd Hoggs Bladders hanging at them. These nasty Dugs, whose Flesh is black, wrinkled rough as Shagreen, come down as low as their Navels, and have Fillemot [‘un bout feuille-morte’ in French original] Teats as large as those of a Cow. In truth these swinging Udders have this commodious in them, that you may lead a Woman by them to the Right or Left, forwards or backwards as you please. For the most part they throw them behind their Shoulders to suckle their Child, who is slung upon their Backs. Notwithstanding all this, the vanity of these ugly Witches is incredible. They fancy themselves the finest Women in the World, and look on us from top to bottom with their Hands to their Sides disdainfully. 'Tis said, they are of a strange Temper, and that at certain times have a Madness come upon them, during which they emit as strong a Vapour from their Bodies, as those of a Hind in Season. They wear a sort of Petticoat which covers them from their Wasts to their Knees, which however is not necessary, since certain Skins hanging from their upper parts like Furbelo's are sufficient to do that Office. Some have told me they had the Curiosity to look under these Veils, and an end of Tobacco procur'd them that Liberty. [See Apron* and Plate 60.]

Men do not intermix with Women abroad; each Sex had its Affairs apart, and go in different Companies. They neither knew what Gold or Silver was, or had any notion of Money till the arrival of the *Hollanders* at the *Cape*. Their Humanity towards one another, yields in nothing to that of the *Chineses*. They mutually assist each other in their Necessities, to that degree that they may properly be said to have nothing of their own: Their Address in darting their *Zagaye* is singular. This is a sort of Half-pike, arm'd at the end with somewhat that is hard and pointed. They are so exact when they throw this Pike, that they will do it within the compass of a Crown. 'Tis with this they dart Fish, so that they never want any Edible of that kind.

The *Company* has so considerable a Trade with them, that they have almost all their Cattle from them. They bring great numbers of Oxen and Sheep to the *Cape*, and the *Company* gives for each, as much roll'd Tobacco of the bigness of one's Thumb, as will reach from the Beasts Forehead, to the root of his Tail, or else they have for each Beast a certain measure of *Aqua-vitae*, such as they agree upon. This Commerce is rigorously forbid to the new Inhabitants, who are not allowed to purchase any Cattel of the *Hottentots* in any manner whatsoever, under the penalty of 50 Sous [in French original ‘écus’, i.e. crowns or Rxd.] for the first Offence, 200 for the Second, and being whipp'd and banish'd for the third. The *Company* sells every Ox again for 25 *Florins*, and every Sheep for seven, in a manner that without much burdening the Buyer, or running any Risque, they make great Profit.

However ignorant, or rather how bestial soever the *Hottentots* are, they know something of *Simples*, and make use of them with Success. Let one be bit with any venomous Creature, be one Wounded or Ulcerated, or let there be any Swelling or Inflammation, they know how to go exactly to the Plant that will cure them, and administer the Remedy with greater Success than we oftentimes do ours. The Sick that

have been brought a-shoar at the *Cape* have often experienced this, and those Wounds that very skilful Surgeons have given over, have in a short time been cur'd by these People. The most ordinary way is to pound the Herbs and apply them to the Wound, but the Patient swallows likewise divers Juices press'd out of the same Herbs.

Neither this Nation, nor any of the others of the Southern Point [*sic*] of *Africa*, are absolutely without Government. They have even hereditary Chiefs, who may reasonably be call'd *Kings*, because they wear a sort of Crowns as I have been often inform'd by a curious Traveller, who penetrated two hundred Leagues up into the Country. But altho' these Chiefs may have a general Right to inspect the conduct of the People, they seldom make use of it but in time of War, and then too not always. The Inhabitants scatter'd here and there, form to themselves certain sorts of little Republicks, where they observe Customs that have in time become Laws. I have already told you, they punish severely wilful Murther, Adultery and Theft. They have divers other usages founded upon natural Equity, which they make use of for conservation of their Kind, and the Republick.

The *Company* for the most part has a good understanding with those different Nations; but as there are some of them that have Wars with the *Hottentots*, Neighbours to the *Cape*, so the *Hollanders*, whose Interest it is to protect them, think themselves oftentimes oblig'd to declare on their side.

As we touch'd at the *Cape* the first time we saw a Detachment of thirty or forty *Dutch* Soldiers, who had been sent by the Governor against five or six Thousand *Hottentots*, return from the Expedition [DR 1/1/91]. They had been a hundred Leagues up in the Country, and had defeated an Army of 8 or 10,000 Enemies. As soon as the Muskets had laid some few upon the Ground, the rest began to parly, and promis'd to live peaceably. The *Dutch* took above 10,000 Oxen from them, but restor'd them again and gave the *Hottentots* withal some Tobacco and Brandy to convince them that this was a Peace without fraud.

I will here add two or three things more concerning this People: They have no use of Reading, and consequently of Writing. Some Relation which I remember to have read, speaks of them as if they were Astrologers, but then their Astrology must be no great matter, at least I'm assur'd that they make no Division of Time, nor distinguish either by Weeks, Months or Years. The greatest part of those that are Neighbours to the *Cape*, have learnt to speak *Dutch*.

When they make Merry, their Cries or Howlings serve them for Songs. They Laugh sometime like to split their Sides, and their Dances are grotesque and indecent, altho' the women do not mix with the Men, but Dance by themselves.

I have often observ'd young People among them, making Love after an extraordinary gallant manner. The Lover approaches his Paramour who expects him either sitting or standing, and without saying a word to her, presents Smiling the second finger of his Right Hand just over against her Eyes, as if he would tear them out. After he has mov'd his Finger about for a quarter of an Hour, Laughing all the while, from one Eye to

another, he suddenly turns his Back, and goes away as he came. Their Marriages are without Ceremony [*sic*].

Sometimes they assemble by Dozens or Twenties, and squat down upon their Heels without touching the Ground any otherwise. The Circle being thus form'd, a Pipe of Tobacco goes round, and every one takes a whiff till the Pipe is out. I never observ'd that this good Fellowship was ever interrupted by any Quarrel, and to say true, they are by no means Mutinous. They feed, lie, and live together like a Herd of Oxen and Cows, doing like them the ordinary functions of Nature with all manner of Simplicity. As Avarice is no reigning Passion among them, and all that come to Want are immediately reliev'd by the rest, it seldom happens that any of them mind Stealing, so that the Christian Inhabitants let them come and go without fearing to lose any thing by them.

There are at the *Cape* a great number of *Negro's* that are brought from *Madagascar*, *Ceilon* [*sic:* none], and other Islands. Those among them that are Slaves, go almost Naked, and are treated as you have heard; but other that are free, have Horses and Coaches [*sic:* read 'houses and clothes', as in French original 'ont des maisons a eux, et sont habillez']. They say they worship one only God, Creator of all Things, and that they likewise have a great Veneration for the Sun and Moon, as his two chief Ministers whose principal Commission is to vivify the Earth, and all the Inhabitants that inhabit it; but this Adoration is Secret and Interior. They have neither Images, Ceremonies, nor any other manner of sensible Worship; and admit no other Law than that of Nature. If they Feast and Dance at the renewing of the Moon, it is not to show any respect for her, but like the *Hottentots*, to rejoice at the return of the Light. In a word they are perfect Deists, whereupon I can't forbear taking notice by the by, tho' against the common Opinion, that there is no real difference to be made between these People, and those we call Atheists, since the indolent God of the Deist is no God, and that herein they are less Orthodox than the wicked Spirits who have a juster Idea of the Divine Being.

Moreover to say that we worship God without loving him, without fearing him, without asking any thing of him, or expecting any thing from him; without caring for him in any manner what soever, is properly speaking to have no God at all, and to have no God is to be an Atheist.

When these Negro-Slaves obtain their Liberty it is a fatal Happiness for them, for whilst they are Slaves those that have Authority over them, take care to instruct them in Religion, and teach them to Read and Write, which the *French* Refugees above all employ themselves about with a great deal of Earnestness; but when they become free, while they are young, they become at the same time Libertins. It seems to me likewise desirable, that the same care were taken of those *Hottentot* Children who are most conversant with the Inhabitants of the *Cape*....

After we had refresh'd ourselves here for near a month, we departed the 8th of *March*, 1698 [DR 13/3], and sail'd directly for *St. Helena*....

There until April 26. Northabout. Vlissingen June 28, 1698. He lived near London until 1725, then dying at the age of 96* (*HS*).

Background - continued

13/3/1698 ... all the [return-] fleet set sail ...

4/4 ... the Danish ship *Princesse Louise* towed to the roads ... bound for Trancquebare ...

11/4 ... towards evening came in ... the ship the *Unie* bound for Batavia, and the French vessel *L'Estoile d'Orient* [suspected of being a pirate, but her Pass* found in order]

19/4 ... the French ship the *Philpeau* arrived towards noon ...

25/4 ... the little flute* the *Sandloper* [homeward] ... arrived at the roads by night ... because of the calm the little flute *Boor* towed to the roads, followed by three English return-ships, namely *Carolus Secundus*, Captn. Derreil, 60 guns and 180 men, left Bombay January 28; the *Scepter*, Captn. Baarlo, 36 guns and 150 men, also from there; and *Sidny*, Captn. Scheffer, 30 guns and 80 men, this last from Bengalen ... the said English ships having had no dead or sick ...

26/4 ... arrived the ship *Schellag* [later '*Schelling*' and '*Shellak*'] ... from Galen ...

29/4 ... the two French ships sailed ...

86 John Dorrill

(*See also item 80.*) *Transcribed from xerographs of his log* (*MR 104*) *kept in* Charles the Second, *now homeward from Bombay and Surat. The dates are of course Old Style**.

Fryday 15th [April 1698: DR 25/4]. Before yesterday afternoon 1 Clock; It clearing up over the Land we made the Table hill over the Cape ... Varia [Declination*] Wt. 11^{o} 15 ... at 8 it Clearing we saw the Table hill bearing Et, Charles's mount Et½No & Chapmans Chase ESEt½So ... we bent our Cables, unstowed our Anchors, & gott all our Quarters & Guns cleare, not knowing who we may meet going in, it being much suspected that the ffrench should lurke about the Cape....

About 4 Clock in the afternoon ... we Gott into Sadinia or Table Bay in company with the Sceptar [no log] & Sidny [item 87], which was the ship we have had sight of some Days; She came from Madras the 29th of January; we anchored in 7½ fa. the middle of the Table hill bearing SbWt, the outer part of Green point, WbNo, & the body of Pengwin Island NobWt½Wt, we found riding here 9 Sayle of Dutch homeward bound Ships [as DR 8/5], 1 Deane Ship from Europe [DR 4/4], & 2 french Ships [DR 11/4, 19/4], which was formerly the Seymore & Success, who brings out the Joyfull news of peace over all Europe.

Saturday 16th ... we have this Day overhalled some part of our Rigging, yards & Topmasts being Downe; healed & Scrubbed our Ship's bottom, & stopt two leaks we had between our two lower Harpins* on each Bow, the Oacomb being washt out of ye seam each side the Stem; & gott our Caske* ready to fetch water ... in the afternoon came in a small Dutch ship from Zeloan [DR 26/4].

Sunday 17th ... gott off 2 boats load of water....

Tuesday 19th. ffaire weather these 2 Days past ... gott 4 boats of water from the

Shoare & fetcht 2 Boates for the Sidny; gott up our yards and Topmasts; this morng: sayled the 2 french Ships bound for Bengal [DR 29/4] & likewise came a Dutch Hackboate* from Zeloan for Europe.

Wednesday 20th. This Day gott on board 2 boats load of water, in the Eveng: it began to blow hard off the Table hill; we struck our yards & Topmasts.

Thursday 21st ... in the morng: we towed our Longboate* on Shoare with the Barge* & Yawle*, to fill all our empty Caske*; in the afternoon she returned loaden we bent our Streame Cable to the Small Bower Cable & veered to take up our best Bower [anchor*], and by noon had him on board and streame Cable in againe: In the Afternoon ... we Gott up our yds. & Topmasts....

[Sailed DR 2/5. England July.]

87 William Gyfford

(*And see note to item 84*.) *Transcribed from xerographs of his log* (*MR 105*) *kept in* Sidney *sailing in January 1696 for Madras and Bengal*, *and now homeward bound from Calcutta*, *All his dates are of course Old Style**.

Saturday 16 [April 1698]. This 24 houres wee have had fine weather with the land & Sea breeze between 2 & 3 yesterday in the afternoon [DR 25/4] wee came to an Anchor in 9 Fatham water in Table bay where wee found about 10 Saile of Dutchmen [see DR 8/5] a Dean [DR 4/4] & 2 french Ships Soe concluded wee had peace which the french ships soon informed us off But Dutch here had advice of it [DR 3/2] before these 2 Ships arrival by a packet from Holland one of these Ships was the Seamore I was taken in & the other the Success Capt Juniper last night at 8 of the Clock wee moored the Sugar loaf bore SW by W ½ Wt & Charles Nount S½Wt ... about 5 the Charles Capt. John Dorrill [item 86] & the Scepter Capt Barlow (Capt. Phiney being dead) Commandr [no log] came in hither....

Sunday 17 ... yesterday came in a Dutchman from Batavia [DR 26/4].

Munday 18. This 24 houres pleast. weather....

Tuesday 19. Yesterday sailed from hence the 2 Frenchmen [DR 29/4] one for Bengall & the other to Don Mascareen [Réunion] & about the same time came in a Dutchman from the Southard [not identified: contradicts item 86].

Wednesday 20 ... fine pleast. weather.

Thursday 21 ... this day got all our water on board & unmoored & got upp our yards & Topmasts.

Ffryday 22 ... at 7 this morng. weighed with a small breeze at SSE in Compy. with the Charles & Sceptre both from Surratt....

[Home July 14 New Style*.]

Background - continued

2/5/1698 The said English ships ... set sail ...

3/5 ... about noon came to the roads the English return-ship the *Samson* ... 40 guns and 115 men ... 1 dead on the journey, bringing 3 sick, having left Bengalen on January 28 last ...

5/5 ... the *Unie* set sail for Batavia ...

6/5 ... this day the Danish ship *Prins Fredrik* departed ...

8/5 ... all the return-ships set sail, namely the *Gendt*, *Carthago*, the *Boor*, the *Sandloper*, the *Leck*, *Ysselmonde*, the *Berkel*, the *Schelling* and *Blois* ...

88 William Erle

(*See also item 83*.) *Transcribed from xerographs of his log* (*MR 107*) *kept in* Sampson. *His dates are of course Old Style*. In his homeward passage from Bengal*, *on April 20 at noon* '*Cape Degull*' *bore* '*Et½So*, *Cape Falso NbEt*, *the Table Land NNWt*.'

Thursday 21. Yesterday about 2. a Clock in the afternoon we Doubled about Cape Bona Esperance ... in the afternoone we bent our Sheet cable & best bower [anchor*] Designing if Possible to morrow to get into Table Bay ... at 6 this morng: the Table Land Et½No the Shugor Loafe EbNo½No....

Friday 22d ... at 12 this noone the Table Land bore SEbEt the Lyons Rump ESEt Dista 7 Leags: Eveing Variato [Declination*] by a Amplitd 10^{o} 47′ NoWtly....

Satturday the 23 ... Yesterday about 1 a Clock I see 3 Shipps to the NEtwd: which came out of Table Bay I suppose they were English homeward bound Shipps from Suratt. I Shewed my Collours and Fired a Gun and in a Small Time after it was answered with another and I perceived their English Collours [see below].... 6 a Clock this morng: sprung up a fine Easey Gale NEtly so I stood in ESEt the Fogg continued very thick insomuch that I could not see the Land till nere 8 a Clock then it cleared and Wee se Penguin Island and a Small Time after se about 12 Shipps in The bay shewing Dutch Collours [DR 8/5 etc.] Comeing by one of them they haild us and Wellcombd us with the Good news of Peace in Euerope presently after that a boat came on board us [DR 3/5] and Gave me an Acott: of the 3 Shipps I se Yesterday that they were the Sidney [item 87] from Fort St Geo: the Charles [item 86] and Septer [no log] from Surratt between 12 & 1 a Clock I came to with my Sheat Anchor* in :6: fa watter I salluted the Fort with 13 Gunns which they answered with the same afterward fired 7:3 & 1 which were all answered Gunn for Gun then we hoisted out our Longboat* unbent the best bower cable From the small bower Anchor* and bent the stream cable to the spare anchor and with a small anchor and Harser [Hawser] Carried out with our Long boat to the Wtward

and moored with our sheate anchor* to the Nwd Green point bearing NWtbWt ... we Lowred Downe the Maine & fore Yard....

Sunday 29 ... wee Lowred our Topmast [?s] & bent the best bower cable then hoisted up the spare Anchor from the maine hatchway and set the Carpe[nter] about stocking of it ... in the afternoone the Wind abated and it Proved faire weather then we cleared the after part of the Gun Deck and towd [toward] Eveining sent The Long boat a shore with 10 buts for watter which they brought off the same night.

Monday 28.... Some Dutch Captns and Gentlemen being on board I fired 34 Gunns at Times Recd on board 19 Butts of Watter this Day sailed a Dutch Shipp for India [DR 5/5]: The Calckers went about Fisining* [?] the Shipp without board.

Tuesday 26. This Day Recd on board 20 buts of watter ... this afternoone sailed a Dean Shipp for India [DR 6/5] we gott the spare anchor over on the Larboard side.

Wednesday 27. This morn: gott up our Topmast [?s] & Yards Recd on board 4 butts of watter....

Thursday the 28. This afternoone sailed out 9 Dutch Shipps bound for Europe [DR 8/5].... I ordrd my Longboat* ashoare for my sick People & a but of salt and some other Things at night Weighed our spare anchor with the Long boat Designing if Possible to saile the next Day I Recd on board 59 butts of watter and 7 sheep at this place This Day I was Invited to the Governr to Dinner I presented to the Gover 2 bales of fine Rice and to the Phisical [Fiscaal*] one.

Friday 29. Att 2 a clock This morng hove short on the sheet cable faire weather with very Little wind & calme till a bout 10 a clock sprung up a fine gale Soly [Southerly] then I weighed and ½ an hour after 10 a clock got to saile ... I salluted the Fort with a 11 Gunn they answered with 9 I return One they One and I one moore....

[Home August 8 New Style*.]

Background - continued

9/5/1698 ... the said English return-ship the *Samson* weighed anchor, setting her course for Saint Helena and London ...

1/6 Resolutions [frigate* *Soldaat* to take specie, papers, salvaged goods from *'t Huys te Craijensteyn* wrecked 28/5 near the Kloof, then to Mauritius for ebony; thence Madagascar for slaves, and enquire for the missing *Ridderschap*, believed wrecked there]

1/7 ... 751 men in garrison* ...

30/7 Resolutions [shooting of wild animals and birds permitted only from December 15 to August 15 yearly, except for own consumption and not for sale to foreign ships]

13/9 Resolutions [distilling of brandy entirely prohibited, as using corn which should be sold to the Company]

25/9 Resolutions [*Jupiter* surveyed and found too old to be worth repairing]

Chapter four Greed and Graft 1699-1702

89	Robert Betton	445
90	John Merry	447
91	Charles Hill	450
92	John Browne	450
93	Caleb Grantham	451
94	Henry Hammond	452
95	Sir William Norris	453
96	Robert Hudson	454
97	Martin Wintergerst	458
98	Charles Coatsworth	464
99	Matthew Lowth	465
100	William Dampier	471
101	*Anonymous*	471
102	Benjamin Boucher	473
103	- Lullier	474
104	Abraham Bogaert	477

[NB][+]

The double-column text that follows contains extracts from the Cape Council's Diary, supplemented by other documents in the Archives. The texts of the authors are in large, Roman type, my comments and notes are either italicised or in square brackets. [DR] in the text means: *Confirmed by the Diary entry for this date*; whereas [DR 10/3] means: *But the Diary has this for March 10*. An asterisk* following a word means: *Refer to the index for further information*, where also will be found identifications of places, people, flora, fauna, the titles of books cited by authors' names, and notes on points marked with asterisks in the text.

+ '[red. dbnl] zie verantwoording'

[1699]
General Peace.
Background-from official documents in the archives

8/1 ... comes in a Danish flute* called *Charlotte AEmilia* to her companion *Prins fredrik* in the roads...

22/1 ... towards evening arrived the *Stad Ceulen* and the *Drie Kroonen*, with which came the Hon. Extraordinary Councillor and Governor WILHELM ADRIAAN VAN DER STEL with his family [in *Ceulen*, and took over 11/2] ... left Texel on September 22 last year ...

25/1 ... their sick taken ashore, 44 in number ...

30/1 ... quite early came to the roads the ship *Eijklenburg* ...

31/1 ... came in [held up by calm at Robben Island overnight] ... the English return-ship *Faam*, October 12 from Madras, 38 guns and 110 men ... no dead or sick ...

4/2 ... the said Danish return-ship ... now set sail ...

7/2 ... two Dutch ships [of 22/1] set sail ...

8/2 ... the said frigate* *Eyklenburg* ... set sail ... the aforesaid English return-ship the *Faam* ... also weighed anchor, but since her compatriot *America*, 24 guns and few men, coming from Borneo via Batavia ... at that moment entered the bay, she ... reanchored ..

89 Robert Betton

Transcribed from xerographs of log [*MR 111*] *kept by John Conaway*, *First Mate in* Fame, *sailing for Madras in February 1697*, *and now homeward bound from there. All his dates are Old Style**, *but it will be noticed that he shows the year in both Styles*.

Annon 1698/9. Satturday the 21: [January: DR 31/1] ... at 11 a clock wee Anchored in 9 fath. Watter abt. 2 Miles from the Road the fort bearing SW.½W the Shugger lofe SWbW.¾Wly. and the Westermost part of the Lyons Rump pot. [point] bore Wt ... when we came in the Deans Commander [DR 8/1] saluted us with 9 Gunns and showed their Colours and wee Answered and we Answered [*sic*] them with 9 for thanks after Dinner I sent the Purser on shore to pay my Respects to the Governer and to Accquaint him from whence wee came and to know wether he wou'd Allow us to Come in to the Road to Watter and Refresh our men abt. 5 in the eveng. the Purser came on board who told me he had granted Liberty but pleaded a Scarcity of fresh Provisions which is their Custom when Mined to Raise their Price.

Sunday 23 This morning att 4 of the Clock wee Weighed after wee had Runn Out a warp* of about 300 fath. and hove in till we came nere a-Peak* then it being calm wee

stopt our Shipp by our Long boats Anchor and Runn out our Warps again of near 400 fath. then wee had a small breeze came in at NW. but Continued not Long that wee Gott our boats ahead and Towed in till wee came into 7 fath. Watter and then Anchored with our best bowr Anchor* to the NWd. and small bower to the SE ... Charles Mount SSW att our Comming to an Anchor wee saluted the Fort with 12 Gunns in hopes to Oblidge the Mighty Hogan Mogans [hogen mogendheid] but after their old Brutish Manner they returned us 11 in Answer Under No Colours Nor any of their shipps showed us any but the Two Deans whare More Civill in the Afternoon I went on shore and with me Mr. Thredcroft one of the Counsell at Madderass to Pay my Respects to the Governer who wee Understood was gon in to the Country which Caused us to Wite till Late in the Eveng. att which Time he being Come home wee went to him a second Time to demand Permission which in abt. ½ an hours Time wee had Granted after wee had stood att the Gate till our Eyes was Allmost out with the Sand then he Admitted us into a long Unfurnished Roome [? omitted: and being come therein, he made many close enquiries of me concerning] my Business name and Burthing [Burden] Names and force of the shipp. No. of men and from Whence wee came I made him Answer I did belong to the Honble East India Company and Desired that I might have Liberty to Watter and Refresh my men he Answered me Couldly that wee Might Watter but as for Provisions they whare scace and Could not be spared and so I was Dismist with out sitting down or being Asked to drink and I do Intend they shall be as little the Better for me as Possible I can I Attempted to Go on board Again but it blew hard that wee could not. [W.A. was now Governor, though he did not take over officially until 11/2.]

Munday 23 This morning being heartily Werey of the showes [?] and civility of the people I made an Attempt to Gett on board again but After a great deale of Trouble was forced to Return on shore Again the Wind and sea being so Great that wee could not Gett off, but In the Afternoon wee Gott on board again....

[24th Watering. 25th ditto, Danes sailed homewards DR 4/2. 26th watering. 27th ditto and wood.]

Satturday 28. This morng. gott upp our Yards and Topmast[?s] ... two of the Dutch shipps sailed bound for Battavia [DR 7/2]....

Sunday 29. Att 5 this morng. sent our Longbt. to Weigh our Small bower ... att 7 Gott him on board and hove short* on our best bower ... the Signall on the Shugger lofe hill was made as Usuall when Anly [*sic*] shipp was Comming In to the Bay ... seeing her to have English Collours I went on board and it proved to be the America an Interloper* in the Afternoon the other Dutch shipp Sailed [DR 8/2]....

Munday 30 [DR 9/2] This morng. att 6 a Clock wee weighed ... and att 4 being Well out Lay by and Gott in our Boats and stowed our small bower Anchor....

[England June 27, New Style*.]

Background - continued

9/2/1699 ... the *Faam* again weighed anchor and continued her journey ...

12/2 ... the ship *Venhuysen* ... now in the roads [sailed for Batavia 27/2] ...

13/2 ... comes in the ... return-fleet with the Commissioner Daniel Heins, except for the ship *Vosmaar* [names not given: *Oostersteyn*, *Ilpendam*, *Unie*, *Dregterland*]

14/2 ... comes the said ship *Vosmaar* to the roads ...

19/2 ... came the return-ships the *Huys te Loo* and *Driebergen*, also [outwards] the frigate the *Tamboer* ...

20/2 ... the long-awaited flute* *Overrijp* ... came into the bay [outwards] ...

21/2 ... orders of the Government of the Indies [Batavia] to inspect the bhay Fals, which task was neglected by the Commandeur Claes Bichon last year ... two of the skippers of the present return-fleet [with the Governor and two of the Council]

24/2 ... came safely to the roads the said ships *Spiegel* and *Berkenrode*, September 23 last year ... from Texel ...

25/2 ... this day arrived ... the English ship *Fliet*, Capn. Jan Harrij, 22 guns and 60 men, bound for China ... in the afternoon came a letter from the ship *Peter and Paul* lying in the Saldanbhay ... from Holland October 24 of last year 1698 by continual adverse winds ... compelled to run into the Sardinje bhay ...

1/3 [Ridiculous report on False Bay, 'inspected' by a visit to one place on the nearer shore: no water, poor soil, no good anchorage]

90 John Merry

Transcribed from xerographs of his log (*MR 116*) *kept in* Fleet, *frigate**, *sailing for Batavia on October 20, 1698. His dates are of course all Old Style**, *though he shows the year as '1698/9'*.

February 15th [1699:DR 25/2]: This day at 2 a clock after noone we anchored in Table Bay at Cape Bona Esperance (for which mercy God be praised) haveing all my men in perfect health, depth of Water 6 fathams. The Fort bore from us SSW, Green Point NWBW, and the boddy of Penquin Isle NBWt, wee rid a large mile off shoar. soe soone as my anchor was gone I salluted the Forte with 11 Gunns then 5, 3, and one they gave me Gunn for Gun....

Sent my Purser a shoar this after noone to the Governer to acquaint him whence I came and to desire leave for Water & refreshment he answered that Water there was Enough. but as for Refreshment hee could spare me none but what the ffreemen could they should have liberty soe to doe &c.

16th: This morning I went on shoar and waited on the Governer who told me just as he had sent me word by my Purser that by reason of their owne Shipps being here could spare me nothing but the freemen might &c : he was just goeing to Cape falco [DR 21/2]

to see if there be any security for Shipps to Ride in that Bay &c.

17th: February 1698/9. This day fair weather, with Land & Sea breeses gott fresh mutton here for my men &c. Refreshments. We found in this Road 14 Saile of Ships 10 of which are come from Batavia and waite the Comeing of the Shipps from Zelon to make up their ffleet the [*sic*] Expect them in every day [DR 13/2, 14/2, 19/2], 3 are come oute of holland and one came after these with Tea [DR 12/1, 19/2, 20/2, 24/2] & is bound for Batavia againe. The Captn. John Coyne a Scotch man &c. [?]

[Then no entry until:]

23d February 1698/9 Wee have layne in this Port since the 14th instant in which time wee have watered our Ship and refresht our men what wee could and the afternoone abt: 3 aclock we weighed and came to Saile with the Sea Brease at WNWt being bound to Amoy in China to which Place Pray God send us in safty. Amen.

Background - continued

8/3/1699 ... coming to the roads the said frigate* *Peter and Paul* ...

19/3 ... in the evening arrived the English ship *Grace Dieu*, 34 guns, 68 men ... departed from England December 3 last, bound ... for Bengalen ...

20/3 ... towards evening ... the [return-] fleet set sail in good order [names not given]

2/4 ... the Hon. Governor went on board the flute* the *Huys Overrijp*, as also the frigates the *Tamboer* and *Peter and Paul* ... to see in what state they were ...

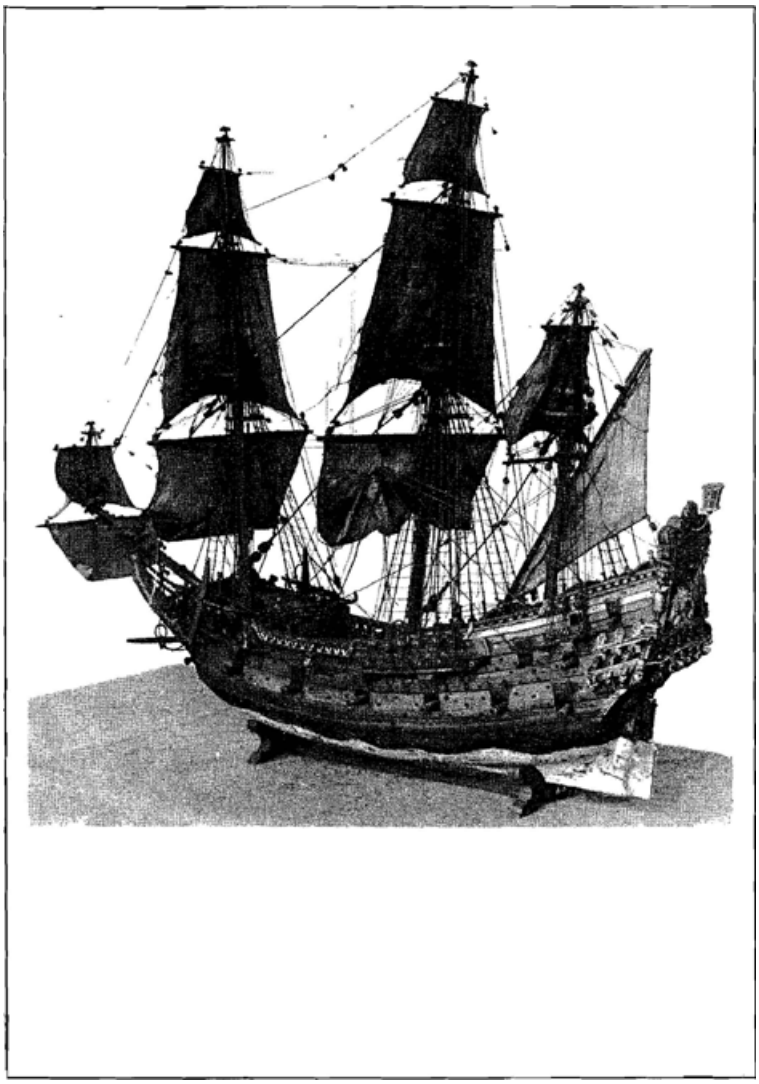
5/4 ... at noon ... arrived the ship *Cattendyk*, bound for Batavia ... sailed December 10 last ...

8/4 ... arrived ... an English vessel named *Josias*, Captn. Richard Stratton, 40 guns and 100 heads, bound for India ... November 9 ... ran out of Torbaij and January 17 touched Cadix ...

10/4 ... comes to the roads also the little English ship named *Swift*, Captn. Christoffel Buskel, 8 guns and 25 men, February 23 Old Style* from a little island at Madagascar, bound for Jamaica [sailed 19/4]

12/4 ... the English ship *Benjamin*, Captn. Brouwn arrived in this bay, 32 guns and 92 men, November 20 ... run out of Torbaij and January 17 departed from Cadix, bound ... for Madras.

16/4 ... the Hon. Governor ... made a tour to the Roode [*sic*] bosje to inspect the work begun in the Company's vegetable-garden ...



[62] PINNACE, later 17th Century. The mizzen is now higher than in earlier types, and provision is made there for a topsail. Top-gallants were still relatively rare in Dutch ships. The stern is square, but less elaborate than that of the typical East-Indiaman. The head is clearly shown, and the masts for spritsail and spritsail topsail. From the Nederlands Hist. Scheepvaarts Museum, Amsterdam.

91 Charles Hill

Transcribed from xerographs of his log (*MR 115*) *kept in* Josiah, *Richard Stratton Captain. The dates are of course all Old Style*. Sailed October 25*, *1698 for Balasore*, *Ceylon etc*.

March Wednesday the 29th [DR 8/4] ... about 3 or 4 afternoone anchored in the bay in 7 fathom ... here found rideing 4 Dutch Ships [DR 2/4, 5/4] at 10 at night got Long boat* out & struck topmasts & Yards....

Thursday the 30th. Today struck 10 of our Gunns downe in hould gott a tunne of watter aboard....

Fryday the 31st Today sett up main shrouds & stayed mainmast gott three tunns of watter from the shore in the morning. Capt Xtoph Bussill in the Swift came in from Madagascar with Negroes for Jamaica [DR 10/4]....

Satterday Aprill 1st ... sett up fore shrouds.

Sunday the 2d ... gott up topmasts and Yards in the afternoone Capt Jno Browne [item 92] came to Anchor here at night gott in our Long boat.

Monday the 3d ... toward noone the Sidney Capt Grantham [item 93] came in in the Evning gott our long boat out.

Tuesday the 4th ... today sent the long boat to help water the Sidney.

.....

Satterday the 8th [DR 18/4] ... in the Morning scrubed ship unmoored & hove short* gott our long boat in & stowed at afternoone weighed with the benjamin & sidney....

92 John Browne

Transcribed from xerographs of his log (*MR 97*) *kept in* Benjamin: *his dates are of course all Old Style*. Sailed for* '*Fort St. George*' (*Madras*) *on November 5*, *1698*.

Aprill 1699 [? 2nd: DR 12/4] Att noone see Penguin Island And att 3 in the Afternoone we Anchored in Table Bay ... The Shipe Josiah was found here and the Sidney Arived the day after vs, and there were severall Dutch Shipes outward Bound....

[Then no entry until:]

This day the 8th Aprill In the Aftern: we Weighed with A small Gale Soly [Southerly] and after Calme haveing our Pinniss* ahead to tow and att 7 att night we Anchored ... under Penguin Island the Sidny and Josiah being att an Anchor before us but soone After had a Fresh gale Soly Weighd and runn out....

93 Caleb Grantham

Transcribed from xerographs of his log (*MR 117*) *kept in* Sidney. *His dates are of course Old Style*. The margins are at times illegible, and it has been necessary to supply words by guesswork. He sailed in November 1698 for Cadiz and India.*

(? April 3: not in DR) ... at 1 a Clock we Came to an Anchor* in 7 fathom Water with our best bower So we moored with our Small bower To the Soward.... I found the josia [item 91] Captain Strutton here who hath been here this 5 Dayes and The Benjamin [item 92] Captain Brown who Got in one day before us Likewise a small English [ship] Called The Swift [DR 10/4] which Came from Malegascar With Neagroes bound for jamaca here is Likewise a Dutch Guard Ship [?] and two Dutch Ships more [DR 2/4, 5/4] and a Breeganteen* [*Tamboer*, DR 2/4] We have advice that the Fleet Frigate* [DR 25/2] and the Grasdue [DR 19/3] Capt Mirwell hath been here but [left] about Three Weeks a goe. We had our Kings Coullars abroad and Saluted The [Fort] With 9 Gunns They Returning 11 [?] againe.

Fryday Aprill 7. We have had fine Moderate Weather Ever since [arriving] And but Little Wind for the Moste Parte ... we having Got all our [water] Which is Aboute 56 Tonns Likewise provided with [all] Provitions we had Occation off So we Provided all in Readyness for the Saile....

Aprill the 8 Saterday. At I a Clock This Afternoon we Vnmoored The Wind at NW At 4 Weighed with the Josia and Benjamin in our Company [DR 18/4]...

Background - continued

18/4/1699 ... the aforesaid English ships *Josias*, *Benjamin* and *Sidny* ... set sail with no compliments nor the firing of any gun ...

10/5 ... in the evening came advice overland from the Saldanhabhay that a certain well-armed English pirate had entered the bay and taken two of our vessels, including the *Amy* ... resolved to send the ship the *Gent* [arrived 28/4 outwards] with the frigate* *Peter and Paul* [they sailed 11/5 returning fruitlessly 19/5: *Amy* had been looted of everything moveable]

19/5 ... came about noon ... the Ceylon return-ship *Sarjansland* ... in a very bad state ...

5/6 ... the ship *Beijeren* ... bound for Batavia came here to the roads, having run out from Goeree February 2 last ... forced by heavy weather to run into Pleymouth and remain lying there until March 11 ...

6/6 ... appears the English ship *Entelope*, 30 guns, and 93 men, coming from Portsmouth 3½ months ago, bound for Bengalen ...

7/6 ... storm ... the boat of the *Waterman* [arrived 19/5 outward] and one of the shoreboats somewhat damaged ...

8/6 ... about 8 o'clock the said five returnships, to wit *Nieuburg*, *Dieren*, *Bekesteyn*, *Bambeek* and *Spierdijk* ... set sail [had arrived 5/5 and 14/5]

11/6 ... the ship the *Waterman* set sail ...

94 Henry Hammond

Transcribed from xerographs of his log (*MR 120*) *kept in* Antelope, *sailing from England on January 11*, *1699 for Bengal. The log has been badly repaired*, *making the margins almost unreadable. His dates are of course Old Style**.

May 26. This 24 Hourse ... Small Winds fair Weather & Smooth Water at 8 this morning the Sugar Loaf Hill bore Et the Table Land EbS Cape ffals SEbEt ... at 7 this morning Saw a Sayle which Proved to be a Dutch India Ship [*Beijeren*, DR 5/6] which we left at Plymouth....

May 27 ... this afternoone Stood in for the Cape in which time we Unstooed our Anchors and bent our Cables ... abt 8 at night came to an Anchor [DR 6/6] in 7 fathom Water and found at Anchor 7 Sayle of Dutch Ships 5 of which is bound home [as DR 8/6] we [...] the Stream anchor* and Hawser out to Steady the Ship and abt 10 this morning moored with our small bower to the Wtward....

May 28 ... the Long boat went ashore for Water in the Evening it began to blow we Struck our yards and [topmasts] in the Night it blew very hard [DR 7/6] ... we Veered out upon our best bower ... in the morning abating I sent the Pinnace to see for [...] at 10 the Long boat came on board with Water [not having been] able to fetch the Ship last Night....

Monday 29 ... the 5 Sayle of Homeward bound Ships [sailed for] Holland [DR 8/6]....

Tuesday 30 ... we Continued Rummaging [restowing] the fore Hatchway and Setting all things to Rights....

Wednesday 31 ... the Long boat Returned againe [with] more green Trade ... this morning we Hoisting our yards & topmast.

[Thursday June 1] ... The Long boat made the last trip ashore for water bring aboard likewise severall Sheep with other Nesesary Provitions for the Ships Vse This morning we unmoored bringing our best bower anchor on board likewise Sayled from hence this morning an outward bound Dutch Ship [*Waterman*, DR 11/6].

[Friday June 2] ... abt 1 we Braught the Small bower cable to the Capst in order to Weigh but it Blowing hard forbore & road single all Night and abt 6 this morning braught the Cable againe to the Capstone and hove in ... soe Letting him remaine tell the Yawle* went on board an homeward bound dutch Ship to send letters for England & abt 9 we Weighed with a fresh gale as before at [...] Weighed another outward bound Dutch ship [*Abbekerk*, DR 12/6] we Running out with our foresayle to the Soward of Pengwin Island and the Cape but she went out to the Noward of the Island which also did all the Ship which sayled hence during our Stay we haveing run out the Land [DR 12/6] Braught too and Hoisted in our boats ... this bay is bould [steep-shored] & you may come in on either side of the Island but we came in & out between it and the Cape you must give the Green point a good birth being broken ground a good way off it....

Background - continued

12/6/1699 ... the ship *Abbekerk* [arrived 19/5] weighed anchor, as did also the said English ship *Entelope* ...

16/6 ... towards evening came ... the Heer Commandeur Thomas Waren with three English warships, sailed January 18 last ... from Portsmuyden, having touched at Madeira and St Jago: *Harwich* 50 guns, 200 men; *Anglesea* Captn Littleton 56 guns, 200 men; *Hastings* Captn White 36 guns, 140 men. No sick or dead, and said to be bound for Madagascar to try to damage the pirates there, although one cannot learn their real purpose; also arrived here today the English East-India Company's ship *Sceptre*, Captn Jan Phenny, 28 guns and 80 heads, run out of Portsmouth March 12 ... bound for Madras ...

17/6 ... learned that the Heer Ridder Willem Norris was on board one of the English ships.

20/6 ... The Hon. Governor being this morning in the Company's Garden was met there by the Ambassador Norris and other prominent persons, and after they had chatted for a time in a tent, the same left there at noon after an exchange of compliments ...

26/6 ... arrived the English warship *Lidzard*, Capn Johnson, 40 guns and 150 men ...

28/6 ... towards noon came also the English Company's ship named *Bedford*, Captain Hutson, 54 guns and 250 men, from England April 1 ... having had 2 dead and bringing 6 sick ...

1/7 ... garrison* 496 heads ... in the ships lying here and in the Saldanhabhay *Sirjansland* 106 head [homeward], *Westhoven* 221 [outward], *Peter and Paul* 70 [for Madagascar for slaves], the little flute* the *Hen* 50 [outward], the *Swaag* [bringing stores for the Cape], the *Berkel* 145 [homeward], *Beijeren* 208 [ditto], *Nieuwland* 75 [ditto]. Towards noon the said Heer English Ambassador with the said Hon. Commander and other senior English officers took their farewell of the Hon. Governor in the Company's Garden ...

2/7 ... the 4 English warships, together with the [English] Company's ship ... the *Sceptre*, as also our aforesaid Dutch vessel *Beijeren*, all weighed anchor ... but must anchor again across the bay ...

95 Sir William Norris

He went out as Ambassador to the Great Mogul in Harwich, *with* Anglesea, Hastings, Lizard. *On June 14* (*Old Style**) *he wrote as in Factory Records*, *Miscellaneous*, *vols. 19*, *20*, *here transcribed from xerographs. Touched at Maio March 7-10*, *São Tiago March 10-22. Equator April 9. May 19 fleet dispersed by storm*, Harwich *now alone: 'wee shipped a Sea in the great* Cabbin*, which carryed away the Bulkhead of the State Room*, *but did little other damage*, *except what was to my selfe*, *which was not much neither.' May 27 rejoined by* Anglesea, *May 30* by *Hastings* and *Lizard*.

On the 5th of June [Old Style*] in the Evening Wee made the Table Land of the Cape, but (night coming on) were forced to tack, and stand off again....

The next day being the 6th [DR 16/6] instant, about 5 in the Afternoon, Wee came to an Anchor here, with the Anglesey and hastings, but the Wind being Northerly, and the Lizard pretty far to Leeward, She could not fetch in. and the Wind having ever since continued in the same quarter, Wee believe She is forced about the Cape.... Wee found here the Sceptre, one of the Old Companyes Shipps which came in the same day, and five Dutch Shipps whereof 4 outward [?] and 1 homeward bound [DR 19/5].

On the 7th in the morning, Mynheer Adrian Vanderstell the Governour of this place, saluted me with 7 Gunns, & the Commadore answered him with the same Number, which was severall times repeated on both sides, this was a Civility never shown to any before the ffrench Embassadour to Siam, who touched here in the Year 87 [item 63], having saluted the place first.

On the 9th I came ashore, where I find every thing very good, but dear, and the place farr exceeding any Descrition I have seen of it. The Governour has treated me with all imaginable Civility. Wee shall stay here to gett Water and other Necessaryes, & then as soon as Wind and Weather will prmitt, shall proceed for India.

.....

The Governour has been soe kind to send me an Account of the English Shipps that have lately touched here, of which the following is a Coppy. [Includes the ships of items 91 to 94, DR 19/3 and 10/4, plus *Resolution* 31/3 to 8/4, *Duke of Gloucester* 5/5 to 30/5, and '*Singelde* as 'tis writ by the D. Sy' 13/5 to 19/5, all three homeward.]

Which being all that has occurred worth your notice since my last, I remaine [etc.]

P.S. June 16th O.S. [Old Style*]. This day [DR 26/6] the Lizard came to an Anchor in the Bay, having met with a hard Northerly Wind....

June 19th. Yesterday the Bedford belonging to the Old Company [item 96, DR 28/6] came to an Anchor here. I designe to goe on board to Morrow in order to sayle.

[Copy to the Mayor and Corporation of Liverpool.]

Both sent in a packett directed to the Secretary of State, delivered to the Govr of the Cape on Tuesday the 20th June, to be sent by a Dutch Merchant Shipp then ready to sayle for Holland [*Sirjansland*].

[By the DR he sailed on July 2.]

96 Robert Hudson

Transcribed from xerographs of log (*MR 124*) *kept in* Bedford, *sailing March 6 for Bombay etc. All his dates are of course Old Style**.

Sunday June the 18th ... at Day Light wee saw the Land of Cape Bona Esperance ... we stered In Et: and E b So: ESE; we saw the Lions Rump ESE of Us: at which time begin to Raise Pinguen Island the wind Freshning and Look Very Thick and Durrty ... at :8: the Aboue Island Bore Et: of Us Dist: 2: M: [the sea] Breaking on the Rocks that the Dutch call the Eleuens [not traced elsewhere: obviously Walvis Rock] that lyes about S from the Sd. Island: at :9: there Rose Shuch a Sea & Shuch a Fogg ... after which cleared up So that Could Sea the Land and Ships at an Anchor ... and att Noon Anchd. in :7: faths: watter [DR 28/6] ... wee Saluted the Ships Seeing the Kings Collers [item 95] and the Capn. sent me on Board the Comadore, and found they where 4: English men

of War the Septer Indiaman [of item 82, now outward: there is no log]: and 3 Dutch Ships [see DR 1/7]: the Imbasadore [Norris] was a Shore.

Monday June the 19 Looking as If would Blow wee Struck Yards and topmast ... Sent Our Boate for watter and gott Up Yards and topmast.

[20th, 21st, 22nd water and wood]

Fryday June 23d. In the morning Unmored and Lay Apeeke* ... about :3: weighd: in Compy. with 4 English men of war [DR 2/7]....

Background - continued

3/7 ... all reached the open sea, as also the English ship *Bedford* and the frigate* *Peter and Paul* ...

1/8 ... in the afternoon the Hon Governor ... rode above the Company's Garden, and there visited the Company's corn-mill ...

5/9 ... an English vessel named *Mountague* arrived in the bay ... 30 guns and 110 heads, with no dead or sick, left London April 12 ... bound for Suratte ...

6/9 ... arriving this morning ... the English ship named *Frederik*, Captn Wins, left the river Theems May 13 ... 28 guns and 85 men ...

14/9 ... the *Liefde* [arrived 28/8] and the two English ships set sail ...

14/10. Today being the birthday of the Hon. Simon van der Stel, lately Extraordinary-Councillor* of the Indies and Governor of this place, he was congratulated by the Hon. Governor and some of the senior Servants ...

18/10 ... south-east wind ... the five ships lying near land must again run out to sea ...

21/10 ... they came into the bay, to wit the *Huys Byweg*, the *Nederland*, *Peperboom*, the *Blois*, these four bound for Batavia, and the *Zion* for Ceylon ... by the great number of dead and sick *Nederland* was very weak, and had taken 25 men from the ship *Zion* while lying at anchor behind the Dassen Island ...

22/10 ... the *Peperboom* also very shorthanded ... 25 men sent to help her ... reported that the first four named ships had put to sea from Texel on May 9 last ... delayed by calms near the Line for two months ... had been in sight of the coast here for 14 days ... 5 days lying off Dassen Island, where they found the *Zion* at anchor ...

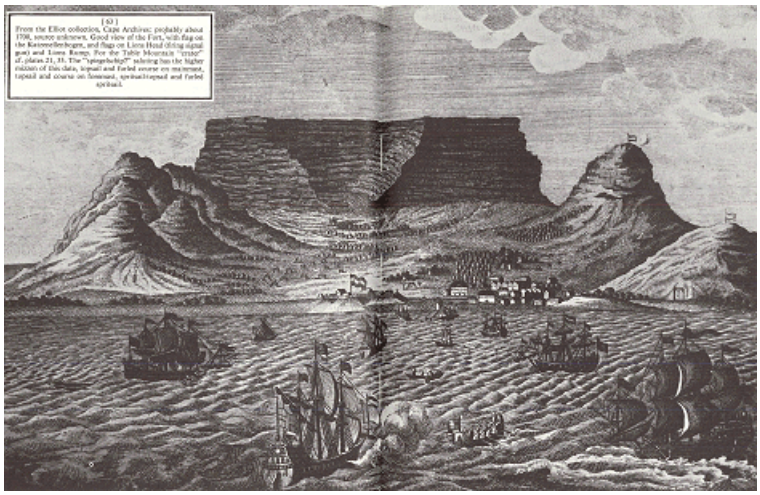
24/10 ... the Skipper Leendert van Deijl [*Peperboom*] ... reported ... 46 deaths during the journey and 150 sick, mostly with scurvy, but that of these about 90, in the short time that they lay before the Dassen Island and by the eating and use of a certain herb not unlike sorrel which the said Island produces [cf. item 97], had become sufficiently convalescent, so that ... now there were only 64 sick ... to send ashore. And since the new Hospital* ... was now sufficiently ready ... all the sick were brought there from the old hospital, which was very dilapidated and moreover stood in an entirely unhealthy place ...

27/10 ... at last the said ships the *Blois* and *Zion* came to the roads, the former having 14 sick besides 2 dead, the latter 34 sick besides 21 dead on the journey ...

10/11 ... towards noon arrived ... a small English ship called *Julia*, 100 feet long, 26 beam and 14 deep, Captain Charles Cotesworth ... 24 guns and 60 head, sailed from the Duijns on April 28, having touched at Madera, St. Jago and Ascention, having had 1 death on the way but without sick, bound ... for Batavia ...

11/11 ... in the night comes into this bay the English return-ship *The London*, 100 feet long, 18 beam and 15 deep, Captain John Flower, 30 guns and 70 men, with no dead or sick, having sailed about 2 years ago via Cadix and Madera to Batavia ... now returning from Bornea ... sailed from Batavia August 18 ...

14/11 ... Today being the birthday of H.M. of Great Britain, and the said two English ships firing their guns in honour of this, so also by orders of the Hon. Governor some light cannon were fired from this fortress.


[63]
From the Elliot collection, Cape Archives: probably about 1700, source unknown. Good view of the Fort, with flag on the Katzenellenbogen, and flags on Lions Head (firing signal gun) and Lions Rump. For the Table Mountain 'crater' cf. plates 21, 53. The 'spiegelschip?' saluting has the higher mizzen of this date, topsail and furled course on mainmast, topsail and course on foremast, spritsail-topsail and furled spritsail.

[63] From the Elliot collection, Cape Archives: probably about 1700, source unknown. Good view of the Fort, with flag on the Katzenellenbogen, and flags on Lions Head (firing signal gun) and Lions Rump. For the Table Mountain 'crater' cf. plates 21, 53. The 'spiegelschip?' saluting has the higher mizzen of this date, topsail and furled course on mainmast, topsail and course on foremast, spritsail-topsail and furled spritsail.

97 Martin Wintergerst

Translated from the 1932 Hague reprint of his '... Schwabe oder Reissbeschreibung ...', Memmingen 1712. Nothing is known of the author beyond what he himself tells us, and this is summarised below.

He was born at Memmingen in Swabia, probably about 1670, and trained as a baker. In February 1688 he left there 'from a lust to see distant lands' and worked his way in his trade around southern Germany; in 1689 reached Venice, where he took service as an interpreter with the Master of a Dutch privateer. He now decided on a seafaring life, and served in various privateers, French, Dutch, Danish, Genoese, Dutch again, finding himself at St Malo (in prison after the capture of his ship), Plymouth, Lisbon, Marseilles, Gibraltar, Alicante, Genoa, Sicily, Malta, and Genoa again whence he went overland to Venice. Voyages followed in a Venetian merchantman, a Spanish warship, a Venetian warship (in 1692 as Gunner's Mate, rising to Master-Gunner before paid off in 1695), a Dutch merchantman, a Dutch warship (until the Peace of Ryswick in 1697), another Dutch merchantman, arriving in Amsterdam in December 1698. He was unable to find employment until May 1699, when at Zeeland he signed on in Zion *of the Dutch East India Company, bound for Ceylon.*

... We lay before Vlissingen until May 19 [as DR], taking on board there 7 families of poor folk totalling 32 persons, which were later one of the causes that we must suffer so great hunger. Then we sailed.... [Sighted Canary Islands; rationing; driven to Guiana; half-rations and no water but from rain].... This was as miserable a voyage as I ever endured in my life. The 7 poor families which we had taken aboard at Flushing were already so far gone in hunger and misery that they were glad if we only threw them something; but now we ourselves had not enough, and all on board began to sicken, and many to die.... [Equator, 'already with more than 40 dead'; famine; scurvy.] At last with God's help we crossed the Tropic of Capricorn, and soon after reached the coast of Africa and made landfall; but again with new danger to our lives since we came there before we had thought. Had we arrived but half an hour before dawn we should have run aground, and none of us would have been saved, although we were so wearied of our miserable life that we should have been indifferent to its loss.

Nevertheless we were glad to see land again, and thus in October of this year [1699] we arrived at the so-called Dassen Island, 12 miles* from the Cape of Good Hope; and there we were indeed regaled in repayment of all our misery, since this is such a lovely spot (though barren of mankind) that I wished then, and still wish, to have a good painter to hand who could properly depict such a lovely zoological garden. It would truly be as beautiful a picture as has ever been seen; and indeed God has shown here a

lovely token and evidence of His Almighty Power, Goodness and Wisdom, which merits our praises: since as has been told we were all afflicted with that most dangerous sickness, and knew no way to help each other, 40 being already dead of it. Now God steered our ship to this island, where we found a certain herb in great abundance, by which we all became fit and well again; since as soon as we landed, some of us were ordered to see whether anything for our refreshing was to be found there, and among other things we found this herb, which we took (although ignorant of what it might be good for) and cooked as a green vegetable, and it proved a most excellent remedy for the said sickness [purslane, introduced].

But to tell something of the island which thus revived us, the same is not very large, but all the more useful. First we met there the so-called Begewind, or Indian ducks, or better said, they came to meet us. These are larger than our ducks, and somewhat smaller than geese, and walk almost erect: they came towards as many 1000 strong, and were so little afraid that we had to drive them away with sticks to make our way. Of these we took a good quantity, boiled them, roasted them, and hung them up to dry. And as we pushed our way through them, almost by force, we found many 1000 eggs in the sand, since at every moment our feet trod into holes in which the parents sat on their eggs, having made such hollows under the earth. Of these eggs we now took as many as we wished, boiled up a cauldron full of the abovementioned herb and broke 70 or 80 eggs into it, and found it a very tasty dish. These birds had a certain part of the island for themselves, almost exactly one quarter of it as we noticed; and when we came out of this somewhat higher up we saw no more of them, but instead all sorts of other wild birds, large and small, and of them truly many 100, as also eggs beyond numbering. We saw also that these birds came together in the early morning, and flew like a great army to the mainland, but returned to their quarters again in the evening in full force.

These agreeable inhabitants of the island greatly amused us, but we met with no human beings; and seeking further found that these birds also had their allotted territory, since the third part belonged to the seals, and from them the island has its name [*sic*], 'Seal Island' or as they say 'Dassen Island'. Of these again we met with many 1000, which came running to meet us, bleating like calves; but they did not seek to do us the least harm but on the contrary let themselves be caught by us, as many as we wished; and although they are not good to eat, their skins are good and usable by man. Therefore the folk from the mainland sail here, take some hundreds of them, and use the fat instead of oil for their lamps. There were also a few sea-cows, which we caught and butchered. The fourth quarter of this lovely zoological garden is inhabited only by rabbits [Dassies], or 'Killen' as they are called [his name not traced]. Of these also we took a good quantity, and so as to have meat with our green vegetable and eggs we stewed up these most tasty beasties with them, and satisfied ourselves with this, so that we regained much of our strength-since we were all so weak than otherwise I do not believe that we could have again raised the anchor.

Apart from this we met with nothing of note here, except that almost every evening

we saw a fair-sized whale, about 50 or 60 feet long, come swimming thither, which swam around this zoo as if he were a watchman and kept an eye on everything, also trying each time to catch some 20 or 30 of those Begewind. We left 5 of our company dead on this island, and set out for the mainland, reaching Trop [Robben] Island after sailing 9 miles*, this lying only 3 miles from the Cape of Good Hope. Here we found a Sergeant with a guard to watch over those on the island who had committed some crime: since, there being always many soldiers stationed at the said Cape, there are always some among them who misbehave. These after trial are punished with the cutting off of nose or ears, or with branding, and sent to this island for 2, 3, 10 or 20 years, where they must daily gather a set number of baskets of seasnails, to be burned into lime for building, these being found here in untellable quantities. For the rest, no fruits or other provisions are to be had here, except for good water [*sic*]; also from time to time fish are caught, and large crabs, a foot and a half long and weighing 3 or 4 pounds, and good to eat. But for the prisoners provisions are sent from the Cape.

The Sergeant in command there had a farm with a few sheep, of which he gave us two, after he had greeted us by flying his flags. We pushed on to reach the Land of Good Hope, but were again held back by a contrary wind so that we were forced to anchor; but only overnight, so that soon after setting off again we reached the place, or better the Land of Good Hope, so long and so greatly desired. There we dropped anchor, and at once those who were still sick were sent for and brought into the hospital* of the East Indian Company; and we who were fit were given fresh bread and meat during three days on end, as is always customary when ships arrive there. Now we felt ourselves as being escaped from death, and got ready to go ashore; but half the crew must remain on board because of the many winds, the other half going ashore, and then relieving those on board.

But our voyage had been so long that we arrived only late in October [DR 21/10]; and it was now Spring there, since the sun was now south of the Equator and the nights began to be shorter than the days, and thus we got nothing of the fruits. Nevertheless we were glad to have reached this land, and soon had forgotten our miserable voyage.

Now something must needs be told of this African promontory, because it is a noteworthy place, and truly the best port of call for the East-India ships, as if God had diligently set up such a Treasury there from which seafarers could reprovision themselves.

But I will insist before all else that, as in my narrative thus far, I will set down nothing but what I have myself seen; and if that which any have written before me, or shall write hereafter, does not tally in all ways, I am not to be chastised for my falsehoods, since things so change in such places from time to time that anyone who wrote of them 30 years ago and should now see them again would not himself believe that it was still the same place; and I warrant that this would happen to me also.

Firstly, then, as to the nature of this land: this is so splendid that one could not wish for anything better, and it truly enjoys a benign Influence of the Heavens so that it can rightly be called one of the very best on the face of the earth. And this because the land

is in itself very fruitful; and although it was never cultivated by its inhabitants, yet of late it has made such a show with its products than one might wish they had been cultivated many years ago. Also the air is so entirely healthy and temperate that I could not say what lacks there for bodily sustenance. In the beginning, when it was discovered, only some sailor's huts and a guard-house were to be seen there, but now it shows as a well-inhabited land. At first the Dutch had there only a poor hostel for the sick, but now they have a more than royal hospital*, cross-shaped in plan and able to take in some 1000 persons. Near it is also a garden*, an hour* across, in which all sorts of plants have been set; and this is divided into a kitchen-garden, a spice-garden, and a garden of medicinal herbs. There are also some cornfields, which are regularly cultivated by 42 slaves.

Four high mountains make a splendid show together at the shore of this promontory, the so-called Cape of Good Hope. Of these the first is called the Devil's Hill, because at various times a clattering is heard there and lights are seen, so that people have often thought to go there and find a treasure: below this hill lies the Fort, which is pretty strong. The second is the Table Mountain, thus called because of its shape: this, although very high like the first-named, has a large lake [*sic*] on its top, from which the most tasty water flows down, such as is not to be found in all the Indies, which is collected and drunk in abundance by the folk there, and especially by the seafarers: so also we, as soon as we had landed, at once filled 100 casks with this water and let them stand until we sailed, when we ran the water out and filled them again, since by this means it long remains good to drink. This is yet another marvel of Nature, ordained by God in such a well-situated place for the sake of seafarers, so that they may in truth enjoy the water to their hearts' desire and yet the source not run dry. The third hill is called the Lion's Head, on which there is always a guard on the lookout for ships. The fourth is called the Lion's Tail, and has this name because there is nothing special about it except that it completes the body of the Lion, so to speak, and helps towards the beauty of the scene.

I will later say something concerning the original inhabitants, but for the moment it serves my purpose to write something regarding those who have immigrated here, to wit that the region now belonging to the Dutch is occupied by many 1000 [*sic*] French, who were the first to awaken this naturally lovely land. And this because when in France the terrible Reformation [*sic:* he means the Revocation of the Edict of Nantes] took place the Dutch took in all the refugees and sent them hither, where they have made a sheer Paradise, both as regards all sorts of lovely plants and also well-made buildings. Where not long ago there stood only a few houses, there are now the loveliest villages, which after a little time can become great cities: where there was formerly almost nothing but a wilderness there now stand many 1000 quince and other trees (as also we brought in our ship [*sic:* from Holland?] some 100 coffee-bushes to be planted there): whereas formerly wine and grain had to be brought with much toil and cost from Holland to the Indies, now the finest wine can be made here, and exported to Batavia in great quantities - in fact because of its abundance they have ceased to plant vines here and gone over to growing grain, so that this also can be exported thither in great quantity like the wine.

There is great abundance of animals, and, like Africa in general, so also this seacoast has in this respect the advantage over all other parts of the world, not only as regards tame but also wild beasts. There are very many lions and tigers, which often do great damage; but since the Dutch now hold this part of the country, and maintain certain 'Lion-Guards' who are given 10 Rxd. for each one [shot], there is not now the same danger from them. There are also many elephants, but of quite a different sort from those of the Indies, since they are entirely wild and neither to be captured nor otherwise tamed; but these have their enemies, namely the rhinoceros or so-called 'Nose-Horn', of which indeed I saw a dead one stuffed [see Museum*] but none alive. There are also a fair number of wild or 'Forest-Asses', which are truly beautiful beasts, shaped much like an ass but having on their ass-grey skin the loveliest long black stripe, about the thickness of an average nut-tree, which makes them very handsome. Other animals such as we know are also there in great quantity, except that no wolves are found, which is also a wonder.

There is also an untellable abundance of tame beasts there, especially sheep and cattle, to such an extent that many a farmer among the French immigrants has up to 3 or 4000 head, whereas he arrived there a few years before penniless: since the Dutch have the custom that when such a one arrives they provide him with a waggon and 8 oxen, and for 3 years free him from taxes, so that he must be a dissolute wretch if during that time he does not come to something considerable.

These sheep are unusually large, in general up to 60 pounds, and very fat and tasty; but the skins and wool are little value, and of little use; and it is again a marvel that these sheep (which can go hidden in the grass, since this grows as high as our barley) can eat themselves so fat, whereas on the other hand the oxen usually serve for transport, and remain in general quite thin and scrawny. There are few pigs, in fact they form the least part of the tame animals.

Besides the birds which we have here there are many ostriches in this land, and their eggs are eaten in great quantities: these are so 'small' that once 7 of us ate our full from one of them, since it was so huge that it would hold about one and a half quarts. This we beat up into a paste, and since it was somewhat rank and bad to eat we did not finish it off. There are also especially many turkeys [*sic*] and canaries here. But so that this lovely land should lack something, God has not given it much wood, and this is very dear there: the slaves must collect roots for burning, and one can readily carry 24 Kroner worth in one's arms. Yet there is a compensation thereto, in that although at times the winds blow pretty cold, yet no frost ever falls [*sic*].

The original inhabitants are sufficiently well known from other books of travel. They are in general called Hottentots, being by nature a coarse, wild people: their clothing is for the most part an undressed skin which they bind round their middles, and another hung over their shoulders. The greatest pride of their women is to ornament their ankles with blown-out sheep-gutn; but apart from this they have neither neatness nor manners. In eating and drinking they are so coarse that even one of our pigs could not be worse:

they are black-skinned and have the custom of smearing themselves with everything fat, so that they stink and shine horribly. Their buildings are indeed very poor.

They know nothing of any special religion, and have neither churches nor priests. Their greatest observance is that they come together on a hill at each new moon (which they indeed know exactly, and hit upon without any reckoning of time) and carry on all the night a shrieking and yelling so that it is a torture to hear them. But by nature they know so much, that there is a Divine Being, whom they call their Great Captain; and when any die, they bury him leaning up in the grave so that he can at once go to meet this Great Captain when he comes. Otherwise there is so good as nothing to be done with them in matters of religion, and thus must remain of the same nature as they were born. Their language can no more be understood than learnt, and they hold so fast to their inborn customs that they are in no way to be brought from them: this has been tried by taking children from their mothers and educating them into other manners, but as soon as they come to maturity they abandon the good life and continue in the uncivilised ways of their parents. The great and famous General Reh [van Reede] took such a Hottentot into his household, taught him Dutch, and dressed him in red clothes embroidered with silver; but as soon as he got back to his compatriots he threw these clothes from him, hung a sheepskin around him, and again lived like any other Hottentot. All that he kept was a wide silver collar, which he wears, and calls himself 'Captain Peg', and the others all gladly obey him.

Nevertheless these poor pagans put many of us Christians to shame, exceeding us in many respects. Firstly, they are frugal, and well content if they have enough to eat for the day, however bad it be. Then also they are very serviceable, and let themselves be used in all manner of work for very little, a kreutzer or a small piece of tobacco or such-like. Thirdly they are neither proud nor lustful, as is alas the case among us; and here one must justly wonder with St Paul at the unknowable Ordinance of God, and without dispute it must remain unknown to us in what manner and by what means the ever-loving and impartial God seeks to bring these poor heathen to Him, so that they may be without excuse on that [last] Day.

The Dutch now rule this land up to 20 miles* from the coast, where there are none but such poor black Hottentots. Indeed a few years ago [1685] they made a trial, by sending 200 men further inland, since they understood that the so-called 'Prester John' had his capital there; but they returned without success, and although indeed they met with quite a different sort of folk, white of skin, and both far more intelligent and far richer [Namaquas], yet otherwise they attained nothing, and the matter has rested there until now. Also further exploration has been hindered by the fact that it is very toilsome and dangerous to go inland, since the aforesaid 200 men had great toil to cross over the highest mountains, which are covered with salt as are ours with snow, and they must take apart the waggons they had with them and carry them over the mountains, to be able to use them again on the plains [van der Stel in 1685].

After we had been about 6 weeks there, and had replenished both ourselves and our

ship, we took on fresh hands so that we were now 100 in all, also 36 live sheep, two oxen, and other provisions including 6000 pounds of rice; and set sail [DR 20/11]....

Driven off course; Mauritius; Ceylon from end of January 1700 to end of December 1703. At Cape again homewards in 1704, arriving in August. Outwards again in 1705, again touching at Dassen Island and the Cape. Then Ceylon, Cochin, Batavia etc. until January 1709, touching at the Cape homewards to Middelburg. Thence on foot through Germany to Memmingen and again on foot through Italy and back, settling down at Memmingen as a baker.

98 Charles Coatsworth

Transcribed from xerographs of his log (*MR 127*) *kept in* Julia, *from England April 28 for Java. His dates are of course Old Style*.*

Munday 30 [October 1699] ... att 8 a Clock last night the lyons rump Boare SEbE dis: 3 leags We ply to get in.

Tuesday 31 ... att two a Clock yesterday [DR 10/11] we ancored under Penguin Island....

Wednesday 1 [November] 1699. This day the wind vearable we had a spurt of a westerly wind to run in into the Bay Mr Wattson [not identified] and I went a shore we paide our respects to the Govr. he askt us what we came for: we told him to water and recruite as for provision he told us we could not get any; it was so scarce.

Thursday 2. This morning came in Capt. John fflowers [DR 11/11] in the London ffrigatt* from Banjar Massim; but from Batavia last and bound for Cadiz and London; I went a board of her; where I found the Capt. sick....

Friday 3. Wee haue been makeing clear to heald oure ship before we gett tooe much water a board.

Saterday 4. We haue got one side of oure ship don this day, I haue been all ouer the towne to Enquire for flower and peese or wheat but can get non for neither loue nor money. [No entry for 5th.]

Munday 6. I haue with much adoe procured a little flower and wheat but not undr 3d per pound; and 10 C wt of rice att 3 pl 8/8 [pieces of eight] per C. I went to the Govr. to ask leau to victuall he told me we might kill beef and mutton but he would not suffer any sort of graine to be sent of; by reason he expected a fleet of dutch ships in a little time.

Tuesday 7. Curious weather but som times blows fresh at SEt that oure boats cant get ashore. I haue paid a Visitt to the fiscall* and he told me I shall carry any thing aboard in 6 or 7 days time for then the Govr. will be gone into the Cuntry (and before) he cant

dooe anything in the matter; he is a pretty civill sort of aman [Blesius: an interesting sidelight on his relations with W.A.] [Then no entry until:]

Saturday 18. This morning Capt. fflowers and my selfe went a board in hopes of a faire wind; but had the wind out of the sea all day.

Sunday 19. This day Calm for the most part and what wind there was was out of the sea.

Munday 20. This morning we had the wind att SE we weighed and ran down to penguin Island where the wind left us we ancored in 13 fathom ... we had not been an hour at ancor before we had a strong SE Capt. fflowers and we tooke up oure Ancors and run of to sea together [DR 29 and 30/11]....

Background - continued

20/11/1699 ... at last the said ships *Nederland* and *Zion* weighed their anchors and set sail ...

29/11 ... the said English return-ship *The London* frigate* weighed her anchor and ... set sail ...

30/11 ... the other English ship *Julia* ... sets her prow directly for Batavia ...

19/12 ... an English ship called *Loijal Marchant*, Captn Matthias Lowth, 30 guns and 109 head, ran out of the Duijns on September 1 last ... bound for bombay and Zuratta ...

27/12 ... the said English ship *Loyal Marchant* weighed anchor, but ... adverse wind ... reanchored ...

[28/12 to 31/12 see in item 99]

30/12 ... in the night arrived back the frigate* *Peter and Paul* from Madagascar, having bartered there 198 slaves, of whom 14 had died in the journey hither ...

[1700]
General peace. Adoption of New Style by the German Protestant States.*
Background - from official documents in the archives

2/1 ... In the morning comes ashore the Capn of the *Wyngaard Pink*, now released by the said English ship *Loyal Marchant*, reporting how he had been handled by Capn Matthew Lowth ... [Several letters exchanged between Lowth and the Governor, texts not given]

4/1. Being Christmas Day in the Old Style*, those of the *Loyal Marchant* fired all their guns ...

11/1. Today being New Year by the Old Style,* those of the *Loyal Marchant* have frolicked and fired all their guns ...

99 Matthew Lowth

Transcribed from xerographs of his log kept in Loyal Merchant (*MR 132*). *Sailed outwards on August 1, for Bombay etc. His dates are of course all Old Style**.

Satturday 9th [December, DR 19/12] ... At 12 last night & at 4 in the Morning saw the high land of Cape Falso bearing EbSo Dist 13 or 14 Leags off & at 8 the Table Land bore

NE½Et 7 leags ... I shaped my Course between the Island [Robben Island] & green point which is fowl ... At 2 in the Afternoon I came to Anchor.... You must moar with an Open Harse* for the NNW wind which do much Damage in the Winter & make this Road a very dangerous place I [it] will alwaies be convenient to reef Your Topsailes betimes for the Flaws off with great Violence the Water is very good and handsome convenience for filling it in your boat the Mutton is fatt butt very ill tasted & cost not less then 3 or 4 dollars apeice ... here is very good Turnips & Carrotts & not dearer then 8d ahundred a Smale Cow weighing 800 lb will cost 20 ps 8/8 [pieces of eight] Your treatment is Scurvy & they do not care to see English Ships because their own men often desert when they have Opportunity [see Stowaways*].

Sunday the 10th. The Wind blew so very hard that we could not moar Yesterday but this morning proving Calme I moared with both my Bowers [Anchors*] & an open harse* to the NNW so rested from our Labours to God be the praise for our safe arrivale.

Monday the 11th. This day I sett my Caulkers to work & sent 2 long boats* of Empty Cask* on shoare & filled them & gott fresh Mutton for my men....

[12th, 13th watering]

Thursday 14. This day I made an End of filling my Water & gave the Governour a cold Treat with some Wine for the Civility he had shewn me. He desired my Company on the Morrow in his Garden* to dine with him which I was forced by his great Importunance to accept....

Fryday the 15th. This day I dined with the Governour who had provided avery Spendid Dinner not less then 100 Dishes & was pleased to drink the King of Englands & Duke of Glocesters health with Gunns from the Forte which is not usuall I gott off my Sheep and a few fowles which is all the place will afford....

Satturday the 16th ... I hove up my Anchor & saw him clear & lett him go again much rain.

Sunday the 17th ... I came to saile & stood half way to the Island & found the wind att WNW & W with great swell I tack & came to an Anchor in 7 or 8 faddoms.

Monday the 18th ... about noon came in a small Vessell about 60 Tunns and English Collours the wind permitted him to lay it in which he did & took no manner of notice of me not with standing I had the Kings Jack & pendant flying but ran close under the Dutch fort & Saluted them with 3 Guns which they returned I sent one of my Officers on board in a small Boat who brought the Vessels & Masters name who was Samuell Burgess in the Margarett belonging to New York & came last from St Maries &c on the Island of St Lawrence under Notion of being only loaden with Negroes & Indeed she had 110 in After I sent my Pinnace* & fetcht the Master my People telling me the Vessell was full of White men likwise & all clad with the East India Companies cloth I sent for another Master aboard & a Super cargo After Examination I sent for eight or nine more but they were unwilling to come answering they had no business on board my shipp however they were brought by Force and examined they confessing the whole matter but eight of them escaped on shoar & the Dutch protected them.

Tuesday the 19th. This day took severall depositions with 3 of my Principall officers for Witness & then put the Master & all of them in Irons being to the Number of 18 This Afternoon I was with the Governour & shewed him what Authority I had from the King & permitted him to take a Copy he seeming disgusted that a Prize of her Value should slip out of his hands. This Eveng the men on board the Bark rose against our folk.

Wednesday the 20. This morning the Governour sent of his Second* [Elsevier] the Fiscall* [Blesius] and two Dutch more with a Protest which in few words I answered In the Evening about 2 houres before Sunsett appeared a nother small Vessell which came in I sent for the Master whose name was Thomas Warren In the Vine pink* come from St Maries &c & has aboard 14 Pyrattes or As he calls them Passengers ... I askt him some Questions about the Pyrates what he knew & likewise his own Circumstances he threw down one of his Majesties Proclamations I told him they were not made for honest men but for Pyrates & if he had any in I would Examine them I showing him my Commission / he said his passengers should not be taken out for it would be a great Loss to him And if I pretended to do so notwithstanding the Kings Commission / he would apply himself for protection to the Dutch upon which Answer I ordered him into Irons which he lay in some time that night I had one Officer & one man to see that no papers should be conveighed away; But in this Intention the Dutch put 100 men in her & threatened to shoot me if I came on board; so I only called to them out of my Boat & told them I did believe the King of England would not have any Commission of his trampled under their foot so departed.

Thursday the 21. This day I took Thomas Warren Master of the Vine pink out of Irons & Examined him I found ship & Negroes clear I obliging him to lett me see the rest of his paper which he did & the 23rd I cleared him under my hand & so parted good ffreinds I spared him 45 lb of Rice some tarr & what he wanted / Blew a storm of Wind.

Fryday the 22st. This day ahard storme I rode single & my best bower came home* I was forced to let go my sheet Anchor* for the ground here is loose got down yards & topmasts the Wind at WbNo.

Satturday the 23rd.... I sett Mr Warren on board with my boat / prepared to send my slaves out of the Prize but was forced to give the Governour 20 the Second* & Fiscall* 5 apeice for Liberty to sell them to the free men.

Sunday the 24.... I warped* nearer in & new moared soe rested from our Labours.

Monday 25. This day being the Birth of our Saviour we rested from our Labour....

Tuesday 26. This day I filled Water in the Prize went on board & fitted her for the sea the Governour will not allow any vessell but the Company else severall would have bought her.

Wednesday the 27. This day I put all the Negroes ashoar in order to sell them which I did at 30 ps 8/8 25:23:20 which Indeed is but giving away.

Thursday the 28th ... Mr Warren sent to tell me that he would salute me & that to know if I would accept of it which I obliginly answering he gave me 5 gunns & I returned him 5 for thanks....

Friday 29. This day fair wheather I filled all my Water and Unrigged my Longboat* fitted my Prize & gott in readiness for the first faire wind.

.....

Thursday the 4th January 1699/1700. This day the Dutch Admirall* [?] gott up Yards & Topmast sailes Bent run out her Lower Teere [Tier, row] of Gunns as did another Dutch ship come from St Lawrence [*Waalstrom*, arrived 4/12] I cannot tell the meaning of itt.

Fryday the 5. This Morning Early I being unmoared & the Wind at So I came to saile & the Margate Prize with me....

With this may be read, for the Dutch point of view, the following extracts from the DR, allowing for the ten-day difference in dates:

28/12. About 11 o'clock in the morning appears ... a small English ship named Margit, Captn Samuel Burges, coming from Madagascar, to which those of the said ship Loyal Marchant rowed with their skiff*, and brought off the Capn Burges to their ship, who was questioned there why he had not saluted them, to which he replied that he had not seen them as a King's ship; and further that the said Captin Burges was held there as a pirate. Their skiff, as seen from land, went several times to and fro, without our being able to understand or grasp what those of the Loijal Marchant were doing in the said little vessel, or what the reason or cause might be why the Captn of this last little vessel did not follow the custom of the English and come ashore [to report name, etc.] In the evening their skiff* escaped to shore with seven persons, all English except one Hamburger ... and two of them as soon as they were ashore took to flight. The said Hamburger informed the Governor that their little ship and their Captain were named as is said above, *item* that they were come from Madagascar, having bartered 120 slaves there, and were bound with them for the Bermudas. Also their Captain with 13 or 14 men had been taken from their ship against their will by the said Capn Lowth, and brought over to the said ship Loyal Marchant; and further that their little ship Margit was held in custody with her crew. At this His Honour, having heard these five persons, had them brought into the Castle, and caused their 2 companions to be searched for; and also sent three Commissioners ... to learn the reasons for this procedure, who then brought the report, that they had understood from the said Matthew Lowth Capn of the ship Loijal Marchant, that he by virtue of his Commission given him by the King of England had seized this little ship Margit as a pirate and brought the said men with the Capn Samuel Burges on board his ship, requesting that the Governor would not trouble himself with the matter.

The Governor had thought good, before the Commissioners returned ashore, to send another vessel near to this last-named little ship Margit, it being now dark, to see and perceive how things stood there, which vessel, according to their information, being come close to that little ship, had been shouted to by the English of Loijal Marchant posted aboard her, that they would have no Dutch aboard, clashing together their naked swords. Then finally about 10 o'clock in the evening the said Capn Matthew Lowth came

ashore with his chief Mate ... to speak with His Honour; and (after some discussion and after the Hon Governor had seriously protested that the rights of the Roads had been violated, and that he should have given His Honour the necessary information before acting in such a strange manner) showed his aforesaid Commission. By examination of this it was seen that very ample powers were given him to take action against pirates of his nationality and their accomplices. He said further that from information received he had learnt that 22 English pirates were in the said little English ship; and that he would tomorrow put into His Honour's hands a copy of this information, agreeing also to come ashore again that next day to speak further of the matter.

29/12 ... Late in the evening comes the said Captain Howth [*sic*] together with his said Chief Mate and some other of his officers, to speak with His Honour regarding the seizure of the said prize Margit, and the right he pretended to have to her, to this end again exhibiting his royal Commission with the Great Seal of England dependent from it, which at the request of the Hon Governor was copied; and His Honour, having taken note of the contents, made a provisional verbal protest (since the lateness of the hour did not permit a written protest being then made ...), in the most serious manner and most earnestly, against the forcible infraction of the rights of these Roads by thse unheard-of proceedings and without first giving any advice whatever to His Honour....

30/12. The Hon Governor now, to maintain the rights of these Roads, sent the Hon Samuel Elsevier the Secunde* and Joan Blesius the Fiscaal* Independent [and others] to the said Captain Lowth of the Loyal Marchant, with a written protest in the name of our Lords and Masters [text inserted].

To this reply was: ‘Shippe Loijal Marchand att the Cape Good Hope Decembr the 20/30 1699. I doe own that ij have received a protest from the governr of this place in answer to which, ij doe by vertue of my kings commission seize on ye ship Margitt her people and all her lodeing, and likewise wil keep the same in possession and demand eight of her company now on shore. Dated on board his Majests shippe Loyal Marchand the 20/30 December 1699. Matthew Lowth.’

[Report of the Commissioners confirms the above.]

... In the afternoon ... a certain little English ship named the Wyngaardpink arrived in the roads, and about 5 o'clock the Chief Mate of the English ship Loyal Marchant ... came to advise the Hon Governor that the captured pirates in his ship had told his Capn Matthew Lowth, that this arriving ship was a pirate.... Soon after this His Honour received also a sealed letter from the said Captain Lowth relating to the said arriving little pirate-ship; but since the actions of the said Capn Lowth did not well please His Honour, and in order not to be misled by this Englishman, nor that he should act with this present prize as with the first one, he thought it good, in order to conserve the rights of these Roads, to instruct the skipper of the Waalstrom ... and the Chief Mate of the Nieuwland to go at once aboard their ships and man their longboats* and skiffs* with armed men, and lie together near the Waalstrom and keep good watch to see if any skiff or boat from the said ship Loyal Marchant went on board [the small

newly-arrived ship]; and if such should occur, at once to go themselves thither to warn the said Captain Lowth that this little ship was taken under our protection in the name of the Hon Company ... so that neither the said unknown little ship nor the men and goods in her should be in any way prejudiced ... [reported] that soon after the presumed pirate had anchored, the English skiff had come to her and taken from her back to its ship the Capn named Thomas Warren [the new arrival duly taken under 'our protection']....

31/12. In the morning the Hon Governor received a closed letter from the English Captain Matthew Lowth by the hands of his Chief Mate, by whose hands His Honour replied by a sealed letter [texts not inserted]....

The Administrator Samuel Elsevier [and others] by orders of His Honour went aboard the little ship Wyngaardpink, to examine the 14 passengers, who or most of whom had roamed in the Red Sea and elsewhere as pirates, and now relied on the general pardon and amnesty of the King of England....

The affair was of course reported to Holland (*letter 24/1/1700*)*: the Lords XVII replied* (*letter 23/9/01*) *that* '*you did well to protest: but as they took little notice of that*, *it would not have displeased us had you repaid them with violence similar to theirs*'.

Background - continued

15/1/1700 the English ship *Loyal Marchant* set sail with her prize *Margit* ... for the Indies ...

19/1 ... arrived the English return-ship named *Neptunus*, 24 guns and 60 men, Captain John Lesleij, October 14 from Madras, bound for London ...

25/1 ... arrived the Councillor* of the Indies and Commissioner ... the Hon. Wouter Valkenier [persuaded by W.A. van der Stel to grant him 'Vergelegen' estate, and other lands to members of his coterie]

26/1 [*Neptunus* and *Wyngaard* sailed]

1/3 [Letter to Holland reporting the discovery of a 'fine basin' beyond the Roode Zand, to be named 'Waveren' and colonised. No trace found of *Ridderschap;* cf. Resolutions 1/6/98]

22/6 Resolutions of the Lords XVII ... resolved to authorise the various Chambers*, in accordance with the desire of the colony of the Cape, to send thither some free-folk, men, women and children, free of passage-money and with free food, care being taken that as far as possible they are Dutch, or subjects of this State, or of German nations carrying on no trade by sea, and with knowledge of agriculture or viticulture, but no French ...

31/7 [Some colonists from over-crowded Drakenstein being sent to Waveren: more sent in October]

28/12 [Foundation-stone of permanent Church laid: cf. 9/4/78. Not in use until 1704]

September 17, Alliance of England, Holland and the Emperor. background - continued

14/1 Resolutions ... the three return-ships *Drie Croonen*, *Oostersteijn* and *Venhuijsen* lying in the roads ...

100 William Dampier

(*And see item 75*.) *He sailed in* Roebuck *of the British Admiralty from the Downs on January 14*, '*1698/9*'*: his dates are Old Style* but he gives the year here in both Styles. Tenerife for wine* ('*the true Malmsey*') *and brandy. Maio. São Tiago for water. Brazil. Passed Cape unsighted*. '*New Holland*' (*Australia*), *Timor*, *New Guinea* (*discovering the Strait named for him*), *Timor again*, *Sunda Strait. Batavia until October 17*, *careening there*, *and on October 19 catching up with the Dutch* 'Ostresteen', 'Three Crowns', 'Vanheusen' *under* '*Jacob Uncright*' (Oosterstein, Drie Kroonen, Venhuysen; *Onkruijd*). '*The 30th of December* [*DR not shown*] *we arrived at the* Cape of Good Hope, *and departed again on the 11th of January 1700/1701*.' [*DR not shown*]. *Saint Helena February 2 to 13. Ascension February 21*, *leak found to be beyond repair*, *ship warped* in close to shore and sunk*, *sails rafted ashore for tents. April 6 HMS* Anglesey, Hastings, Lizard [*of item 95*, *now homeward*] *and the East-Indiaman* Canterbury *took them all*, *sailing April 8. May 8 he himself and officers changed over into* Canterbury *for England*.

Background - continued

21/2 ... arrived the three English return-ships *Anglesea*, *Hastings* and *Lizard* [of item 95] ... have been cruising for nine months near Madagascar and the Mayotte Islands in search of pirates ... two ships taken and burnt, prisoners being taken to London ...

5/8 ... arrived the ship *Meidregt* ... from the Maas April 18 ... great probability of war in Europe ...

101 Anonymous [*Loyal Bliss*]

Transcribed from xerographs of anonymous log (*MR 163*) *kept in this ship*, *sailing on June 14 for Goa*, *Bombay*, *Surat ets. The dates are of course Old Style**.

Fryday August 29, 1701 ... About Noon saw seuerall Gannetts with Long: Neacks and flatt bill and fly: flap flap with there wings: this bird Comes euery Day from Land: And is a shure mark when you are Near the Land: Wee Likewise this Morning saw sewerall Trunks or weeds [Trombas]....

Saturday August 30 ... att Day Light: the Sugger Loofe bore E S E ½ S ... at

:10: a Clock Raised penguenn and the dutch flagg on it....

Sunday August 31 Att one Anchored in Table Bay In :9: fath: The Forte: S S W and Green point Wt be No ½ No: and Pinquen Island N N W ... wee: weeried [veered] out two cables of our Best Bower [Anchor*]: Lett goe our Small Bower and houe In a Cable of the Best bower and was moored In :½ an houre Struck Yard and Topmast ... In the morning By day Light Sent ye Longboate For Watter....

Munday Sept ye Prima. This 24 fresh gales att :S S E: so that wee cannot gett our Boats on shore Rigged our Longeboat :Reeft: ye sailes and Tryed to Turrn a shore but: the first Tripp found She Lost ground So wee weered our Yaull* with seuerall Running Roops a Stern ye Long boat gott hould to halled her on board Keep ye people Imployed Ouer halling our Rigging and Blocks and Black our Yards: with Tarr and Blacking.

Tuesday 2d Blew so hard Our Boats Cannot gett on Shore Our Yuall gott a Shore: for fres prouition for Our Men: those that had the Scouery are Recouered of it....

Wednesday 3d Our Boats: Made: two Turnns but: with: much Difficulty and hazard ... But: Towards morning Moderate Weathr I whent a Shore In the Pinnace* But Longboat Cannot gett a Shore.

Thursday 4d ... Our Longboat Made :4: Trips with watter.

Fryday 5 ... In ye Morning sent ye Long boate on Shore with all Our Empty Caske*.

Saturd: 6 ... Little wind Till a bout :11: a Clock: then wayed and Runn Out ... [calms, re-anchored until next day]....

Background - continued

8/12 ... arrived the English ship *John and Mary* ... from Portsmouth August 4 for Bencoolen '.. affairs in Europe still hovering between peace and war ...

[1702]
Acession of Queen Anne (*to 1714*). *May 4 England, Holland and the Empire declare war on France,* '*War of Spanish Succession*' (*to 1713*).

Background - from official documents in the archives

15/1 ... arrived the English ships *Speedy Return* and *Content* ... from Glasgow ...

17/1 ... came the English ship *Macclesfield* ... from Plymouth for Borneo ... affairs in Europe ... at the point of a declaration of war ...

6/3 Wooden waterpipes in disrepair, water consequently flowing very indifferently ...

9/3 ... repaired, water again flowing abundantly for the convenience of the ships ...

21/3 ... arrived the Danish ship *Fredericus Quartus* ... from Copenhagen on November 15 last, for Tranquebar ...

25/3 ... arrived the *Gend*, having put out to sea from Zeeland on November 8 last year, having lost 12 dead of her paid men during the journey, and bringing about 20 sick ... no further news of general quiet or disquiet in Europe ...

26/3 ... this morning those on the Lions Head

and on the [Robben] island each fired one signal shot, whereafter towards evening two English ships came sailing into the bay, but must drop anchor on the far side of the bay because of the adverse wind.

27/3 The sailing of the [return-] fleet awaits only the necessary repairs to the ship *Oestgeest* ... the English ships mentioned yesterday did their best to reach the anchorage in the roads, but the S.W. wind falling completely gave them no help, so that they made little progress [their arrival in the roads not given]

28/3 [Letter to Holland. Census: Company owns 758 sheep and goats, 378 horses, 828 oxen etc., 39 asses. Freemen: Men 502, women 270, boys 337, daughters 333, 'lent*' 90, slaves male 653, female 120, boys 41, girls 36, horses 746, oxen 3620, cows 3355, calves 2400, heifers 2307. sheep 62,055, pigs 358, vines 1,648,650, leggers* of wine 1025, wheat reaped 4,528½ muids*, rye 2,873½, barley 4751]

28/3 [same letter] ... We shall also take care that by the use of the Dutch language in church and school the French tongue shall fall into disuse among the inhabitants of the Drakenstein congregation, and finally die out ... [Letter sent by return-fleet]

30/3 ... the fleet set sail, consisting of the following nineteen ships [listed]

2/4 ... the flute* *Waterman* having watered, set sail about noon ...

4/4 ... the aforesaid English ships *Discouvry* and *The Rising Eagle* ...

6/4 ... an express overland from the Saldanha Bay ... on the 3rd instant ... the ship *Meresteijn* had gone aground on the Jutten Island and was broken up ... the skipper, book-keeper, second mate and most of the crew were lost, as also two women and their five children come out to the Cape ... provisions and drinking-water sent to about 100 survivors on that island by one of our galliots* [*Wezel*]

7/4 ... came to the roads the Danish ship *Christianus Quintus* ... bound like her compatriot for Tranquebar.

102 Benjamin Boucher

Transcribed from xerographs of his log (*MR 148*) *kept in* Rising Eagle, *sailing in September 1700 for Balasore etc. and now homeward bound. His dates are of course Old Style**, *but it will be noticed that he gives the year in both Styles up to March 25*, *after which the year-number was the same in both*.

March Monday 16th 1701/2 ... At 6 Last night anchor'd in 19 fathom water sandy ground ... distance from ye ships in ye Road 2 miles. Ye Discovery Capt: John Evans Commander just came in before us. Lying in ye Road 25 sail of Dutch ships [DR 26/3].

March Tuesday 17th 1701/2. At 2 yesterday afternoon we waight our sheet anchor* & dropped our best bower. At 4 this morning ... we waighd & stood SSWt & anchor'd in 8 fath sandy ground. Penguin Island bearing NbW dist 3 m Green point NWbN Layons rump SWbW & ye fort SbWt.

Wednesday 18th ... small gales & foggy weather.

March Thursday 19th. At 2 yesterday afternoon we waigh'd & stood for ye fort till we came into 5 fath: good ground.... At 7 this morning ... ye Dutch fleet Consisting of 19 sail sail'd out of ye road bound for Holland [DR 30/3].

Friday 20th ... wind very uncertain shifting almost every half hour.

March Saturday 21st 1701/2 ... all this morning been rumaging [restowing] between decks....

Sunday 22nd ... at 8 this morning [illegible] Dutch ships sail'd out of ye Road being bound for Batavia [one only, *Waterman*, DR 2/5].

March Monday 23rd 1701/2. This 24 hours it has blown very hard Last night we broke our best bower this morn we gott up our best bower [anchor*] & lay single sent this morning 10 butts to fill'd....

Tuesday 24th ... 3 trips for water....

March Saturday [*sic*] 25th 1702. About 2 yesterday afternoon a Dutch ship came into ye Road but brought no news [no arrival in DR from 26/3 to 6/4] This afternoon we gott our water stow'd & gott up our yards & topmasts....

Sunday [*sic*] 26th ... This morning a Dane came into ye road [DR 7/4].

March Monday [*sic*] 27th 1702 About 4 last night it began to blow fresh & continu'd blowing all night we lost our pinnace* from her moorings astern of ye Discovery....

Tuesday [*sic*] 28th About 4 last night we waighd ye wind at SE fair wather & a fresh gale. At 6 ye Nomost end of Pengwin bore N by W ... the Discovery Capt John Evans Commander in Company [DR 8/4].

*He rectifies his days of the week later. England July 8, New Style**.

103 - Luillier

Translated from his 'Voyage ...', Hague 1706. He sailed from L'Orient in March 1702 in an unnamed ship, with L'Etoile d'Orient *and* Saint Louis. '*Baptism*' *of neophytes on the Equator described.*

We continued on our course with a favourable wind, and on May 17 we had soundings on the Banc des Aiguilles [Agulhas] at 10 o'clock in the morning: on May 18 we had similar soundings, in both cases at 90 fathoms. This bank is near the Cape de bonne Esperance on 36 degrees South: it may be 80 leagues in length or a little more. Codfish and various other fish may be taken on this shoal, and fish are found here called 'Devils'. These ... are round in shape and have a horn on the head, some of them very long, and it is from this horn that they have their name, up to 300 leagues out to sea. [Apparently mispunctuated: read '... their name. Up to 300 leagues out to sea,'] birds are seen which are to be found only in these waters, which for this reason are called 'Cape Birds'.

The Cape is a very difficult place to pass: sudden storms are common there because of the configuration of the sea which extends around this extreme point of land, and

ships are so often lost there that when it is doubled a *Te Deum* is sung as an act of thanksgiving. It is a place occupied by the Dutch, who not only carry on the same trade as ourselves, but also, having almost all the spices in the Indies, make of the Cape their entrepôt, which is of great convenience to the ships which they send to the Indies. Pretty good wine is to be had there; and since this country is exactly the opposite of our hemisphere, the seasons there are just the reverse of ours.... The grape-harvest is in May. A good many of the products grown in Europe are also grown there, such as wheat, apricots, quinces and other similar fruits.

The people of this country, called Hotantos, are more like animals than men. They worship the sun, prostrating themselves when it rises [*sic*], and believe that they receive light and life only from it. Their food is in no way different from that of the animals. Since the country lies within the Temperate Zone it is cold in Winter; but to protect themselves against this they cover themselves with sheepskins, often half rotten and stinking. It is pitiful to see these poor folk, since after all they are human beings.... For a long time it was impossible to understand their language, and it is almost impossible for them to understand ours [*sic*], so that they can be made to understand what is wanted by signs only. The sheep are very large, and have long wool [*sic*], and a tail which weighs up to eight pounds: the meat is good, as also is that of the cattle, which are found in great numbers.

On the 20th of the same month we doubled the Cape ... two leagues from it is the Robin Island, whither the Dutch exile all those who are disaffected.

Next day, the 21st, we sang a *Te Deum* after the Mass, to thank God for His favour in preserving us from all the sudden storms and dangers usually met with by those who double this promontory....

His navigation is odd: like Lacombe of item 23, he says that they were off Cape Agulhas before doubling the Cape of Good Hope, somewhat improbably in an eastward passage.

Background - continued

8/5 ... This afternoon ... the aforesaid two English ships *Discouvry* and *The Rising Eagle* raised anchor for Europe, as also did the Danish ship *Fredericus Quartus*, but this last reanchored at the mouth of the bay, and returned to the roads again in the afternoon, apparently ... to await her companion *Quintus* ... towards evening the *Gend* also set sail ... for Batavia.

2/6 ... came the English warship *Kingfisher* ... war would shortly be declared ... she and her 8 consorts bound for St. Helena to escort the English return-ships...

26/7 ... arrived the ship *Vosmaar*... sailed from Plymouth on April 26 last after repairing there from January 12 to that date ... news that His Majesty of Great Britain had retired to rest in the Lord on March 19, and that Princess Anna had on that same day been proclaimed Queen...

[64] ABRAHAM BOGAERT, from item 104.

104 Abraham Bogaert
(Plates 64 & 65)

Translated from his '*Historische Reizen door d'oostersche Deelen van Asia ...*', *Amsterdam 1711. He tells nothing of his earlier life - his use of dialect words suggests that he was from South Holland or Flanders - starting right away with* '*Only 4 months after my return from the Indies to Holland*, *I resolved to go there again*, *despite the pleadings of my mother and my wife; and signed on for the third time*, *as Upper-Surgeon with the Amsterdam Chamber**.' *On December 15*, *1701 he embarked at Texel in* Vosmaar, *sailing on December 21 with 8 other ships* (*Hague codex 4390 A*, *folio 14*). *Storm-damage forced his ship to put in for repairs at Plymouth* (*DR 26/7*), *which he describes*, *sailing again on April 26. Tenerife Peak sighted*, '*considered the highest in the world*'.

... Soon we saw this so longed-for promontory, and on July the twenty-sixth [1702: DR 26/7] anchored in the spacious Table Bay, where at this time we found no other ships at anchor.

This southermost cape of Africa [*sic*] ... lies on 34 degrees and 30 minutes of south latitude, and was now trodden by me for the fifth time. When one arrives from Europe and first sights it, it looks like a long chain of hills stretching from North to South and ending in a point; and as one comes nearer lies in the form of a peninsula, joined to the mainland by a very narrow stretch of land between two bays, and including various steep and very high hills.

One of these is called the Table Mountain, because its top is very flat, not ill resembling a table, and lies an hour from the shore, to the south of two rivers, one called the Fresh, the other the Salt River. It is truly high, and difficult to climb because of its unusual steepness. At my first coming here my youth and curiosity pricked me to undertake its ascent with three companions, and after much toil I reached my goal on the top. We took the usual route, near the Salt River climbing up a gorge [Platteklip Gorge], which at first because of our zeal seemed pretty easy; but later we had much toil and no little danger, since at various points we must hold on with our hands. On the way we saw mighty fragments torn off from the rock by the fierce winds or the raging thunder: at times a very unpleasant precipice, then again valleys beset with thick jungles and horrible caves which gave the wild beasts convenient hiding-places. When we were come half-way up the path became not only narrower but steeper, for which reason we must continually use our hands to grasp the undergrowth; and my zeal began to slacken, especially when at moments I looked down along the slope below me, which was a terrifying sight. When at last we came to the topmost gorge, finding it richly grown with grass, our courage rose

again; but now the path became even worse, with precipices rising on both sides, looking like overhanging walls. So we went on, and reached the top about noon, having set out in the morning: now our first task, to which overpowering thirst pressed us, was to seek for the large lake, rich in fish, which we had been assured we should find. But we found nothing of the sort, only pools in the flat rocks with which this area is floored, and in them clear water which we found unusually pleasant of taste, whether because this was truly the case or because the mighty thirst we suffered made us think so. It is in my opinion not far from the truth to suppose, that this water comes from the abundant moisture of the thick clouds which so often cover this hill.

After taking a frugal but pleasant midday meal in the grass on the top of the hill, we walked around the flat, which we found unusually level, and grown almost everywhere with long grass and plants unknown to us. We found nothing but the aforesaid pools of water, except, not far from the path by which we had come up, a bare rock on which some letters were engraved. When I turned my eyes to the mountains around us I was astonished to see how high we had come, since now they looked like little hills. The high Lion Hill seemed to be but a plain; and I could barely see the Dutch Castle, although the weather was unusually clear, and even less could distinguish the ships in the road, which appeared only as separate dots to my eye. But to look down at the path by which we had climbed the hill was terrifying, since it now appeared like a steeply-rising wall, along which we looked down into a dangerous abyss. We had passed fully two hours in looking around before we decided to go down again by the same path which we had taken in our ascent; but in many places this was hardly possible, and often we were forced to let ourselves slide down sitting, and grasp the bush with our hands to secure ourselves. About halfway, where the path seemed easier, we came upon the apparently fresh dung of wild beasts, which made our hearts flutter, and pressed us to hasten out of these horrible places, the more so that the sun now began to leave us: the snakes which we had seen here and there caused us less fear than the thought of the lions and tigers which dwelt here plentifully in the thick scrub and horrid caves. And indeed, I had never before learned how fright can be such a powerful goad to make one endure all hardships, since we cared nothing for the sharp rocks, grasped at stinging nettles, and falling and rising again made such speed that at last at dusk we came to the plain, and so with tired-out limbs to our lodging.

Not far from this hill to the west lies the Lion Hill, on the top of which I often walked. It is thus named because of the quantity of lions that are accustomed to dwell there, or because from far off it does not ill resemble the shape of a lying lion, of which the tail forms the west shore of the Table Bay. Its top, called the Lion's Head, is unusually rough and steep, and in overcast weather reaches into the clouds. It boasts a strong flagstaff, beside which stand a little hut and a cannon, a soldier being set on guard there to watch for the coming of ships; and as soon as he gets sight of them he hoists the flag, and fires so many times as there are ships in sight, the sentry at the Castle having orders to watch for this and send one of the guard to advise the Administrator. The same is

done also from the Lion's Rump, which is grown over with luxuriant grass and a few trees; and the colour of the flags is changed each year, and advice given of this by the Administrator to the Government at Batavia. This hands over sealed letters to those in charge of the return-fleets, with orders not to open them until they sight the Cape, so that they can then steer for it without fear, on seeing the correct signal.

The Bay, adorned by Spilbergen with the name of Table Bay, is fully four miles around, and is covered by a chain of very high hills on almost all sides from the blustering winds, except those that blow from the north-west, since in that direction is the opening, almost two miles wide, into which the whole ocean can roll, making not only a dangerous sea but also a terrible surf near the Salt River, so that ships are torn from their anchors and smashed against the rocks, disasters which more than once have afflicted the Company. This opening has as its limits, to the west the tail of the Lion Hill, to the north the bases of the hills which join the Tiger Hill; and the bay is dangerous from this latter cape to the Salt River not far from the hills, because of hidden reefs and rocks: further in and towards the Table Bay it is safe and has good holding-ground. A little in front of this opening there lies a low and sandy island called Robben Island, because of the quantity of seals that bask in the rays of the sun there. It is rich in rabbits, and is the terror of mutineers and evildoers who are banished there and are forced to collect the shells from the shore, from which lime is burned.

The Dutch Fort*, built by Governor Ysbrant Goskens at the foot of the Table Mountain, was founded to keep the bay clear of enemy ships, and to protect the settlements of the Europeans inland from natives and other enemies. It has four [*sic*] bastions built of heavy stone and armed with large cannon, which for the most part are of metal*. Its gateway, ornamentally carved from yellow bricks, looks towards the west and the town. Within it the Governor has a noble residence, as also the Secunde*, the Commander of the troops, and other senior Servants of the Company, this being two stories high, and roofed with a flat of large stones, made safe all around with railings and giving an exceptional view. I make no mention of the magazines and storehouses, in which are kept all that appertains to the defence of the Castle, and a great treasure of goods.

The town*, lying a good musket*-shot to the west of the Castle, stretches from the sea to the Table Mountain, and at the back touches the outermost slopes of the Lion Hill. It has wonderfully increased the number of its houses since the Company chose this place for a settlement, beginning in the year 1653 [*sic*]. All are built of stone, and few are higher than one storey because of the mighty force of the winds that blow there, for which reason also they are roofed with thatch. They look very well from far off because of the snow-white lime with which they are plastered outside, and many shine with Dutch neatness; but none more attract the eye of the observer than those of the Fiscaal* Joan Blezius, and of the Burgerraad* Henning Huizing, both finely built and higher than all the others. It now boasts of a Church*, built in the Dutch fashion and adorned with a fair-sized tower, in which on Sundays the Word of Truth is preached [*sic:* not until 1704]. It is set in a large cemetery surrounded by a stone wall.

Not far from there is the Company's Garden*, founded so that there should always be a storehouse of all sorts of refreshments for the outward- or homeward-bound ships. It covers in all, I was told, fifteen morgen* of land: I found it to be 1430-odd ordinary paces long and some 240 wide. It is cut through by many avenues, and divided into separate squares surrounded by high and thick hedges of laurel, which shelter the plants from the strong winds. In some of these squares are found the plants of Asia, in others those of Africa and America, and those of Europe are grown in many. The central avenue, of which one can scarcely see the end, is entirely planted with citrus-trees, between which roses emit their pleasant smell and attract the eye of the observer when they are in bloom. A stream of sweet and clear water flows down from the hills and runs through the garden in various artificial channels, which waters the soil continually and cause the plants to grow luxuriantly. And nothing would lack here for the sick, if the things to which they are entitled were properly issued; but here also is to be found that plague which is common to almost all the Governments of the Indies, in that the greenstuff which is supplied to the ships from here and from a still larger garden [Rondebosch] of the Company, is often so paltry that it might well blush for itself. It is mostly green cabbage leaves, except for a little better greenstuff which those of the Cajuit* get, although to be reasonably well provided with it they must make a friend of the Gardener, at the cost of the Company. The greatest good that the Servants of the Company obtain from it is the freedom to walk in it, which does much to restore their worn-out strength when they land here after a long journey, since the eye, if not the tongue, may taste all that it pleases.

At the entrance of this Garden stands a large building, where the slaves of the Company live, of whom the number at times runs well into five hundred, part of them working in this Garden, part at other tasks. Not far from there, and just opposite the Church, is the new Hospital*, which is tolerably extensive and properly provided with beds and cribs for the sufferers. Its main gable boasts of this Latin verse by Heer Daniel Heinsius:

> Excipit Hospitio fractos, morbisque, viisque
> Haec domus, & medicam larga ministrat opem
> Belga, tuum nomen, populus fatale domandis
> Horreat, & leges Africa terra tuas.

The Cape not only boasts of the thus-named Town, but has also about ten miles* to the east a fine town called Stellenbosch. The noble valleys of this place grown with healthful grass and herbs, its lovely fresh rivers, and the luxuriant richness of its soil, induced and pressed Adriaan [*sic*] van der Stel, then Governor of the Cape, to establish here a new settlement, which had its beginning in the year 1681 [*sic*], consisting at first of eighty-two [*sic*] families. But it is incredible how by the zeal of the Dutch this place has grown with fine dwellings, and how great a treasure of wine and grain is grown there

every year, whereof the Company takes the tenth part.... This fruitfulness depends on the very temperate climate in which this region lies, since neither heat nor cold are great there, the air is always clear and temperate, things which are exceptionally helpful to good health, and can be enjoyed there to one's full content. The Spring begins there with October and ends in December; January, February and March make up the Summer; April, May and June the Autumn; July, August and September the Winter. In the Autumn the strongest and fiercest winds blow there from the south, and then there is mist, and sometimes snow, and at times frost which wrinkles the water in the pools. At times the squalls come down so strongly over the hills as if they would tear everything above ground to shreds; and then the billows rise, whipped by this fierce wind, and make navigation dangerous. The clouds pour down mighty floods in the Winter, as if poured from jars, which entirely cover the whole of the lowland; but it again raises its green crest unscathed, and grants to its cultivators an abundance of fruits.

The soil around the Cape in the flats, and further inland, is in many places exceptionally good for cultivation and the growing of all sorts of crops: the bases and tops of the hills are in some places rocky, in others shelly, in others sandy. A considerable quantity of bush is found, but hard and knotty, good for nothing but firewood. Far inland the forests produce mighty timber, of which Governor Willem Adriaan van der Stel made wonderful use in the building of his magnificent farm called Vergelegen, of which the extent greatly strikes the eye.

In the valleys and flats, as also on the hills, there grow of themselves an endless quantity of rare plants and herbs.... The tree- and ground-fruits planted there by the Dutch grow luxuriantly, and seem to be in their own element there. There are many sorts of apples and pears, pomegranates, oranges, limes, lemons, chestnuts, apricots, peaches, quinces and other fruit trees. Currants will grow and bloom there, but not produce fruits. An enormous quantity of red and white grapes is cut, from which an abundance of good wine is pressed. The cereals grow so luxuriantly there, that I was assured that wheat-stalks are found with over 160 ears. Pulses and other potherbs flourish no less well, such as cabbages, carrots, turnips, beets, and especially cauliflowers, which are salted by whole caskfulls and sent to many places of the Indies.... But in spite of the fruitfulness of Dutch plants in African soil, especially the tree-fruits, it must be noted that they keep their shape but lose much of their taste and juiciness. The peach lacks there its rosy and scarlet colours and tongue-tickling juice, and seems to languish as if under the rod of a harsh stepmother. The astringency of the quinces, their true property, is altered to a sweet mellowness. The savour of the apples and pears, which to a great extent retain their colour, seems flown away, and the fruits look better than they taste....

The country is rich in fierce lions, which appear from their hiding-places in the dark of the moon and prowl for prey even close about the houses. The damages done to men and tame beasts by spotted tigers and devouring wolves are terrible. There are elephants there, rhinoceroses, leopards, porcupines, wild horses and asses of unusual beauty,

bush-cats, and jackals, beasts not unlike foxes which because of their keen scent is used by the lion as its spy, to smell out carrion for him. The grass- and bush-rich valleys feed many wild cows, roebuck-calves and deer, which sometimes flock together in great herds of hundreds together. There are also steenbucks, hares, rabbits and red-haired steendassen, which are unusually slow in running but not unpleasant in taste. A certain beast is also found there which has two horns of the same length on its nose, as the rhinoceros has one. It is as large as an average elephant, and in tail and feet well resembles that animal. The ears are erect and round, and its skin has short mouse-grey hair, except for the neck which boasts a small bunch of black hair. The horses mentioned above are unusually small of head, and very long-eared. Their whole hide is covered with white and black stripes from above downwards, to the width of four fingers, giving a pleasant variation [Zebra]. No less unusual are asses whose hide is of many colours [Quagga]. A wide blue stripe runs over the back from head to tail: the rest of the marking consists of wide bands, one being yellow, or green, blue, black, white and all such lively colours, at the strangeness of which I often marvelled when admiring their stripped-off hides.

The tame beasts are in great numbers everywhere, such as oxen, cows, calves and sheep. The oxen are fine, fleshy and wide-bodied, and taller than those in Holland, but not fat. Their horns are long and crooked, and some are found whose horns lie flat to the body. With these beasts the earth is plowed. They go eight together before one farmwaggon, and can carry a suitable load for a long distance. The sheep there are without wool, large and short-legged, and covered with a red-haired skin like goats, though considerably larger than these. Their tails are long and wide, and nothing but fat, some being found which weight twenty pounds. Their meat is rank, but when they are bred with Dutch sheep the progeny are much more tender, and the tallow of the latter [?: ‘d'ongeligheid, waar van de laaste veel nood hebben’] seems then to be changed to a pleasant fat.

The sea produces a quantity of creatures, such as sea-horses of a horrible shape and size, sea-pigs, sea-cats, sea-cows, and seals, by some called sea-bears. The sea-cows are of the size of a rhinoceros. They are short but wide-bodied, and for that reason their belly hangs very low. They have two short ears on the head, and two teeth in the mouth which stick out forwards in the same manner as do those of the elephant. They not only make use of the sea, but also at times go ashore to graze; and their flesh is pleasant and good to eat, and was often enjoyed by me, though always smoked. The sea-bears are fierce-looking, and bite viciously: they are bold and tireless, somewhat sharp-snouted, with jet-black hair, and lame in the hind-legs. Nevertheless they run so swiftly, in spite of having to drag their hind feet, that an agile man finds it hard to keep up with them on land, since they also make use of this, to bask in the rays of the sun. The land- and seatortoises should also be mentioned here, which are found in great quantities.

Many sorts of large and small birds are found here, such as cormorants, blackfeathered, about the size of geese; also yellow-billed hill-ducks, pintail ducks, shovellerducks, wigeons, pheasants, four sorts of partridges, wood- and water-snipes, red geese,

quails, larks, canaries, and many sorts of sparrows. There are also reed-birds with red legs and beaks, white and black herons, white spoonbills, not large of body and with very crooked necks, peacocks, cranes, various sorts of hawks, magpies, ravens, and also ostriches. On the islands lying around there are endless quantities of white and speckled gulls, white pelicans, Cape-birds, Jan van Gents, and others to which the Portuguese gave the name of Gavoitoyns, Faysons, Mangas de Velludo, Garagiaus and Alkatraces, all with unusual plumage. Also on my second journey I saw on Dassen Island a certain bird called pinguyns. These are somewhat smaller than geese, black and white in colour, short but with thick plumage, hard-skinned, sharp in biting and diving, and shortwinged, so that they cannot fly. To make up for that disadvantage compassionate Nature has given them a leathery fin on each foot with which they can swim, but their walk on land looks clumsy and they are readily overtaken. They lay their eggs in the scrub in holes scratched in the sand, rarely more than four in number, of the size of goose-eggs and white, which they brood and defend with great pertinacity.

Also the meadows and woods produce many sorts of insects, of which nearly all have unusual and lovely colours, so that they are put in cabinets as great treasures by the lovers of rarities in Holland. There are also bees, which make their honey and wax in the hollow stems of trees.

I come now to the fish, which are caught in great quantity in the Table Bay and the so-called Fish Bay, as also in the Soldanha Bay lying about eighteen miles northwest of the Cape. There are scaly mullets, shad, bream, sandkruipers, a sort of flatfish called Huigen by some, klip-fish, large and small crayfish, and various others. Large and small oysters are also found on the rocks of the Table Bay, in which at times pearls are discovered; also large mussels, and a little to seawards fine soles.

All the usual inhabitants of the Cape of Good Hope, and those who have their abodes or villages far inland, are called by the Dutch ‘Hottentots’ because of their clicking and clumsy speech [see Hottentots, Name*], which has also been adopted for themselves by those who usually dwell at the Cape. These people are divided into various tribes, all having their own customs and manners of living. In their own tongue they have the names of Sonquas, Namaquas, Gorachouquas, Cochoquas, Kariguriquas, Heuzaquas, Chainouquas, and so on.

The Sonquas, who are unusually bold, strong, and agile, excel all the others in the use of the assagayen, a certain sort of throwing-spear, and in the use of bows and arrows, for which reason they go to serve as soldiers with the other nations, which always have Sonquas in service besides their own soldiers. And these are they who at certain times collect the honey made by the bees in the hollows of trees and rocks.

The Namaquas, lying fully eighty miles east-north-east of the Cape and far inland, are under a King or Chief, and are all of a very heavy and high stature. They are modest in their ways, slow and brief in their replies, and laughter seems something rare among them, although solemnity is not found among their women.

The Gorachouquas are known to us and the Africans as thieves. The Cochoquas,

who are also called Saldanhars because they live near the Saldanha Bay, at one time excelled by their richness in cattle, of which the number was reckoned at fully a hundred thousand oxen and twice that number of sheep. The Kariguriquas [Griquas*], also called Hosaas [? error for Sousas*; but these were the Chainouquas] and divided into 'Great' and 'Little', are neighbours of the Cochoquas, and subsist from their cattle, having their villages in the valleys around there. The Heuzaquas dwell very far inland, northwestward from the Cape, and are the only ones who live from the cultivation of the Dacha root, which they not only eat but also drink mixed with water, and which has the power of causing the mind to wander. The Chainouquas are not many in numbers, but rich in cattle, and at one time dwelt near the region of the Cape, but later retired so far inland that no one now knows where they have settled.

The Hottentots who live at or near the Cape are of a moderate stature, rather slim than fat, and brown in colour, although some are also found who tend to yellowish. Their hair is short and curly, like lambswool, the forehead pretty wide but wrinkled. The eyes are black, piercing and clear, the nose flat, the lips thick, especially the lower lip which projects forward and upwards. The mouth is of a proportionate size, the teeth rival ivory for whiteness, and bite strongly. The neck is pretty long, the shoulders are narrow, the arms sinewy and slim at the wrists, the hands well-shaped, with longish fingers, of which they let the nails grow to an unusual length, which they consider as an ornament. They are very flat-bellied, and their buttocks stick out, since the body is not kept in symmetry by any clothing. Moreover Nature has provided them with an unusually large rod [penis], but they have one testicle only, since the right one is pressed out in early youth, which they claim helps very greatly to the maintenance and increase of agility.

The women are smaller in stature, but with fine and slender legs. It is to be regretted that they are flat-nosed, since among them some are to be found who are so handsome of face that it is beyond belief, since their form is never damaged by measles or smallpox, things unknown to them. The breasts of the girls are not mis-shapen, but so soon as they have born a child the breasts swell to such a length that they can give suck over their shoulders to the children which they usually carry on their backs.

The clothing of the men is slovenly and repulsive. They all wear a sheepskin dressed with cowdung and a certain black fat of an unbearable stink, which hangs with the hair inwards over their shoulders like a cloak, down to the buttocks, being tied below the chin with something. This cloak consists of three parts, not badly sewn together with the sinews of animals for thread and using a sharp thorn as a needle. At night or when it rains they use a cap as head-covering, made from a lambskin with the wool inwards, and with a knot at the top. A piece of rhinoceros-hide serves them for shoes, which is fastened with two leather thongs crosswise over the back of the foot and a heel-band behind. The male organ is either hidden in a little bag made of the skin of a bush-cat, or is covered with a scrap of such a skin or that of a jackal, which is held in place by two little leather thongs above the buttocks, with downward-hanging ends.

The women are attired in a similar cloak, turned with the wool inwards, but hanging much lower, as far as the calves. In addition they have a skin wound around the lower body and the buttocks, and a little square piece of animal skin to cover their pudenda. The head is covered with a high and wide cap, made from the skin of a seal, sheep or dassie, and held in place by a wide thong of sheepskin around the head. Their shoes are of the same material and shape as those of the men.

It is surprising that there is room for pride in their slovenliness: since for adornment both men and women grease their heads, faces and hands with the soot from cookingpots; or if this lacks, with a stinking black fat, by which smearing the hair of their heads is matted into little balls, on which they hang pieces of copper, coral [beads], glass, seashells [‘horentjes’] and such-like trifles. The men pluck out their chin-hair. The chief among them wear as ornaments large ivory rings above and below their elbows. If they are rich in cattle, both men and women smear the outsides of their cloaks to make them greasy and soft, an adornment which is also the ostentation of their Kings, Chiefs and nobles. These also hang on their necks chains of red and yellow copper, made by themselves, and set off their hands with rings of copper, a metal much prized by them. Some wear on their necks chains of little roots which they pluck up somewhere, considering them, when chewed and spat out, to have great power to shield them by night from the wild beasts, although they have neither smell nor taste. They also adorn their ears with large bunches of beads, their greatest ornaments and riches, bartered to them by our folk for cattle. The women roll around their legs the guts of wild beasts, or strips of small skins plaited together, which serve them as an ornament and protect them from the pricks of the sharp thorns, and serve also to increase their pleasure in dancing by their noise and rattling; and at times serve as a useful remedy for hunger, when they are attacked by famine. Further, they will never go out without a square leather bag, from the lower corners of which hang bunches of such-like tassels, this either hanging on their belly or their back, into which they cram in everything and which greatly hinders them in walking. Also they use a handkerchief, made from the tail of a wild cat drawn over a short stick, which they call Zou; and this they always have in their hand to wipe off the sweat, mucus, dust and sand, and to keep off the flies.

As weapons they use bows and arrows, with which they are pretty skilful, also stones which they throw and thus resist the enemy, and you would be astonished at the accuracy of their aim. They also use assegais, a sort of throwing-spear, thin, about five feet long, and mounted with a wide piece of iron, which is pointed and sharp at the front end, and they can wield these with a mighty force.

Their usual food is milk and the flesh of animals, without taking out the intestines. Seldom, however, do they kill an ox or a sheep for food, unless from sickness or old age or lameness it can no longer keep up with the herd. They seldom cook these, but like dogs fall on them and on all dead beasts, and gulp down the meat raw together with the intestines and the guts, after they have squeezed out the coarser part of the dung, or after roasting them on the fire for a little time. If such are lacking, they hunt seals and

other oily sea-beasts, which they kill with clubs, or they seek for dead fish along the shores, or gather mussels, topshells, and abalones from the rocks. Also they gulp down much oil, and allay their hunger with pieces torn from their cloaks and roasted a little on the embers, in which that most well known of vermin, one of the Plagues of Egypt, happily graze, and are gnawed by them as a tasty game. They know almost nothing of greenstuffs, but they greatly enjoy certain small round roots*, about the size of earth-nuts [‘aart-ekelen*’], which the women daily dig out from the rivers and elsewhere, and which they boil or roast. They greatly like our bread and are very greedy for it. They gulp down honey with the wax and all.

Their drink is water, or if they are rich in cattle, the milk of these. But they are madly avid for wine and strong drinks, which at times they sit drinking to excess, and then do wonderful monkey-tricks: a greed which seems inherent in all the Negroes of Africa. They are no less avid for tobacco, which they obtain by begging it from newcomers, and for which they barter quantities of their best cattle.

They have no fixed dwelling-places, but like the Arabs live where they please in the plains and fields. There they set up their houses or huts, made of tree-branches bent crooked, set in a circle in the ground and covered with beast-skins or mats made from reeds. These are so low, that no fully-grown man can stand upright in them, and the entrance is so low that they must creep in on hands and knees. The fire is made in the centre of the tent, and the smoke must find its way out through the door; and the ‘apartments’ are nothing but hollows dug about two feet deep in the earth. The size [of the hut] is according to the size of the family which dwells in it, and can be judged from the fact that fully five families live in one hut which is not even eight Rhineland roods in circumference.

They trouble themselves little with arts or crafts. They only beat out old iron thrown away by us, with a hammer of stone on a stone anvil, to make points for their assegais; and they make reed mats to cover their dwellings, although those who are rich in cattle make use of the hides of these. Those who have no cattle earn their living by fishing, by bringing in brushwood from the hills to sell to the Europeans, whom also they serve in the houses or on the farms for a little bread or tobacco, but yet consider themselves no slaves but the lords of the land, since they do not demean themselves by ploughing the soil: they cultivate the estates of their land [? ‘zy de landeryen van hun land bebouwen’ - not understood]. Others subsist from their cattle, their only hope and trust in the Summer, but in Winter from the little roots of which we spoke above, which are then their nourishment. Their manner of milking the cows is unusual, since while one milks another blows into the rear of the beast, which they say greatly helps the flow of the milk, as is to be seen in the picture of the Cape of Good Hope [Plate 65].

All their riches and all their trade-goods consist of tame cattle, namely oxen and sheep which they barter to our folk for such goods as they most chiefly desire: these consist principally of iron, copper, beadwork, tobacco and brandy, things for which they are most particularly avid. And it has often been seen that these folk, in whom one judges

no true soul to reside, show more honesty and less deceit and covetousness in their trading than folk of a more civilised nature, who boast themselves to be the namesakes and participants of that most perfect Person, in whose mouth never is to be found deceit, in whose heart never covetousness: so that they not unjustly have revenged themselves for the crying wrongs done to them, and this often to the detriment of the Company and of the guiltless.

As regards their religion, from close examination I have perceived that the saying of the Apostle Paul* is true of them, 'that the Heathen who know not the Law, by nature do the things of the Law'. Since although they have only a very confused knowledge of God, they nevertheless pray to His Majesty, and to His honour kill cows and sheep, offering up with gratitude the flesh and milk of them, to show their thankfulness to a Godhead which they believe grants then rain, fine weather, and whatever they have need of. Moreover their love and loyalty to one another and their sympathy are fully as great as among Christians; and I must also mention that they punish adultery and theft with death as being capital offences. They however know of no Creation, no Redemption, nor anything of the holy Mystery which we with reverence call the Trinity. They are convinced that after death there shall be no other life, and for this reason have no care other than to pass this life in comfort. Furthermore, they show reverence for the New Moon, since as soon as this can be seen in the sky, whole troops of them turn their faces towards it, and greet its light with shouting and hand-clapping, and pass the whole night in leaping and dancing, and murmur something within their mouths. There exist also certain vain beliefs with which they are deceived, since they imagine themselves to be able to cause the rain to cease, and the wind to fall. If they desire to do the former, they lay in a dug-out hollow a little fire on a small chip of wood and throw on this some hair from their head; and as soon as the hair begins to smoulder they cover up the hollow with sand: on this they make water, and run off with a great cry. The calming of the wind is also an illusion, and has little unusual in it.

All the Hottentots come under Kings, or Chiefs, or Overlords who rule them, and these posts are hereditary and pass from father to son. The right of succession is to the eldest, and the other sons must have respect for him, since he alone is the true heir of his father, the younger ones having no inheritance but to serve their elder brother. These Chiefs have the power of life and death, and are obeyed without murmuring. Some nevertheless assert that the Sonquas cannot be included among these, but that they alone have no Chief, living like wild beasts.

If a youth is pricked by love to set his eye on a girl, and desires her for a wife, he speaks of this with his father, and after receiving permission speaks with the father and mother of the girl, to whom he sets forth his desire. If they agree with his request, the girl is bound to obey their orders, whether this husband pleases her or not. She then hangs a fat cow-gut around the neck of her suitor, to bind herself to him, and this hangs there until it is rotted away. The marriage then follows. Two of the fattest sheep are chosen from the whole village, and these are eaten, in part boiled, in part roasted, only

[65] From item 104. For the Table Mountain ‘crater’ cf. plates 21, 53, 63. The Fort-tower and flag on it are erroneous, as also is the Church (?) in the town. Elephant-hunt in middle distance: in the foreground are milking, dancing, women musicians and lice-hunting.

by the newly-married couple and their parents. Then the hides are cut in pieces, the hair is scraped off, and they are laid on the embers, and then pounded between stones, and eaten with gusto. Besides this wife he is allowed to take as many more as he can support; but no one is to be found, even among the rich, who has more than three. Their love also is constant, and there have been exemplary instances of true-heartedness: thus one widow, unable to console herself for the loss of her husband, from sorrow sprang into a blazing fire which had been kindled in a hollow. Others have dashed themselves to pieces from a rock for the same reason.

They also carry out punishments, and regulate these according to the gravity of the offence. If something of small value is stolen, the culprit is merely beaten with a stick by the Chief: if the theft is greater, so also is the punishment. Should anyone be caught who has stolen the cattle of another and again bartered this to someone else, the punishment is carried out as follows: he is left, with bound hands and feet, for twentyfour hours without food or drink. Then some of the elders ask the Chief, whether the punishment shall continue. He comes, with a great number of unarmed followers, to a place where a tree stands, and orders the culprit to be brought before him. Being come there, and having been bound to the tree, he is severely beaten from behind on his naked body: then he is turned round to face the Chief, and boiling resin is poured over him from neck to breast. He is then unbound and given food, and then again trussed up by hands and feet, and thus left without food for three days; and finally he is turned out from the village, as unworthy to be one of the tribe.

Adultery is often punished in the same manner, or at times with death; but for incest the punishment is even more severe, since if a father has intercourse with his daughter, a son with his mother, a brother with his sister, they thus incur this punishment - with one single cord the hands and feet of the man are pulled tight together, and he is tossed into a hollow together with the woman, where he is left until the next day. Then he is taken out, and set thus fettered under a tree, with his neck made fast to a strong branch which some men hold down by force. There he is dismembered limb by limb, after which, by letting loose the branch, his mangled body is carried up into the air and hangs there as a beacon for the warning of others. Then the woman is dragged to her punishment, being set in the centre of a circle composed of a large quantity of dry brushwood, and there burnt to ashes.

Murder is also punished by death, and the offence is considered the more heinous when it is committed by a person of standing, since they consider, that one who sentences others as a Judge, must serve as an example to others. Such a one is strangled at a tree, and thrown into the same grave with his victim. Men of lesser importance may atone for the offence with lesser punishments, at times with [the forfeiture of] cattle. Other offenders are put to death with long-lasting tortures.

These people hold freedom very much to heart, and are very jealous of it. They will obey no laws other than those of Nature. Their mutual love and tenderness is great, and their helpfulness no less. All that they get they divide with their companions, and keep

the least part for themselves. Also they keep the law of Nations so unimpaired, that they can rival the most civilised peoples of Europe.

Furthermore, it has been seen that they are brave in battle as was experienced by Franciscus Almeida [story of 1510 massacres as in BVR].

The Hottentots usually reach a great age. If anyone is sick, he calls in the doctor, who opens his dorsal vein with a double-edged knife, and burns his arms with a red-hot iron which has a little knob in front, laying over the blisters a certain herb boiled in milk. If this does not suffice, and the sick man breathes his last, preparations are made for the burial. They dig out a deep hole, and in it place the dead man, in a sitting position, stripped of all his clothes and entirely naked, after which they shovel in the earth again, laying on the simple grave a great quantity of stones, so that no wild beast shall drag out the body from the grave or devour it.

The sick man, if he is rich in cattle, is not permitted to give away the very least thing on his deathbead, except to those to whom the inheritance is due. But those on whom the cattle devolves (whether from sister to sister, mother from grandmother, daughter from mother, since this applies only to females) are compelled to lose a joint of each little finger, and may take possession of the cattle only when they have sacrificed these. Also a woman whose husband has died, so often as she again marries another, must cut away that number of joints of her fingers, beginning with the little fingers. These are the principal matters of which I took note in my three journeys to the Cape of Good Hope, which place I do not purpose to describe again during my return passage....

We had lain for six days in the wide Table Bay when the ship Gein [DR *Gend*, 25/3] came from Holland to anchor near us....

After ten days we found ourselves in a state to continue our journey to Batavia with the gentle blessing of Heaven, since our watercasks were filled, our sick recovered, and all necessaries provided. So we raised anchor on the fourth of August [DR 8/8], and with happy spirits and favoured by a south-easterly breeze, we left this boisterous promontory of Africa, where however the winds seemed as if imprisoned during our stay....

Batavia, *Bantam*, *Ceylon*, *Malabar*, *Bengal*, *Moluccas*, *Batavia*, *sailing thence in 1705 and touching at the Cape. This part of his book deals at length with the disputes between the colonists and W.A. van der Stel*, *in which he helped the former by taking home their memorial to the Lords XVII which led to the recall of the Governor*.

Background - continued

8/8 [*Vosmaar* sailed]

20/8 ... arrived the frigate* *Ter Eemden* ... from Holland on May 15, bringing the news of the declaration of war between the States General and the Kings of Spain and France ...

And so the first fifty years of Dutch colonisation at the Cape comes to THE END closing as it began with the Dutch at war.

Index

1. A large number of names of persons and places have been omitted, where these occur once only in the text and are of no particular importance: e.g., the conspirators' names and ‘Antwerp’, ‘Ogel’, ‘Hamstede’ on page 60.

2. Upright figures indicate the folios of this book. When both bold and roman figures appear in the same item, the former indicate main entries, the latter secondary ones, or mere mentions.

3. Italic figures indicate: when set thus - *23.4.68*, the date of an entry in the background diary in which a reference to the indexed word will be found; and when following the author of a quoted book, the folio of that book on which related reference will be found.

4. An aterisk behind a word indicates that this word is the subject of another entry in the index.

5. Little attempt has been made to include biographies of persons, except in a few special cases, since all of importance will figure in the *South African Dictionary of Biography*. Those already included in the first volume of this are marked ‘SADB Vol. I’; and ‘(SADB)’ in parentheses indicates those scheduled for inclusion in later volumes.

6. This index serves also as a bibliography: full reference to authors and their works consulted will be found in the appropriate place.

Aa, van der, ‘Naukeurige Versamelingen ...,’ Leiden 1707-8
Aam. About 40 English gallons
Aardenburg see *Nardenburg*
‘Aart-ekelen’, *Lathyrus tuberosus* (CAS). **14, 486**
Abalones, *Haliotis sp*. **17, 486**
Abbekerk. 12.6.99, **452**
Abrolhos. Shoals off the coast of Brazil: de Graaf, ‘Oost-Indische Spiegel’ 48, ‘the ~ ... where formerly so many ships were wrecked’, Davys (BVR 19) ‘the greatest of our feare’, both mentioning the thanksgiving and feast after passing them. **33, 48, 117, 143, 197, 211, 252, 401**
Admiral. Never a Dutch naval rank at this period: the ship carrying the senior official present in a fleet, or this official. See, e.g., Plates 6 and 30: ~ flag on mainmast, Vice-~ on foremast, Rear-~ (‘Schout bij nagt’) on mizzen; also **182.** See also *Langhansz* page 7, *Bogaert* pages 50, 465
Adringhem (flute). *19.4.85*, *17.7.85*
Advice (English). *9.1.97*, *11.1.97*, **425, 426**
‘Advys-yacht’. **180.** *Posthoorn* also figures as ‘little boat’ and ‘hooker’: cf. the English use of ‘Aviso’
Aernhem see *Arnhem*

Africa. 4.2.76 (unnamed), *18.3.76* (ditto), *14.5.79*, *16.2.82*, *29.4.82*, **180, 236, 243** (in error)
'Aftership' (Dutch 'na-schepen'). *14.4.65*, *16.4.65*, **85, 91, 185.** Sailing a month or more after the returnfleet, to take latest news, etc. Usually the fastest sailors, with the hope that they would overtake the fleet at the Cape or Saint Helena.
Agatha (Dutch). *5.6.94*, *12.6.94*
Agulhas, Cape and bank (variously spelt). The existence of this bank, stretching far out to sea, was of vital importance to early navigators, allowing them to fix their position by soundings without the need to approach the dangerous coast: such soundings are mentioned in the entries marked °. **27**°, **29, 142, 194, 195, 245, 299**°, **301**°, **302, 305**°, **313, 336, 352, 359, 373, 380**° (unnamed), **392**° (ditto), **441, 474**°, **475**
Albacore, *Seriola lalandi*, *Germo alalunga*. Plate 58
Albacoretta (not identified). Plate 58
Albatros, *Diomeda exulans*. **255, 380, ?392** ('Almitrosses')
Alexander. 28.4.76, **185**
Alfen see *Alphen*
'Alkatraces', probably Cape Gannet as in BVR, **483**, but **380** = Albatros
Alkmaar (*Wapen van ~*). *13.2.81*, *31.12.86*, *27.1.89*, *1.2.89*, **314, 358, 360**
Allamand and Klockner, 'Beschryving ...', Amsterdam 1775: also the translators of Brink, with copious notes in Part III, quoted s.v. Brink.

Almeida, Francisco d'. **491**. Also in BVR.
Almond, Bitter, *Brabeium stellatifolium* (and see Hedge). *20.12.60*, **23, 138, 351** ditto, Cultivated. **199**
Almonde, Adriaen van. *22.3.59*, *1.4.59*
Aloe, probably *A. ferox.* **139, 174** (pages 89, 107 in abundance)
Alphen (*Alfen*, flute). *26.8.63*, *9.9.63*, *24.1.68*, *20.4.73*, *11.5.73*, **75-78, 102, 106, 168, 171, 172, 173** (captured by English)
Amboina. **40, 52, 252**
America. 26.2.75, *4.2.76* (unnamed), *18.3.76* (ditto), **180**
(Another). *26.12.96*, *28.12.96*, **424-426**
(Another, Interloper*). *8.2.99*, **446**
Amerongen (yacht). *28.8.63*, *9.9.63*, *13.4.69*, **76-78, 141**
Amerssoort. 28.3.58, *8.4.60*, *21.4.65*, *23.4.65*, *12.2.72*, *24.2.72*, **91, 92, 160**
Amstellandt. 8.5.62, *11.3.65*, *22.4.65*, **79**
Amsterdam, *10.4.53*, **38, 44, 45, 48, 55, 67, 75, 77, 106-108, 110, 160, 174, 178-180, 182, 197, 208, 222, 226, 229, 243, 251, 255, 261, 340, 351, 374, 400, 458, 477**
Amsterdam. (apparently in error), **79**
Amy (Galliot). *3.6.93*, *1.7.96*, *3.11.96*, *1.7.97*, *10.5.99*, **415** ('Brigantine'). Also frequently mentioned in the DR etc. of *1699-1702* as in local service.
Anchors. *Passim*, especially **11, 23, 33, 67, 112, 164, 166** (pages 5, 17), **220, 244, 251, 252, 253, 303, 339, 367, 368, 401, 410, 413, 414, 415, 419, 422, 425, 427, 440, 441-2, 446, 451-2, 466-7, 472-4.** 'Tuy', 'They' is Small Bower (from the word for 'mooring'); 'Tägliches' (Daily)is Bower: 'Plecht', Portuguese 'Esperanza', is Sheet-anchor. See also Capt. Smith: 'the least are called Kedgers ... There is also a streame Anchor not much bigger, to stemme an easie streame or tide. Then there is the first, second, and third Anchor ... are called Bow Anchors. The greatest is the sheat Anchor, and neuer vsed but in great necessity;' noting that 'kedge = 'warp'; and that anchors are always masculine in English accounts of this period.
Anchorage-dues. *5.3.58*, **64, 103, 231, 338, 342**
Angelier (yacht). *2.4.62*
Anglesea (English). *16.6.99*, *2.7.99*, *3.7.99*, *21.2.01*, **453, 454, 455, 471**
Angola. *15.12.59* (in item 10), **38, 56, 60, 64, 217, 242.** Plate 39.
ANN. 'Africana Notes and News', Public Library, Johannesburg
Anne, Queen of England. *26.7.02*
Antelope (term used vaguely, probably including *Damaliscus pygargus* and the extinct *Ozanna leucophea*). **394, 429**
Antelope ('*Entelope*', English). *6.6.99*, *12.6.99*, **452**
Antonette (Danish). *17.1.88*
Ape: usually = Baboon, but **57** has 'Apes and Baboons'
Ape (hooker 16 men). *9.6.65*
'Apeak', to come: to wind an anchored ship towards the anchor, so that the cable grows almost vertical, as preliminary to weighing. Also 'to heave short'.
Apples. *22-24.8.52*, *3-5.7.56*, *12.9.60*, *17.4.62*, **82, 97, 139, 199, 212, 228, 236, 255, 276, 380, 382, 428, 481**

Apricots. **13, 276, 475, 481**
'Apron'. One of the most disputed subjects, some even entirely denying its existence, e.g., *St Pierre 71*, blaming Kolbe for the 'error'. Relatively few thought it artificially produced: BVR 120, 152, **166** (page 20), **347, 396** (by hearsay), *Cossigny 23*, *Le Vaillant* (1790) *294*, *427* and *Plate*, also his plates in QB June 1964 (but specifically contradicted by *Percival 90*, *Barrow 236*). Most correctly say that it was natural, **19, 109, 127, 174** (page 115, enlargements of the nymphae), **183** (hearsay), **204, 240, 241, 309, 406, 436,** as also *Dapper 644* (with an anatomical note by *Schapera 45*), *Damberger 52*, *53* very fully, *Sonnerat 181*, *Kolbe 425*, *Valentyn X 104*, *Sparrman I 182*, *Mentzel III 283*, *284*, *Brink 43*, *85*, *Schwartze 34*, *Pagès* (1797) *144*, *Barrow 235*, *236*, *237*, *279*, *280*, *281* fully described, *389*. Plate 60 is useless here.
Armagnan, d'. **359-362, 364, 370, 371, 372**
Arnhem. 16.3.59, *31.3.59*, **53, 62, 77** (wrecked off Mauritius)
Arpent. 1¼ English acres.
Arrack (spirit distilled from coconut-juice or rice). **11, 40, 86, 90, 103, 216**
Artichokes. **38, 139, 193**. Also DR *2.10.54* (recently sown for first time, growing well), *16.10.55* (more than enough)
Ascension Island. *10.11.99*, **106, 107, 156, 171, 173, 391, 399, 471**
Asia. 18.4.76, *28.4.76*, *12.4.79*, *28.4.79*, *20.2.80*, *6.6.83*, *10.6.83*, *15.6.83*, *22.6.83*, *6.7.83*, **182, 184, 246, 248, 251.** Also Plate 30
Asparagus. **38.** Also DR *19.6.52* (wild ~ found), *16.10.58* (wild ~ plentiful): there are many indigenous species.
Asses, Wild. Usually = Zebras, but **482** Quaggas by the description.
Assistance (English 48-gun frigate). **168, 172, 173**
Assistent. Junior grade in the V.O.C. service, below Boekhouder, above Clerk.
Australia ('Hollandia Nova', 'the Southland'). *27.10.96*, **392, 410, 414, 416, 419, 471**
Azore Islands. **106, 353, 366**

Baaren (little flute). *6.5.83*, *15.6.83*, *22.6.83*, *8-10.7.83*, **247, 248**
Baboon, *Papio ursinus*. 8, **15**, 34, 57, **137**^{o}, **138**^{o}, **149. 166** (page 16), **174** (page 95, on Table Mountain), 184, 213, **233, 237**^{o}, **241, 266**^{o}, **282, 296,** 317, **325, 351, 351**^{o}, **372,** 394, **408.** The hand-to-hand raids, marked ^{o} above, are also in *Kolbe 140* and *Plate*, *Buttner 113*, *Munro 11*, *Hamilton 160*, *Barchewitz 60*; but are denied by other writers.
Babylonische Tooren, about 33^{o}50, 18^{o}55, Cape Town sheet. *24.10.88*
'Bak' Used in Dutch both for Mess (as today), then usually of seven men; and for wooden dish (e.g., **116**) as in the Biblical 'Mess of pottage'. Also = Forecastle in Dutch.
Bakkeley Plaats. **174** (pages 93, 94, named for 'battle' there). Calvinia sheet, about 31^{o}35 S, 18^{o}27 E. Also DR *17.5.68*
Balasore. *2.11.86*, **245, 450, 473**
Bambeek. 8.6.99, **452** (unnamed)
Bambus see *Pampus*
Banana. **188, 199, 276**
Banchem, Martinus van. *19.4.85*, **191**
Banks, Sir J. 'Journal ...', London 1896 (ed. Hooker)

Bantam. *9.10.79*, *26.10.80*, **40, 167, 168, 221, 258, 264, 265, 268, 294, 297, 299, 305, 314, 330, 352, 491**
Bantam (yacht) *19.4.85*, *16.6.85*, *9.3.86*, *15.4.86*, *9.4.88*, **338-340, 342, 351, 352**
Barbados. *6.2.83*, *24.3.87*, *7.1.97*, **141, 244, 391, 425**
'Barber' (Barbierer). Assistant Surgeon in V.O.C. employ
Barchewitz, E. Chr., 'Edlen Oost-Indische Compagnie ...', Chemnitz 1730
Barge: long, narrow boat, usually ten oars, for the use of senior officers (NED). **255, 413, 440**
Barley. *28.3.02*, **14, 343, 372, 380, 394.** Also DR *2.10.54* (growing well, but beaten down by wind)
Barlow, -. *25.4.98*, **440**

Barm (hooker, 14 men). *3.4.69*, *16.4.69*, **141**
Barrow, Sir J., 'Account of Travels ...', London 1806: all references are to volume I.
Batavia. *Passim*, especially **4, 20, 40, 62, 64, 68, 71, 154, 167, 171, 175, 184, 196, 199, 206, 235, 246, 248, 252, 270, 279, 294, 297, 307, 314, 330, 336, 338, 340, 343, 349, 353, 366, 376, 410, 431, 464, 471, 479, 491**
Batavia. 30.3.70, **144**
Bax, Johan (Governor). *1.1.76* and *passim* to *29.6.78*, item **37** *passim*, **268**
Beads. *6.9.55*, *23.10.88*, and *passim* as barter for armlets, necklaces, legbands, etc., including **166** (page 22), **174** (pages 119, 137)
Bears (in error). **148, 166** (page 15), **184, 205, 208, 331**. Correctly negated **138**
Bedford (English). *28.6.99*, *3.7.99*, **454, 455**
Beeckman, Capt. D., 'A voyage ...', in Pinkerton XI: checked with London 1718
Beemster (*Beemder*). *25.4.74*, *3.6.74*, *1.3.76*, *18.3.76*, **175, 176, 180**
Beer. *31.12.88*, **232, 258, 259, 394, 431**. Also letters to Holland *1.8.96* (arrival of freeman-brewer), *30.6.97* (brewery established. The general opinion of callers was that it was poor and dear).
Bees. **16, 483**
Beets. **13, 38, 39, ? 144, 481.** Also DR *20.7.52* (beetroot growing well)
Beijeren. 14.2.98, *17.2.98*, *13.3.98*, *5.6.99*, *1.7.99*, *2.7.99*, *3.7.99*, **452**
Bekesteijn. 8.6.99, **452** (unnamed)
Bell. Struck each time the half-hour sandglass is turned, in sequence once, twice, etc. from the start of the watch, the 'half-hour' persisting today in that 'two bells' is one hour, 'four bells' two hours after watch-setting. Also for prayers, etc.
Bencoolen (Sumatra). *8.12.01*, **377**
Bengal. *2.11.86*, *10.4.88*, *4.5.88*, *5.6.88*, *12.10.88*, *5.5.94*, *2.11.96*, *4.1.97*, *25.4.98*, *3.5.98*, *6.6.99*, **111, 141, 239, 243, 252, 314, 338, 342, 353, 365, 425, 440, 441, 452, 491**
Benjamin. 27.5.93, *12.6.93*, *12.4.99*, *18.4.99*, **391, 392, 393, 399, 450, 451**
Berckmeer. 19.9.77
Berg River (Great). *21.3.58*, *20.9.70*, *10.10.87*, *21.10.88*, *23.10.88*
Bergen. *17.9.77*, **92**
Bergh, Olaf. *21.10.80* (Ensign), *20.6.82*, *11.6.87* (prisoner), *9.6.88*, *26.6*, *88*, **289, 315, 316**. From Göteborg, Sweden, born 1643. V.O.C. service from 1665. Also Resolutions *17.11.86* (to *N.S. de los Milagros* wreck for salvage), *14.4.87* (arrested for looting), *25.4.87* (tried, ridiculous accusation of having deserted in Ceylon and taught Sinhalese to make gunpowder, imprisoned on Robben Island), *27.9.90* (released and restored to rank of Lt. by orders of XVII, and at his choice to stay at Cape as freeman or go to Batavia or Ceylon - last chosen). Back as Capt. *17.7.95* and Resolutions *12.9.95* on Council. Died 1724. (SADB)
Bergh China (Sina). *13.3.86*, *15.4.86*, *4.8.88*, *12.10.88*, *22.1.91*, **302, 376**
Berkel. 12.6.93, *21.10.96*, *23.10.96*, *18.11.96*, *8.5.98*, *1.7.99* (145 men), **414, 418, 419** ('hagboat'), **422** ('large hagboat'), **423** (as 'Berg'), **439** (unnamed), **440** (ditto), **455** (ditto)
Berkenrode. 24.2.99, **448** (unnamed)

Berkley Castle (English). *29.10.86* (‘Towr van London’), *31.10.86*, *2.11.86*, *3.11.86*, *4.11.86*, *19.1.90*, *6.2.90*, *29.7.92*, **313**
Betton, Robert. **445, 446**
Beurs. 28.4.85, *14.5.85*, *15.5.85*, *21.5.86*, *21.6.86*, **258, 260, 261, 310**
Bèze, Father de. **324-327, 331**
Biche, Isle à la (Saldanha Bay = Schapen Island). **29,** Plate 20
‘Bilged’. **369**. From Capt. Smith = ‘We say also she is ~, when she strikes on a rock ... or anything that breakes her plankes or timbers, to spring a leake.’
Birds unidentified. **14** (yolk-less eggs, non-existent), **71** (eggs without whites, non-existent). And see *Garagiaus*, *Gavoitoyns*, *Happevoye*, *Jan van Gent*, *Tauquets*
‘Biscayan’. **39** (refers to type of boat, not provenance)
Blackbird. **134** (‘Amsel’, which can be translated as ~ or thrush: ? Red Bishop, *Euplectes orix*, in winter plumage, or Thrush, *Turdus olivaceus*)
Blauwe Hulk. 4.2.76 (unnamed), *18.3.76* (ditto), *26.3.79*, *16.6.82*, **180, 208**
Blesius, Joan (Fiscaal Independent; as such until death in 1711). **365, 420, 422, 442, 464, 465, 467, 469, 470.** (SADB)
Blois. 8.5.98, *18.10.99*, *21.10.99*, *22.10.99*, *27.10.99*; **439-442** (all innamed)
Blommendael (variously spelt). *3.4.55*, *15.4.55*, **34, 40-43** (yacht). And? another *17.9.77* (‘hired ship’), *21.9.77*, *30.9.77*
Bloubergstrand. **54**
Bluebok, *Ozanna leucophaea* (extinct) 137. And see Antelope
Boar, Wild, *Potamochoerus porcus koiropotamus*. **137, 184, 213, 270, 297, 429**: mentions only.
Bocheros, Sieur. **273, 278**
Boekhouder (‘Book-keeper’). Confusingly used in Dutch both as a rank in the V.O.C. service (below Under-Merchant), and for someone thus actually employed ashore or afloat.
Bogaert, Abraham, ‘Historische Reizen door d'oostersche Deelen van Asia ...’, Amsterdam 1711. **115, 477-91**. Plates 64, 65. (SADB)
Bolling, Frederick Andersen, ‘Oost-Indiske Reisebog ...’, Copenhagen 1678. **143-154, 171-174,** Plates 23, 23a
Bombay. *29.10.86*, *8.1.88*, *28.12.96*, *25.4.98*, *19.12.99*, **244, 389, 392, 415, 424, 439, 454, 465, 471**
Bonito, *S. sarda*. **271**
Bonnell, John. **367, 368, 369**
‘Bonnet’. A strip of canvas laced to the lower edge of a sail in such a way as to be readily removable, thus increasing or decreasing sail-area. Mentioned, e.g., Saar page 24.
‘Booby’ (gull), *Sula sp.* **46, 133**
Boogh (*Boge*). *23.4.72*, *30.5.72*, **164, 165** (‘little ship or shallop’). Brought out knocked-down, set up at Cape
Boom, Hendrick Hendricksz. (Came out with Van Riebeeck as gardener, DR *17.12.51*), *1.12.55*, *18.5.65* (unnamed), **38** (unnamed). Also DR *22.12.58* (chief instigator of protests, never satisfied). (SADB)
Boor (little flute). *25.4.98*, *8.5.98*; **439-442** (always unnamed)
‘Boot-hose-tops’, to give a pair of. **391**. To tallow the strakes (planks) at the water-line.

Borghorst, Commandeur Jacob. *16.6.68* and *passim* to 1670, **108, 109,** ? **123.** (SADB)
Borneo. *8.2.99*, *11.11.99*, *17.1.02*
Borsenburg. 30.5.88, *2.6.88*, *3.6.88*
Bosheuvel. *26.8.58*, *31.8.63*, *5.6.64*, **14** (unnamed), 26, **76.** Also DR *20.2.64* (½ aam wine from ~), *29.9.59* (crops ruined in war with Caepmans), *11.9.60* (30 morgen at ~ granted to freeman).
'Bosschieter'. Cannoneer: should not be translated 'Gunner', title reserved for the Chief Gunner of a ship.

Botha, C.G., 'Place-Names in the Cape Province', Cape Town 1926
Botterlaryberg. **282** (unnamed). About 33°80, 18°45, Cape Town sheet.
Boucher, Benjamin. **473, 474**
'Bought'. **262, 269, 282** ('about 1653'). Statements such as these, that the Dutch ~ the land near Table Bay at an early date, are frequent in later writers. Actually the only pseudo-purchase was in DR *7.7.68.*
Bourbon, Isle see Réunion
Boven Caspel. 12.4.84
Bövingh, J.G., 'Beschreibung und Nachricht ...', Hamburg 1714: consistently echoes Schreyer
'Brandwag', 'Die'. **32**
Brandy. *21.2.57*, *19.5.72*, *31.12.88*, *22.4.92*, *13.9.98*, **11, 17, 22, 55, 103, 113, 117, 128, 144, 146, 162, 174** (page 13, barter), **188, 216, 219, 229, 239, 255, 257, 262, 269, 286, 289, 319, 320, 347, 382, 388, 397, 398, 400, 401, 402, 403, 408, 437, 486**
Brass. **9, 17** ('yellow copper'), **56, 126, 166** (pages 19, 20, 22 armlets), **174** (page 119, necklaces), **202, 217, 218, 241, 287, 330, 388**. All references are to barter, for ornaments.
Brazil. *28.3.58*, **117, 141, 165, 176, 177, 303, 307, 380, 391, 392, 425, 471**
Bream see Steenbrassen.
Brederode (*Bredero*, *Bredenrode*). *11.3.65*, *22.4.65*, *2.4.69*, *13.4.69*, *11.1.71*, **79, 141, 157.** Plate 6
Breede R. *20.3.76*, 174 (pages 95, 129); and Plate 39 as 'Fleuve Large'.
'Breeme', to ~ a ship. **419**. From Capt. Smith: 'Breeming her, is but washing or burning of all the filth with reeds or broome.'
Breitenbach, Conrad von. *1.12.71*, *29.4.73*, *1.5.73*, **160, 166** (page 15), **168, 172.** Arrived at the Cape in March 1671 and was retained there as Lt., with seat on Council until *28.11.72*: then Capt. i/c St. Helena fleet (Resolutions *30.11.72*; 180 soldiers, 150 sailors, ships, *Vryheit*, *Polsbroek*, *Cattenburgh*, little flute *Vliegende Swaantje*.) Captured by English. Dismissed by XVII and out in *Veluwe* (DR *25.9.74*) as civilian
Brest. *9.6.87*, *18.5.88*, **261, 264, 268, 271, 295, 301, 305, 306, 317, 322, 329, 330, 353**
Breugel, Albert van. *23.3.72* (arrived as Secunde*, and took charge until October), **166** (page 15). Deposed in 1675 by Goske but acquitted by Batavia and rank restored.
Bricks. *24.3.54*, *11.6.54*, **38, 39, 49, 79, 94, 102.** Plates 17, 28
Briel (*Bril*). *5.5.76*, *22.5.76*, *4.3.79*, *5.3.79*, *19.4.79*, *1.4.88*, *8.4.88*, *28.5.88*, **185, 207-210, 336, 337, 340, 342**
Brigantine, small sailing-vessel. *7.1.97* (*Royal Russell*, 15 men), **415** (*Amy*, Dutch 'galliot', 23 men), **451** (in error, 116 men, *Tamboer*, which was frigate)
Brink, C.F., 'Neue Kurzgefasste Beschreibung des Vorgebirges der guten Hoffnung ...', Leipzig 1779, translation by Allamand and Klockner: all references are their notes in Part III.
Bristol. **171, 366**
British Museum. **44, 111, 221, 244, 255, 386**

Bronste (little flute). *23.6.86*
Brown, Capt. John. **450, 451**
'Browne, Dr.' **386-389**
Bruydegom (*Bruit*). *21.9.65*, *16.12.66*, *27.3.71*
Bunschoten (little flute). *1.2.71*, *8.2.71*, **157**
Buren (*Buuren*). *2.5.74*, *3.6.74*, **175**
Burgess, Capt. Samuel. *28*, *29.12.97* (in item 100), **466, 467, 468**
Burgh van Leyden. 28.11.68, *13.12.68*, *2.5.74*, *3.6.74*, *13.2.81*, *4.3.82*, *13.3.82*, *4.4.82*, *6.4.82*, *29.4.82*, *16.6.82*, **111, 117, 175, 236**
Burgher-Councillors ('Burgerraaden', 'Cape Burgomasters'). Van Goens in 1657 appointed one, to sit on Council when matters affected civilians: later two were chosen yearly by the Council from list of four proposed. 166 (page 7, Mostert mentioned as ~ page 16, ditto),
Bussell, Capt. Christopher. **450**
Bustard, *Neotis denhami*. **123**
Buttner, J.D., MS. in Dessinian Collection, S.A.L. **138**. SADB, Volume I.
Buynskerken. 28.11.67
BVR. Raven-Hart, R., 'Before van Riebeeck', Cape Town 1967

C. Dutch words and names not found here see under **K**
Cabbages. *2.2.53*, *2.4.55*, **9, 13, 39, 42, 46, 49, 55, 79, 97,** ? **144, 161, 212, 228, 232, 237, 243, 247, 255, 302, 317, 343, 403, 409, 481**
Cabeljauw (yacht). *9.4.55*, **40, 43**
'Cable' as measure = 600 feet
Cabo Falso see False Cape (Hanglip)
Cadet. 'Adelborst': not in the sense of officer under training, but soldier of superior education, paid 10 guilders instead of the usual 9 per month. *19.6.87*, **45, 62, 114, 143, 146, 182, 197**
Cadiz. *2.11.96*, *4.1.97*, *8.4.99*, *12.4.99*, *11.11.99*, **141, 415, 417, 421, 451, 464**
Caesar (English). *9.10.79*, *10.10.79*, **221, 222**
Cajuit ('Great Cabin'). At the stern of the ship, on the deck running aft from mainmast on which were the helm and binnacle: occupied by senior persons, Captain, Chief Factor or Merchant, etc. **39, 42, 108, 188, 195, 251** ('cabin'), **362, 453** ('great cabin'), **480**. Plates *3*, *4*, etc.
Calff (*Kalf*, 'pinnace-ship'). *9.2.54*, *12.3.54*, **10, 11, 13, 27**
'Cambuse grande', not identified. **199**
Camen see *Tannen*
Camouks, robber-tribes living between the Caucasus and the N.W. Caspian. **67**
'Campagne' see Poop
'Campaigne-Wig', plain and close-fitting, for travelling. **420**
Camphor-tree. **199, 317**
Can. About 1.6 English quarts by (e.g.) Valentyn 45, 400 ~ = one legger, although usually translated as 'quart': note also that Langhansz in his details of rations (not here translated) carefully distinguishes between ~ and quart. **55, 62** ('~ or Mass'), **132** ('Leipzig ~', not traced), **143** ('Flapcan ... **6** pints'), **258**
Canal, Table Bay to False Bay, as a protective frontier, not for navigation. *21.4* to *9.5.55*, van Goens at Cape, ~ suggested; *16.3* to *19.4.57*, van Goens again at Cape, ~ ordered, **156**, **157** (cursory examination of proposed route, map Plate 24). Also DR *24.7.55* with letter to Batavia, 'we fear that it will entail greater

difficulty and labour than is the opinion of H.E. [van Goens]'; DR *4.2.56* 'decided to be a quite impossible matter ... not advantageous, but ... most highly injurious to the Hon. Company'; letter to Holland, further investigated, found impossible; ditto *29.6.56*, ditto; DR *1.5.57* with letter to Holland, all preliminary work washed away by rain, project disrecommended; letter from Holland *16.4.58*, abandon temporarily. Plate 24.
Canary, *Serinus canicollis*. **134, 462, 483**
Canary Islands (and see Hierro, Tenerife). **48, 111, 116, 185, 211, 226, 229, 278, 458**
Canna, *Sceletium tortuosum*, the plant resembling Ginseng, *Panax schinseng*: the name ~ was later misapplied to *Salsola sp.* **289** (but in Plate 35 there i s

nothing resembling *Sceletium*). See also BVR 52, 53, 55, 73, 77
'Cannon-shot' (as distance). **15** (Fort to Lion Hill), **38** (Fort to Salt River)
Canterbury (English). **471**
'Cape Birds' see Cape Gannets
'Cape Burgomasters' see Burgher-Councillors
Cape Dove, *Daption capensis* (also 'Daimiers', 'Faysons', Pintados etc.) **27, 109, 133,** ? **143** ('swallows'), **174** (? page 91, unnamed), **245, 247, 265, 271, 483.** Plate 57
Cape Gannets, *Sula bassana capensis* (also 'Velvetsleeves', 'Mangas de velludo' and various odd misspellings, etc.) **27** (also the 'little diving-birds', probably immature ~, cf. 'Antenaya' in BVR), **143, 197, 245, 255** ('Mangofolugos'), **373** ('Velve Channels'), **380** ('Mango volucres'), **392** ('Manga Voluchoes'), **401** ('Cape Birds'), **409** (ditto), **471** 'Gannetts'), **474** ('Cape Birds'), **483** (ditto and 'Mangas de Velludo'). See also BVR 13, ? 14, ? 46, 55, 71, 130, 151
Cape Hen, *Procellaria acquinoctalis*. **233** ('Sea-Ravens'), **245** (unnamed), **391** (ditto)
Cape Verde, and Islands (and see Fogo, Maio, S. Antão, S. Vicente, S. Tiago, Sal). **33, 111, 143, 160, 197, 307, 410** ('Salt Islands')
Carp: no true ~, probably *Barbus sp.* **233**
Carrots. *2.4.55*, **38** ('Wortelen', and ? 'Beet-wortelen ofte Carotensalad'), **39, 42, 46, 49, 71, 79, 193, 228, 466, 481.** Also DR *4.9.52* (first ~ gathered)
Carthago. 8.5.98; **439-442** (all unnamed)
CAS see Smith, C.A.
Caske. This is the regular plural of 'cask' in English accounts of this period (e.g., **255**): at times 'cask' is also used as plural (e.g. **310**).
Cassini (astronomer), Jean-Dominique, 1625-1712, Director of Paris University, discoverer of 4 satellites of Saturn. **275, 278**
Cassowary. **154, 190,** Plate 23
Casteel van Medenblick. 7.12.68, **111, 164**
Castel de Freyheit [*sic*] (English). **172, 173**
Castricum (yacht). *8.9.83*, *21.3.87*, *20.5.87*, *29.10.88*, *21.11.88*, **252, 314**
Cat, Wild. *Felis lybica cafra*; also Tiger-Bush-~, *Leptailurus serval*. Probable references to the former are marked °. **16, 17°,** 29°**, 123°, 126°, 138** (furs exported), **217, 241, 251,** 282, **408,** 429°, 482, **484, 485**
Cat see *Civetcat*
Catfish, *Clarias sp.* **136**
Cattenburgh see *Kattenburgh*
Cattendyk. 5.4.99; **450, 451** (both unnamed)
Cattle (and see Hottentots ~). *10.2.55*, *23.11.55*, *27.11.55*, *23.7.60*, *14.10.72*, *14.3.88*, *25.10.88*, *28.3.02. Passim* in items, especially as regards barter; but refusal of this **11, 13, 27, 35, 39**.
Most early writers (see BVR) refer to humped cattle as normal, presumably from Zebu blood: now the only such mentions are **213** and **430**, so that this characteristic was apparently recessive.

Also DR *28.5.53* (tried for first time as draughtanimals), *4.6.53* (being tamed), *10-12.6.55* (unobtainable, and dangerous as draught-animals), *15.7.55* (will not be a success as draught-animals)
Cauliflowers. *16.11.53*, ? **253** ('collwarts'), **481** (salted for ships). Also DR *16.7.52* (sown).
Cavalry and ~ -post. *27.5.60*, *3.2.88*, *20.9.88* (36 men), **63, 97, 103, 174** (page 137, no farms beyond Ruyterwacht)
Cellar. There are frequent references to wine- ~, but they were merely sheds, never underground.
Centaurus ('little yacht'), built by crews of wrecked *Stavenisse** and English *Good Hope*, taken into Dutch service, named ~. *1.3.87* (unnamed), *10.11.87*, *19.2.88*, *18.7.88*, *31.8.88*, *3.9.88*, *8.10.88*, *12.10.88*, *2.12.88*, **315** (unnamed). Also in local service *passim*, e.g., DR *25.11.88*, *22.2.90*, *4.1.99*, *12.1.99*; and *6.3.87* ('the Natal vessel of the English' to be bought)
Ceraste, one of the Horned Adders, probably *Bitis cornuta*. **292**. Plate 33
Ceylon (and see Colombo, Galle, Jaffna, Negombo). *9.4.55*, *2.4.69*, *1.4.70*, *11.1.71*, *2.3.71*, *11.2.72*, *12.2.72*, *24.2.72*, *17.3.72*, *21.3.72*, *23.3.72*, *19.4.72*, *22.1.76*, *12.3.76*, *17.9.77*, *19.4.79*, *20.2.80*, *1.6.83*, *8-10.7.83*, *9.4.88*, *3.2.98*, *19.5.99*, *21.10.99*, **4, 52, 57, 62, 141, 157, 161, 164, 170, 180, 182, 184, 207, 235, 236, 246, 247, 314, 369, 412, 417, 422, 424, 439, 448, 450, 458, 464, 491**
Ceylon. 28.4.76, *4.3.79*, *19.4.79*, **185, 208, 210** (unnamed)
'Chamber'. One of the city-based bodies which together composed the Dutch East-India Company.
Chambers Frigate (Chalmers Frigate, 95 men, 20 guns). *14.10.96*, *5.11.96*, *15.12.96*, **413-417, 421**
Chameleon (probably *Microsaura pumila*). **166** (page 11, near Salt R.), **174** (pages 11, 91 on Robben Island, described), **193, 194;** but **292** and his Plate *Chamaleo namaquensis*; 430 (too vague for identification).
Chandos. 25.7.89, *24.8.89*, **367, 368, 369**
Chapmans Chase: apparently Chapmans Bay, but see note in BVR index. **439**
Charles' Mount = Devils Peak as BVR 141, 142. **253, 367, 425, 440, 446**
Charles (English): cf. next entry. *4.2.83*, *5.2.83*, *8.2.83*, **244** *Charles II* (ditto): ? same as preceding. *29.7.92*, *5.5.94*, *2.6.94*, *29.9.96*, *1.10.96*, *3.10.96*, *4.10.96*, *5.11.96*, *15.12.96*, *25.4.98*, *2.5.98*, **390, 412-416, 418, 419, 439, 440, 441**
Charlotte AEmilia (Danish flute). *8.1.99*, *4.2.99*, **445** (unnamed), **446** (ditto)
Chaumont, Chevalier de, 'Relation de l'Ambassade ...', Paris 1686. *1.6.85*, *3.6.85*, *4.6.85*, *13.3.86*, **261, 264, 266, 267, 268, 271, 274-279, 283, 295-306.** Plate 44.
Cheese. **49, 86, 87, 144, 146, 166** (page 21, liked by Hottentots), **222, 232, 255, 257, 387, 420**
Cherries. **82, 139**
Chestnuts. **82, 97, 199, 228, 481.** Also DR *18.7.61* (at Rondebosch)
China. *25.2.99*, **27, 111, 150, 171, 281, 448**
China (cf. *Berg ~*). *13.2.81*, *16.6.82*, *9.4.83*, *30.5.83*, *1.6.83*
Choisy, François Timoléon de, 'Journal de Voyage ...', Paris 1687. **264-271, 279, 301-306, 372**
Christian IV of Denmark and Norway, 1577-1648. **144**
Christianus Quintus (Danish). *7.4.02*, *8.5.02*, **474** (unnamed)

Church. All early references are to a hall in the Fort: **35, 38, 40, 102, 190, 191, 198, 402** (though **166**, p. 15, has the ridiculous 'beautiful churches' in the plural); as also are DR *11.7.54* ('the hall where prayers are said daily and the sermon preached on Sundays'), *16.6.56* (similarly), *13.9.65* ('upstairs in the hall'); although there were at times also rough sheds when this was too small, e.g., DR *4.7.66* (thatched wooden shed), *28.12.68* (blown down, re-erected). For the permanent church see *9.4.78*, *28.12.00*, **275** ('begun to build'), and the incorrect **479** ('in use'), whereas actually it was first used in 1704 only (DR *6.1.04*). Plate 28

Churchill, A. and J., 'A Collection of Voyages and Travels ...', London 1732. **389**

Cibois, Chevalier de. *13.3.86* ('Grandmaison'), **299, 302, 305**

Cicatrisation (Hottentots). **19** ('grooves and cuts in their skin'), **38** ('cut and burn many signs in their body') are definite, as also are BVR 18, 60, 119, 152; but there is room for doubt whether some or all of these do not in reality refer to the custom of making grooves in the fat-smearing with the finger-nails, as **126, 127, 166** (page 21) and BVR 122.
Cinnamon. **236**
Civet-cat, *Genetta sp.* **226, 250, 251, 282**. Also DR *6.5.52* (seen), *12.6.55* (in van Riebeeck's bedroom; a pest, killing fowls)
Civetcat (flute). *13.4.83*, *8-10.7.83*, **247** ('Cat')
Claas (Claes, real name Dorha, Chainouqua = Sousoa Hottentot). *10.12.76*, *3.3.88*, *14.3.88*, *21.10.88*, *23.10.88*, *1.1.91*, *19.1.91*, **174** (page 111, ally of Dutch against Gonnema, page 135, ditto). (SADB)
Clapmuts see Klapmuts
Claudius: sent to the Cape by Cleyer* in 1681 as botanist, and with van der Stel's 1685 expedition; but sent away (? to Batavia) because of undue help given to French Jesuits during their visit. Most of the Plates in Tachard are his, and probably those in Chaumont and de la Loubère were drawn by him or redrawn from his work. **248, 251** ('a good friend', by his farewell-poem, not included here), ? **269, 281, 286, 289, 300, 304, 329,** also in item 78 as 'German Physition' (he was an apothecary though engaged as a soldier). See also letter to Holland, *26.4.88*, expressing van der Stel's 'great perturbation' that he had told the Jesuits so much, and saying that he had now been 'sent away'. See also SADB volume I.
Cleyer, Andrea (senior Surgeon at Batavia: see Michaud, 'Biographie Universelle ...', Paris 1854). **199, 206, 343**
Clouds over Table Mountain (the Magellanic Clouds, not 'Table-Cloth'). **277, 401, 402**
Cloves. **172, 236**
Cnoll, G., 'Dagregister ...', in 'Collectanea' from Hague Archives.
Coatsworth, Capt. Charles. *10.11.99*, **464, 465**
Cochensona, Hottentot Chief. *5.8.77*
Cochin. **57, 185, 464**
Cocos Islands. **57, 106**
Coeverden see *Couverden*
Coffee (bushes brought for planting -?). **461**
Cogge (*Koge*, yacht). *14.4.65*, *22.4.65*, *24.3.69*, *13.4.69*, *8.3.70*, *24.3.70*, **91, 141, 144** (as 'Gouda' in error)
Collectanea (ed. Botha, C.G.), Cape Town 1924
Colombo. **62, 65, 185, 207, 235**
Colusson, Father. **362, 363, 364, 366**
Commelin, Isaac, 'Begin ende Voortgangh ...', (Amsterdam) 1686. See BVR.
'Commandeur'. (1) Commander, as in English; (2) Rank in the V.O.C. service, senior to Upper-Merchant. There is frequent confusion between the two uses: e.g., van Riebeeck is often called 'the Commandeur' in the first sense, although he came out as Upper-Merchant only.

‘Commissioner’. If (as was frequently the case) a return-fleet was commanded by an official senior to the Governor at the Cape, he was ordered to inspect there and issue ‘Instructions’ to that Governor. See Böeseken, ‘Nederlandsche Commissarissen ...’, Cape Town 1938. Senior officials in outwards fleets also at times acted thus, e.g., Overtwater in item 13.
Comoro Islands. **165, 389, 392**
Coningh David (flute). *3.4.55*, *15.4.55*, **33, 34, 42** (yacht)
Constance see Phaulkon
Constantia. *31.7.85*, **253, 323** (unnamed), ? **390** (ditto), **425** (ditto), **428**
Constantia (yacht). *24.12.67*, *24.1.68*, **102, 106**
Content (English). *15.1.02*
Coopman, Pieter. *6.3.71*, *7.3.71*, **155, 156**
Cope, John, ‘King of the Hottentots’, Cape Town 1967
Copenhagen. *21.3.02*, **9, 141, 143, 174**
Copland, Revd. Patrick (in Purchas) see in BVR.
Copper. *6.9.55*, *28.11.84*, *passim* in items, for barter with Hottentots; but note **216** (discovery of ~ kept secret).
Cormorans, Isle aux (Saldanha Bay, Meeuwen Island). **29.** Plate 20
Cormorant, *Phalacrocorax sp.* **39, 96, 132, 187, 482**
Cornelia (Hottentot). **174** (pages 125, 127, error for Eva)
Cornelia see *Juffer ~*
Corn-salad. **38** (‘Vetticq’)
Coromandel (and see Pondicheri, Masulipatam). *27.2.88*, **43, 52, 111, 314, 338, 342, 352, 416**
Cortemünde, Jan Pietersz. **166**
Cortenhoff (flute). *22.3.59*, *1.4.59*, **53**
Cortgene (*Courtiene*, etc.). *18.4.76*, *28.4.76*, *5.4.82*, *6.4.82*, *29.4.82*, *8.9.83*, *30.9.83*, *30.3.85*, *10.4.88*, *30.4.88*, **182, 184, 236, 243, 252, 338, 339, 340, 342, 351, 352** (often unnamed); and see *Courtgene*
‘Cosmography ...’, trs. London 1682 from Varenius and Sanson
Cossigny, C., ‘Voyage à Canton ...’, Paris (1799): also as ‘J.F. Carpentier Cossigny de Palma’
Coukerken (yacht). *2.4.55*, *15.4.55*, **33, 34, 42**
‘Council’. By, e.g., Graaf's ‘Oost-Indische Spiegel’ (page 34) a ‘Ship's ~’ was composed of Skipper, Merchant (or Book-keeper if none), Chief Mate; and the Commander of soldiers if the matter affected them; or for graver matters plus other Mates, Bos'n, Gunner, Schieman*, perhaps Quartermasters. ‘Broad ~’ of a fleet included all Skippers and Merchants. At the Cape a Broad ~ included the Governor and the Council of Policy (the ruling body), plus the Skippers of all ships in the roads, the Admiral, Vice- and Rear-Admirals, probably the other Merchants, with as President the visiting Commissioner if any. **8, 65, 77, 156, 185, 191, 236, 245, 247, 248, 260, 329, 339, 366, 377, 401, 414, 415, 416, 418, 419, 420**
Councillor, full member of the Council of the Indies, resident at Batavia - see also ‘Extraordinary ~’.
Courcelles, Capt. de. *26.4.89*, **358** (unnamed), **359** (ditto), **363** (ditto), **365, 366**
‘Courses’ (sails), e.g. **421**, see s.v. Spiegelschip.
Courtgene (Dutch) see *Cortgene*: ditto (English) a most improbable name in DR *2.11.86*, *4.11.86*: ? something like *Courtney*. **313** (unnamed)

Couverden (*Kouverven*, etc.). *4.2.76* (unnamed), *18.3.76* (ditto), *2.4.82*, *8.9.83*, *20.9.83*, *30.9.83*, *11.3.85*, *5.6.86*, *25.6.86*, **180, 236, 243, 252, 311**
Cowley, Capt Ambrose, 'Voyage round the Globe ...' in Hacke (also in Moore, Harris, etc.) **307-311**
Cowries, *Cypraea* (but not necessarily *moneta*, cf. DR *9.10.52* 'like ~') **84, 237, 241**
Craanvogel (cf. *Croonvogel*). *1.12.80*
Crab (too vague for identification: cf. Crayfish). **135, 136** ('Taschen Krebse'), **387** ('crabfish'), **409** (in addition to crayfish), **460** (large, *1*½ feet long)
Crane (more probably Heron, *Ardea sp.*) **132, 213, 338,** 483 (in addition to Herons)
Crayfish, *Jasus lalandii* (cf. Crab). **136, 192, 409,** 483
Cretser, Cornelis de (Secretary 1665, Fiscaal 1666). *2.10.70*. **101**
Crimps (and see Seelen-Verkauffers). **110, 226, 401.** Also very fully described in *Langhansz* (his 'Introduction', not included here), *Thunberg I 73-76*, *Mentzel 11 21-23*.

Croese, Serjeant Jeronimus see Cruse
Croonenburg. 8.4.83, *1.6.83*, *29.12.86*, **314** (‘*Krossenburg*’)
Croonvogel (hooker, cf. *Craanvogel*). *18.4.76*, *28.4.76*
Crow. **134** (‘black’ *Corvus capensis*, ‘spotted’ *C. albus*)
Crudop, Hendrik. 1646-80. Bremen, to Cape 1668, Secretary 1671, Secunde 1676, i/c, *29.6.78* and *passim* to *12.10.79*, **191, 222.** To Batavia 1680. (Hoge) (SADB)
‘Cruisers’, ships sent from Holland to meet returnfleets when sailing ‘Northabout*’: in times of war to protect them, at all times to take them fresh foods, and fresh men to replace sick. **67, 156, 177, 180, 242, 340, 352, 411**
Cruse, Jeronimus (Sergeant, later Ensign, Lieutenant, Captain). *22.4.69*, *27.9.70*, *2.10.70*, *29.4.73*, *14.7.73*, *25.7.73*, *26.3.76*, *1.11.76*, *19.11.76*, *23.11.76*, *10.12.76*, *30.7.77*, *5.8.77*, *6.5.78*, **191, 194.** Also Resolutions *8.4.82* (to be Captain-Lieutenant ‘and Captain if none sent out this year’) (SADB)
Cruythoff, Serjeant Pieter. *10-11.3.61*, *16.10.72* (SADB)
Cucumbers. **161, 232, 237.** Also DR *2.10.54* (more land for ~)
Currants. **188, 481** (do not bear fruits)
Cuyper (Hottentot Chief, Watermen). *20.8.73*, *5.3.88*, **174** (page 111, ally of Dutch against Gonnema, 135, ditto), **188** (ditto), **190** (trustworthiness doubted) ∏sp;
Dacha, Dagga see under Hottentots
Damberger, C.F. ‘Travels ...’, London 1801 (from Leipzig also 1801). Some notes on the Cape are of value: the overland journey is of course fiction.
Damiaten. 4.3.71, **111** (but not DR: ? error for *Eendracht*, q.v.), **155**
Dampier, William. Book in three volumes with different titles: I ‘A New Voyage round the World ...’, London 1703 (first edition 1697, practically same text); II ‘Voyages and Descriptions ...’, London 1699; III ‘A Voyage to New Holland ...’, London 1703. **307, 377-385** (from Vol. I), **471** (from Vol. III). Plates 56, 57
Danes and Denmark (and see Copenhagen). *6.12.72*, *9.12.72*, *10.12.72*, *17.1.88*, *8.1.99*, *4.2.99*, *7.4.02*, *8.5.02*, **9, 95, 143, 166, 199, 236, 244, 376, 439, 440, 442, 445, 446, 458, 474**
Dapper, O., ‘Nauwkeurige Beschrijvinge der Afrikaansche Gewesten ...’, Amsterdam 1668. Also ‘Description de l'Afrique ...’, Amsterdam 1686. Part on Hottentots trs. in Schapera. A mere compilation, largely from Nieuhoff, Hondius, etc. **58, 226.** Plates 1, 19, 21, 22
Dassen Island. *14.5.53*, *8.3.55*, *26.2.75*, *21.10.99*, *24.10.99*, **10, 26, 39, 55** (in error, ‘Taxen’), ? **71, 174** (Page 89, passed, post for sealing and sheep), **401, 402,** (‘Taschen’), **458, 459, 460, 464, 483.** Also DR *14.11.52* (visited, described), *17.1.53* (ditto), van Goens Instructions *16.4.57* (V.O.C. markers to be set on ~, van Riebeeck's note ‘Done, *22.10.57*’). Plates 24, 51
Dassie, *Procavia capensis. 14.5.53* (~ from Dassen Island to Robben Island), **16, 26, 82** (‘Steendassen’, ? error for Steenbok), **209,** 213 (‘rabbits’), 297 (ditto), **459** (‘rabbits or killen’), **482**
Davis Strait. **107**
‘Death's-head’ (fish), *Callorhyncus capensis*. **192, 302**

Decks. Originally (NED) the ‘half-deck’ ran from mainmast to stern (above the top deck which ran the whole length of the ship), with on it the helm* and the binnacle, and, right aft, the Cajuit*, roofed by the ‘quarterdeck’. But later (NED and Capt. Smith) the term ‘half-deck’ was restricted to the part forward of the helm, that aft of it being now called the ‘quarter-deck’, and the roof of the cajuit being now termed the poop*.
Declination (compass). When the existence of this, the difference between true and magnetic norths, was first discovered, it was hoped that it would serve to indicate the longitude. Unfortunately it was soon found that it varied from year to year, and was thus of little long-term value. It however still remained useful when compared with recent observations, which is the reason why most of the logs note it day by day, observing it at sunrise or sunset, *Mundy* in HS II 46 has a useful note on the subject, and there is an excellent footnote: see also *Langhansz* (his pages *627-631*, not included here). **144, 156, 277, 278, 308, 309, 359, 360, 380, 391, 410, 412, 417, 422, 423, 439, 441**
Deer (a vague term, often apparently Hartebeest, *Alcelaphus caama*). 8, 29, 34, **56,** 76, 82, 108, 119, **122, 123, 137,** 164, 166 (page 15), 184, 213, 270, **284,** 286, **297,** 394, 429, **482.** Plate 38
Defence (English). ? *12.4.91*, *10.5.91*, ? *2.6.91*, **377-385**
Degrandpré, L.M.J. O'H. ‘Voyage ...’ Paris 1801
De la Caile, N.L., ‘Journal ...’, Paris 1763
Delagoa, Rio/Bay. *30.9.88*, *12.10.88*
De la Guerre, Jonas. *17.7.55*, **34** (unnamed), **35** (ditto)
De la Haye. *23.8.70*, **101, 157**
De la Loubère, Simon, ‘Du Royaume de Siam’, Paris 1691. *11.6.87*, *21.4.88*, **317-322, 324, 329, 352.** Plates 46, 47
Delfshaven. 17.4.69, *5.4.72*, **164**
Delft. *20.3.70*, **76-78**
‘Derdewaak’. Junior mate not in charge of a watch, mentioned in addition to Second and Third Mates by Graaf, (‘Oost-Indische Spiegel’, 33, 34). **33**
Der Goes (yacht: cf. *Wapen van ~*). *11.4.55*, **32, 42**
De Ruyter, Dutch fleet-commander. *28.11.67*
Desfarges, General (and his sons). *11.6.87*, *16.6.87*, **322, 324, 329, 331**
‘Devil’ (fish). **474** (the *one* horn suggests *Pterois sp.*, but rare so far south)
Devils Peak (3,282 feet. At this period officially ‘Windberg’, Wind Hill, although popularly ~ as, e.g., *Kolbe 73*: in English accounts almost always ‘Charles' Mount’ q.v.) **23, 26, 56, 166** (page 16, ‘Blower or ~’), **174** (page 97), 183, 189, 190, **191** (? ores on), 192, 198, **199, 209, 210** (3,298 feet), 212, 227, 228, 237, 243, **308, 319,** 339, **367, 375, 402,** ? **418** (as ‘James' Mount’), **425, 427, 439, 440, 446, 461.** Plates 7, 9, 21, 31 (misidentified as ‘Sugar Lofe’),
Deyl see Dyle
Diana. 9.11.92, **389, 390, 391**
Diemen, A. van (Governor-General 1593-1645). **71**
Diemer, Elmer (Burgher-Councillor). 166 (page 16), **192, 193**
Diemermeer (flute). *11.3.65*, *22.4.65*, **79**
Dieren. 8.6.99, **452** (unnamed)
Discovery (English). *26.3.02*, *27.3.02*, *4.4.02*, *8.5.02*, **473, 474**

‘Dispensier’. The best English equivalent is probably ‘Victualler’, since he was chiefly responsible for food-stuffs (but not those for sale to freemen, for which see ‘Winkelier’).
‘Dodersen’. Used **39** for penguins
Dogs, Wild, *Lycaon pictus*. **16, 39,** 138, **183,** 184, **240,** 270, 297, 429
Doit. ⅛ stiver, say ⅛d.
Dolphijn (*Dolphijntje*, *Dolphin*: small vessel, in local service). *19.6.88*, *18.7.88*, *1.7.96*, *1.7.97*, **48, 49, 164.** Also DR *12.2.99* (to Robben Island), *10.12.00* (to Saldanha Bay), etc.
Dolphin, *Delphinus sp*.., probably *D. capensis* (also

Coryphaena hippurus, but this almost invariably as 'Dorado', q.v.), **136,** 250
Doman (Hottentot). *5-6.4.60*, **20** (vaguely), ? **71,** ? **349.** Also DR *12.12.55* ('a certain other Hottentot called ~ or Dominee ... seeming to be entirely welldisposed towards us, and ... employed ... as interpreter'). Taken to Batavia by van Goens *5.4.57*, back *6.3.58.* DR *21.3.58* ('~, the Hottentot who had ... returned from Batavia with the Hon. Cunaeus ... named Anthony at his own request'), *22.6.58* ('heartily to be wished he had never been in Batavia'), *7.2.59* ('less to be trusted than Herry*')
Domburgh (yacht). *18.3.55*, *31.3.55*, **32, 34**
ditto, ? same. *14.2.98*, *17.2.98*, *20.2.98*, **427**
Donc, Gerritt van der see Verdonk
Donkervliet. 14.2.98, *17.2.98*, *13.3.98*
Doorth. 12.2.72
Dorado, *Coryphaena hippurus*. **284** ('not the ~ of France'). Also Plate 58.
Dordrecht. 25.8.66, **62**
Dorha (Hottentot) see Claas
Dorothy (English). *25.1.90*, *6.2.90*
Dorrill, Capt. Robert. *5.5.94*, *25.4.98*, **412-416, 418-421, 439, 440**
Dorrill. 29.9.96, *5.11.96*, *15.12.96*, **412-418**
Dove, *Columba guinea* (and see Turtledove). **134**
Dover. **33, 182, 366**
Downs, the. *25.4.69*, *18.4.76*, *30.4.76*, *14.7.92*, *10.11.99*, *19.12.99*, **33, 185, 385, 389, 421, 471**
Downton, Nicholas see BVR 47ff, 63ff
Draek (*Vergulde ~*). *15.2.54*, *12.3.54*, *13.3.54*, *14.3.54*, **10, 11, 27**. Also DR *23.4.57* (mentioned as wrecked *28.4.56* in 'Southland')
Dragons. **154, 166** (page 15, 'big ~ with wings'). Plate *23*a
Drakenstein. *10.10.87*, *25.12.87*, *23.10.88*, *24.10.88*, *25.10.88*, *13.11.88*, *10.5.95*, *31.7.00*, *28.3.02*, **428, 431, 432.** Note that early mentions of ~ refer to the whole valley from the modern Fransch Hoek to Groot ~, not merely to the latter: this explains why some say that the Huguenots settled 'at ~', others 'at Fransch Hoek'.
Dregterland. 25.7.89, *13.2.99*, *20.3.99*; **368, 369, 448** (all unnamed)
Driebergen. 19.2.99, *20.3.99*, **448** (unnamed)
Drie Croonen. 27.5.94, *17.6.94*, *22.1.99*, *25.1.99*, *7.2.99*, *14.1.01*, **401** (unnamed), **471** ('Three Crowns'). Mentioned in 1702 as wrecked on outward passage
Drilvis, *Narke capensis*, *Torpedo marmorata*. **16** ('Kraekvis'), **57** ('Trillvis'), **284** ('Torpedo')
Droite (renamed *Swarte Leeuw*). **390**
Dropsy. **19, 156**
Dublin. **173, 174**
Dubbeltje (Dubleke). Two-stiver piece, say 2d.
Ducat. **143**. DR *18.3.99* placcaat repeating van Goens Jr. Instructions *10.3.85*, to be 5 gld., that is 100 stivers; but also found as 105 and 108 st.

Ducatoon. **258, 401**. DR, etc., as preceding entry. To be 10 sch. 3 st., that is 63 stivers; but also found as 72 and 78 st. at the Cape although 63 in Holland.
Du Chatz, Father. *24.6.87* (unnamed), **326, 327, 328**
Ducks, Wild: Hill, *Cadorna cana*; Black, *Anas sparsa*; Yellowbill, *A. undulata*; Shoveller, *Spatula capensis*; Pintail, perhaps *Phaethon rubricauda*; Snow, perhaps *Adamastor cinereus*. 123, **133,** 164, 184, 240, 394, **482**
Duijns see Downs
Duit. ⅛ stiver, or say ⅛d.
Duke of Gloucester (English). **454**
Duquesne, Marquis Henri. *11.6.87*, *10.4.88*, *11.4.88*, **374, 376**
Duquesne-Guiton, Marquis Abraham. **322, 329, 330, 353, 370-374, 386, 387**
Duynhoop. *2.10.52*, *7.2.54*, *4-5.4.61*, **36** ('Sandenburgh'), **166** (page 8, unnamed, 'redoubt at the mouth of the river')
Duynvliet. 5.2.68
Dyle, Capt. van (of *Berkel*). *21.10.96*, **423**

Earth-nut. CAS *Lathyrus tuberosus* (in Holland). **486**
'Easterner'. **209** (here = man from an 'Oostsee', Baltic port, not in the usual sense of Malay)
East-India Merchant (English). *11.1.97*, *1.2.97*, **425**
Echoorn (hooker, 15 men). *9.6.65*
Eendracht. 3.12.68, *13.12.68*, **111** (? as *Damiaten* in error), **114-117** ('*Eintracht*')
Eenhoorn. 19.4.85, *2.5.85*, *1.4.88*, *18.4.88*, *30.4.88*, **336, 337, 339, 340, 342, 351** (unnamed), **352** (ditto)
Eerste R. (into False Bay). Plates *45, 51*
Egmont-on-Sea. **252, 316**
Eland, Taurotragus oryx. 119, **122, 137,** 164, 184, 213, 270, 286, 297, 429 (as 'elk')
Elburg (*Elburus*), flute. *29.11.68*, *3.12.68*, *13.12.68*, **110, 111, 117**
Elephant, *Loxodonta africana*. **29,** 56, 64, 119, **122, 136** (does not fight rhinoceros), **141, 149** (enemy of rhinoceros), 163, **166** (page 11, at Salt River, fighting rhinoceros, armourplated, page 15), 184, 202, 205, 213, 233, **239,** 266, 270, 282, 286, 297, **300,** 429, 462, 481. Plates 23, 65
Elephantiasis. **19, 68**
Elephant-seal see Sea-lion
'Elevens', the (Walvis Rock). **454**
Elizabeth (English). *29.7.92*, *5.8.92*
Ell. Obsolete unit of measurement, elbow to wrist, or to palm of hand, or to finger-tips. Flemish (Dutch) ~ about 27 inches, English ~ 45 inches.
Elpendam see *Ilpendam*
Elsevier, Samuel (Secunde* from arrival in 1697 until deposed in 1706). *30.12.99* ('Joan'), *31.12.99* ('Samuel'); **467, 469, 470** (SADB).
Emeland (*Eemland*, yacht). *27.5.86*, *13.6.86*, *25.6.86*, **308, 311**
Emmenes (*Emenes*, little flute). *19.4.85*, *2.5.85*, *3.8.89*, *12.6.93*, **368, 369** (unnamed, 'flyboat')
'Enemies' of the whale. **250.** In reality none except the Killer-Whale, *Orcinus orca*: the Dolphin preys chiefly on flying-fishes, the Tunny on surface-swimming fishes, and the Sword-fish usually attacks fishes smaller than itself, although attacks on baleenwhales have (rarely) been recorded - more probably however

Hesse here confusedly means the Killer-Whale, since this was at times called ‘Swordfish’, from the way that the erect dorsal fin of the male adult cuts through the water.
Enkhuisen, J.P. van, in Commelin, BVR *29*
Entelope see *Antelope*
Equator, ‘baptism’ on passing: never in V.O.C. ships. **271, 330, 374, 474.** In earlier days (e.g., BVR 123, 129) there were similar ‘baptisms’ of neophytes on passing the Berlengas near the Portuguese coast.
‘Equipagie-Meester’ (Port-Captain, in charge i.a. of ships' stores, and of ships and boats in local service). **196**
Erasmus (yacht, 116 men). *24.9.59* to *12.3.60* see item 10, *20.3.60*, **55, 58, 60, 62, 64, 65**
Erle, William. **414, 417-423, 441, 442**
Ert, Thomas. *3.12.68*, *7.12.68*, **110** (unnamed)
Etersham. 5.6.94, *12.6.94*
Europa (not the same as *Frans* ~). *1.7.73*, *20.2.80*, *27.9.81*, *28.9.81*, *15.10.81*, *23.11.83*, **231, 235, 246, 248, 253**
Eva (Hottentot). **19, 21.** Also DR *28.1.54* (‘a girl who had lived with us and had been given the name of ~’), *12.1.56* (‘a certain girl called ~ by us ... for

some time ... lived in the Commander's house, where also she learned some Dutch'), *31.10.57* ('aged 15 or 16, who has been in the service of the Commander's wife from the beginning, and is now living here permanently'), *2.6.64* (married to Meerhoff), *29.7.74* (death, summary of career), *30.7.94* (burial). And **68, 70, 71, 166** (page 4, met by him on Robben Island, scandalous life as widow), **174** (page 125, 'civil and modest' [*sic*], page 127 ('Cornelia' in error, was married to 'a Surgeon', 'now lives a scandalous life'), **242** (details incorrect). Hottentot name Krotoa, niece of Herry*, sister-in-law of Oedasoa*. See also *Bosman* in 'Huisgenoot', July 1942. (SADB)
Evans, Capt. John. **473, 474**
Everard, Robert. **389-391**
Evrard, Sjt. Pieter. **77** (unnamed, as 'Ensign')
Expeditions, Inland. *6.9.55*, *6.6.57*, *21.3.58*, *10-11.3.61*, *11.2.71*, *27.3.80*, *21.10.80*, *26.1.86*^{o}, **22, 23, 68, 70, 114, 118, 148, 156, 166** (page 22, once or twice a year for barter), **205, 214**^{o}**-216**^{o}, **269, 289-292**^{o}, **297, 300**^{o}, **303**^{o}, **304**^{o}, **306**^{o}, **398**^{o}, **399**^{o}, **437**^{o}, **463**^{o}. The entries marked ^{o} refer to van der Stel's ~ in 1685. See also DR *3.4.55*, first ~ '30 miles* mostly northwards'.
Extraordinary Councillor, associate member of the Council of the Indies, attending meetings if he happened to be in Batavia, able to join in discussions but normally without a vote.
Eyklenburg (frigate). *30.1.99*, *8.2.99*, **446** (unnamed)

Fair Isle (Shetlands). **180, 340**
False Bay. *6.8.53* (casually mentioned, as if already an accepted name), *21.4* to *9.5.55* see Canal*, *5.6.64*, *1.1.76*, *8.5.86*, *3.2.88*, *21.2.99*, *1.3.99* (ridiculous 'survey'). **13** (unnamed), **76, 136, 157** (and Nieuhoff's map, Plate *24*), **194.** Plates 24, 45, 51
False Cape (at this period = Hanglip, although earlier Danger Point as in BVR). **26, 79, 90, 94, 106, 142, 230, 313, 326, 336, 340, 412, 441, 447, 452, 465.** Mislocated on Plate 39
Fame (English). *31.1.99*, *8.2.99*, *9.2.99*, **445, 446**
Faria y Sousa, Manuel de, 'Asia Portugesa ...', see in BVR
'Faysons' = Cape Doves (from Portuguese 'feijoes', spotted beans)
Fenix see *Phenix*
Fernando Noronha Island. **176, 177**
'Figs' (Hotnotsvygen, *Carprobrotus edulis*, formerly *Mesembryanthemum edule*). **351**
Finger-mutilation see s.v. Hottentots
Firebrass (English). *29.1.83*, *6.2.83*, **244**
Fiscaal: legal officer, member of Court in civil cases, Public Prosecutor in criminal ones. *12.12.66*, *24.1.68*, *8.7.69*, *16.3.86*, *23.4.88*, *20.8.88*, *30.12.99*. **11, 166** (pages 12, 13, 15), **187, 191, 195, 266, 365, 402, 420, 422, 442, 464, 465, 467, 469, 479**
Fiscaal Independent. Unlike the preceding, he could be appointed or removed by the Lords XVII only, not by the local council, but differed in no other way. Blesius was ~

Fish and fishing (Table Bay unless otherwise noted). *26.6.52*, *21.2.57*, *7.1.58*, **5, 8, 11, 16, 26** (Saldanha Bay), **29** (ditto), **39, 42, 49, 53, 57, 62, 65,** 70, 83, **96** (Saldanha Bay), **107, 136, 192, 195,** 208, **233, 266, 267, 268, 284, 297, 301,** 331, **381, 394, 398, 422, 460, 474** (Agulhas Bank), **483** (Fish Bay and Saldanha Bay)
Fish Bay. **483**
'Fish': long piece of hard wood, concave one side, convex other, used to strengthen mast. **310** ('clapped a ~ to the foremast')
'Fisining'. Query 'fashioning' or 'finishing'? **442**
Flacourt, Etienne de, 'Histoire de la Grande Isle Madagascar ...', Paris 1658. **29, 30.** Plate 5
Flag. Dutch (or 'Princes ~') definitely Red (not Orange)/White/[Pale] Blue horizontally by **180, 197 198,** *Mentzel 1 99*, *Buttner 4*, *5*: also **171, 214, 220.** This as signal to follow **33,** to come ashore **64**
Recognition-signals at Cape (and see Lion's Head). **146, 198, 199, 217**
Admiral*, etc., *7.3.71*, **144, 182, 208, 219, 220, 246, 300, 338** and Plates 6, 30

Blue, order to sail. **220, 339, 410**
White, at sea to call Broad Council. **156, 339,** also *Graaf's* 'Oost-Indische Spiegel' page *34*
White, peace. *10.12.66* (or ? French), **358** (ditto)
Red, war. ? *8.3.55* (in item 3), but doubtful by context
English. *20.9.65* ('Red'), *24.7.73* ('white with red cross'). At this period the Royal Navy ~ was the Union ~ of today less the St. Patrick's cross, but in 1664 merchantships were ordered to fly the George cross if English (the Andrew if Scottish), which fits the second entry, the first being inexplicable.
French. *31.8.66* ('blue', in item 15), *10.12.66* ('white', ditto; or ? for peace). At this period it was white with three golden fleurs-de-lys: the 'blue' entry is inexplicable.
Flamingo, *Phoenicopterus ruber*. **14, 15, 133, 134, 164, 174** (page 103, 'sort of pelican' [*sic*])
Fleet (frigate, English, 60 men, 22 guns). *25.2.99*, **447, 448, 451**
Fleischer, Andreas Gottfried. *3.12.68*, **110**
Flies. **17, 485**
Flowers, Capt. John. *11.11.99*, **464, 465**
Flushing see Vlissingen
'Flute' (Namaquas): in reality a sort of 'Pan-pipe'. **289, 290, 291**
Flute (ship): English 'flyboat', the NED definition of ~ not being applicable to Dutch vessels. Similar rig to 'Spiegelschip*', but with rounded stern instead of the high, square one; also usually slimmer, lesser draft, faster. Note *Zuylen* called both ~ and galliot*, and ship of DR *7.3.71* both ~ and yacht*. *Passim* in the DR references, **4, 23, 33, 48, 53, 75, 79, 141, 142, 157, 164, 165, 168, 185, 208, 243, 246, 247, 248, 252, 258, 260, 314, 322, 329, 330, 338, 339, 342, 343, 358, 359, 361, 368.** Plate 25
Flyboat see Flute
Flying-fish, *Exocoetus volitans* etc., **46, 143, 271.** Plates *55*, *58*
Fogo Island (Cape Verde Islands). **111, 112**
Fontenai, Father de. **265, 267, 271, 274, 275, 287**
Forbes, Vernon S. **386**

Forbin, Chevalier de, 'Journal ...', Amsterdam 1730. *1.6.85*, *11.4.88*, **261-264, 266, 271, 274, 305, 353.** Plate *32*
Formosa. **53, 57**
Forster, G., 'Voyage round the World ...', London 1778 (Vol. II)
Fort, First. *9.4.52*, *15.5.52*, *21.10.52*, *18.1.53*, *9.10.54*, *17-20.8.60*, *28.6.63*, *30.5.65*, *16.2.71*, *19.5.74*, **9, 13, 35, 38** (described), **46,** 49, 56, 63, 68, **76** (commanded by dunes), **79, 94, 97, 101** (dilapidated), **103, 112, 144,** 183, 189, **190** (walls thrown down into moat, living-quarters preserved), **226, 258, 269** (wooden, *sic*). Also repairs *passim* in DR, and Resolutions *27.10.71* ('lying like a mole-heap'). Plan Hague Archives 814, in VRS edition of Van Riebeeck Diaries, Cape Archives 49 in Ras., A., 'De Kasteel ...', Cape Town 1959: see also this invaluable book. Plates 8, 17, 18, 28
Fort, Second. *8.6.65* (sited badly), *26.8.65* (re-sited), *2.1.66*, *10.5.67*, *16.2.71* (one bastion ready), *21.2.71*,

25.3.71, *29.2.72*, *26.3.72*, *3.9.76* (completed), *5.3.82*, *12.4.84*, *16.7.85* (Kat* ordered), *2.12.88*, *22.5.95*, **94, 101, 144, 161, 166** (page 15, built 1664 [sic], surrounded by moat), **174** (page 91, in hand), **180, 189, 198** (moat landwards only), **212, 227, 232, 243, 262, 269** (no moat), **270, 272, 274, 275, 278, 279, 282, 296, 309, 317, 331, 363-366, 381, 387** (no moat), **399, 402** (moat landwards only), **423, 427, 428** (no moat or outworks), **479.** Also DR *4.8.73* (guns being moved in from first fort), Resolutions *2.10.77* (landward gate to be closed and new one made towards sea), *16.10.77* (moat to be deepened and widened, refutatation [*sic*] of Gunner's statement that ~ commanded from Devils Peak, and his arrest), *25.2.81* (moat, landward only, to be deepened and widened but not extended), Van Goens Sr. Instructions. DR *5.3.82* (seaward gate to be closed again, new gate landward), letter to Holland *30.4.84* (belltower built over this new gate; as today). Also Cape Archives (60, in Ras), 1682, showing both gateways, and moat on four of the five flanks, but not to seaward. Plates 28, 31, 45, 46, 51, 63, 65:34, 55 are ridiculous.
Fouche, Dr. Leo. **32**
Foula. **156**
Fox (probably Jackal, *Thos mesomelas*: less probably *Vulpes chama*). **126, 147, 148, 166** (page 20, tail, Hottentot flywhisk), **174** (page 117, Hottentot peniscover), **183,** 394.
'Fraises', sharpened stakes set more or less horizontally in walls of fort (see NED). **94**
Fransch Hoek. **403.** See also Drakenstein
Frans Europa (not the same as *Europa*). *15.4.73*, *29.4.73*, *1.5.73*, **168, 170, 171, 173**
Fredericus Quartus (Danish). *21.3.02*, *8.5.02*
Fredrick (English). *6.9.99*, *14.9.99*
Freemen-colonists. *28.4.55*, *21.2.57*, *6.6.57*, *17.7.57*, *7.1.58*, *1.5.59*, *13.9.60*, *24.9.66*, *16.12.66*, *22.1.67*, *2.10.70*, *14.10.72*, *29.6.73*, *6.7.73* (first mention of ~ sent out from Holland), *14.7.73*, *20.3.76*, *20.3.81* (now 600), *16.7.85* (153 families), *8.10.85* (girls sent out), *23.4.88*, *27.4.88*, *12.10.88* (girls), *15.10.88*, *24.10.88*, *7.12.88*, *1.8.96*, *22.6.1700*, *28.3.02* (census), **13, 49, 56** ('sent out with wives and children', [sic]), **65** (ditto), **70, 77, 82, 83, 97, 100, 103, 129, 146, 166** (page 15, now 250), **183, 212, 214, 227, 228, 232, 234, 237, 243, 259, 296, 300, 380, 396, 397, 402, 403, 407, 408, 429, 430, 447, 467.** Also letter to Holland *21.5.57* with list of wives and children recommended for sending out.
French (and see Armagnan, Bèze, Cassini, Chaumont, Choisy, Cibois, Colluson, Cossigny, Coucelles, Degrandpré, de la Caille, de la Guerre, de la Haye, de la Loubère, Desfarges, Duquesne (two), du Chatz, Flacourt, Fontenai, Forbin, Guedeville, Huguenots, Jourdain, Joyeux, Labillardière, Le Blanc, Leguat, Lullier, Masurier, Mondevergue, Pagès, Prévost, Pyrard de Laval, Rennefort, St. Martin, St. Pierre, Sebret, Sonnerat, Tachard, Tavernier, Thevenot, Vaudricourt, Walckenaer). *10.12.66* to *22.1.67* in item 15, *20.11.67*, *23.8.70* to *2.10.70* in item 15, *31.7.72*, *15.3.79*, *22.5.79*, *4.3.82*, *18.4.85*, *28.4.85*, *31.5.85*, *passim* June 1685, March 1686, June 1687, *11.7.87*, *27.2.88*, *passim* April to June 1688, *26.4.89*, *8.5.89*, *30.6.89*, *5.5.95*, *3.2.98*, *11.4.98*, *19.4.98*, *29.4.98*,

22.6.1700, **71, 94-101, 122, 143, 158, 168, 175, 178, 199, 204, 210, 220, 221, 338, 342, 343, 390, 439, 440, 458**
Fresh River (now flowing underground; and see Water, Table Bay), 26, **38** (unnamed), **174** (page 97, through Garden), **216, 242, 381, 398, 477, 480.**. Plates 17, 46
Frigate: relatively small warship, probably with one tier of guns only: figures quoted are 20 to 30 guns, 60 to 70 men; but French ~ much larger, 30 to 50 guns, up to 350 men. Note that *Swarte Leeuw* figures both as ~ and yacht*. *22.1.67*, *17.1.88*, *10.4.88*, *1.7.94*, *7.9.96*, *12.11.96*, *24.5.97*, *1.7.97*, *3.2.98*, *1.6.98*, *19.2.99*, *8.3.99*, *2.4.99*, *3.7.99*, *29.11.99*, *30.12.99*, *20.8.02*, **168, 211, 261, 264, 271, 295, 299, 322, 338, 342, 343, 447, 448, 451, 464**
Frogs, too vague for identification. **41, 209, 210**
Fryke, Christopher, 'Ostindische Reise ...', Ulm 1692. (Trs. by De Vries, Utrecht, 1694; by 'S.L.', London 1700 reprinted in 'Seafarer's Library', London 1929.) **58, 182, 226, 229-235, 258-261.** Plate 29
Funnell, Wm., 'Voyage round the World ...', London 1707

Gabbema, Abraham. *5.6.64*, **76, 77.** Also DR *19.10.57* (in charge of expedition). (SADB)
Galle. *24.3.69*, *1.1.76*, *1.3.76*, *4.3.79*, *8.4.83*, *11.3.85*, *10.4.88*, *28.12.96*, **185, 207, 243, 314** *28.12.96*, **185, 207, 243, 314**
Gallion. Gallioen (Dutch) see Head
Galliot: small sailing-vessel, one mast, with triangular foresail, and mainsail on gaff with or without boom, with lee-boards, used coastally in Holland but quite capable of ocean voyages: figures quoted are 14 to 26 men. *18.1.53*, *10.4.55*, *1.4.59*, *5.1.88*, *3.2.88*, *3.9.88*, *30.9.88*, *12.10.88*, *19.10.88*, *31.3.90*, *1.7.94*, *8.9.96*, *27.10.96*, *1.7.97*, *6.4.02*, **4, 10, 34, 38, 39, 178** (pilot-boat)
'Gallows', The (Mouille Point). **387.** Note the ~ on Plates **11, 63**
Gamron (Bandar Abbas). **167**
Garagiaus, not identified. 483
Garden, The Company's. *3.7.53*, *25-26.5.54*, *1.10.55*, *28-29.4.56*, *8.6.65*, *29.12.66*, *13.3.74*, *9.3.80*, *3.6.85*, *4.6.85*, *30.10.85*, *16.6.87*, *20.6.99*, *1.7.99*, **13** (15 morgen [sic]), **38, 41, 46,** 76, **79, 102** (15 morgen), **139, 166** (page 15, 'large and beautiful'), **174** (page 97, rosemary hedges, lemons, oranges, laurcls, well-watered), **188, 192, 198** (1,000 by 300 roods, error for 'yards'), **199, 212** (1,400 by 220-230 yards, 33 morgen), **228,** 255, **266, 267, 268, 270, 275-279, 287** (1,411 by 235 paces, say 35 morgen), **296, 297, 300, 302, 303, 309** (one mile by one furlong), **317, 319, 324, 342, 343, 351, 364, 381, 382, 387, 398, 404** ('roods' in error, as **198**), **423, 428, 461, 466, 480** (1,430 by 240 paces). Also Placcaat *22.9.54* against trespass on ~; Frisius Report 1661 (21 morgen); van Goens Jr. Instructions 1681 (20 morgen). *Valentyn X 17-20* describes as of 19 morgen, *Kolbe 650* also as 19 morgen, but adding that the part furthest from the Church was originally part of ~, but taken as pasture by Simon van der Stel. See also *Karsten*, *M.C.*, 'The Old Company 's ~', Cape Town 1951. Plates 17, 28, 46
Garrison: the term as used in Dutch documents includes civilian officials, surgeons, clergy, etc., i.e., all the employees of the Company; and the total of soldiers includes those specially employed or 'lent*', so that an entirely false idea is given of the number actually doing duty. *10.5.67*, *12.4.84*, *16.7.85* (van

Reede's Instructions 332 ‘soldiers’), *5.5.95*, *1.7.98*, *1.7.97*, *1.7.98*, **38, 94** (400 ‘in the fort’, which is ridiculous), **103, 166** (page 15, 2,000 soldiers and 250 civilians, even more ridiculous), **198** (300-400, i.e. total employees), **212** (400-500, ditto), **227** (300-350, ditto), **372** (1,200 *sic*), **402** (300-400 ‘in the fort’ *sic*), **428** (500 in the fort *sic*). See also, e.g. DR *3.7.58* (97, of whom 19 sick), Resolutions *17.1.71* (209, but after deducting non-combatants, outposts, sailors, etc., only 43 soldiers in fort), ditto *12.2.84* (310, of whom only 80 soldiers in fort)

Gavoitoyns, not identified. 483
Gazelle, probably Gemsbok, *Oryx gazella*. **282,** 286, 331
Gecroonde Leeuw. 6.3.58, *19.3.58*, *23.12.59*
Gecroonde Vrede. 5.3.71, *25.3.72*, **155, 158, 164**
Geelvink (frigate). *7.9.96*, *27.10.96*, *15.12.96*; **414, 418, 419** (all unnamed)
Geese, Wild (too vague for identification). 34, **123, 133,** 164, 394, 482
Gemsbok, *Oryx gazella* (and see Gazelle). **137**
Gent (*Gendt*). *8.5.98*, *10.5.99*, *25.3.02*, *8.5.02*, **439** (unnamed), **440** (ditto), **441** (ditto), **442** (ditto), **491**
Gerechtigheid. 1.2.71, *24.2.71*, *9.4.72*, **164**
Giedde, Ove. **144** (in BVR but without mention of inscription)
Gilchrist, in Proceedings of the Philosophical Society, 1900. **131**
Ginseng see s.v. Canna
'Gladiolus'. **174** (page 119, leaves for huts, bulbs eaten, 'Hotnotsvyg'; page 129 'Swordlily', ditto). *Gladiolus psittacus* is 'Sword-lily' and leaves could be so used, but corms eaten medicinally only; and 'Hotnotsvyg', *Carprobrotus* (ex *Mesembryanthemum*) *edulis* is not 'Sword-lily', nor could leaves be so used.
'Glass'. Sand-glass emptying itself in 30 minutes, when it was turned and the bell struck, once, twice, etc., in succession from the watch-setting. Hence Dutch and German accounts often write of a time as, e.g., 'four glasses', for the Englisch 'four bells', in both cases two hours after watch-setting. (There were also half-minute or minute sand-glasses used for measuring the speed of the ship through the water, her 'way': e.g. **392**)
Gnu, *Connochaetes gnou.*? **137** ('Wilde-Böcke')
Goa. **62, 141, 389, 471**
Goat: in error, or for 'bok'. *28.3.02*; but **39, 56** ('~, sheep, or also wild animals'), **82, 103, 243, 331**
Godee-Molsbergen, E.C., 'De Stichter van Hollands Zuid-Afrika', Amsterdam 1912. **58, 75**
Goede Hoop. 5.6.92, *4.9.92*, **390**
Goens, Ryklof van, Senior. *21.4* to *9.5.55*, *16.3* to *19.4.57*, *16.2.82*, **236, 243.** SADB Vol. I.
ditto ditto, Junior. *24.3.69*, *11.1.71*, *13.2.81*, *20.3.81*, *10.10.84*, *31.7.85*, *20.3.87*, **141, 157, 316.** SADB Vol. I
Goeree. *22.3.59*, *15.4.88*, *25.4.88*, *5.6.99*, **111, 114, 115**
Goes. **53** (and see *Der ~*, *Wapen van ter ~*)
Gogosoa (Hottentot, Chief of Goringhaiquas, 'the Fat Captain') see s.v. Hottentots, Caepmans*. (SADB)
Gonnema (Ngonnomoa, Hottentot, Chief of Cochoqua, 'the Black Captain'). *23.11.55*, *27.11.55*, *8.11.62*, *29.6.73*, *12.7.73*, *14.7.73*, *25.7.73*, *20.8.73*, *20.3.76*, *26.3.76*, *1.11.76*, *23.6.77*, *30.7.77*, *5.8.77*, *22.2.88*, 131 ('Goamoa'), **174** (page 111, 'Honnima', at war with Dutch; page 135, only enemy of Dutch), **190**. (SADB)
Goske, Isbrand. *17.8* to *2.9.65* (at Cape, Fort re-sited), *1.2* to *24.2.71* (at Cape), *25.3.71*, *2.10.72* and *passim*, to *3.1.76*, **155, 166** (page 15), **185, 479.** (SADB)
Gouda (yacht). *1.4.70*, *11.2.72*, *24.2.72*, **144, 160** ('*Wapen van der Gouw*')

Goude Leeuw (frigate, Danish prize). *17.1.88*
Goudesteyn. 6.6.83, *6.7.83*, *9.3.86*, *15.4.86*, *30.3.88*, *21.4.88*, *30.4.88*, **246, 247, 248, 336, 338, 339, 340, 342, 343, 351, 352** (often unnamed)
Goutvinck. 26.3.72, *30.5.72*, **164, 166**
Goyland (flute). *9.4.72*, **164**
Graaf, Nicolaus de, 'Reisen na de vier Gedeeltens des Werelds...', Hoorn 1701, etc. (also LV 1930), bound with his 'Oost-Indische Spiegel', **141, 164, 165, 182, 185, 207-210, 314, 315, 316, 400.** Also BVR 153-155.
Grace Dieu (English). *19.3.99*, **451**
Granary. *20.7.57*, *15.12.59*, *31.8.63*, *14.6.69*, **60, 76, 191, 214**
Grandmaison, 'Ridder' (*13.3.86*) see Cibois
Grantham, Caleb. **450, 451**
Grapes. **14, 70, 97, 138, 139, 161, 192, 199, 212, 236, 237, 299, 300, 302, 303, 306, 317, 372, 374, 376, 380, 429, 475, 481**
Grave (flute, *Stadt ~*, *De Graaf*). *3.5.76*, *22.5.76*, **185**
Gravesend. **221, 391, 399**
'Great Cabin' see Cajuit
Greenland. **39, 400**
Green Point: some unnamed references indexed as 'Mouille Point' may be intended for ~. **367, 369, 413, 415, 417, 418, 422, 439, 442, 447, 452, 466, 472, 473**
Grevenbroek, J.G. de, in Schapera from MS.: draws heavily from Dapper. **284**
Grimmesteyn. 14.2.98, *17.2.98*, *20.2.98*, *13.3.98*
Grotebroek (flute, *Grootenbroeck*). *9.4.72*, *21.10.73*, *8.11.73*, **164**
Grouse, ? Namaqua Sandgrouse, *Pterocles namaqua*; or *Francolinus capensis*. **331**
Guallioen (*24.3.82*) see Head
Guava. **199, 351**
Guedeville, N., 'Atlas Historique ...'. Paris 1732, Vol. VI only
Guiana, Dutch. **91** ('gunee'), **458**
Guilder: at the Cape money of account merely, coin rarely seen = 16 st. say 1s/4d.
Guldenwagen. 21.3.87, *20.5.87*, **314**
Gull: most references too vague for identification. 132, **133** (Blue ~, Great Cape Shearwater, *Adamastor cinereus*), 240, 409, 483 (speckled ~ see Cape Dove)
'Gunnere', used always in the sense of Master- ~
Gunroom: right aft, below the top deck - in pictures showing the high square stern of the 'Spiegelschip*' (e.g. Plate 4) the top row of windows are those of the Cajuit*; the lower row are those of the Hut (Dutch) or Cuddy (English) where junior officers were berthed, 'Wardroom' being the nearest modern English equivalent; and below these can be seen the portholes of the ~, accommodating more junior officers such as Gunner, Boatswain, Carpenter. Plates 3, 4
Gutter, Capt. **415, 417, 421**
Gyfford, Capt. William. *25.4.98* ('Scheffer'), **425** ('Jefford'), **440**

Hacke, M., 'Collection of Original Voyages ...', London 1699
Hackius, Pieter. *18.3.70* and *passim* to *1.12.71*, ? **123, 143, 155-157, 160.** (SADB)

Haddock, Jos. **252, 253**
Haen (galliot, 14 men). *1.7.94*
Haes (yacht). *26.3.53*, **8**
'Hagboat': NED vague, one of 350 tons mentioned. **419** (*Berkel*, 145 men), **425** (*Scarborough*, 105 men), **440** (unidentified)
'Hagel, Jan': = 'Jack Tar'. **247**
Hague and Archives. *5.5.95*, **32, 45, 48, 53, 55, 62, 75, 78, 110, 111, 114, 142, 143, 157, 160, 182, 187, 197, 211, 229, 231, 401, 411, 477**
Hakluyt, Richard, 'Principal Navigations ...', London 1589, etc.
Hallwell, John. **245, 246**
Hamburg. *28.12.99*, **203, 226**
Hamilton, Capt. A., 'New Account ...', London 1744
'Hammerfoort', Dominee of. **405**: see *Kolbe* (*349* as 'Amersfort'), who tells how the Revd. Pastor

swindled the Hottentots out of the bread he had promised them.
Hammond, Capt. Henry. **452**
Handboog. 5.5.89, *27.5.94*, **401**
'Handlanger', literally 'Helper': infantryman detached for service with artillery, with extra pay.
Hanglip see False Cape: this is the correct form of the name, 'like a lip hanging down over the chin' (*Kolbe 81*), and is always used in Dutch times, the modern 'Hangklip' appearing to be an English corruption.
'Happevoye' (= 'Happefoie', which however appears to be an entirely different bird). **250**
Harder, *Liza ramada*. **11, 26, 42** (described), **136, 192, 381** (exported pickled, unnamed), **398** (ditto)
Hare, *Lepus capensis*. 76, **123, 130,** 137, 164, **166** (page 15), 213, 297, **351,** 482. And see in Hottentots, Taboos
Harpins: the foremost parts of the gunwales which enclose the bow of a ship and are fastened to the stem. **439**
Harris, John, 'Navigantium atque Itinerarium Bibliotheca ...', London 1705 first edition, best text 1764. **71**
'Harse', 'open': to lie to at least two anchors so placed that the cables cannot possibly cross. **466**
Hartsing, Willem Carel. *9.3.86*, **302** (unnamed)
Harwich. **171, 174**
Harwich (English). *16.6.99*, *2.7.99*, *3.7.99*, **453, 454, 455**
Hassenberg (flute). *15.4.69*, **141**
Hastings (English). *16.6.99*, *2.7.99*, *3.7.99*, *21.2.01*, **453, 454, 455, 471**
Hawk, presumably *Falco sp.* but too vague for closer identification. **134,** 483
Hayes, Capt. **413, 415, 416** ('Hawks'), **418**
'Head'; Dutch 'gallion', 'guallioen' (both from Portuguese or Spanish). From Capt. Smith: 'The Beak-head is without the ship before the fore Castle ... fastened into the stem, all painted and carved as the sterne, and of great vse, as well for the grace and countenance of the ship, as a place for men to ease themselues in' - the latter sense persists today. *Graaf's* 'Oost-Indische Spiegel' (*35*) has it as 'Galioen', also mentioning the cells there. *24.3.82* ('Guallioen'), **248, 389, 391.** Plate 4 best
Heath, Capt. **377, 378, 385**
Heathcocks ('Auerhanen'), probably Black Korhaan, *Afrotis* (*Eupodarus*) *afra.* 164
'Heave short' = same as 'Come apeak*'
Hector 5.3.58, *19.3.58*, *22.3.59*, *1.4.59*, **53**
Hedge. *2.8.59*, *19.8.59*, *27.9.59*, *20.12.60*. Also DR *13.5.61* (extension); Memorandum Overtwater *7.9.63* (now useless)
Heeck, Gijsbert, 'Journael ofte Dagelijcxsz Aenteijkenning ...'. Hague Archives MS. Kol. Aanwinsten 1903, XV. **32-43**
Heins (Heinsius), Daniel. *13.2.99*, **480**
Helder, Den (on the Texel channel). **178**
Helder (flute). *25.3.87*, *25.5.87*, *7.6.88*, *29-30.6.88*, **314**

‘Hell’, forest thus called. **193**
Hellevoetsluis. **111, 311**
Helm: the ‘whipstaff’, long lever actuating the tiller, steering-wheels not coming into general use until well into the 1700's. From Capt. Smith: ‘is before the great Cabin [q.v.] where he that steereth the ship doth alwaies stand, before him is [the binnacle] ... The Whip-staffe is that peece of wood like a strong staff the Stearsman or Helmesman hath alwaies in his hand ... made fast to the Tiller with a Ring. The Tiller is a strong peece of wood made fast to the Rudder ... playeth in the Gunroome (q.v.] by the Whip-staffe; whereby the Rudder is so turned to and fro as the Helmesman pleaseth.’
Hen (little flute, 50 men: cf. *Haen*). *1.7.99*
Hendrik Mauritz. 4.2.76 (unnamed), *18.3.76* (ditto), *14.5.79*, *8.4.83*, *1.6.83*, *9.3.86*, *15.4.86*, **180**
Hengst, Sjt. *1.1.91*, *19.1.91*
Heron, *Ardea sp.* (and see Crane). **134, 394,** 483
Herport, Albrecht. ‘Neue Ost-Indianische Reisebeschreibung ...’, Berne 1669. **54-57, 58, 106, 107, 132.** Plates 9, 10
Herry (Hottentot, real name Hadah - see BVR s.v. this). Taken to Batavia in 1629 or 1631 by an English Skipper and brought back the following year, and apparently called ‘Harry’ by the crew: then useful to English and Dutch callers for barter-arrangements, and as ‘Post-master’, taking charge of letters to Europe given him by outward-bound ships and handing them over to the first homeward-bound ship of that nationality. He acted as interpreter for van Riebeeck, at times regarded as invaluable, at times suspected and even imprisoned on Robben Island: see the following DR extracts. DR *3.1.54* ‘our former interpreter [had stolen cattle, and] we fear he causes much mischief with the Saldanhars’; *24. 1.55* ‘~ has very cleverly again got into our good favour’ [by getting cattle from inland]; *6.9.55* [with the first inland expedition, for barter]; *8.12.59* ‘~ escaped from Robben Island in our little skiff’; *5-6.4.60* [came to the Fort with Doman* and] ‘many of their people, the Caepmans, to treat for peace’; and again useful *5.5.60*, *15.12.60*, etc. Died 1663. (SADB)
Hesse, Elias, ‘Ost-Indianische Reisebeschreibung ...’, trs. de Vries, Utrecht 1694 from Dresden 1687 edition: also the 1687 text reprinted Hague 1931. Monotonously echoes Dapper on Hottentots. **48, 115, 138, 226-229, 246-251**
Heydt, Johan Wolfgang, ‘Schauplatz...’, Wilhermsdorff 1744: part on Cape trs. and ed. Raven-Hart, Cape Town 1967.
Hide, Capt. **412, 413, 415, 416, 419**
Hierro Island (Canaries: zero of longitude*). **278**
Hill, Charles. **450**
Hippopotamus, *H. amphibius capensis. 20.3.76*, **15** (seacows), **29, 57** (seacows), **109** (ditto), 119, **137, 148, 149** (sea-horses), **166** (page 12, at Salt River), **184** (seacows), **239** (ditto), **240** (ditto; and Plate), **290** (ditto), 409 (ditto), **459** (ditto), **482** (ditto). Plate 41
Hirondelle (French). ? *26.1.91*, ? *12.2.91*, **374, 375** (unnamed), **376** (ditto)
‘Hitland’ (Shetlands). *21.10.88*
Hobre (*Hobree*, flute). *9.4.88*, *30.4.88*, **338, 339, 340, 342, 351, 352** (often unnamed)
Hoefyser (hooker). *6.6.86*, *25.6.86*, **311**

‘Hoeks en Cabeljauws’: two factions in Holland 14th/15th Centuries - cf. ‘at sixes and sevens’. **189**
Hoeties Point (Saldanha Bay). *8.7.69* (~ Bay). Plate 45
Hoffman, Johann Christian, ‘Oost-Indianische Voyagie ...’, Cassel 1683. **116, 132, 160-164, 180**
Hof(*f*) *van Breda* (*~ Breeda*). *16.6.68*, *6.3.71*, *22.3.71*, *7.3.72*, *2.5.74*, *3.6.74*, **156, 164, 175**
Hof(*f*) *van Ilpendam* (cf. *Ilpendam*). *12.6.93*
Hof(*f*)*van Zeelant. 2.3.53*, *17.4.53*, **62**
Hoge, Dr. J., ‘Personalia of the Germans at the Cape, 1652-1806’, Archives Yearbook 1946.
Holderland, Henrick see Oldenland
‘Hollandia Nova’ usually = Australia
Hollandse Tuin (variously spelt). *5.5.74*, *3.6.74*, *12.4.79*, *28.4.79*, *1.6.79*, *4.4.82*, *6.4.82*, *29.4.82*, **167, 175, 211, 219, 220, 221, 236, 242**

'Home, to come' (of anchor) = to drag, fail to hold fast. **467**
Hondius, Jodocus, 'Klare Besgrijving...', Amsterdam 1652
Honey. **16, 166** (page 22, bartered), **286, 483, 486**
Honshol(*s*)*redyck. 30.3.85*, *11.4.88*, **314, 338, 342**
Ho(*o*)*gergeeste* (yacht). *11.5.83*, *5.6.92*, **247**
Hooker (Dutch 'Hoeker': small vessel, 14 to 20 men usually). *9.6.65*, *30.10.66* (50 men), *22.1.67*, *2.4.69*, *3.4.69*, *17.4.69*, *20.3.70*, *24.3.70*, *18.4.76*, *28.11.84*, *6.6.86* (but also as 'flute'), *22.6.86* (ditto), *1.4.88*, *27.5.94*, *3.9.96*, *27.10.96*, **141, 170, 172, 185, 193, 236.** Note that *Nyptang* is 'Hoeker', but (**414**) 'Pink' in English
Hoop (Danish). *17.1.88*
Hoorn. *5.3.71*, **165, 208, 209**
Hoorn, Pieter van. *26.8.63*, *9.9.63*, **75-78, 167**
Horses (and see Cavalry). *16.11.54*, *10.4.55*, *25.2.65*, *14.10.72*, *19.2.73*, *23.12.88*, *28.3.02*, **40** (2 from S. Helena, now 8), **62** (from Batavia), **63** (for cavalry), **76, 97, 108, 191-194, 208, 214, 234, 266, 270, 290, 304, 331, 381.** Also DR *8.8.55* ('we therefore require at least 6 or 8 more ~', chiefly for hauling wood, ploughing), *10-12.6.55* (oxen not available and ~ less dangerous to handle), *15.7.55* (draught-oxen will not be a success, a few more ~ needed), *19.7.56* ('had we only enough ~, our greatest and principal lack'), *17.2.60* ('we have now received ~'), *8.8.60* ('the ~ ... arouse especial awe among the natives'). See also *Child*, *D.*, 'The Saga of the South African Horse', Cape Town 1967.
Horses, Wild: usually = Quaggas, but occasionally Zebras, q.v.
Hospitals. First, built by van Riebeeck on shore. Mentioned in letter to Batavia, *14.4.53. 8.6.65*, **76, 114, 139, 166** (page 15, on beach), **176** (200 sick), **226** almost certainly refer to this ~, which continued in use (see Plate 28) even after the building of the Second ~, even if only as overflow quarters, so that many of the references below, as also DR *24.10.99*, may in reality refer to it. Also DR *3.9.61* (100 sick in one ship, tents used), *8.6.65* (mention of 'the old ~'), *26.8.66* (more than 100 sick). See also Plate 17 as 'Cable-store'.
Second, in outworks of first Fort. *28.6.63* (to be made), *6.9.64* (roofgirders in place), *18.8.65* (in use), *26.8.66*, *30.4.76*, *17.9.77*, *27.9.81*, *8.5.96*, *9.11.96*, **110, 112, 188, 258, 363, 368, 401, 409.** Also Frisius Report 1661 (held 25-30 only). Plates 17, 18
Third, cruciform, opposite Church. *24.10.99*, **460, 461** ('more than royal'), **480** ('properly provided'); but *Thunberg I 243*, himself a doctor, *Stavorinus I 551*, *Forster 61*, *152*, all criticise the unskilled surgeons, poor supply of medicines, and ill-treatment of patients.
'Hotnotsvyg'. *Carprobrotus edulis* (formerly *Mesembryanthemum edule*). See s.v. Roots

HOTTENTOTS (and see 'Apron', Cicatrisation, Roots, Testicles)
Abandonment of old and sick. **113.** See also Terry, Herbert in BVR, and *Grevenbroek 257*, *Kolbe 544*, *5*, *Sparrman I 358*, etc.; but *Mentzel III 291*, *325* says no longer true.

Age. **148, 174** (page 133 ‘premature old age’, ‘disputed whether ever more than 100’), **491.** Dapper's ‘more than 120’ is ridiculed by most later writers.
Agility. **19, 35, 56, 63, 68, 83, 113** (never walk if they can run), **118, 124, 146, 162, 166, 205, 217, 234, 239, 264, 286, 289, 319, 351, 395, 404, 433, 483.** See also many references in BVR index.
Amulet. **118, 125, 126** (three contradictory statements: *Bövingh 11*, *Kolbe 476*, *Brink 18*, *Philips 264* confirm the third of them.) Bövingh gives the name as ‘Soje’, Brink as ‘Suza’: see *Nienaber 461*, *2*. See also the necklace of magical roots **485,** probably from *Dapper 646*.
‘Amusement’ **128,** echoed word for word by **351,** and undoubtedly the source of **174** (page 141), which however adds that it was ‘in honour of the sun’. Was it something like the ‘Ducks and Drakes’ game of children today?
Armlets. Most references are to copper, less frequently to iron, leather, guts, etc.: **9, 17, 35, 56, 83, 84, 103, 113, 126, 127, 128, 146, 147, 162, 166** (pages 19, 20, 22), **174** (page 119), **184, 202, 218, 232, 237, 239, 241, 264, 287, 388;** also most of the references in BVR. Ivory ~ are more rarely described, often as worn above the elbows only: **17, 35, 126, 128, 166** (pages 19, 20), **174** (pages 117, 119), **202, 237, 287, 435, 485;** also as in the BVR index. They are also in most later writers: e.g., *Brink 19*, *Mentzel III 265*, *Philips 264*. See also Plates 1, 35, 54, etc.
Assegais. *28.8.70*, **17, 21, 35, 56, 71, 113, 122, 123, 124, 127, 129, 146, 166** (page 20, ‘javelin’, 21), **174** (page 131 ‘javelins’, 147 ‘spears’), **203, 204, 205, 219,** ? **234, 239, 241, 286, 291, 297, 319, 320, 349, 350, 405, 436, 483, 486.** Some earlier writers (BVR 3, 10, 11) speak like Bolling **146** of fire-hardened wooden points instead of the usually-assumed iron ones: for specific references to these latter see s.v. Hottentots, Iron-working. Plates 35, 40, 53, etc.
Attaqua. *31.3.90*. Also DR *3.11.68* (contacted at Mossel Bay), and *Valentyn X 89* (met by 1702 raiding-expdition), letter to Holland *1.4.1703* (ditto), *Kolbe 391*, *475*, *477*, *481*, *486* (mislocated and vaguely described)

Beards. **19, 174** (page 149, shave with ‘razors’), **203** (ditto with flints), **433, 485** (pluck out). Several stress the scanty growth, as in BVR 83, 140 and later writers.
Births. **128** (short child-bed), **166** (page 20, easy, no child-bed), **174** (page 129, feast for ~, 147 herb used in difficult ~, usually ‘not long’ child-bed, 153, navel-cord tied, not cut), **406** (short child-bed). Herbert (BVR 120) also has the usually easy ~, as in various later writers, e.g., *Mentzel III 277*, *Brink 31-34*.
Bows and arrows. *28.8.70*, 17, 35, **56, 112, 123** (poisoned arrows), **129, 166** (pages 20, 21), **174** (page 131, skill with ~, viper-poison), **205, 269, 286, 291, 319, 405, 483, 485.** Also Plates 40, 42, 54. It is noticeable that there are very few early references to ~: BVR 48 for 1610; 60 ‘of little or no force’ for 1612; 83 for 1616; 101 ‘rather feeble’ for 1620. There is very little doubt that earlier references to ‘arrows’ in English translations are erroneous, the Portuguese ‘frechas’ and the Dutch ‘pijlen’ meaning both arrows and ‘darts’. See the note in BVR index s.v. ‘darts’; and in further confirmation note also **35** ‘Hasegaijen ofte worp-pijlen’, and similarly Aa's translation of ‘hand-darts’ in Davys as ‘handpijlen’. *Grevenbroek* (his *187*) is the only other early writer to confirm the poisoning, though many later ones do so: e.g., *Kolbe 532*, *Valentyn X 57*, *Philips 272*, *Sparrman I 198*, *de la Caille 261*, *Banks*, *441*. Note also that a

number of references in reality probably refer to Bushmen ('Sonquas') and not to Hottentots, as definitely does **483**: ~ were originally Bushmen weapons, later taken into use by the Hottentots, as in *Maingard* (S.A. Journal of Science, XXIX *711-723*). Plates 1, 40, 54

Briqua. **240** ('Brukwas'). Also *Dapper 9* as 'Brygoudys', *Mentzel III 314* as 'Birinas', *Barrow I 350*, and in various accounts of expeditions* in 1661, 1682, 1689, etc.
Buchu, apparently *Barosma crenulata* or *B. betulina*. **56, 125** ('Pucbu, called by us Wasser-Eppig', which can be read as Water-Celery, Duckweed, Ranunculus, none of which however seem to resemble Barosma), **166** (page 21, used by women), **174** (page 115, burnt [*sic*] herb used on hair, 'Bouchou'). For the name see *Nienaber 222*, *223*, who however misquotes Schreyer's 'Pucbu' as 'Puchu' (incidentally a far more probable spelling, suggesting a misprint in Schreyer). The only earlier reference is in Flacourt (BVR 175), unnamed and vaguely described. Later writers frequently have it, with various spellings: e.g., *Dapper 645*, *Kolbe 254*, *570ff*, etc., *Grevenbroek 203*, *245*, *263*, *Bövingh 10*, *Buttner 121*, *Thomas 333*, *Philips 266*, *285*, *291*, *Allamand and Klocker 113*, *120*, *Brink 21*, *32*, *35* (as 'Bachu', a variant not in Nienaber), *Paterson 115*, *Le Vaillant* (*1790*) *222*, *Thunberg I 170*, *II 6*, *82*, *187*, *Sparrman I 145*, *184*, *Jong I 192*, *Percival 86*, and others. (Incidentally, it is still grown commercially, and used in some patent medicines.)
Burials, **131, 148** (valueless), **174** (page 127, fetal position, three-day mourning), **310, 463, 491.** The consensus of opinion is that the corpse was buried in its cloak, as in *Kolbe 477*, *544*, *578* and *Plate*, *Bövingh 20*, *Maxwell 52*, *Philips 263*, *Barchewitz 72*, *Allamand and Klockner 117ff*, *Brink 19*, *Schomburg 362ff*, *Mentzel III 323-325*, *Le Vaillant* (*1790*) *283;* although **148, 310, 491,** *Dapper 650*, *Valentyn X 10*, *Hesse 189* have 'naked', and *Sparrman I 357* hedges. The 'sitting' of **310, 491** probably refers to the fetal position, as also in *Dapper 650*, *Grevenbroek 261*, *Valentyn X 110* ('bent up'), *Kolbe 578*, *Philips 293*, *Schomburg 362*, *Mentzel III 323-325*, *Allamand and Klockner 117*, *Le Vaillant* (*1790*) *283* ('folded'), *Picard 117*.
Bushmen see Obiqua, Sonqua.
Butchery. **129, 142** ('strangled', ridiculously), **346.** Also described in *Kolbe 429*, *Valentyn X 509*, *510* and *Plates*, *Sparrman II 259*, *260*, *Philips 269*, *290*, *Barrow 245* (Bushmen). Note also DR *5.10.55*, Muller's Report (see DR *6.9.55*) 'a way none of us had ever seen before'.
Butter. **130, 166** (page 21, made in leather bag or reversed sheepskin), **174** (129, in bird [sic] skin, used for smearing only), **240, 297, 350.** Almost all give the 'churning' in a skin, as also do *Kolbe 468*, *469*, *Grevenbroek 187*, *Barchewitz 70*, *Salmon 62*, *Banks 442* and others. Several agree with **174** that it was not eaten, but used for smearing or sold to the colonists, e.g., *Kolbe 468*, *469*, *Mentzel III 292*, *Thunberg I 198*.

Caepmans (Goringhaiqua), *5.4.60*, *5-6.6.60*, **21** (error). Also DR *31.10.57* mentioned (but *15.11.57* extended to include incorrectly the Watermen, Gorachouqua, Charigrina), *29.10.58* (enemies of Cochoqua), *3.2.59* ('Kaapmans', Gogosoa Chief). Also *Dapper 7*, *9*, *11*, *13*, *21*, *Kolbe 378*, *Valentyn X 103*, *126*, *127*, and others.
Cameson (tribe). DR *26.1.86* (one brought by 1685 expedition), **300** ('Namaqua' in error)

Cannibalism. **35** (hearsay), **142** (admitted by them, *sic*), **166** (page 21, defeated enemies, eaten, 22 Saldanians), **183, 184**(yes). This accusation is also in most early writers (BVR index), but not in *Beaulieu* or the reliable *Remonstrantie.* *Valentyn* regrettably has it, *X 105*, but all later writers deny or ignore it.
Caps. **16, 126, 147, 162, 166** (page 20, women, pointed, fur), **174** (page 117, both sexes in rain, pointed, earflaps), **218, 388, 433** (never), **484, 485.** Most writers call them universal in women, rare in men: earlier writers (BVR index) are usually vague, with 'some use', etc. *Kolbe 477-480* has a good *Plate*, and see Plates 35, 52, 53, 65.
Captains. **118** (rule not absolute), 131, 147, **163, 174** (pages 135, 143 'their officers they call ~'), **184, 218, 260, 269, 286, 287, 289, 321, 405, 437, 487.** Plate 22 has the staff of office.
Cattle (references to barter, seizure of ~ *passim*, omitted: *passim* also in BVR. See also 'Cattle' above, in the body of this index). In the following the ^{o} indicate references to pack-oxen, for which see also BVR 7, 30, *Dapper 648*, *Kolbe 470* and *Plate*, and many later writers. **8, 11, 19, 35, 113, 118^{o}, 119, 124, 128^{o}, 129^{o}, 131, 162, 163^{o}, 174** (page 119^{o}, kept in centre of kraal, 137, white thought lucky, never bartered, 141, ditto), **203, 217, 240, 286, 297, 300^{o}, 343, 350, 384, 405, 486.** Also DR *29-30.9.60* (Ridden^{o}, as BVR page 7). Schreyer's vague reference to the use of cattle in war, **124** (with which cf. his **119,** in lionhunting) is supplemented by BVR 10, *Kolbe 393*, *470*, *556* and *Plate*, *Barchewitz 69*, *Buttner 70*, *Philips 273*. For Schreyer's 'Tibbesas' see *Nienaber 412*, *413*: there are similar statements in Ten Rhyme (**174** above), *Kolbe 488*, *Valentyn X 107* obviously following Schreyer. Two entries, **213** and **430,** mention humped cattle, for which see also *Hondius 23* and BVR 19, 20, 119, 152: their existence has been queried by some modern editors, but there seems to be no reason to doubt the effects of zebu cross-breeding, especially in early days.
Cattle not killed when fit. **17, 19, 35, 113, 119, 162, 166** (page 20), **297, 343, 432, 485.** Also BVR 101 and *Dapper 647*, *Kolbe 488*, *Valentyn X 104*, *Buttner 96*, *St. Pierre 70*, *Barrow 155*, and others.
Chainouqua (and see Claas, Koopman). *23.7.60*, *21.11.62*, *3.3.88* ('Sousequas' from name of Chief), *14.3.88* (ditto), *21.10.88* (ditto), *23.10.88* (ditto), **21, 174** (page 111, 'Sousvas', ditto), **290** ('Sousequas', ditto), **483, 484.** Also DR *31.10.57* (mentioned), *14.11.57* (Chief at Fort), *15.11.57* (live beyond Berg R.), *22.8.60* ('extraordinarily rich in cattle'), *21.9.60* (return of expedition from ~, very friendly), *29-30.9.60* (Chief Soesao at Fort until *11.10*). And ? DR *3.2.59* as 'Khonaiqua'. Also *Dapper 9*, *27*, etc. Shown on Plate 39 as 'Sousiquas'.
Chancumqua (? = preceding). Mentioned in DR *31.10.57*
Charigrina (Charingurina, Charigriqua, etc.) Referred to in DR *29.10.57* (some at Fort), *31.10.57*, *7.11.57*, *15.11.57* ('which last year attacked the crew of our *Robbejacht* at Saldanha Bay'), *3.2.59* (met by expedition, 'Little ~ or Hosonas', and 'Great ~'.
Children. **17, 19, 84, 123, 124, 125, 127, 147, 162, 166** (page 20, on mother's back in skin), **174** (page 147, not swaddled, must shoot accurately before given meals, **218, 238, 239, 241, 347, 406, 436, 484.** Nearly all refer to their being carried on mothers' backs, as also BVR 83, 120, *Kolbe 462* and *Plate*, *Valentyn X 106*, *Buttner 127*, *128*, *Brink 35*, *Mentzel III 280*, *Sparrman I 188*, *Le Vaillant* (*1790*) *258*, *Philips 283*, *Thunberg I 194*. Schreyer's **125** 'seldom more than

four’ and Meister's echo **347** contradict and are probably more accurate than Tappen **239.** See also Plates 40, 44, 47, 52, 65, etc.
Chobanas. Mentioned in DR *31.10.57* as ‘very far inland, rich in gold’. Also *Dapper 9*, *29* (‘Kobonas’),

Valentyn X 103 (ditto), *Mentzel III 312*. Actually Hottentot word for 'Bantu'.
Chorachouqua see Gorachouqua
Chouriquas **21** as 'Caepmans', probably in error
Cloaks. **8, 16, 35, 52, 63, 67, 83, 84, 103, 109, 113, 119, 126, 146, 162, 166** (page 19 men lion-, tiger-skins, 20 women deer-skins), **174** (page 117 oxen, sheep, sometimes panther, goat [*sic*], page 131 as shield, page 135 Chief's finer ~), **183, 202, 203, 217, 218, 233, 237 238, 241, 264, 286, 291, 297, 300, 308, 309, 319, 330, 331, 347, 350, 383, 387, 395, 404, 433, 462, 475, 484.** Also *passim* in BVR and later writers, and shown in various Plates. Almost always sheepskin: 'seal' in Nieuhoff **16** and in two early writers (BVR 59, 140) are probably the source of *Dapper's* error, his page *47*, and those of **35, 52, 83** who drew on one or another of these sources.
Cochoquas (Saldanhars, Sultanimen, etc., and see Oedasoa, Kees, Gonnema). *23.11.55* (unnamed), *22.2.88* (ditto), **21, 22, 166** (page 22, enemies of southern tribes, shields of ivory 'on breasts and arms'), **174** (page 111 as 'Honnimas' from Chief Gonnema), **190, 349, 483, 484.** Also DR *29.10.57* (~), *28.11.57* ('the most powerful of the real Saldanhars') Also *Dapper 23*, *59*, *640*, *Kolbe 377*, etc., *Valentyn X 92-95*, *134*, and other writers.
Colour. Mentioned in practically all descriptions, most insisting that the black ~ was due to greasing (plus of course sun-tan), many asserting that the natural colour at birth was brown, or yellowish, or even white. DR *18-20.5.54* baby as light of ~ as a 'little brown Jewess'.
Cookery. **8, 17, 84, 129, 130, 162, 174** (page 147, cook in pots with fat, roast under hot ashes), **346, 347, 384.** There is one earlier reference, BVR 88, to boiling. **8, 84** entirely denying that any ~ was done are obviously wrong, as also *Dapper 648* from **8** and *Hesse 188* from him. **174, 346, 347** are almost certainly thefts from Schreyer, but *Kolbe 456*, *Brink 16*, *Salmon 81* confirm, apparently at first hand, his very interesting 'earth-oven' method, which in the South Seas today gives results that (*crede experto*) could make any cordon-bleu jealous. Other later writers also mention ~, e.g., *Mentzel III 317*, *Funnell 191*, *Guedeville 72*, *Schmidt 252*, *Philips 267*, *270*, *Le Vaillant* (*1790*) *272*, *Thunberg II 42*, *43*, *190*, *191*.

Dagga. *27.9.60*, **126** ('Tagga', chewed), **174** (page 153, 'Dacha', chewed, makes drunk), **484** (grown by 'Heuzaguas') as in DR *27.9.60* above and *Dapper 635*. Also DR *21.6.58*, 'the Hancumqua ... grow daccha', this being the first mention in Dutch. For the word see *Nienaber's* list, *241-243*, which however omits these early spellings. The early references are to the indigenous 'Wild ~', *Leonotis leonurus*, chewed (the idea of smoking anything came in with the Dutch) which is very mildly intoxicating: the later ones to *Cannabis sativa*, introduced for barter, and smoked alone or with tobacco as (illegally) today, e.g. *Valentyn X 705* 'Dacha, which is hemp', *Buttner 73* 'Tagga or dried hempseed', *Kolbe 263* (mentioning also 'wild ~', *396*) and many later writers including *Banks 440*, *Thunberg II 191*, *Barrow 18*, *170*.
Dances. *10-11.3.61*, **17, 20, 35, 56, 63, 84, 103, 123, 127°, 163°, 166** (page 20, full moon, until dawn), **174** (page 139°, moonrise, men stamp, sing, women sit,

clap, sing), **183, 205, 218, 219°, 234°, 238, 239, 240, 289-291°, 297, 300, 304, 310, 319°, 349°, 351, 384, 385, 394, 405, 406, 423, 433, 437, 463, 487.** The items marked ° give descriptions, as also *Kolbe 410*, *411*, *530* and *Plate*, *Buttner 68*, *69*, *Mentzel III 303*, *4*, *Brink 30*, and most of the later writers. Plate 65
Darts. **17** ('assegais or javelins or darts'), **35** ('Hasegaijen ofte worp-pijlen'), **184** ('short ~'): see Bows and Arrows above. Note also that these references and those to ~ in the BVR index do not always indicate short weapons: often they were the long assegais, although *Philips 272* uses ~ for the Rakum.
Dogs, Tame. **119.** Also mentioned in the earliest accounts, **BVR** 3, 18 and *Hondius 24*; and by later writers, e.g., *Salmon 65*, *Percival 90*, *91*.

Ear-ornaments. **17, 35, 56, 125, 146, 166** (page 19, men, pipes, etc., lobes distorted, page 20, women also), **174** (page 115, stick, pipes, beads, lobe-distortion), **202, 218, 237, 292, 395, 404, 433, 485.** Most references are to the women, but many either specifically include the men or leave it vague, as also in *Kolbe 485*, *Grevenbroek 253*, etc. The ear-lobe distortion of **125, 166, 174, 202, 237, 452** is also in *Herbert*, BVR 119, but has been found in no writer after 1700, which suggests that the custom may have died out. See Plates 35, 40, 54, etc.

Face-painting. **84, 127, 166** (page 21, grease plus red stone), **174** (page 113, various colours), **218** (stolen from **84,** as also in *Spaan 304*), **241, 349.** Also BVR 20, 175, *Kolbe 228*, *411*, *452*, *486*, *Valentyn X 103*, *Lockyer 303*, *Philips 266*, *279*, *Brink 21*, *Sparrman II 50*.
Finger-mutilation. The most usually quoted usage is by women on re-marriage, **84** (hearsay), **174** (page 145), **289, 395, 491** (although on **395** said to be voluntary only and not universal). It is also in *Kolbe 572*, *Valentyn X 110*, *Hesse 187*, *Philips 281*, *Mentzel III 299*, *Schomburg 359*, *Thunberg II 193*, *Pagès* (*1797*) *153*, and others. Some writers have it at the first marriage, BVR 175, **20, 147, 163, 166** (page 20, eaten by husband), **206, 218, 310, 434, 435,** *Grevenbroek 199*; and presumably in these cases it was repeated at remarriage, although this is stated by **163, 310** only, and denied by **434, 435.** For the use in mourning see **131** (all nearest relatives), **238** (wife at death of husband), **321** (ditto, and widower at death of wife, but both voluntary), also *Dapper 650*, *Hesse 189*, *Valentyn 110*; but *Kolbe 571*, *572* considers it improbable. For the obligation of ~ on female heirs as **491** see *Dapper 650*, *Hesse 187*, *Valentyn X 110*; but note the denials of female inheritance* s.v. that word. Other instances of ~ are also reported, especially in the case of children whose immediately-preceding siblings have died: *Dapper 650* (and see *Schapera 63*), his 'echoes' *Hesse 189* and *Grevenbroek 201*, and *Bövingh 13*, *14*; but doubted by *Kolbe 570*.
Fishing. Some writers deny any knowledge of this entirely, **34, 84, 217,** *Hondius 29*, *30*; but many mention the spearing of rays in shallow water, **16** (probably, **166** (page 20, ditto), **409,** and *Kolbe 537*, *Philips 273*. Killing of leaping fish in the air by thrown rakum or assegai is in **71, 436**, BVR 60, 181, *Bövingh 12*; catching by hand in rock-pools or clefts is in *Kolbe 537*, *Mentzel III 318*, *Philips 278*; angling in *Kolbe 198*, *538*, *Philips 278* and his *Plate 60*; and the improbable use of nets in BVR 112, *Philips 278*. There are also vague references, **320, 486,** *Dapper 648*, *Hesse 188*, *Brink 15*, *Pagès* (*1797*) *144*, etc. With the odd statement

in **174** (page 149) that ‘flute-music’ helps to attract the fish may be compared *Kolbe's* shouting or whistling, *537*, *538*.
Flywhisks. **17, 126, 162, 166** (page 20, fox-tail), **485**: all refer to the tails of animals, as also do most in BVR,

Hondius 31, *Grevenbroek 253*, *Valentyn X 104*, *Buttner 120*, *Sparrman II 36*, *Thunberg I 193*, *II 180*, *Pagès* (*1797*) *144*. **17,** *Dapper 647*, *Hesse 186*, *Guedeville 68* also have them but with ostrich-feathers as an alternative: these latter are in BVR 45, 48, *Schomburg 322*. For the Hottentot name see *Nienaber 401*, *402*: 'Sau' in **126**; 'Zou' in *Dapper 647*, *Hesse 186*, **485**; 'Sauw' in *Buttner 120*, 'Schjoek' (not in Nienaber's list) is in *Brink 20*, 'Schjou' in *Kolbe 478* (which *Mentzel III 302* incorrectly says is not a Hottentot word), 'Schjoe' in *Valentyn X 107. Bövingh 12* echoes Schreyer word for word in the name and description, as is not infrequent. See also Plates 1, 35, **40,** 54, 65, and note the caption to the ridiculous Plate 61.

Gorachouqua ('Tobacco-thieves') *12-13.3.57*, *5.5.60*, **21, 483.** Also DR *19.10.57* (met by expedition), *29.10.57* (at Fort for first time), *29.10.58* (enemies of Cochoqua), *5.2.59* (in list); and *Dapper 7*, *II Valentyn X 126*, *127*, etc.
Goringhaicona see Watermen
Goringhaiqua see Caepmans
Gouriqua. **21** ('Chouriguas' identified as 'Caepmans', but the description better fits the Watermen), ? **22** ('Krijegoekwa' as real name of the 'Saldanhars', but these were the Cochoqua for the most part), **290.** Probably alternative spelling of Griqua, q.v. Also *Valentyn X 89*, *103* as 'Gauris', *Kolbe 379*, *396* (to East beyond Sonderende R.). Plate 39
Griqua ? **22** ('Krijegoekwa'), ? **131** ('Chouri Keriquas'), **174** (page 111, 'Gregoriguas', neighbours of 'Sousoas'), **483, 484** ('Kariguriquas or Hosoas', apparently in error: 'Great' and 'Little' mentioned). Also mentioned *31.10.57*, *15.11.57* (? as 'Charigruquas'). Division into 'Great ~' and 'Little ~' also *Dapper 9*, *25*, *27*, *59*, *Valentyn X 63*, *93-99*, *103*, *107* and van Riebeeck's 1662 memoir. ~ also *Kolbe 387*, *8*, *Pagès* (*1797*) *142*, *Schomburg 372* and *Plate* (as 'Grigriquas').
Guts, etc., eaten nearly raw. *Passim* in BVR and present volume.
Guts worn on neck (in reality the 'caul' or omentum of ceremonially sacrificed sheep). **17, 83, 84, 125, 146, 147, 163, 174** (page 145, sick child, worn until rotten, then eaten by old men), **218, 349, 390, 406, 435, 487.** Also BVR *passim*, with no reasons given except by Roe (BVR 77), with which compare **174**, *Kolbe 438*, *Grevenbroek 207*, *245*. Schreyer's use at boy's adulthood, **125,** is also in *Thunberg II 427*. The use as engagement or bridal gifts by girl to boy **163, 218, 487** are echoes of *Dapper 649*, as also are *Hesse 187*, *Valentyn X 109*: the reverse, as given by boy to girl **349, 426** is also in *Guedeville 68*. For the use in mourning, especially by the heir, see *Kolbe 580*, *Barchewitz 73*, *Philips 295*, *Schomburg 367*, *Mentzel III 325*, *Picard 118*.

Hair. Described *passim* and in BVR. For the partial shaving see BVR 119, 112, **16, 131** (in mourning), **174** (page 115, in patterns, page 119, ditto, 'as we do poodles', page 149 with 'razors'), **202** (with flintknives), **292** (Namaqua wives fully shaven); also *Dapper 646*, *Grevenbroek 245* (convalescents), *Kolbe 573* (mourning, headache), *Valentyn X 88* (mourning).

Hair-ornaments. **16, 35, 56, 84, 125, 126, 146, 166** (page 19, small white shells, 21 ditto), **174** (page 119), **183, 234, 237, 287, 320, 330, 331, 383, 388, 395, 404, 433, 435, 485.** Nearly all have 'seashells', as also *Dapper 646* (mistranslated as 'horns' by *Schapera 51*), *Grevenbroek 253*, *Valentyn X 104*. See Plates 40, 44, 47, 53, 54, 60.
Hamcumqua (Hequon). *27.9.60*, **22** ('Heukum', hearsay). Also *Dapper 9*, *41*, *Kolbe 398*, *399*, *Thunberg II 16*, etc.
Hessequa (Hesaqua, Heuzaqua, etc.) *27.9.60*, *21.11.62*, *10.12.76*, *21.10.88*, **174** (page 109, tall men, large tribe, barter once yearly at Fort, page 139, living at Mossel Bay, page 143, ~ alone have a king, page 145, strict laws of inheritance), **240,** ? **290** ('Ilassiquas'), **483, 484** ('Heuzaquas', grow Dacha). Also *Dapper 9*, *39*, *41*, *59*, *Kolbe 81*, *291*, *393*, *394*, *Valentyn X 89*, *103*, *Mentzel III 329*, and others. Plate 39 as 'Gassiquas'.
Houteniqua. *31.3.90*. Also *Kolbe 397*, etc.
Hunting. 34, **71, 119** (lion with cattle, also hand to hand), **122** (elephant in parties, rhinoceros and hippopotamus in pitfalls, elands, deer, steenbok), **123** (hares, wild-cats, partridges, pheasants snared), 166 (page 20), **239** (elephant), **240** (birds when flying), **286** (Sonqua especially), **320** (lion in parties, also hand to hand), 351, **485, 486** (seals). Also BVR 123, 165, *Kolbe 460*, *473*, *534*, *535*, *536* and *Plates*, *Buttner 102*, *103*, *104*, *138ff*, *Philips 274*, *275*, *276*, *Brink 15*, *Paterson 65*, *Thunberg 79*, *189*, *196*, etc. Plate 65
Huts. **8, 34, 84, 129, 142, 163, 166** (page 21, branches and turf [*sic*]), **174** (page 119, gladiolus leaves and stalks, arched porches [*sic*]), 183, **192, 203, 218, 234, 238, 259, 264, 286, 289, 309, 320, 330, 331, 383, 384 395, 405, 434, 463, 486.** Also *passim* in BVR and practically all later writers. The fullest descriptions are in **129**, *Kolbe 500* and *Plate* (contradicting **289** 'four or five families' and **218** 'straw'), *Bövingh 16*, *Brink 10-12*, *Mentzel III 294*, *295*, *Sparrman I 195*, *196*, *197*. Comparisons are to stacks of hop-poles **234,** bake-ovens BVR 77, *Hondius 31*, **34, 203, 218,** *Buttner 97*, *Cnoll 64*, *Ziegenbalgh 11*, *Pagès* (*1797*) *147*, *148*; haycocks, **383, 405,** *Guedeville 73*, *Philips 266*; beehives BVR 66, 72, **395,** *Funnell 291*, *Percival 90*; and 'the huts of the wild Irish' **309.** The best Plate here is 65.

Ilassiquas (? Hessequa). **290**
Illunhwa. **23,** but not in 1661 journal nor identifiable
Infanticide. Baby buried with dead mother **128, 148, 166** (page 20, but text suggests bastards only), *Grevenbroek 183*, *Valentyn X 110*, *158*; but by the time of *Mentzel III 279* and *Sparrman I 359* the child often exposed to be taken in by colonists - not entirely from altruism since it then had to serve them unpaid until 25 years old, *Thunberg II 159*, *184*. See also DR *24.1.69*, baby thus rescued by Cape ladies. ¶ One of twins **128, 174** (page 143, female), **183,** *Grevenbroek 181* (but not inland), *Kolbe 445*, *446*, *447*, *544* and *Plate* (but not if both male), *Valentyn X 110*, *Bövingh 24* (sometimes), *Maxwell 5*, *Philips 282*, *283* (but not if both male), *Brink 32* (ditto), *Schomburg 361* (ditto), *Mentzel III 278* (inland, not now at Cape), *Thunberg II 195* (sometimes). ¶ In general **321** (if too many), **396** (ditto), *Thunberg II 195* (cripples).
Inheritance. **131, 174** (page 145, 'the law of ~ prevails'), **286, 487, 491.** But to **491** note that *Grevenbroek 263*, *Kolbe 563*, *Buttner 83*, *Mentzel III 326* insist that females could not inherit. Note also Guts on neck above as worn by heir.

Inqua. *22.12.88*, *26.12.88*.
Iron-working. **17, 128, 166** (page **21,** 'swords' [*sic*]), **174** (page 149, needles, razors - both are improbable), **203, 219, 486.** Self-made assegai-heads are also in *Dapper 647*, *648*, *Kolbe 515*, *516* (and smelting), *Barrow 161*, *Mentzel III 289*, *Banks 441*, etc. Hence of course the enthusiasm for iron in barter in early days (BVR *passim* to page 47), which however fell off after 1610. See also DR *5.7.60* ('to be wished it

could be kept out of their hands, since from it they make only ... weapons').

Kirri (and cf. Rakum). **119, 123, 126, 131, 166** (page 21, 'clubs'), **174** (page 135, 'club', page 154, 'kini'), **205, 219, 239, 240, 241, 287, 303, 347, 350, 405, 409, 485.** Also *Hondius 31*, *Grevenbroek 139*, *Kolbe 477*, *478*, *526*, *Valentyn X 62*, *109*, *Buttner 153*, *Philips 272* (as 'Darts'), *Brink 39*, *Sparrman II 9*, *Mentzel III 288* and *Plate*, *Thunberg II 191*. For the word see *Nienaber 336*, *337*: it does not appear before Kolbe, only 'clubs', 'sticks', except for **126.** There is occasional doubt whether ~ or Rakum is meant. Plates 35, 47, 65
Knives. **126, 129, 148** (stone), **203** (ditto)
Kraals. **129, 163, 166** (page 21, circle of 200-300 huts, cattle in centre at night), **174** (page 115, Hottentot word for 'hut' [*sic*], page 119, circle, cattle in centre), **346** (= 'hut' [*sic*]), **350.** Well described in *Kolbe 470* and *Plate*, with criticisms of other descriptions, *Mentzel III 295*, *Sparrman I 197*. Plate 65

Language: the sign ^{o} indicates that words are given. *25.6.77*^{o}, **8, 16, 19, 34**^{o}, **52, 63**^{o}, **67, 83, 109**^{o}, **113, 118**^{o}, **119**^{o}, **125**^{o}, **126**^{o}, **127**^{o}, **130,147**^{o}, **161, 166** (page 21, like crackle of hens), **174** (pages 115^{o} 'bouchu', 117^{o} 'karos', 121^{o} 'sirigoos' = tortoises, 135^{o} 'boubaes tabak' = Virginian, 137^{o} 'kortom' = bonus in barter, 'etom schaap' = prime wether, 153^{o} 'dacha', unlearnable but they learn Dutch, borrowed words end in -kom, 155^{o} long list of words and numerals, and see *Schapera's notes*, *157*^{o} ditto), **218, 219**^{o}, **233**^{o}, **234, 237**^{o}, **238**^{o}, **242, 259, 264, 297, 343, 346**^{o}, **350**^{o}, **388, 404**^{o}, **405, 463, 475, 485**^{o}. Also *passim* in BVR, with words given on pages 38, 111, 120, 123, 174; and in most later writers. The stock simile is 'like turkeys', first found in BVR 19. Several writers (of all periods) assert that the language cannot be learnt, which is of course ridiculous; as is also the statement that they could not learn other languages, contradicted, by, e.g., **71,** Peyton (BVR 72, 75), the 'Remonstrantie' (BVR 178), and *Kolbe* who says, *358*, that 'Pegu', the lad taken by van Reede to the East Indies in 1685, spoke Dutch, Portuguese, Malay, Sinhalese, etc.
Legbands (women). **17, 20, 35**^{o}, **56, 63, 71, 103, 109, 113, 127**^{o}, **147, 162, 166, 174** (page 117^{o}, dried reeds 'which some think' guts, others thongs), **183, 202, 218, 233, 238, 241, 264, 269, 287**^{o}, **309, 320**^{o}, **331, 383, 388**^{o}, **390, 395, 404, 435, 462, 485**^{o}. The entries marked^{o} have the correct 'thongs', though with 'guts' as an alternative in the cases of **174, 287, 485,** as also in *Grevenbroek 195*, *Valentyn X 104*, *Bövingh 13*. The 'guts' are in most early writers, unfortunately following *Dapper 646*, who was probably misled by Nieuhoff, **17**: later and more accurate observers as a rule have 'thongs', *Maxwell* warning, *56*, that 'most strangers have mistaken them' for guts. **20,** *Kolbe 481*, *Valentyn X 104*, *Bövingh 13*, *Brink 20*, *Thunberg II 77* add that unmarried girls have ~ of reeds. There is one earlier reference only, BVR 128. The suggestion that they were worn chiefly for the rhythmic rattle in dancing is in **17, 127, 218, 320, 485,** *Dapper 646*, *Hesse 186*, *Guedeville 68*, *Percival 89. Barrow* writing in

1801 says, *105*, that the ~ were now abandoned for beads, copper chains. They are on various Plates, e.g. 1, 9, 35, 44, 47, 52 (best), 60.
Lice. **113, 130, 131, 203, 238, 264, 269, 287, 320, 350, 383, 404, 486.** Nearly all say they were eaten, as do *Kolbe 495*, *496*, *Valentyn X 104*, *Barchewitz 70*, *71*, *Philips 267*, *Schwartze 36*, *Sparrman II 78*, *79*, *Le Vaillant* (*1790*) *255*. Plate 65
Magic. **22, 304, 485, 487.** (And see Amulet). Also *Dapper 653*, *4*, *Kolbe 404*, *405*, *419*, *434*, *437-439*, *524*, *525* (contradicting Dapper), *Maxwell 50* (none), *Le Vaillant* (*1790*) *393*, *Thunberg II 195*, *Percival 88*.
Marksmanship. **17, 56, 71, 123, 146, 162, 174** (page 131, with assegais), **184, 205, 219, 234, 239, 319, 349, 436, 483, 485.** The ~ with stones, assegais, and 'sticks' (Rakum) is also in earlier writers, BVR 37, 45, 60, 83, 181, and in many later ones, e.g., *Kolbe 388*, *478*, *526*, *Valentyn X 62*, *105*, *Maxwell 50*, *Bövingh 11*, *12*, *Philips 272. Schomburg 121*, *Barrow 110* add ~ with firearms also. It will be noted that references to ~ with bows and arrows are comparatively rare: see under that heading.
Marriage (and see Finger-mutilation, Guts on Neck). **17, 20, 127, 147, 148** [*sic*], **163, 166** (page 20, man wounds his left breast and woman sucks blood, she cuts off finger-joint which he eats), **174** (page 129, feast, page 143, must get leave of Chief, page 145, get leave of parents who get leave of Chief, page 147, feast described), **218, 238, 240, 349, 350, 406, 438** ('no ceremony', [*sic*]), **487, 490.** Also *Dapper 649*, *Grevenbroek 201*, *Hesse 187*, *Kolbe 450-453*, *456*, *457* and *Plate*, *Valentyn X 109*, *Buttner 105-110*, *Barchewitz 71*, *Guedeville 68*, *Philips 278-281*, *Pagès* (*1782*) *24*, (*1797*) *151*, *152*, *Allamand and Klockner 112*, *113*, *114*, *Schomburg 355-359*, *Sparrman I 357*, *Picard 115*, *Thunberg II 192*. But according to *Barrow 114* in 1801 there were now no ceremonies.
Mats (also Cords, Ropes) from reeds. **34, 129, 163, 238, 289, 320, 331, 486.** Also BVR 30, 72, 77, 133; and e.g., *Dapper 648*, *Valentyn X 105*. The weaving appears to have been somewhat crude, though there are references to mats and baskets so closely woven as to be watertight, the latter perhaps imported from inland tribes: *Kolbe 499*, *473* and *Plate* (queried by *Mentzel III 298*, *299*), *Brink 11*, *12*, *Masson 294*, *Sparrman II 32* and *Plate*, *Paterson 91*, *Le Vaillant* (*1790*), *222*, *Thunberg I 204*, *210*, *II 82*, *83*, *191*, *Stout 59*, *Barrow 12*. Also DR *16.12.60* (Namaqua baskets for milk).
Medicine (and see Magic, Urine). **22, 68, 70, 174** (pages 149, 151, wounds beaten until numb, then scarified, sucked: thus also for poisoned bites. Bruises by fatsmearing, scarifying, sucking; similarly for rheumatism. Page 153 herbs kept secret; herbs for colic; dagga as ~), **287, 292, 310, 388, 436, 437, 491** (blood-letting, blistering). Practically all writers agree as to their lack of skill: Tavernier **68, 70** and Leguat **436, 437** are outstanding exceptions, although *Percival 157* calls them 'very skilful' with sores and poisoned wounds. Note also DR *20.2.57* when the diarist was much impressed by the cure of a snakebite by scarifying, sucking and warm cow-dung.
Milk (and see Taboos). Entries marked ^{o} mention blowing for ~, **17, 35, 118, 128, 130**^{o}, **174** (page 129, cow- and ewe-milk drunk, no taboos mentioned), **240**^{o}, **269, 286, 289, 297, 310, 320, 350**^{o}, **485, 486**^{o}. Also *Dapper 648*, *Grevenbroek 187*^{o}, *Hesse 188*, *Kolbe 468*^{o} and *Plate*^{o}, *Valentyn X 105*, *106*^{o} (hearsay), *Maxwell 52*, *Schmidt 252*, *Philips 267*, *280*, *281*, *Schwartze 24*^{o},

Mentzel III 323, *Barchewitz 71*^{o}, *Brink 21*, *Schomburg 356*, *Sparrman II 312*, *Le Vaillant* (*1790*) *273*, *275*^{o}, *Pagès* (*1797*) *144*. *Mentzel III 291*, *Sparrman I 197*, *239*, *II 32* and others say ~ never drunk fresh, denied by *Kolbe 468*. See also DR *21.11.52* (drunk from large leather bag by use of a small tuft or swab), *22.11.52* (children laid by mothers to suck ewe-teats, 'seer soet en speculatiff om aensien'). Plates 53, 65.
Music. Reed-pipes (no generic Hottentot name found).

10-11.3.61, **174** (page 149, 'like flutes'), **289, 290, 291**: also BVR 6, *Kirby 135-142*, *Dapper 634*, *Grevenbroek 213*, *Valentyn X 71*, *111*, *Paterson 87*, *Le Vaillant* (*1795*) *II 107* ¶ Drums ('tkoi-tkoi' or similar, *Nienaber 477*). **56, 127, 240, 349.** Also *Kirby 12-46*, *Dapper 653*, *Grevenbroek 213*, *Kolbe 528* and *Plate*, *Valentyn X 105*, *Buttner 136*, *Salmon 127*, *Brink 28*, *Mentzel III 305*, *Sparrman I 229*, *Picard 118*, *Le Vaillant* (1790) *289-292*, *Thunberg I 193* ¶ Quill-bow ('gora' or similar, *Nienaber 277*, *278*, *286*, *287*). **127, 349.** Also *Kirby* (*171-192*), *Dapper 653*, *Kolbe 527* and *Plate*, *Valentyn X 105*, *Buttner 147*, *Salmon 126*, *Picard 89*, *Sparrman I 228*, *Mentzel III 305*, *306*, *307*, *Le Vaillant* (1790) *289-292*, *Thunberg II 78*, *Barrow 98*, *Percival 91*, *92*.

Namaqua. *10-11.3.61*, *27.3.80*, *21.10.80*, *16.1.84*, *29.11.84*, *22.2.88*, *5.3.88*, **23, 126, 131, 174** (page 109, page 111, shields, ivory penis-covers), **215** (unnamed), **289, 290, 291, 300, 304** (unnamed), **463, 483.** Also DR *31.10.57* (mentioned), *15.11.57* (powerful, copper), *17.5.68* (raid at Bakkeley Plaats). Plates 39, 40.

Name. **8**^{o}, **16, 34**^{o}, **52, 83, 103**^{o}, **118**^{o}, **161, 238**^{o}, **269**^{o}, **286**^{o}, **319**^{o}, **382**^{o}, **394**^{o}, **423**^{o}, **431**^{o}, **483.** That this derived from a word used in dancing is almost certainly the correct explanation, as in the entries marked ^{o} above. Other writers, unmarked above, derive it from a Dutch word for clumsy speakers, probably (as Nienaber suggests, page 24) by a misreading of *Dapper 626*, who in reality meant that this South African word had been adopted in Holland with this meaning. A few writers, e.g., *Kolbe 348*, *Hesse 184*, *Funnell 289*, *Philips 363*, say that it was their own name for themselves, which is definitely incorrect - unless in the sense in which an Englishman in the Argentine might jokingly call himself a 'Gringo', a possibility supported by **483** above, *Hondius 28*, *29*, *Dapper 652*, with phrases like 'a name *now* used by them'. In earlier writers, BVR 101, 112, there are mentions of the dance-word, but without linking it to the name.

Necklaces (and see Guts). **17, 56, 84, 126, 127, 147, 166** (page 20, women, pearls), **174** (page 109, copper, page 119, beads), **218, 237, 238, 287, 320, 388, 485.** Also BVR 18, 128; and see various Plates.

Obiqua (Ubiqua), sub-tribe of Sonqua (Bushmen). *26.3.76*, *24.3.78*, *30.11.84*, *22.2.88*, **290** (robbers). Shown on Plate 39.

Odiqua, allies of Chainouqua. **290.** Shown on Plate 39.

Penis. **19, 204, 241, 406, 484**: all refer to the large size, as also *Valentyn X 103*, *Dapper 644* (contradicted by *Schapera 45*).

Penis-covers. *10-11.3.61*, **8, 16, 56, 63, 68, 103, 109, 113, 126, 162, 166** (page 19, 'loincloth' [*sic*]), **174**(page 111, Namaqua ivory [misdescribed], page 117, Chiefs otter- or badger-skin), **183, 202, 217, 233, 237, 241, 259, 269, 319, 331, 383, 388, 395, 404, 433, 484.** There is evidence here for an interesting cultural change. Early writers mention the casual lack of concealment: e.g., BVR 19 'little covered', 33 'as much as none at all', 45 'little scrap', 141 'hangeth loose over', **56** 'scrap of fur', **68** 'poor scrap of linen' [*sic*], **126** 'scrap of fur', **237** ['koros' in error for 'kulkaros'] 'can be pushed aside', **319** 'covers little', **395**

'often fails to cover', as also *Dapper's 645* 'tiny scrap' of fur. (But it is curious that the very earliest reference, da Gama in BVR 3, 4 very definitely has 'sheaths', indicating complete concealment, although for St. Helena Bay, not the Cape.) Later, however, expressions appear such as 'a piece of skin somewhat sewn together', *Kolbe 478*, *479* and *Plate*; 'a bag' in *Valentyn X 104*, *Heydt 345*, *Sparrman I 184*, *185* although still described as giving 'imperfect concealment'; and in this volume **433** even has 'a case'; and for the transition **484** has 'a bag or a scrap', *Buttner 59* writes of 'a bag' for the richer, but still 'a scrap' of fur for the others, and *Mentzel III 285* has 'a pouch' but also *III 264* 'little concealed or not at all', the scrap of fur again. And finally, for sexual emphasis far removed from the casualness of early days, *Pagès* (*1782*) *23* has 'a small bag, ornamented ... with little rings ... which make a sort of clicking as they walk', *Stavorinus I 548* has 'a cylindrical case', *Barrow 103* 'a kind of case ... one of the most immodest objects ... that could have been conceived', *Lockyer 300* 'a Case 7 or 8 inches long ... a very immodest Figure', *Beekman* (*116* in Pinkerton XI) 'a Case of proportionable Length which sticks out in a most unseemly manner.' Plates 9, 35, 40, 47, 53, 54 and the ridiculous 61. The ivory penis-shields of the Namaqua are on **126, 174** (page 111 but misdescribed), also *Dapper 635*, etc., and Plates 40, 44.

Polygamy. **20, 125, 127, 166** (page 20, never), **174** (page 145, allowed, page 147, by richer only), **206** (no), **218, 286, 321, 350, 388, 395, 406, 435, 490.** The consensus of opinion, here and in later writers, is that ~ was permissible but relatively rare. Polyandry is mentioned by *Buttner 110*, *Thunberg II 42*, *65*, *193*.

Pottery. **129, 174** (page 121, among richer Hottentots 'beautiful'), **384.** Also BVR 88. For the making see Schapera's footnote to **174,** also *Grevenbroek 253*, *Kolbe 463*, *514* and *Plate* (echoed by *Philips 267*, *270*), *Buttner 82*; and especially *Mentzel III 296* including the beater-and-anvil technique, which ranges in time from pre-dynastic Egypt until today in Ceylon, and in place from Scandinavia to Indonesia (my paper in MAN, June 1962). Most accounts say that the pots were fired: Schreyer **129** may merely have omitted this, or it may have been a later development.

Punishments. *20.8.73*, *19.4.85*, *27.4.85*, **20, 119, 147, 166** (page 20, death for adultery), **174** (page 145, death for murder only; adultery, theft lesser ~), **206, 218, 238, 260, 269, 286, 287, 321, 434, 437, 487, 490.** There is much additional material, e.g., in *Dapper 649ff*, most of it echoed by *Kolbe 454*, *457*, *551ff*, *Valentyn X 109*, and other writers.

Rakum. **15,** ? **234, 239, 240, 241,** always as 'sticks', the name not appearing much before *Kolbe 477*, *478*, *526*, *534*: it is probably not an original Hottentot word but a coinage like 'tabakum' and 'horom' (to hear), from Dutch 'raken' (to hit the mark), as suggested by *Bövingh 11*.

Religion. **20**^{o}, **21, 35**^{o}, **56**^{o}, **63 68, 84, 118, 125, 147**^{o}, **163**^{o}, **166**^{o} (page 20, sun, moon), **174**^{o} (page 139, slight knowledge of ~, fear of thunder, sun worshipped by cursing it, and by 'Amusement*', moon by dancing), **183**^{o}, **192, 205**^{o}, **218, 234, 241**^{o}, **264, 269**^{o}, **286**^{o}, **297, 310**^{o}, **321, 350, 384, 388, 394, 406, 407, 423, 433, 463, 475**^{o}, **487**^{o}. Except for the relatively few references marked ^{o}, which support or suggest worship of sun and moon, and/or consider the Dances* to be at least semi-religious, all writers here and in BVR deny the existence of any

~. *Dapper 653* writes of a deity ‘Humma’, not prayed to, taken from 20 and echoed word for word by *Hesse 181*. Later writers also either entirely deny ~, or suggest a vague reverence for sun and moon: *Kolbe 406ff*, *414ff*, *428ff*, *436* is one of the very few definitely asserting the existence of ~, quoted and contradicted by

Sparrman I 206, *207*, *213* and *Mentzel III 267*, *301*. For Schreyer's 'Tsiqua' in **118** see *Nienaber 280-282*, and cf. *Grevenbroek 193*, *Bövingh 19*, *Kolbe 354*, *408*, *Valentyn X 109*, *Schmidt 253*. Sacrifices, as in **118, 269, 286, 487** have not been found elsewhere.

Saldanhars, Saldanhimen, etc., see Cochoqua: as 'Krijegoekwa' (?Griqua) in error **22**
Salt. **129** (unknown), **346** (disliked)
Sandals. **16, 38, 123, 126, 174** (page 117, sometimes, ox-hide), **202, 484, 485.** Also in earlier writers (BVR index). *Brink 20*, *Kolbe 479* and *Plate*, *Sparrman 192ff* and *Plate* have good descriptions.
Sea-shells. **16, 35, 56, 84, 126, 166** (page 121, cups), **183, 234, 237, 241, 292** (ears), **320** (cups), **330, 331, 383, 388, 395** (ears), **404, 433** (ears), **485.** All except those noted give them as hair-ornaments.
Sewing (of cloaks, from three parts), **16, 126, 128, 162, 174** (page 149, needles iron or ivory, thread sinews), **237, 484**: also Mundy, BVR 140, without details. Most agree as to the use of sinews for thread: Schreyer **126, 128** is the only writer to suggest the obviously practical porcupine-quills as needles, other, having grass, **237**; thorns, **484**, *Dapper 645*; bones **162,** *Kolbe 422*, *506*, *Le Vaillant* (*1690*) *267*, *Philips 270*, and other writers.
Shamelessness. **35, 68, 85, 204, 259, 308, 309, 405, 406**; and BVR 60, 122, 180.
Sheath worn on neck. **126, 174** (page 117, with arrowheads, tobacco), **237, 241, 319, 405.** Also *Dapper 646*, *Hesse 186*, *Grevenbroek 187*, *Kolbe 476* and *Plate Buttner 122*, *Guedeville 68*, *Philips 264*, *Brink 48*; and BVR 101. Plate 54.
Shields. *10-11.3.61*, **124** (vague), **166** (page 22, Namaquas ivory~on breast and arms [*sic*]), **174**(page 111, Namaqua ~). Confusion seems to have arisen over the Namaqua forehead-ornaments and actual defensive shields: the references in *Kolbe 590*, *Valentyn X 90*, *Paterson 94*, *Le Vaillant* (*1796*) *106*, *Barrow 154* all apply to 'Kaffers towards the Terra de Natal' as Kolbe has it, i.e., to Bantu.
Smearing. *6.3.54*, **8, 16, 17, 19, 35, 52, 56, 63, 68, 84, 103, 109, 113, 125, 126, 146, 161, 166** (page 21, nailfurrows made in ~, greasiness = wealth), **174** (page 113, black grease, page 115, fat), **183, 202, 219, 234, 237, 240, 241, 259, 264, 269, 286, 287, 291, 292, 309, 319, 320, 330, 331, 343, 346, 347, 383, 388, 395, 404, 433, 463, 485.** Also BVR *passim* as in the index. Few early writers suggest any practical reasons for ~: **18** and **68** consider it a preventative of 'dropsy' (elephantiasis), **109, 319, 320, 383, 395** as useful against sun and cold, as also *Grevenbroek 263*, *Kolbe 370*, *Philips 263*, *Kindersiey 68*, *Brink 39*, *Mentzel III 283*, *Sparrman I 184*, *Thunberg II 161*, *Barrow 106*, *167*; or as increasing agility. ¶ The mention by various writers that they considered themselves 'the blacker, the more beautiful', and Leguat's **433** 'They are not born very Tawny, but ... besmear themselves so ... that they become Black as Jet, upon which they lay themselves on their Backs expos'd to the Sun, that the Colour may better penetrate' - these irresistibly suggest the fashionable beaches of today ¶ The equation of greasiness with wealth, **16, 126, 166, 343, 485** is also in *Dapper 646*, *Kolbe 484*, *Valentyn X 104*, *Banks 441*, *Lockyer 300*; and DR *31.10.58*,

the Cochoqua Chief 'dripping with grease'. ¶ The scraping of patterns in the ~ with the long fingernails, **125, 166** is also in *Herbert 122*, *Kolbe passim*, *Buttner 61*, etc., and it seems possible that faulty observation of this gave rise to some descriptions of Cicatrisation*, q.v.
Sonqua (Souqua, Soanqua, etc.). Bushmen, as also their sub-tribe Obiqua*: *8.11.60*, *26.3.76*, *6.5.78*, *30.11.84*, ? **143** ('pigmies ... less than two feet tall'), **174** (page 111, their cattle taken by Dutch [sic], so now hunters, living in forests), **286**^{o}, **483**^{o}, **487.** The entries marked ^{o} and in the following refer to their employment as soldiers by other tribes: *Dapper 9*, *31*, *33*, *Kolbe 378*, *395* (as serving other tribes though not as soldiers), *399*, *499*, *519*, *554*, *555*, *Valentyn X 57*, *58*, *61*, *65*, *66*, *67*, *83*, *96*, often ^{o}, *Forster 76*, *Schomburg 372*, *Mentzel III 308*, *309*, *330*, *333*, *334*, *335*, *Sparrman II 141-146* as 'Chinese or Snese Hottentots'), *Thunberg I 131*, *132*, *264*, *II 173*, *174*, *175*, *Barrow 228-249*, *332*, *334*, *352*, *353*, *356*, *357*, *Jong I 191-194*, *Percival 95* as 'Bushmen also called Chinese Hottentots'. Plates 35?, 39.
Sousoas (Sousequas, etc.) see Chainouqua, from name of Chief. Plate 39
Squat. **19, 84, 129, 237, 346, 438.** Also BVR 17, 152, 175.
Stink. In practically all writers, and *passim* in BVR.
Strandlopers see Watermen

Taboos (regarding food: probably little observed by Watermen). **129, 130, 174** (page 125, women not beef, fresh milk, page 129, scaleless fish, rays, oysters, shellfish ~ to all), **351, 388.** Beef ~ to women **129, 174, 351,** *Pagès* (*1797*) *145*. Hares ~ to men **130, 351,** *Grevenbroek 179*, *Kolbe 487*, *555*, *Buttner 130*, *131*, *Brink 18*, *Pagès* (1797) *145*; but *Bövingh 26*, *Picard 114* ~ to all. Cow-milk ~ to women **174** (but denied by *Brink 18*), *Kolbe 131* (but *469*, *493* not ~ to anyone), *Allamand and Klockner 102*, *Schomburg 350*, *Thunberg II 189* (and *II 42* ~ to men if milked by women). Ewe-milk ~ to men **130,** *Grevenbroek 179*, *Salmon 63*, *Allamand and Klockner 102*, *Brink 18*, *Schomburg 350*, *Thunberg II 189*; but *Picard 114* ~ to all. Scaleless fish, shellfish, etc. **174**, *Kolbe 487*, *538*, *Bövingh 26*, *Philips 278*, *Brink 17*, *Picard 114*; but *Pagès* (1797) *145* ~ to men only. Pork ~ to all **388,** *Kolbe 487*, *Bövingh 26* (inland), *Brink 17*, *Picard 114*.
Thievishness. **83, 118, 147, 162, 174** (page 123), **287** (not), **321** (not), **438** (not), **487** (not). Later writers all tend to deny this, as also BVR 72, 77, 114, whereas the earlier writers there all complain of ~.
Tobacco. *6.9.55*, *13.3.57*. References to its use in barter or as payment for work *passim*, as also to the Hottentot craving for it, in this volume and later writers. Points of interest are: the giving ~ to small children **19, 68, 174** (page 123), **433,** also *Kolbe 463*, *Philips 284*, and others; Hoffman's apparent surprise that Hottentots inhaled, **162,** also as unusual in *Kolbe 497*, *Brink 36*, *Banks 440*; the passing-on of a pipe **174** (page 121), **237, 438,** also *Grevenbroek 273*, *Valentyn X 105*, *Philips 277*, *Wolf 44*, *Thunberg I 196*, *207*, and others. *Kolbe 674* makes the unexpected point that the Hottentots were better judges of ~ than the Dutch. In BVR note that the first mention is in 1646 only: smoking (of anything) was learned from the Europeans - note that Cruythoff (DR *10-11.3.61*) had to show the Namaquas this.
Tobacco-thieves see Gorachouqua

Ubiqua see Obiqua
Urine. **124** (medicine, twice), **487** (magic). *Grevenbroek 243*, *Barrow 249* also have its use in medicine. For magic and rituals see also *Kolbe 422*, *426*, *453*, *536*, *550*, echoed by *Philips 277*, *280*, *283*, *289*, *295*; also see *Allamand and Klockner 94*, *110*, *113*, *119*, *Schomburg 340*, *350*, *357*, *365*, *Pagès* (1782) *24* and (1797) *150ff*, *Mentzel III 281*, *Sparrman I 357*, *Picard 114ff*, *Thunberg II 42*, *192*; and other writers.

Vulva-covers. **16, 35, 127, 147, 217, 388, 485.** Plates 47, 52.

Watermen (Goringhaicona, and see Cuyper, Herry, Scipio). *5.5.60* (error), *5.3.88* (unnamed), **17, 19** ('Strandloopers'), **21** ('Chouriquas' in error), **204** (raid and bring cattle [*sic*]), **205** (unnamed). Also DR *31.10.57* ('Choeringaina ... Herry* and all the ~'), *3.2.59* (hiding among the Caepmans).
Women's bag. **17, 127, 218, 388, 485.** Also *Dapper 647*, *Hesse 186*, *Grevenbroek 197*, *Kolbe 480*, *Thunberg I 178*, *194*, and other writers.
Women's breasts. **19, 84, 147, 161, 166** (page 20), **218, 238, 241, 406, 436, 484.** All refer to the length of these, most adding that they can give suck to the baby on their back: thus also in BVR and many later writers. Plates 35, 40, 44, 47, 52, 60.
Women's feet. **19, 118.** The smallness of these is confirmed by many writers, including *Dapper 644*, *Kolbe 371*, *Grevenbroek 175*, *Guedeville 72*, *Banks 43*, *Barrow 107*: *Sparrman* in 1772, *1 180*, makes the odd claim that this 'was remarked by no-one previously'.
Women's skirts. **16, 35, 113, 127, 166** (page 20, deerskin), **174** (page 117, sheepskin), **217, 241, 292, 383, 436, 485.** Plates 35, 65.

Hottentots-fish, *Raia sp.* speared under water by them; or *Pachymetopon sp.*, probably *P. aeneum* as thought to resemble them facially. **16,** 136, **174** (page 103, 'carp', page 129, 'bream'), **409.**
Hottentots-Holland. *6.6.57*, *11.2.71*, *16.10.72*, *1.1.76*, *20.3.76*, *28.11.76*, *3.11.79*, *23.12.88*, 174 (page 137), **195.** Plate 51
Hottentots-Holland Berge. *6.9.55*, **174** (page 137, on route to Hessequa)
Hour. As measure of distance = 2 English miles.
Hout Bay. ? *28.6.83*, *3.2.88*, **26, 192, 193,** ? **308** (reading 'masketh' for 'maketh'). Also DR *14.11.52* (in Verburgh's diary, first use of name). Plates 24, 51
Hout Bay River. **26** (unnamed)
Hout den Bul. *30.9.59*, *24.9.66*. Also Overtwater's Memoir *7.9.63* (now useless), van Goens Sr. Instructions 1682 (to be demolished)
Houte Wambuis. *4-5.4.61*. Also mentioned in DR *18.7.68*, *7.9.68*
Houtman, Cornelis de (see BVR). **157, 217** (error)
Hoveling. 4.2.76 (unnamed), *18.3.76* (ditto), **180**
Hoy (English term = Dutch 'galliot'). **414.** Small, single-masted, usually mainsail on gaff, and foresail.
HS = Hakluyt Society. **374, 438**
Hudson, Robert. *28.6.99*, **454, 455**
Huguenots. *15.4.88*, *27.4.88*, *11.5.88*, *11.6.88*, *19.8.88*, *22.8.88*, *26.8.88*, *8.10.88*, *12.10.88*, *15.10.88*, *17.10.88*, *24.10.88*, *25.10.88*, *13.11.88*, *1.2.89*, *9.4.90*, *17.10.96*, *28.3.02*, **262, 353, 374, 387, 396, 403, 409, 428, 429, 431, 432, 438, 461, 462.** The first party was brought out to Saldanha Bay by *Voorschoten*, and thence to Table Bay by *Jupiter*, sent for this purpose by Simon van der Stel (letter *26.4.88*, Cape Archives 502).

Huigen (flatfish, not identified, also in BVR. Perhaps *Austroglossus microlepis* or *Tsilla capensis*). **483**
'Hunter', freeman supplying Governor, etc., with game, or supporting himself by selling to burghers. *17.7.55*, **23, 34, 35, 110, 213, 241** ('lion-guard'), **266, 331**
Husing, Henning. Hamburg, 1647-1713. To Cape 1672, Freeman 1678. Meat-supplier to V.O.C., perhaps the wealthiest colonist, a leader of opposition to W.A. van der Stel. (See Hoge, SADB). **479**
Hut see s.v. Cajuit
Huys Byweg. 18.10.99, *21.10.99*
do. *Overryp* see *Overryp*
do. *te Bergen. 26.2.75*
do. *te Duynen. 3.11.96*, *8.11.96*, *9.11.96*, **415, 422**
do. *te Loo. 19.2.99*, *20.3.99*, **448** (unnamed)
do. *te Neck. 8.9.83*, *30.9.83*
do. *te Spijck. 6.6.83*, **246, 248**
do. *te Stryen* see *Stryen*
do. *te Velsen. 21.3.70*, *1.4.70*, **144**

Ilpendam (yacht, *Elpendam*, cf. Hoff van ~). *26.8.63*, *6.9.63*, **75, 77**
ditto (? same ship) *13.2.99*, *20.3.99*, **448** (unnamed)
Interloper (Dutch 'Entrelooper'), ship not belonging to the English East-India Company and regarded by it as trespassing on its rights. *2.11.96*, *4.1.97*, **421, 422, 446,** See *America*, *Rebecca*, *Scarborough*
Ipenstein (little flute, 53 men). *19.4.72*, **165**
Iron (and see Hottentots, Iron-working). **84, 85, 126, 146, 147, 148, 166** (page 22, barter), **202, 217, 218, 404, 486**
'Island', Cape thought to be. **64, 118** (denied), **417.** See also in BVR, and Plate 26
Iversen, Volquardt (Volkert Evertsz.), 'De Beschryving der Reisen ...', Amsterdam 1670 (from German of 1669). **44-46, 102, 103, 106.** Plate 7
Ivory. *10-11.3.61*, **9, 17, 35, 122, 126, 128, 166** (page 19, 20, armlets, page 22, bartered, Namaquas ~ shields on breasts and arms), **174** (pages 117, 119, armlets), **202, 235, 237, 239, 241, 287, 435, 485**

Jackal (also = Fox), *Thos mesomelas*. **15, 16,** 34, 39, 166 (page 15), **482, 484.** The accounts of 'Lions' digging up graves probably refers to ~ in reality.
Jagt see yacht
Jamaica. *10.4.99*, **450, 451**
Jamby (yacht). *9.7.80*, *28.4.85*, *14.5.85*, *17.5.86*, *29.3.87*, **258, 314**
James' Mount see King ~
James and Mary (*Royal* ~). *8.1.88*, ? *2.6.91*, **385.** (Cf. *John and Mary*)
Jansen, Reinhart (and see *Stavenisse*). **405, 406**
Jan van Gent (bird). **33,** 483. *Valentyn X 1*, *2* says named for J.C. van Neck (1600, see BVR) and that = Cape Gannet: some other writers agree but others mention both ~ and Cape Gannet as different birds.
Japan and Japanese. **4, 141, 199, 206, 235, 250, 281, 343**
Java (and see Batavia, Bantam). **53, 55, 57, 149, 310, 464**

Java. 16.6.82, *6.6.83*, *21.1.86*, *9.3.86*, ? *15.4.86*, *11.4.88*, *7.5.88*, **246, 248, 338, 342, 405**
Jetty. *4.3.56*, *20.7.57*, *17.1.58*, *20.8.60*, *20.9.65*, *29.12.66*, **27, 188, 195, 196, 244, 253, 319, 346, 363, 367, 368, 369, 398, 409, 410, 418, 420, 423.** Also DR *14.4.73* (to be lengthened, cove silting up). Plates 17, 28, 31 (two shown), 46, 53, **63,**, 65
Joanna (Johanna, now Anjouan, Comoro Island). **308, 377**
Joanna (English). *20.6.82*, *27.6.82*
John and Mary (cf. *James and Mary*). *8.12.01*
Jonas (Dutch). *14.5.79*
Jong, C. de, 'Reizen ...', Haerlem 1802-3
Jonge Prins. 11.3.65, *22.4.65*, *3.4.69*, *16.4.69*, *20.4.72*, *30.5.72*, **79, 141, 165**
Josiah (English), ? *2.6.91*, *8.4.99*, *18.4.99*, **385, 450, 451**
Jourdain, John see BVR (*41-45*).
Joyeux, M. de. **271, 302, 323**
Juffer Cornelia. 15.3.79, **208**
ditto *Maria. 14.5.79*
Julia. 10.11.99, *30.11.99*, **464, 465**
Jupiter ('sailing-shallop', small, in local service). *24.1.88*, *30.9.88*, *19.10.88*, *23.10.88*, *1.7.96*, *1.7.97*,

25.9.98. Also DR *13.8.85* (as 'zeylchaloup', to Saldanha Bay), letter to Holland *18.3.99* (worn out, broken up).
Jutten Island (Saldanha Bay). *16.12.66*, *22.1.67*, *8.7.69*, *6.4.02*. Also DR *9.3.56*, first mention by name. Plates 20, 45

K. Dutch words not found here see under C.
Kalk Bay (in False Bay). Plates 45, 51
Kalliatour-wood. **236.** By Muret-Sanders Dictionary is synonym of sandalwood.
Karsten, M.C., 'The Old Company's Garden', Cape Town 1951
Kat (French 'Chevalier', English 'Curtain'). Interior work within a fort, to give a better field of fire or (as at Cape) to protect part of the outer works from being commanded in reverse. Ordered by van Reede in 1685. See plan in *Pearse*.
Kattenburg (*C ~*). *11.4.69*, *30.11.72*, *13.12.72*, **141, 171** (unnamed)
Katzenellenbogen bastion. **198, 367, 402, 418.** Plates 53 63
'Kedging', same as 'Warping'
Keeling, William see BVR.
Keert de Koe. *26-27.8.59*, *8.6.76.* Also van Goens Sr. Instructions in 1682, to be demolished.
Kees (Hottentot, Cochoqua Chief). **190**
Killer Whale, *Orcinus orca*. **250**
Kindersley, Mrs., 'Letters ...', London 1777
King Charles' Mount see Charles' Mount
King James' Mount. **367** ('or Lyons Rump', as in BVR), but **418** (apparently Devils Peak in error)
Kingfisher. 2.6.02
Kinsale (Ireland). **171, 173**
Kirby, P.R., 'Musical Instruments ...', Oxford 1934
Kirstenbosch, National Botanical Gardens. **132.** Plates 48-50
Klapmuts. *26.10.88*, *26.12.88*. About 33°50, 18°52, Cape Town sheet, 1:250,000
Klaverblad (flute, hooker). *6.6.86* (little flute), *22.6.86* (hooker), *20.3.87* (ship), *20.5.87*, **311**
Klipfish, *Clinus superciliosus*, etc. 483
Klipkousen see Abalones
Klipspringer, *Oreo tragus*. 137 ('klippsteiger')
Kloof of DR *22.10.88*, in which the Jonkershoek River flows. E.S.E. of Stellenbosch, Cape Town sheet.
Kloof Nek (between Table Mountain and Lions Head). *1.6.98*, **40, 49, 188**
Knives. **103, 126, 129, 162, 217, 289**
Knox, Robert. *5.10.88*, *8.10.88*, *12.10.88*. ? 1640-1720. 1659-79 prisoner of the King of Kandy, escaped, joined English East India Company. In 1684 as Skipper of *Tonquin* to Madagascar for slaves, still in her 1686. 1694 arrived at Cork from Indies. 'Historical Relation of the Island of Ceylon ...', London 1681, and trs. into Dutch, French, German (NED).
Knyf, Willem (Skipper of *Stavenisse*). *1.3.87*, **314, 315** *Kogge*, *Koog* see *Cogge*
Kolbe, P., 'Naukeurige en Uitvoorige Beschrijving van de Kaap de Goede Hoop ...', Amsterdam, 1727, from the German original 'Caput Bonae Spei Hodiernum

...', Nürnberg 1719: pages quoted are from the latter. Also trs. English, French. **115, 136, 138.** (SADB)
Koopman (Hottentot, Chainouqua Chief). *3.3.88*, *22.7.88*, *1.1.91*, *19.1.91*. (SADB)
Koornhoop. *17.7.57*, *24.9.66*.
'Kopffstuck'. **9** (many meanings, including lintel, box on the ear)
Korhaan, *Afrotis afra*. 76, **134**
'Koros'. **237** (more correctly 'Kul-karos', from the words for 'penis' and 'cloak')
Koukerken (yacht) see *Coukerken*
Kraek-fish see Drilvis
Krossenburg see *Cronenburg*
Krygsman. 17.9.77, *19.9.77*, *30.9.77*, *13.6.86*, *14.6.86*, *25.6.86*, **307, 308, 311**
Kuylen (Cuylen) post. *15.10.88*. About 33°57, 18°40, Cape Town sheet, 'Kuilsrivier'. Plates 45 (mislocated), 51
Kyckuyt. *25.8.59*, *26-27.8.59*, *8.6.76*. Also van Goens instructions 1682, to be demolished. Plates 21, 45, 51
Kydd, Captain (pirate). *7.1.97*

Labillardière, M., 'Account of a Voyage ...', London 1800
Lacombe, Jean de, 'A Compendium of the East ...', London 1937 (from MS. of 1681). **142, 475**
Lacus, Hendrik (Fiscaal). *5.6.64*, *12.12.66*, *29.12.66*. (Deposed 1667 and sent to Batavia as soldier.)
La Gaillarde see *Le Gaillard*
La Juille. **100**
Lake on Table Mountain. **90** (none), **166** (page 16, river and ~ with fish), **210** (pools, no fish), **375** (small), **461** (large), **478** (none).
La Loire. 9.6.87, *27.6.87*, *21.4.88*, *1.5.88*, **317, 322, 323, 328, 330, 331, 333, 338, 342, 352, 353**
Lam. 15.2.54, **10**
La Maligne (frigate, 30 guns). *31.5.85*, *1.6.85*, *7.6.85*, *13.3.86*, *26.3.86*, *9.6.87*, *11.6.87*, *27.6.87*, *28.6.87*, *11.7.87*, **261, 264, 265, 268, 271, 295, 297, 299, 300, 301, 302, 305, 306, 317, 322, 329, 330, 333, 370** (error for *La Normande*), **371** (ditto)
Land (*van*) *Schouwen. 20.2.80*, *17.3.81*, *7.4.81*, *16.2.82*, *6.4.82*, *29.4.82*, *19.3.87*, *20.5.87*, *11.7.89*, *12.7.89*, **226, 228, 236, 314, 367, 368**
Lands Welvaren. 29.3.88, *30.3.88*, *30.4.88*, *14.2.98*, *17.2.98*, *13.3.98*, **336, 339, 340, 342, 351, 352**
Langewyck (flute). *30.9.83*, *30.3.85*, *9.3.86*, *21.3.87*, *20.5.87*, *19.4.88*, *14.5.88*, **252, 314, 338, 342**
Langhansz, Christoffel, 'Neue Ost-Indische Reise ...', Leipzig 1715 (also earlier edn. 1705). **132, 400-411.** There are suspicious parallels with the earlier Dampier: e.g., his landlord getting sheep surreptiously. (SADB)
La Normande. 9.6.87, *11.6.87*, *27.6.87*, *28.6.87*, *26.4.89*, *30.6.89*, **317, 322, 330, 331, 352, 358-362, 370** (as 'La Maligne' in error), **371** (ditto)
Lantsmeer (yacht, 53 men). *27.8.63*, *6.9.63*, **76, 77**
Laren (flute, 60 men). *22.4.72*, *30.5.72*, ? **165**
Lark, *Calendula magnirostris*, *Carthilauda albescens*. **134,** 483
La Rochelle. *1.9.66*, *23.8.70*. **94**

Last: as weight 3,000, 3,600 lb., as ships' burden about 2 modern tons
'Laurels' (hedges in Garden), *Kiggelaria africana*, today 'Spekhout'. **188, 198, 276** ('called Spek'), **296, 404, 470**
Laycock, Richard. **424, 425, 426**
Le Blanc, Father Marcel. **322, 324, 325, 331, 333, 358-366**
Leck. 8.5.98, **439-442** (unnamed)
Le Coche. 5.5.89, *6.5.89*, *30.6.89*, **358-362, 370, 371, 372**
Le Dromadaire. 9.6.87, *11.6.87*, *27.6.87*, *28.6.87*, *17.4.88*, *1.5.88*, **317, 322, 330, 331, 333** (error), **338, 342, 352, 353**
Leerdam (flute). *25.7.58*, **48, 49**
Le Gaillard (or *La Gaillarde*: both spellings occur,) *9.6.87*, *11.6.87*, *27.6.87*, *28.6.87*, *21.4.88*, *30.4.88. 1.5.88*, **317, 322, 330, 331, 338, 342, 352, 353**
Legger: about 160 English gallons (other values are also given)
Leguat, François, 'A New Voyage to the East ...',

London 1708 (also French edition, and HS I 82, 83). **374-376, 426-438.** Plates 55, 59, **60, 61**
Leigh, Philip. **313**
Lemons and Citrons. 22-*24.8.52*, *3-5.7.56*, *12.9.60*, **139, 174** (page 97, Garden), **188, 193, 212, 228, 232, 266, 276, 296, 319, 387,** 409, **428, 480,** 481. Also DR *6.9.56* (trees in Garden), *18.6.63* (ditto)
'Lent'. *15.10.59*, *14.10.72*, *23.10.93*, *1.8.96*, *28.3.02*, ? **83.** The clearest explanation of the peculiar system is in *Mentzel 1 163ff*, soldiers at the Cape being divided into: (a) those doing duty normally, in uniform, drawing pay, ration-allowance, bread; (b) 'Freeworkers', Artisans, working for the V.O.C., same as (a) but not in uniform; (c) 'Passgangers', men on furlough, working privately at their trades, same as (b) but must pay 4 Rxd. per month to be divided among the (a) men of their respective companies; (d) men 'Lent' to freemen-colonists (as Overseers), not uniformed and drawing neither pay, ration-money nor bread, and the time thus employed not counting towards their 5-year engagement - paid by their employers, who must pay off the man's debt to the V.O.C. for chest, uniform, etc., and money advanced to him by the crimp in Holland.
Leopard (Cheetah, *Acinonyx jubatus*; and see 'Tiger'). *17.6.56*, **15, 86°, 138** (in addition to 'Panthers'), **148°, 166** (page 15°), **192, 202, 205°, 213, 270°, 297°, 429°, 481.** Entries marked ° give ~ in addition to 'Tigers' and all are mere mentions only.
Les Jeux. 17.4.88, *23.4.88*, **338, 342, 343, 353**
Lesley, Capt. John. *19.1.00*
L'Etoile d'Orient. 11.4.98, *29.4.98*, **439** (unnamed, previously English *Seymore* or *Success*), **440** (ditto), **474, 475**
Lettuce (also vaguely as 'Salads'). *13.9.53*, **49, 79, 161, 228, 237, 253, 409**
L'Europe. 23.8.70, *31*,*8.70*
Le Vaillant, F., 'Voyage ...', Paris n/d (1792: first edn. 1790)
ditto 'New Travels ...', London 1796 (first edn. 1795)
Liefde. 14.9.99
Lies, name of a Netherlands plant not found in S. Africa, probably misapplied to 'Swamp Grass', *Diplachne fusca*. **26, 40, 42**
Liesbeek River. *12-13.3.57* (unnamed), *26-27.8.59* (ditto), **13** (ditto), **26, 34** (unnamed), **157, 191, 407** (unnamed). Plate 24
Lighter (German 'erleichter'). **115, 143**
Lime. *27.5.53*, *8.6.65*, **39, 49, 79, 102, 166** (page 4, kiln on Robben Island, error), **182, 272, 347, 374, 402, 460, 479.** Plate 17
Linschoten, Jan Huygen van: see in BVR. **157.** SADB Vol. I
Lion. *17.6.56*, *21.3.58*, *20.11.64*, 5, 8, **15,** 16, **21,** 29, 34, **49, 53, 56** (more probably Jackals), **64, 70, 71,** 76, 85, 86, 91, 96, **103, 110, 111,** 113, **119,** 148, 161, 164, **166** (pages 8, 11, seen at Salt River, page 15), **174** (page 95, on Table Mountain, page 133, very common), 184, 202, 205, **209,** 213, 228, **232, 233, 239,** 266, **270,** 282, 284, 297, 320, 394, **407, 408,** 429, **430, 431,** 462, 478, **481.** Also DR *31.7.56*, *19.8.56* (~ and porcupine), *6.10.88* (raiding near Fort). Plates 16, 19

Lion Hill. *12.2.54*, **15, 23, 33, 41, 46, 49, 56, 67** (and (Plate), **78, 79, 86, 106, 110, 157, 161, 166** (page 16, look-out post, name from shape), **174** (page 95, ditto, ditto), 183, **189** (quarry), **192, 194** (ores), 196, **199,** 208, **210** (2,172 feet), **212, 227,** 228, **232, 237,** 243, **259, 271, 272,** 277, **309, 313,** 322, **336, 337, 340, 349, 350, 375, 402, 478.** Various plates, including the ridiculous Plate 13.
Lions Head, 2, 194 seet; in English accounts practically always 'Sugar Loaf', as also in BVR and long after 1702. *22.3.73*, *14.5.79*, *28.3.90*, *26.3.02*, **41, 142, 176, 199, 210** (2, 172 feet), **217, 221, 237, 245, 253, 255, 257** (misidentified as Devils Peak on his Plate 31), **308, 340, 341, 358, 367, 368, 370, 375, 386, 390, 402, 418, 424, 440, 442, 445, 446, 452, 461, 471, 478.** Most of the references (and some in the preceding entry) are to the look-out post and signal station. **402** gives the signals incorrectly: in reality the numbers of ships sighted was indicated by the number of shots fired, although perhaps *also* by the flag, as in *Salmon* (*45*), *Mentzel* (*1 89*). The flag flown for the outward fleets was always the Dutch one, as e.g., *Brink* (*22*), for the return-fleets the secret recognition-flag, changed yearly and advised in sealed orders to the fleets. Plates 53, 54, 63, etc.
Lions Rump (Lions Tail, today Signal Hill), 1, 149 feet. *16.3.71* (in item 26), *16.7.85*, *5.1.88*, **41, 166** (page **16**, flag flown on ~), **294, 337, 342, 350, 358, 367** 'James' Point' or ~), **387, 416, 417, 418, 425, 441, 454, 461, 464, 473, 479** (flag on). Plate 63 (flag)
Lisbon. **177, 323, 458**
Lizards. 41, **292** (two described, and Plates 42, 43)
Lizard. 26.6.99, *2.7.99*, *3.7.99*, *21.2.01*, **453, 454, 455, 471**
Lockyer, C., 'Account of the Trade ...', London 1711
Lodgings, and costs of. **68, 86, 91, 102, 103, 232, 236, 243, 250, 258, 368, 378, 382, 384** (cf. **403**), **385, 387, 390, 398, 402, 403** (cf. **384**), **418, 421, 464, 466**
Loenen (flute). *21.3.59*,*31.3.59*, **53**
L'Oiseau. 31.5.85, *1.6.85*, *7.6.85*, *13.3.86*, *26.3.86*, *9.6.87*, *11.6.87*, *27.6.87*, *28.6.87*, *10.4.88*, *18*,*4.88*, *19.4.88*, **261, 264, 268, 271, 295, 296, 297, 299, 300, 301, 302, 305, 306, 317, 322, 329, 330, 338, 342, 352, 353**
London (and see British Museum). *11.10.96*, *9.5.98*, *5.9.99*, *21.2.01*, **171, 174, 299, 311, 438**
London (frigate, 170 men). *11.11.99*, *29.11.99*, **464, 465**
Longboat (Dutch, German 'boot', French 'bateau'): the largest boat carried by a ship, rowed, or sailed with leeboards. *30.9.56* (under sail, and *1-2.10.56* leeboards), *18.5.88*, *26.4.89*, *24.5.97*, *30.12.99* (in item 99), **27, 40, 41, 46, 55, 92, 110, 111, 146, 157, 174** (page 91, hindered by trombas*), **210, 220, 244, 253, 258, 272, 299, 303, 314, 315, 346, 347, 369, 386, 390, 398, 410, 413, 416, 418, 419, 420, 422, 425, 440, 441, 442k 336, 450, 452, 455, 466, 468, 469, 472.** Plates **4**, 6, 63
Longitude. **4** ('60°', not stated from where: probably same as next), **8** (Cape '56°', probably Cape Salvador, Brazil, actually 57°), **174** (page 93, '39°25 from Gibraltar', actually 23°45, page 107 '11°30 from Amsterdam', actually 13°30), 262, **265** (reward for), **267** ('18½° from Paris', actually 16°10), 275, **278** ('18° from Paris', actually 16°10; Hierro from Paris '22½°', actually 20°16; hence Cape from Hierro '40½°', actually 36°26), **295** ('350½°', not stated from where), **308** (Cape '82°25' from Princes Island, actually 86°45), **309** (ditto), **359** (Cape 40° from -?-, probably Hierro), 371, **373** (Cape '36½' from -?-, probably Hierro),

391 (Cape 'about 43°27 from Cape Salvador', actually 57°), **401** (method of finding: see his pages 63, 90, 91). Graaf 'Oost-Indische Spiegel' gives 48 degrees from 'an island' in Canaries. Useful summary in 1682 'Cosmography': Corvo in Azores because Declination* zero there; Peak of Tenerife by 'the more modern, especially the Dutch'; Hierro in Canaries by 'the French to this day'; coast of Brazil as **4, 8, 391.** It adds the pressing need for a chronometer, 'if such an *Automaton* could be made...but none hath been so happy as to accomplish the same'.

'*Looff en Vrintschap*' (English) see *Loving Friendship*

Loosduynen (flute). *21.9.65*, *25.4.69*, *12.5.69*, **142**

L'Orient (port). **370, 474**
L'Oriflamme. 18.5.88, *20.5.88*, *2.6.88*, *3.6.88*, **358**
Loving Friendship. 24.1.83, *6.2.83*, **244**
Lowth, Capt. Matthew. *19.12.99* to *31.12.99*, *2.1.00*, **465-470**
Loyal Bliss. **471, 472**
Loyal Merchant. 19.12.99 to *31.12.99* in item 99, *2.1.00*, *4.1.00*, *11.1.00*, *15.1.00*, **465-470**
Luillier, 'Voyage du Sieur ~', Hague 1706 (also Paris 1705, Rotterdam 1726) **474, 475**
LV = Linschoten Vereeniging
Lynx, *C. caracal.* **166** (page 11, at Salt River; page 15, in addition to Leopards; page 22, skins bartered)

Maagd (*Maecht*) *van Enkhuysen* (war-yacht, 28-30 guns, 133 men). *3.4.55*, *15.4.55*, **33, 34, 43.** Plate 6
Maalgasen ('Divers'), *Morus capensis*. **132**
Maas (measure). Usually same as Can*
Maas River. *9.6.65*, *3.12.68*, *2.4.69*, *20.3.70*, *5.8.01*, **115**, **141**, **311**
Maatzuiker, Johan (Governor-General 1653 to death 1678). **20**
Macassar. 23.3.72, *26.3.72*, *30.4.76*, *22.5.76*, **164, 182, 185**
Macclesfield. 17.1.02
Mackerel, *Scomber japonicus*: Horse- ~, *T. trachurus.* **136**
Madagascar. *2.4.54*, *8.3.55*, *12.3.55*, *25.9.59*, *1.9.66*, *16.12.66*, *23.8.70*, *7.3.71*, *22.5.76*, *29.11.76*, *24.1.83*, *11.5.83*, *6.7.83*, *24.3.87*, *29.3.87*, *12.10.88*, *11.10.96*, *12.11.96*, *7.1.97*, *1.6.98*, *10.4.99*, *16.6.99*, *1.7.99*, *28.12.99*, *30.12.99*, *21.2.01*, **29, 94, 101, 151, 155, 157, 165, 176, 185, 194** (slaves from), **217** (ditto), **244, 247, 314, 377, 389, 413, 422, 425, 438, 450, 454, 468.** Also DR *27.5.54* (rice from), *15-18.6.54* (ditto), *12.12.54* (*Tulip* back from, news that French likely to abandon ~)
Madeira. *16.6.99*, *10.11.99*, *11.11.99*, **295, 391**
'Madjeleijn' (plant, not identified: perhaps Dutch for marjoram). **38**
Madras. *14.7.92*, *24.5.94*, *1.6.94*, *11.10.96*, *14.10.96*, *12.4.99*, **367, 386, 413, 417, 423, 439, 440, 441, 445, 446, 450**
Madras (*~ Merchant*). *11.1.97*, *17.1.97*, *1.2.97*, **425, 426**
Magellan Straits. *12.10.88*, **307**
Magpie (Pied Crow), *Corvus albus*. 483
Maio Island (Cape Verde Islands). **111, 453, 471**
Malabar. **52, 185, 491**
Malacca. *10.4.88*, *20.8.88*, *5.5.95*, **52, 53, 239**
Malacca. 2.3.53, *4.3.53*, *6.3.53*, *10.4.53*, *17.4.53*, *19.2.55*, *6.3.58*, *19.3.58*, *5.10.59*, *22.10.59*, **4, 55, 57**
Malay (language: Fryke's ~ words not traced). **259**
Man, Andries de (First Clerk, later Secunde: died *8.5.97*). *10.6.87*, **187** (unnamed), **188** (ditto), **191** (named), **195** (unnamed), **365** (ditto)
Mandelslo, J.A., von, 'Gedenkwaerdige ... Reyse ..., Amsterdam 1638
Mangas de Velludo see Cape Gannet

Marcus Island (Saldanha Bay). *16.12.66*, *22.1.67* ('Marques'). Plates 20, 45
Margaret (*Margit*, *Margriet*). *28.12.99* and *29.12.99* (in item 99), *15.1.00*, **466-460**. Also DR *25.10.85* (at Cape with slaves from Madagascar for New York)
Maria (French yacht, *Ste. Marie*; and cf. *Princessen* ~, Dutch, and (*Princess*)
Mary, (English). *7.3.71* ('Spiegelschip*' apparently error), *17.3.71*, **101, 155** ('yacht'), **157** ('yacht')
Mars. 8.5.62
Marsseveen 4.2.63
Mary (cf. *Princess* ~). *11.10.96*, *17.10.96*, *19.10.96*, *22.10.96*, *24.10.96*, **413, 414, 415, 416, 418, 419**
Mascarines (Mascarhenas) see Réunion
Massingberd (*Metsenberg*, English). *22.11.83*, *27.11.83*, **252, 253**
Masson, F., 'Account ...', Royal Society 1775
Masuliptam. *29.12.86*, **314**
Masurier, -. **330, 331**
Matelief, Cornelis, 'Journaal ende Historische Verhaal ...', Amsterdam 1648: see in BVR. **217**. (SADB)
Mauritius (Island). *9.4.55*, *12.4.72*, *23.4.72*, *30.5.72*, *3.10.88*, *12.10.88*, *1.6.98*, **62, 77, 106, 164, 165, 172, 247, 248, 253, 299, 301, 376, 386, 413, 464**
Mauritius Island. 4.2.76, *18.3.76* (unnamed)
Maxwell, J., letter n/d in British Museum MS., copied by Theal, in Collectanea
Mayerberg. 21.10.73, *8.11.73* (cf. *Muyderberg*)
Mayotte Islands. *13.11.74*, *21.2.01*, **308**
Medlars. *24.8.52*, *12.9.60*, **82**
Meerkat, *Cynictis penicillata*. **306**
Meerman. 28.8.63 (156 men), *9.9.63*, **76** ('yacht', ?), **77, 78**
Meeuwen Island (Saldanha Bay, and see Cormorans, Isle aux). *26.8.70*, *1.9.70*. Plate 20
Meidrecht. 5.8.01
Meister, Georg, 'Orientalisch-Indischer ... Gärtner', Dresden 1692. **115, 197-199, 202-206, 339, 340-352, 401.** Plates 52, 53, 54
Melon. **42, 161, 174** (page 167 'Solanum Indicum'), **212, 227** ('Spanischer Speck' which de Vries, not unnaturally, read as 'Spanish Sek', sherry, and put among the drinks: the term is still used in Afrikaans for ~), **255, 266, 282, 299, 300, 302, 303, 351.** Also DR *29.1.56* (coming up beautifully), *9.10.54* (more land allotted for ~)
Mentzel, O.F., 'Description ...', Cape Town 1921 (from Glogau 1785-7); also 'Life of R.S. Alleman', Cape Town 1919 but all references except one are to the former.
'Merchant'. Rank in V.O.C.: Commandeur, Upper-Merchant, ~, Under- ~, Book-keeper, etc. Also in English ships equivalent of 'Factor'.
Meresteyn (*Mehrensteyn*, etc.) *27.5.94*, *14.6.94*, *17.6.94*, *7.7.94*, *14.2.98*, *17.2.98*, *13.3.98*, *6.4.02*, **401, 410**
Merklein, Johann Jacob, 'Reise nach Java ...', Nürnberg 1672 (fuller than Nürnberg 1663 and Hague 1930). **4, 5, 8, 9, 67**
Merry, John. **447, 448**
'Messieurs' **83**: suggests a Frenchman, see 'Lent*'
'Metal': gunmetal cannons as contrasted with iron ones

Metsenburgh see *Massingberd*
Middelburg. **32, 62, 67, 138, 464**
Middelburgh (*Nieuw ~*, *Wapen van ~*). *17.8.65*, *31.3.70*, *24.2.71*, *14.4.72*, *13.11.74*, *17.11.76*, *1.12.76*, *12.4.79*, *28.4.79*, **62, 144, 164, 175, 176, 187** (unnamed), **188, 193, 194, 196, 210**
Mierop. 12.10.85, *30.6.89*
Mile. Van Goens Instructions *16.4.57* fixed ~ as about 1½ English, but in the documents it is always the Rhineland ~ of 4.45 English ~ (though in practice on the ground often = 4 only). And see Plate 24
Militia. *1.5.59*, *29.12.66*, *24.2.71*, *11.6.87*, *14.6.87*, *7.5.95*, *10.5.95*. Also DR *19.4.72* (first quarterly parade, 93 men), letter to Holland *1.6.87* (*112* men), DR *15.11.88* (44 horse, 82 foot), *1-4.11.01* (Cape Town 2 companies of 74 each plus 64 horse)
Milkwood-tree, *Sideroxylon inerme*. **40**
Mills. *26-27.8.59*, *30.10.85*, *1.8.99*, **317, 325.** Also DR *25.8.58* (horse- ~ unsatisfactory, water- ~ to be built), *27.10.59* (in use, Mostert given monopoly), *23.12.69* (repaired). Plate 17
Mining. *25.8.69*, *19.9.69*, *3.6.71*, *28.11.76*, *8.6.86*, *1.7.86*, **191, 193-195, 214, 216, 226, 227, 228, 232, 337, 338.** Also DR *28.1.54* 'We have put a silversmith to work

... to find out whether silver could be extracted from a certain mineral that has been found'), *10.2.54* ('the silversmiths found nothing in it'), *13.2.54* (another adverse report), letter from Amsterdam *24.12.54* ('the mineral sent by you ... tested but nothing at all found in it'), DR *26.11.69* (negative report by miners), *24.1.70* (again negative at Riebeeks Castle), *18.9.70* (again negative).
Minors, William see in BVR
Mirwell, Capt. **451**
Mirrors. **103** (barter), **174** (Hottentots fascinated by ~)
Modena (English). *29.7.92*, *5.8.92*, *7.5.94*, *2.6.94*, **390**
Moercappel 1.6.88, *21.6.88*
Moluccas. **46, 252, 491**
Mom see Mum
Mondevergue, Marquis François L. de. *1.9.66*, *12.12.66*, *12.12.66*, *14.12.66*, *16.12.66*, *28.12.66*, *30.12.66*, *5.1.67*, *23.8.70*, *1.9.70*, *7.3.71*, **94-97, 100, 155-157**
Monday, Admiral see Mundy (actually Munden).
Monmouth, Duke of. *22.11.83*, **299, 301, 305, 308, 311**
Monomotapa: Kingdom (of exaggerated extent and importance in early writers) on and south of the Zambesi River. **83, 85, 163, 216, 217, 269.** See Peter Heylin's 'Cosmographie ...', London 1652, for a map of ~, complete with towns, lakes and rivers, and with a description of the Emperor and his Amazon guard. Plate 39
Monsoon, from Hindi 'mausim', season. From Capt. Smith: 'A Mounsonne is a constant wind in the East Indies, that bloweth alwaies three moneths together one way, and the next three moneths the contrary way.' (More exactly, 4 months, then 2 months of variable winds, then 4 months.)
Montague. 5.9.99, *14.9.99*
Montanus, Arnoldus. **250**: probably in 'De Wonderen van 't Oosten ...', Amsterdam 1650
Moore, John H., 'A New and Complete Collection of Voyages and Travels ...', London 1778
Morgen = 2 1/9 English acres
'Morgensterne' (spiked maces). **236**
Mostert, Wouter Cornelisz. *26-27.8.59*, **166** (page 7, 'Cape Burgomaster'), **192, 193** ('Jan', apparently in error). (SADB)
Mouille Point (always unnamed: in some cases Green Point may be meant). *16.3.71*, **41, 246, 255, ? 387** ('Gallows')
Mozambique. *11.3.86*, **22**, 38, **165, 303**
MR = Marine Records, India Office, London
Muid (Mudde) = about 190 English lb.
Mulder, Gerbrant (Fiscaal). **187, 188, 195.**
Mullet, *Mugil cephalus*, etc. **284**, 483
Mum, very strong (and excellent) beer still brewed at Brunswick. **102, 108, 253, 351, 382, 403**
Mundy, Peter see in BVR

'Mundy', Admiral. **170, 171.** Sir Richard Munden, 1640-80. Knighted for taking of S.Helena: which was even more difficult than as described here, since after landing in Prosperous Bay a steep cliff had to be scaled.
Munro, I., 'Narrative ...', London 1789
Museum. *20.11.64*, **15, 16, 64, 70, 85, 154, 213, 228, 232, 233, 270, 408, 430, 462.** Also DR *16.6.56* (lionskin in hall of fort), *31.7.56* (lion/porcupine story, not stated that skins to ~ as e.g., **64**), *19.8.56* (ditto, ditto). Later ~ was in Garden-pavilion (e.g., *Valentyn X 20*, *Beeckman* in *Pinkerton XI*, *Barchewitz 80*, *Lockyer 295* with one schilling admission-fee)
Muskets. During this period the 'snaphaan' and the real flintlock were su perseding the earlier firelock or matchlock with its smouldering 'match'-cord: in the snaphaan the pan-cover protecting the priming was arranged to slide back as the hammer fell, in the flintlock the blow of the flint moved the cover by striking on part of it. (Unfortunately the term 'snaphaan' was often used incorrectly later for the flintlock. **11, 30, 53** (snaphaan), **71** (trap-gun, hence flint), **174** (page 133, unusable in wet weather, the firelock), **242** (linstocks mentioned), **268, 270** (trapguns), **300.** Also DR *25.12.52*, *13.5.56* ('cannot burn in wet weather, but the snaphaanen, pistols and pocket-pistols seem very strange to' the Hottentots), *11.6.56* ('match-cords'), *23.5.59* (ditto), *16.7.66* (trap-gun, hence flint). Also Inventory *15.12.76* has 104 snaphaanen, 354 'muskets'; *18.3.99* has 438 snaphaanen, 785 'muskets'. See also *Lategan*, *Dr. F.V.*, 'Die Boer se Roer', Bloemfontein (1967)
Musket-shot, probably now 150 yards: **269** as distance Fort to town, **296** ditto, **479** ditto: also vaguely **262, 265, 352**
Musschaetboom. **79** (error for *Notenboom*), **92** (ditto)
Mussel, *Mytilus sp.* **21, 56, 128, 483, 486**
Mustard (seed)-leaves (vaguely *Cruciferae*) **11, 13.** Also DR *19.10.52* (wild ~ to be sown)
Mutsje (Musje, Dutch 'little cap'), 1/10 can *. **11, 62**
Muyderberg (cf. *Mayerberg*). *5.5.76*, *22.5.76*, **185**

Naber, S.P. L'Honoré: editor of reprints of Schreyer, Hoffman, Hesse, Saar, Herport, etc. Hague *ca* 1930
Naerden (*Naarden*). *15.2.54*, **10**
Nardenburg (*Aardenburg*). *22.1.76*, **180**
Nail (for barter: the heavy ship-building ~ is meant). **303**
Natal. *1.3.87*, *19.2.88*, *31.8.88*, **154** ('the island called the Terra de Natall')
Nathanael (English). *6.5.89*, *3.7.89*, *5.7.89*, **360**
Navarre (French). *28.8.70*
Necombo (? *Negumbo*, little yacht). *3.7.80*
NED. New English (Oxford) Dictionary
Nederland. 6.5.89, *19.6.89*, *18.10.99*, *21.10.99*, *20.11.99*, **358, 360**
Needles, the see Agulhas
Neptune. 19.1.00, *26.1.00*
Newcastle. *24.1.83*, **391**
New England (U.S.A.). **91** ('New Holland'), **177**
Neyn, P. de (Fiscaal 1671-74), 'Lusthof der Huwelyken ...', Amsterdam 1730: mostly on Hottentots, and this nearly all from Dapper; but he has a long and

vivid account of the execution of the Hottentot Saldanha-Bay murderers by the Hottentots themselves (see DR *20.8.73*).
Ngonomoa see Gonnema
Nicholas. **307**
Nienaber, G.S., 'Hottentots', Pretoria 1963
Nieuburg. 8.6.99, **452** (unnamed)
Nieuhof, Johan, 'Gedenkwaerdige Brasiliaanse Zeeen Lant-Reize ..., Amsterdam 1682. *8.1.55*, **10-16, 19-23, 26, 27, 48, 53, 155-157, 165.** (SADB). Plates 2, 24
Nieuwenhoven (yacht). *16.4.65*, *22.4.65*. **92**
Nieuwland (flute). *4.5.88*, *21.6.88*, *5.6.94*, *12.6.94*, *1.7.99*, *30.12.99* (in item 99)
Nieuwpoort (flute). *25.7.58*, *1.8.58*, **48-52, 168**
Nieuw Rotterdam see *Wapen van Rotterdam*
Night-scented flower. (CAS *Pelargonium triste*, Kirstenbosch *Hesperantha sp.*). **139, 174** (page 107 'geranium')
Nigtevegt. 5.6.94, *12.6.94*, *14.2.98*, *17.2.98*, *13.3.98*
Noord (galliot). *5.1.88*, *3.2.88*, *31.8.88*, *3.9.88*, *30.9.88*, *12.10.88*, *19.10.88*, *31.3.90*. Also letter to Holland *24.5.90* (sent to get *Stavenisse* survivors, got 'the residue', but wrecked on way back)
Noordgouw. 1.7.96, *1.7.97*
Norman, Robert (Mate of *Mary*). **416, 418, 420**
Norris, Sir William. *17.6.99*, *20.6.99*, *1.7.99*, **453, 454**

'Northabout' (Dutch 'achterom'). *1.4.58*, *10.4.65*, *17.9.77*, *29.10.88*, *27.1.89*, *27.5.94*, **9, 10, 67, 91, 92, 106, 107, 156, 177, 180, 197, 242, 243, 252, 316, 340, 352, 366, 374, 391, 401, 411, 438.** Also DR *8-9.10.59* 'return-ships ... strictly forbidden to sail through the Channel'. In time of war for safety: in peacetime for return-fleets to prevent smuggling of East-Indian goods into small vessels in the English Channel. Carried a bonus of two months' pay homeward (*Langhansz 74*) or three (*Saar 187*).
Norway (and see Bergen). **9, 143, 144, 148, 236**
Nostra Senhora de los Milagros. *8.5.86*, *11.5.86*, *21.5.86*, *6.6.86*, **308, 314, 315, 352**
N.S. del Valle. 21.12.88, *25.12.88*
Notenboom. 11.3.65, *22.4.65*, **79** ('*Musschaetboom*' in error), **92** (ditto)
Nuytsen (*berg*). *24.3.69*, *13.4.69*, **141**
Nyptang (hooker). *3.9.96*, *27.10.96*, **414** ('pink'), **416** (unnamed), **418** (ditto), **419** (ditto)

Oaks. **428** (Rondebosch). Also DR *29.8.99* (12,000 ~ from Rondebosch to Stellenbosch, 8,000 to Drakenstein), letter *1.3.00* (30,000 planted last year)
Oats. *17.5.56*, **138, 232, 237.** Also DR (*2.10.54*, growing well but beaten down by wind)
Obiquas, see s.v. Hottentots: note DR *30.11.84* ('Sonquas ... a people of this sort called ~)
Oedasoa. (Hottentot, Chief of Cochoqua). *8.11.62*, *5.8.77*, **21, 22** (incorrect), 131 ('Odasva'). Also DR *13.10.58* ('Eva [said to be] with ~, the paramount Chief of the Cochoqua', *21.10.58* ('Doman ... said that she was ... with the wives of Ngonomoa ... the paramount Chief, and ~, the second one'), *29.10.58* ('~ did not dare to visit the Commander') [for fear of Caepmans and Gorachouqua], *30.10*, *31.10.58* ('Harwarden and Eva sent to ~ ... but he could not make up his mind to come with them ... asked, whether the Dutch Chief was also of noble descent'), *30.12.58* ('the Cochoquas ... reported that their Chief had been severely bitten ... by a lion'), *31.12.58* ('~ had met with his mishap while out with a large party ... they came across a lion, which had ... rushed at ~ ... bitten him in the arm. All the men courageously sprang upon the lion ... killed the lion with assegais'), *20.6.59* ([Envoys from ~] 'were told that if their Chief ~ wished to come to the fort ... he could be treated by our surgeons'), *22.6*, *23.6.59* ([reported that] 'he was very thin, suffering constantly from the wounds ... Since he could not be cured by his own doctor, he hoped to get more effective assistance from us'), *29.6.59* ([another party reported] 'that they had found ~ very weak'), *1.7.59* ('weak and in great pain ... sent message that we should wait until his health improved'), *3.11.60* ('The Serjeant returned ... bringing ~ with him'), *8.11.60* ('~ departed'). (SADB)
Oestgeest. 27.3.02
Oijevaer (*Oyevaer*, flute). *2.4.62*, *11.3.65*, *22.4.65*, **79**
Ólafsson, Jón see in BVR

Oldenburgh. 6.12.72, *9.12.72*, *10.12.72*, *11.12.72*, *6.1.73*, **166** (*passim*: page 2, 36 guns; pages 3, 4, at Robben Island *28* and *29.11.72* [DR *6* to *9.12.72*], to roads *1.12.72* [DR *10.12.72*]; page 14 sailed *27.12.72* [DR *6.1.73*])
Oldenland ('Holderland'), Hendrik Bernhard. Born *ca* 1663 at Lübeck, died early 1697. With Schryver's 1689 expedition, then freeman but re-engaged for Garden before 1693. **387, 423**. Thunberg saw his herbarium in Holland in 1770. Mentioned by *Valentyn*, *Kolbe*, *Stavorinus*. (SADB)
Olearius, Adam (Ölschläger), 1600-1671, traveller and author, edited Iversen. **44**
Oliphant. 21.2.55
Olitzch, Mine-Director. *19.3.81*, **226, 248.** His son **248, 251**
Olives. **13, 97, 139, 188**
Ommeren, Joanna van (wife of van Goens Sr.) *16.2.82*, *30.5.83*, **236** (unnamed), **243** (ditto)
Onions. **38, 255, 409**
Onkruiyd ('Uncright'). **471**
Oorlammers, Oorambaren: Malay respectively 'orang lama', man of experience, and 'orang baru', neophyte. **247, 402**
Oostenburg. 5.4.72, *4.2.76* (unnamed), *18.3.76* (ditto), *17.9.77*, *1.10.77*, **164, 180**
Oosterland. 17.5.86, *8.6.86*, *20.3.87*, *20.5.87*, *25.4.88*, *15.5.88*, *12.6.93*, *24.5.97*, **314, 338, 343**
Oostersoubergh. 30.6.89
Oostersteyn. 13.2.99, *20.3.99*, *14.1.01*, **447** (unnamed), **471** ('Ostresteen')
Oosthuysen. 28.4.88, *12.6.93*, **339**
Oranges. *12.9.60*, **13, 97, 139, 174** (page 97, Garden), **188, 212, 228, 232, 266, 276, 287, 302, 317, 428, 481**
Orange (English). *5.6.92*, *16.6.92*, **390**
Orangie. 5.3.58, *19.3.58*
Orlop deck. **421.** Strictly speaking (NED) the lowest 'deck', just above the hold, and not reckoned as a deck; but often misused for almost any deck.
Ostrich, *Struthio camelis*. **8, 14, 17, 22, 23, 57, 62, 64, 70**, 76, 108, **113, 114, 128, 131, 132, 148, 149, 150, 164, 166** (page 12, eggs hatched by sun [*sic*], eggs and feathers sold at Cape), **184, 190, 213, 233, 235, 239, 240, 241, 242, 381, 394, 408, 409, 462, 483.** The legend that they leave their eggs to be hatched by the sun is in **57, 164, 166, 381, 409**, contradicted by **132, 184,** the former also contradicting the legend that for concealment they hide their heads in the sand. Bolling's **150** '~ in China' not identified: the drawing suggests Crested Crane, but this is not found there.
Ours. 9.7.55, **29, 30**
Outshoorn, Hendrik van (Governor-General 1691-1704). *6.6.83*, **246, 248**
Overbeke, Arnout van. *23.7.68*, *11.8.68*, *25.3.72*, *13.4.72*, **108, 109.** (SADB)
Overnes. 14.2.98, *17.2.98*, *13.3.98*
Overryp (*Huys* ~, flute). *20.2.99*, *2.4.99*, **448** (unnamed), **450** (ditto), **451** (ditto)
Overtwater, Pieter Anthonisz. *26.8.63*, *9.9.63*, **76-78**
Ovington, John, 'Voyage to Suratt ...', London 1696. **391-399.** Plate 58
Oyster, *Crassostraea margaritacea* (true ~ being very rare). **136, 483**

Padbrugge, Robert. *7.3.71*, *10.3.71*, **157, 158**

Pagès, Vicomte P.M.F. de, ‘Voyage ...’, Yverdon 1768
ditto ditto ‘Nouveau voyage’, Paris 1797
Paliacatte (now Pulicat). *27.5.86*
Pampus (*Bambus*). *13.4.88*, *28.5.88*, *12.6.93*, **342**
Panther, probably often = ‘Tiger’, *Panthera pardus melanotica*. 119, **138** (in addition to Tiger), **174** (page 117, cloaks of ~ skin for Chiefs)
Papenburg. 20.4.73, *11.5.73*, **168.** Captured by English near Texel, 1673
(Sainsbury, ‘Calendar ..., 1671-3’, Oxford 1932
‘Paradise’. **174** (page 139, on way to Hessequas), **193** (not the same, forest on Table Mountain)
Parel (*Paerel*, *Perle*, *Paerel*). *2.3.53*, *6.3.53*, *17.4.53*, *6.3.58*, *19.3.58*, *22.3.59*, *1.4.59*, **48, 53, 62.** Plate 12
Parsley (introduced). **38, 161.** Also DR *16.7.53* (growing badly)
Partridge, *Francolinus*, *sp.*: the three sorts, white, red, grey of **270** are perhaps *F. capensis*, *F. levaillantii*,

F. africanus respectively. **123, 134,** 184, 213, **266, 268, 270, 282,** 297, 331, 394, **482** (4 sorts)
'Pass'. *3.6.93*, *11.4.98*, **177.** Maritime powers issued such to their ships, to prevent them from being taken for pirates.
Paterson, W., 'Narrative of Four Journeys ...', London 1790
Paul, Apostle. **487.** Romans II 14 (A.V.) 'the Gentiles, which have not the law, do by nature the things contained in the law'.
Pay, to: e.g. **419** ('with Pitch or Tar'). Capt Smith: '... the Okum being close beat into euery seame ... being well payed ouer with hot pitch, doth make her more tight than it is possible by ioyning Planke to Planke'.
Peaches (introduced). **13, 212, 428, 481**
Peacocks, Wild, *Ardea sp.* probably *A. pavonina*. **134,** 184, 213, 297, 483
Pears (introduced). *12.9.60*, **82, 97, 139, 199, 212, 228, 236, 276,** 380, 382, 428, **481**
Pearse, G.E., 'Eighteenth Century Architecture in South Africa', London 1933

ditto, William, Log of *Caesar*, 1679. **221, 222**
Peas (introduced). **38, 237, 380.** Also DR *16.7.52* (white ~ sown), *20.7.52* (green ~, 'erten sonder schellen,' growing well), *4.9.52* (first green ~ gathered).
Peguyn ('sloepe'). *7.1.58*. Also DR *20.10.55* (mentioned), 28-*29.7.56* (see s.v. *Robbejacht*)
Peg, Captain (Pegu). ? **287, 463.** Also *Kolbe 358*, *386*, *518*, *549*, *Valentyn X 102*, *105*, *106*; and Resolutions *28.11.88* as 'Begou,' Saldanhar Captain.
Pelican, *Pelecanus onocrotalus*. **132,** 184, **190,** 394, 483
Pelican (English). *3.2.87*

Penguin, *Spheniscus demersus. 6.4.54*, 8, **14, 26, 39** ('or Dodersen'), **75, 110, 133, 150, 166** (page 4, on Robben Island, 'two featherless paws like a dog's ears', eggs hatched by sun [*sic*]), **211, 250, 284** ('Bigwin'), **386, 459** ('Begewind'), **483.** The note on **150** that they are thus named, 'not because they are fat but because of their white heads' is puzzling: cf. Herbert (BVR) deriving it from Welsh; but ? Icelandic.

Peperboom. 18.10.99, *21.10.99*, *21.10.99*, *24.10.99*
Percival, R., 'Account ...', London 1804
Periwinkles (Topshells). **17, 486**
Persia and Gulf (and see Gamron). *1.2.71*, **4, 35, 40, 53, 62, 67, 141, 167, 185, 236, 389**
Persia Merchant. **253**
Peter and Paul (frigate, 70 men). *25.2.99*, *8.3.99*, *2.4.99*, *10.5.99*, *1.7.99*, *3.7.99*, *30.12.99*, **450** (unnamed), **451** (ditto)
Peyton, W. see in BVR
Phaulkon, Constantine. **279, 358**: for a summary of his exceptional career see the latter entry.
Pheasant, *Francolinus capensis*. **123, 134,** 213, **282,** 297, 331, 394, 430, 482

Phenix (Dutch, *Vogel Phenixz*, *Fenix*). *3.4.55*, *15.4.55*, *11.3.65*, *22.4.65*, **33, 34, 40, 42, 79**
ditto (English). *7.4.85*, *13.4.85*, **255, 257**
Phenney, George. **414, 416, 417, 419, 420, 421, 440**
Philipeau (French). *19.4.98*, *29.4.98*, **439** (unnamed: previously English *Seymour* or *Success*), **440** (ditto, ditto)
Philips, J., 'Authentic Journal ...', London 1794: draws heavily on *Kolbe* and is echoed by *Salmon*, often word for word.
Picard, B., illustrator of 'Cérémonies ...', Amsterdam 1789 (Vol. I only)
Pieces-of-eight (Reales de à ocho): by various writers = Rxd. (48 stivers) in value, or slightly more.
Pied Buck (Bontebok), *Damaliscus Pygargus*. **123,** 137
Pijl (yacht, about 40 men). *12.4.72*, *23.4.72*, *19.5.72*, *30.5.72*, **164, 165** (twice)
Pijlzwaard. 12.10.85, **208.** Graaf's reference to the men lost on Table Mountain not found elsewhere; and apparently 1685 was her only call, her maiden voyage and wrecked in her homeward passage.
Pinacher see *Pynaker*
Pineapples (introduced). **199, 276,** 302, **317,** 409, 429 ditto (indigenous, empty fruits): probably *Eucomis clavata*). **23**
Pink (Dutch 'hoeker' in one case), **414, 416**
Pinguin Island see Robben Island
Pinkerton, J., 'General Collection ...', London 1805
Pinnace: English, rowing-boat, usually 8-oared, part of equipment of sailing-ships; early Dutch probably two-masted, fore-and-aft sails on gaffs and booms, but later ('pinas-schip') like flute* but with topgallants and mizzen-topsail (although another source says square-sterned). *9.2.54*, *23.3.72* (280 men), Plate 62, all Dutch. All following are small boats: **386, 390, 415, 418, 419, 425, 450, 452, 466, 472, 474**
Piracy. *17.4.69*, *12.10.88*, *3.6.93*, *11.4.98*, *10.5.99*, *16.6.99*, *28-31.12.99* (in item 99), **30, 55, 182, 314, 377, 467-470.** For 'Turkish' read 'Moorish'; and see Kydd.
Platteklip Gorge (always unnamed). **40, 86, 87, 90, 208, 210** (the 'klip' itself), **216, 342, 477.** Plate 8
Plover, probably *Charadrius sp.* **39**
Plymouth. *14.10.96*, *5.6.99*, *17.1.02*, *26.7.02*, **452, 458, 477**
Point: 1/32 of compass-circle, i.e., 11°15
Polaenen. 25.8.69
Poleroon. 15.10.79, **222**
Polsbroek see *Zuyd Polsbroek*
Pomegranates (introduced). **212, 276, 317, 380, 382,** 409, 428, 481
Pondicheri. *27.2.88*, *10.4.88*, *26.4.89*, **264, 353, 358, 360, 370, 372**
Pool (frigate). *3.2.98*, **440** (unnamed)
Poop (Dutch Kampanje, Campagne, etc., French Dunette), **156, 197** (defined). Flat roof of Cajuit. See also *Langhansz* (*66*, *90*).
Porcupine, *Hystrix africae-australis*. 8**, 15, 56, 64, 70, 113, 126, 128,** 131, **137,** 184, **190, 232, 233, 408** ('Igel', hedgehog), 429, 481. Also DR *31.7.56*, *19.8.56* (lion killed by ~: and in various accounts above). The legend of their 'shooting' their quills is in **15, 56,** contradicted in **113** by the ever-reliable Schreyer.

Porpoise, *Lagenorhyncus obscurus* (but quite possibly in reality Dolphin, *Delphinus delphis*) **271**
Portsmouth. *2.11.86*, *29.9.96*, *6.6.99*, *16.6.99*, *8.12.01*
Portugal and Portuguese (and see Lisbon). *28.3.58*, *4.2.66*, *11.3.86*, *8.5.86*, *11.5.86*, *21.12.88*, *25.12.88*, **9, 21, 22, 23, 27, 30, 33, 64, 112, 117, 144, 160, 163, 174** (pages 93, 103, mentioned only), **177, 199, 220, 227, 267, 271, 275, 279, 281, 287, 302, 314, 315, 352, 362, 363, 365, 366, 380, 400, 483, 491**
Posthoorn ('bootje', 'Advys-jacht'). *4.2.76* (unnamed), *18.3.76* (ditto), *15.2.82*, **180, 236** ('hooker')
President. **253**
'Prester John'. Fabulous early medieval King in Africa; from 14th Century = Emperor of Abyssinia
Preston, John. **244**
Prévost, A.F. d'E., 'Histoire Générale ...', Hague 1747, corrected and augmented by De Hondt from the earlier Paris edition.
Princes Island (Sunda Strait). **4, 258, 308**
Princeland (flute). *30.3.85*, *20.3.87*, *20.5.87*, *21.10.88*, *7.11.88*
Princes Maria (Dutch). *30.3.85*, **252**
Princes Royal (Dutch, flute). *2.3.53*, *10.4.53*, *17.4.53*

21.9.56, *30.9.56*, *1.10.56*, *2.10.56*, *7.10.56*, *8.3.59*, *16.3.59*, *20.3.59*, **4, 5, 8, 9, 45, 46, 53, 62**
Princess Mary (English, frigate: cf. *Mary*). *10.4.88*, *11.4.88*, *20.4.88*, **338, 342**
Princesse Louise (Danish). *4.4.98*, **439** (unnamed), **440** (ditto)
Prins Fredrik (Danish), *6.5.98*, *8.1.99*, **442** (unnamed)
Prins Willem (*~ van Seeland*, *~ de Deerde*). *12.4.55*, *1.2.71*, *24.2.71*, *14.4.72*, **32, 42, 62, 165** (*de Deerde*), **175** (ditto), **180**. Cf. the next entry.
Prins Willem Hendrik (*~ de Deerde*). *2.5.74*, *3.6.74*, *12.1.76*, *13.2.81*. Cf. the preceding entry.
'Pritzkopf'. **135.** ? Beaked whale, *Ziphius cavirostris* or *Mesoplodon layardii*
Providence (English). *24.3.87*, *3.4.87*, **315** (as *Vergulde Pelikaan* in error)
Provintie see *Vereenigde ~*
Prudent Mary (English). *4.2.83*, *5.2.83*, *8.2.83*, *7.4.85*, *13.4.85*, **244, 257**
Pulo Chinco (Island, N.W. Sumatra: apparently Pulu Djonggi of the British Admiralty 'Pilot', near Mansalar Island). **221, 228, 246**
Pumpkins. **9, 317.** Also DR *25.10.52* (~ seed sown), *29.1.53* (Brazil ~ coming up well).
Purchas, Samuel, 'Hakluytus Posthumus or Purchas His Pilgrimes ...', London 1625-6, reprint Glasgow 1905.
Purmer (cf. *Purmerland*). *17.7.85*, *12.6.93*
Purmerendt see in BVR Index.
Purmerland (yacht, 51 men, cf. *Purmer*). *28.8.63*, *6.9.63*, **76-78**
Purslane, *Portulaca sp.* **459**
Pynaker. 20.4.73, *11.5.73*, **168**
Pyrard (de Laval) see in BVR

QB. Quarterly Bulletin of the South African Library, Cape Town.
Quaelberg(en), Cornelis van. *25.8.66* and *passim* to *16.6.68*, *11.8.68*, **94-97, 108, 109**
Quagga, *Equus quagga*: usually as 'Wild Horses'. **21, 56,** ? **70,** ? **148,** ? **205, 240, 241, 270, 283** ('asses' in error), 429, 481, **482** ('wild asses' in error)
Quail, *C. coturnix*. **134,** 483
Quarry (Lions Hill). *2.12.88*, **189, 381, 402**
Quartel (hooker). **193**
Quinces (introduced). *22-24.8.52*, *12.9.60*, **139, 199, 212, 228, 276, 300, 380, 382, 388,** 409, 428, **461, 475, 481.** Also DR *7.9.61* (grafted on thorn-trees).

Rabbits: usually means Dassies in early writers, but the following are ~, imported. *2.4.54*, **26, 166** (page 4, on Robben Island), **479** (ditto), 482 (in addition to Dassies). Also DR *16.10.56* (five from Holland to Robben Island, those previously put there extinct), *17.11.74* (a pest on Robben Island).
Radishes (imported). **38, 39** (and 'Rammelasz'), **42, 46, 49, 55, 79, 144, 228.** Also DR *16.7.52* (sown), *20.7.52* (growing well).
Rad van Avontuur. 21.6.88
Ranunculus (indigenous, probably *R. pubescens*). **26**
Ras, Anna, 'De Kasteel ...', Cape Town 1959

Raven, *Corvultor albicollis* (and see Crow: Sea- ~ = Cape Hen). **134, 409,** 483
Ray, *Raia sp.* (caught by Hottentots). **238, 409**
Reales de à ocho see Pieces-of-eight
Rebecca (interloper). *2.11.96*, *4.1.97*, **415, 417, 420, 421, 422**
Red Bishop, *Euplectes orix* (and see Blackbird). **134**
Redoubts (and see Duynhoop, Houd den Bul, Houte Wambuis, Keer de Koe, Kyckuyt, Koornhoop). *5.6.64* (between Table Bay and False Bay), **103, 183, 194.** Also DR *26.1.68* (guns placed on 'The New Point'), *14.9.68* ('behind the Lion Mountain', in hand: Sea-Point), *1.3.73* ('the new Sea-point' now earth, to be stone), *7.8.73* (~ sited in Hottentots-Holland on False Bay).
Reed-birds, probably *Rallus caerulescens*. **483**
Reede, Hendrik Adriaan van. ? 1636-1691. Administrator Quilon, Malabar ('Hortus Indicus Malabaricus', 1678, etc.). Holland 1677, out again 1684 especially to combat private trade by officials. Cape *19.4* to *16.7.85*. Then Ceylon, Bengal, Malabar: died 1691 near Surat, perhaps poisoned. *19.4.85*, *1.6.85*, *4.6.85*, *16.7.85*, *31.7.85*, **266, 267, 268, 272-275, 277, 278, 281, 295, 463.** SADB Vol. I
'Remonstrantie' see in BVR: full text in Godee-Molsbergen, 'De Stichter ...', Amsterdam 1912
Rennefort, Urbain Souchu de, 'Histoire des Indes Orientales ...', Leiden and Paris 1688, and in Dutch, Middelburg same year. **94-101**
Resolution (English). **454**
Réunion (Mascarhenas, Bourbon). *20.5.88*, **374, 387, 440**
Revenge (English). **307**
Reward (killing 'Tiger', Lion, etc.) *17.6.56*, **16, 431, 462**
Rhinoceros, *R. bicornis capensis. 8.1.55*, **11, 15, 16, 22, 29, 30, 54** (and Plate), 56, **63,** 85, 96, 119, **122,** 131, **136, 137, 149, 163, 164, 166** (page 11, at Salt River, fight with elephant, page 16, page 22, horns bartered), 184, **191,** 202, 213, 228, **235, 241, 282, 283,** 286, **291, 300, 301, 304, 429, 430, 462, 482, 484.** Also DR *6.11.57* (trade in ~ horns prohibited). The horns were valued because of the belief that when used as cups they would detect or neutralise poison, subsisting as late as 1744 (*Thomas* in *Harris*, *344ff*). Three other legends were their armour-plated skins, their inveterate hatred of elephants, and that they licked their victims to death: all denied by Schreyer **122, 136.** Plates 9, 23, 36 (armour-plated), 59
Rice (introduced). *2.4.54*, *17.5.56*, *8.2.71*, **5,** 14, **40, 70, 103, 112, 114, 128, 137, 157, 162, 185, 208, 211,** 231, 240, **347, 442, 464, 467.** Also DR *12.10.52* (more ~ needed, for Hottentots), *17.4.53* (from Batavia), *23.4.53* (ditto), *15.4.54* (ditto), *4.5.54* (galliot to Madagascar for ~), *15-18.6.54* (ditto), *11.7.54* (from Batavia), *2.6.57* (sown at Cape), *7.10.57* (ditto, East of Liesbeek R.), *18.2.58* (from Batavia), *12.3.76* (from Ceylon), *26.3.79* (from Batavia)
Ridderschap van Holland (yacht). *8.9.83*, *14.9.83*, *30.9.83*, *7.4.85*, *9.3.86*, *15.4.86*, *10.4.88*, *30.4.88*, *1.6.98*, *1.3.00*, **252, 255, 338, 339, 340, 342, 351, 352**
Riebeeck, Abraham van. **187-196.** Plate 27. SADB Vol. I
ditto Jan van. *Passim* 1652-1662, **10, 11, 13, 21, 34, 38-40, 42, 55** (unnamed), **58, 64** (unnamed), 65 (ditto), **180, 187.** 1619-1677. (SADB)
Riebeeks Castle: about 30°18, 18°55, Cape Town sheet. **194, 195.** ? Plate 24
Riet Vlei: about 33°50, 18°30, Cape Town sheet. **42** (unnamed), **76** (unnamed), **174** (page 99, 'Salt Bay'). Plate 24

Rig of ships see s.v. Spiegelschip.
Rising Eagle (English). *26.3.02*, *27.3.02*, *4.4.02*, *8.5.02*, **473, 474**
Robbejacht ('sloep', 16 or 17 lasten*). *4.9.55*. Also DR *28-29.7.56* ('Before noon the chaloupen ~ and *Peguyn* returned from the Saldanha Bay ... the Hottentots had attacked the small boat of the ~', taking copper, tobacco, a musket, and breaking up the boat for the nails and other iron); *18.11.57* (refers to this as 'last year' and 'by Charingurinas'; *5.8.58* (mentioned as wrecked on Angola coast)
Robben Island. *Passim* from *14.5.53* in 'Background', **11, 20** (interpreter banished to), **23, 26** (rabbits,

sheep put on), **33, 39** (4 men stationed on), **40** (watch-post), **43, 55, 75, 78, 92, 108, 157, 165, 166** (pages 3, 4, sheep, oxen, 'wonderful garden', limekiln [*sic*], tarantulas, salamanders, rabbits, penguins), **174** (page 91, convicts, shells from ~), **182** (pirates to), **193, 194, 196, 211, 221** (and as 'Penguin Island'), **242, 243, 244** ('Penguin Island'), **246** (ditto, and all English items), **253, 255, 268** ('Robin', as in all French items), **272, 299, 301, 302, 305, 308** (unnamed), **313, 322, 333, 337, 340, 342, 360, 367, 369, 374, 380, 386, 387, 401, 402, 414, 415, 416, 417, 422, 426, 427, 439, 441, 447, 450, 452, 454, 460, 464, 465, 466, 472, 473, 474, 475, 479.** Also DR *18.3.54* (post set on ~), *5.6.54* and *passim* (shells from), *16.10.56* (rabbits put on), *15.3.57* (offenders banished to ~ for three years), *16.3.58* (rabbits put on), *17.11.54* (rabbits a pest on). Plates 24, 31, 34, 45, 46, 51
Robbertson, William (Chief Surgeon). *14.12.60*, *23.12.60*, **64** (unnamed)
Roberts, Austin, 'Mammals of South Africa', Cape Town 1951
ditto ditto 'Birds of South Africa', Cape Town 1957 (revised edition).
Robinson, Dr. A.M. Lewin. **330-333**
Rodriguez Island. **376, 387**
Roebuck, *Pelea capreolus*. 49, 68, 82, 90, 96, **123, 126,** 137, **149, 209,** 213, **266, 268, 270, 282,** 286, 297, 331, 429, 482
Roebuck (English). **471**
Roggeveen's Fleet 1723, Anon, 'Tweejarige Reize ...', Dordrecht 1764: the writer was never at the Cape, his material mostly from Dapper. Not quoted. *Romeijn. 30.3.85*
Rondebosch. *17.5.56*, *11.12.56*, *17.7.57* (unnamed), *31.8.63*, *13.8.64*, *14.6.69*, *16.4.85*, *21.3.88*, *16.11.88*, *16.4.99*, **76, 97, 191,** 192, **428, 480** (often unnamed). Also DR *25.7.56* (tobacco to be sown at ~)
Roode Zand (pass): N.W. of Tulbagh, Worcester 1:250,000 sheet as 'Oukloof'. *1.3.1700*
Roode Vos (galliot). *8.3.55*, *9.7.55*, **10, 34, 38.** Also DR *2.6.53* (replaced *Swarte Vos* in local service at Cape).
Root (Hottentots). **14, 17, 21, 71, 84,** 127, 128, **162, 166** (page 21, arum), **174** (page 119, gladiolus*, 'Hottentot-bread'; page 129 'sword-lily' bulbs: Schapera's note as 'Hotnotsvyg*', also leaves of 'many kinds of sedum*'; page **131,** arum-~), **183, 203, 217, 297, 349, 351, 388, 433, 486.** Obviously many varieties of ~ were eaten, though probably usually bulbs or corms rather than 'roots'. They are mentioned in many writers from the earliest days: BVR 3, 4, 33, 100 (plant described), 133, 152, 154, 180 (described); also *Dapper 647*, *Grevenbroek 185*, *Kolbe 241*, *253*, *258*, *488*, *522*, *Valentyn X 67*, *89*, *Maxwell 52*, *Cnoll 65*, *Schmidt 252*, *Salmon 61*, *Sparrman I 148*, *II 94*, *313*, *Thunberg II 189*, *Pagès* (1797) *144*, *Labilliardière 97*, *Barrow 110*, *Sonnerat 181*. For **486** CAS gives *Cyphia sp.*; the 'Uintjes' of Kolbe, Valentyn, Maxwell, Cnoll, Sparrman, Barrow are *Morea edulis*; the 'Sisynrichia' of Kolbe, Valentyn are misnomers for *Iridaceae*; the 'Hotnotsvyg' (still thus in Afrikaans) of Kolbe and Labillardière are *Carprobrotus edulis* (formerly *Mesembryanthemum edule*) as also **174** and Sparrman; one of Thunberg's is *Gladiolus edulis* as in **174**; the 'Arums' of Grevenbroek, Kolbe are probably *Zantedeschia aethiopica*.

Roscam (hooker). *27.5.94*
Roses (introduced). **139** (Cabbage ~, Persian ~)
Rosemary (introduced *Rosmarinus officianalis*; indigenous, 'Wild ~', *Eriocephalus umbellatus*). **139, 161, 166** (page 11, wild, near Salt River), **174** (page 97, hedges), **188, 199, 212, 228, 404.** Most references are to the hedges in the Company's Garden, as also in e.g., *Mentzel I 119*, *Buttner 6*, *Heydt 323*
Rotterdam. **55, 115, 187, 211, 311, 419**
Royal Charles (cf. *Charles*). *20.9.65*, *21.9.65*
do. *James and Mary* see *James and Mary*
do. *Russell* (English, 'sloop', Dutch 'brigantine', 15 men). *7.1.97*, *26.1.97*, **425**
Rustenburg (and see Rondebosch). *13.10.79*, *30.4.83*, *16.4.85*, *21.1.88*, *19.3.88*, **76** (unnamed), **97** (ditto)
Rxd., Rixdollar, say 4s/2d: purchasing value say 35s/-.
Rye (introduced). 14, **138, 237, 343, 409**
Rysende Son. 11.3.65, *22.4.65*, **79, 85, 86, 91, 92**

Saamslag (*Zusammenslag*). *11.4.88*, *4.5.88*, *30.6.89*, **338, 342**
Saar, Johan Jacob, 'Oost-Indianischer Fünfzehen-Jährige Kriegsdienst ..., Hague 1930 from Nürnberg 1662, 1672. **44, 58-67, 116, 231.** Plates 11, 13, 14
Saddle, The (between Table Mountain and Devils Peak). **23, 26, 27, 209, 339**
Sage (introduced). **38, 199** (hedges in Garden)
S. Andries (hired ship). *17.9.77*, *20.2.80*
S. Antão (Cape Verde Islands). **10, 45**
S. Anthonis (French). *18.4.85*, *28.4.85*
ditto (Portuguese). *11.3.86*, *26.3.86*, **303**
S. Augustine Bay (Madagascar) *11.10.96*, **413**
S. Bras, Bay of: see Mossel Bay Kolve's map, etc.
S. Georges (French). *9.7.55* (in item 3)
S. George, Fort (Madras). **423, 441, 450**
S. Helena Bay. *20.9.70* (in item 15)
S. Helena (Island). *10.4.55*, *3-5.7.56*, *1.4.59*, *30.11.72*, *9.12.72*, *5.3.73*, *29.4.73*, *1.5.73*, *24.7.73*, *11.10.96*, *17.10.96*, *20.10.96*, *11.1.97*, *1.2.97*, *9.5.98*, *2.6.02*, **9, 40, 156, 164, 166** (page 5, three ships, 1,220 men sailed *3.12.72* to seize ~), **168, 170-173, 210, 242, 243, 245, 247, 251, 261, 359, 360, 365-385, 391, 411, 414, 419, 425, 426, 427, 438, 471.** Also DR *2.2.60* 'since the English now hold ~ ... orders of the Lords XVII ships shall not touch there this year ... in view of the shaky Government [in England] ... doubtful whether matters will come to a firmer alliance or be broken off violently'.
S. Helena Nova. *18.5.78*. Also DR *22.1.58* ('yacht *Maria* reported ... for fully 14 days searched for the island of ~, but failed to find it'), *6.5.60* ('*Loenen* to sail in search of ~', sailed *15.5*, back *28.6* unsuccessful), Frisius Report as Commissioner **1661** ('now searched for during 3 years ... van Riebeeck thinks further search useless'), *4.4.63* (stores and soldiers sent to ~ with return-fleet, but *Velthoen* back *1.6.63* reporting no success).
S. Jean (300 men). *10.12.66*, *12.12.66*, *16.12.66* (in item 15)
(another, 60 men). *31.8.66*, *1.9.66* (in item 15)
S. Jean Bajou. 26.8.70, *28.8.70* (in item 15)
S. Lawrence (Madagascar), **244, 377, 413, 466, 468**
S. Louis (French). **474**

S. Maartinsdyck. 4.5.85, *14.5.85*, *15.5.85*, **258, 314**
S. Malo. **370, 458**
S. Maries (Madagascar). *12.10.88*, **466, 467**
Saint-Martin, Baron Isaac de l'Ostal de, Major-General. *28.6.83*, *19.4.85*, *4.6.85*, *16.6.85*, **246-248, 267, 268, 273, 274, 278, 295.** Born Béarn 1629, died Batavia 1696. C.-in-C. in Indies, active 1650-1696 in nearly all campaigns, especially in Bantam (Ency. Ned.-Indien). See also *Hesse* (*48*, *97*, *115*, *116*, *138*).
S. Nicolas (French). *27.2.88*
Saint-Pierre, J.H.B. de, 'Voyage à l'Isle de France ...', Amsterdam 1773
S. Tiago (Cape Verde Islands). *28.4.79*, *29.10.86*,

2.11.86, *21.10.88*, *16.6.99*, *10.11.99*, **111, 112, 116, 160, 185, 252, 368, 389, 391, 410, 453, 471**
S. Vicente (Cape Verde Islands). *29.10.88*, **10, 45**
Sal (Cape Verde Islands). **374**
Salamander. **166** (page 4, on Robben Island, 'poisonous' [*sic*])
ditto Bay (Saldanha Bay). *26.8.70*
Saldanha Bay. *8.3.55* in item 3, *9.7.55* (ditto), *7.1.58*, *16.12.66*, and *passim* in 'Background', **22, 26, 29, 30, 64,** ? **71, 83, 94-101, 157, 174** (pages 87, 89, defective maps, massacre 1673 [DR *14.7*, etc.]), **190** (1673), **217, 415, 423, 483, 484.** Also see s.v. *Robbejacht* for Hottentot raid in 1656. Plates 20, 39, 45
Salland see *Zalland*
Salm (flute). **4**
Salmon, T., 'Modern History ...', Dublin 1752 (rarely quoted, since in most cases he merely echoes Philips)
Salmon, *Johnius hololepidotus*, *Atracoscion aequidens*. **136**
Salt and Salterns (and see Riet Vlei). *31.5.54*, *8.1.55*, **76, 388.** Also DR *29.1.59* (new saltern at Riet Vlei).
Salt Islands see Cape Verde Islands
Salt River. *2.10.52*, *25.8.59*, *26-27.8.59*, *5.11.96*, *24.5.97*, **11,** ? **20, 26, 34, 38, 40, 42, 157, 166** (pages 8-12, Cortemünde in hiding at ~), 189, **192, 195,** ? **255, 477, 479.** Plates 34, 51
Salvador, Cape. **391** (zero of longitude), probably also **4, 8.** Bahia (Brazil), 38°29 W.
Sampan. *31.5.54*
Sampson (English). *29.7.92*, *5.8.92*, *22.5.94*, *2.6.94*, *14.10.96*, *5.11.96*, *18.11.96*, *15.12.96*, *3.5.98*, *9.5.98*, **390** (unnamed), **413-423, 441, 442**
Samuel (English). *14.7.92*, *1.6.94*, *2.6.94*
Sandalwood. **236**
Sandenburg, **38** see Duynhoop.
Sandkruiper, *Rhinobatos sp*. **483**
Sandlooper (little flute). *25.4.98*, *8.5.98*, **157, 439** (unnamed), **440** (ditto), **441** (ditto)
Sarah (Hottentot). *18.12.71*, **174** (page 127, suicide when abandoned by Dutchmen who had promised marriage)
Sardine, *Sardinops ocellata*. **409**
Sargasso Sea. **67, 107, 156, 180, 251, 261, 340, 352, 411**
Sarjansland see Sirjansland
Sarsaparilla (indigenous, not identified). **387**
'Satisso'. *Professor G.S. Nienaber* writes: '~ is, no doubt, the earlier form of a word which today appears in Nama as "satsi", "quietly".' **127, 350**
Saumacque (French). *30.12.66*, *22.1.67*, **96**
Scarborough (Interloper). *4.1.97* (3 guns, 105 men), **425** ('hagboat'), **426**
Sceptre (English). *14.10.96*, *5.11.96*, *15.12.96*, *25.4.98*, *2.5.98*, *16.6.99*, *2.7.99*, **413, 415, 416, 417, 439, 440, 441, 453, 455**
Schacher (Hottentot Chief). *13.4.72*, *20.8.73*. (SADB)

Schapen Island (Saldanha Bay; and see Biche, Isle à la). *16.12.66*, *22.1.67*, *26.8.70*, *1.9.70*. Plate 20
Schapera, Isaac, 'Early Cape Hottentots', Cape Town 1933. **174**
Schelde (yacht). *20.3.87*, *20.5.87*, *5.6.88*, *11.6.88*, *29-30.6.88*, *1.7.88*, *2.7.88*, **314**
Schellag (*Schelling*). *26.4.98*, *8.5.98*, **439** (unnamed), **440** (ditto), **441** (ditto), **442** (ditto)
Schiebroek (little yacht). *6.6.83*, *6.7.83*, *12.6.93*, **246, 248**
Schieland. 20.2.80, *6.6.83*, *7.6.83*, *9.3.86*, *15.4.86*, *15.6.89*, **246, 248**
Schieman. **33, 347.** Often mistranslated 'Boatswain's Mate'. He was responsible for the bowsprit and foremast and their gear, just as the Boatswain was responsible for the main and mizzen masts, and, like the Boatswain, he had a Mate to assist him. See *Graaf*, *Oost-Indische Spiegel*, page *28*.
Schilling (Schelling). ⅛ Rxd., or say 6d.
Schmidt, G., 'Voyage ...', in Walckenaer, Vol. XVIII, Paris 1842
Schomburg, L.H. von, 'Reise van Kopenhagen ...', Odense 1784
Schoondyk. 14.2.98, *17.2.98*, *13.3.98*
Schouten, Wouter, 'Oost-Indische Voyagie ...', Amsterdam 1676. **48-52, 79-92, 160, 163, 226.** Plate 8
Schreyer, Johan, 'Neue Ost-Indische Reisz-Beschreibung', Hague 1931 from Saalfeld 1679, Leipzig 1681. **110, 111, 114-139, 166** (pages 7, 12, 'garrisonsurgeon'), **202, 401.** (SADB)
Schryver, Ensign Isaac. *16.1.84*, *31.3.90*, *1.1.91*, *19.1.91*, **283** (unnamed, 'Lieutenant'). (SADB)
'Schuhes'. **204** (game in Germany, not identified)
Schulp. 27.5.94
Schwartze, G.L., 'Reise nach Ost-Indien ...', Heilbronn 1751
Schweitzer, Christopherus, 'Journal- und Tage-Buch seiner sechs-jährigen Ost-Indianische Reise ...', Tübingen 1686. **182-184, 185, 226, 229, 236, 243.** Plate 26
Scipio (Hottentot, Watermen). *5.3.88*
Scurvy. *15.2.54*, *2.4.55*, *21.9.56*, *25.7.58*, *16.3.59*, *26.8.63*, *24.4.65*, *24.10.99*, **11, 117, 166** (pages 3, 4, this month 24 deaths, page 5, landed 36 sick of ~), **229, 266, 268, 294, 377, 401, 413, 458, 459, 472.** Also DR *15.4.73* (*Asia* brought in by Derdewaak* and cook, rest all ~)
'Sea-cats' see Sepias
'Sea-cow', 'Sea-horse'. 'Sea-cow' usually = Hippopotamus, but Bolling, **154,** has 'Sea-horse' for this.
'Sea-lion', *Mirounga leonina*, **154** ('Sea-cow'), ? **482** ('Sea-horse')
Seals ('Robben', sea-dogs, etc.: *Arctocephalus pusillus*). *14.11.52*, *10.4.53*, **8, 9** (for Holland), **16, 17, 26, 33, 35, 39** (for Holland), **52, 55, 75, 83, 96, 110, 136** ('two sorts'?), 187, 198, 211, **217, 234** (skins to Holland [*sic*]), **242, 245, 284, 297, 381, 409, 427, 459, 482** ('sea-bars'), **485.** Also DR *7.2.54* (5,373 skins from Dassen Island), *24.2.54* (2,000 ditto, ditto), *26.4.55* (skins sent to Holland), *7.3.56* (ditto), but letter from Holland *12.10.56* received *5.2.57* ('stop sealing ... little demand ... sales do not cover the costs ... intolerable stench in the ships')
Seal Island (False Bay). Plates 24 ('Klip'), 45, 51 ('R')
'Sea-pigs'. 482 (probably tunnies)
'Sea-ravens' see Cape Hens

‘Sea-swallows’ (unidentified: by other writers might be Cape Doves, flying-fish, Sooty Terns, Storm Petrels). **33, 143**
Sebret, - (envoy to Siam). *11.6.87*, *16.6.87*, *10.4.88*, *23.4.88*
Secretary-bird, *Sagittarias serpentarius*. **135**
‘Secunde’. ‘Chief Administrator’, ‘Deputy-Governor’ at the Cape, taking charge in case of Governor's absence or death.
Sedum (inexistent in S. Africa: probably misapplied to some small *Crassulaceae*). **174** (page 129, leaves of ‘many kinds of ~’ eaten by the Hottentots)
‘Seelen-Verkauffers’, corruption of ‘Cedullen-verkauffers’, Crimps*; also Cape Gannets because they welcomed ships as did ~, to get sailors to re-engage. **197, 401**
See-Pferd. **62**
Sepias (‘Sea-cats’, *Loligo sp.*). **135,** 482
‘Servants’. (*1*) Capitalised = all employees of the V.O.C.; (*2*) not capitalised see ‘Lent*’
Seymour (English). **439** (taken by French), **440**
Shad. *Pomatomus saltator*. **136,** 483

Shallop (Dutch chaloep, etc., German schalup, etc., French chialoupe; but both in Dutch and English there is confusion between two meanings of 'sloops', 'sloepen', (a) large, heavy boats with fore-and-aft or lug-sails, perhaps carrying guns, (b) ~, ship's boats, rowed or sailed, smaller than longboat*, larger than skiff*). *13.3.55* (52 × 15 × 6 feet, definitely (a) therefore, as also DR *4.9.55*, '16 or 17 lasten*'; *7.1.58 Peguyn**); and probably **39** ('Biscayan sloepen' for whaling). *21.9.65*, *10.12.66*, *26.8.70*, *7.3.71*, *16.3.71*, *15.6.83*, **10, 11, 42, 55, 76, 78, 97, 107, 110, 165, 176, 178, 187, 192, 195, 196, 258, 262, 272, 274, 279, 297, 302, 328, 336, 337, 342, 346, 358, 359, 361, 362, 363, 368, 386, 404, 409, 410, 414** - all are (b); but **368, 416,** and **425** (in DR as 'Brigantine') are the larger (a).
Shark, *Carcharodon carcharias*. **271**
Shearwater, Great Grey, *Adamastor cinereus*. **133** ('Blaue Moeben')
Sheathing. From Capt. Smith: 'which is as casing the Hull vnder water with Tar, and Hair, close couered ouer within thin boards fast nailed to the Hull' (against 'Wormes').
Sheep: references to barter and to Hottentot cloaks, and caps are omitted, *14.5.53*, *14.10.72*, *14.3.88*, *25.10.88*, *28.3.02*, **13, 15, 26** (put on Robben Island), **35, 39, 57, 103, 119, 148, 160, 166** (page 4, on Robben Island, page 5, ditto, 208 lb., tail 20 lb., page 15), **174** (page 135, Gonnema's ~ seized), **191, 204, 212, 213, 214, 217, 222, 228, 236, 241,** 243, **247, 251, 253, 255, 257, 258, 266, 270, 282, 289,** 290, **295, 297, 300, 303, 309, 313, 331, 343, 381, 394, 403, 408, 413, 415, 416, 423, 442, 448, 452, 460, 462, 464, 466, 475, 482, 487.** Many of those shown, as also in BVR, are to the absence of wool (although Luillier, **475,** oddly writes of their 'long wool') and to the heavy tails, Keeling (BVR 35) claiming the record of 35 lb.
Shetland Isles. *21.10.88* ('Hitland'), **106, 107, 180**
'Shore-swallows' (not identified). **204** ('birds of prey')
'*Shrosberrie*' (English, ? *Shrewsbury*). **386**
Siam and Siamese. *1.6.85*, *13.3.86*, *11.5.86*, *21.5.86*, *6.6.86*, *11.6.87*, *10.4.88*, *17.4.88*, *21.4.88*, *23.4.88*, *30.4.88*, *18.5.88*, *20.5.88*, **4, 43, 235, 261, 264, 265, 267, 268, 270, 271, 274, 279, 294-297, 299, 301, 303, 305, 308, 314, 315, 317, 321, 322, 323, 329, 330, 338, 342, 352, 353, 358, 398, 454**
Sibois see Cibois
'Sick-Comforter': the best English translation is 'Lay-reader', since his duties both on board and ashore included the reading of prayers and of sermons (but not preaching in his own words) as well as sick-visiting. **40-42**
Sidney (English). *11.1.97*, *16.1.97*, *1.2.97*, *25.4.98*, *2.5.98*, *18.4.99*, **425, 426, 439, 440, 441, 450, 451**
Sillida (N.W. Sumatra: today probably Sibolga). *19.3.81*, **221, 336**
Sillida (yacht) *13.6.86*, *26.4.88*, **307-311, 339, 343**
Silversteyn. 14.5.79, *16.6.82*, *11.3.85*, *30.3.85*, *9.4.88*, *16.4.88*, *30.4.88*, **338, 339, 340, 342, 351, 352**
Simond, Revd. Pieter. *19.8.88*, *22.8.88*, *15.10.88*, *17.10.88*, **431.** (SADB)
Simons Bay (False Bay). Plate 51
'*Singelde*' (English). **454**

Sion see *Zion*
Sirjansland (*Sarjansland*). *12.6.93*, *19.5.99*, *1.7.99*, **454**
Siskin, *Crithagra sp.* **134**
Skiff (Dutch schuyt, German ditto, French canot): the smallest of the boats carried by a ship, rowed or sailed. *30.9.56*, *17.1.58*, *20.9.65*, *24.7.73*, *5.1.88*, *26.4.88*, *18.5.88*, *20.8.88*, *12.10.88*, *26.4.89*, *24.5.97*, *28.12.99*, *30.12.99*, **27, 39, 42, 157, 165, 247, 248** ('land-skiff', i.e., one in local service under the Equipagie-meester, not belonging to any ship), **360, 361, 468, 469, 470**
Skipjack, *Pomatomus saltator*. **136**
'S.L.', 'A Relation of several Voyages made into the East Indies by C. Fryke and C. Schewitzer [*sic*]', London 1700. **182, 184, 229, 231, 258, 259**
Slaughterhouse. **154, 202, 346, 409.** Plate 28
Slaves. *2.4.54*, *12.3.55*, *28.4.55*, *28.3.58*, *14.10.72*, *22.5.76*, *29.11.76*, *30.11.76*, *11.5.83*, *24.1.88*, *19.10.88*, *26.12.88*, *1.8.96*, *1.7.99*, *30.12.99*, *28.3.02*, **26** (error of date), **139, 165, 194, 196, 217, 242, 243, 244, 276, 279, 303, 304, 310, 382, 389, 404, 411, 431** (prices), **438, 450, 451, 461, 466, 467, 480.** Also DR *6.5.58* (225 ~ arrived from Guinea), *9.5.58* (sold to freemen), *28.8.56* (28 fugitive ~), *30.5.58* (now 98 Company's, 89 private ~, sufficient), *21.5.59* (some ~ freed of shackles and armed against Caepmans), letter to Holland *18.5.78* (125 Company's ~ died last year in epidemic).
Slavehouse. *28.7.79*, **276, 480.** Also letter to Holland *23.11.79*, new ~ in use. Plate 28
Sloop see Shallop
Slopeend, *Spatula capensis*. **133** ('Schloben')
Slot Honingen (*Schlott van Honningen*). *11.3.65*, *22.4.65*, **62, 79**
Smient, Dircq Jansen (Ensign to Captain). *29.4.73*, *1.11.76*, *19.11.76*, **166** (page 15, mentioned as Ensign), **190** (unnamed), **191** (ditto)
Smith, C.A., 'Common names of South African Plants', Pretoria 1966
ditto J.L.B., 'Sea Fishes of Southern Africa,' Cape Town 1961.
ditto, Capt. John, 'A Sea Grammar,' London 1627
Smuggling. **146, 255, 257, 400, 402, 409.** Also DR *22.9.54* (prohibition of sale of brandy from ships), *30.12.75* (ditto, and of tobacco), Resolutions *1.3.81* (~ of tobacco cannot be prevented)
Snakes (usually casual mentions, unidentifiable). 85, 91, 124, **166** (page 10, five ells long, page 15), **174** (page 91, mentioned on Robben Island; page 105), 213, 228, **260, 292** (horned ~, 'Ceraste', probably *Bitis cornuta*), 478
Snipe, *Rostratula bengalensis*, *Capella sp.* **134,** 482
Soetendal, *21.3.70*, *1.4.70*
Soldaat (frigate, 63 men). *12.11.96*, *1.7.97*, *1.6.98*, **422**
Soleil de l'Orient. 22.5.79, **220, 221**
Soles, *Austroglossus pectoralis*. **284, 302, 483**
Sonderend River, (34°05, etc., Worcester 3119 sheet). *21.10.88*. Plate 39
Sonnerat, P., 'Voyage ...', Paris 1806 (first edn. 1782)
Sorrel (common indigenous, *Oxalis pes-caprae*, trifoliate like 'clover'; indigenous Wood- ~, *Rumex sp.*) *24.10.99*, **38.** Also DR *19.6.52* ('found another kind of ~ very similar to the Dutch ~ and much better than the common clover-~), *19.10.52* (Cape ~ to be sown). See also many references in BVR as cure for scurvy.
South, Thomas. **414-421**

Spaan, G. van, ‘Gelukzoeker’ (in ‘Schermschool der Huisleden’, Amsterdam 1752. **136**
Spain and Spanish. *20.8.02*, **9, 279, 281, 400, 458**
Spanbroek (small flute). *9.3.71*, *2.5.74*, *3.6.74*, *2.3.76*, *18.3.76*, **156, 157, 175, 180**
Sparen. 27.5.94
Sparendam (yacht, also flute, 170-184 men). *26.8.63*, *2.4.69*, *13.4.69*, *2.3.71*, *7.3.71*, *10.3.71*, *23.3.72*, *12.3.76* **75, 78, 141,** ? **155** (unnamed), **157, 164, 185**
Sparrman, A., ‘Voyage ...’, London 1786 from Swedish. **138**
Sparrow, *Passer melanurus*. **134** (‘neat nests on twigs’ are abandoned weaver-bird nests), 483 (‘many sorts of ~’)

Speck, Spanischer **227** = Canteloup melon, 'Spaanspek' in Afrikaans today
Speedy Return (English). *15.1.02*
Spiegel. 24.2.99, **448** (unnamed)
'Spiegelschip'. Dutch term used for the standard East-Indiamen, emphasizing the high, ornamented, square stern (in contrast with the round-sterned Flute*, etc.). The standard rig was bowsprit with spritsail and spritsail-topsail, Dutch and German 'Blinden' (see e.g., Plate 4, the latter furled), foremast (Fokkemast, Fockmast, French confusingly 'Misaine'; and French 'Foc' is a triangular sail from foremast to bowsprit, not normal in the ~ rig), with course (foresail) and foretopsail (and perhaps, especially later, fore-topgallant sail); mainmast (Grootmast, Grossmast, Grand-mât) with course (mainsail), maintopsail, and perhaps main-topgallant sail; mizzen (Besaan, Besan, Artimon). In earlier days this last was short, with a smallish lateen-yard and sail: later it was as high as the foremast, with long lateenyard and large sail, and perhaps a mizzen-topsail. (Later again, as in the Plates in Heydt, only the upper part of this yard carried canvas, so that a gaff would have sufficed; but the long yard was retained, chiefly as being a useful spare spar.) For an exhaustive list of spars, sails, ropes, etc. see *Tappen* (*153ff*). See also Plates 4, 10, 12, 25, 29, etc.
Spierdyk (yacht, 800 tons). *16.6.86*, *20.3.87*, *20.5.87*, *23.4.88*, *9.5.88*, *30.6.89*, *8.6.99*, **310, 314, 338, 343, 410, 452** (unnamed)
Spilbergen, Joris van (Cape 1801, see BVR). **157, 479.** SADB Vol. I
Spinach (introduced). **253.** Also DR *20.7.52* (growing well)
Spoonbill, *Platalea alba.* **483**
Springbok, *Antidorcas marsupialis*. ? **284,** ? **297**
Stad Ceuelen. 22.1.99, *25.1.99*, *7.2.99*, **446** (unnamed)
Stadt Grave see *Grave*
Standvastigheyt. 1.7.97
Starling, *Spreo bicolor*. **134**
'Starling-gulls', ? Sterretje, *Larus hartlaubii*. **133**
Starmeer (*Stermeer*, *Stormer*). *20.4.73*, *11.5.73*, **168**
'Start', to: anchor started = broke loose from ground. **368**
Stavenisse (and see *Centaurus*): wrecked some 90 miles south of Durban in February 1686. Many of the crew set out for the Cape by land: others, together with the survivors of the crews of the wrecked English *Bona Ventura* and *Good Hope*, built a small vessel and in her reached Table Bay (DR *1.3.1687*). This, taken over by the Company and named *Centaurus*, collected **19** of the land-party, most of the rest having died (Despatch to Holland *26.4.1688*). *Noord* rescued two others, the bos'un Adriaans Jans and a boy, and brought them to the Cape (Despatch to Holland *15.9.1689*). (In a second voyage *Noord* rescued more survivors, but was herself wrecked on the way to the Cape.) The bos'un's report is in the Hague Archives 4006, reproduced also in Godee-Molsbergen 'Reizen in Zuid-Afrika, Derde Deel', Linschoten Vereeniging XX, 's Gravenhage 1922, pp. 59-68: it is not 'the log' as in *Langhansz*, but the report made by the bos'un and forwarded to Holland, nor did he arrive 'alone', as mentioned above. *19.4.85*, *4.5.85*, *1.3.87*, *10.11.87*, *19.2.88*, *31.8.88*, **314, 405, 406** (details incorrect, see

above). Also letter to Holland *24.5.90* (rescue of 'the residue' by *Noord*, her wreck, 18 tried to come by land, only 4 arrived).
Stavorinus, J.S., 'Reize van Zeeland ...', Leiden 1793
Staysails: triangular sails set on the stays supporting the masts. **422**
Steenbergen (about 34°05, 15°25, Cape Town sheet). *16.7.85*, **214, 337, 338.** Plate 51
Steenbok, *Raphicerus campestris*. 49, 76, 82 (? as 'Steendassen' in error), 90, **122,** 137, 164, 209, 213, 482
Steenbrassen (Bream, *L. lithognatus*). **136** ('Steinbeissen'), **192, 409,** 483
Stel, Frans van der. *26.1.86* (unnamed), **420, 422.** ? 1668-1718. (SADB)
Stel, Simon van der. *12.10.79* and *passim* to *22.1.99*,, *14.10.99*, **214-216, 220, 222, 226, 230, 231, 247, 253, 255, 262, 266, 268, 270, 274, 275, 277, 278, 281, 287, 290, 291, 299, 300-304, 306, 315, 323, 324, 327, 329, 330, 331, 343, 346, 353, 358, 360, 363-366, 385-390, 413, 416, 418, 420, 421, 422, 425, 442, 463, 480** ('Adrian' in error). 1639-1712. SADB, Vol. I. And see *Böeseken*, *A.J.*, '~ en sy Kinder ...', Cape Town, 1964
Stel, Wilhelm Adriaan van der. *22.1.99* and *passim* to end, **446, 447, 454, 464-472, 480** (error for 'Simon'), **481, 491.** (SADB)
Stellenbosch. *3.11.79*, *20.3.81* (8 families), *16.7.85*, *11.6.87*, *14.6.87*, *10.10.87*, *3.2.88*, *16.10.88*, *17.10.88*, *18.10.88*, *26.12.88*, *7.5.95*, *10.5.95*, **214, 269, 285, 480**
Sterthemius, Pieter. *3.4.55*, *7.4.55*, *15.4.55*, *12.3.60*, *20.8.60*, **32, 34, 38, 39, 58, 65** (unnamed), **67** (ditto)
'Stevens Colonie' (on Liesbeek R.). *12-13.3.57*
Sticht Utrecht (*Stifft Utrecht*). *18.3.70*, *1.2.71*, *24.2.71*, *17.3.72*, *4.5.76*, *22.5.76*, **143, 144, 154, 164, 182, 185**
Sticks (Hottentots) see Kirri, Rakum
Stiver. 1/48 Rxd., or say 1d.
Stout, B., 'Narrative ...', London 1798
Stowaways. *24.1.68*, *3.7.89*, *23.10.93*, *22.10.96*, *15.12.96*, **165, 208, 385, 419, 466.** Also DR *30.5.58* (accounts of 31 ~ homeward closed: 'This desertion takes place every year'), *11.11.58* (recently 12: freemen forbidden to go on board any ships), *23.1.59* (in English ships), *27.5.59* (listed 10 freemen, 6 Servants of the Company, 3 convicts, sent back from S. Helena), *7.1.60* (death of woman ~ outward as 'soldier'), *22.3.60* (8 Servants, 4 'lent*'), *30.4.60* (accounts closed of 20 Servants, 18 freemen and 'lent', 3 convicts), *2.3.61* (10 from Batavia sent back there), Resolutions *12.4.61* (5 Servants, 8 freemen and 'lent', 1 convict brought back from S. Helena), DR *25.3.68* (woman ~ as soldier discovered on arrival outwards), *2.2.73* (another, asked for and married to freeman). Many other references both outwards and homewards: see note in BVR Index
'Strandlopertje', *Charadrius sp.* **134**
Strangman, Edward, 'Early French Callers at the Cape', Cape Town 1936. **29, 30, 261, 264, 271, 295, 305, 322, 352, 353, 374**
Stratton, Capt. **450, 451**
Struys, Johan, 'Drie Aenmerkelige en seer rampsoedige Reysen ...', Amsterdam 1676. **167-171**
Struys Bay. *24.3.87*, *3.4.87*, **315** (as Vlees Bay)
Stryen. 6.6.83, *6.7.83*, **246** ('*Huys te ~*'), **248**
Stumpnose, *Rhabdosargus tricuspidens*. **136**

'Style'. The year of the Julian Calendar was .0078 days too long. Pope Gregory by Bull of March 1582 ordered that Centuries should not be Leap Years unless divisible by 400, but there was already 10 days of error. The change, and omission of the ten days, was at once adopted in most of Italy, Portugal, Spain; and in 1583 by the Roman Catholic States of Germany, in 1700 by the Protestant ones as also Denmark, Sweden. England did not make the change until 1751, when the error was eleven days (Russia not until 1917); and at the same time the year was started on January 1st. instead of on March 25th. as until then.

Success (English ship taken by French). **439, 440**
Sugar-beer. **402.** According to *Mentzel* (*11 141*) made from bran, jaggery (palm-sugar from the East Indies), hops, yeast and a little ordinary beer. Its sale was in theory reserved to certain needy widows (e.g., DR *31.12.87*).
Sugarbird, *Promerops cafer*. **135** (tail ⅜ ell)
Sugar Loaf see Lion's Head
Suidbeveland (*Z. Beveland*). *19.8.88*, *7.9.88*, *12.10.88*, *30.6.89*
Sumatra (and see Pulo Chinco, Sillida). *18.11.76*, *8.6.86*, *1.7.86*, *29.3.87*, **214, 226, 337, 371**
Sumatra. 4.2.76 (unnamed), *18.3.76* (ditto), *20.2.80*, *19.3.81*, *7.4.81*, **180, 221, 226, 227, 228**
Sunbird, Malachite ~, *Nectarinia famosa*; Lesser Double-collard ~ *Notiocinnyris chalybeus*. **134**
Sunda Strait. *15.2.82*, *30.3.88*, **168, 246, 248, 336, 338, 340, 343, 410, 471**
Surat. *20.9.65*, *22.5.79*, *5.2.83*, *13.4.85*, *18.4.85*, *17.1.88*, *18.4.88*, *3.10.88*, *27.5.92*, *7.5.94*, *29.9.96*, **35, 46, 62, 102, 141, 252, 265, 353, 358, 389, 392, 410, 439, 440, 441, 471**
Surat Merchant. 26.10.80, **253**
Susannah (English). *31.5.83*, *8.6.83*, **245, 246, 247** (unnamed).
Swaag see *Swangh*
Swaantje see *Vliegende Swaan*
Swaenenburg (flute). **164**
Swangh (*Swaag*, flute, 49 men). *1.7.96*, *1.7.99*
Swarte Leeuw (frigate, yacht: previously French *Droite*, captured). *22.1.91*, *1.7.94*, *1.7.95*, *1.7.96*, *24.5.97*, **376, 390** (unnamed), **416** (ditto), **418** (ditto), **422** (ditto). At Cape as convalescent depot, irreparable, to be sunk as mole-battery but wrecked *24.5.97*.
Swarte Vos (galliot). *18.1.53*, **4, 5** (unnamed). Also DR *5.6.53* (to Persia).
Sweet Potatoes. **212, 351, 403, 409**
Swemmer (hooker, 17 men). *20.3.70*, *24.3.70*, **144**
Swift (English). *10.4.99*, **450, 451**
Swordfish, *Xiphias gladius* see Enemies*, **250**
Swordfish (? error for *Posthoorn*). **236**

‘Table-cloth’: the saying appears here in **46. 11, 14, 33, 46, 65, 79, 87, 146, 166** (pages 16, 17, and storms), **189, 421**. See also Rechteren, Mundy in BVR; and many later writers, e.g., *Dapper 637*, *Kolbe 70*, *311*, *312*, *314*, *Valentyn X 7*, *Barchewitz 18*, *Heydt 338*, *Philips 250*, *Pagès* (1782) *136*, *Le Vaillant* (1790) *32*, *33*, *St. Pierre 29*, *Mentzel II 144*, *Thunberg I 227* (‘like a periwig’), *Degrandpré II 86*, *236*, *Jong II 83*, *Percival 128*, *129* (‘The Devil is going to dinner’), *Cordiner 41*.
Table Mountain (and see Lake* on ~). *Passim*, and in BVR. Height officially 3,549 feet; **23** (two German miles), **174** (page 95, 7,500 paces), **210** (3,575 feet, surprisingly accurate), **228** (1,350 feet, hearsay). Earlier estimates are equally incorrect: BVR 97 (11,833 feet), 118 (11,860 feet), etc.

Ascents: first recorded 1503, BVR 8, **5, 40-42, 86-91, 142** ('cannot be climbed'), **188, 189** (partial), **208-210, 216, 217, 324-326, 333, 339** (partial), **477, 478.** Also DR *29.9.82* (eleven men). All the ~ are by the Platteklip* Gorge, always unnamed, as are also most of those in later writers, though *Percival* (*127-133*) climbed it three times by three different routes, and adds that it is 'climbed by every visitor'.
See also *Luckhoff*, *C.A.*, 'Table Mountain ...', Cape Town 1951
Tachard, Father Guy, 'Voyage de Siam ...', Paris 1686, 'Second Voyage ...', Paris 1689. *21.4.88*, *23.4.88*, **271-294, 301, 305, 306, 322-330, 352, 370, 373.** Plates 33-43, 48-50
'Tallow'. See the Dutch text, **482,** sentence not understood.
Tamboer (Dutch frigate, yacht, etc., 116 men). *1.7.94*, *19.2.99*, *2.4.99*, **448** (unnamed), **450** (ditto), **451** (? as 'Brigantine')
Tannen (or *Camen*). *18.5.88*, *30.5.88*, *2.6.88*, *3.6.88*
Tappen, David, 'Funftzehen-Jàhrige ... Reise-Beschreibung ...,' Hannover and Wolfenbüttel, 1704. **110-114, 117, 138, 236-242**
Tarnaten see *Ternaten*
'Tauquets' (birds, not identified). **250**
Tavernier, Jean-Baptiste, 'De Zes Reisen ...', Amsterdam 1682: also London 1889, 1925, Harris I, Prévost XIII. **67, 68, 70, 71, 216.** Plates 15, 16
Tea. **192, 199, 267, 276, 279, 317, 387, 401, 448**
Tenerife. **111, 165, 182, 471, 477**
Ten Rhyne, Wilhelm. 'Schediasma ...', Schaffhausen 1686. **174, 226.** Born Deventer *ca* 1640: to Java 1673 as Surgeon: there and voyage to Japan. Badly trs. in Churchill: trs. Schapera with invaluable notes.
Ter Eemden. 20.8.02
Ternate (place). **252**
Ternaten (*Tarnaten*). *11.4.69*, *25.3.72*, *15.10.73*, *8.11.73*, *4.2.70* (unnamed), *18.3.76* (ditto), *17.9.77*, *20.9.77*, *30.9.77*, *27.9.81*, *16.10.81*, **141, 164, 174, 180, 197, 198, 206, 229-231**
Terry, Edward see in BVR
Ter Veer see *Wapen van Ter Veer*
Tertholen. 20.2.80
Testicles (Hottentot). **19, 56, 63, 68, 113, 124, 125, 147, 166** (page 20, left, 8 weeks age, 'one eye better shot'), **174** (page 143, one, at birth, agility, birthcontrol), **183, 217, 233, 289, 309, 321, 347, 395, 396, 406, 433, 484.** It will be noted that there is a general increase in the age at which the operation is said to be performed, from birth or childhood, BVR 122, 141, 175, 179, **19, 68, 113, 166** (page 20), **174** (page 143), **433, 484**; through boyhood, **56, 63, 124, 125, 183, 217, 233, 289, 347, 395, 396, 406**; to 'at marriage' **147** (though unreliable). After about 1700 greater ages are quoted, as in *Kolbe 420*, *421*: *Maxwell 51* has it as a pre-requisite to marriage, because (*Valentyn X 103*) insisted on by women (cf. the vague 'propres aux femmes', **321**) perhaps from a fear of twins (*Kolbe 424*, *Salmon 102*, *Schomburg 340*, etc.) After about 1750 it is often stated that the practice had died out at the Cape, though it might or did persist inland: *Sparrman I 182*, *Mentzel III 281*, *Le Vaillant* (1790) *293*, (1796) *II 5*, etc. The most usual other reason given for it is an increase of agility, **19, 68, 125, 174** (page 143), **183, 217, 347, 483, 484**; also BVR 179 and later writers, e.g., *Valentyn X 103*, *Buttner 128-130*, *Percival* 84. Other reasons quoted are

birth-control, BVR 123, **56, 113, 124, 125, 174** (page 143), **347, 395, 396, 406,** and later writers, e.g., *Buttner 128-130*; to breed more daughters, *Beeckman* (in Pinkerton *XI 142*), *Cossigny 25* - or *less* such, *Valentyn X 103*.
The operation is described fully by *Kolbe 404*, *422*, *423*, *Buttner 128-130*: *Le Vaillant* (1796) contradicts *Kolbe*, but himself gives no descriptions of the 'two methods' he mentions.
Texel (channel south of ~ island). *Passim* in documents, **9, 48, 108, 110, 141, 143, 156, 157, 160, 178, 180, 182, 185, 197, 211, 226, 252, 316, 374, 376, 401, 410, 411, 477**
Thames. *29.10.86*, *25.7.89*, *6.9.99*, **141**
Thevenot, M., 'Relations de divers Voyages curieux ...' (Vol. I only, for Beaulieu), Paris 1666. Royal Librarian, one of founders of the Académie Française. 1620-1692. **324, 325, 326**

Thomas, Pascoe, 'Journal of a Voyage ...' (with Anson), London 1755
Thrush see s.v. Blackbird
Thunberg, C.P., 'Travels ...', London 1795, 6 from Swedish
'Tibbesas' (**119**) see s.v. Hottentots, Cattle
Tidor. 25.3.72, *18.4.76*, *28.4.76*, *20.2.80*, *6.6.83*, **164, 182, 184, 246, 248, 251**
'Tiger' (Leopard), *Panthera pardus melanotica* (and cf. Leopard). *17.6.56*, 15, **16,** 29, 34, 56, 70, 71, 86, 91, 113, **138, 141,** 148, 161, 164, **166** (page 11, at Salt R.; page 15; page 22, skins bartered), 184, 191, 205, **209, 213,** 228,, 239, **241, 268,** 270, **282, 284,** 297, **300, 306,** 394, **407, 408,** 429, **430, 431,** 462, 478, **481**
Tiger ('*English ~*'). *9.1.97*, *11.1.97*, *1.2.97*, **425, 426**
Tigerberg. *26.10.88*, **161, 479.** About 33°52, 18°35, Cape Town 1: 250,000 sheet. Plate 24
Tiger-bushcat see s.v. Cat
Timor. **307, 471**
'Tiorba': Theorbo, large double-necked bass lute. **194, 196**
Tobacco and Pipes see Hottentots, ~
Tommers Wall. 10.11.78
Tonquin. **299, 301, 305**
Tonquin (English). *3.10.88*, *5.10.88*, *12.10.88*, *13.10.88*
Topshells see Periwinkles
Torbay. *8.4.99*, *12.4.99*, **226**
'Torpedo' (fish) see Drilvis
Tortoises (too vague for identification). 8, **16, 22, 56, 71, 128, 166** (page 15), **174** (page 121, eaten by Hottentots, shells as cups, shells bartered), 203, 233, 482
Town. *18.5.56*, *26.8.66*, *24.9.66* (16 freemen in ~), *16.7.85* (80 families), *1.8.96* (~ watch formed), **49, 68, 70, 79, 94, 102, 161, 190, 212** (70 or 80 houses), **227** (60 or 70 freemen), 228, 246, 255, **258, 266, 269** (more than 100 houses), 276, **282, 296** (about 100), **309, 330, 350, 381, 382** (Inns), **397** (more than 500 people), **399, 402, 403** (Inns), **423, 428** (about 300 houses, many Inns [*sic*]), **479**. Also DR *10.10.57* ('leave given to the Serjeant ... to keep a lodginghouse to accommodate the men from passing ships'), *17.12.57* (Chief Surgeon allowed private practice, and to keep a 'dry-tavern'), *26-27.8.59* ('some shops' allowed to open, prices fixed), Resolutions *7.12.59* (two cooks freed to be bakers, with monopoly of sale of bread, and allowd to sell food, but not drinks since the 2 taverns in town and one at Salt River suffice), *27.1.60* ('all the Company's buildings to be roofed with tiles, removing the thatch'), *2.1.63* (all houses to be plastered with lime), *30.11.63* (Sick-Comforter* running paid school), Resolutions *29.7.64* (now 2 taverns in ~), *11.9.86* (night-watchmen, tax on householders to pay them). Plates 17, 28
Towr van London (*Touwr ~*) see *Berkley Castle*
Trade with Hottentots, illegal. *21.2.57*, *17.11.79*, **11, 62, 63, 97, 148, 234, 235, 282, 384, 436.** Also DR *6.11.57* (entirely prohibited), *4.9.58* (~ in trifles allowed), *24.10.58* (~ of cattle prohibited), *24.11.61* (ditto), *9.11.77* (ditto),

4.12.77 (ditto), *19.10.91* (ditto), *20.7.93* (ditto), *17.2.00* (allowed by orders of XVII), *27.10.02* (this abused, force used on Hottentots - later re-prohibited).
Tranquebar. *4.4.98*, *21.3.02*, *7.4.02*
'Trie', lie at a: in storm, helm lashed hard over, just enough balanced canvas to keep ship's head to wind. **307**
Trill-fish see Drilvis
Trombas, trompas, *Ecklonia buccinalis. 6.3.54*, **27, 75, 143, 174** (page 91, 'drombassen', hinder boats), **187, 226, 255, 265, 271, 401, 471.** See also in BVR.
Trumpets. **13, 214, 215, 243, 248, 291**
'Trusch-fisch': apparently Pilot-fish is meant, *Naucrates ductor*, but this attends sharks, not whales. **250**
Tulp (galliot). *10.4.55*, **38** (unnamed), **40.** Also DR *8.7.55* (again horses from S. Helena), *31.3.57* (mentioned as wrecked near Madagascar)
Tunny ('Sea-pig'), *Thunnus thynnus*. **187,** 250
Turnips (introduced). **9, 46, 79, 161, 228, 232, 237, 243, 466, 481.** Also DR *20.7.52* (growing well)
Turtledove, *Streptopelia capicola*. **27, 134, 268, 270,** 430
Tyrrell, John. **255, 256, 257.** Plate 31

Ubiquas see Obiquas
Ulisses (flute). *21.3.59*, *31.3.59*
Unie. 11.4.98, *5.5.98*, *13.2.99*, *20.3.99*; **442** (unnamed), **448** (unnamed)
Unrust Island (near Batavia, today Pulu Kapal). **343.** *Schouten's* ship (his page *103*) repaired there, also in *Langhansz 607*, *608* and described by *Heydt 103*, with *Plates*.
Utrecht see *Stigt Utrecht*

Val, Petrus du ('Viaggi di Pietro della Valle', 1663, also trs. by Hakluyt Society 1892). **199, 227**
Valentyn, François, 'Oud en Nieuw Oost-Indien ...,' Dordrecht and Amsterdam 1724: all references are to his Vol. I except where marked as 'X'. **68, 79, 172, 175, 219, 236, 243, 246, 316, 336, 340;** X **115, 184, 301**
Valkenier, Wouter. *25.1.1700*
Vaudricourt, de l'Aulnay de. *11.6.87*, *21.11.88*, **271, 322, 323, 324, 329, 352, 353**
Veenmol (little flute). *3.1.97*, *29.1.97*, **425.** Also letter to Holland *8.3.98* (taken by French).
Velho, 'Roteiro' (Vasco da Gama) see in BVR
'Velvet-sleeves' see Cape Gannet
Venhuysen. 12.2.99, *14.1.01*, **471** ('Vanheusen')
Verburg, Nicolaus (Director-General). **180, 185**
Verburgh, Frederick (Secunde*). **40**
Verdonk, Capt. *4.3.79*, **208**
Vereenigde Provintien (*Provintie*). *3.4.55*, *15.4.55*, **32, 33, 34, 39, 40, 42**
Vergelen (about 34°05, 18°55, Cape Town 1:250,000 sheet, as 'Camphor Trees'). *25.1.1700*, **481**
Vergulde Draek see *Draek*
Vergulde Pelikaan **315,** error for *Providence*

Vermeulen, Gerrit, 'Merkwaerdige Voyagie ...', Amsterdam 1677. **111-114, 175-179**
Versailles. **199, 266, 267**
Vigita (Vigit) Magna. Legendary river in N.W., perhaps Orange. **216**
Vines and Vineyards. *21.8.58*, *26.8.58*, *13.9.60*, *13.8.64*, *14.6.69*, *28.3.02*, **14, 82, 97, 139, 146, 191, 192, 208, 212, 228, 232, 243, 262, 282, 306, 343, 381, 382, 394, 397, 403, 428, 429, 461.** Also Resolutions *8.5.50* (neglect of agriculture at Stellenbosch in favour of ~, counter-orders), letter to Holland *30.6.97* (now 1,360,200 vines)
Vine (pink, *Wyngaard*). *30.12.99* (in item 99), *31.12.99* (ditto), *2.1.00* (ditto), *26.1.00*, **467, 469, 470**
Vlaardinge (yacht). *2.4.69*, *16.4.69*, **141**
Vlees Bay. **315**, error for Struys Bay
Vlie: old channel Zuidersee - North Sea between Terschelling and Vlieland Islands. *18.3.55*, *28.3.58*, *16.3.59*, *22.3.59*, *5.10.59*, *10.4.65*, *1.4.70*, **10, 45, 53, 55, 106, 340**
Vliegende Swaan(*tie*) (little flute, hooker, galliot, yacht). *17.3.72*, *30.11.72*, *9.12.72*, *13.12.72*, *5.3.73*, *24.7.73*, *26.2.75*, **164, 172** (unnamed)
Vlielandt. 15.8.54
Vlissingen. *25.4.69*, *4.3.82*, *17.10.96*, *8.11.96*, *3.1.97*, **438, 458**
Voetboog. 11.7.89, *12.7.89*, **367** (unnamed), **368** (ditto)
Vogel, Johann Wilhelm, 'Ost-Indianische Reise-Be-

schreibung ...', Hamburg 1716 (fuller than his 'Diarium ...', Frankfurt and Gotha 1690). **211-221, 336-340**
Vogel Phenics see *Phenix*
Voorhout (yacht). *1.1.76*, *12.1.76*, *22.5.76*, *29.11.76*, **165, 180, 185, 194**
Voorschoten (flute). *17.5.85*, *16.6.85*, *19.3.87*, *20.5.87*, *15.4.88*, *18.4.88*, *24.4.88*, *8.5.88*, **314**
Voorsigtigheid. 26.3.72, *24.4.72*, *22.5.76*, *17.9.77*, *19.9.77*, *1.10.77*, **164, 185**
Vosmaar. 17.10.96, *22.10.96*, *3.11.96*, *13.2.99*, *14.2.99*, *20.3.99*, *26.7.02*, *8.8.02*, **414, 418, 419, 477**
Vries, Simon de, 'Drie ... Reisen ...', Utrecht 1694. **182, 226, 229**
VRS = Van Riebeeck Society, Cape Town.
Vrye Zee. 1.2.71, *24.2.71*, *13.4.72*, *12.10.79*, **164, 222**
Vryheit. 25.8.69, *6.3.71*, *22.3.71*, *30.11.72*, *13.12.72*, *17.11.76*, *18.11.76*, *8.12.76*, *24.3.82*, *25.3.82*, *6.4.82*, *29.4.82*, *27.11.83*, *30.3.85*, **155, 156, 187-196, 236, 242, 253, 311**
Vulture: Cape, *Gyps coprotheres*, Egyptian, *Neophron percnopterus*. **135**
Vulture (fireship). *9.1.97*, *11.1.97*, **425** ('Wulter'), **426**

Waalstrom. 29.3.88, *33.3.88*, *30.4.88*, *27.5.94*, *30.12.99* (in item 99), **336, 337, 339, 340, 342, 351, 352, 401, 468** (unnamed). Also DR *6.12.99* (arrived in bad state after 3 months repairing storm damage at Mayotte Islands), *27.2.00* (irreparable, to be broken up)
Waddinxveen. 24.5.97
Wagenaer (Wagner), Zacharias. *2.4.62* and *passim* to *29.6.66* (sailed), **76, 77**
Walcheren. 11.3.65, *22.4.65*, **79**
Walckenaer, C.A., 'Collection ... de Voyages ...', Paris 1842
Walvis. 2.3.53, *10.4.53*, *17.4.53*, *8.4.60*
Walvis Rock (usually unnamed), **23** (named), **262, 265, 272, 308, 454** ('the Elevens'). Plates **24, 45**
Wapen van Alkmaar see *Alkmaar*
ditto. *Amsterdam. 18.3.55*, *31.3.55*, **33** (unnamed), **34, 62**
ditto *der Gouw* see *Gouda* (**160, 161**)
ditto *der Goes* see *Wapen van der Goes*
ditto *Holland. 22.2.55*, **62**
ditto *Hoorn* (flute). *11.3.65*, *12.3.65*, *22.4.65*, *24.12.67*, *24.1.68*, *1.2.71*, *24.2.71*, **79, 102, 106**
ditto *Rotterdam. 30.3.72*, **164** ('*Nieuw Rotterdam*')
ditto *Sierikzee* see *Zierikzee*
ditto *ter Goes* (cf. *Der Goes*). *25.4.69*, *12.5.69*, *26.3.72*, **164**
ditto *terVeer.6.3.71*, *22.3.71*, *20.4.73*, *11.5.73*, **156, 168, 170, 171, 173**
ditto *Zeeland. 26.3.72*
Warden, R., 'Journal ...', QB 1953
Warp, to: move a ship by carrying out an anchor ('~ anchor') in a boat, in the desired direction, dropping it, and winding the ship up to it: e.g., **368, 445**
Warren, Thomas. *16.6.99*, *1.7.99*, **467, 469, 470**

Watches: based chiefly on Graaf's 'Oost-Indische Spiegel'. (1) 'Platvoet' of 1½ hours, 18.30 ('Sunset' arbitrarily) to 20.00; (2) 'First' to 2400; (3) 'Dog' ('Hondewagt', as also Saar, page 13) to 0400; (4) 'Day' to 0800, then Prayers and breakfast, watch kept by stewards and cooks (or, *Mentzel's* 'Life of R.S. Allemann', VRS 1919, by men detailed from (3) and (4), changing daily); (5) men of (3) now on watch until 1200; (6) Dinner, those of (4) now on watch until 1800; (7) Prayers, then short watch to 1830. (This rotates duties whether crew detailed in two or three watches, according to strength.) Confusingly, modern English usage calls (1) and (2) 'Dog-watches', although now of two hours each, 1600-1800, 1800-2000.
Waterhouse, Gilbert, ed. S. van der Stel 1685 Diary, London 1932. **301**
Water (Saldanha Bay). *22.1.67*, *26.8.70*, *20.9.70*, **26, 96, 423**
ditto (Table Bay): entries marked ^{o} refer to its excellence and/or ease in getting it. *20.8.60*, *23.8.70*, *9.10.79 24.1.83*, *29.1.83*, *8.2.83*, *31.5.83*, *8.6.83*, *27.2.88*, *10.4.88*, *21.4.88*, *5.10.88*, *6.3.02*, *8.3.02*, **5^{o}, 8, 9, 11^{o}, 27, 39, 40, 42, 46^{o}, 49^{o}, 53, 55^{o}, 62, 65, 67, 76** (new reservoir), **82^{o}, 92, 103** (charged for), **107, 114, 141, 142** (bad!), **144, 156, 166^{o}** (page 15, led to beach 'in stone pipes' [*sic*]), **180, 182, 189^{o}, 199^{o}, 210, 219, 222, 228^{o}, 231, 243, 244, 246, 251, 253, 255, 258, 262, 267, 268** (not so good as Brest), **297^{o}, 303, 306, 310, 311, 317, 319, 331, 338, 342^{o}, 346, 351, 353, 401, 410^{o}, 413, 414, 415, 416, 417, 419, 420, 422, 425, 439, 440, 442, 445, 446, 447, 448, 450, 451, 452, 454, 455, 461^{o}, 464, 466, 467, 472, 474.** Also Van Reede's Instructions 1685 (water to be led to jetty), Resolutions *25.2.70*, Mostert given contract for brick ~ course.
Water-hen (Moorhen), *Gallinula chloropsis*. **134**
'Water-lemon': thus always for Watermelon in early writers, as in Afrikaans today. *2.4.55*, **11, 38, 42, 49, 79, 84, 144, 161** (described), **174** (page 167, 'melonen speciem'), **199, 212, 227, 228, 230, 237, 409, 429.** Also DR *29.1.53* ('coming up beautifully'), *9.10.54* (more land allotted for ~)
Waterman. 7.6.99, *11.6.99*, *2.4.02*, **452, 474**
Watermelons see Waterlemons
Waveren (33^{o}18, 19^{o}08, Worcester 1:250,000 sheet, as 'Tulbagh'). *1.3.1700*, *31.7.1700*
Weesel(*tje*) (galliot). *8.9.96*, *27.10.96*, *3.11.96*, *6.4.02 24.8.02*, **414** ('hoy', unnamed), **418** (unnamed), **419** (unnamed). Also frequently in DR *1699*, *1700* as in local service to Saldanha Bay, etc.
Weijts, Samuel (English). *10.4.88*, *11.4.88*, *20.4.88*
Welker, Philip Theobald (Boekhouder). **187** (unnamed), **195**
Werelt, Jacob de. *18.11.76*, **190** (Director of Mining), **191-193, 195**
Werlinghoff, Frederick Math. van (Mine-Overseer). *1.7.86*, **214-216** (with van der Stel 1685, Sumatra 1686)
West-Friesland. **62, 68, 171** (English prize)
Wester Amstel (flute). *5.4.82*, *29.4.82*, *19.5.83*, *22.6.83*, *8-10.7.83*, **236, 242, 243, 247, 248**
Westerwijk. **314**
Westhoven. 1.7.99
Whale: usually mentioned as in Table Bay, *Megaptera novae-angliae*: if at sea, especially in Spring, *Eubalena australis. 17.1.53*, *1.3.54*, *2.3.54*, *3.3.54*, *6.3.54*,

9, 16, 17 (Hottentots), **29, 39** (whaling a failure), **55, 57, 84** (Hottentots), **85, 86, 103** (Hottentots), **107, 110, 135, 143, 160, 226, 233, 242, 301, 349, 373, 409, 460.** Also DR *6.9.88* (dead ~ washed ashore, blubber taken by Hottentots)
Wheat. *13.1.53*, *16.12.54*, *28.12.54*, *17.5.56*, *11.12.56*, *28.3.02*, 14, **77, 138, 161, 166** (page 15, abundant), **191, 212** (exported), **228, 232, 237, 262, 282, 297, 331, 372, 380, 382, 394, 409, 429, 461, 475, 480, 481.** Also DR *20.7.52* (growing well), *2.10.54* (ditto, but beaten down by wind)
Widowbird, *Coliuspasser capensis*. **134**
Wielingen (opening to sea near Vlissingen). *18.3.55*, **42**
Wig, 'a long Campaigne ~': plain, close-fitting, for travel. **420**
Wigeon, *Anas capensis*. 482
Wijting (hooker). *2.4.69*, *16.4.69*, **141**
'Wildeböcke' (? Wildebeest). **137**

'Wilhelmus of Nassau', Netherlands National Anthem, as today. **13**
William of Orange (William III of England). *10.11.78*, *26.7.02*, **168, 172, 173, 422**
Wimmenum (*Wimmenongen*). *15.3.70*, *24.3.70*
Wind Hill see Devils Peak (e.g., **56** '~ or Devils Hill)
Windsor. 9.1.97, *11.1.97*, *1.2.97*, **425, 426**
Wine (at Cape). *2.2.59*, *16.11.88*, *31.12.88*, *23.10.93*, *28.3.02*, **14, 97, 166** (page 15, abundant), **192, 212, 227, 232, 236, 255, 270, 282, 300, 306, 317, 331, 343** (sold as French), **372** (none!), **381, 382, 394, 397, 398, 402, 403, 407, 429, 432, 461, 475, 480, 481.** Also DR *20.2.64* (½ aam* from Bosheuvel), letter from Holland *23.10.66* (~ sent, 'contrary to our expectations' proved very tasty), Resolutions *26.6.88* (no ~ to be pressed until grapes certified ripe by inspectors)
Winkelier. Official responsible for sales to civilians, especially of food, directly or through shops when these were established.
Wintergerst, Martin, 'Der durch Europam lauffende ... Schwabe oder Reise-Beschreibung ...', Hague 1932 from Memmingen 1712 (Vol. II only). **458-474**
Winthondt (yacht). *12.4.53*, *14.4.53*, **8**
Withington, as in BVR
Wolf, J.C., 'Reise nach Ceylon ...', Berlin and Stettin 1782
'Wolf', *Hyaena brunnea*, 'Tiger- ~', *C. crocuta. 17.6.56*, **15, 29, 34, 85, 86, 138, 166** (page 11, at Salt R., page 15), **184, 213, 228, 297, 462** (none), **481.** Nearly all are casual mentions only.
Wolf (Danish). *17.1.88*
Wood (firewood if not otherwise noted). *31.5.54*, *13.3.55* (for building sloepe), *27.9.59* (timber), *23.10.93*, **11, 13** (and timber), **23** (ditto), **35** (ditto), **39** (ditto), **40, 42, 49, 53, 64** (and timber), **92, 96, 128, 156, 180, 182, 190, 219, 228, 236** (timber), **243, 251, 257, 258, 268, 311, 338, 351, 401, 410, 420, 425, 432, 455, 462, 481** (timber inland), **486.** Also DR *10.7* and *15.8.76* (cutting on Table Mountain prohibited), *12.2.99* ('decay' of Company's forests, fuel very dear), The scarcity and poor quality of ~ is a continual complaint, from DR *14.9.54* to e.g., Banks, 438, in 1771, the fuel 'almost as dear' as the food it was to cook.
Woodcock: might be any long-billed wader, perhaps Painted Snipe, *Rostratula benghalensis*. **430**
'Wooren' (? fish, not identified). **42**
Wydah, Pintail, *Vidua macrura*. **134**
Wynberg. **192, 193**
Wyngaard see *Vine*
Yacht: Dutch 'Jacht', 'Jagdschip' (ship of chase), small, fast. Term used somewhat vaguely: at times = large galliot, about 50 men (e.g., DR *26.8.63*, *27.8.63*, *28.8.63*), at times confused with frigate, more than 100 men (e.g., DR *30.3.70*, *1.7.94*). The term is never used in early English accounts, its use in English dating from 1700 (NED), *Passim* in the documents, **8, 23, 32, 33** (133 men, 28 to 30 guns, 'war ~'), **34, 35** (but DR *13.3.55* as 'sloepe'), **42** (but *Coningh David* also as 'flute'), **43, 53, 75-78** (but *Meerman* in DR 156 men),

141, 164 (but *Vliegende Swaan* also as ‘little flute’ and ‘galliot’), **180** (but *Posthoorn* also as ‘hooker’), **185, 194, 310,** (*Spierdijck*, *800* tons **314, 339, 343**
Yawl: small ship's boat, perhaps 4 to 6 oars (NED). **368, 369, 420, 422, 440, 452, 472**
Yellowbills see s.v. Ducks
Ysselmonde. 8.5.98; **439, 440, 442** (all unnamed)

Zalland (*Salland*). *13.3.87*, *30.3.87*, *29.3.88*, *30.3.88*, *30.4.88*, *22.8.89*, **314, 336, 339, 340, 342, 351, 352, 369**
Z. Beveland see *Suidbeveland*
Zebra, *Equus burchellii*: usually as ‘Wild Asses’. *8.11.60*, ?**56, 123, 124, 148** (‘wild horses’), **184, 240, 241,** 270, **283** (horses), **297** (ditto), **381, 408,** 429, **462,** 481, **482** (described but as ‘wild horses’). Plate 37
Zeeland. *3.4.55*, *12.4.55*, *31.3.70*, *15.10.79*, *19.8.88*, *25.3.02*, **34, 42, 193, 226, 242, 366, 369, 414, 419, 422, 458**
Ziegenbalgh, B., ‘Propagation of the Gospel ...’, London 1718
Zierikzee (*Wapen van ~*). *26.3.72*, *23.4.72*, **164**
Zion (*Sion*). *31.3.88*, *30.4.88*, *18.10.99*, *21.10.99*, *22.10.99*, *27.10.99*, *20.11.99*, **336, 337, 339, 340, 342, 351, 352, 458-460, 464**
Zuyd Polsbroek. 10.4.65, *23.7.68*, *11.8.68*, *6.3.71*, *22.3.71*, *2.10.72*, *30.11.72*, *13.12.72*, **91, 108, 109, 156**
Zuylen (flute, galliot). *22.3.59*, *1.4.59*, **53**

NOTE:

After correspondence with the British Museum, I have concluded that the German form KOLB is preferable to the form ‘Kolbe’ used here. The reader will therefore be so good as to delete, manually or mentally, the final ‘e’ throughout.